

THE BEST-SELLING HANDBOOK ON ANAESTHESIA

UnitedVRG

# OXFORD HANDBOOK OF ANAESTHESIA

Edited by Keith G. Allman | Iain H. Wilson

Written by anaesthetists for anaesthetists

Provides practical advice on all aspects of  
anaesthetic practice

Contains detailed paediatric, obstetric,  
and emergency sections

Features new sections on regional anaesthesia  
and anaesthesia for interventional radiology

Includes an extensive drug formulary

THIRD EDITION  
3  
THIRD EDITION

tahir99 - UnitedVRG  
vip.purabaya

OXFORD MEDICAL PUBLICATIONS

**Oxford Handbook of  
Anaesthesia**

tahir99 - UnitedVRG  
&  
vip.persianss.ir

## Published and forthcoming Oxford Handbooks

Oxford Handbook for the Foundation Programme 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Acute Medicine 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Anaesthesia 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Applied Dental Sciences  
Oxford Handbook of Cardiology  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical and Laboratory Investigation 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Dentistry 5e  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Diagnosis 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Examination and Practical Skills  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Haematology 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Immunology and Allergy 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Medicine - Mini Edition 8e  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Medicine 8e  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Pharmacy  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Rehabilitation 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Specialties 8e  
Oxford Handbook of Clinical Surgery 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Complementary Medicine  
Oxford Handbook of Critical Care 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Dental Patient Care 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Dialysis 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Emergency Medicine 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Endocrinology and Diabetes 2e  
Oxford Handbook of ENT and Head and Neck Surgery  
Oxford Handbook of Expedition and Wilderness Medicine  
Oxford Handbook of Gastroenterology & Hepatology  
Oxford Handbook of General Practice 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Genetics  
Oxford Handbook of Genitourinary Medicine, HIV and AIDS 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Geriatric Medicine  
Oxford Handbook of Infectious Diseases and Microbiology  
Oxford Handbook of Key Clinical Evidence  
Oxford Handbook of Medical Dermatology  
Oxford Handbook of Medical Sciences  
Oxford Handbook of Medical Statistics  
Oxford Handbook of Nephrology and Hypertension  
Oxford Handbook of Neurology  
Oxford Handbook of Nutrition and Dietetics 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Obstetrics and Gynaecology 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Occupational Health  
Oxford Handbook of Oncology 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Ophthalmology  
Oxford Handbook of Paediatrics  
Oxford Handbook of Pain Management  
Oxford Handbook of Palliative Care 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Practical Drug Therapy 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Pre-Hospital Care  
Oxford Handbook of Psychiatry 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Public Health Practice 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Reproductive Medicine & Family Planning  
Oxford Handbook of Respiratory Medicine 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Rheumatology 2e  
Oxford Handbook of Sport and Exercise Medicine  
Oxford Handbook of Tropical Medicine 3e  
Oxford Handbook of Urology 2e

# Oxford Handbook of Anaesthesia

**Third edition**

Edited by

**Keith G. Allman**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Royal Devon and Exeter NHS Foundation Trust,  
UK

and

**Iain H. Wilson**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Royal Devon and Exeter NHS Foundation Trust,  
UK

Assistant Editor

**Aidan O'Donnell**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Hamilton, New Zealand

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

# OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala

Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece

Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South

Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press  
in the UK and in certain other countries

Published in the United States

by Oxford University Press Inc., New York

© Oxford University Press, 2011

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2002

Second edition 2006

Reprinted 2007 (twice with corrections)

Third edition 2011

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover  
and you must impose the same condition on any acquirer

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Data available

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Data available

Typeset by Glyph International, Bangalore, India

Printed in China

on acid-free paper through

Asia Pacific Offset

ISBN 978-0-19-958404-8

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3

Oxford University Press makes no representation, express or implied, that the drug dosages in this book are correct. Readers must therefore always check the product information and clinical procedures with the most up-to-date published product information and data sheets provided by the manufacturers and the most recent codes of conduct and safety regulations. The authors and the publishers do not accept responsibility or legal liability for any errors in the text or for the misuse or misapplication of material in this work.

UnitedVRG  
vip.persianss.ir

# Preface

Welcome to the third edition of the *Oxford Handbook of Anaesthesia*. We have been delighted with the success of the handbook, and hope that this edition will be well received.

The third edition contains many changes to take account of the feedback obtained from readers and reviewers. We have involved new authors in different sections of the book so that the material remains up-to-date and reflects a balanced set of views. In our opinion, each author is an established expert in their field and, more importantly, a good clinical anaesthetist.

The book describes the preparation of the patient for anaesthesia, the implications of concurrent diseases and the general principles of anaesthetic practice for different subspecialties. A practical approach is suggested where appropriate. There are detailed chapters on obstetric and paediatric anaesthesia, and also emergencies. A comprehensive drug formulary is included.

The *Oxford Handbook of Anaesthesia* remains a practical guide to anaesthesia written for those who have mastered basic anaesthetic techniques, but need advice for the many common problems encountered in clinical practice.

The *Oxford Handbook of Anaesthesia* has proved popular in many countries throughout the world. A low-cost edition is available in India, Pakistan, and Bangladesh and translations have been produced in Chinese, Italian, and Polish. An American edition was produced in 2008.

We are particularly grateful for the expert proofreading skills of Dr Aidan O'Donnell who has provided invaluable support during the preparation of this edition.

Despite all our efforts it is possible that an occasional error exists: please be careful. We hope that you will enjoy this latest edition of the *Oxford Handbook of Anaesthesia*. Please email us your criticisms and suggestions, so that we can keep improving the book.

Many thanks to our understanding families and authors and to the landlord and locals of the Teign House Inn ([www.teignhouseinn.co.uk](http://www.teignhouseinn.co.uk)) for continuing help and advice.

Keep well,

Keith and Iain  
[iain.wilson@rdefnhs.uk](mailto:iain.wilson@rdefnhs.uk)  
 2011

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Contents

Contributors *xi*

Abbreviations *xv*

## Preoperative assessment and preparation for anaesthesia

1	General considerations	1
2	Consent and anaesthetic risk	17
3	Cardiovascular disease	45
4	Perioperative arrhythmias	81
5	Respiratory disease	97
6	Renal disease	127
7	Hepatic disease	139
8	Endocrine and metabolic disease	155
9	Bone, joint, and connective tissue disorders	191
10	Haematological disorders	203
11	Neurological and muscular disorders	239
12	Psychiatric disorders and drugs	277
13	Uncommon conditions	295

## Anaesthesia for surgical specialties

14	Cardiac surgery	331
15	Thoracic surgery	365
16	Neurosurgery	403
17	Vascular surgery	441
18	Orthopaedic surgery	465
19	Plastic surgery	513
20	General surgery	535



21	Liver transplantation and resection	569
22	Endocrine surgery	579
23	Urological surgery	591
24	Gynaecological surgery	613
25	Ear, nose, and throat surgery	631
26	Maxillofacial and dental surgery	667
27	Ophthalmic surgery	679
28	Day surgery	701
29	Laser surgery	709
30	Anaesthesia for CT, MRI and Interventional Radiology	715
31	Anaesthesia for the elderly	727

### **Obstetric anaesthesia and analgesia**

32	Obstetric anaesthesia and analgesia	735
----	-------------------------------------	-----

### **Paediatric and neonatal anaesthesia**

33	Paediatric and neonatal anaesthesia	799
----	-------------------------------------	-----

### **Anaesthetic emergencies**

34	The critically ill patient	861
35	Anaesthetic emergencies	907

### **Practical anaesthesia**

36	Airway assessment and management	969
37	Practical anaesthesia	1005
38	Blood products and fluid therapy	1065

**Acute pain**

39	Acute pain	1089
40	Postoperative nausea and vomiting	1113

**Regional anaesthesia**

41	Regional anaesthesia	1119
----	----------------------	------

**Drug formulary and data**

42	Drug formulary	1193
43	Anaesthesia data	1259

Index 1281

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Contributors

**Barry Baker**

Emeritus Professor of Anaesthesia,  
Sydney, Australia

**Anna Batchelor**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Newcastle, UK

**Mark Bellamy**

Professor of Critical Care and  
Anaesthesia, Leeds, UK

**Simon Berg**

Consultant Paediatric Anaesthetist,  
Oxford, UK

**Colin Berry**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Hannah Blanshard**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Bristol, UK

**Andrew Bodenham**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Leeds, UK

**Bruce Campbell**

Professor of Vascular Surgery,  
Exeter, UK

**John Carlisle**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Torquay, UK

**Tim Cook**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Bath, UK

**Julius Cranshaw**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Bournemouth, UK

**Adrian Dashfield**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Plymouth, UK

**Rob Dawes**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Major, RAMC

**John Dean**

Consultant Cardiologist,  
Exeter, UK

**Pippa Dix**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**James Eldridge**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Portsmouth, UK

**Rhys Evans**

Clinical Reader in Anaesthesia,  
Oxford, UK

**Andrew Foo**

Specialist Trainee Anaesthesia,  
Exeter, UK

**Pete Ford**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Steven Gayer**

Professor of Anesthesiology and  
Ophthalmology, Miami, USA

**Charlie Gibson**

Specialist Trainee Anaesthesia,  
Exeter, UK

**Alex Grice**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Richard Griffiths**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Peterborough, UK

**Carl Gwinnutt**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Salford, UK

**Jane Halsall**

Associate Specialist, MH Unit,  
Leeds, UK

**Jeffrey Handel**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Bath, UK

**William Harrop – Griffiths**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
London, UK

**Paul Harvey**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Plymouth, UK

**Graham Hocking**

Associate Professor of  
Anaesthesia, Perth, Australia

**Ian Jackson**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
York, UK

**S. Jagdish**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Lt Col, RAMC

**Kath Jenkins**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Bristol, UK

**Darryl Johnston**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Ralph Leighton**

Specialist Trainee Anaesthesia,  
Peterborough, UK

**James Lloyd**

Specialist Trainee Anaesthesia,  
Perth, Australia

**Alexander Manara**

Consultant in Neuroanaesthesia,  
Bristol, UK

**Bruce McCormick**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Andrew McIndoe**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Bristol, UK

**Andrew McLeod**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
London, UK

**Simon Mercer**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Surg Lt Cmdr, Royal Navy

**Alan Merry**

Professor of Anaesthesiology,  
Auckland, New Zealand

**Quentin Milner**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Julia Munn**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Peter Murphy**

Consultant Paediatric Anaesthetist,  
Bristol, UK

**Paul Myles**

Professor of Anaesthesia,  
Melbourne, Australia

**Jerry Nolan**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Bath, UK

**Aidan O'Donnell**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Hamilton, New Zealand

**Jonathan Purday**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Fred Roberts**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Nicki Ross**

Specialist Trainee Anaesthesia,  
Leeds, UK

**Anne Rossiter**

Consultant Occupational  
Physician, Exeter, UK

**Matt Rucklidge**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**John Saddler**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Babinder Sandhar**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Samantha Shinde**

Consultant in Neuroanaesthesia,  
Bristol, UK

**Adam Shonfeld**

Specialist Trainee Anaesthesia,  
London, UK

**Mathew Size**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
London, UK

**Rob Sneyd**

Professor of Anaesthesia,  
Plymouth, UK

**Mark Stoneham**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Oxford, UK

**Andrew Teasdale**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Richard Telford**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Exeter, UK

**Rhys Thomas**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Lt Col, RAMC

**Anne Troy**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Chester, UK

**Isabeau Walker**

Consultant Paediatric Anaesthetist,  
London, UK

**Jon Warwick**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
Oxford, UK

**Tim Wigmore**

Consultant Anaesthetist,  
London, UK

**David Wilkinson**

Physician's Assistant (Anaesthesia),  
Exeter, UK

**Joanna Wilson**

Specialist Trainee Anaesthesia,  
Gillingham, UK

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Abbreviations

A&E	accident and emergency
AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm
AADR	anaesthetic adverse drug reactions
AAGBI	Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland
AAS	atlantoaxial subluxation
ABC	airway, breathing, circulation
ABG	arterial blood gas
ACE	angiotensin-converting enzyme
ACT	activated clotting time
ACTH	adrenocorticotrophic hormone
ADH	antidiuretic hormone
AF	atrial fibrillation
AFOI	awake fibre-optic intubation
AICD	automatic implantable cardioverter defibrillator
AIDS	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
ALS	advanced life support
ALT	alanine aminotransferase
ANH	acute normovolaemic haemodilution
AP	anteroposterior
APL	adjustable pressure limiting (valve)
APTR	activated partial thromboplastin ratio
APTT	activated partial thromboplastin time
AR	aortic regurgitation
ARDS	acute respiratory distress syndrome
ARF	acute renal failure
AS	aortic stenosis
ASA	American Society of Anesthesiologists
ASD	atrial septal defect
ASRA	American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine
AST	aspartate transaminase
ATLS	advanced trauma life support
ATP	adenosine triphosphate
AV	atrioventricular
AVM	arteriovenous malformation
AVSD	atrioventricular septal defect



BBV	blood-borne virus
bd	twice daily ( <i>bis diem</i> )
BiPAP	biphasic positive airway pressure
BLS	basic life support
BMI	body mass index
BNF	British National Formulary
BP	blood pressure
bpm	beats per minute
BSS	balanced salt solution
BURP	backward, upward, and rightwards pressure
C&S	culture and sensitivity
CABG	coronary arterial bypass graft
CBF	cerebral blood flow
CC	creatinine clearance
CCF	congestive cardiac failure
CCU	coronary care unit
Ch	Charrière (French) gauge (also FG or Fr)
CHD	congenital heart disease
CJD	Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease
CK	creatine kinase
CMV	cytomegalovirus
CNS	central nervous system
COAD	chronic obstructive airways disease
COETT	cuffed oral endotracheal tube
COHb	carboxyhaemoglobin
COPA	cuffed oropharyngeal airway
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
COX	cyclo-oxygenase
CPAP	continuous positive airway pressure
CPB	cardiopulmonary bypass
CPDA	citrate phosphate dextrose adenine
CPK	creatine phosphokinase
CPP	cerebral perfusion pressure
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CPX	cardiopulmonary exercise testing
CRF	chronic renal failure
CRP	C-reactive protein
CSE	combined spinal/epidural
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid
CT	computed tomography

CVA	cerebrovascular accident
CVE	cerebrovascular episode/event
CVP	central venous pressure
CVS	cardiovascular system
CXR	chest X-ray
DCR	dacrocystorhinostomy
DDAVP	desmopressin
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
DLT	double lumen (endobronchial) tube
DMARD	disease-modifying antirheumatoid drug
DVT	deep vein thrombosis
ECF	extracellular fluid
ECG	electrocardiogram
ECM	external cardiac massage
ECT	electroconvulsive therapy
EDD	estimated date of delivery
EEG	electroencephalogram
EF	ejection fraction
EMD	electromechanical dissociation
EMG	electromyogram
EMLA	eutectic mixture of local anaesthetics
ENT	ear, nose, and throat
EPO	erythropoietin
ERCP	endoscopic retrograde cholangio-pancreatography
ERPC	evacuation of retained products of conception
ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate
ETCO <sub>2</sub>	end tidal carbon dioxide
ET(T)	endotracheal (tube)
EUA	examination under anaesthetic
FB	foreign body
FBC	full blood count
FES	fat embolism syndrome
FEV <sub>1</sub>	forced expiration in 1s
FFP	fresh frozen plasma
FG	French gauge (also Fr and Ch)
FGF	fresh gas flow
FiO <sub>2</sub>	fractional inspired oxygen content
FM	face mask
Fr	French gauge (also FG and Ch)
FRC	functional residual capacity

FTSG	full thickness skin graft
FVC	forced vital capacity
G	Gauge (standard wire gauge)
G&S	group and save
G-6-PD	glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase
GA	general anaesthetic
GCS	Glasgow Coma Scale
GEB	gum elastic bougie
GFR	glomerular filtration rate
GI(T)	gastrointestinal (tract)
GTN	glyceryl trinitrate
HAS	human albumin solution
HbC/HbD/ HbF/HbS	haemoglobin C/D/F/S
HBV/HCV	hepatitis B/C virus
Hct	haematocrit
HDU	high-dependency unit
HELLP	haemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, low platelets
HES	hydroxyethyl starch
HFO	high-frequency oscillation
HIB	<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> B
HIT	heparin-induced thrombocytopenia
HME	heat and moisture exchanger
HOCM	hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy
HR	heart rate
HRS(UK)	Heart Rhythm Society (UK)
HRT	hormone replacement therapy
I:E ratio	inspired:expired ratio
IABP	intra-aortic balloon pump
ICP	intracranial pressure
ICU	intensive care unit
ID	internal diameter
IDDM	insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
IDT	intradermal testing
IHD	ischaemic heart disease
ILMA	intubating laryngeal mask airway
IM	intramuscular
INR	international normalised ratio
IO	intra-osseous
IOP	intra-ocular pressure

IP	in-plane
IPPV	intermittent positive pressure ventilation
ITP	idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura
ITU	intensive therapy unit
IV	intravenous(ly)
IVC	inferior vena cava
IVCT	<i>in vitro</i> muscle contracture test
IVH	intraventricular haemorrhage
IVI	intravenous infusion
IVRA	intravenous regional anaesthesia
JVP	jugular venous pressure
LA	local anaesthetic
LCNT	lateral cutaneous nerve of thigh
LFT	liver function test
LMA	laryngeal mask airway
LMWH	low-molecular-weight heparin
LP	lumbar puncture
LSCS	lower segment Caesarean section
LSD	lysergic acid diethylamide
LV	left ventricle/ventricular
LVEDP	left ventricular end diastolic pressure
LVF	left ventricular failure
LVH	left ventricular hypertrophy
MAC	minimum alveolar concentration
MAO	monoamine oxidase
MAOB	monoamine oxidase B
MAOI	monoamine oxidase inhibitor
MAP	mean arterial pressure
MCV	mean corpuscular volume
MEAC	minimum effective analgesic concentration
MEN	multiple endocrine neoplasia
MET	metabolic equivalents of task
MH	malignant hyperthermia
MI	myocardial infarction
MIBG	<i>meta</i> -iodobenzylguanidine
MR	mitral regurgitation
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
MRSA	meticilin-resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
MST	morphine sulphate
MUA	manipulation under anaesthesia

MUGA	multigated acquisition scan
MW	molecular weight
NCA	nurse-controlled analgesia
NCEPOD	National Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death
NG	nasogastric
NIBP	non-invasive blood pressure
NICE	National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
NIDDM	non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
NIPPV	non-invasive positive pressure ventilation
NMB	neuromuscular blockade
NMBD	neuromuscular blocking drugs
NMDA	N-methyl-D-aspartate
nocte	at night
NOF	fractured neck of femur
NR	not recommended
NSAID	non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug
OCP	oral contraceptive pill
od	once daily
OELM	optimal external laryngeal manipulation
OLV	one-lung ventilation
OOP	out-of-plane
ORIF	open reduction internal fixation
OSA	obstructive sleep apnoea
$P_{\bar{v}}O_2$	mixed venous partial pressure of oxygen
PA	pulmonary artery/arterial
$PaCO_2$	arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide
PAFC	pulmonary artery flotation catheter
$PaO_2$	arterial partial pressure of oxygen
$PAO_2$	alveolar partial pressure of oxygen
PAOP	pulmonary artery occlusion pressure
PAP	pulmonary artery pressure
$P_{aw}$	airway pressure
PAWP	pulmonary artery wedge pressure
PCA	patient-controlled analgesia
PCEA	patient-controlled epidural analgesia
PCI	percutaneous coronary intervention
PCWP	pulmonary capillary wedge pressure
PDA	patent ductus arteriosus
PE	pulmonary embolism

PEA	pulseless electrical activity
PEEP	positive end expiratory pressure
PEFR	peak expiratory flow rate
PEP	post-exposure prophylaxis
PICU	paediatric intensive care unit
PND	paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea
PO	<i>per os</i> (oral)
PONV	postoperative nausea and vomiting
POP	plaster of Paris
PR	per rectum
prn/PRN	as required ( <i>pro re nata</i> )
PS	pulmonary stenosis
PT	prothrombin time
PTH	parathyroid hormone
PVC	polyvinyl chloride
PVR	pulmonary vascular resistance
qds	four times daily ( <i>quater die sumendus</i> )
RA	rheumatoid arthritis
RAE	Ring, Adair, and Elwyn (tube)
RAST	radioallergosorbent test
rEPO	recombinant erythropoietin
RIMA	reversible inhibitor of monoamine oxidase A
ROSC	restoration of a spontaneous circulation
RS	respiratory system
RSI	rapid sequence induction
RTA	road traffic accident
RV	right ventricle/ventricular
rVIIa	recombinant factor VIIa
$S_{\bar{v}}O_2$	mixed venous oxygen saturation
SA	sinoatrial
SAH	subarachnoid haemorrhage
$SaO_2$	arterial oxygen saturation
SBE	subacute bacterial endocarditis
SC	subcutaneous
SCBU	special care baby unit
$ScvO_2$	central venous oxygen saturation
SEA	spinal epidural abscess
SHOT	Serious Hazards of Transfusion
SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
SIRS	systemic inflammatory response syndrome

SjO <sub>2</sub>	jugular venous oxygen saturation
SL	sublingual
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
SLT	single lumen tube
SMR	submucous resection
SNP	sodium nitroprusside
SpO <sub>2</sub>	peripheral oxygen saturation
SPT	skin prick test
SSG	split skin graft
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
STEMI	ST elevation myocardial infarction
(S)TOP	(suction) termination of pregnancy
SV	spontaneous ventilation
SVC	superior vena cava
SVR	systemic vascular resistance
SVT	supraventricular tachycardia
TB	tuberculosis
TBSA	total body surface area
TBW	total body water
TCA	tricyclic antidepressant
TCI	target-controlled infusion
tds	three times daily ( <i>ter die sumendus</i> )
TEDS	thromboembolism stockings
TEG	thrombelastograph
TENS	transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation
TFT	thyroid function tests
THR	total hip replacement
TIA	transient ischaemic attack
TIPS	transjugular intrahepatic portal-systemic shunt procedure
TIVA	total intravenous anaesthesia
TKR	total knee replacement
TMJ	temporomandibular joint
TNF	tumour necrosis factor
TNS	transient neurological symptom
TOE	transoesophageal echocardiography
TOF	train of four
TPN	total parenteral nutrition
TRALI	transfusion-related acute lung injury
TRAM	transverse rectus abdominis muscle
TTI	transfusion-transmitted infection

TTP	thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura
TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
TUVP	transurethral vaporisation of the prostate
U&E	urea and electrolytes
UPPP	uvulopalatopharyngoplasty
URTI	upper respiratory tract infection
V/Q	ventilation/perfusion
VAE	venous air embolism
VATS	video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery
VF	ventricular fibrillation
VIP	vasoactive intestinal peptide
VP	venous pressure
VR	ventricular rate
VSD	ventricular septal defect
VT	ventricular tachycardia
$V_t$ or $V_T$	tidal volume
vWF	Von Willebrand factor
WBC	white blood cell count
WPW	Wolff–Parkinson–White
X-match	crossmatch



*This page intentionally left blank*

# General considerations

## Alan Merry

Good practice 2

## Isabeau Walker and Iain Wilson

Safer anaesthesia and surgery 4

Using the WHO Checklist 6

## John Carlisle

Preoperative tests 8

## Babinder Sandhar

Fasting 10

## Bruce Campbell

Prophylaxis of venous thromboembolism 12

## Good practice

### Making anaesthesia safe

- Pay attention to detail.
- Prepare properly and don't rush.
- Read the notes.
- Correct patient, correct surgery?
- Assess patient personally—check airway and allergies.
- Check drugs and apparatus.
- Always have a Plan B.
- Never leave an anaesthetised patient unattended.
- When ventilating, check the chest is moving.
- Hypotension needs an explanation.
- If in trouble, ask for help.
- Failed intubation—ventilate and oxygenate.
- Difficult ventilation—equipment or patient?
- If in doubt, take it out.
- Never assume.
- Don't panic—remember ABC.
- The anaesthetist, surgeon, and staff are on the same team.
- Know your limits.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Safer anaesthesia and surgery

- Globally it is estimated that 234 million surgical procedures are performed each year. Of these, 7 million patients suffer harm and 1 million die. Up to 50% of this harm may be preventable.<sup>1</sup>
- Around 8 million surgical procedures are carried out in England each year and an estimated 20 000 people die within 30d of surgery.<sup>2</sup>
- Major complications are estimated to occur in 3–17% of in-patient surgical procedures.<sup>3</sup>

### Why do complications occur?

- Some adverse outcomes are unavoidable, such as those resulting from complex surgery performed in high-risk patients, but many arise from preventable errors. Common underlying factors include deficiencies in communication, leadership, team-working, decision-making and situational awareness. These 'human factors' are increasingly recognised as being important contributing factors to error in the theatre environment.
- During the journey from referral to surgery and discharge, multiple healthcare professionals interface with a patient. If one step in care is omitted (such as comprehensive assessment, administration of prophylactic antibiotics or administration of DVT prophylaxis) serious consequences may follow.

### How can we improve safety?

- The WHO Second Global Patient Safety Challenge addressed surgical and anaesthesia safety and looked at the evidence base behind surgical complications. The result was a comprehensive clinical review and a 19-point WHO Surgical Safety Checklist intended to focus on key parts of the surgical journey.<sup>4</sup>
- The Checklist was trialled in eight major centres in four high- and four middle- and low-income countries and resulted in a reduction in surgical complications and mortality.<sup>3</sup>
- The Checklist provides a framework to ensure that crucial steps are not omitted in operating room care. It is not intended as a tick box exercise, but should change practice in theatre to one of better team communication and a culture of safety.
- The WHO indicates that hospitals should modify the Checklist to reflect local practice; eye surgery is different to cardiac surgery. This should be done carefully to avoid making the Checklist more complex or too simple.

### A safety culture

- A culture of safety can only be achieved when different individuals in a team are able to support each other. Communication is key. This may be difficult when teams change continually, and it is also well recognised that steep hierarchies between professions may impede effective communication. In poorly functioning teams, members of

staff may not feel able to raise concerns, even when patient safety is compromised.

- Many surgeons and anaesthetists have created their own individual safety routines over years of practice, but often there is no consistent team approach. Changing a familiar safety routine is difficult for clinicians as this challenges a system that they perceive to be working well. However, this diversity of practice between different clinicians and teams represents an inconsistency in the workplace, so that no familiar standard approach to safe care is developed that is applicable to all.
- The WHO Surgical Safety Checklist offers the opportunity for a consistent approach to theatre checks across national healthcare systems.

### Briefings and debriefings

- Team briefings before the start and end of an operating list improve communication, team working, theatre efficiency and patient safety. A discussion of the theatre list at the start of the day ensures that each team member knows about the planned operating schedule, that the appropriate equipment is available, specific anxieties about individual patients are highlighted and any last minute changes are described. A debriefing discussion at the end of the list allows the team to recognise good practice that should become routine, but also to identify factors that need to be improved in future.
- When briefing and debriefing are combined with the WHO Surgical Safety Checklist, a strong safety culture is created to the benefit of patients and clinicians.

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| • Briefing   | • Introduction of team members and roles                |
|              | • Patients and procedures planned                       |
|              | • Confirmation of order of list                         |
|              | • Specific equipment (anaesthesia and surgery) required |
|              | • Any concerns relevant to the day                      |
| • Debriefing | • Thanks to team members for specific actions           |
|              | • Factors that went well that were useful lessons       |
|              | • Factors that could be improved for next time          |

- 1 Weiser TG, Regenbogen SE, Thompson, KD, et al. (2008). An estimation of the global volume of surgery: a modelling strategy based on available data. *Lancet*, **372**, 139–144.
- 2 CMO Annual Report (2009). While you were sleeping. Making surgery safer. In: *On the State of Public Health: Annual Report of the Chief Medical Officer 2009*. Chapter 4, pp26–33. [http://www.dh.gov.uk/prod\\_consum\\_dh/groups/dh\\_digitalassets/@dh/@en/documents/digitalasset/dh\\_086180.pdf](http://www.dh.gov.uk/prod_consum_dh/groups/dh_digitalassets/@dh/@en/documents/digitalasset/dh_086180.pdf).
- 3 Haynes AB, Thomas WG, Berry WR et al. (2009). A surgical safety checklist to reduce morbidity and mortality in a global population (2009). *New England Journal of Medicine*, **360**, 491–499.
- 4 WHO Guidelines for Safe Surgery (2009). *Safe Surgery Saves Lives*. [http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2009/9789241598552\\_eng.pdf](http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2009/9789241598552_eng.pdf).

## Using the WHO Checklist

- The WHO Safer Surgery Checklist (figure 1.1) is composed of the Sign In, Time Out, and the Sign Out.

### Sign In

- The patient identity, planned procedure and surgical site marking are confirmed against the operating list, the consent form and the patient. The patient should be actively involved in this process.
- The anaesthesia facilities (machine and drugs) are confirmed as checked and any added precautions (allergy, airway, anticipated blood loss) identified.
- Suitable monitoring is essential during anaesthesia and should be confirmed as available and functional. In the UK the AAGBI standards of monitoring should be available; in low-income settings a pulse oximeter should be the minimum acceptable. Most patients are monitored continuously from the start of anaesthesia, but this may be impractical in some patients such as children or uncooperative adults.

### Time Out

- Everyone in theatre should be known by name and role to facilitate team-working and communication. Introductions should be made where necessary.
- A final confirmation of the patient's identity and planned procedure is undertaken at this point, with reference to imaging where relevant.
- Antibiotics should be administered/confirmed, where indicated.
- Any specific concerns relating to the planned procedure should be reviewed by the surgeon, anaesthetist and nursing staff.
- Many hospitals have added a step to confirm that thrombo-embolic precautions have been undertaken.

### Sign Out

- Swabs and instrument counts are confirmed.
- Specimens are confirmed as correctly labelled (beware of incorrect sticky labels).
- A brief discussion of any specific requirements for postoperative care for the patient should take place at this point.
- The Checklist is a mandatory requirement in several countries. Successful introduction requires a change in theatre culture and it may be best to trial the checklist in one theatre first, modify as required by local practice, and then roll out to all other theatres. Leadership from senior clinicians and nurses is important.

### Further reading

[http://www.who.int/patientsafety/information\\_centre/documents/en/index.html](http://www.who.int/patientsafety/information_centre/documents/en/index.html).

# Surgical Safety Checklist



**Patient Safety**  
A World Alliance for Safer Health Care

## Before induction of anaesthesia

(with at least nurse and anaesthetist:)

**Has the patient confirmed his/her identity, site, procedure, and consent?**

☐ Yes

**Is the site marked?**

☐ Yes

☐ Not applicable

**Is the anaesthesia machine and medication check complete?**

☐ Yes

**Is the pulse oximeter on the patient and functioning?**

☐ Yes

**Does the patient have a:**

**Known allergy?**

☐ No

☐ Yes

**Difficult airway or aspiration risk?**

☐ No

☐ Yes, and equipment/assistance available

**Risk of >50ml blood loss (7ml/kg in children)?**

☐ No

☐ Yes, and two IVs/central access and fluids planned

## Before skin incision

(with nurse, anaesthetist and surgeon)

☐ Confirm all team members have introduced themselves by name and role.

☐ Confirm the patient's name, procedure, and where the incision will be made.

**Has antibiotic prophylaxis been given within the last 60 minutes?**

☐ Yes

☐ Not applicable

**Anticipated Critical Events**

**To Surgeon:**

☐ What are the critical or non-routine steps?

☐ How long will the case take?

☐ What is the anticipated blood loss?

**To Anaesthetist:**

☐ Are there any patient-specific concerns?

**To Nursing Team:**

☐ Has sterility (including indicator results) been confirmed?

☐ Are there equipment issues or any concerns?

**Is essential imaging displayed?**

☐ Yes

☐ Not applicable

## Before patient leaves operating room

(with nurse, anaesthetist and surgeon)

**Nurse Verbally Confirms:**

☐ The name of the procedure

☐ Completion of instrument, sponge and needle counts

☐ Specimen labelling (read specimen labels aloud, including patient name)

☐ Whether there are any equipment problems to be addressed

**To Surgeon, Anaesthetist and Nurse:**

☐ What are the key concerns for recovery and management of this patient?

This checklist is not intended to be comprehensive. Additions and modification to fit local practice are encouraged.

Revised 1/2009

© WHO, 2009



## Preoperative tests

Local protocols for 'routine' preoperative testing should follow NICE guidance. A test should be done only if the results improve patient information, treatment and outcomes. Tests should be preceded by a valid consenting process, preferably detailing the chances that a test causes benefit or harm and the positive and negative predictive power for each outcome.<sup>1</sup>

- Start with tests based on surgical grade and age.
- Add tests not yet done as indicated by disease severity.
- Local protocols determine whether to undertake a shaded 'NO' (no consensus from NICE). Note there is increasing evidence that routine tests do not benefit patients whose risk of postoperative death or morbidity is low.
- Offer pregnancy tests to all women who say they may be pregnant.
- Sick cell test: African or Afro-Caribbean; Middle Eastern; Asian; East Mediterranean.
- Consider CXR if worsening lung, heart, or renal disease, or postoperative Level 2 or 3 care expected.
- Local protocols should indicate the need for tests not considered by NICE, for instance dynamic CVS testing (see p1053).

Surgical grades	Examples
Grade 1 (minor)	Excision skin lesion; drainage breast abscess
Grade 2 (intermediate)	Inguinal hernia; varicose vein(s); tonsillectomy; arthroscopy
Grade 3 (major)	Hysterectomy; TURP; lumbar discectomy; thyroidectomy
Grade 4 (major+)	Joint replacement; thoracic operations; colonic resection; radical neck dissection

For **ASA grading** see p1260.

<sup>1</sup> <http://www.nice.org.uk/>.

## Preoperative tests by surgical grade and age

Surgery grade	Age (yr)	CXR	ECG	FBC	INR/APTT	U&Es creat	Random glucose	Urine	Total
One	<16	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	0
One	16–60	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	0
One	61–80	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	0
One	>80	NO	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	1
Two	<16	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	0
Two	16–60	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	0
Two	61–80	NO	NO	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	1
Two	>80	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	2
Three	<16	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	0
Three	16–60	NO	NO	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	1
Three	61–80	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	NO	NO	3
Three	>80	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	NO	NO	3
Four	<16	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	0
Four	16–60	NO	NO	YES	NO	YES	NO	NO	2
Four	61–80	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	NO	NO	3
Four	>80	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	NO	NO	3

## Preoperative tests by disease status

Disease	ASA	CXR	ECG	FBC	INR/APTT	U&Es creat	Blood gases	Lung function	Total
CVS	2	NO	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	1
CVS	3	NO	YES	NO	NO	YES	NO	NO	2
Lung	2	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	0
Lung	3	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	0
Renal	2	NO	NO	NO	NO	YES	NO	NO	1
Renal	3	NO	YES	YES	NO	YES	NO	NO	3

## Fasting

### Background

Pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents, even 30–40ml, is associated with significant morbidity and mortality. Factors predisposing to regurgitation and pulmonary aspiration include inadequate anaesthesia, pregnancy, obesity, difficult airway, emergency surgery, full stomach, and altered gastrointestinal motility.

Fasting before anaesthesia aims to reduce the volume of gastric contents and hence the risk should aspiration occur.

### Gastric physiology

- Clear fluids (water, fruit juices without pulp, clear tea, and black coffee) are emptied from the stomach in an exponential manner with a half-life of 10–20min. This results in complete clearance within 2hr of ingestion.
- Gastric emptying of solids is much slower than for fluids and is more variable. Foods with a high fat or meat content require 8hr or longer to be emptied from the stomach, whereas a light meal such as toast is usually cleared in 4hr. Milk is considered a solid because when mixed with gastric juice, it thickens and congeals. Cows' milk takes up to 5hr to empty from the stomach. Human breast milk has a lower fat and protein content and is emptied at a faster rate.

### Fasting guidelines

Recommendations on preoperative fasting in elective, healthy patients were issued by the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) in 1999, followed by similar guidance from the Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (AAGBI).

Ingested material	Minimum fast
Clear liquids	2hr
Breast milk	4hr
Light meal, infant formula, and other milk	6hr

### Delayed gastric emptying

- Delayed gastric emptying due to metabolic causes (e.g. poorly controlled diabetes mellitus, renal failure, sepsis), decreased gastric motility (e.g. head injury), or pyloric obstruction (e.g. pyloric stenosis) will primarily affect emptying of solids, particularly high-cellulose foods such as vegetables. Gastric emptying of clear fluids is affected only in the advanced stages.
- Gastro-oesophageal reflux may be associated with delayed gastric emptying of solids, but emptying of liquids is not affected.
- Raised intra-abdominal pressure (e.g. pregnancy, obesity) predisposes to passive regurgitation.
- Opioids cause marked delays in gastric emptying.

- Trauma delays gastric emptying. The time interval between the last oral intake and the injury is considered as the fasting period and a rapid sequence induction should be used if this interval is short. The time taken to return to normal gastric emptying after trauma has not been established and varies depending upon the degree of trauma and the level of pain. The best indicators are probably signs of normal gastric motility such as normal bowel sounds and patient hunger.
- Anxiety has not been shown to have any consistent effect on gastric emptying.
- Oral premedication given 1hr before surgery is without adverse effect on gastric volume on induction of anaesthesia. Studies on premedication with oral midazolam 30min preoperatively have not reported any link with gastric regurgitation or aspiration.

### Chemical control of gastric acidity and volume

- Antacids can be used to neutralise acid in the stomach, thereby reducing the risk of damage should aspiration occur. Particulate antacids are not recommended. Sodium citrate solution administered shortly before induction is the agent of choice in high-risk cases (e.g. pregnancy).
- H<sub>2</sub> blockers/proton pump inhibitors decrease secretion of acid in the stomach and should be used for high-risk patients. Ideally, these agents should be administered on the evening before surgery (or early morning for an afternoon list) and a second dose given 2hr preoperatively.
- Gastric motility enhancing agents such as metoclopramide increase gastric emptying in healthy patients, but a clear benefit in trauma patients has not been demonstrated. Metoclopramide is more effective IV than PO.
- Anticholinergic agents do not have a significant effect and are not routinely recommended.
- Pregnant patients should be given ranitidine 150mg on the evening before elective surgery (or at 0700hr for an afternoon list) and again 2hr preoperatively. During labour, high-risk patients should be given oral ranitidine, 150mg 6-hourly. For emergency cases, ranitidine 50mg IV should be given at the earliest opportunity. In addition, 30ml of 0.3M sodium citrate should be given to neutralise any residual gastric acid.
- The ASA does not recommend routine use of these agents in healthy, elective patients.

### Further reading

- American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Preoperative Fasting (1999). Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacological agents for the prevention of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures. *Anesthesiology*, **90**, 896–905.
- Brady M, Kinn S, Stuart P (2003). Preoperative fasting for adults to prevent perioperative complications. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, CD004423.
- Brady M, Kinn S, Ness V, O'Rourke K, Randhawa N, Stuart P (2009). Preoperative fasting for perioperative complications in children. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, CD005285.

## Prophylaxis of venous thromboembolism

Pulmonary embolism (PE) is responsible for 10% of all hospital deaths. Without prophylaxis, 40–80% of high-risk patients develop detectable DVT and up to 10% die from PE. Most PEs result from DVTs which start in the venous plexuses of the legs and which then extend proximally. Calf vein DVT is detectable in up to 10% of low-risk patients but seldom extends into proximal veins. DVT and PE are referred to as venous thromboembolism (VTE).

Increased risk of VTE perioperatively is due to:

- Hypercoagulability caused by surgery, cancer, or hormone therapy
- Stasis of blood in the venous plexuses of the legs during surgery and postoperatively
- Interference with venous return (pregnancy, pelvic surgery, pneumoperitoneum)
- Dehydration
- Poor cardiac output

Any patient confined to bed is at risk of venous thromboembolism. Sick, elderly patients may need prophylaxis from the time of admission.

### Assessing the risk of VTE

Risk of VTE is influenced by the type of operation, patient factors, and associated diseases.

- Type and duration of operation
  - Particularly high-risk procedures include major joint replacements (hip and knee) and surgery to the abdomen and pelvis
  - Operations lasting <30min are considered minor (low risk) and operations with total surgery and anaesthesia time >90min are high risk (or >60min for operations on the pelvis or lower limbs)
- Patient factors
  - Previous history of DVT or PE, thrombophilia (or family history)
  - Pregnancy, puerperium, oestrogen therapy (contraceptive pill, HRT)
  - Age >60yr (risk increases with age)
  - Obesity and immobility
  - Varicose veins (in abdominal and pelvic surgery; or with phlebitis)
- Associated diseases
  - Malignancy (especially metastatic or in abdomen/pelvis)
  - Trauma (especially spinal cord injury and lower limb fractures)
  - Heart failure, recent myocardial infarction
  - Systemic infection
  - Lower limb paralysis (e.g. after stroke)
  - Haematological diseases (polycythaemia, leukaemia, paraproteinaemia)
  - Other diseases, including nephrotic syndrome and inflammatory bowel disease.

Patients can be divided into risk categories in a variety of ways. Stratification into low, medium, or high risk is useful. For example, a slim, fit patient <60yr having minor surgery is low risk; whereas a fit patient

<60yr having major abdominal surgery is moderate risk; and a patient >60yr having pelvic surgery for cancer is high risk for VTE.

Patients' risk of bleeding should also be assessed when deciding what methods of VTE prophylaxis to use. Their risks of VTE and of bleeding should be reassessed during any prolonged hospital stay.

### Methods of prophylaxis

Every hospital should have a policy detailing local practice. General measures which seem logical include:

- Avoidance of prolonged immobility (encourage early mobilisation)
- Avoidance of dehydration.

### Subcutaneous (SC) heparin

SC heparin reduces the incidence of DVT and fatal PE by about two-thirds. Unfractionated (ordinary) heparin has been largely replaced by the newer low-molecular-weight heparins (LMWHs), which may be more effective and cause fewer bleeding complications. They have the added advantage of less frequent administration but are more expensive.

#### LMWHs

- Start on admission or evening before surgery.
- Daily doses are certoparin 3000U, dalteparin 2500U, enoxaparin 2000U, reviparin 1432U, tinzaparin 3500U.
- Risk of epidural haematoma can be minimised by giving LMWH on the evening before surgery, so that 12hr or more have elapsed before central neuraxial blockade (LMWH plasma half-life is 4hr) or starting prophylaxis postoperatively (see also p1174).

#### Low-dose unfractionated heparin

- Start 2hr before operation or on admission if unfit or immobile.
- Dose is 5000U 12-hourly (8-hourly administration may give greater protection and should be used for very high-risk patients).

### Fondaparinux sodium

Fondaparinux is a synthetic anticoagulant which is given subcutaneously once daily. It has been used increasingly in recent years, especially for patients having major orthopaedic surgery. It should be started after the operation because of the risk of bleeding perioperatively.

### Rivaroxaban and dabigatran

These new oral anticoagulants are used in hip and knee surgery.

### Graduated compression stockings (antiembolism stockings)

- These reduce the risk of DVT but are not proven to reduce PE.
- They may give enhanced protection when used in combination with pharmacological prophylaxis.
- Below-the-knee stockings are probably as effective as above-the-knee stockings, but this is controversial.
- Stockings are advisable for all patients having laparoscopic procedures.
- Fit with care and monitor for pressure damage: stockings should be avoided in patients with severe arterial disease of the legs (check ankle

systolic pressure if in doubt) and used with special care in diabetics, who may have neuropathy and arterial disease.

### **Intermittent pneumatic compression devices**

- These devices compress the leg (35–40mmHg) for about 10s every minute, promoting venous flow.
- They are as effective as heparin in reducing the incidence of DVT.
- They are used particularly in orthopaedic practice to avoid the bleeding risks of heparin, or in combination with heparin.
- Foot pumps are similar and promote blood flow by compressing the venous plexuses of the feet.

### **Warfarin, dextran, and aspirin**

- Warfarin is used most often in orthopaedic practice, where there is good evidence of its efficacy in relation to hip operations. It may be given either as a fixed low dose (2mg/day) or as a monitored dose (target INR 2.0–3.0).
- Dextran (Dextran 70/40) is as effective as SC heparin in preventing DVT and PE but is not often used because it requires IV infusion. Fluid overload is a risk and anaphylaxis can occasionally occur.
- Aspirin and other antiplatelet agents should not be regarded as adequate prophylaxis against VTE. They may increase the risk of bleeding and are sometimes stopped for a week before surgery (particularly clopidogrel).

### **Choice of anaesthetic**

- Local anaesthesia eliminates lower limb immobility associated with general anaesthesia.
- Regional anaesthesia (spinal/epidural) appears to be protective in certain kinds of surgery, especially hip/knee replacement.

### **Oral contraceptive pills (OCPs) and venous thromboembolism**

- The risk of spontaneous venous thrombosis is increased in women taking combined OCPs, particularly third-generation pills containing desogestrel or gestodene.
- OCPs may increase the risk of perioperative thromboembolism by up to 3–4 times, but the evidence is not compelling.
- The risk may decrease the longer an individual takes a combined OCP.
- Progestogen-only OCPs (and injectable progestogens) do not increase the risk of DVT or PE.

There is no universal consensus on what advice to give. Some guidance recommends considering stopping oestrogen-containing OCPs 4wk before elective surgery. Specialist groups advise that the OCP should not routinely be stopped, because of insufficient evidence and the danger of unwanted pregnancy.

A reasonable policy is as follows:

- There is no need to stop progestogen-only contraceptives for any operation.
- There is no need to stop combined OCPs for minor operations.
- For patients on combined OCPs facing major elective surgery, the decision should be made on an individual basis, balancing the risk of

thromboembolism (consider other risk factors such as obesity), the possibility of unwanted pregnancy, and the preferences of the patient.

- Patients having intermediate or major surgery when taking the combined OCP should receive SC LMWH and wear antiembolism stockings.
- There is no possibility of stopping OCPs for emergency surgery.
- Always record decisions about contraceptives in the case notes, including a record about discussion with the patient.
- If the OCP is stopped, advice must be given about alternative contraceptive measures. In selected cases, consider a change to depot progestogen injections.
- Consider a pregnancy test before operation if there is a possibility of unprotected intercourse having taken place.

### Hormone replacement therapy (HRT) and VTE

- HRT increases the incidence of spontaneous VTE, but there are no good data on perioperative risk.
- Stopping HRT may cause recurrence of troublesome menopausal symptoms.
- NICE guidance suggests considering stopping HRT 4wk before major surgery, but it is common practice to continue HRT and to use prophylaxis (pharmacological and stockings).

### Further reading

Department of Health (2008). *Risk Assessment for Venous Thromboembolism (VTE)*. <http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/publichealth/healthprotection/bloodsafety/venousthromboembolismvte/index.htm>.

NICE Clinical Guideline (2009). *Venous Thromboembolism: Reducing the Risk of Venous Thromboembolism (Deep Vein Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolism) in Patients Admitted to Hospital*. [www.nice.org.uk](http://www.nice.org.uk).

Roderick P, Ferris G, Wilson K et al. (2005). Towards evidence-based guidelines for the prevention of venous thromboembolism: systematic reviews of mechanical methods, oral anticoagulation, dextran and regional anaesthesia as thromboprophylaxis. *Health Technology Assessment*, 9(49). <http://www.hta.ac.uk/pdf/excs/summ949.pdf>.



*This page intentionally left blank*

# Consent and anaesthetic risk

## Kath Jenkins and Barry Baker

Consent 18

Anaesthetic risk 20

Perioperative mortality 27

Perioperative morbidity 28

## Paul Myles

Practising evidence-based anaesthesia 36

How to interpret a meta-analysis 38

Evidence-based interventions in anaesthesia 42

## John Carlisle

NICE and the Cochrane Collaboration 44

## Consent

- 'It is a legal and ethical principle that valid consent must be obtained before starting treatment, physical investigation, or providing personal care for a patient.'<sup>1</sup> Health professionals who carry out procedures without valid consent are liable to legal action by the patient and investigation by the General Medical Council or equivalent professional bodies.
- Valid consent implies it is given voluntarily by a competent and informed person not under duress. To have capacity for consent, the patient must be able to comprehend and remember the information provided, weigh up the risks and benefits of the proposed procedure, and consider the consequences of not having the procedure in order to make a balanced decision. Consent may be expressed, either written or verbal, or implied, e.g. holding out one's arm for a blood test.
- Adults are presumed to have capacity to consent unless there is contrary evidence.<sup>2</sup> Doctors must respect patient autonomy and their right to be involved in decisions that affect them. 'If an adult with capacity makes a voluntary and appropriately informed decision to refuse treatment this decision must be respected. This is the case even when this may result in death of the patient and/or the death of an unborn child, whatever the stage of the pregnancy.'<sup>1</sup>
- Advance decisions: advance refusal of treatment, which may include refusal of life-sustaining treatment, written by a competent individual in case of future incapacity is legally binding in many jurisdictions. Lasting powers of attorney may be appointed by a person with capacity to act on their behalf in health decisions should they lose capacity in the future (England & Wales).<sup>2</sup>
- A new independent mental capacity advocacy service (IMCAS) can provide advice for patients without friends or family in England and Wales.<sup>2</sup>
- Young adults: competent young adults over the age of 16yr can give consent for any treatment without obtaining separate consent from a parent or guardian.
- Children: those under 16yr who demonstrate the ability to fully appreciate the risks and benefits of the intervention planned can be considered competent to give consent.<sup>3</sup>
- Refusal of treatment: children and young adults who refuse treatment may have their decision overridden by a parent or the court, but the treatment should proceed only if in the child's 'best interests'. When a child lacks capacity for consent, parental consent should be sought. If such a child refuses treatment, judgement needs to be exercised by the parent and the doctor as to the level of restraint that is acceptable, depending on the urgency of the case. Consider postponing the case until adequate premedication can be given.
- In an emergency, verbal consent by telephone is adequate, and essential treatment can be started in the absence of parental authorisation if necessary. Where the child or parent refuses essential treatment, a ward of court order can be obtained, but this should not delay the emergency management. This enables the doctor to proceed with the treatment lawfully.

- Treatment without consent: in an emergency, consent is not necessary for life-saving procedures. Unconscious patients may be given essential treatment without consent. It is good practice to consult with the next of kin, but they cannot give or refuse consent for adult patients. Patients who are 'incompetent' may be given treatment provided it is in their 'best interests'.
- Restricted consent: patients may consent to treatment in general but refuse certain aspects of this treatment, e.g. Jehovah's Witness patients who refuse blood transfusion (see p1076). This must be discussed in full with the patient so that they are fully aware of the implications of withholding the treatment. The details of the restriction should be carefully documented on the consent form.<sup>4</sup>
- Research and teaching: the same legal principles apply when seeking consent from patients for research or teaching. All clinical research requires ethics committee approval. As research may not have direct benefits for the patients involved, they must receive the fullest possible information about the proposed study, not be pressurised into taking part, and advised they can withdraw at any time without their care being affected. Incompetent patients can be included only in therapeutic research that is considered to be in their best interests or where the therapeutic benefits are genuinely unknown but there are reasons to believe that there may be advantages from the therapy. Competent children may give consent for clinical research associated with minimal risk. Students should obtain a patient's consent to undertake clinical procedures.
- Documentation: after discussion with the patient in an appropriate environment, the agreed anaesthetic and postoperative plan should be documented in the patient's medical records, including a list of risks explained.<sup>5</sup> Written consent is obtained as part of the overall surgical consent form; separate anaesthetic consent forms are not currently deemed necessary,<sup>6</sup> though they exist in some jurisdictions.

1 Department of Health (2009). *Reference Guide to Consent for Examination or Treatment*, 2nd edn. <http://www.dh.gov.uk/consent>.

2 Mental Capacity Act 2005. Chapter 9. [www.opsi.gov.uk/acts/acts2005/20050009.htm](http://www.opsi.gov.uk/acts/acts2005/20050009.htm) 3.

3 *Gillick v. West Norfolk and Wisbech Area Health Authority* (1986). Appeal Court 112. <http://www.swarb.co.uk/c/hl/1985gillick.html>.

4 Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2005). *Management of Anaesthesia for Jehovah's Witnesses*, 2nd edn. [www.aagbi.org/publications/guidelines/docs/jehovah.pdf](http://www.aagbi.org/publications/guidelines/docs/jehovah.pdf).

5 General Medical Council (2008). *Consent: Patients and Doctors Making Decisions Together*. London: GMC. <http://www.gmc-uk.org>.

6 Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2006). *Consent for Anaesthesia*, 2nd edn. [www.aagbi.org/publications/guidelines/docs/consent06.pdf](http://www.aagbi.org/publications/guidelines/docs/consent06.pdf).

## Anaesthetic risk

Consent is a process. It starts with early provision of written information, including risks, to patients before admission for an elective procedure. Information should also be available in foreign languages, Braille, large type, and on tape.<sup>1,2</sup>

At the preoperative visit discussion of risks associated with anaesthesia should be easy to understand and should include all risks that a 'reasonable patient' considers significant. These can range from common but minor side effects to rare but serious complications.

Communication of risks is important. People vary in how they interpret words and numbers, e.g. a very common side effect of anaesthesia, such as sore throat, may happen on more than one in ten occasions (1:10) whereas death due to anaesthesia is very rare (<1:100 000). Pictures and diagrams may also be used.

1 in 10	1 in 100	1 in 1000	1 in 10 000	1 in 100 000
Very common	Common	Uncommon	Rare	Very rare
Someone in a family	Someone in a street	Someone in a village	Someone in a small town	Someone in a large town

The perception of risk is modified by a number of factors:

- Probability of occurrence—true incidence requires a large population sample and may be susceptible to:
  - Regional bias—geographical variation in techniques
  - Exposure bias—catastrophic or dramatic over-publicity
  - Compression/expansion bias—underestimation of large risks, overestimation of small risks

Both patients' and anaesthetists' perceptions will contribute to the discussion of risks. Anaesthetists should recognise that their bias may frame the presentation of anaesthetic risk and that 'informed consent' may suffer as a consequence.

- Severity—high-severity risks such as death, paraplegia, and permanent organ failure, even though of very low probability, are perceived as higher overall risks than more common complications.
- Vulnerability—denial/optimism and a feeling of 'immunity' or 'invincibility' allow us to ignore daily risks.
- Controllability—loss of conscious choice with a feeling of loss of control increases vulnerability. Informed consent with a choice of clinical alternatives is important, as patients who perceive they have had adequate and realistic information with a choice of different anaesthetic options will be less resentful of any subsequent complications.
- Certainty/uncertainty—uncertainty, particularly about the facts, and fear of the uncertain or unknown upset the balance between rational and irrational decisions.

- Familiarity—patients who have had many anaesthetic procedures before will be less worried about any inherent risks, even though these risks may increase with progression of disease. Conversely, patients having their first anaesthetic will be more worried.
- Acceptability/dread—anaesthetists fear patient paraplegia more than patient death, stroke, or major myocardial infarction. Cultural or regional expectations may alter these perceptions, e.g. variations in use of local anaesthetic techniques.
- Framing or presentation—positive framing is better than negative framing, particularly when relative risks are discussed. For example, '90% survival' rather than '10% mortality', or outcomes are 'twice as good' with one management regimen than with another although the actual differences may only be between 0.005% and 0.01% mortality. Such 'bias' should not, however, impede discussion of the true incidence or real clinical significance with patients.

The mnemonic BRAN offers a useful approach when assessing the risks of a course of action: benefits, risks, alternatives, and what would happen if nothing were done.

- 1 Royal College of Anaesthetists and Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2008). *Anaesthesia Explained*, 3rd edn. <http://www.youranaesthetic.info>.
- 2 Royal College of Anaesthetists (2006). *Risks Associated with Your Anaesthetic – The Risk Information Leaflets*. <http://www.rcoa.ac.uk>.

Risk level (ratio)	Verbal scale	Anaesthetic/medical examples	Example
1:1–99 Single digits	Very common	Pain 1:2 (day surgery) Transient ptosis after eye block 1:2 at 24hr (1:5 at 1 month) Sore throat 1:5 (ETT) Delirium after #NOF 1:2 PONV 1:3 Transient diplopia after eye block 1:4 Postop cognitive dysfunction (>60yr) 1:4 at 1wk Shivering 1:4 Dizziness 1:5 Headache 1:5 Backache 1:5 (surgery <1hr), 1:2 (surgery >4hr) Transient arterial occlusion following cannulation 1:5 Transient deafness after spinal 1:7	Heads or tails coin toss 1:2  No pair (poker) 1:2  One pair (poker) 1:2.5  Rolling a six on a dice 1:6
1:10–99 Double digits	Common	Thrombophlebitis 1:10 Severe pain (major surgery) 1:10 Dural puncture headache 1:10 (day surgery) Postop cognitive dysfunction (>60yr) 1:10 at 3 months	Getting 3 balls in UK National Lottery 1:11  Two pairs (poker) 1:20

		Pneumothorax 1:20 (supraclavicular block) Transient blurred vision after GA 1:20 All oral trauma following intubation 1:20 Sore throat from LMA 1:25 CVA or death 1:15 for carotid endarterectomy (symptomatic) CVA or death 1:25 for carotid endarterectomy (asymptomatic) Disabling CVA or death 1:50 for carotid endarterectomy (all) CVA 1:50 if previous stroke Emergency surgery death 1:40 (at 1 month) Difficult intubation 1:50 Brachial plexus neurapraxia 1:50 (regional block) Urinary dysfunction 1:50 (spinal/epidural)	Rolling a double six on a dice 1:36  Three of a kind (poker) 1:50 Dying in next 12 months (men 55–64 yrs) 1:74
1:100–999 Hundreds	Moderately common	CVA 1:100 (general surgery) Loss of vision (cardiac surgery) 1:100 Permanent postop cognitive dysfunction (>60yr) 1:100 Dural puncture headache following spinal 1:100 Permanent complications of arterial cannulation 1:100 Arterial puncture at subclavian vein cannulation 1:200 Periop death 1:200 (at 1 month) or 1:500 (at 2 days)	Dying of any cause in the next year 1:100  Getting 4 balls in UK National Lottery 1:206 Flush (poker) 1:500 Full house (poker) 1:700



Table Contd.

Risk level (ratio)	Verbal scale	Anaesthetic/medical examples	Example
		Awareness without pain 1:300 Ulnar neuropathy 1:300 (GA) Awareness (TIVA) 1:500 Failure to intubate 1:500 Cerebral seizures 1:500 (brachial plexus block) Corneal abrasion (GA) 1:600 Brainstem anaesthesia following ophthalmic block 1:700	
1:1000–9999 Thousands	Uncommon	Neuropathy post GA (other than ulnar) 1:1000 Systemic LA toxicity 1:1500 (regional blocks) Cerebral seizures 1:4000 (IV regional LA) Pulmonary artery perforation 1:2000 Awareness with pain 1:3000 Aspiration pneumonitis 1:3000 Cardiac arrest 1:1500 (spinal) or 1:3000 (LA) Damage to teeth (GA) requiring treatment 1:4500 Permanent neuropathy at peripheral nerve block 1:5000 Retrolbulbar haemorrhage following eye block 1:5000	Exercise stress test death 1:2000  Four of a kind (poker) 1:4000  Road traffic death in the next year 1:8000

		Epidural abscess after epidural catheter 1:5000	
		Failure to intubate/ventilate 1:5000	
		Death related to anaesthesia 1:5000 (ASA 3/4)	
1:10 000–99 999	Rare	Anaphylaxis 1:10 000	Accidental death at home
Tens of thousands		Systemic LA toxicity 1:10 000 (epidural)	1:11 000
		Spontaneous epidural abscess 1:10 000	
		Globe perforation at eye block 1:10 000	Getting 5 balls in UK
		Idiopathic deafness (GA) 1:10 000	National Lottery 1:11 098
		Cardiac arrest 1:10 000 (epidural or regional block)	
		Spontaneous sensorineural hearing loss (no anaesthesia) 1:10 000 (GA even rarer)	Straight flush (poker) 1:70 000
		Cardiac arrest 1:15 000 (GA)—with 15% death rate	
		Death (related to anaesthesia) 1:50 000	Death from hang gliding per flight
		Cranial nerve palsies (spinal) 1:50 000—commonest abducens	1:80 000
1:100 000–999 999	Very rare	Death (related to anaesthesia) 1:100 000 (ASA 1/2)	Rail accident death 1:500 000
Hundreds of thousands		Paraplegia (spinal/epidural) 1:100 000	
		Loss of vision (GA) 1:125 000	
		Epidural haematoma 1:150 000 (epidural), 1:200 000 (spinal)	Royal straight flush (poker)
		Death due solely to anaesthesia 1:180 000	1:650 000
		Cranial subdural haematoma (after spinal) 1:500 000	

**Table** Contd.

Risk level (ratio)	Verbal scale	Anaesthetic/medical examples	Example
1:1 000 000–9 999 999 Millions	Excessively rare	Spontaneous epidural haematoma (no anaesthesia) 1:1 000 000	Getting 6 balls in UK National Lottery 1:2 796 763
>1:10 000 000 Tens of millions or billions	Exceptional		Lightning strike 1:10 000 000

## Perioperative mortality

- Overall mortality figures (UK) for *all* patients 1 month after
  - Elective surgery 1:177 (~1:200)
  - Emergency surgery 1:34 (~1:40)<sup>1</sup>
- Adult mortality rate within 30d of surgery (Canada)
  - 1.2% total
  - 2.2% for age 60–69yr
  - 2.9% for age 70–79yr
  - 5.8–6.2% for age 80–89yr
  - 8.4% for age >90yr

Major surgery doubles these risks.<sup>2</sup>

- Incidence of death associated with anaesthesia in adult ASA 1 and 2 patients is approximately 1:100 000, with risk increased 5–10 times for high-risk patients (ASA 3–4) and/or emergency surgery.
- Anaesthetic paediatric mortality is 1:50 000.
- Death rate associated with anaesthesia for Caesarean section has decreased from 1:10 000 (1982–84) to 1:100 000 (2000–02), associated with general anaesthesia.<sup>3</sup>
- National studies of mortality that assess the quality of delivery of care continue to highlight factors that contribute to anaesthetic-related mortality:
  - Inadequate preoperative assessment
  - Inadequate preparation and resuscitation
  - Inappropriate anaesthetic technique
  - Inadequate perioperative monitoring
  - Lack of supervision
  - Poor postoperative care

1 Department of Health (2002). *NHS Performance Indicators*. <http://www.doh.gov.uk/nhsperformanceindicators>.

2 Jin F, Chung F (2001). Minimizing perioperative adverse events in the elderly. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **87**, 608–624.

3 Centre for Maternal and Child Enquiries. *Confidential Enquiry into Maternal Deaths in United Kingdom. Why Mothers Die (2000–2002)*. <http://www.cmace.org.uk>.

# Perioperative morbidity

## Cardiovascular

(See also p46.)

- Sixty percent of patients who die within 30d of surgery have evidence of coronary artery disease.
- Major non-cardiac surgery is associated with an incidence of cardiac death between 0.5 and 1.5% and of major cardiac complications between 2 and 3.5%.<sup>1</sup>
- In non-cardiac surgery active cardiac conditions that indicate major clinical risk require intensive management and delay of elective surgery:
  - Unstable coronary syndromes or MI <30d
  - Decompensated heart failure
  - Significant arrhythmias
  - Severe valvular disease
- Determination of functional capacity: inability to achieve 4 metabolic equivalents (4 METs—climb flight of stairs, walk at 4mph) is associated with increased risk of perioperative cardiovascular morbidity (see also p47).
- Clinical risk factors include:
  - Ischaemic heart disease
  - Compensated or prior heart failure
  - Diabetes mellitus
  - Renal insufficiency
  - Cerebrovascular disease
- High-risk surgery increases risk of cardiovascular complications.<sup>2</sup>
- Patients stratified as high or intermediate risk require further investigation and consideration of risk reduction prior to planned surgery.

The commonest causes for anaesthesia-related cardiac arrest include drug-related events, hypovolaemia, and failure of airway management.<sup>3</sup>

Cardiac risk factors<sup>3</sup>

Number of simple clinical risk factors present	Cardiac risk index	Approximate rate of cardiac complications including death (%)
0	Class I	~0.5
1	Class II	~1.0
2	Class III	~5.0
3	Class IV	~10.0
4	Class V	~15.00

High-risk surgery (cardiac risk >5%)	Intermediate-risk (cardiac risk 1–5%)	Low-risk surgery (cardiac risk <1%)
Emergency major operations (particularly elderly patients)	Carotid endarterectomy	Endoscopic procedures
Major vascular surgery	Head and neck surgery	Superficial procedures
Peripheral vascular surgery	Intraperitoneal surgery	Cataract surgery
Prolonged surgery with large fluid shifts	Intrathoracic surgery	Breast surgery
	Orthopaedic surgery	
	Prostatic surgery	

### Venous thromboembolism

- In the UK an estimated 25 000 people die from preventable hospital-acquired venous thromboembolism (VTE) every year. The risk of deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism after surgery is substantially increased in the first 12 postoperative weeks, and varies considerably by type of surgery. An estimated 1 in 140 middle-aged women undergoing inpatient surgery in the UK will be admitted with VTE during 12wk after surgery (1 in 45 after hip or knee replacement and 1 in 85 after surgery for cancer), compared with 1 in 815 after day case surgery and only 1 in 6200 during a 12wk period without surgery.<sup>4</sup>

### Respiratory

See also p99.

- Postoperative respiratory complications (pneumonia/respiratory arrest) remain a major cause of surgical morbidity and mortality—poor postoperative analgesia may often contribute to the aetiology. Other major patient factors are FVC <1.5l or FEV<sub>1</sub>/FVC <50%.<sup>5</sup>

### Neurological

See p30–31 and pp1171–80.

### Minor

- Incidences of relatively minor morbidity, such as pain and postoperative nausea and vomiting, have not changed significantly over the last 30yr despite improvements in anaesthetic drugs and techniques.
- Minor sequelae following surgery often have significant impact on patient recovery, leading to decreased function and slower resumption of daily activities following discharge.
- More than 50% of patients assume that pain is a normal part of the postoperative course/healing process and are prepared to suffer rather than complain.
- PONV has a multifactorial aetiology including type/duration of anaesthesia, drug therapy, type of surgery, and patient characteristics (particularly young, overweight, non-smoking females with a history of motion sickness/previous PONV) (see p1113).

Mortality and morbidity	Incidence	Comments
Total perioperative deaths within 30d (UK)	1:200 elective surgery 1:40 emergency surgery	
<b>Death</b>		
Related to anaesthesia	1:50 000	1:100 000 (ASA 1–2)
<b>CVS</b>		
Cardiac arrest (GA)	1:10 000–1:20 000	Mortality 1:15 000 –1:150 000
Cardiac arrest (LA)	1:3000	
Cardiac arrest (spinal)	1:3700	
<b>Respiratory</b>		
Aspiration (GA)	1:3000	x4 in emergencies, x3 in obstetrics
Mortality due to aspiration	1:60 000	
Difficult intubation	1:50	
Failure to intubate	1:500	1:250 in obstetrics
Failure to intubate and ventilate	1:5000	
<b>Neurological</b>		
Postop cognitive dysfunction (>60yr)	1:4 at 1wk 1:10 at 1 month 1:100 permanent	Irrespective of regional/general anaesthesia

Postoperative delirium	1:7 general surgery (up to 1:2 elderly #NOF)	
	1:50 if previous stroke	1:700 in non-surgical population
Cerebrovascular accident	1:100 general surgery 1:20 head and neck surgery 1:20 carotid surgery	
Awareness with pain	1:3000	
Awareness without pain	1:300	
<b>Miscellaneous</b>		
Anaphylaxis	1:10 000	
Pain after major surgery	1:10 severe 1:3 moderate	
Pain after day surgery	1:2	
Nausea and vomiting (PONV)	1:3	Female:male 3:1
Sore throat	1:5 tracheal tube 1:25 laryngeal mask 1:10 facemask	
Drowsiness	1:2	
Dizziness	1:5	
Headache	1:5	



Mortality and morbidity	Incidence	Comments
Dental damage	1:100 overall (1:4500 requiring intervention)	
All oral trauma post-intubation	1:20	
Deafness	1:10 000 GA 1:7 spinal (transient)	
Loss of vision	1:125 000 GA 1:100 cardiac surgery	
Peripheral nerve injury (GA)	1:300 ulnar neuropathy 1:1000 other nerves	
<b>Regional</b>		
Paraplegia after neuraxial block	1:100 000	
Permanent injury (spinal)	1:45 000 –1: 100 000	
Permanent injury (epidural)	1:16 000 –1:32 000	
Permanent nerve injury (peripheral block)	1:5000 –1: 30 000	
Transient nerve injury (spinal)	1:125–1:2500	
Transient nerve injury (epidural)	1:1000–1:10 000	
Transient radicular irritation (spinal)	up to 1:3 (lidocaine/mepivacaine)	

Epidural abscess	1:2000–1:7500 (1:10 000 spontaneous)
Cardiac arrest (spinal)	1: 3700
Cardiac arrest (epidural)	1:10 000
Cardiac arrest (regional block)	1:10 000
Cardiac arrest (LA)	1:3000
Post-dural puncture headache (PDPH)	1:100
PDPH in day surgery	1:10
Backache	1:5 if <1hr surgery 1:2 if >4hr surgery
Systemic LA toxicity	1:10 000 epidural 1:1500 regional blocks
Eye blocks	
Retrobulbar haemorrhage	1:250–1:20 000
Brainstem anaesthesia	1:700
Globe perforation	1:10 000
Ptosis (transient)	1:2 at 24hr 1:5 at 1 month

Mortality and morbidity	Incidence	Comments
<b>Obstetric—regional</b>		
Temporary nerve damage (epidural or spinal)	1:1000	
Permanent nerve damage >6 months (epidural or spinal)	1:13 000	
Paraplegia/ permanent severe injury	1:250 000	
Vertebral canal haematoma	1:150 000 epidural	
	1:200 000 spinal	
	(1:1 000 000 spontaneous)	

## Further reading

- Adams A (2002). The meaning of risk. In: McConachie I (ed) *Anaesthesia for the High Risk Patient*. London: Greenwich Medical Media, pp 239–247.
- Jenkins K, Baker AB (2003). Consent and anaesthetic risk. *Anaesthesia*, **58**, 962–984.

- 1 Poldermans D et al. (2009). Guidelines for preoperative cardiac risk assessment and perioperative management in non cardiac surgery. *European Heart Journal*, **30**, 2769–2812.
- 2 Fleischer LA et al., ACC/AHA (2007). Guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation and care for noncardiac surgery: executive summary. *Circulation*, **116**, 1971–1996.
- 3 Lee TH et al. (2009). Derivation and prospective validation of a simple index for prediction of cardiac risk of major noncardiac surgery. *Circulation*, **100**, 1043–1049.
- 4 Sweetland S et al. (2009). Duration and magnitude of the postoperative risk of venous thromboembolism in middle aged women: prospective cohort study *British Medical Journal*, **339**, b4583.
- 5 Gass GD, Olsen GN (1986). Preoperative pulmonary function testing to predict postoperative morbidity and mortality. *Chest*, **89**, 127–135.

# Practising evidence-based anaesthesia

## Evidence-based medicine (EBM)

Is defined as the conscientious, explicit, and judicious use of current best evidence in making decisions about the care of individual patients. It teaches how to ask a specific and relevant question arising from clinical practice, how to access and critically appraise up-to-date knowledge ('evidence'), and then, using clinical experience and judgment, to determine whether the evidence is applicable to a clinical setting. Use of proven effective treatments should improve patient outcome.

- EBM depends on well-designed studies producing reliable results, with an emphasis on randomised controlled trials (RCTs).
- Random assignment to treatment group and objective assessment of outcome are the best methods of avoiding bias. A consistent finding from several RCTs is very convincing and so the pooled results of such trials constitute high level evidence.
- Small RCTs are prone to type II error—incorrectly accepting the null hypothesis—and so a beneficial (or harmful) effect of treatment might be missed.
- Large RCTs are needed to provide sufficient study power to identify effective treatments.
- Large multicentre RCTs, and meta-analyses of numerous RCTs, can include a broad range of patients and healthcare settings, to better reflect everyday clinical practice.
- Most studies in anaesthesia are too small to detect effective treatments that can prevent adverse outcomes; too often they focus only on surrogate endpoints.

## Levels of evidence

Level	Description
1	Meta-analysis of RCTs (with homogeneity), or individual RCT with narrow confidence interval
2	Low quality RCT, or cohort studies
3	Case-control study
4	Case-series (and poor quality cohort and case-control studies)
5	Expert opinion or based on basic science research

## Finding the evidence

The anaesthetic literature is vast and difficult to access without efficient search methods using electronic databases. Reliable web-based resources include:

- Evidence-based medicine
  - [www.cebm.net](http://www.cebm.net); the Oxford centre for EBM; how to practise EBM.
  - [www.medicine.ox.ac.uk/bandolier/](http://www.medicine.ox.ac.uk/bandolier/); a premier EBM site with a focus on pain. Excellent examples of critical appraisal and assessment of effectiveness.
  - [www.nice.org.uk](http://www.nice.org.uk); the UK National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, which produces numerous evidence-based guidelines for clinical practice.
- Search the literature
  - [www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/](http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/); Pubmed—an essential tool for literature searching.
- Cochrane collaboration
  - [www.cochrane.org](http://www.cochrane.org); a global network producing systematic reviews, with links to a teaching resource for meta-analysis.
- Clinical trials and meta-analysis
  - [www.jameslindlibrary.org](http://www.jameslindlibrary.org); a collection of essays on the development and history of 'fair tests of treatments'.

# How to interpret a meta-analysis

A systematic review is a process of examining all relevant studies. Meta-analysis is the statistical method used to pool the results.

- The effect on binary outcomes (complication/no complication) can be summarised by the risk ratio (RR) or odds ratio (OR). The RR is the probability of an event occurring in the exposed group versus a non-exposed group; the OR is the ratio of the odds of an event occurring in the exposed group versus a non-exposed group. The OR will approximate the RR for uncommon events, but will otherwise overestimate RR.
- An RR of 1.0 indicates no effect on risk, RR <1.0 reduced risk, and RR >1.0 increased risk.

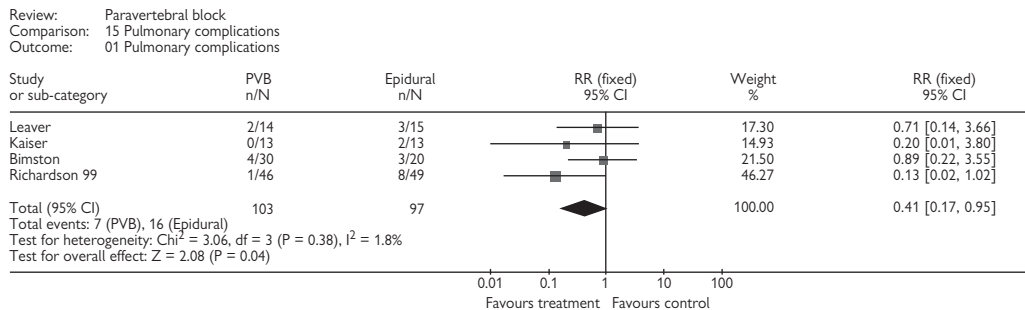
Relative risk (RR)	Effect on risk
0.25	75% reduction in risk
0.5	50% reduction in risk
1.0	No effect
1.5	50% increase in risk
2.0	100% (or two-fold) increase in risk

- The effects on numerical outcomes (e.g. cardiac index or opioid consumption) can be summarised as a weighted mean difference.
- Meta-analysis may be done using either a fixed effect model, which assumes that the individual study results are correlated with one another and probably represent similar study populations, or a random effects model, which does not require this assumption; the latter should be used if there is study heterogeneity.
- A forest plot can be used to graphically represent the individual studies contributing to a meta-analysis. Figure 2.1 summarises four trials comparing paravertebral block with epidural analgesia to reduce pulmonary complications:
  - The estimated effect (in this case, RR) of each trial is represented by the box and its 95% confidence interval (CI). The size of the box reflects the size of the study and this is quantified by the study weight (%). The width of the 95% CI indicates the extent of uncertainty of this estimated RR—if the CI crosses the value 1.0 (the line of equality) then the individual study is not statistically significant.
  - The pooled RR is 0.41, indicating a 59% reduction in risk of pulmonary complications.
  - The CIs of this estimated RR range from 0.17 (83% risk reduction) to 0.95 (5% risk reduction); this is statistically significant,  $P = 0.04$ .
  - The width of the CI indicates the precision or reliability of the estimate. If either 95% confidence limit were the true effect, and if such a finding would change the conclusion of the study, then we are left with uncertainty.

- In this case the test for heterogeneity is not statistically significant, supporting the validity of pooling the studies. Similarly, the  $I^2$  statistic indicates trivial inconsistency across the studies, with a value of >40% being of likely importance. These two statistics support the use of a fixed effect model for the meta-analysis.

There are some weaknesses with meta-analysis, e.g. publication bias (negative studies are less likely to be published), duplicate/repeated publication, heterogeneity, and inclusion of out-dated studies. Meta-analyses that have minimal heterogeneity, narrow confidence intervals, a large number of study events, and include at least one large RCT tend to be more reliable.





**Fig. 2.1** Example forest plot showing four trials comparing paravertebral block with epidural analgesia to reduce pulmonary complications. See text for details. [Modified with permission from Davies RG, Myles PS, Graham JM (2006). A comparison of the analgesic efficacy and side-effects of paravertebral vs epidural blockade for thoracotomy—a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **96**, 418–426.]

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Evidence-based interventions in anaesthesia

There are some simple, effective techniques that should be used more widely, or in some cases abandoned because of lack of evidence or evidence of net harm to patients. These include the following:

- Chlorhexidine should be used for antisepsis when inserting intravascular (and probably major regional block) catheters.
- PONV prophylaxis should target at-risk patients only and include a multimodal regimen of dexamethasone, droperidol, and a 5-HT<sub>3</sub> antagonist.
- Nitrous oxide use is associated with an increased risk of postoperative complications, including severe vomiting, and possibly wound infection and pneumonia.
- Epidural analgesia is superior to parenteral opioids in relieving postoperative pain after major surgery.
- Epidural analgesia reduces the risk of pneumonia after major surgery.
- The risk of stroke is comparable for both local anaesthesia and general anaesthesia in carotid surgery.
- Clonidine increases regional block duration (about 2hr) but has side effects of increased hypotension, bradycardia, and sedation.
- Alpha 2 agonists may reduce perioperative cardiac events in major surgery.
- Intraoperative hypothermia reduces thermal comfort and increases bleeding/transfusion requirements and myocardial ischaemia. Avoiding intraoperative hypothermia reduces wound infection.
- Perioperative beta-blockade can reduce myocardial infarction but may increase the risk of stroke and death.
- Prophylactic antibiotics reduce sepsis complications after major abdominal surgery and should be given before skin incision.
- Volatile agents reduce the risk of myocardial infarction and death after coronary artery surgery when compared with intravenous anaesthetic techniques.
- Early enteral feeding reduces postoperative infection and hospital stay after abdominal surgery.
- There is no evidence that nasogastric drainage speeds return of bowel function, or reduces the risk of wound infection or anastomotic leak after abdominal surgery.
- There is no evidence that intraoperative tight glucose control improves outcomes after major surgery, but the risk of hypoglycaemia is increased.
- It is unclear whether supplemental oxygen therapy improves outcomes after abdominal surgery.

## Further reading

- Collins R, MacMahon S (2001). Reliable assessment of the effects of treatment on mortality and major morbidity, 1: clinical trials. *Lancet*, **357**, 373–380.
- Fisher DM (1994). Surrogate end points: are they meaningful? *Anesthesiology*, **81**, 795–796.
- Higgins JP, et al. (2003). Measuring inconsistency in meta-analyses. *British Medical Journal*, **327**, 557–560.
- Møller A, Pederson T (eds) (2006). *Evidence-based Anaesthesia and Intensive Care*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Moher D, et al. (1999). Improving the quality of reports of meta-analyses of randomised controlled trials: the QUOROM statement. Quality of reporting of meta-analyses. *Lancet*, **354**, 1896–1900.
- Myles PS (1999). Why we need large randomized studies in anaesthesia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **83**, 833–834.
- Pogue J, Yusuf S (1998). Overcoming the limitations of current meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *Lancet*, **351**, 47–52.
- Tramer MR (2003). *An Evidence Based Resource in Anaesthesia and Analgesia*, 2nd edn. London: BMJ Publishing Group.
- Tunis SR, et al. (2003). Practical clinical trials: increasing the value of clinical research for decision making in clinical and health policy. *JAMA*, **290**, 1624–1632.

## NICE and the Cochrane Collaboration

The National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) and the Cochrane Collaboration are both independent bodies that systematically evaluate the evidence for both benefit and harm of medical interventions.

In 1979 the British epidemiologist, Archie Cochrane, stated 'It is surely a great criticism of our profession that we have not organised a critical summary ... of all relevant randomised controlled trials'. By 1992 systematic reviews of interventions in perinatal care led to the foundation of the first Cochrane Centre in Oxford, followed by the launch of the international Collaboration the following year. About 30 000 people in 100 countries contribute to preparation of systematic reviews and the maintenance and development of the Collaboration. Systematic reviews are divided thematically between review groups: anaesthesia, including prehospital care and critical care, was established in 2000 in Copenhagen (62 published reviews by April 2010—see website<sup>1</sup>).

NICE investigates three areas:

- Good health and prevention of illness: Centre for Public Health.
- Technology and interventions: Centre for Health Technology Evaluation.
- Specific disease management: Centre for Clinical Practice.

Guidance by NICE of interest to anaesthetists includes:<sup>2</sup>

- Venous thromboembolism prophylaxis (01 2010)
- Drug treatment of neuropathic pain (03 2010)
- Ultrasound-guided nerve block (01 2009)
- Ultrasound-guided central vein catheterisation (09 2002)
- Critical illness rehabilitation (03 2009)
- Child abuse (07 2009)
- Percutaneous intradiscal electrothermal therapy for back pain (11 2009)
- Epidural catheterisation (01 2008)
- Endocarditis prophylaxis (03 2008)
- Perioperative hypothermia (04 2008)
- Spinal cord stimulation for neuropathic pain (08 2008)
- Surgical site infection (10 2008)
- Acutely ill hospitalised patients (07 2007)
- Head injury (09 2007)
- Drotrecogin alfa for severe sepsis (09 2004)
- Preoperative tests (06 2003)

1 [www.carg.cochrane.org/our-reviews](http://www.carg.cochrane.org/our-reviews).

2 [www.nice.org.uk](http://www.nice.org.uk).

# Cardiovascular disease

## Richard Telford

Ischaemic heart disease 46  
Perioperative acute myocardial infarction 52  
Heart failure 54  
Hypertension 58  
Valvular heart disease 60  
Prosthetic valves 61  
Aortic stenosis 62  
Aortic regurgitation 64  
Mitral stenosis 66  
Mitral regurgitation 68  
The patient with an undiagnosed murmur 70  
Pericardial disease 71  
Cardiomyopathy 72  
Patients with a transplanted heart 74

## Peter Murphy

Congenital heart disease and non-cardiac surgery 76  
Specific CHD lesions 78  
Adults with CHD 80

## Ischaemic heart disease

Ischaemic heart disease (IHD) is one of the main contributory factors to postoperative morbidity and mortality. Up to 20% of patients undergoing surgery have preoperative evidence of myocardial ischaemia. The overall rate for perioperative myocardial infarction (MI) is 0.7% for general surgery, increasing to 3% for vascular surgery.

### Perioperative risk

The key to reducing perioperative cardiovascular morbidity is to identify high-risk patients beforehand. Cardiovascular risk is influenced by patient factors (including functional capacity) and by the nature of the planned surgery. See also p28.

#### Major risk predictors

(markers of unstable coronary artery disease)

Recent MI (<1 month prior to planned surgery)  
Unstable or severe angina  
Ongoing ischaemia after MI (clinical symptoms or non-invasive testing)  
Decompensated heart failure  
Significant arrhythmias (high grade AV block, symptomatic arrhythmias, or supraventricular arrhythmias with uncontrolled ventricular rate)  
Severe valvular heart disease (aortic, mitral stenosis)  
CABG/PCI (bare metal stent (BMS) <6wk, drug eluting stent (DES) <1yr)

#### Intermediate risk predictors

(markers of stable coronary artery disease)

Prior MI (>1 month prior to planned surgery)  
Stable mild angina  
Compensated heart failure  
Abnormal renal function  
Diabetes

#### Minor risk predictors

(increased probability of heart disease)

Advanced (physiological) age  
Abnormal ECG  
Rhythm other than sinus  
Low functional capacity  
Previous stroke  
Uncontrolled systemic hypertension

## Patient factors

### Functional capacity

Exercise tolerance is a major predictor of perioperative risk. The physiological response to major surgery increases oxygen demand by up to 40%, requiring a subsequent increase in oxygen delivery. The ability to exercise is an excellent indicator of 'cardiovascular fitness'. It is usually expressed in metabolic equivalents of task (METs) on a scale defined by the Duke Activity Status Index. One MET is the resting oxygen consumption of a 40-yr-old 70kg male (3.5ml/kg/min). Patients who cannot sustain 4 METs of physical activity frequently have adverse outcomes following high-risk surgery (see also p1053 'Cardiopulmonary exercise testing').

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| 1–4 METs  | • Eating, dressing, dishwashing, and walking around the house                                    |
| 4–10 METs | • Climbing a flight of stairs, walking on level ground at >6km/hr, running briefly, playing golf |
| >10 METs  | • Strenuous sports: swimming, singles tennis, football   |

### Surgical factors

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>High risk:</b><br>>5% death/non-fatal MI         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Major emergency surgery (esp. in elderly)</li> <li>• Aortic/major vascular surgery</li> <li>• Prolonged surgery with large fluid shifts</li> </ul>                                  |
| <b>Intermediate risk:</b><br><5% death/non-fatal MI | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Carotid endarterectomy</li> <li>• Head and neck surgery</li> <li>• Intraperitoneal and intrathoracic surgery</li> <li>• Orthopaedic surgery</li> <li>• Prostatic surgery</li> </ul> |
| <b>Low risk:</b><br><1% death/non-fatal MI          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Minimally invasive endoscopic surgery</li> <li>• Cataract extraction</li> <li>• Superficial surgery (incl. breast)</li> </ul>   |

## Special investigations

### 12-lead ECG

- All patients over 60yr undergoing major surgery and anyone with risk factors for IHD should have a preoperative ECG.
- Arrhythmias and cardiac conduction abnormalities require careful evaluation for underlying cardiopulmonary disease, drug toxicity, and metabolic abnormality.
- Many patients with underlying IHD have a normal resting ECG.

### Exercise testing

- Exercise ECG: test of choice in ambulatory patients. Provides an estimate of functional capacity and detects myocardial ischaemia. ST segment depression is suggestive of myocardial ischaemia.



Tachy arrhythmias or significant falls in systolic blood pressure are also highly suggestive of impaired oxygen delivery to the myocardium. Those patients who are unable to exercise or have pre-existing ECG abnormalities (e.g. left bundle branch block, ventricular hypertrophy/strain, digitalis effect) should have a pharmacological stress test.

- **Cardiopulmonary exercise testing:** usually performed on a bicycle ergometer using respiratory gas analysis and an ECG. An arm ergometer is available for those patients who cannot cycle. When exercising aerobically there is a linear relationship between oxygen consumption and carbon dioxide production. When the anaerobic threshold is reached excess lactic acid produced by anaerobic metabolism is buffered by the bicarbonate system. This increases carbon dioxide production, producing an inflexion point in the graph which is the anaerobic threshold. A low anaerobic threshold ( $<11\text{ml/min/kg}$ ), particularly if associated with ECG evidence of ischaemia, is associated with a high mortality in patients presenting for major intracavity surgery (see also p1053).

#### **Pharmacological stress testing**

- **Dipyridamole thallium scintigraphy:** uses a coronary vasodilator (dipyridamole) and a radio isotope (thallium) which is taken up by perfused heart muscle. It shows up areas of impaired perfusion as reversible perfusion defects caused by dipyridamole-induced 'steal'. Areas of non-perfused myocardium show up as permanent perfusion defects.
- **Dobutamine stress echocardiography:** utilises an increasing dose of dobutamine (to a maximum of  $40\mu\text{g/kg/min}$ ) with simultaneous 2D precordial echocardiography to look for new or worsening wall motion abnormalities as an indicator of impaired perfusion. It is a complex, time-consuming test requiring expertise.

Patients who have positive stress tests should be considered for coronary angiography.

#### **Coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG)**

Occasionally CABG may be necessary prior to non-cardiac surgery. Indications are identical to those for CABG on prognostic grounds, i.e. significant ( $>50\%$ ) left main stem stenosis, severe ( $>70\%$ ) two or three vessel disease (including the proximal left anterior descending), and/or LV systolic dysfunction. Following cardiac surgery subsequent surgery should be delayed for at least 3 months.

#### **Percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI)**

PCI is very rarely indicated prior to elective surgery. Recent PCI is associated with increased 30d mortality and increased risk of non-fatal MI. PCI causes trauma to the vessel wall, rendering the endoluminal surface thrombogenic until the vessel wall has healed or the stent has re-endothelialised. Dual antiplatelet medication (aspirin/clopidogrel) is necessary to prevent local coronary thrombosis— aspirin for life, clopidogrel for 3wk after balloon angioplasty, 6wk after bare metal stent insertion or for 12 months when a drug eluting stent is used. Stopping antiplatelet medication perioperatively is associated with a very high cardiac complication rate.

Drug eluting stent thrombosis has been reported as late as 1yr after stent insertion when antiplatelet medications have been stopped for surgery. In most patients the antiplatelet regime should be continued perioperatively as the risk of stent thrombosis is greater than the risk of bleeding. If PCI is considered necessary prior to surgery, careful consideration should be given to the type of PCI performed to simplify the management of dual antiplatelet therapy perioperatively and minimise the risk of thrombotic and bleeding complications. In procedures that can be delayed for 12 months it is reasonable to use a drug eluting stent. If the procedure can be delayed for 6–8wk a bare metal stent can be used. If the condition requires surgery to be performed in the next 2–4wk, consideration should be given to performing balloon angioplasty only. If a patient taking dual antiplatelet therapy post PCI needs an operation where bleeding may be problematic (e.g. intracranial surgery, spinal surgery, open aortic surgery) and the operation cannot be deferred for an appropriate time period, consider stopping clopidogrel for 7d preoperatively and bridging the patient with a short-acting platelet IIb/IIIa glycoprotein receptor antagonist (tirofiban, eptifibatide) plus an unfractionated heparin infusion to cover the period prior to surgery. These can be stopped 6hr prior to surgery. Where possible surgery should be deferred for at least 6wk after bare metal stent insertion or 1yr after drug eluting stent insertion, irrespective of the antiplatelet regime, as there is a very high risk of cardiac complications (up to 45%).<sup>1</sup>

### Choice of perioperative testing

Evaluation of patients with IHD depends on the planned surgery, facilities, and time available. Precise recommendations remain controversial, but careful history, examination, and practical application of preoperative screening tests is important. Little advantage is gained from complex examinations which will not alter management. The positive predictive value of most tests is low. Close liaison with both cardiological and surgical colleagues is required. At times investigations will indicate the need to consider an alternative less invasive surgical procedure.

### Cardiological referral

Exercise tolerance	Any	<4 METs	>4 METs	<4 METs	>4 METs
<b>Cardiac risk</b>					
<b>Surgical risk</b>	<b>Major</b>	<b>Intermediate</b>		<b>Minor</b>	
<b>High</b>	Refer	Refer	Refer	Refer	Operate
<b>Intermediate</b>	Refer	Refer	Operate	Operate	Operate
<b>Low</b>	Refer	Operate	Operate	Operate	Operate

See p47 for definition of METs and surgical risk.

### Perioperative medical therapy

Approximately 50% of perioperative MIs are caused by an imbalance of oxygen supply and demand. The other 50% are caused by unstable plaque rupture causing thrombosis and occlusion of a coronary artery.

Continue medical therapy perioperatively to protect against ischaemic stresses. Drugs should be given IV where possible if GI absorption is impaired.

- Chronic  $\beta$ -blockade should be continued.  $\beta$ -blockers have anti-inflammatory properties which stabilise coronary plaques and this may explain the benefits seen with protracted use.
- Recent evidence suggests that acute perioperative  $\beta$ -blockade may be detrimental. Although acute perioperative  $\beta$ -blockade reduces the risk of non-fatal perioperative MI, it is associated with increased rates of perioperative mortality and stroke.<sup>2</sup>
- There is limited evidence to suggest that very high-risk patients who demonstrate inducible ischaemia on preoperative stress testing may benefit from carefully titrated  $\beta$ -blockade started at least one week prior to surgery.
- Randomised trials have shown  $\alpha_2$  agonists to be beneficial and represent an alternative to  $\beta$ -blockers.<sup>3</sup> Clonidine is the most widely available (up to 300  $\mu$ g daily).
- Nitrates should be continued perioperatively—IV or transdermally if necessary. There is no evidence that prophylactic administration decreases the risk of perioperative cardiac complications.
- Calcium channel blockers should be continued preoperatively and resumed as soon as possible postoperatively. They have never been shown to confer protection against perioperative cardiac complications. The dihydropyridine group (especially nifedipine SL) may add to the risk of acute MI.
- ACE inhibitors improve survival in patients with left ventricular dysfunction and offer major benefits to patients with vascular disease or diabetes and normal left ventricular function. In the perioperative period they may increase the risk of hypotension (especially with thoracic epidurals or hypovolaemia), requiring more invasive haemodynamic monitoring for major surgery. Some anaesthetists routinely stop administration in the perioperative period—if stopped for several days restart at a reduced dose.
- Perioperative statin administration has been shown to improve both short-term and long-term cardiac outcome following non-cardiac and coronary bypass surgery. Statins enhance plaque stability, making plaque rupture less likely.
- All patients with documented ischaemic heart disease should continue to receive antiplatelet medication to protect against thromboembolic complications.

## Anaesthetic considerations

- In addition to standard monitoring, invasive cardiovascular monitoring (arterial line, CVP  $\pm$  cardiac output monitoring) should be used for high-/intermediate-risk patients undergoing major surgery. ECG monitoring should be CM5 configuration or similar.
- There is no evidence that any particular technique is superior. Avoid tachycardia and hypotension/hypertension to minimise myocardial ischaemia.
- Good analgesia is important since uncontrolled pain is a potent cause of tachycardia: regional blocks can be very effective. Central neuraxial blocks ameliorate the hypercoagulable state seen following anaesthesia and surgery.
- Haemoglobin levels should be kept  $>9\text{g/dl}$ .
- Myocardial ischaemia may occur during emergence and extubation. Hypertension and tachycardia should be anticipated and avoided. The use of a short-acting  $\beta$ -blocker, e.g. esmolol, should be considered.
- Consider admission to HDU postoperatively for close monitoring.
- Following major surgery, all patients at risk should have supplemental oxygen for 3–4 days.<sup>4</sup>

## Further reading

- Fleisher LA, Beckman JA et al. (2009). ACCF/AHA focused update on perioperative beta blockade incorporated into the ACC/AHA 2007 guidelines on perioperative evaluation and care for non cardiac surgery. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, **54** (22), e13–118.
- Hindler K et al. (2006). Improved perioperative outcomes associated with preoperative statin therapy. *Anesthesiology*, **105**, 1260–1272.
- Mukherjee D, Eagle KA (2003). Perioperative cardiac assessment for noncardiac surgery: eight steps to the best possible outcome. *Circulation*, **107**, 2771–2774.
- Poldermans D et al. (2009). Guidelines on pre-operative cardiac risk assessment and perioperative cardiac management in non cardiac surgery. *European Heart Journal*, **30**, 2769–2812.

- 1 Spahn DR, Howell SJ, Delebens A, Chassot PG (2006). Coronary stents and perioperative antiplatelet regimen: dilemma of bleeding and stent thrombosis. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **96**, 675–677.
- 2 POISE Study Group (2008). Effects of extended release metoprolol in patients undergoing non cardiac surgery (POISE Trial): a randomized controlled trial. *Lancet*, **371**, 1839–1847.
- 3 Wijeyesundera DN, Naik JS, Beattie WS (2003). Alpha 2 agonists to prevent perioperative cardiovascular complications: a meta-analysis. *American Journal of Medicine*, **114**, 742–752.
- 4 Biccari BM, Sear JW, Foex P (2005). Statin therapy: a potentially useful perioperative intervention in patients with cardiovascular disease. *Anaesthesia*, **60**, 1106–1114.

## Perioperative acute myocardial infarction

Perioperative myocardial infarction usually occurs in the 3–4d following surgery. The majority of cases are preceded by episodes of ST segment depression. Around half of perioperative MIs are caused by acute plaque rupture, but the severity of underlying stenosis does not necessarily predict infarct territory. The remainder are caused by myocardial oxygen supply–demand imbalance. The best markers of myocardial injury are the cardiac troponins T and I which are only found in cardiac muscle and are normally undetectable in the blood. These have very high myocardial tissue specificity and a high sensitivity. When myocardial necrosis occurs they are detectable in the plasma within 4–12hr. Levels peak at 12–24hr and are detectable for 7–10d. A serum troponin level taken at least 12hr after the onset of chest pain is considered diagnostic of significant myocardial damage if troponin T  $>0.1\mu\text{g/l}$  (and highly suspicious of myocardial damage if troponin T =  $0.01\text{--}0.1\mu\text{g/l}$ ).

- Rapid treatment is essential. Move patients to an HDU.
- All patients should receive supplemental oxygen.
- Patients should be given SL glyceryl trinitrate and IV morphine to relieve any chest pain.
- If the patient is not taking an antiplatelet drug they should receive aspirin (75–300mg) or clopidogrel (75–600mg) if aspirin intolerant.
- $\beta$ -blockade should be used to control heart rate and to decrease myocardial oxygen demand (metoprolol 1–5mg boluses or esmolol 50–200 micrograms/kg/min loading dose, then  $0.05\text{--}0.2\mu\text{g/kg/min}$ ). Aim for a rate of 60–90bpm.
- Pulmonary oedema if present should be treated with upright posture, IV furosemide (40mg), and IV nitrates. CPAP should be considered.
- Other therapeutic options are reduced postoperatively. Acute thrombolysis is relatively contraindicated by recent surgery. If available, acute angioplasty of the ‘culprit lesion’ should be considered—close liaison with a cardiologist is essential.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Heart failure

Heart failure is the commonest cause of admission to hospital in those aged >65yr. Incidence rises with increasing age. It has ~50% 5yr mortality. It is characterised by:

- Fatigue
- Exercise intolerance
- Orthopnoea
- Exertional dyspnoea
- High incidence of ventricular arrhythmias
- Shortened life expectancy

Perioperatively heart failure is associated with a substantially increased risk of mortality/morbidity. A patient with uncontrolled heart failure undergoing an emergency laparotomy has a mortality risk of 20–30%.

### Medical management

- **Diuretics** reduce peripheral and pulmonary congestion. Spironolactone reduces mortality when used in conjunction with ACE inhibitors in patients with severe heart failure (EF <25%).
- **Vasodilators** decrease preload and afterload. ACE inhibitors, and to a lesser extent angiotensin-II receptor antagonists, improve survival. Nitrates are also used.
- **$\beta$ -blockers** (carvedilol, bisoprolol) are indicated to reduce heart rate and myocardial oxygen demand. Studies show improved survival, but cardiological input is required.
- **Inotropes:** digoxin improves symptoms and may be used to control the ventricular rate in atrial fibrillation and in patients in sinus rhythm with severe or worsening heart failure.
- **Anticoagulation:** indicated for atrial fibrillation and for those with a history of thromboembolism, left ventricular aneurysm, or with evidence of intracardiac thrombus on echocardiography.
- Some patients with intractable heart failure may have atrial synchronous biventricular pacing devices inserted in an attempt to improve functional capacity and quality of life.
- Some patients with severely impaired ventricular performance and a history of ventricular tachycardia/ventricular fibrillation will have biventricular automatic implantable cardioverter defibrillators (AICDs) inserted for secondary prevention of arrhythmic death—see p94.

### Preoperative assessment

- History and examination should identify present or recent episodes of decompensated heart failure (any within 6 months adversely affects risk).
- Optimise medical therapy to minimise symptoms of left ventricular dysfunction and maximise functional capacity.
- Continue antifailure therapy in the preoperative period.
- Consider a period of preoperative 'optimisation' in ICU/HDU.
- Treat metabolic abnormalities.

- Treat symptomatic arrhythmias and attempt to optimise heart rate to around 80bpm. Rhythms other than sinus are poorly tolerated (especially AF), as properly timed atrial contractions contribute up to 30% of ventricular filling.

## Special investigations

### Blood tests (to evaluate aggravating factors)

- FBC, U&Es, LFT, thyroid function tests, fasting lipids, and glucose.

### 12-lead ECG

- Check for arrhythmias. AF may worsen heart failure by reducing cardiac filling time.

### CXR

- Prominent upper lobe veins (upper lobe diversion), engorged peripheral lymphatics (Kerley B lines), alveolar oedema ('bats' wings').
- Pleural effusions, cardiomegaly.

### Transthoracic echocardiography

- Most useful test particularly when coupled with Doppler flow studies. Will determine whether the primary abnormality is pericardial/myocardial/valvular, systolic/diastolic, segmental/global. Echo also allows quantitative assessment of the ventricles, atria, pericardium, valves, and vascular structures.
- Alternatives include transoesophageal echocardiography, radionuclide imaging, and cardiac magnetic resonance imaging.
- Modern echocardiography machines generate values for ejection fraction (normal range 60–80%) and fractional shortening (normal range 28–44%) which define the degree of LV impairment.

Ejection fraction 40–50%	—	mild LV impairment
Ejection fraction 30–40%	—	moderate LV impairment
Ejection fraction <30%	—	severe LV impairment

### Cardiac catheterisation

- This is sometimes performed if significant coronary or valvular heart disease is suspected as a cause of heart failure. Ventricular performance may sometimes be improved if there are areas of ventricular muscle whose contractility may be improved if the blood supply is restored—'hibernating myocardium'.

## Perioperative management

- Some patients may be deemed unfit for the proposed surgery. Patients with severe heart failure (EF <30%) are dependent on preload to maintain ventricular filling. Many also rely on increased sympathetic tone. Such patients are living 'on a knife edge' and are exquisitely sensitive to small alterations in their physiology.
- Use local or regional techniques for peripheral procedures.
- There is little conclusive evidence of the benefits of general versus regional anaesthesia for more major surgery.



- Patients should receive all their antifailure medications on the morning of surgery.
- Digoxin should be given IV postoperatively if the patient is in AF but if in sinus rhythm it can usually be omitted until eating resumes. Nitrates can be given transdermally while nil by mouth.
- ACE inhibitors should be resumed as soon as possible postoperatively. If omitted for 3d or more they should be reintroduced at a low dose to minimise first-dose hypotension.
- Whichever anaesthetic technique is chosen, minimise negative inotropy, tachycardia, diastolic hypotension, and systolic hypertension. Careful monitoring of fluid balance is essential. Invasive cardiovascular monitoring, including measurement of cardiac output should be considered for all major surgery.
- Patients who decompensate in the perioperative period may require treatment with inotropes such as dobutamine and phosphodiesterase inhibitors.
- Renal perfusion is easily compromised due to markedly impaired glomerular filtration rates and patients are susceptible to renal failure perioperatively. If urine output falls, hypovolaemia should be excluded and adequate perfusion pressure and cardiac output ensured before diuretics are used. NSAIDs are a potent renal insult in these patients and their use requires care.
- All patients should have supplemental oxygen following surgery.
- Good postoperative analgesia is essential to minimise detrimental effects of catecholamine release in response to pain.
- Have a low threshold for admission to ICU/HDU in the postoperative period.

### **Further reading**

Magner JJ, Royston D (2004). Heart failure. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **91**, 74–85.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Hypertension

Fifteen percent of patients are hypertensive (systolic  $>140\text{mmHg}$ , diastolic  $>90\text{mmHg}$ ). The link between elevated arterial pressure and cardiovascular disease is well established, with the greatest risk associated with the highest arterial pressures.

Traditionally many patients have had anaesthesia and surgery deferred to allow hypertension to be treated. Evidence that moderately elevated blood pressure is associated with increased perioperative risk is limited, although increased cardiovascular lability under anaesthesia ('alpine anaesthesia') frequently occurs. However, the association of hypertension with end-organ damage (ischaemic heart disease, heart failure, renal failure) contributes significantly to the likelihood of perioperative cardiovascular complications.

### Preoperative evaluation

- Is hypertension primary or secondary? Consider the rare possibility of pheochromocytoma, hyperaldosteronism, renal parenchymal hypertension, and renovascular hypertension. These will have individual anaesthetic implications.
- Is the hypertension severe? Patients with Stage 3 hypertension (systolic  $>180\text{mmHg}$ , diastolic  $>110\text{mmHg}$ ) should ideally have this treated prior to elective surgery.
- Is there evidence of end-organ involvement? The presence of coronary or cerebrovascular disease, impairment of renal function, signs of left ventricular hypertrophy, and heart failure puts patients in a high-risk category. These conditions may require further investigation and/or treatment in addition to control of elevated blood pressure.

### Perioperative management

Few guidelines exist as to which patients should be cancelled to allow hypertension to be treated or the duration of such treatment prior to surgery. There is little evidence for an association between admission arterial pressures of  $<180\text{mmHg}$  systolic or  $<110\text{mmHg}$  diastolic and perioperative cardiovascular complications. A recent meta-analysis of 30 papers involving 12 995 perioperative patients demonstrated an odds ratio for the association between hypertensive disease and cardiovascular complications of 1.35, which is not clinically significant.<sup>1</sup>

- Do not defer surgery on the basis of a single blood pressure reading on admission to hospital. Obtain several further readings after admission. The GP may have a record of previous readings.
- Continue preoperative antihypertensive treatment during the perioperative period.
- Stage 1 (systolic  $140\text{--}159\text{mmHg}$ , diastolic  $90\text{--}99\text{mmHg}$ ) and Stage 2 (systolic  $160\text{--}179\text{mmHg}$ , diastolic  $100\text{--}109\text{mmHg}$ ) hypertension are not independent risk factor for perioperative cardiovascular complications. Surgery should normally proceed in these patients.

- If a patient has Stage 3 hypertension (systolic >180mmHg, diastolic >110mmHg), with evidence of damage to the heart or kidneys, defer surgery to allow blood pressure to be controlled and the aetiology investigated. There is, however, no level-one evidence as to how long the operation should be delayed (>4wk is often recommended) or that this strategy reduces perioperative risk.
- Patients with Stage 3 hypertension considered fit for surgery in other respects and with no evidence of end-organ involvement should not be deferred simply on the grounds of elevated blood pressure. Attempt to ensure cardiovascular stability, using invasive monitoring where indicated, and actively control excursions in mean arterial pressure greater than 20% from baseline.
- Patients undergoing major surgery or who are unstable perioperatively should be monitored closely in ICU/HDU.
- Sympatholytic therapies such as  $\alpha_2$  agonists (clonidine) and thoracic epidural blockade may have a role but also carry risks of hypotension postoperatively.
- Relate perioperative BP readings to the underlying norm—a systolic <100mmHg may represent hypotension in a normally hypertensive patient.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Howell SJ, Sear JW, Foex P (2004). Hypertension, hypertensive heart disease and perioperative cardiac risk. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **92**, 570–583.

## Valvular heart disease

Valvular heart disease is found in 4% of patients over the age of 65yr. Patients with a known valve problem may already be under the care of a cardiologist. Sometimes a murmur may be picked up during preoperative assessment. In each case:

- Assess the significance of the cardiac lesion for the proposed surgery.
- Plan anaesthesia according to the haemodynamic picture.

Two-dimensional echocardiography indicates abnormal valvular motion and morphology, but does not indicate the severity of stenosis or regurgitation except in mitral stenosis. Doppler echocardiography identifies increased velocity of flow across stenotic valves from which pressure gradients and severity may be estimated. Doppler flow imaging can also provide estimates of the severity of regurgitant valve disease.

## Prosthetic valves

- Most patients will be under the surveillance of a cardiologist.
- Tissue valves do not require anticoagulation. Mechanical valve replacements require lifetime anticoagulation.
- The risk of thromboembolism if anticoagulation is stopped depends on the site and type of valve replacement.
- Modern bi-leaflet aortic valve replacements have a low (<4% per annum) risk of thromboembolism and are best managed by withholding warfarin for 5d preoperatively and administering a prophylactic dose of low molecular weight heparin.
- Older aortic valve replacements and mechanical mitral valve replacements have a much greater propensity to embolise (>4% per annum). They are best managed by stopping warfarin 5d preoperatively. Bridging therapy with either an intravenous infusion of unfractionated heparin or therapeutic subcutaneous low molecular weight heparin is recommended when the INR <2. Unfractionated heparin infusions should be stopped 6hr prior to surgery and therapeutic low molecular weight heparin stopped the night before surgery.
- IV heparin/therapeutic LMWH can be restarted postoperatively and warfarin reinstituted when it is safe to do so.

## Aortic stenosis (see also p346)

- Occasionally congenital (abnormal bicuspid valve in 2%), mostly due to calcification and rheumatic heart disease. The prevalence increases with increasing age. Anatomic obstruction to ejection leads to concentric hypertrophy of left ventricular heart muscle resulting in decreased diastolic compliance.
- Elevated filling pressures and sinus rhythm are required to fill the non-compliant left ventricle. 'Normal' left ventricular end diastolic pressure may reflect hypovolaemia.
- Properly timed atrial contractions contribute as much as 40% to left ventricular preload in patients with aortic stenosis (normal = 20–30%). Arrhythmia may produce a critical reduction in cardiac output.
- High risk of myocardial ischaemia due to increased oxygen demand and wall tension in the hypertrophied left ventricle. Thirty percent of patients who have aortic stenosis with normal coronary arteries have angina. Subendocardial ischaemia may exist as coronary blood supply does not increase in proportion to the muscular hypertrophy. Tachycardia is detrimental as it may produce ischaemia. Maintenance of diastolic blood pressure is crucial to maintain coronary perfusion.

### Aortic valve area reduction

Normal Area	2.6–3.5cm <sup>2</sup>
Mild	1.6–2.5cm <sup>2</sup>
Moderate	1.0–1.5cm <sup>2</sup>
Severe	<1.0cm <sup>2</sup>

### LV-aortic gradient

Mild	<20mmHg
Moderate	20–50mmHg
Severe	>50mmHg

### History

- Angina, breathlessness, syncope.

Symptoms do not correlate well to the severity of stenosis; some patients with small valve areas can be asymptomatic.

### Examination

- Slow rising pulse with narrow pulse pressure.
- Ejection systolic murmur maximal at the 2nd intercostal space, right sternal edge radiating to the neck.

### Investigations

- ECG: left ventricular hypertrophy and strain (with secondary ST–T wave abnormalities).

- CXR: normal until the left ventricle begins to fail, post-stenotic dilatation of the aorta, calcified aortic annulus.
- Echocardiogram: enables calculation of valve gradient (see table) and assessment of left ventricular performance.
- Cardiac catheterisation is also used to estimate the gradient across the valve and to quantify any concurrent coronary artery disease.

### Perioperative care

- Symptomatic patients for elective non-cardiac surgery should have aortic valve replacement first as they are at great risk of sudden death perioperatively (untreated severe symptomatic stenosis has a 50% 1yr survival).
- Asymptomatic patients for major elective surgery associated with marked fluid shifts (thoracic, abdominal, major orthopaedic) with gradients across the valve  $>50\text{mmHg}$  should have valve replacement considered prior to surgery.
- Asymptomatic patients for intermediate or minor surgery generally do well if managed carefully.

### Haemodynamic goals

- (Low) normal heart rate.
- Maintain sinus rhythm.
- Adequate volume loading.
- High normal systemic vascular resistance.

Patients with severe aortic stenosis have a fixed cardiac output. They cannot compensate for falls in systemic vascular resistance which result in severe hypotension, myocardial ischaemia, and a downward spiral of reduced contractility causing further falls in blood pressure and coronary perfusion.

The selected technique should maintain afterload and avoid tachycardia to maintain the balance between myocardial oxygen demand and supply. Titrate drugs carefully. Treat hypotension using direct acting  $\alpha$ -agonists such as metaraminol and phenylephrine as these improve systolic and diastolic LV function. Careful fluid balance is essential, guided by invasive monitoring if required (CVP, oesophageal Doppler, transoesophageal echocardiography). Direct measurement of arterial blood pressure should be routine except for very short procedures.

Arrhythmias must be treated promptly or haemodynamic collapse may ensue. Effective analgesia avoids catecholamine-induced tachycardia and hypertension and the risk of cardiac ischaemia. However, central neuraxial blocks must be used with extreme caution because of the danger of hypotension due to afterload reduction. Limb blocks can be used alone or in conjunction with general anaesthesia.

### Postoperative management

- Have a low threshold for admission to ICU/HDU.
- Meticulous attention must be paid to fluid balance and postoperative pain management.
- Infusions of vasoconstrictors may be required to maintain haemodynamic stability.



## Aortic regurgitation (see also p348)

- Primary aortic regurgitation may result from rheumatic heart disease or endocarditis.
- Aortic dissection and connective tissue disorders that dilate the aortic root (tertiary syphilis, Marfan's syndrome p317, ankylosing spondylitis p195) result in secondary aortic incompetence.
- Valvular regurgitation usually develops over many years, allowing the heart to adapt to increased volume.
- Acute regurgitation secondary to endocarditis or aortic dissection presents with acute left heart failure and pulmonary oedema. Such patients require emergency valve surgery.

In patients who have chronic aortic regurgitation:

- Afterload and heart rate determine the degree of regurgitation. Lower aortic pressure decreases left ventricular afterload, augmenting forward flow.
- Vasodilators increase forward flow by lowering afterload, decrease left ventricular size, and enhance ejection fraction.
- Heart rates greater than 90bpm reduce diastolic 'regurgitation' time and degree of regurgitation.
- Aortic diastolic pressure is dependent on the aortic valve and decreases when the valve becomes incompetent.

### History

- Dyspnoea, secondary to pulmonary congestion.
- Palpitations.

### Examination

- Widened pulse pressure.
- Collapsing ('waterhammer') pulse. Corrigan's sign—visible neck pulsation. De Musset's sign—head nodding. Quincke's sign—visible capillary pulsations in the nail beds.
- Diastolic murmur 2nd intercostal space right sternal edge.

### Investigations

- CXR: cardiomegaly, boot-shaped heart.
- ECG: non-specific LVH.
- Echocardiography gives qualitative analysis of the degree of regurgitation.

### Perioperative care

Asymptomatic patients usually tolerate non-cardiac surgery well. Patients with poor functional capacity need to be considered for valve replacement surgery.

### Haemodynamic goals

- High normal heart rate—around 90bpm.
- Adequate volume loading.
- Low systemic vascular resistance.
- Maintain contractility.

The selected anaesthetic should maintain afterload in the low normal range to maintain diastolic pressure. Spinal and epidural anaesthesia are well tolerated. Treat perioperative SVT/atrial fibrillation promptly with synchronised DC cardioversion see p86 and p918, particularly if associated with hypotension. Persistent bradycardia may need to be treated with  $\beta$ -agonist or anticholinergic agents. Intra-arterial pressure monitoring is useful for major surgery. Oesophageal Doppler and other methods of cardiac output monitoring are inaccurate.

## Mitral stenosis (see also p350)

- Rheumatic fever is the commonest cause. A minority have isolated stenosis; the majority have mixed mitral valve disease (stenosis and regurgitation). Mitral valve stenosis underfills the left ventricle and increases both pressure and volume upstream of the valve.
- The left ventricle functions normally but is small and poorly filled.
- Initially the left atrium dilates, keeping the pulmonary artery pressure low. As disease progresses pulmonary artery pressure increases and medial hypertrophy develops, resulting in chronic reactive pulmonary hypertension. The right heart hypertrophies to pump against a pressure overload, then fails. Secondary pulmonary/tricuspid regurgitation develops.
- The pressure gradient across the narrow mitral orifice increases with the square of cardiac output (NB pregnancy). Rapid heart rates, especially with atrial fibrillation, decrease diastolic filling time and markedly decrease cardiac output.
- LV filling is optimised by a slow heart rate.

Patients are frequently dyspnoeic due to fluid transudate in the lungs, which reduces lung compliance and increases the work of breathing. Pulmonary oedema may occur if the pulmonary venous pressure exceeds the plasma oncotic pressure. This is especially likely if a large fluid bolus, head-down position, or a uterine contraction raises pulmonary pressure suddenly.

Normal valve surface area	4–6cm <sup>2</sup>
Symptom-free until	1.6–2.5cm <sup>2</sup>
Moderate stenosis	1–1.5cm <sup>2</sup>
Severe stenosis	<1.0cm <sup>2</sup>

### History

- Dyspnoea, haemoptysis, recurrent bronchitis.
- Fatigue.
- Palpitations.

### Examination

- Mitral facies—malar flush on cheeks.
- Peripheral cyanosis.
- Signs of right heart failure (elevated JVP, hepatomegaly, peripheral oedema, ascites).
- Tapping apex beat. Loud first heart sound, opening snap (if in sinus rhythm), and low-pitched diastolic murmur heard best at the apex (with the bell of the stethoscope).

### Investigations

- ECG: P mitrale (left atrial enlargement) if sinus rhythm. Atrial fibrillation usual.

- CXR: valve calcification. Large left atrium (lateral film). Double shadow behind heart on PA film. Splaying of the carina. Kerley B lines indicating pulmonary congestion.
- Echocardiography: measures the gradient and valve area—see table.

### Perioperative care

Asymptomatic patients usually tolerate non-cardiac surgery well. Patients with poor functional capacity need to be considered for mitral valve replacement.

### Haemodynamic goals

- Low normal heart rate 50–70bpm. Treat tachycardia aggressively with  $\beta$ -blockers.
- Maintain sinus rhythm if possible. Immediate cardioversion if AF occurs perioperatively.
- Adequate preload.
- High normal systemic vascular resistance.
- Avoid hypercarbia, acidosis, and hypoxia, which may exacerbate pulmonary hypertension.

Anaesthesia—similar to aortic stenosis as there is a relatively fixed cardiac output. Maintain adequate afterload, slow heart rate, and avoid hypovolaemia. Measure CVP/PAOP and maintain an adequate preload. Spinal and epidural anaesthesia may be very hazardous.

## **Mitral regurgitation** (see also p352)

- Mitral regurgitation (MR) results from leaflet, chordal, or papillary muscle abnormalities or is secondary to left ventricular dysfunction.
- Leaflet MR is a complication of endocarditis, rheumatic fever, and mitral valve prolapse.
- Chordal MR follows chordae rupture after acute myocardial infarction or after bacterial endocarditis.
- Papillary muscle MR results from ischaemic posterior papillary muscle dysfunction.
- Left ventricular failure leads to varying amounts of MR when the mitral annulus dilates.
- As much as 50% of the left ventricular volume flows into a massively dilated left atrium through the incompetent mitral valve before the aortic valve opens. Left ventricular ejection fraction is therefore supranormal.
- Pulmonary vascular congestion develops, followed by pulmonary hypertension.
- The degree of regurgitation is determined by the afterload, size of the regurgitant orifice, and the heart rate. A moderately increased heart rate (>90bpm) decreases the time for regurgitation in systole and decreases the time for diastolic filling, reducing LV overload.

### **History**

- Fatigue, weakness.
- Dyspnoea.

### **Examination**

- Displaced and forceful apex (the more severe the regurgitation, the larger the ventricle).
- Soft S<sub>1</sub>, apical pansystolic murmur radiating to the axilla, loud S<sub>3</sub>.
- Atrial fibrillation.

### **Investigations**

- ECG: left atrial enlargement. Atrial fibrillation.
- CXR: left atrial and left ventricular enlargement. Mitral annular calcification.
- Echocardiography assesses the degree of regurgitation. (Transoesophageal echo particularly useful as mitral valve close to the oesophagus.)

### **Perioperative care**

Asymptomatic patients usually tolerate non-cardiac surgery well. Patients with poor functional capacity need to be considered for valve replacement surgery.

### **Haemodynamic goals**

- High normal heart rate.
- Adequate preload.
- Low systemic vascular resistance.
- Low pulmonary vascular resistance.

Anaesthesia—aims are similar to aortic regurgitation. Preload can be difficult to estimate; for major non-cardiac surgery a pulmonary artery catheter may be useful. In advanced disease, pulmonary hypertension is common—avoid factors that increase pulmonary artery pressure (hypoxia, hypercarbia, high inspiratory pressures, acidosis).

### Mitral valve prolapse

- Common (incidental finding in 5% of population).
- Usually asymptomatic, but may be associated with atypical chest pain, palpitations, syncope, and emboli.
- Mid-systolic click and late diastolic murmur.
- Echocardiography shows enlarged redundant mitral valve leaflets prolapsing into the left atrium during mid- to late-systole causing arrhythmias and regurgitation.
- Antiarrhythmics must be continued perioperatively.

### Mixed valve lesions

- With mixed regurgitant/stenotic lesions manage the dominant lesion.

### Further reading

Douketis JD, Berger PB, Dunn AS et al. (2008). The perioperative management of antithrombotic therapy. *Chest*, **133**, 299S–339S.

## **The patient with an undiagnosed murmur**

Most heart murmurs do not signify cardiac disease. Many are related to physiological increases in blood flow. Assess functional capacity (Duke Activity Status Index, p47) and the presence or absence of symptoms. Many asymptomatic children and young adults with a murmur can safely undergo anaesthesia and surgery if they have good functional capacity and are asymptomatic.

Elderly asymptomatic patients may have an 'aortic' systolic murmur related to sclerotic aortic valve leaflets. Aortic sclerosis is now considered to be an early form of aortic stenosis, but should not cause clinical problems until progression to stenosis occurs. Factors that differentiate early asymptomatic sclerosis from stenosis include:

- Good exercise tolerance ( $>4$ METs)
- No history of angina/breathlessness/syncope
- Absence of slow rising pulse (normal pulse pressure)
- Absence of LVH/LV strain on ECG.

The volume of the murmur does not help.

Take a full history and examine the ECG/CXR. Patients able to manage 4 METs (able to climb a flight of stairs, walk at 6km/hr on the flat see p47) with a normal ECG and CXR will tolerate minor and intermediate surgery but should have an echocardiogram prior to major surgery. Conversely poor functional capacity in association with an abnormal ECG (such as ventricular hypertrophy or a prior infarction) should be investigated by echocardiography.

## Pericardial disease

### Acute pericarditis

- Usually a viral condition presenting with chest pain. Diagnosis is supported by widespread ST elevation on ECG.
- Frequently occurs with myocarditis which may increase the likelihood of arrhythmia and sudden death.
- Elective surgery should be postponed for at least 6wk.

### Constrictive pericarditis

- This may be postinfective or secondary to an autoimmune disease such as SLE (see p196). The only effective treatment is pericardectomy which may be dramatically effective.
- Pulsus paradoxus may be evident—a fall in systolic blood pressure with inspiration. The normal maximum fall is 10mmHg.
- Systolic function of the myocardium is well maintained but diastolic function is severely impaired. When exercise tolerance is reduced general anaesthesia carries a significant risk.
- Bradycardia and reduced cardiac filling are poorly tolerated.
- Elevations in intrathoracic pressure, as occur during IPPV, can result in profound hypotension.
- If anaesthesia is unavoidable and regional block is not possible then a spontaneously breathing technique is preferable to IPPV. Preload should be maintained and tachycardia avoided.



## Cardiomyopathy

Most patients have heart failure and have little reserve for surgery and anaesthesia.

### Hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy (HOCM)

- Causes dynamic obstruction of the left ventricular outflow during systole.
- Main feature is asymmetric hypertrophy of the interventricular septum, which obstructs the outflow tract when it contracts.
- Ventricular systole is associated with movement of the anterior mitral valve leaflet towards the septum ('systolic anterior motion'—SAM) and the outflow tract is further obstructed. In some patients this causes mitral regurgitation.
- As with aortic stenosis, HOCM results in a pressure overload of the left ventricle. Diastolic dysfunction is evident on echo.
- Sinus rhythm is crucial to maintain ventricular filling.

Aetiology is unknown but possibly inherited as an autosomal dominant condition in >50% of cases. Patients present with symptoms similar to aortic stenosis—angina, dyspnoea, syncope, and palpitations. Sudden death is common. ECG is abnormal, showing evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy.

Echocardiography is essential to estimate the degree of functional obstruction, asymmetric left ventricular hypertrophy, and SAM of the mitral valve.

Inotropes are contraindicated as left ventricular obstruction is exacerbated by increased myocardial contractility. Treatment is with  $\beta$ -blockers or verapamil as they are negatively inotropic. Patients are prone to arrhythmias which are refractory to medical treatment and may require dual chamber pacing or the insertion of an automatic implantable cardioverter defibrillator.

### Haemodynamic goals

Maintain a 'large ventricle' since dynamic obstruction is reduced.

- Low normal heart rate.
- Maintain sinus rhythm.
- Adequate volume loading.
- High normal systemic vascular resistance.
- Low ventricular contractility.

Invasive haemodynamic monitoring is indicated. Measurement of the CVP or use of oesophageal Doppler helps to guide volume resuscitation. Direct acting  $\alpha$ -agonists such as metaraminol may be used in an emergency.

### Restrictive cardiomyopathy

Rare condition. Commonest cause is myocardial infiltration by amyloid. Characterised by stiff ventricles that impair ventricular filling. Right heart failure often prominent. Echocardiography shows diastolic dysfunction.

- Anaesthesia is hazardous.
- Peripheral vasodilatation, myocardial depression, and reduced venous return may cause catastrophic cardiovascular decompensation and may precipitate cardiac arrest.

- Venous return may be further compromised by positive pressure ventilation. Wherever possible maintain spontaneous respiration.
- Ketamine may be useful as it increases myocardial contractility and peripheral resistance.
- Fluids should be given to maintain elevated right heart pressures.

### **Haemodynamic goals**

- Maintain sinus rhythm.
- Adequate volume loading.
- High normal systemic vascular resistance.
- Avoid myocardial depression.

### **Dilated cardiomyopathy**

- Manifests as cardiac failure with an enlarged poorly contractile heart. Stroke volume is initially preserved by dilatation and increased LV end diastolic volume. Functional mitral and tricuspid incompetence occurs commonly due to dilatation of the valve annulus, exacerbating heart failure.
- Commonest problems are heart failure, arrhythmias, and embolic phenomena.
- Heart failure is treated with diuretics, ACE inhibitors, and vasodilators. Amiodarone is the drug of choice for arrhythmias as it has least myocardial depressant effect. Patients are frequently anticoagulated. Synchronised dual chamber pacing may be used. Some patients may have a biventricular pacing/defibrillator (AICD) in place (see p94).
- Invasive cardiovascular monitoring is required during anaesthesia (arterial and pulmonary arterial catheters and non-invasive methods of cardiac output estimation, e.g. oesophageal Doppler, PiCCO, LiDCO).

### **Haemodynamic goals**

- Maintain sinus rhythm.
- Adequate volume loading.
- Normal systemic vascular resistance.
- Avoid myocardial depression: inotropic support is frequently required with dobutamine or phosphodiesterase inhibitors.

### **Further reading**

Bovill JG (2003). Anaesthesia for patients with impaired ventricular function. *Seminars in Cardiothoracic and Vascular Anesthesia*, **7**, 49–54.

## Patients with a transplanted heart

(See also 'Anaesthesia after lung transplantation', p125.)

Heart transplantation is increasing in frequency and patients may present to a non-specialist centre for non-cardiac surgery. Anaesthesia requires attention to:

- Altered physiology
- Effects of immunosuppression
- Medications
- Associated risk factors.

### Altered physiology

- The heart is denervated; resting heart rates are usually around 85–95bpm. Some patients may have experienced temporary bradyarrhythmias after transplantation. A pacemaker may be in situ.
- Normal autonomic system responses are lost (beat-to-beat variation in heart rate, response to Valsalva manoeuvre/carotid sinus massage).
- Contractility of the heart is close to normal, unless rejection is developing. In the absence of sympathetic innervation the age- predicted maximal heart rate is reduced.
- Despite some evidence that reinnervation can occur some years after transplantation the heart should be viewed as permanently denervated. This results in poor tolerance of acute hypovolaemia.
- If pharmacological manipulation is required then direct-acting agents should be used: atropine has no effect on the denervated heart, the effect of ephedrine is reduced and unpredictable, and hydralazine and phenylephrine produce no reflex tachy- or bradycardia in response to their primary action. Adrenaline, noradrenaline, isoprenaline, and  $\beta$ - and  $\alpha$ -blockers act as expected.

### Immunosuppression

Three classes of drugs are used:

- Immunophilin binding drugs (ciclosporin A, tacrolimus) prevent cytokine-mediated T cell activation and proliferation.
- Nucleic acid synthesis inhibitors (azathioprine) block lymphocyte proliferation.
- Steroids block the production of inflammatory cytokines, lyse T lymphocytes, and alter the function of the remaining lymphocytes.

Anaemia and thrombocytopenia as well as leucopenia may result, requiring treatment before surgery. Ciclosporin is associated with renal dysfunction and is the most likely cause of hypertension that affects 40% of heart–lung transplant recipients. It may also prolong the action of non-depolarising muscle relaxants. Calcium antagonists increase ciclosporin levels variably and are used in some centres to reduce ciclosporin dose in an attempt to reduce side effects. The effect on blood concentrations must be remembered if calcium antagonists are omitted for any reason perioperatively. Renal dysfunction is also commonly caused by tacrolimus. Steroid supplementation may be required if large doses of prednisolone are being used.

Strict asepsis must be used with all invasive procedures.

### Associated risk factors

- Previous and often repeated use of central and peripheral vessels can make IV and arterial access difficult.
- Cough may be impaired due to a combination of phrenic and recurrent laryngeal nerve palsies. This increases the risks of sputum retention and postoperative chest infection.
- Heart–lung recipients will have a tracheal anastomosis. It is desirable to avoid unnecessary intubation, but if it is necessary use a short tube and carefully monitor tracheal cuff pressure. Disrupted lung lymphatic drainage increases the risk of pulmonary oedema.
- The transplanted heart develops coronary artery disease.

### Choice of technique

There is no evidence to support one anaesthetic technique above another.

- Peripheral surgery under regional block is likely to be well tolerated.
- Subarachnoid/epidural block may result in marked falls in blood pressure because of absent cardiac innervation.

### Further reading

Toivonen HJ (2000). Anaesthesia for patients with a transplanted organ. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*, **44**, 812–833.

## **Congenital heart disease and non-cardiac surgery**

Congenital heart disease (CHD) is common—8:1000 births, with 85% of affected children reaching adult life. Although most of these children will have undergone corrective surgery, many will have residual problems. Studies have reported a high incidence of adverse perioperative events in CHD patients undergoing non-cardiac surgical procedures.

### **General considerations**

Operative procedures for CHD aim to improve the patient's haemodynamic status, although complete cure is not always achieved. Paediatric cardiac surgical procedures can be divided as follows:

- Curative procedures: the patient is completely cured and life expectancy is normal (e.g. persistent ductus arteriosus and atrial septal defect closure).
- Corrective procedures: the patient's haemodynamic status is markedly improved but life expectancy may not be normal (e.g. tetralogy of Fallot repair see also p79).
- Palliative procedures: these patients may have abnormal circulations and physiology but avoid the consequences of untreated CHD. Life expectancy is not normal but many survive to adulthood (e.g. Fontan procedures see also p79).

### **Preoperative assessment**

Aim to gain an understanding of the anatomy and pathophysiology of the patient's cardiac defect.

- History: define the nature and severity of the lesion. Ask about CCF—especially limitation of daily activities. Consider other associated abnormalities. Check current medication.
- Examination: check for cyanosis, peripheral oedema, hepatosplenomegaly, murmurs, and signs of infection/failure. Check peripheral pulses. Neurological examination for cyanotic patients.
- Investigations: CXR/ECG. Record baseline SpO<sub>2</sub> on air. Laboratory tests depend on the proposed surgery, but most will require FBC, clotting screen, LFTs, and electrolytes. Some patients will need pulmonary function tests.
- Consult the patient's cardiologist—recent echocardiography report and catheter data should be available. Potential risk factors should be considered, along with potential treatment regimes, e.g. inotropes and vasodilators.
- Consider whether the proposed surgery is necessary, with regard to the potential risks, whether admission to ICU/HDU will be required, and whether the patient can or should be moved to a cardiac centre.

### Factors indicative of high risk

- Recent worsening of CCF or symptoms of myocardial ischaemia.
- Severe hypoxaemia with  $\text{SpO}_2 < 75\%$  on air.
- Polycythaemia (haematocrit  $> 60\%$ ).
- Unexplained dizziness/syncope/fever or recent CVE.
- Severe aortic/pulmonary valve stenosis.
- Uncorrected tetralogy of Fallot or Eisenmenger's syndrome.
- Patients with hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS).
- Recent onset of arrhythmias.

### Specific problems

- Myocardial dysfunction/arrhythmias: may be due to underlying disease (e.g. hypoplastic left ventricle) or secondary (e.g. due to surgery or medication).
- Air emboli: all CHD patients are at risk from air embolism. Intravascular lines should be free of air.
- Cyanosis has many causes, e.g. shunting of blood from the right to left side of the heart (tetralogy of Fallot, Eisenmenger's syndrome) and intracardiac mixing (complete atrioventricular septal defect). Cyanosis results in polycythaemia and increased blood volume. Blood viscosity is increased, impairing tissue perfusion. There is often thrombocytopenia and fibrinogen deficiency leading to a bleeding tendency. An increase in tissue vascularity worsens bleeding problems. Cyanosis can also lead to renal/cerebral thrombosis and renal tubular atrophy.
- Anticoagulant treatment (aspirin or warfarin) is common in CHD patients.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis—see p1254.
- Myocardial ischaemia developing in a patient with CHD is significant and should be investigated.

## Specific CHD lesions

There are over 100 forms of CHD, but 8 lesions account for 83% of all cardiac defects. These are atrial septal defect (ASD), ventricular septal defect (VSD), persistent ductus arteriosus (PDA), pulmonary stenosis (PS), tetralogy of Fallot (TOF), aortic stenosis (AS), coarctation of the aorta, and transposition of the great vessels (TOGV). Many of the other cardiac lesions are managed palliatively by producing a Fontan circulation.

### ASD (secundum type)

- Patients are often asymptomatic.
- Usually results in a left-to-right shunt.
- Can be closed surgically or transcatheter.
- Danger of paradoxical emboli.

### ASD (primum type)

- Endocardial cushion defect—may involve atrioventricular valves.
- More severe form, atrioventricular septal defect (AVSD), is associated with Down's syndrome and results in severe pulmonary hypertension (see p305).
- Surgical repair of these lesions may result in complete heart block.

### VSD

- Commonest form of CHD.
- Clinical effects depend on size and number of VSDs.
- A small, single VSD may be asymptomatic with a small left-to-right shunt (pulmonary:systemic flow ratio  $<1.5:1$ ). In patients who have not had corrective surgery, prevent air emboli and fluid overload.
- Patients with a moderate sized, single VSD often present with mild CCF. They have increased pulmonary blood flow (pulmonary:systemic flow ratio 3:1). If the lesion is not treated they are at risk of pulmonary hypertension and shunt reversal.
- Patients with a large VSD have equal pressures in their right and left ventricles and present at around 2 months of age with severe CCF. They require early operations. However, if they need anaesthesia for another procedure prior to definitive cardiac surgery they present severe problems. They should be intubated, for all but the most minor procedures, and increases in left-to-right shunt should be avoided (e.g. avoid hyperventilation and high  $\text{FiO}_2$ ). Care should be taken with fluid administration, and inotropic support is often required.
- Patients with multiple VSDs often require pulmonary artery banding to protect the pulmonary circulation. This band tightens as the child grows, leading to cyanosis. VSDs often close spontaneously and then the band may be removed.

### PDA

- Patients with PDA may have a moderate left-to-right shunt and this can result in an elevated pulmonary vascular resistance rather like a moderately sized VSD.
- Can be closed surgically or transcatheter.

### Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF)

- Pulmonary stenosis, VSD, overriding aorta, and right ventricular hypertrophy.
- Prior to complete repair, TOF may be treated medically with  $\beta$ -blockade or surgically via a Blalock–Taussig (BT) shunt (subclavian to pulmonary artery).
- In patients without a BT shunt, and prior to definitive surgery, the ratio of SVR:PVR determines both the systemic blood flow and blood oxygen saturation. If they require anaesthesia at this stage they should be intubated and ventilated in order to maintain a low PVR. Cyanosis should be treated with hyperventilation, IV fluid, and systemic vasopressors such as phenylephrine.
- Total repair of TOF is undertaken at around 2–6 months of age.

### Eisenmenger's syndrome

- Associated with markedly increased morbidity and mortality.
- Abnormal and irreversible elevation in PVR resulting in cyanosis and right-to-left shunting. The degree of shunting depends on the PVR:SVR ratio. Increasing the SVR or decreasing the PVR leads to better arterial  $\text{SpO}_2$ , as in patients with TOF.
- Avoid reductions in SVR (epidural/spinal anaesthesia) and rises in PVR (hypoxia/hypercarbia/acidosis/cold).
- Desaturation episodes can be treated as for TOF above.
- Inotropic support may be required for the shortest of procedures and an ITU bed should be available.
- Manage patient in a specialist centre whenever possible.

### Fontan repair

- Palliative procedure, classically for patients with tricuspid atresia, but can be performed for many different cardiac lesions including hypoplastic left heart syndrome. The Fontan procedure is not a specific operation but a class of operations that separate the pulmonary and systemic circulations in patients with an anatomical or physiological single ventricle. This separation is accomplished by ensuring that all superior and inferior vena caval blood flows directly into the pulmonary artery, bypassing the right ventricle and, usually, the right atrium. Thus, pulmonary blood flow is dependent solely on systemic venous pressure.  $\text{SpO}_2$  should be normal.
- Leads to elevated systemic venous pressures, liver congestion, protein-losing enteropathy, tendency for fluid overload, ascites, and pleural and pericardial effusions. Hypovolaemia can lead to hypoxia and cardiovascular collapse. Patients are anticoagulated with warfarin.
- In these patients intermittent positive pressure ventilation results in a fall in cardiac output and high ventilatory pressures result in poor pulmonary perfusion. Fluid overload is poorly tolerated, as is hypovolaemia.
- Central venous pressure monitoring is helpful and is best instituted via the femoral venous route.



## Adults with CHD

Anything but the most straightforward situation should be discussed and the patient referred to a cardiac centre.

### Uncorrected disease

- VSD/ASDs may be small and have no symptoms and little haemodynamic effect. With the exception of the potential for paradoxical emboli, small defects present no anaesthetic problems.
- Lesions resulting in large left-to-right shunts will cause progressive pulmonary hypertension and eventual shunt reversal (Eisenmenger's syndrome). Once irreversible pulmonary hypertension has developed surgical correction is not possible. These patients are high risk. If surgery is absolutely necessary it should be performed in a specialist centre.

### Corrected disease

- These patients have either had spontaneous resolution or a corrective procedure. They can generally be treated as normal.
- Best assessment of cardiovascular function is generally the exercise tolerance.
- Exclude surgical sequelae/continuing disease.
- Exclude any associated congenital abnormalities.

### Palliated disease

- These patients have had operations that improve functional capacity and life expectancy but do not restore normal anatomy. Operations include Senning and Mustard for transposition of the great vessels (neonatal switch is now preferred) and Fontan for single ventricle syndromes (e.g. hypoplastic left heart and pulmonary atresia).
- An understanding of the underlying physiology is required to avoid disaster when anaesthetising these patients. At present, management is best provided in specialist cardiac centres.
- In patients with a Fontan circulation, blood leaves a single ventricle, passes through the systemic circulation and then through the pulmonary circulation, before returning to the heart. The consequences of this are that the CVP is high, providing a pressure gradient across the pulmonary circulation. Any pulmonary hypertension is poorly tolerated and results in reduced ventricular filling. The high venous pressure can result in life-threatening haemorrhage from mucosal procedures such as adenoidectomy (or nasal intubation!).

### Further reading

Andropoulos DB et al. (2005). *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*. Cambridge, MA: Blackwell.  
Nichols DG et al. (1995). *Critical Heart Disease in Infants and Children*. St Louis: Mosby.  
Thorne S, Clift P (2009). *Adult Congenital Heart Disease*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

# Perioperative arrhythmias

## John Dean

Perioperative arrhythmias [82](#)

Narrow complex arrhythmias [84](#)

Broad complex arrhythmias [88](#)

Disturbances of conduction (heart block) [90](#)

Pacemakers and defibrillators [94](#)

See also:

Anaesthetic emergencies:

Severe bradycardia [916](#)

Atrial fibrillation [86](#) and [918](#)

Narrow complex tachycardia [918](#)

Broad complex tachycardia [920](#)

## Perioperative arrhythmias (see also pp910–921)

Perioperative cardiac arrhythmias are common and may be life threatening. Whenever possible they should be controlled preoperatively as surgery and anaesthesia can cause marked deterioration. Management is easier if the underlying problem has been recognised, investigated, and treated preoperatively. Never give an IV drug for any rhythm disturbance unless you are in a position to cardiovert immediately.

### Practical diagnosis of arrhythmias

Ideally undertaken with a paper printout of the ECG and preferably in 12-lead format. In theatre this is often impractical—use the different leads available on the monitor to improve interpretation.

### Determine

- What is the ventricular rate?
- Is the QRS complex of normal duration or widened?
- Is the QRS regular or irregular?
- Are P waves present and are they normally shaped?
- How is atrial activity related to ventricular activity?

### Ventricular rate

- Calculate approximate ventricular rate (divide 300 by the number of large squares between each QRS complex).
- Tachyarrhythmia: rate >100bpm. Bradyarrhythmia: rate <60bpm.

### QRS complex

- Supraventricular rhythms include nodal rhythms and arise from a focus above the ventricles. Since the ventricles still depolarise via the normal His/Purkinje system the QRS complexes are of normal width (<0.12s or 3 small squares) and are termed 'narrow complex rhythms'.
- Arrhythmias arising from the ventricles will be 'broad complex' with a QRS width of >0.12s. In the presence of AV or bundle branch block a supraventricular rhythm may have broad complexes (2%). This may be present on the 12-lead ECG or develop as a consequence of the arrhythmia—rate-related aberrant conduction.

### Regularity

- Irregular rhythm suggests ectopic beats (atrial or ventricular), atrial fibrillation, atrial flutter with variable block, or second-degree heart block with variable block.

### P waves

- The presence of P waves indicates atrial depolarisation. Absent P waves with an irregular ventricular rhythm suggest atrial fibrillation, whereas a saw-toothed pattern is characteristic of atrial flutter.

### Atrial/ventricular activity

- Normally there will be 1 P wave per QRS complex. Any change in this ratio indicates a block to conduction between atria and ventricles.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Narrow complex arrhythmias

### Sinus arrhythmia

Irregular spacing of normal complexes associated with respiration. Constant P–R interval with beat-to-beat change in the R–R interval. Normal finding especially in young people.

### Sinus tachycardia

Rate >100bpm. Normal P–QRS–T complexes are evident. Causes include:

- Inadequate depth of anaesthesia, pain/surgical stimulation
- Fever/sepsis, hypovolaemia, anaemia, heart failure, thyrotoxicosis
- Drugs, e.g. atropine, ketamine, catecholamines

Correct the underlying cause where possible. Beta-blockers may be useful if tachycardia causes myocardial ischaemia but should be used with caution in patients with heart failure or asthma.

### Sinus bradycardia

Rate <60bpm. May be due to vagal stimulation or normal in athletic patients. Other causes include:

- Drugs, e.g.  $\beta$ -blockers, digoxin, anticholinesterases, halothane, suxamethonium
- Myocardial infarction, sick sinus syndrome
- Raised intracranial pressure, hypothyroidism, hypothermia

Unnecessary to correct in fit person unless there is haemodynamic compromise (usually when HR <40–45bpm). However, consider:

- Correcting the underlying cause, e.g. stop surgical stimulus
- Atropine up to 20 $\mu$ g/kg or glycopyrronium 10 $\mu$ g/kg IV
- Patients on  $\beta$ -blockers may be resistant and an isoprenaline infusion is occasionally required (0.5–10 $\mu$ g/min)—adrenaline is an alternative. Glucagon (50–150 $\mu$ g/kg IV in 5% glucose) can be used—this is an unlicensed indication and dose.

### Atrial ectopics

These are common and benign. May occur normally; other causes include:

- Ischaemia/hypoxia
- Light anaesthesia, sepsis, shock
- Anaesthetic drugs

Correct any underlying cause. Specific treatment unnecessary unless runs of atrial tachycardia occur.

### Arrhythmias due to re-entry

These arrhythmias occur where there is an anatomical branching and rejoining of conduction pathways. If an impulse arrives at a time when the first pathway is no longer refractory, it can pass around the circuit repeatedly activating it. The classical example is Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome, where an accessory conduction pathway exists between atria and ventricles. Other re-entry circuits occur with atrial flutter, atrial fibrillation, supraventricular tachycardia, and ventricular tachycardia.

### Junctional/AV nodal/supraventricular tachycardia

- ECG usually shows a narrow complex (QRS  $<0.12s$ ) tachycardia, with a rate of 150–200bpm. A broad complex pattern may occur if anterograde conduction occurs down an accessory pathway or if there is bundle branch block. May cause severe circulatory disturbance.
- If hypotensive, especially if anaesthetised, the first-line treatment is *synchronised* direct current cardioversion with 200 then 360J.
- Carotid sinus massage may slow the rate and reveal the underlying rhythm. It is helpful in differentiating SVT from atrial flutter and fast atrial fibrillation.
- Adenosine blocks AV nodal conduction and is especially useful for terminating re-entry SVT. Give 0.2mg/kg IV rapidly, followed by a saline flush. The effects of adenosine last only 10–15s. It should be avoided in asthma.
- $\beta$ -blockers, e.g. esmolol by IV infusion at 50–200 $\mu$ g/kg/min, or metoprolol 3–5mg over 10min repeated 6-hourly.
- Verapamil 5–10mg IV slowly over 2min is useful in patients with SVT who relapse following adenosine. A further 5mg may be given after 10min if required. This may cause hypotension—avoid with  $\beta$ -blockers.
- Amiodarone is an alternative when first-line drugs have failed.
- Digoxin should be avoided—it facilitates conduction through the AV accessory pathway in Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome and may worsen tachycardia. Atrial fibrillation in the presence of an accessory pathway may allow rapid conduction which can degenerate to ventricular fibrillation.

### Atrial flutter/atrial tachycardia

Due to an ectopic focus the atria contract  $>150$ bpm; P waves can sometimes be seen superimposed on T waves of the preceding beats. In atrial flutter there is no flat baseline between P waves and the typical saw-tooth pattern can be seen. Atrial tachycardia is less common in adults. Both may occur with any kind of block, e.g. 2:1, 3:1, etc. Same risk of thromboembolism as AF.

- Sensitive to synchronised DC cardioversion—nearly 100% conversion. In the anaesthetised patient with recent onset this should be the first line of treatment.
- Carotid sinus massage and adenosine will slow AV conduction and reveal the underlying rhythm and block where there is any doubt.
- Other drug treatment is as for atrial fibrillation.

### Sick sinus syndrome

May coexist with AV nodal disease. Episodes of AV block, atrial tachycardia, atrial flutter, and atrial fibrillation may occur.

- The most common causes are congenital, ischaemic, rheumatic and hypertensive heart disease.
- Can be asymptomatic, or present with dizziness or syncope.
- Permanent pacing required if symptomatic.

### Atrial fibrillation (AF)

Uncoordinated atrial activity with ventricular rate dependent on AV node transmission—commonly 120–180bpm. Causes of AF include:

- Hypertension, myocardial ischaemia, or other disease.
- Pericarditis/mediastinitis, thoracic surgery.
- Mitral valve disease.
- Electrolyte disturbance (especially hypokalaemia or hypomagnesaemia).
- Sepsis, thyrotoxicosis, alcohol—especially binge drinking.

Atrial contraction contributes up to 30% of normal ventricular filling. The onset of AF (particularly fast AF) causes a reduction in ventricular filling and cardiac output. Ischaemia often results due to diastolic time reduction and hypotension.

Blood clots may form within the atria and embolise systemically. This risk is highest if there is a return to sinus rhythm after >48hr of AF. In stable AF the risk of CVE is 4%/yr at 75yr—halved by anticoagulation.

Treatment aims to restore sinus rhythm or control ventricular rate to <100bpm and prevent embolic complications. In acute AF (<48hr) restoration of sinus rhythm is often possible, whereas in longstanding AF control of the ventricular rate is the usual aim. Ideally the ventricular rate should be controlled by appropriate therapy preoperatively. Occasionally rapid control of the rate is required perioperatively.

### Management of acute AF<sup>1,2,3,4</sup>

Correct precipitating factors where possible, especially electrolyte disturbances. When AF is secondary to sepsis or thoracic/oesophageal surgery, conversion to sinus rhythm is difficult until the underlying condition is controlled.

#### Onset <48hr

- Synchronised DC cardioversion at 200 then 360J (if practical).
- Flecainide 2mg/kg (max 150mg) over 30min IV, or 300mg orally, is the best drug for converting AF to sinus rhythm. It should be avoided in patients with ischaemic heart disease or heart failure. Cardiac monitoring required.

#### Onset >48hr

Conversion to sinus rhythm is associated with risk of arterial embolisation unless the patient is anticoagulated (at least 3wk)—aim for rate control unless haemodynamically compromised. Drugs include:

- Digoxin (if K<sup>+</sup> is normal). IV loading dose 500µg in 100ml saline over 20min, repeated at intervals of 4–8hr if necessary, to a total of 1–1.5mg. Lower doses are required for patients already taking digoxin. Digoxin does not convert AF to sinus rhythm, or prevent further episodes of paroxysmal AF.
- $\beta$ -blockers (esmolol, sotalol, metoprolol) may be used to slow ventricular rate—caution with impaired myocardium, thyrotoxicosis and avoid with calcium channel blockers. Beta-blockers can be useful in theatre until other drugs have taken effect.
- Amiodarone slows rate and helps sustain sinus rhythm once regained. There are a number of concerns with long-term side effects which include pulmonary fibrosis. Useful in acute AF associated with critical

illness and can be combined with digoxin or  $\beta$ -blockers. A loading dose of 300mg (in 5% glucose) IV via a central vein is given over 1hr and followed by 900mg over 23hr. It may be given peripherally in an emergency, but extravasation is extremely serious. Well tolerated with LV impairment.

- Verapamil 5–10mg IV may be used to slow ventricular rate in patients unable to tolerate  $\beta$ -blockers. Avoid if there is impaired LV function, evidence of ischaemia, or in combination with  $\beta$ -blockers.

### Uncontrolled chronic AF

Ventricular rates >100bpm should be slowed preoperatively to allow adequate time for ventricular filling/myocardial perfusion.

- Digitalisation if the patient is not already fully loaded with digoxin. This should usually be done over 1–2d preoperatively. Rapid IV digitalisation may be required when the surgery is urgent. Digoxin levels can be measured (therapeutic levels 0.8–2.0 $\mu$ g/l).
- Additional  $\beta$ -blocker (metoprolol, atenolol) or verapamil if good LV function.
- Amiodarone IV if poor LV.<sup>1</sup>

- 1 Nathanson G (1998). Perioperative management of atrial fibrillation. *Anaesthesia*, **53**, 665–676.
- 2 Alboni P, Botto GL, Baldi N et al. (2004). Outpatient treatment of recent-onset atrial fibrillation with the 'pill-in-the-pocket' approach. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **351**, 2384–2391.
- 3 Van Gelder IC, Hagens VE, Bosker HA (2002). A comparison of rate control and rhythm control in patients with recurrent persistent atrial fibrillation: the Rate Control versus Electrical Cardioversion for Persistent Atrial Fibrillation Study Group. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **347**, 1834–1840.
- 4 NICE (2006). *CG36 Atrial Fibrillation: Full Guideline*. <http://guidance.nice.org.uk/cg36/guidance/pdf/english>.



## Broad complex arrhythmias

### Ventricular ectopics

In the absence of structural heart disease, these are usually benign. May be provoked by hypokalaemia, dental procedures, or anal stretch, particularly in combination with halothane, raised CO<sub>2</sub>, and light anaesthesia. In fit young patients, they are of little significance and respond readily to manipulation of the anaesthetic. Small doses of IV  $\beta$ -blocker are usually effective. Occasionally herald the onset of runs of ventricular tachycardia.

- Correct any contributing causes—ensuring adequate oxygenation, normocarbica, and analgesia.
- If the underlying sinus rate is slow (<50bpm), then 'ectopics' may be ventricular escape beats. Try increasing the rate using IV atropine/glycopyrronium.

### Ventricular tachycardia

Focus in the ventricular muscle depolarises at high frequency resulting in wide QRS which may vary in shape. P waves may be seen if there is AV dissociation. This is a serious, potentially life-threatening arrhythmia. It may be triggered intraoperatively by:

- Myocardial ischaemia, hypoxia, hypotension.
- Fluid overload.
- Electrolyte imbalance (low K<sup>+</sup>, Mg<sup>2+</sup>, etc.).
- Injection of adrenaline or other catecholamines.

### Management

- Synchronised DC cardioversion (200 then 360J) if the patient is haemodynamically unstable. Will restore sinus rhythm in virtually 100% of cases. If the VT is pulseless or very rapid, synchronisation is unnecessary. If the patient relapses into VT, lidocaine or amiodarone may be given to sustain sinus rhythm.
- Lidocaine (100mg bolus) restores sinus rhythm in 30–40% of cases and may be followed by a maintenance infusion of 4mg/min for 30min, then 2mg/min for 2hr, then 1mg/min.
- Drugs that may be used if lidocaine fails include:
  - Amiodarone 300mg IV via central venous catheter over 1hr followed by 900mg over 23hr. Give peripherally if necessary.
  - Sotalol 100mg IV over 5min has been shown to be better than lidocaine for acute termination of VT.
  - Procainamide 100mg IV over 5min followed by one or two further boluses before commencing infusion at 3mg/min.

### Supraventricular tachycardia with aberrant conduction

A supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) may be broad complex due to aberrant conduction between atria and ventricles. This may develop secondary to ischaemia and appear only at high heart rates (rate-related aberrant conduction). SVT caused by an abnormal or accessory pathway (e.g. Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome) will be of normal width if conduction in the accessory pathway is retrograde (i.e. it is the normal pathway that initiates the QRS complex) but broad complex if conduction is anterograde in the

accessory pathway. Adenosine may be used diagnostically to slow AV conduction and will often reveal the underlying rhythm. In the case of SVT it may also result in conversion to sinus rhythm. In practice, however, all broad complex tachycardias should be treated as ventricular tachycardia until proven otherwise.

### Acute management of broad complex tachycardia

- If in doubt as to nature of rhythm assume it is ventricular rather than supraventricular tachycardia (98% will be, especially if there is a history of ischaemic heart disease).
- In the presence of hypotension/cardiovascular compromise—synchronised DC shock with 200 then 360J.
- Perform a 12-lead ECG—if possible both before and after correction, as this will help with retrospective diagnosis.
- If the patient is not acutely compromised, adenosine 0.2mg/kg rapidly IV will be both diagnostic and often curative if it is a supraventricular tachycardia.

### Ventricular fibrillation

- This results in cardiac arrest. There is chaotic and disorganised contraction of ventricular muscle and no QRS complexes can be identified on the ECG.
- Immediate direct current cardioversion as per established resuscitation protocol (200, 200, thereafter 360J)—see p912.

### Action plan in theatre when faced with an arrhythmia

- Assess vital signs—ABC.
- Determine whether the arrhythmia is serious (cardiovascular compromise—BP/CO/HR).

### Is there a problem with the anaesthetic?

- Oxygenation?
- Ventilation—check end tidal CO<sub>2</sub>.
- Anaesthesia too light—alter inspired volatile agent concentration and give a bolus of rapid acting analgesic, e.g. alfentanil.
- Drug interaction/error?

### Is there a problem with surgery?

- Vagal stimulation from traction on the eye or peritoneum.
- Loss of cardiac output—air/fat embolism.
- Unexpected blood loss.
- Injection of adrenaline.
- Mediastinal manipulation.

## Disturbances of conduction (heart block)

### First-degree block

Delay in conduction from the SA node to the ventricles. Prolongation of the PR interval to  $>0.2s$ . Normally benign but may progress to second-degree block, usually Mobitz type I. First-degree heart block is not a problem during anaesthesia.

### Second-degree block—Mobitz type I (Wenkebach)

Progressive lengthening of the PR interval and then failure of conduction of an atrial beat. This is followed by a conducted beat and the cycle repeats. This occurs commonly after inferior myocardial infarction and tends to be self-limiting. Asymptomatic patients do not normally require treatment perioperatively but may require long-term pacing as a 2:1 type block may develop with haemodynamic instability.

### Second-degree block—Mobitz type II

Excitation intermittently fails to pass through the AV node or the bundle of His. Most beats are conducted normally but occasionally there is atrial contraction without a subsequent ventricular contraction. This often progresses to complete heart block.

### Second-degree block—2:1 type

Alternately conducted and non-conducted beats, resulting in two P waves for every QRS complex. 3:1 block may also occur, with one conducted beat and two non-conducted beats. This may progress to complete heart block.

### Third-degree block/complete heart block

Complete failure of conduction between atria and ventricles. Occasionally a transient phenomenon due to severe vagal stimulation, in which case it often responds to stopping stimulation and IV atropine. Very rarely it may be congenital.

### Bundle branch block

If there is a delay in depolarisation of the right or left bundle branches, this will cause a delay in depolarisation of part of the ventricular muscle with subsequent QRS widening.

### Right bundle branch block

Wide complexes with an 'RSR' in lead V1 (may appear 'M' shaped) and a small initial negative downward deflection followed by a larger upwards positive wave and then a second downward wave in V6. Often benign.

**Left bundle branch block**

Septal depolarisation is reversed so there is a change in the initial direction of the QRS complex in every lead. This may indicate heart disease and makes further interpretation of the ECG other than rate and rhythm difficult.

**Bifascicular block**

Combination of right bundle branch block and block of the left anterior or left posterior fascicle. Right bundle branch block with left anterior hemiblock is more common and appears as an 'RSR' in V1 together with left-axis deviation. Right bundle branch block with left posterior hemiblock is less common and appears as right bundle branch block with an abnormal degree of right-axis deviation. However, other causes for right-axis deviation should be considered and it is a non-specific sign.

**Trifascicular block**

Sometimes used to indicate the presence of a prolonged PR interval together with bifascicular block.

**Preoperative management**

- First-degree heart block in the absence of symptoms is common. It needs no specific investigation or treatment.
- Second- or third-degree heart block may need pacemaker insertion. If surgery is urgent this may be achieved quickly by inserting a temporary transvenous wire prior to definitive insertion.
- Bundle branch, bifascicular, or trifascicular block (bifascicular with first-degree block) will rarely progress to complete heart block during anaesthesia and so it is not normal practice to insert a pacing wire unless there have been episodes of syncope.

**Indications for preoperative pacing**

- Symptomatic first-degree heart block
- Symptomatic second-degree (Mobitz I) heart block
- Second-degree (Mobitz II) heart block
- Third-degree heart block
- Symptomatic bifascicular block or symptomatic first-degree heart block plus bifascicular block (trifascicular block)
- Slow rates unresponsive to drugs.

**Intraoperative heart block**

- Atropine is rarely effective but should be tried.
- If hypotension is profound then an isoprenaline infusion (alternative is adrenaline) can be used to temporise: 1–10 µg/min.
  - Dilute 0.2mg in 500ml of 5% glucose and titrate to effect (2–20ml/min) or
  - Dilute 1mg in 50ml 5% glucose/dextrose–saline and titrate to effect (1.5–30ml/hr).
- Transcutaneous pacing may be practical in theatre if electrodes can be placed. Oesophageal pacing is also effective. The electrode is passed into the oesophagus like a nasogastric tube and connected to the pulse generator. The position can be adjusted until there is ventricular capture.
- Transvenous pacing is both more reliable and effective and relatively easy. A Swan–Ganz sheath of adequate size to pass the wire is inserted into the internal jugular or subclavian vein (this can be done while other equipment is being collected).
  - Insert balloon-tipped pacing wire to the 20cm mark.
  - Inflate the balloon and connect pulse generator at 5V.
  - Advance until ventricular capture. When this happens deflate the balloon and insert a further 5cm of catheter.
  - If the 50cm mark is reached the catheter is coiling up or not entering the heart. Deflate the balloon, withdraw to the 20cm mark, and try again.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Pacemakers and defibrillators

Pacemakers are usually used to treat bradyarrhythmias. However, biventricular systems are used to improve functional capacity and quality of life in selected patients with severe heart failure.

The Heart Rhythm Society (HRS) and Heart Rhythm Society UK (HRSUK) pacemaker codes are used to describe pacemaker types and function. The code consists of five letters or positions. The first three describe antibradycardia functions and are always stated. The fourth and fifth positions relate to additional functions and are often omitted.

Position 1: chamber paced (O/V/A/D—none, ventricle, atrium, dual)

Position 2: sensing chamber (O/V/A/D)

Position 3: response to sensing (O/T/I/D—none, triggered, inhibited, dual)

Position 4: programmability or rate modulation (O/P/M/R—none, simple programmable, multiprogrammable, rate modulation)

Position 5: antitachycardia functions (O/P/S/D—none, pacing, shock, dual)

### Implications for anaesthesia and surgery

- Patients with pacemakers should attend follow-up clinics. The most recent visit should confirm adequate battery life and normal function of the pacemaker system. A preoperative ECG will provide confirmation of expected function, e.g. AV synchronicity, polarity of pacing, and baseline rate.
- The main source of concern is electromagnetic interference (EMI). Possible responses include inappropriate triggering or inhibition of a paced output, asynchronous pacing, reprogramming (usually into a backup mode), and damage to device circuitry. Pacing wires may also act as aerials and cause heating where they contact the endocardium. Diathermy is the most common source of EMI found in the operating theatre.
- Bipolar diathermy is safe. If conventional diathermy is necessary, position the plate so that most of the current passes away from the pacemaker. In an emergency most pacemakers can be changed to asynchronous ventricular pacing (V00) by placing a magnet over the box. There is a theoretical risk of inducing ventricular fibrillation as the magnet-induced asynchronous pacing may result in stimulation during a vulnerable period and induce an arrhythmia—‘competitive pacing’. In modern pacemakers the switch to asynchronous pacing is coupled with the next cardiac cycle to avoid this.
- For patients with severe heart failure, where loss of AV synchrony may precipitate haemodynamic compromise, there should be a telemetric programmer and cardiac technician close at hand.

### Implantable cardioverter defibrillators (ICDs)

- The National Institute for Clinical Excellence (NICE) has recently recommended that ICDs should be routinely considered for patients who have survived ventricular fibrillation or ventricular tachycardia with haemodynamic compromise.
- In addition NICE recommends these devices should be used as primary prevention for sudden cardiac death in patients with impaired ventricular function (ejection fraction <35%), non-sustained ventricular tachycardia on ambulatory 24hr monitoring, and inducible ventricular tachycardia at electrophysiological testing.
- These devices should be disabled for anaesthesia and surgery as diathermy signals may be interpreted as an arrhythmia and cause inappropriate discharge. Facilities for external defibrillation should be immediately available. If possible, remote pads should be applied in suitable positions prior to surgery.

### HRS/HRSUK codes to describe ICD type and function

Position 1: shock chamber (O/A/V/D—none, atrium, ventricle, dual).

Position 2: chamber to which antitachycardia pacing is delivered (O/A/V/D).

Position 3: means of detection of tachyarrhythmia (E/H—intracardiac electrogram, haemodynamic means).

Position 4: the three or five letter code for the pacemaker capability of the device (as above).

### Further reading

Salukhe TV, Dob D, Sutton R (2004). Pacemakers and defibrillators: anaesthetic implications. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **93**, 95–104.



*This page intentionally left blank*

# Respiratory disease

## Matthew Size and Bruce McCormick

- Effects of surgery and anaesthesia on respiratory function 98
- Predicting postoperative pulmonary complications 99
- Assessment of respiratory function 100
- Respiratory investigations 102
- Postoperative care 104
- Postoperative admission to HDU/ICU 106
- Respiratory tract infection and elective surgery 107
- Smoking 108
- Asthma 110
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) 114
- Bronchiectasis 116
- Cystic fibrosis 118
- Restrictive pulmonary disease 120
- Sleep apnoea syndrome 122
- Sarcoidosis 124
- Anaesthesia after lung transplantation 125

## Effects of surgery and anaesthesia on respiratory function

### Site of surgical incision

- Upper abdominal operations are associated with pulmonary complications in 20–40% of the general surgical population.
- Incidence with lower abdominal surgery is 2–5%.
- Following upper abdominal or thoracic surgery, lung volume (FRC) and tidal volume fall, and coughing may be ineffective. The diaphragm moves less after abdominal surgery (vital capacity falls by 50% after open cholecystectomy, even in healthy patients).
- Poor basal air entry and sputum retention often result, which may develop into atelectasis and/or infection. Effective postoperative analgesia, early mobilisation, and physiotherapy may reduce both the incidence and severity.

### Pre-existing respiratory dysfunction

- Patients with underlying respiratory disease are at increased risk of developing problems during and after surgery.<sup>1</sup>
- Complications are minimised if the underlying condition is identified and optimally controlled preoperatively.
- All patients benefit from a review of their medical therapy, early mobilisation, and pre- and postoperative chest physiotherapy.
- Consider review by a respiratory physician.

### Anaesthesia

- On induction of anaesthesia, functional residual capacity (FRC) decreases by 15–20% (~450ml): the diaphragm relaxes/moves cranially and the rib cage moves inward.
- FRC may be reduced by 50% of awake supine value in morbidly obese patients. Positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP) may reduce these effects. FRC is relatively maintained during ketamine anaesthesia.
- Under anaesthesia, closing capacity (the lung volume at which airway closure begins) encroaches upon FRC and airway closure occurs. This happens more readily in smokers, the elderly, and those with underlying lung disease.
- Chest CT shows atelectasis in the dependent zones of the lungs in >80% of anaesthetised subjects. At least 10% of pulmonary blood flow is shunted or goes to areas of low V/Q ratio.
- Intubation halves dead space by circumventing the upper airway.
- The ventilatory response to hypercapnia is blunted and the acute responses to hypoxia and acidaemia almost abolished by anaesthetic vapours at concentrations as low as 0.1 MAC.
- Most of these adverse changes are more marked in patients with lung disease but usually improve within a few hours postoperatively. After major surgery they may last several days.

<sup>1</sup> Hall JC, Tarala RA, Tapper J, Hall J (1996). Prevention of respiratory complications after abdominal surgery: a randomised control trial. *British Medical Journal*, **312**, 148–152.

## Predicting postoperative pulmonary complications<sup>1</sup>

- Postoperative pulmonary complications are as prevalent as cardiac complications and contribute similarly to morbidity and mortality.
- Preoperative identification of patients with pre-existing respiratory dysfunction reduces postoperative complications.
- Even for patients with severe pulmonary disease, surgery that does not involve the abdominal or chest cavities is inherently of very low risk for serious perioperative pulmonary complications.
- Abnormal findings on examination or an abnormal CXR may reflect significant lung disease and are independent predictors of pulmonary complications.
- Absence of symptoms or signs does not exclude significant pathology which will be unmasked by anaesthesia (e.g. sarcoidosis—see p124).
- Spirometry was formerly considered highly important in the assessment of surgical patients. Recent evidence suggests that preoperative spirometry does not predict individual risk of pulmonary complications and should not be used alone to determine operability for non-thoracic surgery.
- Large and rigorous studies to identify risk factors for pulmonary complications are lacking (in contrast to those identifying cardiac risk).

### Factors shown to predict perioperative pulmonary complications

#### Patient factors

- Increasing age (>60yr)
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
- Smoking within 8wk of surgery
- ASA grade 2 or greater
- Congestive heart failure
- Functional dependence
- Alcohol use
- Impaired consciousness
- Serum albumin less than 35g/dl

#### Procedure-related factors

- Prolonged surgery
- Upper abdominal and thoracic surgery
- Neurosurgery, head and neck surgery
- Vascular surgery, especially aortic aneurysm repair
- Emergency surgery

<sup>1</sup> Smetana GW, Lawrence VA, Cornell JE (2006). Preoperative pulmonary risk stratification for noncardiothoracic surgery: systematic review for the American College of Physicians. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, **144**, 581–595.

## Assessment of respiratory function<sup>1,2,3</sup>

### History

- Ask about hospital admissions with respiratory disease, particularly admissions to intensive care.
- Determine patient's assessment of lung function and their compliance with treatment. Respiratory disease tends to fluctuate in severity and patients are usually best at determining their current state. Elective surgery should be performed when respiratory function is optimal.
- Note cough and sputum production (character and quantity). Send a sputum specimen for culture and sensitivity.
- Note past and present cigarette consumption, encouraging cessation.
- Assess current treatment, reversibility of symptoms with bronchodilators, and steroid intake.
- Note any respiratory symptoms suggestive of cardiac disease (orthopnoea, PND). Investigate and treat accordingly.
- Dyspnoea can be described using Roizen's classification. Undiagnosed dyspnoea of grade II or worse may require further investigation (see below).

#### Roizen's classification of dyspnoea

- Grade 0:** No dyspnoea while walking on the level at normal pace
- Grade I:** 'I am able to walk as far as I like, provided I take my time'
- Grade II:** Specific street block limitation—'I have to stop for a while after one or two blocks'
- Grade III:** Dyspnoea on mild exertion—'I have to stop and rest going from the kitchen to the bathroom'
- Grade IV:** Dyspnoea at rest

### Examination

- Abnormal findings on clinical examination are predictive of pulmonary complications after abdominal surgery (see p98).
- Complications of respiratory disease (e.g. right heart failure) and its treatment (e.g. steroid effects) should be sought. Try to establish any contribution of cardiac disease to respiratory symptoms.
- A formal assessment of exercise tolerance such as stair climbing correlates well with pulmonary function tests and provides a reliable test of pulmonary function. However, it also reflects cardiovascular status, cooperation, and determination and is an impractical assessment for those with limited mobility.

1 Smetana GW (1999). Preoperative pulmonary evaluation. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **340**, 937–944.

2 Lawrence VA, Dhanda R, Hilsenbeck SG, Page CP (1996). Risk of pulmonary complications after elective abdominal surgery. *Chest*, **110**, 744–750.

3 Zollinger A, Pasch T (1998). The pulmonary risk patient. *Bailliere's Clinical Anaesthesia*, **5**, 391–400.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Respiratory investigations

### Peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR or Peak Flow)

- A useful test for COPD or asthma.
- Measured on ward using a peak flow meter (best of three attempts); technique is important. For normal values see p1264.
- The patient's daily record gives a good indication of current fitness.
- Coughing is ineffective if the peak flow is  $<200\text{L}/\text{min}$ .

### Spirometry

- Useful to quantify severity of ventilatory dysfunction and to differentiate restrictive from obstructive defects. Measured in the respiratory function laboratory or at the bedside using a bellows device.
- Normally the forced vital capacity (FVC) is reported along with forced expiration in 1s ( $\text{FEV}_1$ ), plus the ratio  $\text{FEV}_1/\text{FVC}$  (as a percentage). The results of these tests are given with normal values calculated for that individual. A normal  $\text{FEV}_1/\text{FVC}$  ratio is 70% (see p1264).
- Previously used to assess risk in patients with significant respiratory disease scheduled for major surgery. However, recent evidence suggests that spirometry does not predict pulmonary complications, even in patients with severe COPD.
- No spirometric values should be viewed as prohibitive for surgery. Despite poor preoperative spirometry, many series of patients undergoing thoracic and major non-thoracic surgery are being increasingly reported. An  $\text{FEV}_1 < 1000\text{ml}$  indicates that postoperative coughing and secretion clearance will be poor and increases the likelihood of needing respiratory support following major surgery.
- Specific subgroups of patients who may benefit from spirometry are:
  - Those with equivocal clinical and radiological findings or unclear diagnosis.
  - Patients in whom functional ability cannot be assessed because of lower extremity disability.
- Spirometry also forms part of the assessment of patients for lung parenchymal resection (see p366).
- In those with an obstructive picture (low  $\text{FEV}_1/\text{FVC}$  ratio), reversibility with salbutamol should be tested. If time permits, the spirometry should be repeated after a course of steroids (prednisolone 20–40mg daily for 7d).

### Flow volume loops

- Measured in the respiratory function department.
- Peak flows at different lung volumes are recorded. Although more complex to interpret, loops provide more accurate information regarding ventilatory function. They provide useful data about the severity of obstructive and restrictive respiratory disease.
- Used in assessment of airway obstruction from both extrinsic (e.g. thyroid) and intrinsic (e.g. bronchospasm) causes.

### Transfer factor (diffusing capacity, DLCO)

- Measures the diffusion of carbon monoxide into the lung, using a single breath of gas containing 0.3% CO and 10% helium held for 20s.
- Reduced in lung fibrosis and other interstitial disease processes affecting gas transfer from alveolus to capillary.
- Normal value: 17–25ml/min/mmHg.

### Arterial blood gas analysis

- Measure baseline blood gases in air for any patient breathless on minimal exertion. Check for previous results in patients who have been hospitalised before.
- Detects CO<sub>2</sub> retention. A resting PaCO<sub>2</sub> >6.0kPa (45mmHg) is predictive of pulmonary complications and suggests ventilatory failure.
- Demonstrates usual level of oxygenation, which indicates severity of disease and is useful to set realistic parameters postoperatively.

### CXR

- Essential in patients scheduled for major surgery with significant chest disease or signs on examination. Try to obtain an erect PA film in the X-ray department.
- An abnormality predicts risk of pulmonary complications.
- Reveals lung pathology, cardiac size and outline, and provides a baseline should postoperative problems develop.

### CT Thorax

- Chest CT is required in a few patients with lung cysts/bullae to accurately assess the size and extent of their disease.
- Impingement of mass lesions on the major airways and likely extent of lung resection can be assessed.
- May demonstrate anterior or posterior pneumothorax and interstitial disease such as lung fibrosis, not seen on CXR.
- Spiral CT chest investigations can detect pulmonary embolus and dissecting aortic lesions.

### V/Q scan

- Reports the likelihood of pulmonary embolism. Difficult to interpret in the presence of other pathology.
- Useful in assessment of patients for lung parenchymal resection to predict the effect of resection on overall pulmonary performance (resecting a non-ventilated/perfused lung will reduce shunt and should improve oxygenation).



## Postoperative care

### Early mobilisation and posture

- Respiratory performance, FRC, and clearance of secretions are improved when sitting or standing compared with the supine position.
- Early mobilisation reduces the incidence of thromboembolic disease.

### Regular clinical review

- Respiratory deterioration may present in a non-specific way (confusion, tachycardia, fever, malaise). Regular review allows urgent investigation and aggressive therapy.
- Chart respiratory rate and  $S_pO_2$ .
- Seek assessment and advice of intensive care/outreach team early if patient does not respond to initial treatment.

### Physiotherapy

- Incentive spirometry, breathing exercises, and early physiotherapy aid clearance of secretions and reduce atelectasis.

### Oxygen

- Anaesthetic agents exert a dose-dependent depression on the sensitivity of central chemoreceptors, reducing the stimulatory effect of  $CO_2$ .
- Depression of respiratory function can occur for up to 72hr postoperatively and is most common at night. Supplemental oxygen should be delivered for at least this period of time particularly if receiving opioids.
- Preoperative measurement of  $PaO_2/SaO_2$  and  $PaCO_2$  is essential to establish a realistic target for each patient.
- Patients who chronically retain  $CO_2$  (advanced COPD) may be dependent on hypoxaemia as their main ventilatory drive due to down-regulation of central chemoreceptors. The concentration of delivered oxygen should be controlled (e.g. by Venturi mask) and titrated, in order to optimise oxygenation and prevent hypoventilation. Adequate monitoring should be available, ideally using serial ABG measurement (pulse oximetry shows only  $S_pO_2$ ).
- Humidification of oxygen aids physiotherapy and sputum clearance.

### Fluid balance

- Accurate management and documentation of fluid balance is essential. Adequate intravascular filling is required to maintain adequate perfusion of organs such as the kidneys and gut.
- However, patients with lung disease are at increased risk of pulmonary oedema (a dilated right ventricle may mechanically compromise the function of the left ventricle). Fluid overload is poorly tolerated in these patients and a high index of suspicion should be maintained.
- Readings from central venous catheters may be misleading in the presence of pulmonary hypertension or right ventricular failure (cor pulmonale).

### Pain management

- Good analgesia is essential for the maintenance of efficient respiratory function, compliance with physiotherapy, early mobilisation, and minimising cardiac stress.
- Regular oral or IV paracetamol and, where not contraindicated, NSAIDs should be prescribed. NSAIDs should be used with caution in the elderly as renal function may be compromised and they may induce fluid retention.
- Patients with lung dysfunction may benefit from local or regional anaesthesia. The sedative effects of systemic opioids can be avoided. The surgeon may be able to place a catheter for regional anaesthesia at the time of operation (e.g. paravertebral catheter for thoracotomy).
- The benefits of opioid-based analgesia (patient control, mobility, and avoidance of catheterisation) should be weighed against the benefits of regional analgesia (avoidance of high-dose systemic opioids, preservation of respiratory function) and discussed with the patient preoperatively.
- Involve the pain management team early in the postoperative period, requesting at least daily reviews.

## Postoperative admission to HDU/ICU

- Ideally admission to ICU or HDU should be planned preoperatively.
- Patients may require admission for ventilatory support (CPAP, BIPAP, invasive ventilation) or increased levels of monitoring and nursing care that are not available on the surgical ward.

The precipitating reasons for admission to ICU or HDU may be predictable or unpredictable:

Predictable	Unpredictable
Borderline or established failure of gas exchange preoperatively	Unexpected perioperative complications (e.g. fluid overload, haemorrhage)
Intercurrent respiratory infection (with urgent surgery)	Inadequate or ineffective regional analgesia with deterioration in respiratory function
Chest disease productive of large amounts of secretions (e.g. bronchiectasis)	Unexpectedly prolonged procedure
Major abdominal or thoracic surgery	Acidosis
Major surgery not amenable to regional analgesia and necessitating systemic opioids	Hypothermia
Long duration of surgery	Depressed conscious level/ slow recovery from anaesthetic/ poor cough

## Respiratory tract infection and elective surgery<sup>1,2</sup>

See p815 for paediatric implications.

- Patients who have respiratory tract infections producing fever and cough with or without chest signs on auscultation should not undergo elective surgery under general anaesthesia due to the increased risk of postoperative pulmonary complications.
- Adult patients with simple coryza are not at significantly increased risk of developing postoperative pulmonary problems, unless they have pre-existing respiratory disease or are having major abdominal or thoracic surgery.
- Laryngospasm may be more likely in patients with a recent history of upper respiratory tract symptoms who are asymptomatic at the time of surgery.
- Compared with asymptomatic children, children with symptoms of acute or recent upper respiratory tract infection are more likely to suffer transient postoperative hypoxaemia ( $S_pO_2 < 93\%$ ). This is most marked when intubation is necessary.

**1** Fennelly ME, Hall GM (1990). Anaesthesia and upper airway respiratory tract infections—a non-existent hazard? *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **64**, 535–536.

**2** Levy L, Pandit UA, Randel GI, Lewis IH, Tait AR (1992). Upper respiratory tract infections and general anaesthesia in children. *Anaesthesia*, **47**, 678–682.

## Smoking<sup>1</sup>

- Cigarette smoke contains nicotine, a highly addictive substance, and at least 4700 other chemical compounds, of which 43 are known to be carcinogenic. Long-term smoking is associated with serious underlying problems such as COPD, lung neoplasm, ischaemic heart disease, and vascular disorders.
- Respiratory tract mucus is produced in greater quantities, but mucociliary clearance is less efficient. Smokers are more susceptible to respiratory events during anaesthesia and to postoperative atelectasis/pneumonia. Abdominal or thoracic surgery and obesity increase these risks.
- Carboxyhaemoglobin (COHb) levels may reach 5–15% in heavy smokers, causing reduced oxygen carriage by the blood. COHb has a similar absorption spectrum to oxyhaemoglobin and will cause falsely high oxygen saturation readings.
- Increased airway irritability increases coughing, laryngospasm, and desaturation during induction and airway manipulation (e.g. laryngeal mask insertion). Avoid by using a less irritant volatile (e.g. sevoflurane) and deepening anaesthesia slowly.
- Maintaining spontaneous breathing via an ETT or LMA may be awkward due to airway irritation—consider local anaesthesia to the vocal cords, opioids, relaxants, and IPPV.

### Risk reduction

- Abstinence from smoking for 8wk is required to decrease morbidity from respiratory complications to a rate similar to that of non-smokers.
- Smokers unwilling to stop preoperatively will still benefit by refraining from smoking for 12hr before surgery. During this time the effects of nicotine (activation of the sympathoadrenergic system with raised coronary vascular resistance) and COHb will decrease.

<sup>1</sup> Warner DO (2007). Tobacco dependence in surgical patients. *Current Opinion in Anesthesiology*, **20**, 279–283.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Asthma<sup>1,2,3</sup>

Asthma is reversible airflow obstruction due to constriction of smooth muscle in the airways. Bronchial wall inflammation is a fundamental component and results in mucus hypersecretion, epithelial damage and an increased tendency for airways to constrict. Bronchoconstriction may be triggered by a number of different mechanisms.

Symptoms of asthma are most frequently a combination of shortness of breath, wheeze, cough, and sputum production. Asthma can be differentiated from COPD by the presence of childhood symptoms, diurnal variation, specific trigger factors (especially allergic), absence of smoking history, and response to previous treatments.

### General considerations

- Most well-controlled asthmatics tolerate anaesthesia and surgery well.
- The incidence of perioperative bronchospasm and laryngospasm in asthmatic patients undergoing routine surgery is <2%, especially if routine medication is continued.
- The frequency of complications is increased in patients >50yr and in those with active disease.
- Poorly controlled asthmatics are at risk of perioperative problems (bronchospasm, sputum retention, atelectasis, infection, respiratory failure).
- Do not anaesthetise a patient for elective surgery whose asthma is not optimally controlled.

### Preoperative assessment

- Patients and doctors frequently underestimate the severity of asthma, especially if it is longstanding.
- Assess exercise tolerance (e.g. breathlessness when climbing stairs, walking on level ground, or undressing) and general activity levels.
- Document any allergies/drug sensitivities, especially the effect of aspirin/NSAIDs. The prevalence of aspirin-induced asthma (measured by oral provocation) is 21% in adult asthmatics and 5% in paediatric asthmatics. Much lower rates are quoted if verbal history is used to assess prevalence (3% and 2%, respectively).
- Examination is often unremarkable but may reveal chest hyperinflation, prolonged expiratory phase, and wheeze. The presence or absence of wheeze does not correlate with severity of underlying asthma.
- For patients with severe asthma, consider additional medication or treatment with systemic steroids.
- Patients with mild asthma (peak flow >80% predicted and minimal symptoms) rarely require extra treatment prior to surgery.
- Emphasise benefits of good compliance with treatment prior to surgery. Consider doubling dose of inhaled steroids 1wk prior to surgery if there is evidence of poor control (>20% variability in PEF). If control is very poor, consider review by chest physician and a 1wk course of oral prednisolone (20–40mg daily).
- Viral infections are potent triggers of asthma, so postpone elective surgery if symptoms suggest URTI.
- There is an association with nasal polyps in atopic patients.

## Investigations

- Serial measurements of peak flow are more informative than a single reading. Measure response to bronchodilators and look for 'early morning dip' in peak flow (this suggests control is not optimal).
- Spirometry gives a more accurate assessment. Results of peak flow and spirometry are compared with predicted values based on age, sex, and height (see p1264).
- Blood gases are only necessary in assessing patients with severe asthma (poorly controlled, frequent hospital admissions, previous ICU admission), particularly prior to major surgery.

## Perioperative recommendations for asthma medications

Class of drug	Examples	Perioperative recommendation	Notes
$\beta_2$ agonists	Salbutamol, terbutaline, salmeterol	Convert to nebulised preparation	High doses may lower $K^+$ . Cause tachycardia and tremor
Anticholinergic drugs	Ipratropium	Convert to nebulised form	
Inhaled steroids	Beclometasone, budesonide, fluticasone	Continue inhaled formulation	If $>1500\mu\text{g/d}$ of beclometasone, adrenal suppression may be present
Oral steroids	Prednisolone	Continue as IV hydrocortisone until taking orally	If $>10\text{mg/d}$ , adrenal suppression is likely (p172)
Leukotriene receptor antagonist (anti-inflammatory effect)	Montelukast, zafirlukast	Restart when taking oral medications	
Mast cell stabiliser	Disodium cromoglicate	Continue by inhaler	
Phosphodiesterase inhibitor	Aminophylline	Continue where possible	In severe asthma consider converting to an infusion perioperatively



**Conduct of anaesthesia**

- For major surgery start chest physiotherapy preoperatively.
- Add nebulised salbutamol 2.5mg to premedication.
- Avoid histamine-releasing drugs or use with care (morphine, D-tubocurarine, atracurium, mivacurium).
- Intubation may provoke bronchospasm—consider potent opioid cover (alfentanil). LA to the cords may help.
- When asthma is poorly controlled, regional techniques are ideal for peripheral surgery. Spinal anaesthesia or plexus/nerve blocks are generally safe, provided the patient is able to lie flat comfortably.
- Where general anaesthesia is necessary, use short-acting anaesthetic agents. Short-acting opioid analgesics (e.g. alfentanil, remifentanil) are appropriate for procedures with minimal postoperative pain or when a reliable regional block is present.
- Patients with severe asthma (previous ICU admissions, brittle disease) undergoing major abdominal or thoracic surgery should be admitted to HDU/ICU for postoperative observation.
- Extubate and recover in sitting position.

**Drugs considered safe for asthmatics**

Induction	Propofol, etomidate, ketamine, midazolam
Opioids	Pethidine, fentanyl, alfentanil, remifentanil
Muscle relaxants	Suxamethonium, vecuronium, rocuronium, pancuronium
Volatile agents	Halothane, isoflurane, enflurane, sevoflurane

**Severe bronchospasm during anaesthesia**

See p936.

**Postoperative care**

- Ensure all usual medications are prescribed after surgery.
- Following major abdominal or thoracic surgery, good pain control is important and epidural analgesia is frequently the best choice, provided widespread intercostal blockade is avoided.
- For patient-controlled analgesia (PCA), consider fentanyl if morphine has previously exacerbated bronchospasm.
- Prescribe oxygen for the duration of epidural or PCA.
- Prescribe regular nebuliser therapy with additional nebulised bronchodilators as needed.
- Review dose and route of administration of steroid daily.
- Regular NSAIDs can be used if tolerated in the past. Avoid in brittle and poorly controlled asthmatics.
- If there is increasing dyspnoea and wheeze following surgery, consider other possible contributing factors (left ventricular failure and pulmonary emboli are potent triggers of bronchospasm). Also consider fluid overload and pneumothorax (check for recent central line).

- 1 *British Guideline on the Management of Asthma*. A national clinical guideline. British Thoracic Society. Revised edition June 2009. <http://www.brit-thoracic.org.uk>.
- 2 Hirshman CA (1991). Perioperative management of the asthmatic patient. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*, **38**, R26–32.
- 3 Warner DO et al. (1996). Perioperative respiratory complications in patients with asthma, *Anesthesiology*, **85** 460–7.

## Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)<sup>1</sup>

- COPD encompasses chronic bronchitis and emphysema. Chronic bronchitis is diagnosed by a history of a productive cough on most winter days of 3 consecutive years. Emphysema is a histological diagnosis of dilatation and destruction of the airways distal to the terminal bronchioles.
- The majority of patients with COPD have been tobacco smokers for a significant period of their lives. Other factors associated with COPD include occupational exposure to dusts and atmospheric pollution, poor socio-economic status, repeated viral infections,  $\alpha$ 1-antitrypsin deficiency, and regional variation.
- Patients with predominantly emphysema may be thin, tachypnoeic, breathless at rest, and, although hypoxic, develop  $\text{CO}_2$  retention only as a late or terminal event. Patients with predominantly chronic bronchitis are frequently overweight with marked peripheral oedema, poor respiratory effort, and  $\text{CO}_2$  retention. These classical stereotyped pictures of 'pink puffer' or 'blue bloater' are infrequently seen compared with the majority of patients, who have a combination of features.

### General considerations

- Principal problems in COPD are development of airflow obstruction and mucus hypersecretion exacerbated by repeated viral and bacterial infections. Many patients have an element of reversible airflow obstruction. If this can be demonstrated it is managed as asthma. Progressive airflow obstruction may lead to respiratory failure.
- Non-invasive ventilation via a full face or nasal mask (BiPAP) is increasingly used to treat acute severe exacerbations of COPD. This technique may be used to assist severely affected patients through the postoperative phase of major surgery. Preoperative training is essential in conjunction with a respiratory unit or HDU.

### Preoperative assessment

- Symptoms of COPD usually start after the age of about 55yr. The commonest symptom is shortness of breath, but cough, wheeze, and sputum production are also often present. Symptoms are frequently severe by the time medical help is sought. Repeated infective exacerbations of respiratory symptoms are common during the winter months.
- Establish exercise tolerance—ask specifically about hills and stairs. A formal assessment of exercise tolerance such as stair climbing correlates well with pulmonary function tests.

- Ensure any element of reversible airflow obstruction (asthma) is optimally treated. Consider a trial of oral prednisolone, combined with review by a respiratory physician.
- Pulmonary hypertension and right ventricular failure may follow severe or chronic pulmonary disease—optimise treatment of heart failure if present.
- Change to nebulised bronchodilators prior to surgery and continue for 24–48hr afterwards.

### Investigations

- Check spirometry to clarify diagnosis and assess severity (this is much more informative than peak flow in COPD).
- Check ABGs if the patient has difficulty climbing one flight of stairs, is cyanotic, has  $S_pO_2 < 95\%$  on air, or has peripheral oedema.
- ECG may reveal right heart disease (right ventricular hypertrophy or strain). Consider echocardiography.
- CXR is useful to exclude active infection and other pathology (e.g. bronchial carcinoma).

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- See guidelines under ‘Asthma’ (p112).
- If patients have severe COPD (exercise tolerance less than one flight of stairs or  $CO_2$  retention), postoperative respiratory failure is likely after abdominal or thoracic surgery. Plan for elective HDU/ICU admission.
- Avoid intubation where possible—however, some patients (particularly those who are obese, breathless, and require long operations) are unsuitable for a spontaneously breathing technique. Patients with heavy sputum production may benefit from endotracheal toilet.
- Be vigilant for pneumothorax.

### Postoperative care

- Extubate and recover in sitting position.
- Mobilise as early as possible.
- Regular physiotherapy to prevent atelectasis and encourage sputum clearance.
- Give oxygen as appropriate.
- If the patient becomes pyrexial with more copious or purulent sputum send a sample for culture and start antibiotics. Oral amoxycillin or clarithromycin are usually sufficient for mild exacerbations. If the patient becomes systemically unwell treat as pneumonia.
- Continue with nebulised salbutamol (2.5mg qds) and ipratropium (500µg qds) until fully mobile. Change back to inhalers at least 24hr before discharge.
- If the patient is slow to mobilise consider referral to a pulmonary rehabilitation programme.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Wong DH, Weber EC, Schell MJ, Wong AB, Anderson CT, Barker SJ (1995). Factors associated with postoperative pulmonary complications in patients with severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **80**, 276–284.

## Bronchiectasis

Bronchiectasis may be caused by genetic factors, e.g. cystic fibrosis, or acquired following damage to the lower respiratory tract, especially in severe early childhood infections. Most patients have a chronic productive cough, which may be present throughout the year. There is frequently a component of asthma associated with chronic inflammatory changes in the airways. Cystic fibrosis is also associated with malabsorption due to pancreatic insufficiency, so appropriate dietary advice and pancreatic supplements are essential. See also p118.

### General considerations

- Patients with bronchiectasis need to be as fit as possible before undergoing any major surgery which will inhibit coughing and impair respiratory function. For elective surgery this may mean a planned admission for IV antibiotics and physiotherapy prior to surgery.
- Once established, bacterial infections can be difficult or impossible to eradicate. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is a common pathogen that may be present for many years and be associated with intermittent exacerbations of respiratory symptoms.
- The mainstay of treatment for bronchiectasis is regular physiotherapy, frequent courses of appropriate antibiotics, and treatment of any asthmatic symptoms.

### Preoperative assessment

- Before elective surgery the patient should be as fit as possible.
- Consultation with the patient's chest physician is essential.
- Send sputum sample for culture before surgery. A course of IV antibiotics and physiotherapy for 3–10d immediately prior to surgery may be necessary. Prior to major surgery, consider starting IV antibiotics on admission. Use current or most recent sputum culture to guide appropriate prescribing. If in doubt assume that the patient has *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and use a combination such as ceftazidime and gentamicin, or imipenem and gentamicin.
- Maximise bronchodilation by converting to nebulised bronchodilators.
- Increase dose of prednisolone by 5–10mg/d if on long-term oral steroids.
- Postpone elective surgery if the patient has more respiratory symptoms than usual.

### Investigations

- In patients with severe disease check spirometry and blood gases.
- Send sputum sample for culture.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Choose regional above general anaesthesia where possible.
- Although it is desirable to avoid intubation, this will be necessary for all but the shortest operations to facilitate intra-operative removal of secretions.
- Use short-acting anaesthetic and analgesic agents where postoperative pain is minimal or regional analgesia can be used.
- Extubate and recover in sitting position.
- Ensure that the patient will receive physiotherapy immediately postoperatively. Contact on-call physiotherapist if necessary.

### Postoperative care

- Ensure that regular physiotherapy is available: three times daily and at night if severely affected.
- Monitor  $S_pO_2$ , giving supplemental oxygen to achieve adequate oxygenation (guided by preoperative value).
- Continue appropriate IV antibiotics for at least 3d postoperatively or until discharged.
- Maintain adequate nutrition, especially if any malabsorption.
- Refer to respiratory physician early if there is any deterioration in respiratory symptoms.

## Cystic fibrosis<sup>1,2</sup>

Basic defect is an abnormal epithelial chloride and sodium transport system encoded on chromosome 7. Patients experience chronic sinusitis, nasal polyps in 50% (polypectomy is a leading reason for anaesthesia in this group), and respiratory, cardiovascular, and gastrointestinal disease.

### General considerations

- Neonates may present for surgical treatment of meconium ileus.
- In the lung, viscid mucus causes plugging, atelectasis, and frequent chest infection (particularly *Pseudomonas*). Treatment is primarily clearance of secretions by postural drainage and antibiotic treatment of infections.
- The perioperative complication rate in cystic fibrosis is ~10% (mostly pulmonary), but half of this is for minor ENT procedures.
- Lung transplantation has an 82% 1yr survival.

### Preoperative assessment

- Exclude or treat active chest infection.
- Clinical signs can be misleading.

### Investigations

- Perform a CXR looking for bullae and pneumothorax. CT clarifies the extent of bullous disease and detects anterior pneumothoraces.
- Spirometry: FEV<sub>1</sub> may be prognostic.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Almost all patients with cystic fibrosis have symptoms of bronchiectasis and will require treatment—see p116.
- Always inform the patient's physician of an admission to a surgical ward.
- Intubation allows bronchial toilet. Monitor for pneumothorax.

### Postoperative care

- As for bronchiectasis.
- 80% of cystic fibrosis patients have pancreatic malabsorption. Maintaining adequate nutrition after surgery is essential as is the advice of an experienced dietician.

<sup>1</sup> Della Rocca G (2002). Anaesthesia in patients with cystic fibrosis. *Current Opinion in Anesthesiology*, **15**, 95–101.

<sup>2</sup> Meachery G *et al.* (2008). Outcomes of lung transplantation for cystic fibrosis in a large UK cohort, *Thorax*, **63** 725–731.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## **Restrictive pulmonary disease**

### **Intrinsic parenchymal lung disease**

- Results in decreased lung compliance and impaired gas exchange.
- An initial inflammatory reaction centred on the alveoli impairs gas exchange. This is followed by collagen deposition and fibrosis, resulting in lungs that are smaller in volume and less compliant to inflation.
- Causes of pulmonary fibrosis include autoimmune disorders (e.g. rheumatoid arthritis, scleroderma), exposure to inhaled dusts (e.g. asbestos), allergenic substances (bird fancier's and farmer's lung), ingested substances (especially drugs such as amiodarone, chemotherapy agents, paraquat poisoning), and fibrosis after acute respiratory distress syndrome.
- Pulmonary infections rarely trigger a fibrotic response.
- Treatment is usually with oral steroids, but other immunosuppressive therapy may be used and young patients may be considered for lung transplantation if severely affected.

### **Extrinsic conditions of the chest wall**

- Failure of the respiratory mechanical structures to provide or allow adequate ventilation, e.g. disease of the chest wall (kyphoscoliosis, ankylosing spondylitis, severe obesity) and abdominal pathology producing significant splinting of the diaphragm.

### **General considerations**

- The work of respiration is optimised by rapid shallow breaths and is easier in the sitting position.
- Many patients are stable and only slowly deteriorate over some years. These patients may tolerate surgery relatively well.

### **Preoperative assessment**

- Discuss seriously affected patients with a respiratory physician.

### **Investigations**

- Check ABGs—often remain normal until late. Reduced  $\text{PaO}_2$  reflects significant disease and  $\text{CO}_2$  retention is a late sign, implying impending ventilatory failure.
- Obtain lung function tests including spirometry, lung volumes (all are reduced), and gas transfer if these have not been done within previous 6–8wk.
- CXR changes will be according to the underlying condition.

### **Conduct of anaesthesia**

- As for other pathologies, consider regional techniques and minimise positive pressure ventilation and airway instrumentation as far as possible. Spinal disease may preclude subarachnoid or epidural blocks.
- Where IPPV is necessary, minimise peak airway pressure using pressure-controlled ventilation, with high rate and low tidal volume.
- For those on steroids, increase dose on day of surgery and continue an extra 5–10mg of prednisolone per day until the patient goes home.
- Maintain a high index of suspicion for pneumothorax.

### Postoperative care

- Consider postoperative ICU/HDU admission following major surgery. May be suitable for elective training in CPAP/NIPPV techniques preoperatively.
- Extubate in a sitting position.
- Give supplemental oxygen and maintain  $S_pO_2 > 92\%$ .
- Good physiotherapy and analgesia are vital to achieve sputum clearance. With severe disease, minor respiratory complications may precipitate respiratory failure.
- Mobilise early.
- Treat respiratory infection vigorously.
- Ensure steroid cover continues in appropriate formulation.

## Sleep apnoea syndrome<sup>1,2</sup> (see also p638)

Sleep apnoea is defined as cessation of airflow at the mouth and nose for at least 10s. Sufferers develop intermittent respiratory arrest and hypoxaemia during rapid eye movement (REM) sleep. Respiration resumes due to hypoxic stimulation. The majority of sufferers are overweight, middle-aged men, who present with complaints of snoring with periods of apnoea, disturbed sleep, excessive daytime drowsiness, and headache.

Two types of sleep apnoea are recognised (5% of patients have both types):

- Obstructive sleep apnoea (85%) results from obstruction of the upper airway.
- Central apnoea (10%) is due to intermittent loss of respiratory drive.

The condition is diagnosed in a sleep laboratory by monitoring oxygen saturation and nasal airflow. Additional tests including measurement of respiratory and abdominal muscle activity, EEG, and EMG activity (polysomnography) may be required in some cases.

### General considerations

- The patient may develop systemic and pulmonary hypertension, right ventricular hypertrophy, congestive cardiac failure, and respiratory failure with CO<sub>2</sub> retention.
- Most patients are treated with CPAP applied overnight by a nasal mask.
- In children, obstructive sleep apnoea is most commonly associated with adenotonsillar hypertrophy, but the severity of obstructive sleep apnoea is not always proportional to the size of the tonsils and adenoids.
- Patients with sleep apnoea syndrome are at risk of perioperative airway obstruction and respiratory failure while under the effects of sedative drugs.

### Preoperative assessment

- Obstructive sleep apnoea is undiagnosed in approximately 80% of patients.
- Ask about daytime hypersomnolence (falling asleep during daily activities, e.g. reading or driving).
- Ask partner about snoring and whether apnoeic spells have been noted at night (patient usually unaware).
- Obesity and a collar size of >17 inches (43cm) are risk factors for obstructive sleep apnoea—weight reduction is beneficial.
- Obstructive sleep apnoea should be considered in all children presenting for adenotonsillectomy.
- Ensure that management of associated conditions such as obstructive airway disease, hypertension, and cardiac failure is optimal.
- Consider a respiratory opinion in patients with peripheral oedema and oxygen saturation <92%.
- Ask patients to bring their own CPAP machine and mask for postoperative use. Ensure that ward staff are familiar with set-up and running of equipment.

## Investigations

- In known obstructive sleep apnoea, perform full blood count (polycythaemia), pulse oximetry, and ECG (right heart strain).
- If ECG shows right ventricular strain (3% of children presenting for adenotonsillectomy) echocardiography is indicated to exclude right ventricular hypertrophy.
- Obtain baseline ABGs.

## Conduct of anaesthesia

- If the patient is on inhalers, change to nebulised bronchodilators.
- Avoid night sedation or sedative premedication.
- Anticipate that mask ventilation and intubation may be difficult and prepare for this.
- Regional anaesthesia/analgesia and postoperative analgesia will avoid or minimise use of general anaesthetic agents and sedative opioid analgesics. Reduce doses of all sedative/anaesthesia drugs—patients are very sensitive. Use short-acting anaesthetic/analgesic agents where postoperative pain is minimal.
- Give NSAIDs and paracetamol.

## Postoperative care

- Extubate in the sitting position and nurse sitting up whenever possible.
- Patients are best managed in the HDU or ICU.
- A few hours of postoperative ventilation may be required after major surgery.
- Continuous pulse oximetry should be used on the ward.
- Aim to maintain the oxygen saturation that the patient had preoperatively, titrating oxygen to the minimum required. A few patients may develop CO<sub>2</sub> retention with oxygen therapy. Serial blood gas analysis may be necessary in drowsy patients at risk of CO<sub>2</sub> retention.

1 Benumof JL (2004). Obesity, sleep apnea, the airway and anesthesia. *Current Opinion in Anesthesiology*, **17**, 21–30.

2 Warwick JP, Mason DG (1998). Obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome in children. *Anaesthesia*, **53**, 571–579.

## Sarcoidosis

A systemic disease characterised by formation of non-caseating granulomata, which occur in any body tissue and heal with fibrosis. It probably results from an abnormal response to several antigens and occurs at all ages, with the highest prevalence at 20–40yr. It is more common in black individuals in the USA.

### General considerations

- Pulmonary changes occur in 50% of cases. Pleural, peribronchial, and alveolar granulomata are replaced by fibrosis. Hilar lymphadenopathy may cause bronchial obstruction and distal atelectasis. Infiltration of the bronchial mucosa may cause stenosis. Mucosal infiltration of the nose, nasopharynx, tonsils, palate, or larynx may occur.
- Cardiac effects (in 20%). Right ventricular failure secondary to lung disease. Myocardial and valvular granulomata are rare. Conduction abnormalities, VT, and sudden death have been reported.
- Other effects include skin involvement, uveitis/iritis, and hypercalcaemia.

### Preoperative assessment

- Pulmonary and cardiac features are most important.
- May have extensive pathology but only minor symptoms.
- Note steroid treatment or other immunosuppressive drugs.

### Investigations

- Preoperative respiratory function tests may reveal a restrictive defect. Transfer factor (diffusion capacity) may be reduced. ABGs will determine the level of hypoxaemia.
- ECG may show right ventricular hypertrophy or arrhythmias.
- Check serum  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  for hypercalcaemia (treat with systemic steroids).

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Consider avoidance of GA and use of local/regional anaesthesia where possible if respiratory function is impaired clinically.
- Consider regional analgesia for abdominal surgery if significant respiratory disease.
- Give appropriate steroid cover if needed.

### Postoperative care

- Nurse the patient sitting upright.
- Good postoperative analgesia.
- Chest physiotherapy/breathing exercises.

## Anaesthesia after lung transplantation<sup>1</sup>

(See also 'Patients with a transplanted heart', p74.)

Lung transplantation was first performed in 1963; outcomes have improved since the introduction of ciclosporin A in 1981. Surgery may be indicated for:

- Complications related to transplant
- Complications of immunosuppressive treatment
- The underlying condition (emphysema,  $\alpha$ 1-antitrypsin deficiency, pulmonary fibrosis, primary pulmonary hypertension, cystic fibrosis)
- Unrelated reasons

### General considerations

- The transplanted lung is denervated—mucosal sensitivity and the cough reflex are suppressed distal to the anastomosis, and sputum clearance is impaired postoperatively.
- Hypoxic vasoconstriction is unimpaired.
- Lymphatic drainage is severed but then re-established 2–4wk post transplantation. Transplanted lungs are at particular risk of pulmonary oedema, especially in the early postoperative period.
- In double lung transplant, the heart may be denervated and has a higher resting heart rate (90–100bpm). It may be more susceptible to arrhythmias.

### Preoperative assessment

- Underlying disease may have effects on pulmonary function. There may be residual systemic disease.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- The interaction of immunosuppressive drugs (ciclosporin A, steroids, azathioprine) with anaesthetic drugs is more theoretical than clinical.
- Monitor neuromuscular function and avoid high doses of opioid in order to achieve early extubation.
- Intubation should be performed to leave the tube just through the cords and the cuff carefully inflated and checked intra-operatively to minimise the risk of damage to the tracheal/bronchial anastomosis. If a double lumen tube is required it should be placed under direct vision using a fibroscope.
- Strict attention to fluid balance is required.
- Aim for early return of pulmonary function and extubation.

### Postoperative care

- Postoperative admission to ICU is only indicated when anaesthesia is complicated by inadequate recovery of respiratory function, the surgical condition, or the presence of rejection or infection.

<sup>1</sup> Haddow GR (1997). Anaesthesia for patients after lung transplantation. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*. **44**, 182–197.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Renal disease

## Quentin Milner

Patient with raised creatinine [128](#)

Renal dialysis [134](#)

Anaesthesia for renal transplantation [135](#)

Acute renal failure [136](#)

See also:

Hepatorenal syndrome [150](#)



## Patient with raised creatinine

Preoperative renal dysfunction is an independent risk factor for postoperative morbidity and mortality. Creatinine is a product of skeletal muscle metabolism. Little renal tubular secretion occurs normally, and creatinine clearance reflects glomerular filtration rate (GFR normal = 125ml/min). Plasma creatinine shows a rectangular hyperbolic relationship with creatinine clearance. This means:

- GFR must be reduced by 50% before serum creatinine starts to rise.
- Small changes in serum creatinine in the low (normal) range imply a large change in GFR, making the test very sensitive.
- GFR falls by 1% per annum after 30yr of age.
- Low muscle mass (e.g. small elderly lady) means little creatinine to clear so normal plasma creatinine may not mean normal renal function.
- Creatinine clearance (CC) can be more accurately estimated from the serum creatinine by using the Cockcroft Gault formula:

$$\text{Creatinine clearance (ml/min)} = \frac{(140 - \text{age}) \times \text{weight (kg)}}{0.814 \times \text{serum creatinine (\mu mol/l)}} \quad (\times 0.85 \text{ for women}).$$

## Chronic renal failure

Chronic renal failure (CRF) is a multi-system disease. Patients have a complex medical history, take a multitude of drugs, and frequently have severe systemic complications from both the causes and effects of CRF. Dialysis is usually required when the GFR is <15ml/min.

### Main causes of CRF

• Diabetes mellitus	30%
• Hypertension	24%
• Glomerulonephritis	17%
• Chronic pyelonephritis	5%
• Polycystic renal disease	4%
• Unknown cause	20%

## Classification of CRF

- Stage 1 Normal GFR—other evidence of renal damage
- Stage 2 GFR 60–90 ml/min—other evidence of renal damage
- Stage 3 GFR 30–60 ml/min—moderate CRF
- Stage 4 GFR 15–30 ml/min—severe CRF
- Stage 5 GFR <15ml/min—end-stage renal failure. Dialysis dependent

### Preoperative

- These patients are high risk.
- Determine underlying cause, previous surgery including transplantation, and drug therapy.
- Check for hypertension, diabetes, and anaemia. Ischaemic heart disease is very common and often silent, especially in diabetics. Incidence of calcific valvular heart disease and left ventricular failure is increased. Autonomic neuropathy is common. Pericardial effusions are rare if dialysis is effective.
- Check type of dialysis: peritoneal or haemodialysis—line or fistula.
- Determine residual urine output per day.
- Examine for fluid overload (dependent oedema, basal crepitations, dialysis record) or hypovolaemia (postural hypotension, low JVP, thirst, skin turgor, urine output).
- Allow 4–6hr to elapse after haemodialysis before surgery. This allows fluid compartment equilibration and metabolism of residual heparin. Indications for urgent dialysis include hyperkalaemia, fluid overload, acute acidosis, and symptomatic uraemia. If volume overload occurs postoperatively the patient will need extra dialysis.
- If major surgery, plan postoperative care with renal/ICU team.

### Investigations

- FBC: usually well compensated normochromic normocytic anaemia due to decreased erythropoiesis, decreased red cell survival, and GI losses. Aim for Hb 8–10g/dl; transfusion can worsen hypertension and precipitate heart failure.
- Electrolytes: a recent serum  $K^+$  is essential—if  $>6.0\text{mmol/l}$  dialysis will be required. Drugs causing raised  $K^+$  include suxamethonium, NSAIDs,  $\beta$ -blockers, ACE inhibitors, spironolactone, tacrolimus, and ciclosporin.  $Na^+$  may be low due to water retention. Hypocalcaemia and hyperphosphataemia are common but rarely symptomatic. A mild metabolic acidosis is frequent and the ability to compensate further acidosis is poor.
- Coagulation: INR, APTT, and platelet count usually normal; uraemia affects platelet function and causes a prolonged bleeding time. Dialysis improves coagulation once heparin has worn off. Thrombocytopenia is not corrected by platelet transfusion but may be improved by cryoprecipitate or desmopressin ( $0.3\text{ microgram/kg}$  in  $30\text{ml}$  saline over  $30\text{min}$ ). Tendency to thrombosis in fistula in stage 5 CRF on haemodialysis.

### Perioperative care

- Venous access and fistulae: many patients have an upper limb AV fistula. Avoid cannulation and NIBP in this arm. Wrap the fistula arm in padding for protection. Wherever possible cannulate the dorsum of the hand to avoid damage to veins in the forearm and antecubital fossa need for future fistulae. Arterial lines should be used only when essential.

- Fluid and electrolyte balance must be carefully managed. Many patients have some residual renal function and urine output. Normovolaemia is ideal. Maintain normal renal blood flow with 0.9% sodium chloride and avoid hypotension.
- If large fluid shifts are likely, CVP or oesophageal Doppler monitoring is useful. These patients may have had multiple CVP lines—use ultrasound guidance. Avoid femoral vein in patients suitable for transplants and subclavian vein in those needing dialysis as incidence of stenosis is high.
- Avoid fluids containing  $K^+$ ; generally use 0.9% sodium chloride or Gelofusine®. Significant blood loss should be replaced.
- Suxamethonium elevates serum  $K^+$  by 0.5mmol/l. Hyperkalaemia is also worsened by acidosis, so avoid hypoventilation and hypercarbia.
- Delayed gastric emptying (autonomic neuropathy) and increased gastric acidity make gastric reflux more likely. Most patients are on  $H_2$  antagonists/proton pump inhibitors (cimetidine may cause confusion and should be avoided). In practice, rapid sequence induction is reserved for patients who have not fasted, or who have symptomatic reflux and a normal serum  $K^+$ .
- Immunity: sepsis is a leading cause of death in CRF. Inhibition of humoral and cell-mediated immunity occurs. Careful attention to asepsis is required for all invasive procedures.
- Hepatitis B and C are common. Staff must protect themselves from body fluids.

### Postoperative

- Liaise carefully with the renal unit about the timing/need for dialysis postoperatively. Use epidurals with caution.
- Prescribe analgesics carefully (see below).
- Pay attention to fluid balance. In oliguria, hourly fluid maintenance should replace fluid losses plus 30ml/hr for insensible losses. Avoid nephrotoxic drugs and periods of hypotension.

### Anaesthetic drugs in chronic renal failure

Most drugs are excreted by the kidneys, either unchanged or as metabolites. Loading doses of drugs are often unchanged, but maintenance doses should be reduced or dosing interval prolonged. Hypoalbuminaemia and acidosis increase the free drug availability of highly protein-bound drugs (e.g. induction agents). Most anaesthetic drugs and techniques reduce renal blood flow, GFR, and urine output.

- Analgesics: most opioids are excreted by the kidney and so have a prolonged duration of action in CRF. The long-acting morphine metabolite morphine-6-glucuronide has far greater potency than morphine itself. Avoid pethidine as norpethidine can cause convulsions. Fentanyl has inactive metabolites, but accumulates with prolonged use. Alfentanil and remifentanil may be used in normal doses. Half-lives of codeine and dihydrocodeine are prolonged five times—avoid. Oxycodone has active metabolites—reduce dose and increase interval. Tramadol and its active metabolites are renally excreted. The manufacturer does not recommend its use in end-stage renal failure.

- PCA morphine or fentanyl (20µg bolus, 5min lockout time) can be used but with caution. In theory the reduction in excretion increases plasma concentration, causing negative feedback and thus reducing subsequent demand.
- Paracetamol is safe in normal doses. Avoid NSAIDs even in anuric patients.
- Induction agents: reduce doses of benzodiazepines, thiopental, and etomidate by ~30% because of changes in protein binding, volume of distribution, and cardiac function. Less reduction is required with propofol.
- The elimination of volatile anaesthetic agents is not dependent on renal function. Isoflurane, halothane, and desflurane are all safe. Sevoflurane is safe for induction but will produce inorganic fluoride ions with prolonged use (avoid >4 MAC hours total). Enflurane is worse.
- Muscle relaxants: suxamethonium is discussed above; plasma cholinesterase activity is unchanged in CRF. Atracurium and cisatracurium are logical choices. Vecuronium and rocuronium can be used as single doses, with prolonged duration of action. Mivacurium clearance is decreased. Always use a peripheral nerve stimulator. Sugammadex is excreted in the urine unchanged, but its action does not depend on renal excretion. It appears to be safe to use in CRF but is not recommended for GFR <30ml/min.<sup>1</sup> It is unpredictably removed by dialysis.
- The excretion of neostigmine and glycopyrronium is prolonged in CRF.
- The duration of action of local anaesthetics is reduced. Reduce maximum doses by 25% because of decreased protein binding and a lower CNS seizure threshold. Epidurals and spinals work well, but consider the increased risk of haemorrhage and spinal haematoma formation.
- Most antibiotics are excreted by the kidney. It is common to use a normal loading dose with reduced and/or delayed maintenance doses. If in doubt check in the BNF or with a microbiologist.

	Drugs safe in CRF	Drugs safe in limited or reduced doses	Drugs contraindicated in CRF
Premedication	Lormetazepam, midazolam, temazepam		
Induction	Propofol	Ketamine, etomidate, thiopental	
Maintenance	Isoflurane, desflurane, halothane, propofol	Sevoflurane	Enflurane
Muscle relaxants	Suxamethonium, atracurium, cisatracurium	Vecuronium, rocuronium	Pancuronium
Opioids	Alfentanil, remifentanil	Fentanyl, morphine	Pethidine, codeine, tramadol
Local anaesthetics	Bupivacaine, lidocaine (reduce dose by 25%)	Oxycodone	
Analgesics	Paracetamol		NSAIDs

- 1 Staals LM et al. (2008). Multicentre, parallel-group, comparative trial evaluating the efficacy and safety of sugammadex in patients with end-stage renal failure or normal renal function. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **101**, 492–497.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Renal dialysis

### Haemodialysis

- Haemodialysis patients undergo dialysis for several hours, 3 or 4 times a week.
- Normally patients have AV fistula which must be carefully protected. Use dialysis catheters for IV access only as a last resort, and remember that the dead space may contain high dose heparin (at least 1000IU/ml). Aspirate and discard.
- Haemodialysis should finish 4–6hr before surgery to allow fluid shifts to equilibrate and residual heparin to be metabolised. Patients will often be relatively hypovolaemic post-dialysis (deliberately).
- Perioperative cardiovascular instability is common. Replace fluid losses carefully using 0.9% sodium chloride or colloids to maintain normovolaemia. Excess fluid can be removed by dialysis.
- Delay postoperative haemodialysis for 1–2d if possible because of heparin-induced bleeding.
- Anaesthesia for AV fistula formation: ask the surgeon where the fistula is to be formed. Local infiltration works well for a brachio basilic fistula. Axillary brachial plexus block or light GA is recommended for a brachiocephalic fistula. Avoid hypotension to prevent fistula thrombosis. The fistula may be used for dialysis after 3–4wk.

### Peritoneal dialysis

- Peritoneal dialysis uses the large surface area of the peritoneum to exchange fluid and metabolites via temporary (hard) or permanent Tenckhoff (soft) catheters in the lower abdomen. This type of dialysis is inefficient but can run continuously. Catheter placement or removal usually requires a mini-laparotomy.
- Dialysis fluid should be drained before anaesthesia to prevent respiratory function compromise. Patients can usually omit 24–48hr of dialysis, but a period of haemodialysis may be needed if undergoing bowel surgery.

## Anaesthesia for renal transplantation

- Renal transplantation is the treatment of choice for stage 5 renal failure with greatly increased survival and quality of life. There are insufficient organs available and patients should be pre-optimised in advance.
- All the rules for anaesthesia in patients with CRF apply (induction agents, analgesics, muscle relaxants, volatile anaesthetics) (see pp128–32).
- Early onset of urine output is directly correlated with graft survival so dopamine ( $3\mu\text{g/kg/min}$ ), mannitol  $0.5\text{g/kg}$ , and furosemide  $250\text{mg}$  (rate  $4\text{mg/min}$ ) are commonly used perioperatively. Discuss with surgeons.
- Major operation which may last 2–4hr.
- Blood loss not usually great.
- Protect AV fistulae—may be needed postoperatively.
- CVP monitoring and access for dopamine are used (see pp128–32). Maintain CVP 10–12mmHg. This may require 60–100ml/kg fluid.
- Local anaesthetic blocks (TAP) and infiltration are useful. Normal doses of paracetamol (no NSAIDs) and PCA morphine/fentanyl.
- Postoperative care is managed in close conjunction with nephrologists/surgeons. Aim for urine output  $0.5\text{ml/kg/hr}$ . Fluid replacement is  $30\text{ml} + \text{losses} + \text{urine output/hr}$ . Avoid hypotension.

### Anaesthesia in a patient with a renal transplant

- The serum creatinine may be normal but renal function and creatinine clearance are not. The transplanted kidney never works perfectly and has only half the number of nephrons. Immunosuppression decreases the function further.
- Patients are immunosuppressed and strict asepsis must be applied. Discuss immunosuppression with the nephrologist if the patient will be kept nil by mouth following surgery.
- Cardiovascular depression may compromise kidney function; avoid hypovolaemia and hypotension.
- Avoid nephrotoxic drugs. Do not use NSAIDs, but paracetamol is safe in normal doses.
- The new kidney is placed superficially in the abdomen and can be damaged by patient positioning (i.e. prone position) or supports.



## Acute renal failure

Acute renal failure (ARF) developing in the perioperative period has a high mortality. It is diagnosed by oliguria and a rising serum creatinine. Occasionally ARF may occur with normal volumes of urine but poor creatinine clearance (high output ARF).

### Risk factors for perioperative ARF

Pre-existing problem	Renal compromise, diabetes, advanced age
Perioperative	Sepsis, hypotension/hypovolaemia, dehydration
Drugs	Nephrotoxins: antibiotics, NSAIDs, ACE inhibitors, lithium, chemotherapy agents, radiological contrast media
Trauma	Rhabdomyolysis (myoglobinaemia from crush injuries)
Surgery	Biliary surgery in the presence of obstructive jaundice (hepatorenal syndrome) see p150 Renal and abdominal vascular surgery
Intra-abdominal hypertension	Any cause of abdominal distension
Urinary obstruction	

### Assessment of renal function

- Measure hourly urine output (remember catheters can block). Urinary electrolytes may help differentiate hypoperfusion ( $\text{Na}^+ < 20\text{mmol/l}$ , urine osmolality  $> 500\text{mosmol/kg}$ ) from acute tubular necrosis ( $\text{Na}^+ > 20\text{mmol/l}$ , urine osmolality  $< 500\text{mosmol/kg}$ ). These results are meaningless if diuretics have been given.
- Serum creatinine is the main initial measurement. Serum urea is much less specific since it is increased in dehydration, GI bleeding, sepsis, and excessive diuretic use.
- Check electrolytes before surgery (especially serum  $\text{K}^+$ ).

### Perioperative considerations

- Aim to prevent further deterioration of renal function and maintain an adequate urine output ( $> 0.5\text{ml/kg/hr}$ ).
- Preoperative rehydration is essential, and any fluid deficit should be corrected before surgery. Invasive monitoring may be needed.
- Remember that an adequate blood pressure is needed for renal perfusion. Aim for a mean arterial pressure  $> 70\text{mmHg}$  ( $> 85\text{mmHg}$  in hypertensives). Inotropes may be required.

- The outcome from polyuric ARF is better than oliguric ARF. There is no place for diuretics (furosemide) until adequate filling and arterial blood pressure have been achieved.
- Furosemide is given initially as an IV bolus of 20–40mg. In patients with established renal failure furosemide 250mg may be infused over 1hr.
- There is no evidence to support the use of low dose ('renal') dopamine; it may even be harmful.
- Mannitol (0.5g/kg IV) may improve urine flow.
- Check serum  $K^+$  regularly.
- Seek advice from renal unit/ICU about postoperative care and dialysis.

### Postoperative care

- Avoid NSAIDs in all patients at risk of renal failure.
- Avoid dehydration.
- Closely monitor hourly urine output. If oliguria occurs ( $<0.5\text{ml/kg/hr}$ ) try a fluid challenge of 250–500ml 0.9% sodium chloride/Gelofusine®.
- Intra-abdominal hypertension (pressure  $>20\text{mmHg}$ ) is common following major abdominal surgery and causes anuria by direct compression of the renal pelvis and reduced renal perfusion.

### Emergency management of hyperkalaemia

See p184.

### Further reading

Milner QJW (2003). Pathophysiology of chronic renal failure. *BJA CEPD Reviews*, **3**, 130–133.

Rabey PG (2001). Anaesthesia for renal transplantation. *BJA CEPD Reviews*, **1**, 24–27.

Sladen RN (2000). Anaesthetic considerations for the patient with renal failure. *Anaesthetic Clinics of North America*, **18**, 862–882.

Toivonen HJ (2000). Anaesthesia for patients with a transplanted organ. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*, **44**, 812–833.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Hepatic disease

## Jonathan Purday

Complications of liver disease 140

Acute hepatic disease 141

Chronic hepatic disease 142

Drug metabolism and liver disease 143

Anaesthetic management of the patient with liver failure 144

Postoperative liver dysfunction or jaundice 148

Renal failure and the hepatorenal syndrome 150

Portal hypertension and oesophageal varices 152

## Complications of liver disease

There are numerous causes of hepatic disease. The most common in the Western world are cirrhosis secondary to viral hepatitis and alcoholism. Patients with underlying hepatic disease often present to the anaesthetist and surgeon. Problems include:

- **Bleeding:** the liver is responsible for the production of clotting factors. Prothrombin time is usually prolonged and can be improved by daily vitamin K injections (10mg IV slowly). Thrombocytopenia is also common, as is defective platelet function. Bleeding is more likely to be due to thrombocytopenia than clotting factor deficiency. Clotting studies and FBC must be carefully checked perioperatively and adequate provision must be made for the crossmatch of blood, fresh frozen plasma (FFP), and platelets.
- **Encephalopathy:** in severe liver failure toxic products build up (particularly ammonia, due to deranged amino acid metabolism) leading to a progressive encephalopathy. In cirrhosis this may be precipitated by sedatives, a high-protein diet (including GI bleed), infection, surgical operations, trauma, hypokalaemia, and constipation. A decreased level of consciousness may compromise the airway and intubation may be required if cerebral oedema develops.

### Grades of hepatic encephalopathy

Grade 0	Alert and orientated
Grade I	Drowsy and orientated
Grade II	Drowsy and disorientated
Grade III	Rousable stupor, restlessness
Grade IV	Coma—unresponsive to deep pain

- **Hypoglycaemia:** the liver contains major stores of glycogen, a glucose precursor. Check blood glucose levels regularly. Give 10% dextrose infusions if  $<2\text{mmol/l}$ . Monitor plasma  $\text{K}^+$ .
- **Ascites:** fibrotic changes in the liver lead to portal hypertension, and in combination with salt/water retention and a low serum albumin, fluid accumulates in the peritoneal cavity. This can lead to respiratory failure due to pressure on the diaphragm.
- **Infection:** immune function is depressed and infections of the respiratory and urinary tract are common.
- **Renal failure:** this is often multifactorial. Combined liver and renal failure may result from:
  - A common pathomechanism (sepsis, toxic, immune, and genetic).
  - Secondary causes due to decreased circulating blood volume or increased renovascular resistance (prerenal), impaired renal tubular function, and hepatorenal failure. Hepatorenal failure is due to intrarenal arterial and arteriolar vasoconstriction and can be diagnosed only after exclusion of shock, sepsis, and nephrotoxic drugs. See p150.

## Acute hepatic disease

### Definition

- Hyperacute hepatic failure—within 7d.
- Acute hepatic failure—7–28d.
- Subacute hepatic failure—28d–6 months.

Previously well patients with acute liver failure rarely present for anaesthesia and surgery (mortality rates of 10–100% have been described). More commonly, acute failure is due to decompensation of chronic liver disease. Hyperacute hepatic failure paradoxically has the best prognosis.

### Causes of acute liver failure

- Viral hepatitis: types A–G, cytomegalovirus, herpes simplex/Epstein–Barr virus.
- Drugs: paracetamol excess, idiosyncratic reactions, halothane.
- Toxins: carbon tetrachloride, *Amanita phalloides* mushrooms.
- Others: acute fatty infiltration of pregnancy, HELLP syndrome, Wilson's disease, Reye's syndrome.

Patients with acute liver disease and encephalopathy have severe coagulopathy, active fibrinolysis, high cardiac output/reduced systemic vascular resistance, hypoglycaemia/hypokalaemia, and metabolic acidosis. They are also at risk of raised intracranial pressure.

### Management

- Due to the high perioperative mortality, patients should have all surgery postponed (unless true emergency) until at least 30d after liver function tests have returned to normal.
- Hepatitis B and C are highly contagious via parenteral inoculation to theatre personnel and universal precautions must be strictly followed.
- Patients with abnormal liver function tests and coagulopathy should be closely monitored.
- Patients with an encephalopathy, deteriorating INR, hypoglycaemia, or acidosis should be discussed with a specialist liver unit.
- Patients with grade III/IV encephalopathy need intubation to protect their airway.
- Hypovolaemia and hypotension should be treated with IV fluids and inotropes/vasopressors (noradrenaline first choice).
- Bicarbonate-buffered haemofiltration and intracranial pressure monitoring are often required.
- N-acetyl cysteine infusion (essential in paracetamol overdose) may be helpful.
- Orthotopic liver transplantation may be a definitive treatment in some cases.

## Chronic hepatic disease

The commonest cause of chronic liver disease is cirrhosis, but chronic hepatitis is widespread, with an estimated 5% of the world's population being chronic hepatitis B carriers.

- Chronic hepatitis: any hepatitis lasting >6 months
- Cirrhosis: hepatic fibrosis with regeneration nodules
- Cirrhosis can be acquired (alcohol, viral hepatitis, drugs, secondary biliary, or veno-occlusive disease) or inherited (primary biliary, haemochromatosis, Wilson's, galactosaemia, sickle cell disease).
- Chronic hepatitis B develops in 3% of those infected. It is widespread in the Far East/Africa and infects 300 million people worldwide.
- Other high-risk groups include homosexuals, IV drug users, haemophiliacs, haemodialysis patients, and those in institutional care. It may progress to cirrhosis or hepatocellular carcinoma.
- Chronic hepatitis C develops in 75% of those infected. Risk groups are similar to hepatitis B/cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma can develop. Blood products were previously responsible for many cases of hepatitis C, but now all donors are screened.
- Other causes of chronic hepatitis include alcohol, autoimmune, metabolic, and drugs (isoniazid, methyl dopa).
- Assessment of risk factors for surgery and anaesthesia is described by Child's classification (excluding portal-systemic shunt procedures, e.g. transjugular intrahepatic portal-systemic shunt procedure (TIPSS)). Common causes of mortality in the perioperative period include sepsis, renal failure, bleeding, and worsening liver failure with encephalopathy.

Surgical risk assessment: Child's classification as modified by Pugh

Mortality	Minimal (<5%)	Modest (5–50%)	Marked (>50%)
Bilirubin (μmol/l)	<25	25–40	>40
Albumin (g/l)	>35	30–35	<30
PT (seconds prolonged)	1–4 (INR <1.7)	4–6 (INR 1.7–2.3)	>6 (INR >2.3)
Ascites	None	Moderate	Marked
Encephalopathy (p140)	None	Grades 1 and 2	Grades 3 and 4
Nutrition	Excellent	Good	Poor

PT = prothrombin time.

INR = international normalised ratio.

## Drug metabolism and liver disease

- The vast majority of drugs, including anaesthetic drugs, are metabolised by the liver.
- Most drugs are initially metabolised by the cytochrome P450 system. In Phase I they are either oxidised or reduced and in Phase II they are conjugated with a glucuronide, glycine, or sulphate to enhance water solubility and excretion in bile or urine.
- In early alcoholic liver disease, the cytochrome P450 system is often induced, leading to rapid metabolism of drugs, whereas this is reversed in end-stage disease.
- The liver has a large functional reserve, so these functions are usually preserved until end-stage disease.
- Pharmacodynamics and the sensitivity of target organs for sedatives and anaesthetics may be altered, with coma easily induced in end-stage liver disease.
- Advanced liver disease may prolong the half-life and potentiate the clinical effects of alfentanil, morphine, vecuronium, rocuronium, mivacurium, and benzodiazepines.

### Causes of altered drug pharmacokinetics in liver failure

Liver problem	Pharmacological effect
Decreased portal blood flow in hepatic fibrosis	Decreased first pass metabolism
Hypoalbuminaemia	Increased free drug in plasma
Ascites and sodium/water retention	Increased volume of distribution
Biotransformation enzymes	Activity may increase or decrease
Reduced liver cell mass	Reduced activity
Obstructive jaundice	Decreased biliary excretion of drugs



## **Anaesthetic management of the patient with liver failure**

Patients with liver disease have a high perioperative risk which is proportional to the degree of hepatic dysfunction.

### **Preoperative laboratory investigations**

- Full blood count and clotting studies. Prothrombin time (PT) is a good marker of liver function.
- Electrolytes and creatinine. The urea is often falsely low due to decreased hepatic production.
- Glucose—hepatic stores of glycogen and glucose utilisation are often affected.
- Liver function tests (see below).
- Arterial blood gases—hepatopulmonary syndrome (HPS) and hypoxia related to intrapulmonary shunting are common in severe liver disease.<sup>1</sup>
- Urinalysis.
- Hepatitis screening (although universal precautions should always be observed).

### **Assessment of liver function**

- Serum liver function tests are rarely specific, but PT, albumin, and bilirubin are sensitive markers of overall liver function. Serial measurements are useful and indicate trends. Avoid giving FFP unless treating active bleeding, as the PT is an excellent guide to overall liver function.
- Liver transaminases (aspartate transaminase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT)) are sensitive to even mild liver damage and have no role in mortality prediction. Levels may decrease in severe disease.
- Alkaline phosphatase is raised with biliary obstruction.
- Immunological tests: antinuclear antibody is present in 75% of patients with chronic active hepatitis, and smooth muscle antibody in nearly all cases of primary biliary cirrhosis. Alpha-fetoprotein is a marker of hepatoma.
- Imaging techniques: ultrasound is the main initial investigation of obstructive jaundice. Other useful investigations include ERCP, CT, and MRI cholangiograms.
- Liver function tests (LFTs) must always be interpreted alongside a careful history and examination. The liver has a large reserve function and can often withstand considerable damage before LFTs become deranged.

## Liver function tests

Test	Normal range	Raised
Bilirubin	2–17 $\mu\text{mol/l}$	Haemolysis Gilbert's syndrome Acute liver failure
Aspartate transaminase (AST)	0–35 IU/l	Non-specific (found in liver, heart, muscle, etc.) Hepatocellular injury
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT)	0–45 IU/l	Specific Hepatocellular injury—alcohol, drugs, hepatitis, inherited liver diseases
Alkaline phosphatase (ALP)	30–120 IU/l	Physiological (pregnancy, adolescents, familial) Bile duct obstruction (stones, drugs, cancer) Primary biliary cirrhosis Metastatic liver disease Bone disease
Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase ( $\gamma$ -GT)	0–30 IU/l	Non-specific (found in heart, pancreas, kidneys) Useful to confirm hepatic source for $\uparrow$ ALP or $\uparrow$ AST or $\uparrow$ ALT Alcoholic liver disease
Albumin	40–60 g/l	Non-specific (affected by nutritional status, catabolism, and urinary and GI losses) Prognostic in chronic liver disease
Prothrombin time and international normalised ratio (INR)	10.9–12.5s (INR 1.0–1.2)	Non-specific (vitamin K deficiency, warfarin therapy, DIC) However, best prognostic marker in acute liver failure <sup>1</sup>

**Perioperative considerations**

- Proton pump inhibitors or H<sub>2</sub> antagonists should be used preoperatively. Rapid sequence induction will further reduce the risks of gastric aspiration.
- Even in severe liver disease the problem is usually one of exaggerated effects of drugs on the CNS, rather than poor liver metabolism.
- Hepatic blood flow is altered by anaesthetic drugs (including  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  agonists/antagonists), positive pressure ventilation, PEEP, and surgical technique.
- In most cases anaesthesia reduces liver blood flow, particularly if halothane is used. However, isoflurane may improve it.
- Regional techniques can be used as long as coagulation is not deranged, and it should be remembered that all local anaesthetics are metabolised by the liver.
- Isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane are the preferred volatile agents as enflurane, and particularly halothane, have marked effects in decreasing hepatic blood flow and inhibiting drug metabolism.

**Anaesthetic drugs in liver failure**

	<b>Drugs safe in liver failure</b>	<b>Drugs to be used with caution (may need reduced dosage)</b>	<b>Drugs contraindicated in liver failure</b>
Premedication	Lorazepam	Midazolam, diazepam	
Induction	Propofol, thiopental, etomidate		
Maintenance	Desflurane, sevoflurane, isoflurane, nitrous oxide	Enflurane	Halothane (possibly) <sup>1</sup>
Muscle relaxants	Atracurium, cisatracurium	Rocuronium, vecuronium, suxamethonium	
Opioids	Remifentanyl	Fentanyl, alfentanil, morphine, pethidine	
Analgesics	Paracetamol	NSAIDs, lidocaine, bupivacaine	

<sup>1</sup> Halothane has been rarely reported to cause hepatitis (see p149)

### Physiological considerations

- Cardiovascular: liver disease causes various types of shunt, from cutaneous spider angiomas to portosystemic shunts. These lead to an increase in cardiac output, often by 50%. This is combined with a reduction in systemic vascular resistance and an increase in extracellular fluid due to an activated renin–angiotensin system. In contrast, some alcoholics may have a decreased cardiac output secondary to cardiomyopathy.
- Ascites: a common manifestation of liver disease. Water and sodium retention may be treated with potassium-sparing diuretics, e.g. spironolactone. A careful check of electrolytes is essential. Removal of ascites at operation will be followed by postoperative reforming. This should be taken into account in fluid balance.
- Pulmonary: up to 50% of patients have intrapulmonary shunting and V/Q mismatch, pleural effusions, and respiratory splinting of the diaphragm by ascites, causing a decrease in  $\text{PaO}_2$  not improved by increasing the  $\text{FiO}_2$ . Diuretics or paracentesis may improve ascites.
- Bleeding and clotting problems: clotting factors and platelets are affected quantitatively and qualitatively. Coagulation should be carefully assessed preoperatively and adequate provision made for intraoperative blood products.

### Anaesthesia for transjugular intrahepatic portal-systemic shunt procedure (TIPSS)

- Typically used in end-stage liver failure to decrease portal pressure and decrease complications such as variceal bleeding and ascites.
- A stent is positioned radiologically between the hepatic and portal veins, allowing blood to bypass the dilated oesophageal and gastric veins.
- Patients should be adequately resuscitated and variceal bleeding controlled with balloon tamponade.
- Complications of the procedure include pneumothorax (if the internal jugular route is used), cardiac arrhythmias, and massive bleeding secondary to hepatic artery puncture or hepatic capsular tear.
- Anaesthetic technique involves having a cardiovascularly stable patient with good IV access, invasive arterial line monitoring, and inotropes and blood products easily available.

1 Mazzeo AT, Lucanto T, Santamaria LB (2004). Hepatopulmonary syndrome: a concern for the anaesthetist? Pre-operative evaluation of hypoxaemic patients with liver disease. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*, **48**, 178–186.

## Postoperative liver dysfunction or jaundice

Although postoperative jaundice is relatively common, significant liver dysfunction is relatively rare. Dysfunction has a varied aetiology and often resolves without treatment. It should be remembered that hepatitis due to volatile agents is extremely rare and is largely a diagnosis of exclusion.

### Causes of postoperative liver dysfunction or jaundice

Bilirubin overload (haemolysis)	Blood transfusion
	Haematoma resorption
	Haemolytic anaemia (sickle cell, prosthetic heart valve, glucose-6-phosphatase deficiency)
Hepatocellular injury	Exacerbation of pre-existing liver disease
	Hepatic ischaemia: hypovolaemia, hypotension, cardiac failure
	Septicaemia
	Drug-induced (antibiotics, halothane)
	Hypoxia
Cholestasis	Viral hepatitis
	Intrahepatic (benign, infection, drug-induced, e.g. cephalosporins, carbamazepine, erythromycin)
	Extrahepatic (pancreatitis, gallstones, bile duct injury)
Congenital	Gilbert's syndrome

- Common causes include hepatic oxygen deprivation from intra- and postoperative hypoxia and hypotension.
- Benign postoperative intrahepatic cholestasis mimics biliary obstruction and usually occurs after major surgery associated with hypotension, hypoxaemia, and multiple transfusions.
- The surgical procedure should also be considered, and significant haematoma resolution is a common cause.

### Halothane hepatitis

Halothane has been linked to postoperative liver dysfunction. Two syndromes are recognised:

- The first is associated with a transient rise in liver function tests and low morbidity, often after initial exposure.
- The second is thought to occur after repeated exposure and has an 'immune' mechanism with the development of fulminant hepatic failure (FHF) and high mortality. It is rare, with an incidence of 1:35 000 anaesthetics.
- Antibodies specific to FHF patients exposed to halothane are found in 70% of such patients. It is postulated that a halothane oxidative metabolite binds to liver cytochromes to form a hapten and induce a hypersensitivity reaction. All patients exposed to halothane have altered liver proteins but it is unknown why only a few develop liver failure.
- There does appear to be a genetic susceptibility, as shown by *in vitro* testing.
- Halothane has also been shown in several animal studies to significantly decrease liver blood flow, particularly during hypoxia.

### Other inhalational anaesthetic agents

- The chance of an 'immune' reaction to a volatile agent occurring is thought to relate to the amount it is metabolised. Halothane is 20% metabolised.
- Enflurane is 2% metabolised and should therefore cause 10 times fewer reactions. Products of enflurane metabolism have been shown to alter liver proteins and there have been rare case reports linking enflurane with liver damage. There is a theoretical basis for cross-reactivity with previous halothane exposure.
- Isoflurane is 0.2% metabolised. There is, therefore, a theoretical risk of reaction, and indeed there have been a few case reports. These, however, have been contested and isoflurane is considered safe for use in patients at risk of hepatic failure.
- Sevoflurane and desflurane also appear to be safe in liver failure.

## Renal failure and the hepatorenal syndrome

Hepatorenal syndrome and acute tubular necrosis are common in patients with liver disease. Maintenance of an adequate urinary output with fluids is the mainstay of prevention. Once renal failure occurs, mortality is close to 100%.

- The hepatorenal syndrome is a functional renal failure which occurs spontaneously, or more commonly due to fluid shifts particularly in patients with obstructive jaundice.
- The kidney is normal histologically and functions normally following a liver transplant or if transplanted into a recipient.
- All pathophysiological changes seen in ascites (renal sodium/water retention and plasma expansion) are present to an extreme form in the hepatorenal patient.
- Diagnostic criteria are:
  - Urinary sodium  $<10\text{mmol/l}$
  - Urine:plasma osmolality and creatinine ratios  $>1$
  - Normal CVP with no diuresis on central volume expansion
  - A patient with chronic liver disease and ascites.
- Worsening hepatorenal failure results in death, despite haemofiltration and dialysis, and can only be corrected by liver transplantation.

### Prevention

- 8–12hr preoperatively an IV infusion of 0.9% sodium chloride should be commenced to avoid hypovolaemia.
- Renal blood flow must be optimised by monitoring CVP and correcting any hypovolaemia.
- Remember that tense ascites may cause compression of the right atrium and falsely high CVP measurements.
- Mannitol is often used prophylactically to maintain urine output ( $0.5\text{g/kg}$  over 30min).
- Hypotension should be avoided intraoperatively and mean BP should be maintained within 10–20% of preoperative levels—particularly in the hypertensive patient.
- An adequate urine output of at least  $1\text{ml/kg/hr}$  must be achieved.
- Avoid the use of any nephrotoxic drugs such as NSAIDs, and gentamicin in repeated doses.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Portal hypertension and oesophageal varices

- Portal hypertension commonly occurs with cirrhosis but can arise in any condition where there is disruption of pre-, intra-, or posthepatic blood flow.
- Portal hypertension causes enlargement of the anastomoses between the portal and systemic circulation, leading to varices at the gastro-oesophageal junction, haemorrhoids, and dilated abdominal wall veins ('caput medusae').
- 30% of varices bleed and present as haematemesis or malaena.
- Mortality is up to 50% for the acute bleed, particularly in patients with advanced cirrhosis.

### Treatment

- Initial management is to correct hypovolaemia, stop the bleeding, and reverse the coagulopathy.
- Two large-bore IVs and a CVP line should be inserted.
- Drugs that may cause or exacerbate the bleeding, e.g. aspirin, should be stopped.
- Early endoscopy is warranted to confirm the diagnosis and control bleeding. Band ligation appears more effective than sclerosant injection for variceal haemorrhage. Ulcers may be injected with adrenaline. However, 70% of patients will rebleed, most within 6wk. Occasionally, intubation may be necessary to protect the airway.
- Vasoactive drugs (terlipressin 2mg 6-hourly, vasopressin 0.2–0.4U/min for 24–48hr) constrict vessels in the mesenteric beds but may cause coronary constriction and angina. GTN patches or infusion may help. Terlipressin causes less angina than vasopressin.<sup>1</sup>
- Somatostatin (a hypothalamic hormone) 250µg/hr and octreotide (an analogue) 50µg/hr for 2–5d (as well as terlipressin/vasopressin) in combination with endoscopic therapy may be more effective than either alone and should be started while waiting for an experienced endoscopist.
- Balloon tamponade with an oesophageal and gastric balloon can provide temporary haemostasis but should be used only where endoscopic and drug treatments have failed. There is a high risk of fatal complications (aspiration, oesophageal tear/rupture, and airway obstruction) and therefore this should be used only in HDU/ICU.
- $\beta$ -blockade (propranolol 40–160mg twice daily) can decrease portal pressure in the chronic situation and may decrease the rebleed rate from 70% to 50%, but may mask the early signs of hypovolaemia and exacerbate hypotension during rebleeding.

- Portal-systemic shunting is now rarely performed as an emergency due to high mortality. It can occasionally be performed after the first bleed, to lower portal pressure, but is contraindicated if there is any clinical or EEG evidence of encephalopathy.
- A transjugular intrahepatic portal-systemic shunt (TIPSS) achieves shunting without the need for surgery with a lower morbidity and mortality and should be the treatment of choice (see p147).
- Oesophageal staple transection can be used if endoscopic therapy fails or TIPSS is unavailable. The effectiveness and mortality are similar to sclerotherapy. These patients are at increased anaesthetic risk from hypovolaemia, a full stomach, and liver impairment.

### Further reading

- Clarke P, Bellamy MC (2000). Anaesthesia for patients with liver disease. *The Royal College of Anaesthetists Bulletin*, **4**, 158–161.
- Dagher L, Moore K (2001). The hepatorenal syndrome. *Gut*, **49**, 729–737.
- Early management of bleeding oesophageal varices (2000). *Drug and Therapeutics Bulletin*, **38**, 37–40.
- Hyde GM, Limdi JK (2003). Evaluation of abnormal liver function tests. *Postgraduate Medical Journal*, **79**, 307–312.
- Lai WK, Murphy N (2004). Management of acute liver failure. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care & Pain* (Supplement to *British Journal of Anaesthesia*), **4**, 40–42.
- Lentschener C, Ozier Y (2003). What anaesthetists need to know about viral hepatitis. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*, **47**, 794–803.
- Wiklund RA (2004). Preoperative preparation of patients with advanced liver disease. *Critical Care Medicine*, **32**, S106–S115.

1 Kam PCA, Williams S, Yoong FFY (2004). Vasopressin and terlipressin: pharmacology and clinical relevance. *Anaesthesia*, **59**, 993–1001.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Endocrine and metabolic disease

## Hannah Blanshard

Diabetes mellitus 156  
Acromegaly 162  
Thyroid disease 164  
Parathyroid disorders 168  
Adrenocortical insufficiency 170  
The patient on steroids 172  
Cushing's syndrome 174  
Conn's syndrome 176  
Apudomas 178  
Hypokalaemia 182  
Hyperkalaemia 184  
Hyponatraemia 186  
Hypernatraemia 187  
Obesity 188

See also:

Hypercalcaemia 584  
Hypocalcaemia 583

## Diabetes mellitus

Insulin is necessary, even when fasting, to maintain glucose homeostasis and balance stress hormones (e.g. adrenaline). It has two classes of action:

- Excitatory—stimulating glucose uptake and lipid synthesis.
- Inhibitory (physiologically more important)—inhibits lipolysis, proteolysis, glycogenolysis, gluconeogenesis, and ketogenesis.

Lack of insulin is associated with hyperglycaemia, osmotic diuresis, dehydration, hyperosmolarity, hyperviscosity predisposing to thrombosis, and increased rates of wound infection. Sustained hyperglycaemia is associated with increased mortality, hospital stay, and complication rates.

Diabetes mellitus is present in 5% of the population.

- Type I diabetes (20%): immune mediated and leads to absolute insulin deficiency. Patients cannot tolerate prolonged periods without exogenous insulin. Glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis occur, resulting in hyperglycaemia and ketosis. Treatment is with insulin.
- Type II diabetes (80%): a disease of adult onset, associated with insulin resistance. Patients produce some endogenous insulin and their metabolic state often improves with fasting. The treatment may be diet control, oral hypoglycaemics, and/or insulin.

### General considerations

Many diabetic patients are well informed about their condition and have undergone previous surgery. Discuss management with them. Hospital diabetic teams can be useful for advice. The overall aims of perioperative diabetic management are to maintain physiological glucose levels (above hypoglycaemic levels, but below those at which deleterious effects of hyperglycaemia become evident) and prevent hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia, and hypophosphataemia.

### Preoperative assessment

- Cardiovascular: the diabetic is prone to hypertension, ischaemic heart disease (may be 'silent'), cerebrovascular disease, myocardial infarction, and cardiomyopathy. Autonomic neuropathy can lead to tachy- or bradycardia and postural hypotension.
- Renal: 40% of diabetics develop microalbuminuria, which is associated with hypertension, ischaemic heart disease, and retinopathy. This may be reduced by treatment with ACE inhibitors.
- Respiratory: diabetics are prone to perioperative chest infections, especially if they are obese and smokers.
- Airway: thickening of soft tissues (glycosylation) occurs, especially in ligaments around joints leading to limited joint mobility syndrome. Intubation may be difficult if the neck is affected or there is insufficient mouth opening.
- Gastrointestinal: 50% of patients have delayed gastric emptying and are prone to reflux.
- Diabetics are prone to infections.

## Investigations

- Blood glucose.
- Test urine for ketones and glucose.
- Measure glycosylated haemoglobin (HbA<sub>1c</sub>), a measure of recent glycaemic control (normal 3.8–6.4%). If HbA<sub>1c</sub> is 7.5–10%, highlight suboptimal control to GP. Surgery may proceed with caution. A value >10% suggests inadequate control. Refer to diabetic team and only proceed if surgery is urgent.

## Preoperative management

- Place patient first on operating list if possible.
- Stop long-acting oral hypoglycaemics, e.g. metformin and glibenclamide, 24hr before surgery. Chlorpropamide should ideally be stopped 3d before surgery because of its long action and substituted with a shorter-acting drug such as gliclazide. It is no longer recommended in the UK.
- Individuals with type 1 diabetes should NEVER go without insulin as they are at risk of diabetic ketoacidosis.

## Perioperative management

- If the patient can be expected to eat and drink within 4hr classify the surgery as minor. All other surgery is major. If diabetic control is poor, i.e. a fasting blood glucose of >12mmol/l, manage with an insulin/glucose regime. Aim to maintain blood glucose between 4 and 10mmol/l.
- Glucose/insulin infusions should be administered through the same cannula to prevent accidental administration of insulin without glucose. Both infusions should be regulated by volumetric pumps, with an antireflux valve on the IV glucose line.
- Hartmann's solution is controversial as lactate converts rapidly to glucose in the fasted state. Saline may be a more appropriate choice.
- Check blood glucose hourly.
- Consider a rapid sequence induction if gastric stasis is suspected.
- Regional techniques may be useful for extremity surgery and to reduce the risk of undetected hypoglycaemia. Document any existing nerve damage.
- Autonomic dysfunction may exacerbate the hypotensive effect of spinals and epidurals.

## Hypoglycaemia

- A blood glucose <4mmol/l is the main danger to diabetics perioperatively. Fasting, recent alcohol consumption, liver failure, and septicæmia commonly exacerbate this.
- Characteristic signs are tachycardia, light-headedness, sweating, and pallor. This may progress to confusion, restlessness, incomprehensible speech, double vision, convulsions, and coma. If untreated, permanent brain damage will occur, made worse by hypotension and hypoxia.
- Anaesthetised patients may not show any of these signs. Monitor blood sugar regularly and suspect hypoglycaemia with unexplained changes in the patient's condition.
- If hypoglycaemia occurs, give 50ml of 50% glucose IV (or any glucose solution available) and repeat blood sugar measurement. Alternatively give 1mg of glucagon (IM or IV); 10–20g (2–4 teaspoons) of sugar by mouth or nasogastric tube is an alternative.

	<b>Morning list</b> <i>Fast from midnight</i>	<b>Afternoon list</b> <i>Early light breakfast before 07:00hr</i>
<b>Type I (IDDM)</b>		
Major procedure	Omit morning SC insulin  Start IV insulin/ glucose regime at 07:00hr	Give two-thirds normal morning dose of soluble insulin (e.g. Actrapid®, Humulin S®, or Humalog®) or one-third of normal dose of pre-mixed insulin (e.g. Mixtard® or Humulin M3®) before breakfast  Start IV insulin/glucose regime at 11:00hr  When a light diet is tolerated, discontinue IV regime and commence qds SC regime (see p159)
Minor procedure, good diabetic control	Omit morning SC insulin	Give normal SC insulin with breakfast  Omit midday SC insulin  Ensure IV access. Check blood glucose hourly until patient has eaten. When patient can eat give usual SC insulin
<b>Type II (NIDDM)</b>		
Major procedure or poor diabetic control	Omit oral hypoglycaemics  Start IV insulin/ glucose regime at 07:00hr	Omit oral hypoglycaemics  Start IV insulin/glucose at 12:00hr  If patient can eat later that day and control is good, discontinue IV regime and recommence oral hypoglycaemics  If IV > 24hr or control is poor, discontinue IV regime before first meal and commence qds SC regime
Minor procedure or good diabetic control	Omit tablets on day of procedure. If blood glucose <4mmol/l start 10% glucose at 100ml/hr. Measure blood glucose every 2hr until patient has eaten. Give a meal and tablets as soon as possible after return to ward	

### **Intravenous insulin/glucose regime**

- Start IV. Use 10% glucose at 60ml/hr rather than 5% glucose at 120ml/hr (prevents water overload, particularly in the elderly). 4% glucose–0.18% sodium chloride is acceptable, but 5% glucose with 0.45% sodium chloride is preferable although this is not readily available in all countries. Whenever giving hypotonic parenteral fluids watch out for hyponatraemia.
- If  $K^+$  <4.5mmol/l, add 10mmol KCl to each 500ml bag dextrose.

- Start IV insulin infusion using a syringe pump. Adjust according to sliding scale below. Test blood glucose hourly initially. Patients on >50U of insulin/day will need higher doses of insulin by infusion.

Blood glucose (mmol/l)	Insulin infusion rate (U/hr)	Insulin infusion rate if blood glucose not maintained <10mmol/l (U/hr)
<4.0	Stop for 30min and review	Stop for 30min and review
4.1–7.0	1	1
7.1–10	2	2.5
10.1–13.0	3	4
13.1–16.0	4	5
16.0–20.0	5	6
>20	6 (check infusion running and call doctor)	8 (check infusion running and call doctor)

### QDS SC insulin regime

- Use when discontinuing IV insulin and glucose regime.
- Calculate total daily insulin requirement from the preceding 24hr or the usual daily amount. Divide by four and give each dose just before meals and at bedtime.
- Adjust doses as necessary.
- If on sliding scale, stop sliding scale an hour after subcutaneous insulin injection.

### ITU admissions

- Manage patients admitted to ITU postoperatively to ensure blood glucose between 5 and 10mmol/l. Previous evidence from Van den Berge *et al.*<sup>1</sup> for tighter glucose control (4.4–6.1mmol/l) leading to improved mortality and morbidity has not been borne out by recent evidence from the Glucontrol study<sup>2</sup> and the VISEP study<sup>3</sup>. These showed no difference in outcomes but significantly more hypoglycaemia and the need for more nursing input to achieve this level of glycaemic control safely.

### Glucose potassium insulin regime (GKI or Alberti)<sup>4</sup>

This is an alternative, simpler regime which does not require infusion pumps, but may provide less accurate control of blood sugar. The original regime as described by Alberti consists of:

- 500ml of 10% glucose.
- Add 10–15U soluble insulin, plus 10mmol potassium chloride per 500ml bag.
- Infuse at 100ml/hr.
- Provides insulin 2–3U/hr, potassium 2mmol/hr, and glucose 10g/hr.

Glucose 10% is not always available, so the following regime with 5% glucose can be used: infuse 5% glucose (500ml bags) at the calculated rate



for the patient's fluid maintenance requirements. Insulin and potassium should be added to each bag as per the table below. The bag may be changed according to 2-hourly blood glucose measurements.

Blood glucose (mmol/l)	Soluble insulin (U) to be added to each 500ml bag 5% glucose	Blood potassium (mmol/l)	KCl (mmol) to be added to each 500ml bag 5% glucose
<4	5	<3	20
4–6	10	3–5	10
6.1–10	15	>5	None
10.1–20	20		
>20	Review	If potassium level not available, add 10mmol KCl to each bag	

### Further reading

- McAnulty GR, Robertshaw HJ, Hall GM (2000). Anaesthetic management of patients with diabetes mellitus. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 80–90.
- Rehman HU, Mohammed K (2003). Perioperative management of diabetic patients. *Current Surgery*, **60**, 607–611.
- Simpson AK, Levy N, Hall GM (2008). Perioperative IV fluids in diabetic patients – don't forget the salt. *Anaesthesia*, **63**, 1043–1045.
- Sonksen P, Sonksen J (2000). Insulin: understanding its action in health and disease. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 69–79.

- 1 Van den Berghe G et al. (2001) Intensive insulin therapy in critically ill patients. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **345**, 1359–1367.
- 2 Preiser JC et al. (2009) A prospective randomized multi-centre controlled trial on tight glucose control by intensive insulin therapy in adult intensive care units: the Glucontrol study. *Intensive Care Medicine*, **35**, 1738–1748.
- 3 Brunkhorst FM et al. (2008) Intensive insulin therapy and pentastarch resuscitation in severe sepsis. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **358**, 125–139.
- 4 Alberti KGMM (1991). Diabetes and surgery. *Anesthesiology*, **74**, 209–211.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Acromegaly

A rare clinical syndrome caused by overproduction of growth hormone from the anterior pituitary. Patients may present for pituitary surgery (p416) or require surgery unrelated to their pituitary pathology.

### Preoperative assessment

- Cardiovascular: cardiac assessment for hypertension (30%), ischaemic heart disease, cardiomyopathy, heart failure, conduction defects, and valvular disease.
- Airway: difficult airway management/intubation may occur—check for large jaw, head, tongue, lips, and general hypertrophy of the larynx and trachea. Also vocal cord thickening or strictures and chondrocalcinosis of the larynx. Consider direct/indirect laryngoscopy preoperatively if vocal cord or laryngeal pathology is suspected. Snoring and daytime somnolence may indicate sleep apnoea. Look for enlargement of the thyroid (25%) which may compress the trachea.
- Drugs: somatostatin analogues (octreotide, lanreotide) may cause vomiting and diarrhoea. Bromocriptine, a long-acting dopamine agonist, is often used to lower growth hormone levels. It can cause severe postural hypotension.
- Neurological: symptoms and signs of raised intracranial pressure.

### Investigations

- ECG as routine. Echocardiogram if patient symptomatic or has murmurs.
- CXR if cardiorespiratory problems.
- Blood glucose—25% of cases are diabetic.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Large facemasks and long-bladed laryngoscopes may make airway management and intubation easier. Awake fiberoptic intubation is the technique of choice for patients with anticipated difficult intubation, but is seldom required (see p1000). Elective tracheostomy should be considered in those with severe respiratory obstruction.
- Positioning may be difficult due to size. A long table may be required.
- Nerve compression syndromes are common so take care to protect vulnerable areas (ulnar nerve at the elbow, median nerve at the wrist, and common peroneal nerve below the knee).
- Experience shows more problems with extubation than intubation.
- If evidence of sleep apnoea, extubate the patient awake and sitting up.

### Postoperative care

If major surgery, consider ventilating the patient with sleep apnoea for a few hours in ICU until they are stable to wean from the ventilator.

### Further reading

- Nemergut EC, Dumont AS, Barry UJ, Lawes ER (2005). Perioperative management of patients undergoing transphenoidal pituitary surgery. *Anaesthesia and Analgesia*, **101**, 1170–1181.
- Seidman PA, Kofke WA, Policare R, Young M (2000). Anaesthetic complications of acromegaly. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **84**, 179–182.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Thyroid disease

Patients may present for thyroidectomy (see p580) or for non-thyroid surgery.

### General considerations for non-thyroid surgery

#### *Hypothyroidism*

- Commonly due to autoimmune thyroid destruction.
- Cardiovascular complications include decreased blood volume, cardiac output, and heart rate with a predisposition to hypotension and ischaemic heart disease. Pericardial effusions also occur.
- Also associated with anaemia, hypoglycaemia, hyponatraemia, and impaired hepatic drug metabolism.
- If clinical evidence of hypothyroidism, delay elective surgery to obtain euthyroid state. Liaise with endocrinologist. Suggest levothyroxine ( $T_4$ ) (starting dose 50 microgram increasing to 100–200 microgram PO over several weeks). The elderly are susceptible to angina and heart failure with increasing cardiac work caused by thyroxine, so start with 25µg and increase by 25 mg at 3–4-weekly intervals.
- If surgery is urgent then liothyronine ( $T_3$ ) (10–50µg slow IV with ECG monitoring or 5–20 microgram in patients with known or suspected cardiac disease, followed by 10–25 microgram 8-hourly) can be used, but this is more controversial.

#### *Hyperthyroidism (thyrotoxicosis)*

- Typically presents with weight loss, hypertension, sweating, and cardiac arrhythmias (especially atrial fibrillation). Treatment is with carbimazole (30–45mg orally daily for 6–8wk). This inhibits iodination of tyrosyl residues in thyroglobulin. Occasionally in severe cases with a large thyroid, Lugol's iodine is substituted 10d preoperatively to reduce gland vascularity.
- $\beta$ -blockade (propranolol 30–60mg tds) is also started if there are signs of tremor or palpitations. The non-cardioselective  $\beta$ -blockers such as propranolol are more effective than the selective ones.  $\beta_1$  adrenergic blockade treats the symptoms of tachycardia, but  $\beta_2$  adrenergic blockade prevents peripheral conversion of  $T_4$  to  $T_3$ .

### Preoperative assessment

- Thyroid function: check patient is euthyroid—heart rate of <80bpm and no hand tremor. Delay surgery if possible until this is achieved. Patients with subclinical hypothyroidism usually present no anaesthetic problems and elective surgery can proceed without special preparation.<sup>1</sup>
- Airway: look for tracheal deviation—a large goitre can cause respiratory obstruction. This is a particular problem when the gland extends retrosternally. Ask the patient about positional dyspnoea and dysphagia. Look for evidence of tracheal compression with shortness of breath, dysphagia, and stridor (occurs with 50% compression). Infiltrating carcinoma may make any neck movement difficult and is an independent predictor of difficult intubation.

- Superior vena caval obstruction can occur. Look for distended neck veins that do not change with respiration.
- Check for other autoimmune disorders.

### **Investigations**

- FBC, U&Es, serum calcium, thyroid function tests.
- CXR and thoracic inlet views essential to assess tracheal compression.
- If tracheal compression present, perform CT or MRI scan to reveal site and length of narrowing and also presence of any calcification.
- Refer to ENT surgeon for indirect laryngoscopy to document any preoperative vocal cord dysfunction.

## **Conduct of anaesthesia**

### **Hypothyroid patients**

- Give all drugs slowly. Susceptible to profound hypotension, which may be relatively resistant to the effects of catecholamine therapy.
- Low metabolic rate predisposes to hypothermia, so actively warm.
- Drug metabolism can be slow. Monitor twitch response and reduce dose of relaxants and opioids.

### **Hyperthyroid patients**

- Continue  $\beta$ -blockade perioperatively to reduce possibility of thyroid storm.

## **Special considerations**

### **Thyroid storm**

- A life-threatening exacerbation of hyperthyroid state with evidence of decompensation in one or more organ systems—mortality 20–30%.
- Usually presents 6–24h post-surgery with fever ( $>40^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), sweating, sinus tachycardia ( $>140\text{bpm}$ ), coma, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhoea.
- Rehydrate with IV saline and glucose.
- Treat hyperthermia with tepid sponging and paracetamol. Do not give NSAIDs or aspirin as these displace thyroid hormone from serum binding sites.
- Give propranolol (1mg increments up to 10mg) with CVS monitoring to decrease pulse rate to  $<90\text{bpm}$ . Alternatively give esmolol (loading dose  $250\text{--}500\mu\text{g/kg}$  followed by  $50\text{--}100\mu\text{g/kg/min}$ ).
- Give hydrocortisone (200mg IV qds) to treat adrenal insufficiency and to decrease  $\text{T}_4$  release and conversion to  $\text{T}_3$  at very high levels.
- Give propylthiouracil (1g loading dose via nasogastric tube followed by  $200\text{--}300\text{mg}$  qds). This inhibits thyroid hormone release and also decreases peripheral conversion of  $\text{T}_4$  to  $\text{T}_3$ .
- After blockade by propylthiouracil, give sodium iodide (500mg tds IV), potassium iodide (5 drops qds via nasogastric tube), or Lugol's iodine (5–10 drops qds via nasogastric tube).<sup>1</sup>

### **Hypothyroid coma**

- A rare form of decompensated hypothyroidism—mortality 15–20%.
- Characterised by coma, hypoventilation, bradycardia, hypotension, and a severe dilutional hyponatraemia.
- Precipitated by infection, trauma, cold, and central nervous system depressants.

- Rehydrate with IV glucose and saline.
- Stabilise cardiac and respiratory systems as necessary. May require ventilation.
- Sudden warming may lead to extreme peripheral vasodilatation, so use cautious passive external warming.
- Give levothyroxine 200–400µg IV bolus, followed by 100µg the next day. Use smaller doses in patients with cardiovascular disease.
- Patients should first receive stress dose steroids (e.g. hydrocortisone 100mg qds IV), in case they have concomitant primary or secondary adrenal insufficiency, a common result of hypothyroidism.
- Consider a combination of intravenous T<sub>3</sub> and T<sub>4</sub>, particularly if urgent surgery required.<sup>2</sup> The conversion of T<sub>4</sub> to T<sub>3</sub> is suppressed in hypothyroid coma and T<sub>3</sub> is more active than T<sub>4</sub>. For doses of IV T<sub>3</sub> see p164.
- Transfer to ICU.

### Further reading

Farling PA (2000). Thyroid disease. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 15–28.  
[http://www.usyd.edu.au/anaes/lectures/thyroid\\_tmc.html](http://www.usyd.edu.au/anaes/lectures/thyroid_tmc.html).

1 Bennett-Guerrero E, Kramer DC, Schwinn DA (1997). Effect of chronic and acute thyroid hormone reduction on perioperative outcome. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **85**, 30–36.

2 Mathes DM (1998). Treatment of myxedema coma for emergency surgery. *Anaesthesia and Analgesia*, **86**, 445–451.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Parathyroid disorders

### General considerations

The parathyroid glands secrete parathyroid hormone (PTH), which acts on the bones and kidneys to increase serum calcium and decrease serum phosphate. It stimulates osteoclasts to release calcium and phosphate into the extracellular fluid and simultaneously increases phosphate excretion and calcium reabsorption in the kidney. Patients may present for parathyroidectomy (p584) and non-parathyroid-related surgery.

### Hyperparathyroidism

- Primary hyperthyroidism: usually an adenoma causing a high PTH, high calcium, and low phosphate. Associated with familial multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) type 1. Tumours rarely palpable and are located at surgery. Methylthioninium chloride (methylene blue upto 1mg/kg) is often given preoperatively to localise the parathyroid gland.
- Presentation—50% of cases are asymptomatic and presentation often subtle. May present with anorexia, dyspepsia, nausea, vomiting and constipation, hypertension, shortened QT interval, polydipsia, polyuria, renal calculi, depression, poor memory, and drowsiness.

### Hypercalcaemic crisis

- Occurs most commonly in the elderly with undiagnosed hyperparathyroidism and with malignant disease. Dehydration results in anorexia and nausea/vomiting which exacerbates the cycle. Also characterised by weakness, lethargy, mental changes, and coma.
- Serum calcium  $>4.5\text{mmol/l}$  is life-threatening and can be rapidly but transiently lowered with phosphate (500ml of 0.1M neutral solution over 6–8hr).
- Rehydrate (4–6 litres of fluid often required).
- Pamidronate (60mg in 500ml saline over 4hr) is first-line treatment. Effect is rapid and long lasting.
- Calcitonin (3–4U/kg IV then 4U/kg SC bd). Causes a rapid but temporary decrease in skeletal release of calcium and phosphate.
- Second-line treatment, once volume repletion has been achieved, is with forced saline diuresis with furosemide (40mg IV every 4hr). Loop diuretics decrease the proximal tubular resorption of calcium. Consider central pressure monitoring in elderly at risk of left ventricular failure.
- Hydrocortisone (200–400mg IV daily) in patients with malignancy.
- Dialysis is reserved for patients with renal failure.

### Secondary hyperparathyroidism

- Results from compensatory parathyroid hypertrophy due to chronic low calcium. Complicates chronic renal failure.
- Parathyroid hyperplasia causes a high PTH, normal or low calcium level, and a high phosphate level.
- Usually presents as excessive bone resorption (seen earliest in the radial aspect of the middle phalanx of the second digit) or soft tissue calcification of the vascular and soft tissues including kidneys, heart, lungs, and skin.

- Treat medically with dietary phosphate restriction, calcium, and vitamin D supplements. Medical therapy fails in 5–10% of patients on long-term dialysis and surgery becomes necessary.
- Risks of surgery are bleeding, recurrent hyperparathyroidism, hypoparathyroidism, and injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerves. Patients should undergo dialysis within 1d of surgery and then 48hr postoperatively or as required.
- Watch for postoperative hypocalcaemia and hypomagnesaemia.

### Tertiary hyperparathyroidism

- Parathyroid hyperplasia progresses to autonomous secretion, behaving like an adenoma. Excessive secretion of PTH continues, despite correction of renal failure. Only a few cases require operation.

### Perioperative plan

- Restore intravascular volume with 0.9% sodium chloride. If the patient has normal cardiovascular and renal systems, a normal ECG, and a total serum calcium  $<3\text{mmol/l}$ , then proceed with the operation. If the serum calcium is  $>3\text{mmol/l}$ , the ECG is abnormal or the patient has cardiovascular or renal impairment, the operation should be postponed until after treatment.
- Careful monitoring of neuromuscular blockade should be undertaken if non-depolarising muscle relaxants are used.

### Hypoparathyroidism

- Usually caused by parathyroidectomy but post-radiotherapy and idiopathic cases also occur. Patients with a history of extensive neck dissection in the past should have serum calcium measured before further surgery.
- Results in hypocalcaemia—ionised calcium  $<0.9\text{mmol/l}$ , total calcium (corrected for albumin)  $<2.2\text{mmol/l}$ . Trough level usually occurs at 20hr following parathyroidectomy and typically normalises by day 2–3.
- The presenting features are due to low calcium levels and manifest as carpopedal spasm, tetany, dysrhythmia, hypotension, and prolonged PR interval on ECG.
- Treat with calcium (calcium gluconate 10ml 10% IV over 10min, followed by 40ml in 1 litre saline over 8hr).
- Low serum magnesium is also common and can be treated with magnesium sulphate (1–5mmol IV slowly).

To adjust calcium concentration for albumin level:

Add  $0.1\text{mmol/l}$  to calcium for each  $5\text{g/l}$  that albumin is below  $40\text{g/l}$ .

### Further reading

- Edwards R. (1997). Thyroid and parathyroid disease. *International Anesthesiology Clinics*, **35**, 63–83.
- Mihai R, Farndon JR (2000). Parathyroid disease and calcium metabolism. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 29–43.

## Adrenocortical insufficiency

### Primary (Addison's disease)

- Destruction of adrenal cortex by autoimmune disease (70–80%), infection (TB), septicaemia, AIDS, haemorrhage, metastases, surgery. Associated with glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid deficiency.

### Secondary

- Insufficient adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) to stimulate the adrenal cortex due to pituitary suppression by exogenous steroids or generalised hypopituitarism usually from pituitary or hypothalamic tumours. Associated with glucocorticoid deficiency only.

### Acute adrenal crisis

- Due to stress in patients with chronic adrenal insufficiency without adequate steroid replacement, acute adrenal haemorrhage or pituitary apoplexy (apoplexy is defined as a sudden neurologic impairment, usually due to a vascular process, i.e. infarction or haemorrhage).

### Clinical features of chronic adrenal insufficiency

- Weakness, fatigue (100%), skin hyperpigmentation (90%—primary only), postural hypotension (90%—pronounced in primary), nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, weight loss (60%), myalgia, joint pain, salt craving (primary only), pale skin (secondary only).

### Investigations

- Low serum glucose, low  $\text{Na}^+$  (90%), raised  $\text{K}^+$  (70%), raised urea and creatinine (primary only), raised  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  (primary only).

### Biochemical diagnosis of adrenal insufficiency

Test	Normal range	Definite adrenal insufficiency	
		Primary	Secondary
Early morning cortisol	165–680nmol/l	Cortisol <165nmol/l and ACTH >22.0pmol/l	Cortisol <100nmol/l
Early morning ACTH	1.1–11.0pmol/l		Not diagnostic
Standard short Synacthen test <sup>1</sup>	Peak cortisol >500nmol/l	Peak cortisol <500nmol/l	Peak cortisol <500nmol/l
Insulin tolerance test <sup>2</sup>	Peak cortisol >500nmol/l		Peak cortisol <500nmol/l

<sup>1</sup> Serum cortisol at 0 and 30min after 250µg Synacthen IV.

<sup>2</sup> Serum glucose and cortisol 0, 15, 30, 45, 60, and 90min after insulin (0.1–0.15U/kg IV).

Test only valid if symptomatic hypoglycaemia (serum glucose <2.2mmol/l) is achieved. Gold standard test—close supervision mandatory.

## Treatment

- Hydrocortisone (20mg in the morning and 10mg at night PO)
- Fludrocortisone (0.1mg PO) to replace aldosterone (primary deficiency only)

## Perioperative management of patients with long-standing Addison's disease

- Give all medication up to the morning of surgery. Hydrocortisone (25mg IV) should be given at induction. Small or intermediate cases should be managed as per 'Perioperative steroids' (pp172–3). In major cases, hydrocortisone 200mg/24hr IV should be used until the patient can be weaned back onto maintenance therapy.
- 4-hourly blood glucose and daily electrolytes.
- Joint care with an endocrinologist is advisable.
- With respect to mineralocorticoid potency, 20mg hydrocortisone is equivalent to 0.05mg fludrocortisone, so with hydrocortisone doses of 50mg or more, mineralocorticoid replacement in primary adrenal insufficiency can be reduced.

## Adrenal crisis (Addisonian crisis)

Classically presents as hypotension, hyponatraemia, hyperkalaemia, and hypoglycaemia with abdominal pain. Characteristically resembles hypovolaemic shock, but can also mimic septic shock with fever, peripheral vasodilatation, and a high cardiac output. In patients with type 1 diabetes, deterioration of glycaemic control with recurrent hypoglycaemia can be the presenting sign of adrenal insufficiency.

- 100% oxygen and ventilatory support if necessary. Refer to ICU/HDU.
- IV fluids. Colloid to restore blood volume, saline to replace  $\text{Na}^+$  deficit initially at 1000ml/hr and glucose for hypoglycaemia.
- Hydrocortisone 200mg stat followed by 100mg qds. Baseline cortisol and ACTH prior to administration of hydrocortisone. Dexamethasone (4mg IV) can be used if the diagnosis has not been confirmed, since this does not interfere with measurement of cortisol and ACTH stimulation testing.
- Inotropes/vasopressors as required. May be resistant in the absence of cortisol replacement.
- Ascertain and treat precipitating cause.

## Relative adrenal insufficiency in the critically ill

- Relative hypoadrenalism in ICU patients occurs in ~30–50% of septic patients. Consider in patients who are increasingly vasopressor dependent or require prolonged mechanical ventilation. Treat if suspected—200mg hydrocortisone IV.
- Abnormal response to a short Synacthen<sup>®</sup> test is a poor prognostic indicator.

## Further reading

Annane D et al. (2004). Corticosteroids for severe sepsis and septic shock: a systemic review and meta-analysis. *British Medical Journal*, **329**, 480–484.

Arit W, Allolio B (2003). Adrenal insufficiency. *Lancet*, **361**, 1881–1893.

## The patient on steroids

Steroids are used as replacement therapy in adrenocortical insufficiency or to suppress inflammatory and immunological responses. Patients on steroids requiring surgery may develop complications from their underlying disease, or from a potentially impaired stress response due to hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal (HPA) suppression. Classically these patients were given additional large doses of steroids perioperatively; however, recent research suggests that smaller physiological replacement doses are more than adequate.

### HPA suppression

- Endogenous cortisol (hydrocortisone) production is of the order of 25–30mg/24hr (following a circadian pattern). During stress induced by major surgery, it rises to 75–100mg/d and can remain elevated for a variable period of time (up to 72hr following cardiac surgery).
- Prednisolone is a synthetic glucocorticoid with the general properties of the corticosteroids. Prednisolone exceeds hydrocortisone in glucocorticoid and anti-inflammatory activity, being ~3–4 times more potent on a weight basis than the parent hormone, but is considerably less active than hydrocortisone in mineralocorticoid activity. Therefore it is often given for chronic conditions to limit water retention, and is found only as an oral preparation. In contrast, the relatively high mineralocorticoid activity of hydrocortisone and the resulting fluid retention make it unsuitable for disease suppression on a long-term basis; however, hydrocortisone can be given as an oral or IV preparation, which is why it is often used perioperatively instead of prednisolone.
- Low-dose steroid treatment, <10mg prednisolone per day, usually carries little danger of HPA suppression. Treatment with >10mg prednisolone (or equivalent) risks HPA suppression. This may occur after treatment via the oral, topical, parenteral, nebulised, and inhaled routes. These patients must be assumed to be suffering from an inability to mount a normal endogenous steroid response to stress and be supplemented accordingly.
- HPA suppression can be measured using various methods. In practice the short Synacthen® test (corticotropin test) is reliable, cheap, and safe. Patients are given Synacthen® (synthetic corticotrophin) (250µg IV) and serum cortisol is measured at 0, 30, and 60min. Normal peak cortisol levels range from 420–700nmol/l and indicate the ability of the patient to mount a stress response. If the result is equivocal, an insulin tolerance test can be performed under the supervision of an endocrinologist.

### Perioperative steroid replacement therapy

<10mg prednisolone/day	Assume normal HPA axis	No additional steroid cover required
>10mg prednisolone/day	Minor surgery, e.g. hernia	Routine preoperative steroid or hydrocortisone 25mg IV at induction
	Intermediate surgery, e.g. hysterectomy	Routine preoperative steroid plus hydrocortisone 25mg IV at induction and then 6-hourly for 24hr
	Major surgery, e.g. cardiac	Routine preoperative steroid plus hydrocortisone 25mg IV at induction, then 6-hourly for 48–72hr
High-dose immunosuppression	Should continue usual immunosuppressive dose until able to revert to normal oral intake, e.g. 60mg prednisolone/24hr = 240mg hydrocortisone/24hr	
Patient formerly taking regular steroids	<3 months since stopped steroids—treat as if on steroids	
	>3 months since stopped steroids—no perioperative steroids necessary	

For beclometasone and adrenal suppression see p111.

#### **Prednisolone 5mg** is equivalent to

- Hydrocortisone 20mg
- Methylprednisolone 4mg
- Betamethasone 750µg
- Dexamethasone 750µg
- Cortisone acetate 25mg
- Deflazacort 6mg
- Triamcinolone 4mg

Fludrocortisone is available only in the oral preparation. It may be withheld on the day of surgery and while the patient is receiving stress doses of hydrocortisone (20mg hydrocortisone has equivalent mineralocorticoid potency of 0.05mg fludrocortisone).

### Further reading

*British National Formulary* (2010). 59, 428–9.

Nicholson G, Burren JM, Hall GM (1998). Perioperative steroid replacement. *Anaesthesia*, **53**, 1091–1104.

## Cushing's syndrome

A syndrome due to excess plasma cortisol caused by iatrogenic steroid administration (most common), pituitary adenoma (Cushing's disease—80% of remainder), ectopic ACTH (15% of remainder—e.g. oat cell carcinoma of lung), adrenal adenoma (4% of remainder), adrenal carcinoma (rare).

### Clinical features

- Moon face, truncal obesity, proximal myopathy, and osteoporosis
- Easy bruising and fragile skin, impaired glucose tolerance, diabetes
- Hypertension, LVH, sleep apnoea
- High  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ , and glucose; low  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$
- Gastrointestinal reflux.

### Diagnosis

- High plasma cortisol and loss of diurnal variation (normal range ~165–680 nmol/l; trough level at ~24:00 hr, peak level at ~06:00 hr).
- Increased urinary 17-(OH)-steroids.
- Loss of suppression with dexamethasone 2 mg.
- ACTH level:
  - Normal/high—pituitary
  - Low—adrenal, ectopic cortisol administration
  - Very high—ectopic ACTH.

### Preoperative assessment

- Many patients have ECG abnormalities (high-voltage QRS and inverted T waves) which may make ischaemic heart disease difficult to exclude, but they will revert to normal after curative surgery. These ECG changes seem to be related to the Cushing's disease itself.
- 85% of patients are hypertensive and are often poorly controlled.
- Sleep apnoea and gastro-oesophageal reflux are common.
- 60% of patients have diabetes or impaired glucose tolerance and a sliding scale should be started before major surgery if glucose is >10 mmol/l.
- Patients are often obese with difficult veins!
- Patients are at risk of peptic ulcer disease so give prophylactic antacid medication.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Position the patient carefully intraoperatively due to increased risk of pressure sores and fractures secondary to fragile skin and osteoporosis.

### Further reading

- Sheeran P, O'Leary E (1997). Adrenocortical disorders. *International Anesthesiology Clinics*, **35**, 85–98.
- Smith M, Hirsch NP (2000). Pituitary disease and anaesthesia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 3–14.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Conn's syndrome

Excess of aldosterone produced from either an adenoma (60%), benign hyperplasia of the adrenal gland (35–40%), or adrenal carcinoma (rare).

### General considerations

Aldosterone promotes active reabsorption of sodium and excretion of potassium through the renal tubules. Water is retained with sodium, resulting in an increase in extracellular fluid volume. To a lesser extent, there is also tubular secretion of hydrogen ions and magnesium, resulting in a metabolic alkalosis.

### Clinical features

- Refractory hypertension, hypervolaemia, metabolic alkalosis.
- Spontaneous hypokalaemia ( $K^+ < 3.5 \text{ mmol/l}$ ); moderately severe hypokalaemia ( $K^+ < 3.0 \text{ mmol/l}$ ) during diuretic therapy despite oral  $K^+$ .
- Muscle weakness or paralysis especially in ethnic Chinese (secondary to hypokalaemia).
- Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus secondary to renal tubular damage (polyuria).
- Impaired glucose tolerance in ~50% of patients.

### Preoperative assessment for adrenalectomy

- Spironolactone (competitively inhibits aldosterone production) is usually given to reverse the metabolic and electrolyte effects. It also allows the patient to restore normovolaemia. Doses of up to 400mg/day may be required.
- The patient should have normal serum potassium and bicarbonate, but this may be difficult to achieve.
- Hypertension is usually mild and well controlled on spironolactone, but features of end organ damage, e.g. LVH, should be excluded.
- Calcium channel blockers such as nifedipine are effective antihypertensive agents with aldosterone-secreting adenomas. This is a specific action.

### Investigations

- Aldosterone (pg/ml) to renin (ng/ml/h) ratio  $> 400$ .
- Secondary hyperaldosteronism has a raised serum aldosterone with a normal ratio.
- Important to distinguish between adenoma and hyperplasia as adenoma is usually treated surgically and hyperplasia medically.
- Adrenal vein sampling, radiolabelling tests, CT, and MRI are all used.

### Conduct of anaesthesia for adrenalectomy

Unilateral adrenalectomy can be done laparoscopically or via laparotomy and an appropriate method of analgesia should be discussed. Handling of the adrenal gland during surgery can cause cardiovascular instability but is not as severe as with a pheochromocytoma (see p586).

- A short-acting  $\alpha$ -blocker should be available (phentolamine 1mg boluses IV).
- Check blood glucose perioperatively.
- Chronic hypokalaemia has an antagonistic action upon insulin secretion/release and may result in abnormal glucose tolerance with the stress of surgery.

### Postoperative care

- Give hydrocortisone IV postoperatively until the patient can tolerate oral hydrocortisone and fludrocortisone.
- Hypertension may persist after removal of the adenoma, due presumably to permanent changes in vascular resistance.

### Management of patients with Conn's syndrome for non-adrenal surgery

Such patients usually have bilateral hyperplasia of the zona glomerulosa. Hypertension is usually more severe and may require additional therapy (ACE inhibitors are useful). Try to restore  $K^+$  to normal value preoperatively. Perform cardiovascular assessment as for any hypertensive patient.

### Further reading

Winship SM, Winstanley JH, Hunter JM (1999). Anaesthesia for Conn's syndrome. *Anaesthesia*, **54**, 564–574.

## Apudomas

Tumours of amine precursor uptake and decarboxylation (APUD) cells which are present in the anterior pituitary gland, thyroid, adrenal medulla, gastro-intestinal tract, pancreatic islet, carotid bodies, and lungs. Apudomas include phaeochromocytoma, carcinoid tumour, gastrinoma, VIPomas, and insulinoma and may occur as part of the multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) syndrome.

### Phaeochromocytoma (see p586)

#### Carcinoid tumours

- Carcinoid tumours are derived from argentaffin cells and produce peptides and amines. Most occur in the GI tract (75%), bronchus, pancreas, and gonads. Tumours are mainly benign, and of those that are malignant only about a quarter release vasoactive substances into the systemic circulation, leading to the carcinoid syndrome.
- Mediators are metabolised in the liver; therefore only tumours with hepatic metastases or a primary tumour with non-portal venous drainage lead to the carcinoid syndrome.
- Vasoactive substances include serotonin, bradykinin, histamine, substance P, prostaglandins, and vasoactive intestinal peptide.
- Patients with an *asymptomatic* carcinoid tumour have simple carcinoid disease and do not present particular anaesthetic difficulties. Patients with *carcinoid syndrome* can be extremely difficult to manage perioperatively.

#### Carcinoid syndrome

Patients may have symptoms related to:

- The primary tumour causing intestinal obstruction or pulmonary symptoms, e.g. haemoptysis and respiratory compromise.
- Vasoactive peptides resulting in flushing (90%) especially of the head, neck, and torso, or diarrhoea (78%), which may lead to dehydration and electrolyte disturbances. Other symptoms include bronchospasm (20%), hypotension, hypertension, tachycardia, hyperglycaemia, and right heart failure secondary to endocardial fibrosis affecting the pulmonary and tricuspid valves (mediators are metabolised in the lung before reaching the left heart).

#### Preoperative assessment

- Treat symptomatically—antidiarrhoeals, bronchodilators, correction of dehydration/electrolyte imbalance, treatment of heart failure.
- Prevent the release of mediators—octreotide (100µg SC tds) for 2wk prior to surgery and octreotide (100µg IV slowly diluted to 10µg/ml) at induction.
- Avoid factors that may trigger carcinoid crises—catecholamines, anxiety, and drugs that release histamine, e.g. morphine.

#### Investigations

- Crossmatch blood; check LFTs and clotting if metastases present.
- ECG and echocardiography if cardiac involvement is suspected.
- CXR and lung function tests if indicated.

### **Conduct of anaesthesia**

This is best managed by centres familiar with the difficulties. Major complications anticipated in the perioperative period include severe hypotension, severe hypertension, fluid and electrolyte shift, and bronchospasm.

- Premedication: anxiolytic (benzodiazepine) and octreotide (100µg (50–500µg) SC 1hr preoperatively) if not already treated, otherwise continue with preoperative regime.
- Monitoring should include invasive blood pressure preinduction (both induction and surgical manipulation of the tumour can cause large swings), CVP, and regular blood glucose and blood gases. Pulmonary artery flotation catheter if indicated due to cardiac complications.
- Induction: prevent pressor response to intubation (etomidate/propofol and alfentanil/fentanyl). Suxamethonium has been used safely for rapid sequence induction, although fasciculations may theoretically stimulate hormone release by increasing intra-abdominal pressure.
- Maintenance: isoflurane with vecuronium or rocuronium (not atracurium), and fentanyl, remifentanyl, or low-dose epidural (avoiding hypotension as this may elicit bradykinergic crisis).
- Octreotide (10–20µg boluses IV) to treat severe hypotension.
- Avoid all histamine-releasing drugs and catecholamines (release serotonin and kallikrein, which activates bradykinins).
- Labetalol, esmolol, or ketanserin can be used for hypertension.

### **Postoperative**

- ICU or HDU is required.
- Patients may waken very slowly (thought to be due to serotonin).
- Avoid morphine and use either patient-controlled analgesia with fentanyl or pethidine, or an epidural.
- Hypotensive episodes may occur, requiring further IV boluses of octreotide (10–20µg).
- Wean octreotide over 7–10d following tumour resection.

### **Gastrinoma**

Excess production of gastrin by benign adenoma, malignancy, or hyperplasia of the D cells of the pancreatic islets. Gastrin stimulates acid production from gastric parietal cells. Leads to Zollinger–Ellison syndrome, severe peptic ulceration, and diarrhoea. May also have GI bleeds, perforation, electrolyte disturbance, and volume depletion. Treatment includes proton pump inhibitors (e.g. omeprazole), H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists, and octreotide. May present for surgery related to gastrinoma, e.g. perforation, or pancreatic resection of the tumour or totally unrelated pathology.

- FBC to look for anaemia from bleeding gastric ulceration.
- Check clotting screen and liver function tests, since alterations in fat absorption may influence clotting factors and hepatic function may be affected by liver metastases.
- Antacid prophylaxis preoperatively and rapid sequence induction.
- Invasive pressure monitoring for major surgery.
- Continue omeprazole postoperatively as the gastric mucosa may have become hypertrophied, producing excess acid.

### VIPoma

Rare tumour secreting vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP) which leads to Verner–Morrison syndrome. Characterised by profuse watery diarrhoea, intestinal ileus, abdominal distension, confusion, drowsiness, hypokalaemia, achlorhydria, hypomagnesaemia, hyperglycaemia, metabolic alkalosis, and tetany.

- VIP inhibits gastrin release; therefore give H<sub>2</sub> receptor blocking drugs preoperatively to prevent rebound gastric acid hypersecretion.
- Replace fluids and electrolytes.
- Treat medically with somatostatin analogues (octreotide). If this fails, try steroids (such as methylprednisolone) and indometacin (a prostaglandin inhibitor).
- 60% become malignant with liver metastases, so all warrant resection.
- Use invasive pressure monitoring for major surgery.
- Frequent measurement of arterial blood gases to check acid base status and electrolytes.

### Insulinoma

Rare tumour of  $\beta$  cells of pancreas which secrete insulin—diagnosis made by Whipple's triad—symptoms of hypoglycaemia, low plasma glucose, and relief of symptoms when glucose is given.

- Diagnosis also made by a fasting blood glucose <2.2mmol/l, increased insulin, increased C-peptide, and absence of sulphonylurea in the plasma.
- Diazoxide (a non-diuretic benzothiazide which inhibits the release of insulin) has been used where surgery has failed but has unpredictable efficacy.
- Tumours usually non-malignant, but if malignant, hepatic resection may be required.
- Start glucose and potassium infusion preoperatively and monitor blood glucose closely perioperatively, particularly at time of tumour manipulation.

### Glucagonoma

Tumour of the  $\alpha$  cells of the pancreas. Glucagon stimulates hepatic glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis, resulting in increased blood glucose and diabetes mellitus. Ketoacidosis is rare since insulin is also increased. Characterised by a rash (necrotising migratory erythema which presents in the groin/perineum and migrates to the distal extremities).

- Associated with weight loss, glossitis, stomatitis, anaemia, and diarrhoea.
- Patients usually have liver metastases at presentation.
- Treatment consists of surgical debulking and somatostatin analogues.
- Increased incidence of venous thromboses so give prophylactic antithrombotic therapy.

### Further reading

Holdcraft A (2000). Hormones and the gut. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 58–68.  
 Veall GRQ, Peacock JE, Bax NDS, Reilly CS (1994). Review of the anaesthetic management of 21 patients undergoing laparotomy for carcinoid syndrome. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **72**, 335–341.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Hypokalaemia

Defined as plasma potassium  $<3.5\text{mmol/l}$ .

• Mild	3.0–3.5mmol/l
• Moderate	2.5–3.0mmol/l
• Severe	$<2.5\text{mmol/l}$ .

### Causes

- Decreased intake.
- Increased potassium loss—vomiting or nasogastric suctioning, diarrhoea, pyloric stenosis, diuretics, renal tubular acidosis, hyperaldosteronism, magnesium depletion, leukaemia.
- Intercompartmental shift—insulin, alkalosis (0.1 increase in pH decreases  $\text{K}^+$  by  $0.6\text{mmol/l}$ ),  $\beta_2$ -agonists and steroids.

### Clinical manifestations

- ECG changes—T wave flattening and inversion, prominent U wave, ST segment depression, prolonged PR interval.
- Dysrhythmias, decreased cardiac contractility.
- Skeletal muscle weakness, tetany, ileus, polyuria, impaired renal concentrating ability, decreased insulin secretion, growth hormone secretion, aldosterone secretion, negative nitrogen balance.
- Encephalopathy in patients with liver disease.

### Management

- Check U&Es, creatinine,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , phosphate,  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ , and glucose if other electrolyte disturbances suspected. Hypokalaemia resistant to treatment may be due to concurrent hypomagnesaemia.
- Exclude Cushing's and Conn's syndromes.
- Oral replacement is safest, up to  $200\text{mmol/d}$ , e.g. potassium chloride (Sando-K®) two tablets 4 times a day =  $96\text{mmol K}^+$ .
- IV replacement—essential for patients with cardiac manifestations, skeletal muscle weakness, or where oral replacement not appropriate.
- Aim to increase  $\text{K}^+$  to  $4.0\text{mmol/l}$  if treating cardiac manifestations.
- Maximum concentration for peripheral administration is  $40\text{mmol/l}$  (greater concentrations than this can lead to venous necrosis);  $40\text{mmol KCl}$  can be given in  $100\text{ml}$   $0.9\%$  sodium chloride over  $1\text{hr}$  but only via an infusion device, with ECG monitoring, in HDU/ICU/theatre environment, and via a central vein. Plasma  $\text{K}^+$  should be measured at least hourly during rapid replacement.  $\text{K}^+$  depletion sufficient to cause  $0.3\text{mmol/l}$  drop in serum  $\text{K}^+$  requires a loss of  $\sim 100\text{mmol}$  of  $\text{K}^+$  from total body store.

### Anaesthetic considerations

Principal problem is the risk of arrhythmia. The rate of onset is important—chronic, mild hypokalaemia is less significant than that of rapid onset.

Patients must be viewed individually and the decision to proceed should be based on the chronicity and level of hypokalaemia, the type of surgery, and any other associated pathologies. Ratio of intracellular to extracellular  $K^+$  is of more importance than isolated plasma levels.

- Classically a  $K^+ < 3.0$  mmol has led to postponement of elective procedures (some controversy exists about this in the fit, non-digitalised patient who may well tolerate chronically lower  $K^+$  levels, e.g. 2.5 mmol/l, without adverse events).
- For emergency surgery, if possible replace  $K^+$  in the 24 hr prior to surgery. Aim for levels of 3.5–4.0 mmol/l. If this is not possible use an IV replacement regime as documented above intra-/perioperatively.
- If bicarbonate is raised, then loss is probably longstanding with low intracellular potassium and will take days to replace.
- May increase sensitivity to neuromuscular blockade; therefore need to monitor.
- Increased risk of digoxin toxicity at low  $K^+$  levels. Aim for  $K^+$  of 4.0 mmol/l in a digitalised patient.

### Further reading

Gennari FJ (2002). Disorders of potassium homeostasis. Hypokalaemia and hyperkalaemia. *Critical Care Clinics*, **18**, 273–288.

Wong KC, Schafer PG, Schultz JR (1993). Hypokalaemia and anaesthetic implications. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **77**, 1238–1260.



## Hyperkalaemia

Defined as plasma potassium  $>5.5\text{mmol/l}$ .

- |            |                       |
|------------|-----------------------|
| • Mild     | 5.5–6.0mmol/l         |
| • Moderate | 6.1–7.0mmol/l         |
| • Severe   | $>7.0\text{mmol/l}$ . |

### Causes

- Increased intake—IV administration, rapid blood transfusion.
- Decreased urinary excretion—renal failure (acute or chronic), adrenocortical insufficiency, drugs ( $\text{K}^+$  sparing diuretics, ACE inhibitors, ciclosporin, etc.).
- Intercompartmental shift of potassium—acidosis, rhabdomyolysis, trauma, malignant hyperthermia, suxamethonium (especially with burns or denervation injuries), familial periodic paralysis.

### Clinical manifestations

- ECG changes progressing through peaked T waves, widened QRS, prolonged PR interval, loss of P wave, loss of R wave amplitude, ST depression, ventricular fibrillation, asystole. ECG changes potentiated by low calcium, low sodium, and acidosis.
- Muscle weakness at  $\text{K}^+ >8.0\text{mmol/l}$ .
- Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea.

### Management

Treatment should be initiated if  $\text{K}^+ >6.5\text{mmol/l}$  or ECG changes present. Unlike hypokalaemia, the incidence of serious cardiac compromise is high and therefore intervention is important. Treat the cause if possible. Ensure IV access and cardiac monitor.

- Insulin (10U in 50ml 50% glucose IV over 30–60min).
- Calcium (5–10ml 10% calcium gluconate or 3–5ml 10% calcium chloride). Calcium stabilises the myocardium by increasing the threshold potential. Rapid onset, short lived.
- If acidotic, give bicarbonate (50mmol IV).
- $\beta_2$  agonist—salbutamol (5–10mg nebulised—beware tachycardia).
- Ion exchange resin—Calcium Resonium® (15g PO or 30g PR 8-hourly).
- If initial management fails, consider dialysis or haemofiltration.

### Anaesthetic considerations

Do not consider elective surgery. If life-threatening surgery, treat hyperkalaemia first.

Avoid Hartmann's solution and suxamethonium if possible. However, if there is a compelling case for rapid intubation conditions without long-term paralysis, suxamethonium has been used safely with a preoperative potassium of  $>5.5\text{mmol/l}$ .<sup>1</sup> Rocuronium followed by its reversal agent sugammadex is also an option now available. Monitor neuromuscular blockade, since effects may be accentuated.

- Avoid hypothermia and acidosis.
- Control ventilation to prevent respiratory acidosis.
- Monitor  $\text{K}^+$  regularly.

### Further reading

Nyirenda MJ, Tang JL, Padfield PL, Seckl JR (2009). Hyperkalaemia. *British Medical Journal*, **339**, 1019–1024.

Tetzlaff JE, O'Hara JF Jr, Walsh MT (1993). Potassium and anaesthesia. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*, **40**, 227–246.

<sup>1</sup> Schow AJ, Lubarsky DA, Olson RP, Gan TJ (2002). Can succinylcholine be used safely in hyperkalaemic patients? *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **95**, 119–122.

## Hyponatraemia

Defined as serum  $\text{Na}^+$   $<135\text{mmol/L}$ .

• Mild	125–134mmol/L
• Moderate	120–124mmol/L
• Severe	$<120\text{mmol/L}$ .

Extracellular fluid volume is directly proportional to total body sodium ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) content. Renal  $\text{Na}^+$  excretion ultimately controls extracellular fluid volume and total body  $\text{Na}^+$  content. To identify causes of abnormalities of sodium homeostasis it is important to assess plasma and urinary  $\text{Na}^+$  levels along with the patient's state of hydration (hypo-/eu-/hypervolaemic).

### Presentation

Important to differentiate between acute and chronic hyponatraemia. Speed of onset is much more important for manifestation of symptoms than the absolute  $\text{Na}^+$  level. Rare to get clinical signs if  $\text{Na}^+ >125\text{mmol/L}$ .

- $\text{Na}^+$  125–130mmol/L causes mostly GI symptoms, i.e. nausea/vomiting.
- $\text{Na}^+ <125\text{mmol/L}$ —neuropsychiatric symptoms, nausea/vomiting, muscular weakness, headache, lethargy, psychosis, raised intracranial pressure, seizures, coma, and respiratory depression. Mortality high if untreated.

### Treatment of symptomatic hyponatraemia

- Acute symptomatic hyponatraemia (develops in  $<48\text{hr}$ ), e.g. TURP syndrome, hysteroscopy-induced hyponatraemia, SIADH. Aim to raise serum  $\text{Na}^+$  by 2mmol/L/hr until symptoms resolve. Complete correction is unnecessary, although not unsafe. Infuse hypertonic saline (3% NaCl) at a rate of 1.2–2.4ml/kg/hr through a large vein. In cases of fluid excess give furosemide (20mg IV) to promote diuresis. If there are severe neurological symptoms (seizures, coma) 3% NaCl may be infused at 4–6ml/kg/hr. Electrolytes should be carefully monitored (see also p597).
- Chronic symptomatic hyponatraemia (present for more than 48hr or duration unknown). Aim to correct serum  $\text{Na}^+$  by 5–10mmol/d. Rapid correction (serum  $\text{Na}^+$  rise of  $>0.5\text{mmol/L/hr}$ ) can lead to central pontine myelinolysis, subdural haemorrhage, and cardiac failure. Give furosemide and replace saline losses with 0.9% sodium chloride IV. Monitor electrolytes and urine output carefully. SIADH—fluid restrict and demeclocycline (300–600mg daily).
- Consult with endocrinologist.
- Watch for resolution of symptoms.
- Treat the cause.

### Asymptomatic hyponatraemia (often chronic)

- Fluid restrict to 1L/d.
- Treat the cause.

### Anaesthetic implications

- No elective surgery if  $\text{Na}^+ <120\text{mmol/L}$  or symptomatic hyponatraemia.
- Emergency surgery: consider risk to benefits. Consult endocrinologist.

# Hyponatremia

Defined as serum  $\text{Na}^+$   $>145\text{mmol/l}$ .

• Mild	145–150mmol/l
• Moderate	151–160mmol/l
• Severe	$>160\text{mmol/l}$ .

## Presentation

CNS symptoms likely if serum  $\text{Na}^+$   $>155\text{mmol/l}$  due to hyperosmolar state and cellular dehydration, e.g. thirst, confusion, seizures, and coma. Features depend on the cause, e.g. water deficiency will present with hypotension, tachycardia, and decreased skin turgor.

## Management

Correct over at least 48hr to prevent occurrence of cerebral oedema and convulsions. Treat the underlying cause. Give oral fluids (water) if possible.

- Hypovolaemic ( $\text{Na}^+$  deficiency): 0.9% sodium chloride until hypovolaemia corrected, then consider 0.45% saline.
- Euvolaemia (water depletion): estimate the total body water deficit, treat with 5% glucose.
- Hypervolaemic ( $\text{Na}^+$  excess): diuretics, e.g. furosemide (20mg IV) and 5% dextrose, dialysis if required.
- Diabetes insipidus—replace urinary losses and give desmopressin (1–4 $\mu\text{g}$  daily SC/IM/IV).

## Anaesthetic implications

- No elective surgery if  $\text{Na}^+$   $>155\text{mmol/l}$  or hypovolaemic.
- Urgent surgery—use central venous pressure monitoring if volume status is uncertain or may change rapidly intraoperatively, and be aware of dangers of rapid normalisation of electrolytes.

## Further reading

Bagshaw SM, Townsend DR, McDermid RC (2009). Disorders of sodium and water balance in hospitalized patients. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*, **56**, 151–167.  
Kumar S, Beri T (1998). Sodium. *Lancet*, **352**, 220–228.

## Obesity

Obesity is associated with hypertension, ischaemic heart disease, non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, peripheral vascular disease, gallstones, and osteoarthritis.

- Body mass index (BMI) =  $\text{weight (kg)}/\text{height}^2 (\text{m}^2)$ .
- Obesity is defined by a BMI  $>30\text{kg/m}^2$  and morbid obesity by BMI  $>40\text{kg/m}^2$ .

Seventeen percent of the UK population is obese and ~1% morbidly obese.

### Cardiovascular

- Increase in absolute blood volume, although this is low relative to body mass (occasionally only  $45\text{ml/kg}$ ).
- Increase in cardiac output and stroke volume in proportion to oxygen consumption and weight gain.
- Systemic hypertension is 10 times more prevalent due to increased cardiac output and blood volume.
- Obesity is a risk factor for ischaemic heart disease.

### Respiratory

- Oxygen consumption is increased by metabolically active adipose tissue and the workload of supporting muscles, with concomitant increase in  $\text{CO}_2$  production.
- FRC is reduced in the awake obese patient and decreases significantly following induction, which may encroach upon the closing capacity. Pulmonary compliance is decreased by up to 35% (due to heavy chest wall and splinted diaphragm). Increased ventilation/perfusion mismatch.
- Obesity hypoventilation syndrome (OHS) occurs due to loss of central drive. Hypoxaemia, pulmonary hypertension, and polycythaemia can develop.
- Obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA) is also more common in the obese. It occurs due to lack of central drive and peripheral anatomical abnormalities (see p122).
- As a result, oxygen desaturation occurs rapidly in the obese apnoeic patient.

### Gastrointestinal

- Increased gastric volumes with low pH, raised intra-abdominal pressure, and a higher incidence of hiatus hernia pose a significant risk of aspiration.

### Endocrine

- Insulin resistance may cause glucose intolerance and NIDDM.

### General

- Potential difficult intubation due to decreased atlanto-axial movement, large tongue, and palatal, pharyngeal, and upper thoracic fat pads.
- Technical problems of IV access and nerve blockade.
- Increased risk of skin infections.

### Pharmacokinetics/dynamics

- Volume of distribution for drugs is altered due to a smaller proportion of total body water, greater proportion of adipose tissue, increased lean body mass, and increased blood volume and cardiac output.
- Hydrophilic drugs (e.g. neuromuscular blockers) have similar absolute volumes of distribution, clearance, and elimination half-lives. Base dose on lean body mass. Atracurium recovery is similar to the non-obese.
- Lipophilic drugs (e.g. thiopental and benzodiazepines) have increased volumes of distribution, normal clearance, and increased elimination half-lives.
- Increased plasma cholinesterase activity. Give suxamethonium in dose of 1.5mg/kg.

### Preoperative assessment

- Calculate the BMI and assess venous access, risk of aspiration, and possibility of a difficult intubation or difficulty with mask ventilation. A BMI of 46 is associated with a 13% risk of difficult intubation. It is useful to assess the airway in both the erect and supine positions.
- Ask about snoring, somnolence, and periodic breathing.
- Evaluate patient for signs of systemic and/or pulmonary hypertension, signs of right and/or left ventricular failure, and ischaemic heart disease.
- Premedication with respiratory depressants should be avoided. An H<sub>2</sub> blocker or proton pump inhibitor plus metoclopramide should be administered on the ward ( $\pm$ 30ml sodium citrate 0.3M in the anaesthetic room).
- Patients with a BMI >30 have an increased venous thromboembolic risk and need to be carefully assessed.

### Preoperative investigations

As per clinical findings and surgical procedure planned. Also:

- ECG to look for LVH.
- ABGs to identify baseline hypoxaemic and hypercarbic patients.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

Check that an appropriate operating table and sphygmomanometer cuff are available. Invasive blood pressure monitoring may be required particularly in those with conical-shaped arms.

- Full preoxygenation is essential. Obese patients have four times the incidence of respiratory complications perioperatively, but studies show that they have fewer airway problems with a laryngeal mask airway than an endotracheal tube. Intubation may be warranted due to the risk of aspiration, and IPPV is often necessary because of the increased work of breathing and tendency to hypoventilation. Putting the patient in the 'ramped' position in which the upper body, head, and neck are elevated to a point where an imaginary horizontal line can be drawn from the sternal notch to the ear, can facilitate laryngoscopy and intubation. Preoxygenation should be done in the reverse Trendelenburg position as this can prolong the time to desaturation during apnoea. Awake fibreoptic intubation may be indicated, although some use topical anaesthesia and direct laryngoscopy. Traction on the breasts by an assistant or use of a polio blade may help.

Reduced FRC can be increased by administering PEEP or large sustained manual inflations. Increasing the I:E ratio may reduce airway pressures.

- Pay particular care to protecting pressure areas.
- Use short-acting agents to ensure rapid recovery.
- Aortocaval compression may occur in the supine position and table tilt may help. Avoid head-down positioning, especially in spontaneous ventilation.
- Fluid balance may be difficult to assess clinically and increased blood loss is common due to difficult surgical conditions.
- Local anaesthetic doses for spinals and epidurals should be 75–80% of normal because engorged extradural veins and fat constrict these spaces.

### Postoperative care

- Extubate awake, sitting up on an electric bed.
- Thromboembolic events are twice as common and so thromboprophylaxis is important.
- Mobilise as soon as practical—ensure enough staff are available.
- Pulmonary atelectasis is common and lung capacities remain decreased for at least 5d after abdominal surgery. To optimise the FRC/closing capacity ratio the obese patient should be nursed at 30–45° head-up tilt for this period. Humidified oxygen and early, regular physiotherapy should be administered.
- Nocturnal nasal CPAP and continual pulse oximetry may be considered in obstructive sleep apnoea.
- PCA is more predictable than IM opioids because injections are frequently into subcutaneous fat.
- HDU care should be available for higher-risk patients with pre-existing respiratory disease, especially those undergoing thoracic or abdominal surgery.

### Further reading

- Adams JP, Murphy PG (2000). Obesity in anaesthesia and intensive care. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 91–108.
- Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2007). *Guidelines for the Peri-operative Management of the Morbidly Obese Patient*. [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).
- Collins JS, Lemmens HJM, Brodsky JB, Brock-Utne JG, Levitan RM (2004). Laryngoscopy and morbid obesity: a comparison of the 'sniff' and 'ramped' positions. *Obesity Surgery*, **14**, 1171–1175.
- Ogunnaiké BO, Jones SB, Jones DB, Provost D, Whitten CW (2002). Anesthetic considerations for bariatric surgery. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **95**, 1793–1805.
- Smith HL, Meldrum DJ, Brennan LJ (2002). Childhood obesity: a challenge for the anaesthetist? *Paediatric Anaesthesia*, **12**, 750–761.

# Bone, joint, and connective tissue disorders

## Colin Berry

Rheumatoid arthritis 192

Ankylosing spondylitis 195

Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) 196

Systemic sclerosis (scleroderma) 198

Scoliosis 201

Achondroplasia 202



## Rheumatoid arthritis

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is a chronic, systemic inflammatory disorder mainly involving joints but with extra-articular effects. Overall prevalence in the UK is 1–2% but it is 3 times higher in females. Peak onset is between 30 and 55yr. It also affects children as Still's disease. Patients are often frail, in chronic pain, and taking medications with adverse effects. Airway problems are common. There is a higher than average mortality due to both the disease itself and the presence of concurrent disorders.

### Preoperative assessment

#### Articular

- Temporomandibular: assess for limited mouth opening.
- Cricoarytenoid: fixation of the cricoarytenoid joints may lead to voice changes, hoarseness, or even rarely to stridor from glottic stenosis. Larynx can also be obstructed by amyloid or rheumatoid nodules. Minimal oedema may lead to airway obstruction postoperatively.
- Atlantoaxial subluxation (AAS) occurs in ~25% of severe rheumatoid patients, but of these only a quarter will have neurological signs or symptoms. Enquire about tingling hands or feet, neck pain, and assess range of neck movement. Excessive movement during anaesthesia may lead to cervical cord compression.
  - Anterior AAS: comprises 80% of all AAS. C1 forward on C2 from destruction of transverse ligament. Significant if there is a gap of >3mm between the odontoid and the arch of the atlas in lateral flexion radiographs. Worsened by neck flexion.
  - Posterior AAS: this is rare. C1 backward on C2 resulting from destruction of the odontoid peg. Can be seen on lateral extension radiographs. Worsened by neck extension (e.g. from direct laryngoscopy).
  - Vertical AAS: arises from destruction of lateral masses of C1. The odontoid moves upwards through foramen magnum to compress cervicomedullary junction.
  - Lateral AAS: uncommon. Arises from involvement of the C1/C2 facet joints. More than 2mm difference in lateral alignment is significant. Causes spinal nerve compression and vertebral artery compression. Requires a frontal open mouth odontoid view to assess.
- Subaxial subluxation (i.e. below C2):
  - More than 2mm loss of alignment is significant.
  - Look for this particularly if patient has undergone previous fusion at a higher level.
- Other joints: assess joint deformities with a view to positioning and possible anaesthetic technique (if planning an axillary block, can the patient abduct their arm?). Manual dexterity may be important if planning to use standard PCA apparatus after surgery. Special adaptations are available, e.g. trigger by blowing.

### Non-articular

- Cardiovascular: association with coronary artery disease. Systemic vasculitis may lead to arterial occlusion in various organs and Raynaud's. Myocardial disease due to fibrosis, amyloid or nodular involvement. Pericarditis and pericardial effusions uncommon. Aortic incompetence and endocarditis rare.
- Respiratory: fibrosing alveolitis (restrictive defect), frequently asymptomatic. Acute pneumonitis rare. Pleural effusions and/or nodules in pleura may show on X-ray. Association with obliterative bronchiolitis. Costo-chondral disease gives reduced chest wall compliance.
- Anaemia: NSAID-associated blood loss. Normocytic, normochromic anaemia of chronic disease. Drug-associated bone marrow depression. Felty's syndrome is a combination of splenomegaly and neutropenia and may be associated with anaemia and thrombocytopenia.
- Nervous system: peripheral and compression neuropathies occur. Cord compression may be atlanto-axial or subaxial. Neurological changes may be chronic or acute (trauma).
- Infections: common both from the disease itself and drug effects.
- Renal and hepatic: chronic renal failure from drugs is common, as is decreased albumin, increased fibrinogen and  $\alpha$ 1-acid glycoprotein (acute phase protein).

### Investigations

- All patients should have FBC, U&Es, ECG, and CXR. Consider LFT, ABGs, and coagulation studies.
- Cervical spine radiographs: the role of preoperative cervical spine flexion/extension views is controversial and interpretation is difficult. The automatic reordering of radiographs in all patients is unnecessary. Flexion/extension views are mandatory in all patients with neurological symptoms or signs, and in those with persistent neck pain. Stabilisation surgery may be necessary before other elective surgery is undertaken. Preoperative cervical spine radiographs may help determine management but only in association with a full clinical review. Specialist radiological advice should be sought. Unless it is certain that the cervical spine is stable, all rheumatoid patients should be treated as if they might have an unstable spine. This may involve awake fiberoptic intubation or manual in-line stabilisation when undertaking direct laryngoscopy/LMA insertion/moving the patient. MRI and CT may be useful in assessing cord compression.
- Pulmonary function tests should be carried out for patients with unexplained dyspnoea or radiological abnormalities.
- An ENT opinion should be sought and nasendoscopy performed if there is hoarseness or symptoms/signs of respiratory obstruction.
- Echocardiography is needed if there is valvular or pericardial involvement and in symptomatic cardiac disease.

### Drugs in the perioperative period

- Steroid supplementation if indicated (p172).
- NSAIDs: continue as this enables early mobilisation. Stop if postoperative bleeding is a potential problem, hypotension, or deterioration in renal function.
- Disease-modifying antirheumatoid drugs (DMARDs): these drugs include gold, penicillamine, and immunosuppressant drugs such as methotrexate and azathioprine. Usually continue, as mobilisation is important and there is little evidence that omission reduces postoperative complications (wound infections). If leucopenic consult with rheumatologist.
- TNF  $\alpha$ -blockers: etanercept, adalimumab, anakinra, and infliximab belong to the new class of drugs blocking effects of tumour necrosis factor  $\alpha$ —an inflammatory mediator. Given by injection at twice weekly intervals. There are suggestions of potential for increased rate of operative infection but no consensus on whether to discontinue perioperatively.
- DVT prophylaxis (p12): early mobilisation.
- Gastrointestinal agents: continue  $H_2$  antagonists and proton pump inhibitors prior to and after surgery especially for patients on NSAIDs.
- Take care of the neck and maintain in a neutral position at all times, especially on transfer and turning. Use manual in-line stabilisation during airway manipulation while the patient is unconscious (unless it is certain that the spine is stable). If intubation is necessary consider fibreoptic intubation if difficulties are anticipated (p1000), particularly if there is posterior AAS (rare) and/or predicted difficulty. If direct laryngoscopy is undertaken use manual in-line stabilisation and a gum elastic bougie.
- Ensure careful positioning and padding/protection of vulnerable areas on the operating table. Note comfortable position before induction, then try to maintain this during surgery.
- Regional techniques may be difficult. Patient discomfort from prolonged immobilisation may favour general anaesthesia, perhaps in combination with regional techniques.
- Normothermia is especially important, as hypothermia may increase the risk of wound infections.
- Strict asepsis with invasive procedures as increased risk of infection.

### Postoperative

- Adequate pain control allows early mobilisation. PCA is often impractical due to impaired hand function. A puffer-PCA device has been described.
- Continue NSAIDs unless contraindicated.
- Physiotherapy and mobilisation are important.
- Continue DVT prophylaxis until the patient is fully mobile.
- Maintain fluid intake and monitor renal function.
- Restart DMARDs to avoid exacerbation of joint immobility.

## Ankylosing spondylitis

Inflammatory arthritis of the sacroiliac joints and spine, leading to ankylosis and 'bamboo spine'. Associated with HLA B27 in >90% of cases. More common in males, with peak age onset in third decade. Important anaesthetic implications are both articular and non-articular.

### Articular

- Progressive kyphosis and fixation of the spine may hinder intubation. Conventional intubation and tracheostomy may be impossible. Atlantoaxial subluxation and myelopathy can occur rarely. There may be limited mouth opening from temporomandibular involvement. Use of ILMA described but fiberoptic intubation usually preferred.
- At risk of occult cervical fracture with minimal trauma—ensure the head is supported and not left self-supporting.
- Cricoarytenoid arthritis may make cords susceptible to trauma.
- Axial skeletal involvement may make neuraxial block difficult or impossible. Spinal anaesthesia using a paramedian approach appears to be the most practical technique for neuraxial block. Possible increased risk of epidural haematoma with epidural block.
- Limited chest expansion may lead to postoperative pulmonary complications. Effective external cardiac massage may be impossible.
- Deformity leads to difficulty with positioning, particularly if a prone position is required.

### Non-articular

- Fibrosing alveolitis may occur, exacerbating postoperative hypoxia.
- Aortic regurgitation (1%). Mitral valve involvement and conduction defects are rare.
- Amyloid may cause renal involvement.
- Cauda equina syndrome may occur in longstanding cases.
- Associated use of NSAIDs and DMARDs (see p194).

## Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)

This is a chronic multisystem disease commonest in young females, especially in pregnancy. It is characterised by the presence of numerous antibodies, including antinuclear antibody, and immune-mediated tissue damage. Although joints may be affected there is no deformity or bony erosion and no specific airway implications. The main anaesthetic implications are cardiovascular disease, renal disease, coagulation status, and increased risk of infection.

### Preoperative assessment

- Skin and joint involvement is common, as are oral and pharyngeal ulceration.
- Cardiovascular: pericarditis in 15% of cases. Myocarditis and endocarditis are less common. Raynaud's phenomenon 30%. Coronary artery disease from atherosclerosis and other mechanisms common.
- Respiratory system: infections and pulmonary emboli common. Pleuritis and pleural effusion. Pulmonary fibrosis less common.
- Neurological: cranial and peripheral nerve lesions may occur, secondary to arteritis and ischaemia. Transverse myelitis leading to weakness or paraplegia occurs rarely. Depression, psychosis, and fits.
- Renal: glomerulonephritis is a serious complication and may lead to nephrotic syndrome and renal failure.
- Haematological: clotting disorders or hypercoagulable states can occur. Check FBC and clotting status. Immune thrombocytopenia or circulating anticoagulants (e.g. antibodies to factor VIII) may be present. Up to a third of patients with SLE may demonstrate features of antiphospholipid syndrome (p237). This is a hypercoagulable state which paradoxically may be associated with the presence of lupus anticoagulant and a prolonged APTT. Since a prolonged APTT may indicate either a clotting disorder or a hypercoagulable state, further haematological advice should be sought.
- Higher risk of stroke with antiphospholipid antibodies.
- Steroids and other immunosuppressant drugs are used.

### Anaesthesia

- There may be absolute or relative contraindications to neuraxial blocks in patients taking anticoagulants or in patients with coagulopathy (p1174). The presence of a peripheral nerve lesion may be a relative contraindication to neuraxial/regional nerve blockade.
- Maintenance of normothermia may reduce the risk of infection as well as lessening the impact of Raynaud's phenomenon if present.
- Laryngeal erythema and oedema are common—try to minimise trauma to the airway.
- Consider hourly urine output and invasive monitoring.
- Steroid supplementation (p172).
- Strict asepsis with invasive procedures as increased risk of infection.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Systemic sclerosis (scleroderma)

The limited cutaneous form comprising calcinosis, Raynaud's, oesophageal dysfunction, sclerodactyly, and telangiectasia (CREST) is more common (60% of cases) than the more aggressive diffuse cutaneous form, which has more widespread effects and a high mortality (see also p303).

The following may be relevant to anaesthesia:

- Cardiovascular: Raynaud's, pericarditis, or myocardial fibrosis. Conduction defects. Pulmonary hypertension common.
- Pulmonary: fibrosing alveolitis in both forms (40% in diffuse form).
- Renal: may develop renal crisis associated with malignant hypertension.
- Gastrointestinal: oesophageal reflux invariable.
- Airway: may have mouth narrowing and tightened skin around the neck leading to difficult intubation.
- No consensus on general anaesthesia vs regional.

## Connective tissue disorders and anaesthesia

	Rheumatoid arthritis	Ankylosing spondylitis	Systemic lupus erythematosus	Systemic sclerosis
<b>Prevalence</b>	1%	0.15%	0.03%	0.001%
<b>Airway and intubation</b>	C Spine instability/ankylosis Cricoarytenoid arthritis TMJ arthritis	Cervical kyphosis, TMJ arthritis, Occult fractures		Limited mouth opening
<b>Respiratory</b>	Fibrosing alveolitis, Pleural effusions, Nodules on CXR	Fixed chest wall, Apical fibrosis (1%)	Chest infections, Pulmonary emboli, Pleuritis	Fibrosing alveolitis
<b>Cardiovascular</b>	Ischaemic heart disease (association)	Aortic regurgitation 1%	Raynaud's, Hypertension, Coronary ischaemia, Pericarditis Endocarditis (Libman Sacks)	Raynaud's >90%, Hypertension, Pulmonary hypertension, Myocardial fibrosis, Arrhythmias, Pericardial effusions
<b>Neurological</b>	Peripheral neuropathy, Radiculopathy, Myelopathy	Cauda equina syndrome (rare)	Peripheral neuropathy Psychosis, Convulsions	
<b>Renal</b>	Mild renal impairment common		Glomerulo-nephritis	Chronic impairment Hypertensive renal crisis

(continued)



Connective tissue disorders and anaesthesia (*Contd.*)

	Rheumatoid arthritis	Ankylosing spondylitis	Systemic lupus erythematosus	Systemic sclerosis
<b>Gastrointestinal</b>	Drug-related gastritis	Drug-related gastritis	Abdominal pain Nausea Mesenteric vasculitis	Reflux invariable
<b>Haematology</b>	Anaemia—drug-related and disease-related  Felty's syndrome (splenomegaly and leucopenia)	Anaemia—drug-related and disease-related	Antiphospholipid syndrome, Anaemia, Thrombocytopenia	
<b>Neuraxial block</b>	Often difficult, Infection risk	Difficult—consider lateral approach, Increased risk epidural haematoma	Check coagulation, Infection risk	

## Scoliosis

Progressive lateral curvature of the spine with added rotation. Scoliosis may lead to an increasing restrictive ventilatory defect which in turn leads to hypoxia, hypercarbia, and pulmonary hypertension. Corrective surgery may be carried out in the teens to arrest these changes. Scoliosis may be idiopathic (~75%) or secondary to other conditions with anaesthetic implications:

- Muscular dystrophies
- Poliomyelitis
- Cerebral palsy
- Friedreich's ataxia (see p308).

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Formal pulmonary function tests are mandatory in severe cases.
- Check for pulmonary hypertension and right heart failure.
- Some muscular dystrophies may be associated with cardiac abnormalities. Consider echocardiography (see p268).
- Intraoperative spinal cord monitoring may be indicated.
- Regional techniques (e.g. paravertebral blocks) where possible  $\pm$  GA.
- Plan for high dependency or intensive care in complex cases.

## Achondroplasia

The commonest form of dwarfism is caused by premature ossification of bones combined with normal periosteal bone formation, giving a characteristic appearance of short limbs and a relatively normal cranium. The following should be noted:

- The larynx may be small and intubation is occasionally difficult. Have a range of tube sizes and a difficult intubation trolley available. Laryngoscopy may be compromised by pectus carinatum.
- Foramen magnum stenosis is common. Avoid hyperextension during intubation.
- Central and peripheral venous access is often difficult.
- Use an appropriately sized blood pressure cuff.
- Obstructive sleep apnoea is common (see p122).
- Restrictive ventilatory defects may occur and can lead to pulmonary hypertension.
- Regional techniques may be difficult.
- The back may be normal. The epidural space is often narrowed with spinal canal stenosis. The volume of local anaesthetic needed for an epidural is reduced.
- It is difficult to predict the volume needed for a single injection spinal. Use of an incremental spinal catheter technique is suggested, but single dose spinal anaesthesia is reported. Websites giving medical advice for achondroplasia suggest that spinal anaesthesia should not be used.
- The patient is of normal intelligence.

### Further reading

- Bandi V, Munnar U, Braman S (2002). Airway problems in patients with rheumatological disorders. *Critical Care Clinics*, **18**, 749–765.
- Fombon FN, Thompson JP (2006). Anaesthesia for the adult patient with rheumatoid arthritis. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care & Pain*, **66**, 235–239.
- Mitra S, Nilanjan D, Gomber K (2007). Emergency caesarian section in a patient with achondroplasia: an anaesthetic dilemma. *Journal of Anesthesia and Clinical Pharmacology*, **23**(3), 315–318.
- Woodward LJ, Kam PCA (2009). Ankylosing spondylitis: recent developments and anaesthetic implications. *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 540–548.

# Haematological disorders

## Jonathan Purday

Anaemia 204

Sickle cell disease 206

Porphyria 210

Rare blood disorders 214

Coagulation disorders 216

Haemophilia and related clotting disorders 218

Thrombocytopenia 220

Anticoagulants 222

Antiplatelet drugs 228

Fibrinolytics 230

Antifibrinolytics/haemostatic drug therapy 232

Haematological management of the bleeding patient 234

Hypercoagulability syndromes 236

## Anaemia

Anaemia results when haemoglobin (Hb) is below normal for age/sex. Conventionally this is  $<13\text{g/dl}$  in an adult male and  $<12\text{g/dl}$  in an adult female. Common causes of anaemia in the surgical patient are:

- Blood loss: acute or chronic.
- Bone marrow failure: infiltration by tumour or suppression by drugs.
- Megaloblastic anaemias: folate or vitamin  $\text{B}_{12}$  deficiency.
- Complex anaemias: effects on production and breakdown, e.g. renal failure, rheumatoid arthritis, and hypothyroidism.
- Haemolytic anaemias: either inherited (thalassaemia, sickle cell disease, spherocytosis), acquired (autoimmune, drugs, infections), or physical (mechanical heart valves, DIC, jogging).

### Clinical

- Associated with fatigue, dyspnoea, palpitations, headaches, and angina. Severity often reflects the speed of onset more than the degree of anaemia as there is less time for adaptation.
- Symptoms of the commonest causes should be elicited, including relevant family history; always enquire about NSAIDs and alcohol.
- Respiratory and cardiovascular history may be worsened by the anaemia or make its impact greater.

### Investigations

- Measure Hb prior to surgery in appropriate patients (p8) including all those at risk of anaemia undergoing major surgery and anyone with other significant medical problems, especially heart or lung disease.
- Much can be deduced from the Hb and mean corpuscular volume (MCV) alone, but in many instances a blood film gives additional useful information.
- Confirmatory tests such as ferritin,  $\text{B}_{12}$ /folate levels, reticulocyte count, direct Coombs test, erythrocyte sedimentation rate, liver/renal function, and bone marrow should be requested as appropriate.

### Preoperative preparation

- Ideally, patients scheduled for elective surgery should have FBC checked in the weeks approaching the operation so that abnormalities can then be investigated and corrected in time.
- When delay to surgery is possible it is more appropriate and safer to treat the underlying cause and raise the Hb slowly with simple, effective measures, e.g. oral iron,  $\text{B}_{12}$  injections. Transfusing a patient with pernicious anaemia may precipitate heart failure.

**Perioperative blood transfusion (see also p1065)**

Recently a more conservative approach has been adopted to blood transfusion. Unfortunately, there are no evidence-based guidelines that set clear target levels. In addition, as Hb decreases, cardiac output increases (decrease in blood viscosity) and oxygen delivery may be maintained.

- Hb of 10g/dl (haematocrit of 30%) has traditionally been accepted as the lowest acceptable level, but there is increasing evidence that in fit patients lowering the transfusion trigger to 7–8g/dl may decrease morbidity.
- Red cell transfusion is indicated if the Hb level is <7g/dl.
- Checking a HemoCue<sup>®</sup> reading gives comparable results to a Coulter<sup>®</sup> counter and can help to avoid a transfusion if >8g/dl.
- Each case must be assessed with a view to coexistent disease, expected intraoperative blood loss, and whether acute or chronic.
- For patients with ischaemic heart disease
  - Mild (angina rarely): accept Hb 7–8g/dl.
  - Moderate (angina regularly, but stable): accept Hb 8–9g/dl.
  - Severe (recent MI, unstable angina): accept Hb 10g/dl.
- For patients who may tolerate anaemia poorly, e.g. patients >65yr or those with significant respiratory disease, consider raising transfusion threshold to 9–10g/dl.

## Sickle cell disease

Sickle cell disease (SCD) is caused by inheriting sickling haemoglobinopathies, either in the homozygous state (HbSS—sickle cell anaemia), heterozygous (HbSA—sickle cell trait), or in combination with another haemoglobin  $\beta$  chain abnormality such as haemoglobin C (HbSC disease), haemoglobin D (HbSD disease), or  $\beta$ -thalassaemia (HbS/ $\beta$ -thal). It is estimated that there are now over 10 000 patients with SCD in Britain. SCD is endemic in parts of Africa, the Mediterranean, the Middle East, and India. The highest incidence is from equatorial Africa; therefore all black patients should have a sickle test preoperatively. The pathology of SCD is primarily a result of vaso-occlusion by sickled red cells leading to haemolysis and tissue infarction. This can be precipitated by hypoxia, hypothermia, pyrexia, acidosis, dehydration, or usually infection. HbC and HbD in association with HbS enhance the sickling process whereas HbF impedes it.

- Susceptibility to sickling is proportional to the concentration of HbS. In the heterozygous state (sickle cell trait) sickling is uncommon—HbS concentration is <50%.
- These patients have a positive sickle test but normal blood film and Hb level. This can be confirmed by Hb electrophoresis, but in an emergency a normal blood film should suffice.
- These patients do not need special treatment, other than avoidance of hypoxia, dehydration, infection, acidosis, and hypothermia.

### Clinical features

- The manifestations of SCD do not become apparent before 3–4 months of age, when the main switch from fetal to adult haemoglobin occurs.
- There is great variability, not only between patients but also within individual patients at different periods of life. Many remain well most of the time.
- Vaso-occlusive crises are the most common cause of morbidity and mortality. The presentation may be dramatic with acute abdomen, 'acute chest syndrome' (acute pneumonia-like), stroke, priapism, and painful dactylitis. By the time patients reach adulthood most will have small, fibrotic spleens. A less acute complication is proliferative retinopathy due to retinal vessel occlusion and neovascularisation (more common in HbSC disease).
- Aplastic crises are characterised by temporary shutdown of the marrow manifested by a precipitous fall in Hb and an absence of reticulocytes. Infection with parvovirus B19 and/or folate deficiency are often responsible.
- Sequestration crises occur mainly in children. Sudden massive pooling of red cells in the spleen can cause hypotension and severe exacerbation of anaemia, with fatal consequences unless transfusion is given in time.
- Haemolytic crises manifest by a fall in Hb and rise in reticulocytes/bilirubin, and usually accompany vaso-occlusive crises. Chronic haemolysis leads to gallstones in virtually all patients with SCD, though many remain asymptomatic.

### Laboratory features

- Hb is usually 6–9g/dl (often lower than suggested by the clinical picture). Reticulocytes are almost always increased and the film shows sickled cells and target cells. Howell–Jolly bodies are present if the spleen is atrophic. Leucocytosis and thrombocytosis are common reactive features. In sickle cell trait the Hb and film are normal.
- Screening tests for sickling which rely on deoxygenation of HbS are positive in both HbSS and HbAS.
- Hb electrophoresis distinguishes SS, AS, and other haemoglobinopathies. Measurement of the HbS level is important in certain clinical situations (e.g. crises) where a level of <30% is aimed for. It is not necessary to wait for the results of electrophoresis before embarking on emergency surgery; clinical history, Hb level, a positive sickle test, and the blood picture usually allow distinction between SCD and sickle cell trait. A mixed-race patient usually has sickle cell trait.

### Management

- As no effective routine treatment exists for SCD, care is directed towards prophylaxis, support, and treatment of complications. Folic acid supplements, pneumococcal/HIB vaccinations, and penicillin prophylaxis (to protect from the susceptibility to infection caused by decreased splenic function) are recommended from an early age, preferably within a comprehensive care programme.
- For crises—rest, rehydration with oral/IV fluids, antibiotics if infection is suspected, maintain PaO<sub>2</sub>, keep warm, prompt and effective analgesia (traditionally diamorphine/morphine is used over pethidine; regional anaesthesia very effective).
- Blood transfusions may be life saving, but the indications are limited. Exchange transfusions have a role in some vaso-occlusive crises (acute chest syndrome, stroke). Always discuss with a haematologist. For patients with high perioperative risk, transfusing to achieve an HbS level of <30% may decrease complications but is controversial.

### Preoperative preparation

Always seek expert advice from a haematologist well before surgery. A sample for group and antibody screening should be sent well in advance as previously transfused sickle cell patients often have red cell antibodies.

### Perioperative and postoperative care

- Special attention must be given to hypoxia, dehydration, infection, acidosis, hypothermia, and pain. These considerations should be continued well into the postoperative period.
- Dehydration: allow oral fluids as late as possible and pre- and postoperative IV fluids.
- Hypoxia: pulse oximetry and prophylactic oxygen.



- Prophylactic antibiotic cover should always be considered because of increased susceptibility to infection.
- Positive pressure ventilation may be required to achieve normocarbida and avoid acidosis.
- Hypothermia should be avoided by warming the operating room, using a fluid warmer, and active warming such as a Bair Hugger®. Core temperature should be monitored.
- Regional anaesthesia is not contraindicated and tourniquets can be used if limbs are meticulously exsanguinated prior to inflation.

### Haemoglobin SC disease

- Results from double heterozygosity for HbS and HbC.
- Affects 0.1% of African-Americans.
- Intermediate in severity between sickle cell disease and trait.
- Patients develop anaemia, splenomegaly, jaundice, aseptic necrosis of the femoral head, hepatic disease, retinal disease, and bone marrow and splenic infarcts.
- Myocardial necrosis has been described after general anaesthesia.
- Management principles are as for sickle cell disease.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Porphyria

The porphyrias are a group of diseases in which there is an enzyme defect in the synthesis of the haem moiety leading to an accumulation of precursors that are oxidised into porphyrins. There are hepatic and erythropoietic varieties. Only the three acute hepatic forms, inherited in an autosomal dominant manner (although with variable expression), affect the administration of anaesthesia:

- Acute intermittent porphyria (AIP). Common in Sweden—increased urinary porphobilinogen and D-aminolaevulinic acid.
- Variegate porphyria (VP). Common in Afrikaners—increased copro- and protoporphyrin in the stool. Dermal photosensitivity.
- Hereditary coproporphyria (HCP). Very rare—increased urinary porphyrins. Dermal photosensitivity.

### Porphyric crises

- Attacks occur most frequently in women in the 3rd–4th decade.
- Acute porphyric crises may be precipitated by drugs, stress, infection, alcohol, menstruation, pregnancy, starvation, and dehydration.
- Symptoms include acute abdominal pain, vomiting, motor and sensory peripheral neuropathy, autonomic dysfunction, cranial nerve palsies, mental disturbances, coma, convulsions, and pyrexia.

### General principles

- Patients may never have had an attack; therefore a positive family history must be taken seriously.
- Individuals may have normal biochemical tests between attacks.
- Patients may present with unrelated pathology, e.g. appendicitis.
- Symptoms may mimic surgical pathologies, e.g. acute abdominal pain, acute neurology.
- Any patient giving a strong family history of porphyria must be treated as potentially at risk. Latent carriers may exhibit no signs, be potentially negative to biochemical screening, but still be at risk from acute attacks.

### Anaesthetic management

Many commonly used drugs are thought to have the potential to trigger porphyric crises. However, it is difficult to be definitive, as crises can also be triggered by infection or stress, which often occur simultaneously. Drugs that are considered to be definitely unsafe to use, probably safe, and controversial are documented in the table (p212).

Up-to-date information is available from the British National Formulary,<sup>1</sup> the Committee on the Review of Porphyrinogenicity (CORP),<sup>2</sup> the Welsh Medicines Information Centre,<sup>3</sup> and online resources: <http://www.leeds.ac.uk/ifcc/sd/porph> and <http://www.porphyrria-europe.com>.

### Suggested anaesthetic techniques

- Premedication—important to minimise stress: use temazepam/midazolam.
- Minimise preoperative fasting. Use glucose/saline IV (avoid dextrose alone due to frequency of hyponatraemia).

- Regional anaesthesia—bupivacaine is considered safe for epidural anaesthesia, but in the context of any peripheral neuropathy, detailed preoperative examination and documentation is essential. In acute porphyric crises, regional anaesthesia should be avoided as neuropathy may be rapid in onset and progressive.
- General anaesthesia—propofol is the induction agent of choice. Maintenance with nitrous oxide and/or propofol infusion. There are numerous case reports of safe use of halothane and isoflurane.
- Neuromuscular blockade—suxamethonium and vecuronium are considered safe (atracurium controversial). Fentanyl, morphine, and pethidine all considered safe.
- Monitoring—invasive blood pressure during acute crisis as hypovolaemia is common and autonomic neuropathy may cause labile blood pressure. Perform central venous pressure monitoring if clinically indicated.

### Problems during anaesthesia

- Hypertension and tachycardia—treat with  $\beta$ -blockers such as atenolol.
- Convulsions—treat with diazepam, propofol, or magnesium sulphate (avoid barbiturates and phenytoin).

### Postoperative management

- ICU/HDU if a crisis is suspected.
- Remember that the onset of a porphyric crisis may be delayed for up to 5d.

### Treatment of acute porphyric crises

- Withdraw drugs that may have precipitated the crisis.
- Reverse factors that increase ALA synthetase (the initial enzyme responsible for haem production). Give haem arginate 3mg/kg IV once daily for 4d (leads to negative feedback to ALA synthetase). Treat infection, dehydration, electrolyte imbalance, and give glucose (20g/hr).
- Treat symptoms with 'safe' drugs.
- Monitor the patient appropriately.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> <http://www.bnf.org>.

<sup>2</sup> CORP Secretariat, Lennox Eales Porphyria Laboratories, MRC/UCT Liver Research Centre, University of Cape Town Medical School, Observatory 7925, South Africa. Fax: 010-27-21448-6815.

<sup>3</sup> Welsh Medicines Information Centre, University Hospital of Wales, Cardiff CF14 4XW, UK. Tel. +44-029-20742979.

	Definitely unsafe	Probably safe	Controversial
Induction agents	Barbiturates, etomidate	Propofol	Ketamine
Inhalational agents	Enflurane	Nitrous oxide, ether, cyclopropane	Halothane, isoflurane, sevoflurane
Neuromuscular blocking agents	Alcuronium	Suxamethonium, tubocurarine, gallamine, vecuronium	Pancuronium, atracurium, rocuronium, mivacurium
Neuromuscular reversal agents		Atropine, glycopyrronium, neostigmine	
Analgesics	Pentazocine	Alfentanil, aspirin, buprenorphine, codeine, fentanyl, paracetamol, pethidine, morphine, naloxone	Diclofenac, ketorolac, sufentanil
Local anaesthetics	Mepivacaine, ropivacaine	Bupivacaine, prilocaine, procainamide, procaine	Cocaine, lidocaine
Sedatives	Chlordiazepoxide, nitrazepam	Lorazepam, midazolam, temazepam, chlorpromazine, chloral hydrate	Diazepam
Antiemetics and H <sub>2</sub> antagonists	Cimetidine, metoclopramide	Droperidol, phenothiazines	Ondansetron, ranitidine
CVS drugs	Hydralazine, nifedipine, phenoxybenzamine	Adrenaline, $\alpha$ -agonists, $\beta$ -agonists, $\beta$ -blockers, magnesium, phentolamine, procainamide	Diltiazem, disopyramide, sodium nitroprusside, verapamil
Others	Aminophylline, oral contraceptive pill, phenytoin, sulphonamides		Steroids

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Rare blood disorders

### Hereditary spherocytosis

- An autosomal dominant condition in which erythrocytes have a smaller surface to volume ratio and are abnormally permeable to sodium.
- The inflexible red cells are phagocytosed in the spleen, resulting in a microspherocytic anaemia with marked reticulocytosis. The cells' increased osmotic fragility is diagnostic.
- Splenomegaly is common. Splenectomy leads to a 50–70% increase in red cell survival.
- Splenectomy should not be performed in children <6 yr of age, and should ideally be preceded by pneumococcal, meningococcal, and Hib vaccines and lifelong oral penicillin, to help avoid infection.
- There are no particular anaesthetic considerations.

### Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency

- X-linked trait with variable penetrance in African-Americans and people from the Mediterranean.
- The disease may afford some protection against malaria and is prevalent in endemic areas.
- The G6PD enzyme is responsible for the production of NADPH, which is involved in the cell's defence against oxidative stresses such as infections (usually viral, but also septicaemia, malaria, and pneumonia) or oxidative drugs (aspirin, quinolones, chloramphenicol, isoniazid, probenecid, primaquine, quinine, sulphonamides, naphthalene, and vitamin K).
- Additionally, drugs producing methaemoglobinaemia, such as nitroprusside and prilocaine, are contraindicated as patients are unable to reduce methaemoglobin, thereby diminishing oxygen-carrying capacity.
- Classically, ingestion of broad (fava) beans results in haemolysis (favism).
- Usually the haemolysis of red cells occurs 2–5d after exposure, causing anaemia, haemoglobinaemia, abdominal pain, haemoglobinuria, and jaundice.
- Diagnosis is made by demonstration of Heinz bodies and red cell G6PD assay. (G6PD levels may be falsely raised/normal in acute haemolysis.)
- Treatment includes discontinuation of the offending agent and transfusion may be required.

### Thalassaemias

Thalassaemias are due to absent or deficient synthesis of  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -globin chains of haemoglobin. The severity of these disorders is related to the degree of impaired globin synthesis.

- The hallmark of the disease is anaemia of variable degree.
- Diagnosis is confirmed by haemoglobin electrophoresis and/or globin chain analysis.
- The disease is prevalent in people of Mediterranean (mainly  $\beta$ ), African ( $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ ) and Asian (mainly  $\alpha$ ) extraction.
- Patients with  $\alpha$ -thalassaemia have mild or moderate anaemia.

- Those with severe  $\beta$ -thalassaemia, also called thalassaemia major, are transfusion dependent.
- Since there is no iron-excreting mechanism, iron from transfused blood builds up in the reticuloendothelial system, until it is saturated, when iron is deposited in parenchymal tissues, principally the liver, pancreas, and heart.
- Preoperative preparation should include assessment of the degree of major organ impairment (heart, liver, pancreas) secondary to iron overload.
- High-output congestive cardiac failure with intravascular volume overload is common in severe anaemia and should be treated preoperatively by transfusion.
- Previous transfusion exposure may cause antibody production and therefore crossmatching may be delayed.
- The exceedingly hyperplastic bone marrow of the major thalassaemias may cause overgrowth and deformity of the facial bones, leading to airway problems and making intubation difficult.

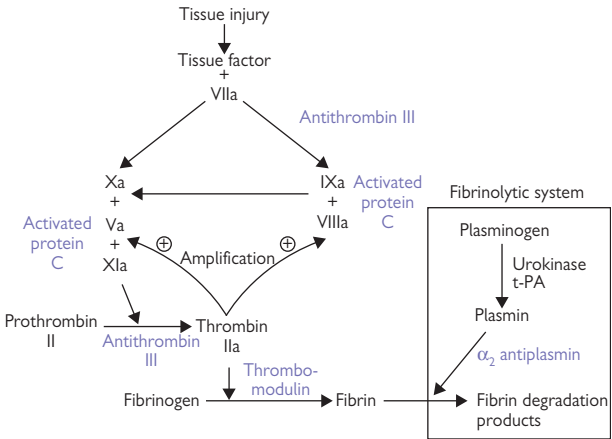


## Coagulation disorders

For regional anaesthesia and coagulation abnormalities see p1174.

The classical separation of coagulation into extrinsic and intrinsic pathways is overly complicated and is now not thought to occur *in vivo*. Instead there is a common pathway of initiation (see figure 10.1). Tissue factor from damaged vascular beds combines with factor VIIa and activates factors IX and X which leads to the generation of small amounts of thrombin (IIa), followed by amplification. This then activates further factors (V and VIII), leading to massive production of thrombin and generation of fibrin from fibrinogen.

- Congenital disorders of clotting may not present until challenged by trauma or surgery in adult life.
- Acquired disorders are due to lack of synthesis of coagulation factors, increased loss due to consumption (e.g. disseminated intravascular coagulation), massive blood loss, and the production of substances that interfere with their function.
- A family history may be elicited (haemophilia A and B—sex-linked recessive; von Willebrand's disease—autosomal dominant with variable penetrance) but cannot be relied upon (absent in 30% of haemophiliacs).
- Response to previous haemostatic challenges (tonsillectomy, dental extractions) may indicate the severity of the coagulopathy, e.g. in severe haemophilia A (factor VIII <2%) bleeding occurs spontaneously; in mild haemophilia A (factor VIII 5–30%) bleeding occurs only after trauma.
- Concurrent and past medical problems such as liver disease, malabsorption (vitamin K deficiency), infection, malignancy (DIC), autoimmune disease (systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis) as well as medications (anticoagulants, aspirin, and NSAIDs) may be relevant.
- Abnormalities due to liver disease and vitamin K deficiency—give daily vitamin K (phytomenadione) 10mg slowly IV. FFP (15ml/kg) may be needed in addition if the presenting symptom is bleeding.



**Fig. 10.1** Coagulation cascade (colour indicates inhibitor).

## Haemophilia and related clotting disorders

Inherited disorders of blood coagulation include haemophilia A (X-linked defect in factor VIII activity), von Willebrand's disease (autosomal defect in von Willebrand factor), and haemophilia B (X-linked defect in factor IX).

- Haematological advice should always be sought.
- Previously untreated mild haemophilia requires strenuous efforts at avoiding blood products. Desmopressin infusion of 0.3µg/kg in 50–100ml 0.9% sodium chloride over 30min, with the use of tranexamic acid, can be used for mild disease or where there is low risk of bleeding.
- In elective cases factor levels should be obtained prior to surgery. Depending on the type of surgery, the factor level should be 50–100% of normal and maintained for 2–7d post procedure. If factors are necessary, the treatment of choice is now recombinant material in accordance with established guidelines. Always involve a haemophilia specialist.
- Cryoprecipitate (contains factor VIII) and fresh frozen plasma (contains factor IX) should be used to correct these clotting factors only in an emergency, when concentrate is unavailable, due to their chance of transmitting infection.
- NSAIDs, other anticoagulants, antiplatelet drugs, and IM injections should be avoided.
- von Willebrand's disease is divided into three subtypes. After subtyping (type 2B is non-responsive) a therapeutic trial of desmopressin (dose as in haemophilia) with before-and-after levels of von Willebrand factor is performed. Responders should have desmopressin for bleeding or prophylactically prior to surgery. Non-responders can have intermediate purity factor VIII concentrate (which includes von Willebrand factor) or cryoprecipitate.

Disorder	Platelet count	INR	APTT	TT	Fibrinogen	Other
<b>Haemophilia A</b>	Normal	Normal	↑	Normal	Normal	↓ VIII
<b>Haemophilia B</b>	Normal	Normal	↑	Normal	Normal	↓ IX
<b>von Willebrand's disease</b>	Normal (usually)	Normal	↑	Normal	Normal	↓ VIII, vWF, ↑ bleeding time
<b>Liver disease</b>	Normal or ↓	↑	↑	Normal	Normal or ↓	↓ V
<b>Vitamin K deficiency</b>	Normal	↑	↑	Normal	Normal	↓ II, VII, IX, X
<b>DIC</b>	Normal or ↓	↑	↑	↑	Normal or ↓	↑ FDPs, D-dimers, ↓ II, V, VIII
<b>Massive transfusion</b>	↓	↑	↑	Normal or ↑	Normal or ↓	Normal FDPs
<b>Heparin (unfractionated)</b>	Normal (rarely ↓)	Normal or ↑	↑	↑	Normal	↑ anti-Xa
<b>Heparin (LMWH)</b>	Normal (rarely ↓)	Normal	Normal	Normal	Normal	↑ anti-Xa
<b>Warfarin</b>	Normal	↑	↑	Normal	Normal	↓ II, VII, IX, X
<b>Lupus anticoagulant</b>	Normal	Normal or ↑	↑	Normal	Normal	DRVVT +ve, cardiolipin antibody

vWF = von Willebrand's factor; FDPs = fibrin degradation products; DRVVT = dilute Russell's viper venom test.

## Thrombocytopenia

Defined as a platelet count  $<150 \times 10^9/l$ .

Spontaneous bleeding is uncommon until the count falls below  $10\text{--}20 \times 10^9/l$ .

Thrombocytopenia may be due to:

- Failure of platelet production, either selectively (hereditary, drugs, alcohol, viral infection) or as part of general marrow failure (aplasia, cytotoxics, radiotherapy, infiltration, fibrosis, myelodysplasia, megaloblastic anaemia).
- Increased platelet consumption, with an immune basis (ITP, drugs, viral infections, systemic lupus erythematosus, lymphoproliferative disorders) or without an immune basis (DIC, TTP, cardiopulmonary bypass).
- Dilution, following massive transfusion of stored blood.
- Splenic pooling (hypersplenism).
- Unexpected thrombocytopenia should always be confirmed with a second sample and a blood film.

### Preoperative preparation

- Unexplained thrombocytopenia should be investigated before elective surgery, as the appropriate precautions will be determined by the underlying cause.
- Minor procedures such as bone marrow biopsy may be performed without platelet support provided adequate pressure is applied to the wound.
- For procedures such as insertion of central lines, transbronchial biopsy, liver biopsy, or laparotomy, the platelet count should be raised to at least  $50 \times 10^9/l$ .
- For lumbar puncture, epidural anaesthesia, and operations in critical sites such as the brain or eyes, the platelet count should be raised to  $100 \times 10^9/l$  (see also p784 and p1174).
- In ITP, platelet transfusions should be reserved for major haemorrhage. Preparation for surgery entails the use of steroids or high-dose immunoglobulins initially.

### Postoperative management

- If microvascular bleeding continues despite a platelet count of  $>50 \times 10^9/l$  suspect DIC. If confirmed by coagulation tests give FFP and cryoprecipitate as appropriate.
- IM injections and analgesics containing aspirin or NSAIDs should be avoided.
- Desmopressin  $0.3\mu g/kg$  in  $50\text{--}100ml$  saline over 30min may improve platelet function in renal failure, haemophilia, and von Willebrand's disease.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Anticoagulants

For anticoagulants and centroneuraxial/regional anaesthesia see p739 (obstetrics) and p1174.

The main indications for anticoagulation are to prevent stroke in atrial fibrillation and patients with mechanical heart valves, and for the treatment and prevention of venous thrombosis and pulmonary emboli.

### Warfarin

- Oral anticoagulant that results in the liver synthesising non-functional coagulation factors II, VII, IX, and X as well as proteins C and S, by interfering with vitamin K metabolism. Prolongs the prothrombin time and monitoring is achieved by comparing this with a control—i.e. the international normalised ratio (INR).
- Recommended targets:
  - INR 2–2.5 for prophylaxis of DVT
  - INR 2.5 for treatment of DVT/PE, prophylaxis in AF, cardioversion
  - INR 3.5 for recurrent DVT/PE (despite warfarin in the therapeutic range), or mechanical heart valves
- Reversal of a high INR can be achieved in several ways depending on the circumstances. In the absence of bleeding, with an INR <5, reducing or omitting a dose is usually sufficient; if INR is 5–9 give vitamin K 1–2mg orally in addition. If there is minor bleeding or a grossly raised INR >9, give a small oral or IV dose of vitamin K (2–5mg). Life-threatening bleeding requires slow IV vitamin K (10mg) and either prothrombin complex concentrate or FFP. The last two cases must be discussed with a haematologist.
- Warfarin pharmacokinetics and dynamics can be affected by a multitude of other drugs (see BNF<sup>1</sup> for a fuller discussion). The important anaesthetic interactions include:
  - Potentiation (by inhibition of metabolism): alcohol, amiodarone, cimetidine, ciprofloxacin, co-trimoxazole, erythromycin, indometacin, metronidazole, omeprazole, paracetamol.
  - Inhibition (by induction of metabolism): barbiturates, carbamazepine.
  - In addition drugs that affect platelet function can increase the risk of warfarin-associated bleeding, e.g. aspirin and NSAIDs.

### Warfarin and surgery/anaesthesia

The perioperative management of patients taking anticoagulants poses significant challenges for surgeons and anaesthetists. The lack of evidence, along with the wide variety of clinical scenarios, requires individual decision making. Anaesthetists should assess the risk of perioperative thrombotic events and the risk of perioperative bleeding and balance these risks for each individual case. Recent recommendations have been published by the American College of Chest Physicians (8th edition, 2008) (see Douketis *et al.* in Further reading) and can be summarised as follows (pp223–5).

Suggested patient risk stratification for perioperative arterial and venous thromboembolism. Reproduced with permission.<sup>2</sup>

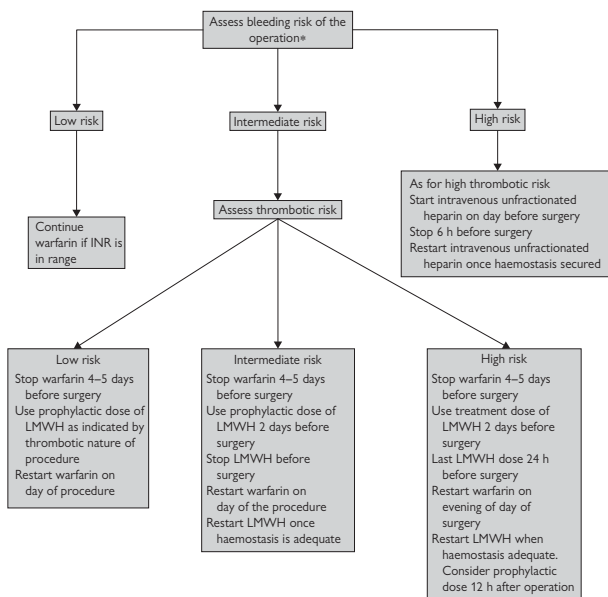
Risk	Indication for therapy		
	Mechanical heart valve	Atrial fibrillation	Venous thromboembolism (VTE)
High	Any mitral valve prosthesis	CHADS* score of 5 or 6	Recent (within 3 months) VTE
	Older (caged-ball or tilting disc) aortic valve prosthesis	Recent (within 3 months) stroke or transient ischaemic attack	Severe thrombophilia (e.g. deficiency of protein C, protein S, antithrombin, antiphospholipid antibodies, multiple abnormalities)
	Recent (within 6 months) stroke or transient ischaemic attack	Rheumatic valvular heart	
Moderate	Bileaflet aortic valve prosthesis and one of the following: atrial fibrillation, prior stroke or transient ischaemic attack, hypertension, diabetes, congestive heart failure, age >75yr	CHADS score of 3 or 4	VTE within the past 3–12 months
			Non-severe thrombophilic conditions (e.g. heterozygous factor V Leiden mutation, heterozygous factor II mutation)
			Recurrent VTE
Low	Bileaflet aortic valve prosthesis without atrial fibrillation and no other risk factors for stroke	CHADS score of 0–2 (and no prior stroke or transient ischaemic attack)	Active cancer (treated within 6 months or palliative)
			Single VTE occurred >12 months ago and no other risk factors

\* CHADS score see p225



The risk of thromboembolism can be calculated by the CHADS score (see table opposite) and considered in terms of the proposed surgery. Figure 10.2 guides further management. Important considerations include:

- Some minor surgery may be performed without stopping warfarin.
- Limited evidence suggests that patients having surgery without discontinuation of oral anticoagulation have a perioperative major bleeding risk of 10% (one third needing transfusion).
- The risk of thromboembolism from a mechanical heart valve in the mitral or aortic region without oral anticoagulation has an estimated annual incidence of 17% or approximately 0.4% for an 8d perioperative period.
- The perioperative risk of arterial thromboembolism in patients who have atrial fibrillation and no anticoagulation is approximately 1%.
- The risk stratification for patients with prior venous thromboembolism (VTE) is different to the arterial thromboembolism of mechanical heart valves and atrial fibrillation. Embolic stroke is fatal or associated with significant neurological deficit in 70% of cases. Recurrent VTE is fatal in 4–9% with less morbidity. In addition, low dose anticoagulation has been shown to be effective in ‘bridging therapy’ for recurrent VTE but not for arterial embolism.
- Warfarin should be stopped at least 5d prior to elective surgery to allow the INR to decrease below 1.5—the level usually considered to be safe for surgery (may need to be <1.2 for high-risk surgery).
- Once the INR is <2 alternative pre- and postoperative prophylaxis should be considered.
- In patients at high risk of thromboembolism a continuous IV infusion of unfractionated heparin should be started at 1000U/hr and adjusted to keep the APTR between 1.5 and 2.5. This should be stopped 6hr prior to surgery and restarted 12hr afterwards. This should be continued until INR >2.0.
- Warfarin therapy should be restarted within 12–24hr and may take up to 48hr to become therapeutic.
- Except in cases of high-risk bleeding, IV heparin can usually be replaced by the use of SC LMWH (prophylactic or treatment dose). Again this should be continued until warfarin is restarted and the INR >2.0.
- In patients who are receiving bridging anticoagulation with therapeutic-dose LMWH, there is no established role for routine perioperative monitoring of antifactor Xa levels, as in certain non-operative settings.
- Alternative methods of embolism prophylaxis should be considered such as compression stockings, and compression pumps should be considered in all cases (see p12).
- If the risk of venous thromboembolism is very high (e.g. very recent thromboembolism) and effective anticoagulation cannot be undertaken, the insertion of a caval filter should be considered.
- In emergency surgery there is too little time to withdraw warfarin and specialist haematological advice should be sought. Prothrombin complex concentrates (such as *Octaplex* or *Beriplex*) have replaced FFP as first-line treatment. The dose varies depending on the initial INR. Vitamin K 5–10mg slowly IV should also be given, Fresh frozen plasma (10–15ml/kg) is a cheaper and viable alternative, but is not as effective.



**Fig. 10.2** Management based on risk assessment. [Reproduced with permission from Figure 1, p1440, Thachil J et al. (2008). Management of surgical patients receiving anticoagulation and antiplatelet drugs. *British Journal of Surgery*, **95**, 1437–1448.]<sup>3</sup>

CHADS, congestive heart failure, hypertension, age 75yr or older, diabetes mellitus, and a history of stroke or transient ischaemic attack. The stroke rate per 100 patient-years without antithrombotic therapy increases by a factor of 1.5 for each one-point increase in CHADS score.

### CHADS score.<sup>2</sup>

Assign one point each for:

- Presence of congestive heart failure
- Hypertension
- Age 75yr or older
- Diabetes mellitus

Assign two points for history of stroke or transient ischaemic attack.

**Heparin**

- A parenterally active anticoagulant that acts by potentiating antithrombin; can be used for both prophylaxis and treatment of thromboembolism.
- Unfractionated heparin is given by IV bolus or infusion. It is monitored by prolongation of the APTT (maintain at 1.5–2.5 times normal laboratory value).
- A validated regime is to give a bolus of 80U/kg followed by an infusion of 18U/kg/hr and check first APTT after 6hr.
- It has a narrow therapeutic window with complex pharmacokinetics and great inter-patient variation in dose requirements.
- Half-life is 1–2hr so stopping it is usually enough to reverse excessive anticoagulation or bleeding. If bleeding is severe protamine can be used.
- Protamine sulphate counteracts heparin. If given within 15min of heparin, 1mg protamine IV neutralises 100U of heparin. After this less protamine is required as heparin is rapidly excreted. It should be given slowly to avoid hypotension to a maximum of 50mg—a higher dose is itself anticoagulant.
- Complications of heparin include heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT), which can cause serious venous and arterial thrombosis. Patients on heparin for 5d or more should have their platelet counts checked. This is less of a problem with LMWH heparin.
- Low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH) is replacing unfractionated heparin for both prophylaxis and treatment of thromboembolism and unstable coronary artery disease. Administered once daily by SC injection, it needs no monitoring (although antifactor Xa levels can be measured in renal failure). Many patients with deep vein thrombosis are now managed as outpatients.
- LMWH is renally excreted so should be used with caution in renal failure.
- The reversal of LMWH is more difficult, although protamine up to 50mg seems to be clinically effective.

**Hirudins (lepirudin)**

- Lepirudin, a recombinant hirudin, can be used for anticoagulation in patients who have type II (immune) HIT.
- Dose is monitored according to APTT and reduced in renal failure.

**Epoprostenol**

- Prostaglandin, which inhibits platelet aggregation and is used in renal haemodialysis or haemofiltration and primary pulmonary hypertension.
- Given by continuous IV infusion as half-life is ~3min.

**New anticoagulants**

Direct thrombin inhibitors may take over from warfarin, without the need for routine anticoagulant monitoring. Many of these powerful new drugs do not have specific reversal agents (therefore blood products are necessary).

*Dabigatran* (direct thrombin inhibitor) and *Rivaroxaban* (anti-Xa inhibitor) are now licensed for extended VTE prophylaxis after hip and knee replacement surgery. Soon to be followed with licence for AF.

### **Fondaparinux**

- Fondaparinux sodium is a synthetic pentasaccharide that inhibits activated factor X.
- Recently licensed for prophylaxis of venous thromboembolism in major orthopaedic surgery of the lower limbs.
- A recent study has suggested it may be more effective than LMWH.
- The initial dose should not be given until 6hr after surgical closure.

### **Activated protein C (drotrecogin alfa)**

- Recombinant human-activated protein C is licensed for the treatment of septic shock with organ failure.
- It must be started within 24–48hr of the onset of sepsis—evidence suggests the earlier the better. It is given as a continuous infusion for 96hr.
- As a natural anticoagulant it inhibits the coagulation pathway at several points.
- It should be stopped at least 2hr prior to invasive procedures or surgery and cannot be started for at least 12hr after surgery.
- Contraindications include any major bleeding risk, other anticoagulants, platelet count  $<30 \times 10^9/l$ , severe hepatic disease, intracranial pathology, and epidural catheters.
- If serious bleeding occurs, discontinue therapy. There is no specific antidote and supportive therapy with blood and blood products may be required.

1 <http://www.bnf.org>

2 Douketis JD *et al.* (2008). The perioperative management of antithrombotic therapy: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practice guidelines, 8th edn. *Chest*, **133**, 299S–339S.

3 Thachil J, Gatt A, Martlew V (2008). Management of surgical patients receiving anticoagulation and antiplatelet drugs, Figure 1, p1440. *British Journal of Surgery*, **95**, 1437–1448.

## Antiplatelet drugs

These decrease platelet aggregation and may inhibit thrombus formation in the arterial circulation, where anticoagulants have little effect.

### Aspirin

- Binds irreversibly to platelets and prevents the production of thromboxane. New platelets have to be formed to reverse its effects.
- Should be given immediately in acute myocardial infarction.
- Low-dose aspirin is a mainstay for secondary prevention of thrombotic vascular events in vascular and cardiac disease.
- May also be used in angina, post coronary bypass surgery, intermittent claudication, atrial fibrillation, and primary prevention of ischaemic cardiac disease.
- If aspirin is to be stopped it takes 7–9d for platelet function to return to normal.
- There are few published trials looking at perioperative bleeding.
- In coronary artery bypass grafting aspirin increases perioperative bleeding but increases graft patency.
- In transurethral prostatectomy aspirin considerably increases perioperative bleeding.
- Minor surgery to skin or cataract surgery does not require aspirin to be stopped.
- On balance aspirin should be stopped for at least 7d prior to surgery when the risks of perioperative bleeding are high (major surgery) or where the risks of even minor bleeding are significant (retinal and intracranial surgery). This risk of bleeding must be balanced against the possibility of precipitating a thromboembolic event, particularly in patients with unstable angina.

### Dipyridamole

- Used with low-dose aspirin for post coronary artery surgery and valve replacement.
- Also used for secondary prevention of stroke and transient ischaemic attacks.
- Dipyridamole needs to be stopped at least 7d prior to surgery, but probably has less effect than aspirin.

### Clopidogrel

- Binds irreversibly with the ADP receptor on platelets.
- Used with aspirin in acute coronary syndrome and for prevention of ischaemic events in symptomatic patients. Also commonly used after coronary stents to maintain patency.
- Can be used in peripheral arterial disease or post ischaemic stroke.
- Needs to be stopped 7d prior to surgery to avoid antiplatelet effect.
- If rapid reversal is necessary for bleeding or emergency surgery, platelet transfusions have been used with some success. However, as it is a prodrug and undergoes biotransformation these may be ineffective if given just after a dose—therefore try to delay surgery by 24hr. If impossible, case reports have suggested that aprotinin may be useful.

### Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors

- Prevent platelet aggregation by blocking the binding of fibrinogen to receptors on platelets.
- Abciximab (ReoPro®) is licensed as an adjunct to aspirin and heparin in percutaneous transluminal coronary intervention.
- Eptifibatide (Integrilin®) and tirofiban (Aggrastat®) are used to prevent early myocardial infarction in unstable angina and non-ST-segment-elevation myocardial infarction.
- These drugs are potent inhibitors of platelet function. Abciximab binds strongly to platelets and has a half-life of several days. Platelet transfusions will be needed to control profound bleeding.
- Eptifibatide and tirofiban are significantly renally eliminated. Therefore if renal function is normal, full reversal will occur within 4–8hr from discontinuation of therapy. For more rapid reversal, platelet transfusions are less helpful as free drug is circulating (but the addition of FFP may be beneficial).
- For elective surgery, as the half-life of abciximab is several days, it should be discontinued a week prior to surgery. Eptifibatide and tirofiban need only 8hr if renal function is normal.

### Perioperative management of antiplatelet drugs

An increasing number of patients are receiving antiplatelet drugs for the primary and secondary prevention of myocardial infarction or stroke and for the prevention of coronary stent thrombosis after placement of a bare metal or drug-eluting stent.

- Evidence shows that dual antiplatelet therapy with aspirin and clopidogrel is needed for 1yr after drug-eluting stent insertion to preserve patency. Then aspirin alone (or clopidogrel in those intolerant) is continued for life.
- Evidence is also increasing that the risks of stopping antiplatelet therapy during the perioperative period are far higher than the risks of bleeding.
- The American Heart Association and European Society of Cardiology have recommended that all elective surgery is postponed until after the 12 month period of dual therapy.
- If surgery cannot be postponed then ideally it would proceed with the continuation of dual (or at the very least) single therapy.
- Early discontinuation of antiplatelet therapy is the most significant determinant of stent thrombosis which can have a mortality of up to 50%.
- Any acute bleeding can be reversed with platelet transfusion.
- All cases must be discussed on a case by case basis between cardiologist, surgeon, and anaesthetist.
- The risk of stent thrombosis associated with stopping antiplatelet agents is also influenced by factors such as the nature of the lesion and timing of the procedure. It is likely to be highest when multiple recently implanted stents are present, particularly involving arterial bifurcations, and in patients with renal impairment, diabetes, and dehydration.

## Fibrinolytics

- Act as thrombolytics by activating plasminogen to plasmin; this degrades fibrin and therefore dissolves thrombi.
- Alteplase (rt-PA, tissue plasminogen activator) and streptokinase by continuous infusion.
- Reteplase and tenecteplase by bolus injection (making them ideal for early community injection).
- Used for acute myocardial infarction where benefits outweigh risks.
- Benefit greatest with early injection, ECG changes with ST elevation or new bundle branch block, and anterior infarction.
- Alteplase, reteplase, and streptokinase need to be given within 12hr of symptom onset, ideally within 1hr; use after 12hr requires specialist advice. Tenecteplase should be given as early as possible and usually within 6hr of symptom onset.
- Should be used in combination with antithrombin (LMWH) and antiplatelet (aspirin) therapy to reduce early reinfarction.
- Alteplase, streptokinase, and urokinase can be used for other thromboembolic disorders such as deep-vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism. Alteplase is also used for acute ischaemic stroke. Treatment must be started promptly.
- Contraindications include any risk of bleeding, especially trauma (including prolonged CPR), recent surgery, GI tract, and intracerebral pathology.
- Streptokinase can cause allergic reactions and should be used only once due to the production of antibodies.
- Serious bleeding calls for the discontinuation of therapy and may require coagulation factors. Cryoprecipitate (high levels of factor VIII and fibrinogen) and FFP (factors V and VIII) as well as platelets may all be required. Antifibrinolytics such as aminocaproic acid, tranexamic acid, and aprotinin may also be useful.
- Bleeding times are prolonged for up to 24hr after these drugs. In emergency surgery reversal will be required.
- Urokinase is also licensed to restore the patency of occluded intravenous catheters and cannulas blocked with fibrin clots. Inject directly into catheter or cannula 5000–25 000 units dissolved in suitable volume of sodium chloride 0.9% to fill the catheter or cannula lumen; leave for 20–60min, then aspirate the lysate; repeat if necessary.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Antifibrinolytics/haemostatic drug therapy

### Tranexamic acid (and aminocaproic acid)

- Both these drugs are synthetic derivatives of the amino acid lysine and reversibly bind to plasminogen, thereby blocking its binding to fibrin.
- Tranexamic acid is 10 times more potent than aminocaproic acid.
- Useful in postoperative bleeding predominantly in prostatectomy and dental extractions (particularly in haemophiliacs).
- Also useful in reversal of thrombolytics.
- Contraindicated in DIC.
- Usual dose of tranexamic acid is 1g tds orally.

### Aprotinin

- The use of this drug in cardiac surgery to minimise bleeding has decreased considerably following the BART trial (see Further reading Henry et al 2009) because of increased mortality compared with lysine analogues.
- The drug is still available though not actively marketed by Bayer.
- It is contraindicated for repeated use within a year due to anaphylaxis.
- It can cause renal failure and is contraindicated in renal insufficiency.
- The drug is useful during the anhepatic phase of liver transplantation where its use is guided by thromboelastography.

### Desmopressin

- An analogue of arginine vasopressin which induces release of von Willebrand's factor (vWF) from vascular endothelium to increase both vWF and factor VIII.
- Can be used (0.3µg/kg given in 50–100ml saline over 30min) for haemophilia A and von Willebrand's disease to double or quadruple levels of vWF or factor VIII.
- Platelet function may also be improved in patients in renal failure and aspirin-induced platelet dysfunction.

### Factor VIIa

- Recombinant factor VIIa (rFVIIa) acts at the 'tissue factor–factor VIIa' complex at the site of endothelial damage.
- This effect appears localised to the area where the vessel is damaged, leading to few systemic side effects.
- Numerous case reports have shown rFVIIa to have potent haemostatic effects even when other treatments have failed and whatever the cause of bleeding. These must be balanced against potential thrombogenic risk (highlighted by recent reissue of a warning by the manufacturer) and a Cochrane review (updated February 2009) that concluded the data supporting the off-licence use of rFVII are weak.
- Dosing and mode of delivery (IV bolus or continuous infusion) have still not been established (20–40µg/kg has been used).

**Prothrombin complex concentrates (PCCs)**

- Dried prothrombin complex is prepared from human plasma and contains factor IX together with variable amounts of factors II, VII, and X.
- Indications are treatment and prophylaxis of congenital or acquired deficiency of factors II, VII, IX, and X (such as during warfarin treatment).
- Contraindications are angina, recent MI, and history of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia.
- Side effects include thrombosis and hypersensitivity/anaphylaxis.

## Haematological management of the bleeding patient

See also p1075.

- Establish whether the cause of bleeding is surgical or a coagulopathy.
- A coagulopathy is more likely if bleeding is simultaneous from several sites or is slow in onset.
- A single site or sudden massive bleeding suggests a surgical source.
- Coagulation tests may help but often take some time to be obtained.
- Remember blood products also take time to arrive.
- Treatment should be aimed primarily at removal or control of the underlying cause while support is given to maintain tissue perfusion and oxygenation.
- Abnormal coagulation parameters in the presence of bleeding or the need for an invasive procedure are indications for haemostatic support. Further useful information can often be gained from a thromboelastograph where available (see p1060). Transfusion of platelets and FFP (15ml/kg initially or 4U in an average adult) should help restore platelets, coagulation factors, and the natural anticoagulants antithrombin-III and protein C. Cryoprecipitate (2 pools or 10U initially) may also be necessary if the fibrinogen level cannot be raised above 1g/l by FFP alone.
- Indications for heparin, concentrates of antithrombin, and protein C are not established. Antifibrinolytics such as tranexamic acid are generally contraindicated in DIC.
- Massive transfusion of stored blood perioperatively may cause significant coagulation disorders due to the lack of factors V, VIII, and XI. DIC and thrombocytopenia may also be present. Therapy consists of replacement FFP, cryoprecipitate, and platelets as guided by coagulation tests and thromboelastography. A haematologist should be consulted.
- Several case reports have shown good results from giving factor VIIa in cases of uncontrollable haemorrhage.

### Disseminated intravascular coagulation

- Acute DIC is probably the commonest cause of a significant coagulation abnormality in the surgical setting, especially in the peri- and postoperative phase.
- It is associated with infections (especially gram-negative bacteraemia), placental abruption, amniotic fluid embolism, major trauma, burns, hypoxia, hypovolaemia, and severe liver disease.
- Haemorrhage, thrombosis, or both may occur.
- Chronic DIC is associated with aneurysms, haemangiomas, and carcinomatosis.
- Laboratory abnormalities are variable, depending on the severity of DIC, and reflect both consumption of platelets and coagulation factors as well as hyperplasmaemia and fibrinolysis.
- Discuss treatment options with a haematologist.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Hypercoagulability syndromes

### Polycythaemia

A pattern of red blood cell changes that usually results in a haemoglobin  $>17.5\text{g/dl}$  in males and  $>15.5\text{g/dl}$  in females. This is accompanied by a corresponding increase in the red cell count to  $6.0$  and  $5.5 \times 10^{12}/\text{l}$  and a haematocrit of  $55\%$  and  $47\%$ , respectively.

#### Causes

- Primary: polycythaemia vera.
- Secondary: due to compensatory erythropoietin increase (high altitude, cardiorespiratory diseases—especially cyanotic, heavy smoking, methaemoglobinaemia), or inappropriate erythropoietin increase (renal diseases—hydronephrosis, cysts, carcinoma, massive uterine fibromyomata, hepatocellular carcinoma, cerebellar haemangioblastoma).
- Relative: 'stress' or 'spurious' polycythaemia. Dehydration or vomiting.
- Plasma loss: burns, enteropathy.

### Polycythaemia vera (PV)

- Presenting features include headaches, dyspnoea, chest pain, vertigo, pruritus, epigastric pain, hypertension, gout, and thrombotic episodes (particularly retinal).
- Splenomegaly.
- Thrombocythaemia in  $50\%$  of cases.
- Differential diagnosis is with other causes of polycythaemia. These can be excluded by history, examination, and blood tests including bone marrow aspiration, arterial blood gases, and erythropoietin levels.
- Genetic testing can reveal the JAK 2 mutation in  $90\text{--}95\%$  of patients with PV and  $50\%$  of patients with myelofibrosis.
- Therapy is aimed at maintaining a normal blood count by venesection and myelosuppression with drugs.
- Thrombosis is a frequent cause of death and  $30\%$  of cases develop myelofibrosis and  $15\%$  acute leukaemia.

### Essential thrombocythaemia

- Megakaryocyte proliferation and overproduction of platelets are the dominant features, with a sustained platelet count  $>1000 \times 10^9/\text{l}$ .
- Closely related to polycythaemia vera with recurrent haemorrhage and thrombosis.
- Recurrent haemorrhage and thrombosis are the principal clinical features.
- Abnormal large platelets or megakaryocyte fragments may be seen on a blood film.
- Differential diagnosis is from other causes of a raised platelet count: e.g. haemorrhage, chronic infection, malignancy, polycythaemia vera, myelosclerosis, and chronic granulocytic leukaemia.
- Platelet function tests are consistently abnormal.
- Radioactive phosphate or alkylating agents are used to keep platelet counts down.

## Antiphospholipid syndrome

This is a rare, but increasingly recognised, syndrome resulting in arterial or venous thrombosis or recurrent miscarriage, with a positive laboratory test for antiphospholipid antibody and/or lupus anticoagulant (LA). It may present with another autoimmune disease such as SLE (secondary) or as a primary disease. The main feature of the disease is thrombosis, with a spectrum from subacute migraine and visual disturbances to accelerated cardiac failure and major stroke. Arterial thrombosis helps distinguish this from other hypercoagulable states. Paradoxically the LA leads to a prolongation of coagulation tests such as the APTT, but detailed testing is needed before the diagnosis can be confirmed. Patients may present for surgery because of complications (miscarriage, thrombosis) or for incidental procedures. Initially patients are started on aspirin, but after a confirmed episode of thrombosis, they usually remain on lifelong warfarin. High risk of thrombosis in these patients means that if warfarin needs to be stopped for surgery, IV heparin should be commenced both pre- and postoperatively.

## Anaesthesia and surgery in the hypercoagulable patient

- There are no published guidelines, but it seems prudent that elective patients who are polycythaemic should be venesected to a normal blood count to decrease the risk of perioperative thrombosis.
- Antithrombotic stockings and intermittent compression devices should be used with SC heparin.
- Haematological advice may be required.

## Further reading

- Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2005). *Blood Component Therapy*. [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).
- Bombeli T, Spahn DR (2004). Updates in perioperative coagulation: physiology and management of thromboembolism and haemorrhage. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **93**, 275–287.
- Douketis JD et al. (2008). The perioperative management of antithrombotic therapy: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practice guidelines, 8th edn. *Chest*, **133**, 299S–339S.
- Firth PG, Head CA (2004). Sickle cell disease and anaesthesia. *Anesthesiology*, **101**, 766–785.
- Guidelines for the clinical use of red cell transfusions (2001). *British Journal of Haematology*, **113**, 24–31.
- Guidelines for the use of fresh frozen plasma, cryoprecipitate and cryosupernatant (2004). *British Journal of Haematology*, **126**, 11–28.
- Guidelines for the use of platelet transfusions (2003). *British Journal of Haematology*, **122**, 10–23.
- Henry D et al. (2009). The safety of aprotinin and lysine-derived antifibrinolytic drugs in cardiac surgery: a meta-analysis. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, **180**(2), 183–193.
- James MFM, Hift RJ (2000). Porphyrrias. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 143–153.
- Krai EP et al. (2009). Perioperative management of anticoagulation: guidelines translated for the clinician. *Journal of Thrombosis and Thrombolysis*, **28**, 16–22.
- Mackman N (2009). The role of tissue factor and factor VIIa in hemostasis. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **108**, 1447–1452.
- Mahdy AM, Webster NR (2004). Perioperative systemic haemostatic agents. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **93**, 842–858.
- Spahn DR, Cassutt M (2000). Eliminating blood transfusions. *Anesthesiology*, **93**, 24–255.
- Tanaka KA, Key NS, Levy JH (2009). Blood coagulation: hemostasis and thrombin regulation. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **108**, 1433–1446.
- Thachil J et al. (2008). Management of surgical patients receiving anticoagulation and antiplatelet drugs. *British Journal of Surgery*, **95**, 1437–1448.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Neurological and muscular disorders

## Andrew Teasdale

Epilepsy 240

Cerebrovascular disease 244

Parkinson's disease 246

Anaesthesia in spinal cord lesions 250

Myasthenia gravis 256

Multiple sclerosis 262

Guillain–Barré syndrome 264

Motor neuron disease (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis) 265

Dystrophia myotonica 266

Muscular dystrophy 268

## Jane Halsall

Malignant hyperthermia 270



## Epilepsy

Epilepsy is a disorder characterised by chaotic brain dysfunction leading to symptoms ranging from behavioural disorder through to life-threatening convulsions. Most epileptic patients will be on seizure-modifying drug therapy.

### General considerations

- Maintain GI function to avoid metabolic disturbance and interference with drug therapy.
- Make provision for therapy if oral antiepileptic medication cannot be given.

### Preoperative assessment

- Nature, timing, and frequency of seizures should be recorded.
- Full drug history, including timing of antiepileptic therapy should be noted.
- The effect of the condition on lifestyle and the eligibility to hold a driver's licence should be noted.

### Investigations

- Electrolyte and glucose measurement. Disturbance will alter seizure potential.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Avoid prolonged fasting.
- Sedative premedication, if necessary, may be achieved with benzodiazepines. Long-acting drugs such as diazepam (10mg PO) or lorazepam (2–4mg PO) are useful.
- Maintain antiepileptic therapy up to the time of surgery.
- All currently used anaesthetic agents are anticonvulsant in conventional doses. Thiopental is powerfully anticonvulsant and may be a preferred induction agent in the poorly controlled epileptic.
- Muscle relaxation is best achieved by drugs without a steroid nucleus (e.g. atracurium, cisatracurium) since enzyme induction by all commonly used anticonvulsant drugs (especially phenytoin, carbamazepine, and the barbiturates) will lead to rapid metabolism of vecuronium and rocuronium.
- Avoid hyperventilation and consequent hypocarbia since this will lower seizure threshold.
- Regional anaesthesia may assist in preservation of, or early return to, oral intake. Be aware of maximum local anaesthetic doses.
- Use antiemetic agents unlikely to produce dystonias (e.g. cyclizine 50mg IV/IM, domperidone 30–60mg PR, ondansetron 4mg IV).
- Record any epileptiform activity in the perioperative period carefully. The misdiagnosis of postoperative shivering/dystonic movements on induction as epilepsy may have profound implications.
- Day case anaesthesia is suitable for those with well-controlled epilepsy (seizure free for 1yr or nocturnal seizures only). Patients should be warned of the potential for perioperative convulsions.

## Drug issues

The following drugs should be used with caution in epileptics:

Drug	Notes
Methohexital	Reported to produce seizures in children. Increased EEG evidence of spike activity during administration. No longer marketed in the UK
Ketamine	Avoided because of cerebral excitatory effects although it has been used without incident in many epileptics
Etomidate	Associated with a high incidence of myoclonus (not centrally mediated). May be confused with epileptic activity
Antiemetics: phenothiazines (e.g. prochlorperazine), central dopamine antagonists (e.g. metoclopramide), butyrophenones (e.g. droperidol)	High incidence of dystonic reactions may lead to confusion with epileptic activity
Inhalational agents: enflurane	Associated with abnormal EEG activity after administration—especially in presence of hyperventilation
Neuromuscular blockers: steroid based (e.g. vecuronium, rocuronium)	Pharmacodynamic resistance due to enzyme activation

## Propofol

- Propofol is reported to be associated with abnormal movements during both induction and emergence from anaesthesia. This is unlikely to represent true seizure activity (EEG studies fail to demonstrate epileptiform activity during these episodes).
- Epileptic patients may be prone to seizures during the rapid emergence from propofol anaesthesia.
- Profound suppression of abnormal EEG activity is usually noted during propofol infusion.
- Propofol has also been reported to be effective in status epilepticus in ICU.

Caution is advised in the administration of propofol to epileptics (particularly those holding driving licences) unless there is an overwhelming clinical need for its administration. Co-induction with benzodiazepine (e.g. midazolam 2–3mg IV) may reduce its potential to produce abnormal movements and reduce the potential for postoperative seizure.

**Driving and epilepsy**

At present, UK law mandates the withdrawal of a driving licence from an epileptic until 12 months from the last seizure. The implications of a single convulsion in the postoperative period on a previously well-controlled epileptic cannot be overstated. Up-to-date advice on fitness to drive is available from the DVLA (Driver and Vehicle Licensing Agency: <http://www.dvla.gov.uk>).

**What if oral or nasogastric therapy is not possible?**

The following drugs are available in parenteral or rectal formulations. In general, IM administration of antiepileptic medication should be avoided because of unpredictable absorption postoperatively and the irritant nature of the formulations.

Drug levels should be measured during parenteral therapy or after changing the route of administration.

Drug	Notes
Carbamazepine	125mg rectal, equivalent to 100mg oral. Maximum 1g daily in four divided doses
Phenobarbital	200mg IM repeated 6-hourly. Child 15mg/kg. IV administration associated with sedation. Slow infusion of dilute preparation recommended
Phenytoin	Loading dose 15mg/kg IV at rate of no greater than 50mg/min. Maintenance dose (same IV as oral) twice daily. Infusion usually under ECG and BP control
Fosphenytoin	A prodrug of phenytoin. Less irritation and cardiovascular instability on injection. Absorbed very slowly after IM injection although non-irritant. Dose—same dose (in phenytoin equivalents*) and frequency as oral phenytoin
Sodium valproate	IV dose same as oral dose, twice daily. Dose to be injected over 3–5min
Clonazepam	IV infusion in high-dependency area only—facilities for airway control available. Child (any age) 500µg. Adult 1mg

\*(see p1213)

*This page intentionally left blank*

## **Cerebrovascular disease<sup>1</sup>**

Stroke is the third leading cause of death in the industrialised world (after heart disease and cancer). Cerebrovascular disease is manifested by either global cerebral dysfunction (multi-infarct dementia) or focal ischaemic disorder ranging from transient ischaemic attack to major stroke.

### **Transient ischaemic attacks (TIA)**

- These are defined as focal neurological deficits that occur suddenly and last for several minutes to hours but never more than 24hr. Residual neurological deficit does not occur.
- They are thought to be related to embolism of platelet and fibrin aggregates released from areas of atherosclerotic plaque. The risk of stroke in untreated patients is said to be ~5% per annum with a mortality of ~30% per episode.
- Patients with a history of TIA should be investigated and assessed by a specialist vascular service if practical. Doppler flow studies, with or without angiography, are indicated in all cases of recurrent TIA or those that have occurred despite aspirin therapy.
- Delay of all but urgent or emergency surgery is warranted until Doppler studies are performed. At present only those with a history of TIA with good recovery and a surgically accessible lesion of either >80% stenosis or 'ragged' plaque are routinely referred for carotid surgery. Crescendo TIA is considered by some as an indication for urgent carotid surgery.

### **General considerations**

Cerebrovascular disease is associated with hypertension, diabetes, obesity, and smoking. The incidence rises with age. Medical management is based on the treatment of the underlying disorder, cessation of smoking, and antiplatelet/anticoagulant therapy.

Signs of concurrent cardiac and renal dysfunction should be sought.

### **When to operate**

- Operation within 6wk of a cerebral event is associated with an up to 20-fold increase in the risk of postoperative stroke.
- Hemiplegia of <6–9 months' duration is associated with exaggerated hyperkalaemic response to suxamethonium.

It therefore seems prudent to delay all but life-saving surgery for at least 6wk following a cerebral event and preferably to wait 3–6 months before considering elective surgery.

### **Preoperative assessment**

- Measure blood pressure (both arms) and test blood glucose. The therapeutic aims are for normotension and normoglycaemia.
- Take a full drug history—continue antihypertensive drugs until operation.
- Warfarin should be discontinued and substituted with heparin (unfractionated or LMWH as per local protocol) if necessary.

- Aspirin is discontinued only if the consequences of haemorrhage are significant (e.g. tonsillectomy, neurosurgery) (see pp222–5).
- Document the nature of any ischaemic events and any residual neurological deficit. These may range from transient blindness (amaurosis fugax) to dense hemiplegia. This will help in differentiating new lesions arising in the perioperative period that may require urgent therapy.
- Ask about precipitating events. Vertebrobasilar insufficiency is most likely to be precipitated by postural changes and neck positioning.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Ensure that antihypertensive medication (with the possible exception of ACE inhibitors for major surgery or when thoracic epidurals are planned) is continued to the time of operation. ACE inhibitors may predispose to profound, resistant hypotension under anaesthesia.
- Thromboprophylaxis is advisable unless contraindicated (e.g. low-dose LMWH).
- Ensure that pressor and depressor agents are available prior to induction. Use agents with which you are familiar. Maintain blood pressure as close as practical to preoperative levels to maintain cerebral blood flow. Useful pressors are ephedrine/metaraminol; useful depressors are opioids/labetalol/esmolol/GTN.
- Blood pressure may ‘swing’ excessively during surgery due to the interactions of anaesthesia, antihypertensives, and the surgical stimulation on a relatively rigid vascular system. IV fluid replacement should be proactive rather than reactive, with large-bore IV access and invasive central pressure monitoring if large fluid shifts are expected.
- Ensure that neck positioning is neutral and avoids movements associated with syncope.
- Induction of anaesthesia may result in dangerous hypotension followed by extreme hypertension on intubation. Careful IV induction is indicated. Cover for intubation may be provided by opioids (e.g. alfentanil 500–1000µg or fentanyl 150–250µg).
- Avoid hyperventilation. Hypocarbia is associated with reduced cerebral blood flow and therefore cerebral ischaemia. The combination of hypotension and hypocarbia must be avoided.
- Examine the patient early in the postoperative period to determine any change in neurological status. New neurological signs will require urgent referral to a neurologist/vascular surgeon and urgent treatment if possible.

## Parkinson's disease

### General considerations

- Parkinsonism is a syndrome characterised by tremor, bradykinesia, rigidity, and postural instability. The aetiology of Parkinson's disease is unknown, but parkinsonism may be precipitated by drugs (especially neuroleptic agents) or be post-traumatic/postencephalitic.
- Parkinsonism is due to an imbalance of the mutually antagonistic dopaminergic and cholinergic systems of the basal ganglia. Pigmented cells in the substantia nigra are lost, leading to reduced dopaminergic activity. There is no reduction in cholinergic activity.
- Drug therapy of parkinsonism is aimed at restoring this balance by either increasing dopamine or dopamine-like activity or reducing cholinergic activity within the brain.
- Drug therapy in parkinsonism is limited by severe side effects (nausea and confusion), especially in the elderly. Up to 20% of patients will remain unresponsive to drug therapy.

### Drug therapies

#### *Dopaminergic drugs*

- L-dopa is an inactive form of dopamine, which is converted by decarboxylases to dopamine within the brain. It is more useful in patients with bradykinesia and rigidity than tremor and is usually administered with decarboxylase inhibitors (e.g. benserazide, carbidopa) that do not cross into the brain, reducing peripheral conversion into dopamine.
- Monoamine oxidase B (MAO-B) inhibitors (e.g. selegiline) act by reducing central breakdown of dopamine. Selegiline has fewer drug interactions than the non-specific MAO inhibitors, but may cause a hypertensive response to pethidine and dangerous CNS excitability with SSRI and tricyclic antidepressants (see p284).
- Ergot derivatives such as bromocriptine, cabergoline, lisuride, and pergolide act by direct stimulation of dopamine receptors. They are usually reserved for adjuvant therapy in those already on L-dopa or those intolerant of the side effects of L-dopa.
- Entacapone is an adjuvant agent capable of reducing the dose of L-dopa and increasing the duration of its effect. It is usually reserved for those experiencing 'end of dose' deterioration after long-term dopaminergic therapy.
- Other adjuvant dopaminergic agents are ropinirole, pramipexole, amantadine, apomorphine, and tolcapone.
- There are no parenteral dopaminergic agents currently available for use in parkinsonism.

#### *Anticholinergic (antimuscarinic) drugs*

- The most commonly used agents in this group are benztropine, procyclidine, benzhexol (trihexyphenidyl), and orphenadrine.
- These agents are indicated as first-line therapy only when symptoms are mild and tremor predominates. Rigidity and sialorrhoea may be improved by these agents but bradykinesia will not be affected.

- This class of drug is useful for drug-induced parkinsonism but not in tardive dyskinesia.
- Parenteral formulations exist for procyclidine and benztropine, making these useful for acute drug-induced dystonias.

### Surgical therapies

Surgery for treatment of Parkinson's-induced disability is increasing in popularity. It is normally performed in the awake patient using stereotactic guided probes.

- Thalamotomy is used in those with tremor as the predominant disability, especially if the tremor is unilateral. Anterior thalamotomy is sometimes used for rigidity.
- Pallidotomy is primarily for those with rigidity and bradykinesia, although the tremor (if present) may also be reduced.
- Deep brain stimulation using implantable devices is becoming more commonplace. There is no literature at present relating to incidental anaesthesia in patients with these devices, but it would seem prudent to contact the manufacturer or team responsible for insertion of the device before using diathermy. If diathermy is necessary, bipolar should be used, as far as practical from the device or lead. Device function should be checked after surgery.

### Preoperative assessment

Ideally, patients with severe disease should be under the care of a physician with a special interest in Parkinson's disease, who should be involved in the perioperative care.

The following assessment is of particular interest:

- A history of dysphagia or excessive salivation (sialorrhoea) is evidence of increased risk of aspiration and possible failure to maintain an airway in the perioperative period. Gastro-oesophageal reflux is common in this group of patients.
- Postural hypotension may be evidence of both dysautonomia and drug-induced hypovolaemia and should warn of possible hypotension on induction or position changes during surgery.
- Drug-induced arrhythmias, especially ventricular premature beats, are common, although they are usually not clinically significant.
- Respiratory function may be compromised by bradykinesia and muscle rigidity as well as by sputum retention. Chest radiograph, lung function tests, and blood gases may be indicated.
- Difficulty in voiding may necessitate urinary catheterisation. Postoperative urinary retention may be a potent cause of postoperative confusion.
- The severity of the underlying disease should be determined and other likely problems anticipated, e.g. akinesia, muscle rigidity, tremor, confusion, depression, hallucinations, and speech impairment.

### Drug interactions

Most patients with severe disease are on several maintenance drugs, many of which have potentially serious interactions.



## Drug interactions in parkinsonism

<b>Class of drug</b>	<b>Interaction</b>	<b>Notes</b>
Pethidine	Hypertension and muscle rigidity with selegiline	May resemble malignant hyperpyrexia
Synthetic opioids, e.g. fentanyl, alfentanil	Muscle rigidity	More apparent in high doses
Inhalational agents	Potentiate L-dopa- induced arrhythmias	Avoid use of halothane if ventricular arrhythmia present on preop ECG
Antiemetics, e.g. metoclopramide, droperidol, prochlorperazine	May produce extrapyramidal side effects or worsen parkinsonian symptoms	Metoclopramide may increase plasma concentration of L-dopa—use domperidone/ ondansetron
Antipsychotics, e.g. phenothiazines, butyrophenones, piperazine, derivatives	May produce extra-pyramidal side effects or worsen Parkinson's symptoms	Better to use atypical antipsychotics such as sulpiride, clozapine, risperidone.
Antidepressants: tricyclics (e.g. amitriptyline), serotonin reuptake inhibitors (e.g. fluoxetine)	Potentiate L-dopa-induced arrhythmias (tricyclics only). Hypertensive crises and cerebral excitation with selegiline (tricyclics and SSRIs)	
Antihypertensives (all classes)	Marked antihypertensive effect in treated and untreated parkinsonism. Related to postural hypotension and relative hypovolaemia	Most marked with clonidine and reserpine

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Treatment for parkinsonism should be continued up to the start of anaesthesia. Distressing symptoms may develop as little as 3hr after a missed dose. Acute withdrawal of drugs may precipitate neuroleptic malignant syndrome. See p287.
- Premedication is usually unnecessary unless distressing sialorrhoea is present. Consider glycopyrronium (200–400µg IM) as an antisialogogue.
- The presence of preoperative sialorrhoea or dysphagia is a sign of gastrointestinal dysfunction. Airway control with intubation by rapid sequence induction may be indicated.
- Maintain normothermia to avoid shivering.
- There is no evidence that any anaesthetic technique is superior to any other.
- Analgesia: IV morphine is useful if regional or local analgesia is not possible (PCA may prove difficult for the patient). Oral analgesia may be difficult to administer with coexisting dysphagia (a nasogastric tube may be necessary).

### Postoperative care

- In principle, the more disabled the patient preoperatively, the greater the need for postoperative high-dependency and respiratory care.
- Postoperative physiotherapy should be arranged if rigidity is disabling.
- Nasogastric tube insertion may be needed if GI dysfunction is present to allow early return of oral medication.
- Prolonged GI dysfunction postoperatively may lead to severe disability since no parenteral dopaminergic therapy is currently available.

### Special considerations

Antiemetic therapy may prove problematic. The following are useful:

- Domperidone (10–20mg 4–6-hourly PO or 30–60mg 4–6-hourly PR). The drug of first choice for PONV in Parkinson's patients. It does not cross the blood–brain barrier to a significant degree and is thus not associated with significant extrapyramidal effects.
- Serotonin antagonists, e.g. ondansetron 4mg IV and granisetron 1mg IV slowly, may be useful rescue agents in PONV if domperidone alone is ineffective.
- Antihistamine derivatives (e.g. cyclizine 50mg IV/IM).

### Further reading

Mason LJ, Cojocaru TT, Cole DJ. Surgical intervention and anesthetic management of the patient with Parkinson's disease (1996). *International Anesthesiology Clinics*, **34**, 133–150.

Nicholson G, Pereira A, Hall G (2002). Review article: Parkinson's disease and anaesthesia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **89**, 904–916.

Stotz M et al. (2004). Case report: fulminant neuroleptic malignant syndrome after perioperative withdrawal of antiParkinsonian medication. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **93**, 868–871.

## Anaesthesia in spinal cord lesions

There are ~40 000 patients in the UK with spinal cord injuries. Most are young adults. Fertility in affected females approaches that of the non-injured population and obstetric services are regularly required.

### Pathophysiology of spinal cord injury

Spinal injury can be divided into three distinct phases:

- The initial phase: very short (minutes) period of intense neuronal discharge caused by direct cord stimulation. This leads to extreme hypertension and arrhythmias, with risk of LVF, MI, and pulmonary oedema. Steroids usage in acute spinal cord injury remains controversial. If used, steroids must be given within 8hr of injury, in high dosage (e.g. 30mg/kg methylprednisone).
- Spinal shock follows rapidly and is characterised by hypotension and bradycardia due to loss of sympathetic tone. It is most common after high cord lesions (above T<sub>7</sub>). There is associated loss of muscle tone and reflexes below the level of the lesion. Vagal parasympathetic tone continues unopposed, causing profound bradycardia or asystole—especially on tracheal suction/intubation. This phase may last from 3d to 8wk. Paralytic ileus is common.
- Reflex phase: as neuronal ‘rewiring’ occurs, efferent sympathetic discharge returns, along with muscle tone and reflexes.

### Autonomic dysreflexia

This is characterised by massive, disordered autonomic response to stimulation below the level of the lesion. It is rare in lesions lower than T<sub>7</sub>. Incidence increases with higher lesions. It may occur within 3wk of the original injury but is unlikely to be a problem after 9 months. The dysreflexia and its effects are thought to arise because of a loss of descending inhibitory control on regenerating presynaptic fibres.

Hypertension is the most common feature but is not universal. Other features include headache, flushing, pallor (may be manifest above the level of lesion), nausea, anxiety, sweating, bradycardia, and penile erection. Less commonly pupillary changes or Horner’s syndrome occur. Dysreflexia may be complicated by seizures, pulmonary oedema, coma, and death and should be treated as a medical emergency. The stimulus required to precipitate the condition varies but is most commonly:

- Urological: bladder distension, UTI, catheter insertion
- Obstetric: labour, cervical dilation, etc.
- Bowel obstruction/faecal impaction
- Acute abdomen
- Fractures
- Rarely, minor trauma to skin, cutaneous infection (bedsores).

### Management of dysreflexia

- Discover the cause if possible and treat.
- If no apparent cause, examine carefully for unrevealed trauma or infection, catheterise, and check for faecal impaction.

- If simple measures fail, consider:
  - Phentolamine 2–10mg IV repeated if necessary.
  - Transdermal GTN.
  - Clonidine (150–300µg) if there is hypertension and spasticity.
  - $\beta$ -blockers are indicated only if there is associated tachycardia—esmolol 10mg IV repeated.

### Systemic complications of spinal cord lesions

- Reduced blood volume—may be as little as 60ml/kg, a 20% reduction.
- Abnormal response to the Valsalva manoeuvre with continued drop in blood pressure (no plateau) and no overshoot with release.
- Profound postural hypotension with gradual improvement after initial injury (never to normal). Changes in cerebral autoregulation reduce its effect on CBF and consciousness in the non-anaesthetised patient.
- Lesions above C3—apnoea.
- Lesions at C3/4/5—possible diaphragmatic sparing, some respiratory capacity. Initial lesions may progress in height with shock and oedema, with recovery as the oedema improves, leading to a marked improvement in respiratory capacity.
- Below C5—phrenic sparing, intercostal paralysis. Recruitment of accessory muscles is necessary to improve respiratory capacity (this may take up to 6 months).
- Paralysis of abdominal muscles severely affects the ability to force expiration, reducing the ability to cough.
- The FVC is better in the horizontal or slight head-down position due to increased diaphragmatic excursion.
- Bronchial hypersecretion may occur.
- Poor thermoregulation due to isolation of central regulatory centres from information pathways, inability to use muscle to generate heat, and altered peripheral blood flow.
- Muscle spasms and spasticity occur due to intact reflexes below the level of the lesion. They can be caused by minor stimuli. Baclofen and diazepam may be used, the former increasingly via epidural infusion.
- Reduced bone density leading to increased risk of fractures. There is heterotopic calcification around the joints in up to 20% of patients.
- Poor peripheral perfusion—pressure sores and difficult venous access.
- Anaemia, usually mild.
- Tendency to thrombosis and pulmonary embolism. Some centres warfarinise tetraplegics 5d after initial presentation.
- There is delayed gastric emptying in tetraplegics (up to 5 times longer).

### Suxamethonium in chronic spinal cord lesions

- After upper motor neuron denervation, the motor endplate effectively extends to cover the entire muscle cell membrane. With administration of suxamethonium, depolarisation occurs over this extended endplate, leading to massive potassium efflux and potential cardiac arrest.
- Recommendations vary as to the period of potential risk. Practically—avoid suxamethonium from 72hr following the initial injury. There are no reports of clinically significant hyperkalaemia with suxamethonium after 9 months.

**Conduct of anaesthesia****Spinal shock phase**

Surgery is usually confined to the management of life-threatening emergencies and coexisting injury. Anaesthesia should reflect this.

- Severe bradycardia or even asystole may complicate intubation—give atropine (300µg IV) or glycopyrronium (200µg IV) prior to intubation.
- Extreme care should be taken if cervical spine injury is suspected.
- Preload with fluid (500–1000ml crystalloid) to reduce hypotension.
- Central line insertion may be necessary to manage fluid balance and guide appropriate inotrope therapy.

**Reflex phase**

Previous anaesthetic history is vital—many procedures in these patients are multiple and repeated. Pay close attention to the following:

- Is there a sensory level and is it complete? (Risk of autonomic dysreflexia is greater in complete lesions.)
- If complete, is the proposed surgery below the sensory level? (Is anaesthesia necessary?)
- Has there been spinal instrumentation? (Potential problems with spinal/epidural anaesthesia.)
- Is the cervical spine stable/fused/instrumented? (Potential intubation difficulty.)
- Is postural hypotension present? (Likely to be worsened by anaesthesia.)
- Is there a history of autonomic dysreflexia (paroxysmal sweating and/or headache) and, if so, what precipitated it?
- In cervical lesions, what degree of respiratory support is necessary?
- Are there contractures, or pressure sores?

**Investigations**

- FBC—anaemia
- U&Es—renal impairment
- Liver function tests—possible impairment with chronic sepsis
- Pulmonary function tests (FVC)—mandatory with all cervical lesions due to potential respiratory failure.

**Is anaesthesia necessary?**

In principle, if the planned procedure would require anaesthesia in a normal patient, it will be required for a cord-injured patient.

- Minor peripheral surgery below a complete sensory level is likely to be safe without anaesthesia.
- Even with minor peripheral surgery, minimal stimulation may provoke muscular spasm that may require anaesthesia to resolve. Local anaesthetic infiltration may prevent its occurrence.
- Care should be taken with high lesions (T<sub>5</sub> and above) or patients with a history of autonomic dysreflexia undergoing urological procedures.
- If the decision is made to proceed without anaesthesia, IV access is mandatory and ECG, NIBP, and pulse oximeter should be applied.
- An anaesthetist should be present on 'standby' for such procedures.

## General anaesthesia

- Monitoring should be applied prior to induction and blood pressure measured before and after every position change. Invasive monitoring should be performed with the same considerations as normal.
- Despite the theoretical risk of gastro-oesophageal reflux there appears to be no increased risk of aspiration. If intubation is necessary for the desired procedure, anticholinergic pre-treatment is recommended.
- Those with cervical cord lesions are likely to require assistance with ventilation under general anaesthesia. If IPPV is performed in tetraplegics, blood pressure may drop precipitously. Fluid preloading and vasopressors (e.g. ephedrine) may be required.
- With the exception of paralysis to facilitate intubation, neuromuscular blockade is unlikely to be necessary unless troublesome muscular spasm is present.
- Care should be taken to preserve body temperature (wrapping or forced-air warming blankets). Position with respect to pressure areas.
- Fluid management may be difficult as blood volume is usually low, and with high cord lesions reflex compensation for blood loss is absent. Fluid preloading coupled with aggressive replacement of blood losses with warmed fluid is recommended.

## Centroneuraxial anaesthesia

### Advantages

- Prevents autonomic dysreflexia.
- Unlikely to cause cardiovascular instability since sympathetic tone is already low prior to blockade.
- No reported adverse effect of spinal injection of local anaesthetics or opioids on neurological outcome.
- Avoids risks of general anaesthesia.
- Spinal anaesthesia is more common than epidural anaesthesia as it is technically easier and more reliable in preventing autonomic dysreflexia. Use standard doses of local anaesthetic agents (bupivacaine 'heavy' or plain). Intrathecal opioids appear to confer no advantage.

### Disadvantages

- May be technically difficult to perform. Spinal anaesthesia is usually possible, but epidural techniques are likely to fail in the presence of spinal instrumentation or previous spinal surgery.
- There is difficulty in determining the success or level of blockade in complete lesions. Incomplete lesions are tested as usual.

## Postoperative care

- Tetraplegics are best nursed supine or only slightly head up due to improved ventilatory function in this position.
- Temperature should be monitored and hypothermia actively treated.
- Analgesia should be provided by conventional means.
- Dysreflexia may occur and require drug treatment after removal of precipitating causes (such as pain and urinary retention).

**Obstetric anaesthesia*****Effect of pregnancy on spinal cord injury***

- Exaggerated postural hypotension and worsened response to caval occlusion.
- Reduced respiratory reserve with increased risk of respiratory failure and pneumonia. Increased oxygen demand.
- Increased anaemia due to haemodilution.
- Labour is a potent cause of autonomic dysreflexia in those with lesions above T<sub>5</sub> (dysreflexia may be the first sign of labour in such patients).

***Effect of spinal injury on pregnancy***

- Increased risk of infection (urinary infection and pressure sores).
- Increased risk of premature labour (increasing risk with higher level injury).
- Increased risk of thromboembolic complications.
- Labour pains will not be felt in complete lesions above T<sub>5</sub>. Lesion between T<sub>5</sub> and T<sub>10</sub>—some awareness of some contractions.

***Management of labour***

- All cord-injured patients should be reviewed early in pregnancy and a plan formulated for the likely need for analgesia. The relative risks and difficulties of epidural catheter insertion should be predicted and discussed with the patient. A plan for anaesthesia in the event of Caesarean section should also be formulated and recorded in the patient notes.
- Epidural analgesia is usually possible in those with high cord lesions without vertebral instrumentation at the level of catheter insertion.
- Spinal anaesthesia is usually possible for elective Caesarean section and may be achievable with both single-shot and microcatheter techniques, irrespective of the presence of spinal instrumentation.
- General anaesthesia may proceed with the precautions outlined above.

***Epidural analgesia in labour***

- The most effective preventive measure for autonomic dysreflexia is adequate epidural analgesia. Those with high lesions may have an epidural commenced prior to induction of labour.
- Hypotension is not usually a problem after adequate fluid preloading (at least 1 litre of crystalloid or colloid). However, hypotension from any cause should be treated aggressively in those with high lesions due to the lack of compensatory mechanisms and a tendency to progressive hypotension. Aortocaval compression should be avoided by careful positioning for the same reasons.
- Autonomic dysreflexia has been reported up to 48hr after delivery. If successful block is achieved it would appear prudent to leave the epidural in situ for this time.
- Failure to establish adequate epidural blockade may necessitate drug treatment of autonomic dysreflexia (see above).

**Further reading**

Hamby PR, Martin B (1998). Anaesthesia for chronic spinal cord lesions. *Anaesthesia*, **53**, 273–289.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## **Myasthenia gravis**

Myasthenia gravis is characterised by muscle weakness and fatigability. It is caused by autoimmune disruption of postsynaptic acetylcholine receptors at the neuromuscular junction, with up to 80% of functional receptors lost. The disease may occur at any age but is most common in young adult women. It may be associated with thymus hyperplasia with ~15% of affected patients having thymomas.

- Symptoms range from mild ptosis to life-threatening bulbar palsy and respiratory insufficiency.
- Management is usually with oral anticholinesterase medication with or without steroid therapy.
- Severe disease may require immunosuppressant therapy, plasmapheresis, or immunoglobulin infusion.

### **General considerations**

- All patients with myasthenia are sensitive to the effects of non-depolarising muscle relaxants.
- Plasmapheresis depletes plasma esterase levels, prolonging the effect of suxamethonium, mivacurium, ester-linked local anaesthetics, and remifentanyl.
- Suxamethonium may have an altered effect—patients may be resistant to depolarisation due to reduced receptor activity, requiring increased dose. This, in conjunction with treatment-induced plasma esterase deficiency, leads to an increased risk of non-depolarising (Phase II) block.

### **Preoperative assessment**

- Assess the degree of weakness and the duration of symptoms. Those with isolated ocular symptoms of long standing are unlikely to have progressive disease. Those with poorly controlled symptoms should have their condition optimised.
- Any degree of bulbar palsy is predictive of the need for both intra- and postoperative airway protection.
- Those who have significant respiratory impairment are more likely to require postoperative ventilation.
- Take a full drug history and determine the effect of a missed dose of anticholinesterase. Those with severe disease may be very sensitive to dose omission.

### **Conduct of anaesthesia**

- Maintain anticholinesterase therapy up to the time of induction. Although theoretical inhibition of neuromuscular blockade is possible, this has never been reported.
- Premedication should be minimal.
- Avoid use of neuromuscular blocking drugs if possible. Intubation/ventilation is often achievable using non-paralysing techniques.
- Non-depolarising drugs should be used sparingly. Monitor the response with a nerve stimulator. Initial doses of ~10–20% of normal are usually adequate.
- Consider topical LA to the airway.

- Short- and intermediate-duration non-depolarising drugs such as atracurium, mivacurium, vecuronium and rocuronium are preferable to longer-acting drugs.
- Reversal of neuromuscular blocking drugs should be achievable with standard doses of neostigmine if preoperative symptom control has been good (see below). Avoidance of reversal is preferred since further doses of anticholinesterase may introduce the risk of overdose (cholinergic crisis). Drugs with spontaneous reversal such as atracurium are optimal.
- Reversal of neuromuscular blockade using new agents such as sugammadex has been suggested as complete reversal of any drug-induced blockade by rocuronium or vecuronium may be achieved without the need for neostigmine. It may also reduce the confusion between postoperative weakness due to disease and neuromuscular blockade.
- Consider insertion of a nasogastric tube if difficulty with bulbar function is anticipated and early return of oral therapy required.
- Extubation is possible if neuromuscular function is assessed as adequate using nerve stimulation. Beware of preoperative bulbar function abnormality. The best predictor of safe extubation is >5s head lift.
- Regional anaesthesia may reduce the need for postoperative opioids and the risks of respiratory depression.
- Facilities for postoperative ventilation should be available.

### Principles of perioperative cholinesterase management

- An easy conversion for oral pyridostigmine to parenteral (IV, IM, or SC) neostigmine is to equate every 30mg of oral pyridostigmine to 1mg of parenteral neostigmine.
- Reversal of neuromuscular blockade is possible with neostigmine if indicated by nerve stimulator—in general, no twitches on train of four means no reversal possible.
- Initial dosage of neostigmine should be used under nerve stimulator control, starting with a 2.5–5mg bolus and increasing if necessary with a 1mg bolus every 2–3min to a maximum equivalent dose to the oral pyridostigmine dose (1:30). For example, if the pyridostigmine dose is 120mg 3–4-hourly, then the maximum neostigmine dose should be 4mg (to be repeated after 2–4hr if necessary).
- Consider the use of sugammadex (see above).

### Rapid sequence induction

- Suxamethonium may be used if indicated—doses of 1.5mg/kg are usually effective.
- If doubt exists as to the ease of intubation, consider awake techniques.
- If suxamethonium is used, do not use any other neuromuscular blockade until muscle function has returned and no fade is present.

### Postoperative care

- Rapid return of drug therapy is mandatory. Use NG tube if necessary.
- In the event of gastrointestinal failure, parenteral therapy is indicated.

**Preoperative predictors of need for postoperative ventilation**

- Major body cavity surgery.
- Duration of disease >6yr.
- A history of coexisting chronic respiratory disease.
- Dose requirements of pyridostigmine >750mg/d.
- A preoperative vital capacity of <2.9L.

The best monitors of postoperative respiratory capacity are:

- Repeated peak flow measurements.
- Vital capacity should be at least twice tidal volume to allow for cough.

Blood gases and pulse oximetry may be normal up to the point of respiratory failure.

**Special considerations****Thymectomy**

- Consensus now favours thymectomy in all adults with generalised myasthenia gravis. Remission rates are high and improvement of symptoms is almost universally attainable (96% gain benefit regardless of preoperative characteristics).
- Best results are achieved in those with normal or hyperplastic thymus.
- The approach most commonly used is trans-sternal. Transcervical approaches provide less satisfactory access for surgery.
- Thoracoscopic thymectomy is gaining acceptance, although its reputed benefit of reduced complications and need for postoperative ventilation is yet to be proven.
- Anaesthetic management follows the same general principles outlined above, although all patients need postoperative care in HDU or require ventilation for a short period in the early postoperative period.
- Fewer than 8% of patients requiring sternotomy for thymectomy need ventilation for >3hr postoperatively.
- Almost all patients will require a degree of muscle relaxation if preoperative preparation has been optimal. Postoperative analgesia can be achieved satisfactorily with epidural or PCA.

**Eaton–Lambert syndrome**

Eaton–Lambert syndrome (myasthenic syndrome) is a proximal muscle weakness associated with cancer (most often small cell carcinoma of the lung).

- The condition is thought to be due to a reduction in the release of acetylcholine (prejunctional failure).
- It is not reversed by anticholinesterase therapy and muscle weakness is improved by exercise.
- Associated dysautonomia may manifest as dry mouth, impaired accommodation, urinary hesitance, and constipation.
- Unlike myasthenia gravis, patients with myasthenic syndrome are sensitive to both depolarising and non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs.
- Reduced doses should be used if the disease is suspected. Maintain a high index of suspicion in those undergoing procedures related to diagnosis and management of carcinoma of the lung.

## Specific drugs of interest in myasthenia gravis

Drug	Interaction	Notes
Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking agents	Marked sensitivity	Avoid use if possible. Start with 10% normal dosage. Always monitor neuromuscular function. Use short- and intermediate-acting agents only
Suxamethonium	Resistance to depolarisation and delayed onset of action	No reported clinical ill effects using 1.5mg/kg. Delayed recovery in patients with induced esterase deficiency (plasmapheresis, anticholinesterase treatment). Follow with non-depolarising agents only when full recovery of neuromuscular function noted
Inhalational anaesthetics	All inhalational agents reduce neuromuscular transmission by up to 50%	Avoiding need for neuromuscular blocking agents
IV anaesthetics	No discernible clinical effect on neuromuscular transmission	Total IV anaesthesia with propofol may be useful if neuromuscular function is precarious
Local anaesthetics	Prolonged action and increased toxicity in ester-linked agents with anticholinesterase therapy and plasmapheresis. Exacerbation of myasthenia reported	Use minimum dosage required for adequate block. Monitor respiratory function as with general anaesthesia
Drugs dependent on esterases for elimination	Prolonged effect and increased toxicity if patient on plasmapheresis or (theoretically) anticholinesterase therapy	Suxamethonium, remifentanyl, mivacurium, ester-linked local anaesthetics, esmolol, etc.
Antibiotics	Neuromuscular blocking effects may become clinically important	Avoid aminoglycosides (e.g. gentamicin). Similar effects reported with erythromycin and ciprofloxacin
Miscellaneous	All the following agents have a reported effect on neuromuscular transmission: procainamide, $\beta$ -blockers (especially propranolol), phenytoin, magnesium	

**Table** Contd.

Drug	Dose	Notes
Pyridostigmine	Adult: 30–120mg at suitable intervals (usually 4–6-hourly). Do not exceed total daily dose of 720mg Child: <6yr initial dose 30mg; 6–12yr initial dose 60mg. Total daily dose 30–360mg Neonate: 5–10mg every 4hr, 30–60min before feeds	Useful duration of action. No parenteral preparation available. Less potent and slower onset than neostigmine
Neostigmine (oral)	Adult: 15–30mg PO at suitable intervals (up to 2-hourly). Total daily dose 75–300mg Child: <6yr initial dose 7.5mg PO; 6–12yr initial dose 15mg PO. Total daily dose 15–90mg Neonate: 1–5mg PO 4-hourly, 30min before feeds	More marked GI effects than pyridostigmine. Useful if parenteral therapy indicated but more likely to require antimuscarinic (atropine or glycopyrronium) cover if used by this route
Neostigmine (SC/IM)	Adult: 1–2.5mg at suitable intervals (usually 2–4-hourly). Total daily dose 5–20mg Child: 200–500µg 4-hourly Neonate: 50–250µg 4-hourly	IV usage increases side effects and has reduced duration of action. If IV usage is necessary, anticholinergic agents (atropine/glycopyrronium) should be administered
Edrophonium	Adult: 2mg by IV injection followed after 30s by 8mg if no adverse reaction Child: 20µg/kg IV followed by 80µg/kg after 30s if no adverse reaction	Use limited to diagnosis of myasthenia and differentiation of myasthenic and cholinergic crises
Distigmine	Adult: 5mg daily 30min before breakfast. Maximum 20mg daily	Very long acting with risk of cholinergic crisis due to dosage accumulation. Not recommended in small children or neonates

### Further reading

- Baraka A (1992). Anaesthesia and myasthenia gravis. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*, **39**, 476–486.
- Krucylak PE, Naunheim KS (1999). Preoperative preparation and anesthetic management of patients with myasthenia gravis. *Seminars in Thoracic and Cardiovascular Surgery*, **11**, 47–53.
- Mirakhur RK (2009) Sugammadex in clinical practice. *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 45–54.
- Wainwright AP, Brodrick PM (1987). Suxamethonium in myasthenia gravis. *Anaesthesia*, **42**, 950–957.

## Multiple sclerosis

An acquired disease of the central nervous system characterised by demyelinated plaques within the brain and spinal cord. The onset of symptoms usually occurs in early adulthood with 20–30% of cases following a benign course and 5% a rapid deterioration. It is most common in geographical clusters within Europe, North America, and New Zealand.

### General considerations

This is an incurable disease, but steroids and interferon have been associated with improved symptom-free intervals. Most patients suffer from associated depression. Baclofen and dantrolene are useful for painful muscle spasm.

- Symptoms range from isolated visual disturbance and nystagmus to limb weakness and paralysis.
- Respiratory failure due to both respiratory muscle failure and bulbar palsy may be a feature in end-stage disease.
- Symptoms are characterised by symptomatic episodes of variable severity with periods of remission for several years.
- Permanent weakness and symptoms develop in some patients, leading to increasingly severe disability.
- Demyelinated nerve fibres are sensitive to heat. A temperature rise of 0.5°C may cause a marked deterioration in symptoms.

### Preoperative assessment and investigation

- Preoperative evaluation must include a history of the type of symptoms suffered and a detailed neurological examination. This will allow comparison with postoperative state to elucidate any new lesions.
- Respiratory function may be affected. Bulbar palsy causes increased risk of aspiration and reduced airway reflexes in the postoperative period.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- General anaesthesia does not affect the course of multiple sclerosis.
- Regional anaesthesia does not affect neurological symptoms, but it may be medicolegally prudent to document discussion of relative risks before embarking on nerve or plexus blockade.
- Centroneuraxial blockade has been associated with recurrence of symptoms. However, this is reduced by use of minimal concentrations of local anaesthetic/opioid in combination.
- Epidural analgesia for labour is not contraindicated—keep LA concentration to a minimum. There is widespread use of spinal anaesthesia for Caesarean section in patients with multiple sclerosis in the UK.
- Suxamethonium is associated with a large efflux of potassium in debilitated patients and should be avoided.
- Response to non-depolarising drugs is normal, although caution and reduced dosages are indicated in those with severe disability.
- Careful cardiovascular monitoring is essential since autonomic instability leads to marked hypotensive responses to drugs and sensitivity to hypovolaemia.

- Temperature is important and should be monitored in all patients. Pyrexia must be avoided and should be treated aggressively with antipyretics (paracetamol 1g PR/PO), tepid sponging, and forced-air blowers. Hypothermia may delay recovery from anaesthesia.

### Further reading

Drake E, Drake M, Bird J, Russell R (2006). Obstetric regional blocks for women with multiple sclerosis: a survey of UK experience. *International Journal of Obstetric Anesthesia*, **15**, 115–123.



## **Guillain–Barré syndrome**

Guillain–Barré syndrome is an immune-mediated progressive demyelinating disorder characterised by acute or subacute proximal skeletal muscle paralysis. The syndrome is often preceded by limb paraesthesia/back pain and in more than half of affected patients by a viral illness. No single viral agent has been implicated.

More than 85% of patients achieve a full recovery, although this may take several months. The use of steroids in the management of this condition remains controversial.

- One-third of patients will require ventilatory support.
- The more rapid the onset of symptoms, the more likely the progression to respiratory failure. Impending respiratory failure may be evidenced by difficulty in swallowing and phonation due to pharyngeal muscle weakness.
- Inability to cough is a marker of severe respiratory impairment and usually indicates the need for intubation and ventilation.
- Autonomic dysfunction is common.

### **Conduct of anaesthesia**

- Respiratory support is likely to be necessary, both during surgery and in the postoperative period.
- Autonomic dysfunction leads to potential severe hypotension during induction of anaesthesia, initiation of positive pressure ventilation, and postural changes under anaesthesia or recovery.
- Hydration should be maintained with wide-bore IV access and pressor agents (ephedrine 3–6mg bolus IV) prepared prior to induction.
- Tachycardia due to surgical stimulus may be extreme and atropine may elicit a paradoxical bradycardia.
- Suxamethonium should be avoided due to potential catastrophic potassium efflux. The risk of hyperkalaemia may persist for several months after clinical recovery.
- Non-depolarising muscle relaxants may not be needed and should be used cautiously.
- Epidural analgesia is useful and may avoid the need for systemic opioid analgesia. Epidural opioids have been used to manage distressing paraesthesia in these patients.

## Motor neuron disease (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis)

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis is one of a family of motor neuron diseases. It is a degenerative disorder of upper and lower motor neurons in the spinal cord. It manifests initially with weakness, atrophy, and fasciculation of peripheral muscles (usually those of the hand) and progresses to axial and bulbar weakness.

- Progression is relentless, with death from respiratory failure usually occurring within 3yr of diagnosis.
- Patients remain mentally competent up to the point of terminal respiratory failure, leading to ethical and moral difficulty in the provision of long-term ventilation.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Bulbar palsy increases the risk of sputum retention and aspiration. Intubation may be necessary. Many patients with advanced disease will have a long-term tracheostomy for airway protection and episodes of mechanical ventilation.
- Respiratory support is likely to be necessary, both during surgery and in the postoperative period.
- Autonomic dysfunction leads to potentially severe hypotension during induction of anaesthesia, initiation of positive pressure ventilation, and postural changes under anaesthesia or recovery.
- Hydration should be maintained with wide-bore IV access if necessary and pressor agents (ephedrine/metaraminol) prepared prior to induction.
- Suxamethonium should be avoided due to potential catastrophic potassium efflux.
- Non-depolarising agents should be used in reduced dosage if necessary and their action monitored with a nerve stimulator.

## **Dystrophia myotonica**

Dystrophia myotonica (myotonic dystrophy, myotonia atrophica) is the most common of the dystonias (1:20 000), the others being myotonia congenita and paramyotonia. It is an autosomal dominant disease, presenting in the second or third decade of life.

### **General considerations**

- Persistent contraction of skeletal muscle follows stimulation. It is characterised by prefrontal balding and cataracts.
- The main clinical features are related to muscular atrophy, especially of facial, sternomastoid, and peripheral muscles.
- Progressive deterioration/atrophy of skeletal, cardiac, and smooth muscle over time leads to a deterioration in cardiorespiratory function and a (possibly severe) cardiomyopathy.
- Further respiratory deterioration occurs due to degeneration of the central nervous system, leading to central respiratory drive depression.
- Progressive bulbar palsy causes difficulty in swallowing/clearing secretions and an increased risk of aspiration.
- Degeneration of the cardiac conduction system causes dysrhythmia and atrioventricular block.
- Mitral valve prolapse occurs in ~20% of patients.
- There is mental deterioration after the second decade.
- Endocrine dysfunction may lead to diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism, adrenal insufficiency, and gonadal atrophy.
- Death usually occurs in the fifth or sixth decade.
- Pregnancy may aggravate the disease and Caesarean section is more common due to uterine muscle dysfunction.
- Therapy is supportive using antimyotonic medications such as procainamide, phenytoin, quinine, and mexiletine.

### **Preoperative assessment**

- Assess respiratory reserve, including signs of bulbar palsy (difficulty with cough or swallowing).
- Seek signs of cardiac failure and dysrhythmia.
- Gastric emptying may be delayed. Premedication with an antacid (ranitidine 150–300mg PO) or a prokinetic (metoclopramide 10mg PO) may be indicated.

### **Investigations**

- CXR, spirometry, and arterial blood gases if indicated by respiratory symptoms.
- ECG to exclude conduction defects and echocardiography for myocardial dysfunction.
- U&Es and glucose to exclude endocrine dysfunction.

### Conduct of anaesthesia

- Suxamethonium produces prolonged muscle contraction (and potassium release) and should be avoided. Contraction may make intubation, ventilation, and surgery difficult.
- Non-depolarising drugs are safe to use but do not always cause muscle relaxation. Use of a nerve stimulator may provoke muscle contraction, leading to misdiagnosis of tetany.
- Reversal with neostigmine may also provoke contraction. Non-depolarising agents with short action and spontaneous reversal (atracurium, mivacurium) are preferred.
- Reversal of rocuronium and vecuronium is possible without the use of neostigmine using sugammadex.
- Intubation and maintenance of anaesthesia can often be achieved without the use of any muscle relaxant.
- Invasive arterial monitoring is indicated for significant cardiovascular impairment.
- Even small doses of induction agents can produce profound cardio-respiratory depression.
- Bulbar palsy increases the need for intubation under general anaesthesia.
- Regional anaesthesia does not prevent muscle contraction. Troublesome spasm may be helped by infiltration of local anaesthetic directly into the affected muscle. Quinine (600mg IV) and phenytoin (3–5mg/kg IV slowly) have been effective in some cases.
- High concentrations of inhaled anaesthetics should be avoided because of their effect on myocardial contraction and conduction.
- Patient warmth must be maintained. Postoperative shivering may provoke myotonia.

### Postoperative care

- High-dependency care is indicated after anything but minor peripheral surgery. Discharge to low-dependency areas should be considered only if the patient is able to cough adequately and maintain oxygenation on air or simple supplemental oxygen.
- Analgesia is best provided, if possible, by regional or local block to avoid the systemic depressant effects of opioids.

### Myotonia congenita

This develops in infancy and early childhood and is characterised by pharyngeal muscle spasm leading to difficulty in swallowing. It improves with age and patients have a normal life expectancy.

### Paramyotonia

This is extremely rare. It is characterised by cold-induced contraction, only relieved by warming the affected muscle. Anaesthetic management is the same as for myotonic dystrophy. Patient warmth is paramount.

### Further reading

Imison AR (2001). Anaesthesia and myotonia—an Australian experience. *Anaesthesia and Intensive Care*, **29**, 34–37.

## Muscular dystrophy

The muscular dystrophies comprise a range of congenital muscular disorders characterised by progressive weakness of affected muscle groups. They can be classified according to inheritance:

- X-linked: Duchenne's, Becker's
- Autosomal recessive: limb-girdle, childhood, congenital
- Autosomal dominant: facioscapulohumeral, oculopharyngeal.

### Duchenne's muscular dystrophy

This is the most common and most severe form.

#### *General considerations*

- Sex-linked recessive trait, clinically apparent in males.
- Onset of symptoms of muscle weakness at 2–5yr.
- The patient is usually confined to a wheelchair by 12yr.
- Death usually by 25yr due to progressive cardiac failure or pneumonia.
- Cardiac: myocardial degeneration leading to heart failure and possible mitral valve prolapse. Evidence of heart failure is often apparent by 6yr (reduced R wave amplitude and wall motion abnormalities). Isolated degeneration of the left ventricle may lead to right outflow obstruction and right heart failure.
- Respiratory: progressive respiratory muscle weakness, leading to a restrictive ventilation pattern, inadequate cough, and eventual respiratory infection and failure.
- Possible vascular smooth muscle dysfunction, leading to increased bleeding during surgery.
- Associated progressive and severe kyphoscoliosis.
- Disease progression may be tracked by serum creatinine kinase levels. These are elevated early in the disease but reduce to below normal as muscles atrophy.

Other muscular dystrophies (Becker's, facioscapulohumeral, and limb-girdle dystrophy) are less severe than Duchenne's dystrophy, with onset at a later age and slower progression of the disease. Isolated ocular dystrophy is associated with a normal lifespan.

#### *Preoperative assessment and investigations*

- Patients are usually under the care of specialist paediatricians.
- CXR, spirometry, and blood gases may be indicated by respiratory symptoms.
- Echocardiography is mandatory if the patient is wheelchair bound—myocardial and valve function can be assessed.
- Reduced gut muscle tone leads to delayed gastric emptying and increased risk of aspiration.

**Conduct of anaesthesia**

- Antacid premedication ( $H_2$  receptor blocker or proton pump inhibitor) with a prokinetic such as metoclopramide may be useful to reduce risk of aspiration.
- An antisialogogue such as glycopyrronium may be needed if secretions are a problem.
- Careful IV induction of anaesthesia with balanced opioid/induction agent.
- Potent inhalational anaesthetics should be used cautiously in these patients because of the risk of myocardial depression.
- Suxamethonium should be avoided because of potassium efflux and potential cardiac arrest.
- Non-depolarising neuromuscular blockers are safe, although reduced doses are required. Nerve stimulator monitoring should be used.
- Respiratory depressant effects of all anaesthetic drugs are enhanced and postoperative respiratory function should be monitored carefully. Those with pre-existing sputum retention and inadequate cough are at high risk of postoperative respiratory failure and may need prolonged ventilatory support.
- Regional analgesia is useful to avoid opioid use and potential respiratory depression after painful surgery. Caudal epidural may be technically easier to perform than lumbar epidural in those with kyphoscoliosis.

**Further reading**

Almenrader N (2006). Spinal surgery in children with non-idiopathic scoliosis: is there a need for routine post operative ventilation? *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **97**, 851–857.

## **Malignant hyperthermia**

### **Aetiology**

- Malignant hyperthermia (MH) is a pharmacogenetic disease of skeletal muscle induced by exposure to all potent volatile anaesthetic agents and the depolarising muscle relaxant suxamethonium.
- It is inherited as an autosomal dominant condition and caused by loss of normal  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  homeostasis at some point along the excitation–contraction coupling process on exposure to triggering agents. Any defect along this complex process could result in the clinical features of MH and may explain why differing chemical agents trigger MH and the heterogeneity seen in DNA studies.
- The most likely site is the triadic junction between the T tubules, involving the voltage sensor of the dihydropyridine receptor (DHPR), and the ryanodine receptor, a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  efflux channel on the sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR).
- About 70% of MH families are linked to the RYR1 gene located on chromosome 19q. Over 200 mutations have been identified in RYR1 but only 29 have evidence of causality. Other loci have been identified (e.g. chromosomes 1, 3, and 7) but only for small numbers of families.

### **Epidemiology**

- Incidence is about 1:10 000–15 000 but difficult to estimate. All races are affected.
- Mortality rates have fallen dramatically from 70–80% to 2–3% due to increased awareness, improved monitoring standards, and the availability of dantrolene.
- Commonly seen in young adults, males > females, but this may be a lifestyle rather than a true sex difference.
- Used to be more frequent in minor operations, e.g. dental/ENT, due to anaesthetic technique, i.e. when suxamethonium and vapour were commonly used.
- Previous uneventful anaesthesia with triggering agents does not preclude MH; 75% of MH probands (index cases) have had previous anaesthesia prior to their MH crisis.
- Annual UK incidence of confirmed MH cases is falling (currently ~10–15/yr) due to changes in anaesthetic techniques, e.g. decreased use of suxamethonium, increased use of TIVA and local anaesthesia. However, there is an increased referral rate due to increased index of suspicion.

### **Clinical presentation**

- The clinical diagnosis can be difficult as the presentation of MH varies considerably and no one sign is unique to MH. It can be a florid dramatic life-threatening event or have an insidious onset. Rarely it can develop 2–3d postoperatively with massive myoglobinuria and/or renal failure due to severe rhabdomyolysis.

## Clinical signs

- Signs of increased metabolism: tachycardia, dysrhythmias, increased  $\text{CO}_2$  production, metabolic acidosis, pyrexia, DIC. Often called a 'metabolic storm'. Pyrexia develops as a consequence of metabolic stimulation, so it occurs after other signs. A pyrexia developing after recovery from normal anaesthesia is not indicative of MH.
- Muscle signs: masseter spasm after suxamethonium, generalised muscle rigidity, hyperkalaemia, high CK, myoglobinuria, renal failure.
- The two most important early signs are unexplained, unexpected, increasing heart rate and  $\text{ETCO}_2$ .

## Masseter muscle spasm

- Masseter muscle spasm (MMS) after suxamethonium defined as impeding intubation and persisting for ~2min. 30% of patients presenting with MMS alone, even when anaesthesia has proceeded uneventfully, prove to be MH susceptible.
- If possible abandon surgery; if not convert to 'MH safe' technique (volatile free); allow approximately 15min to ensure that the patient is stabilised. Monitor  $\text{ETCO}_2$  and temperature, and consider an arterial line.
- Additional MH signs increase the likelihood of MH significantly: 50–60% if metabolic signs present, 70–80% if muscle signs present.
- Investigations that are particularly useful are the initial and 24hr creatine kinase (CK) and examination of the first voided specimen for myoglobinuria, indicating evidence of muscle damage.
- Prolonged severe muscle stiffness greatly in excess of the 'normal scolone pains' may occur.
- MMS may be the first indication of a previously unsuspected muscle disease, particularly the myotonic conditions. Perform resting CK and EMG. Consider neurological opinion.

## Treatment of a crisis

See p946.

- 'Guidelines for the treatment of an MH crisis' is available from the AAGBI for display in theatres.

## After treating a suspected MH crisis

- If MH was suspected clinically refer the patient to an MH unit with all the relevant clinical details/anaesthetic chart/laboratory results. The timing of various events is important.
- In the meantime warn the patient and family of the potential implications of MH.
- MH is not a diagnosis to be made lightly without adequate follow-up.
- Unless MH can be clearly excluded on clinical grounds the patient/family will be offered screening to confirm or refute the clinical diagnosis.
- The proband is always screened even if the clinical reaction is undoubted. If the proband cannot be screened (e.g. died or too young) the most appropriate relative is screened (e.g. parents of a young child).



**Diagnosis of MH susceptibility**

- Muscle biopsy using the *in vitro* contracture test (IVCT) remains the gold standard of MH diagnosis. This is an open invasive procedure usually performed under an ultrasound-guided femoral nerve block to remove 8–10 muscle specimens ~3–4cm long from the vastus medialis muscle. As living samples are used, the patient has to travel to the MH centre.
- The IVCT follows a European MH Group (EMHG) protocol exposing muscle tissue to halothane and separately to caffeine under preset conditions in a dedicated laboratory.
- The diagnosis is considered positive if the muscle contracts in response to halothane and/or caffeine.
- There is a potential for 'false positive' MH diagnoses in order to ensure the accuracy of the MH negative diagnosis. The combined EMHG data indicate a specificity of 93.6% and sensitivity of 99%.
- If the proband is confirmed as MH susceptible by IVCT, they are screened for the 29 RYR1 mutations currently used for diagnostic purposes by the EMHG for DNA testing of MH.
- If a mutation is identified in the proband, family members can be offered an initial DNA blood test for the familial mutation; if a mutation carrier, they are classified as MH susceptible without a muscle biopsy; if mutation negative, a confirmatory biopsy is required for reasons of safety because MH is complex with a small incidence (~5–10%) of discordant results within families.
- If a mutation is not identified in the proband, family members are offered IVCT only.
- Family screening is organised on the basis of the autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance, so relatives with a 50% risk are screened first, i.e. parents, siblings, and children; the latter are not screened until aged 10–12yr.
- The purpose of family screening is to identify the small number of individuals in a family who are susceptible to MH rather than labelling the whole family. Screening will involve only a small proportion of the family.
- Once identified as MH susceptible the MH unit can provide written information about MH, warning cards/discs, and information about the British MH Association (BMHA), a patient support charity.
- MH centres should co-ordinate family screening to ensure the appropriate method of testing is offered.

**Anaesthesia for known or suspected MH-susceptible patients**

- MH patients should not be denied necessary surgery solely because of MH.
- Preoperative questioning about personal and family anaesthetic history is essential to identify potential MH patients.
- It is not absolutely essential to screen suspected cases prior to surgery, providing careful individual assessment has been made of the risks involved.
- An MH 'safe' technique, i.e. avoiding suxamethonium and all anaesthetic volatile agents, may not pose any additional risk in many circumstances,

but will do so in certain situations, e.g. when the preferred technique would have necessitated use of these agents.

- All local anaesthetic agents are safe.
- Dantrolene is not required prophylactically because of its side effects, but should be readily available.
- Standard monitoring is adequate, i.e. ECG, NIBP, SaO<sub>2</sub>, ET/CO<sub>2</sub>. A baseline core temperature should be established before the procedure and monitored ~4hr postoperatively.
- If no volatile-free machine is available, remove all vaporisers and circuitry from the machine and ventilator, including soda lime, and purge with oxygen for 20–30min. Use new circuits/soda lime/LMAs/ETT, etc.
- The MH unit can be contacted for further advice if required.

### **Anaesthesia for a patient with a known or suspected family history of MH**

- Establish the family history and the relationship of your patient to the named proband or other tested family members. The MH centre will then be able to advise about the risk to your patient and need for further investigation.
- If anaesthesia is urgent and more details unavailable, proceed as for an MH-susceptible patient.

### **Suspicious previous anaesthetic history**

- Unexplained/unexpected cardiac arrest/death during anaesthesia carries a 50% risk of MH.
- History of postoperative myoglobinuria (red/black urine).
- Renal failure in otherwise healthy patient.
- Postoperative pyrexia. Establish timing of the pyrexia in relation to surgery. If intraoperative/immediate recovery period was uneventful with the pyrexia developing later on the ward, MH is not implicated. If timing is unclear, the likelihood of MH is low but cannot be excluded.
- Take a thorough history of the event. If possible obtain old records and seek further advice from the MH centre. If surgery is urgent proceed as if MH susceptible and resolve problem later.

### **Obstetric patients**

- Baby of susceptible parent:
  - Has 50% chance of being affected if one parent is MH susceptible, so should be treated as potentially MH.
- Mother MH susceptible:
  - Plans for any emergency situation should be prepared with obstetric anaesthetist prior to EDD.
  - It is essential to anticipate airway problems and consider other options, e.g. awake intubation.
  - Regional techniques preferred.
  - For general anaesthesia use an MH-safe technique, substituting suxamethonium with a rapid-onset non-depolarising muscle relaxant, e.g. rocuronium, and maintaining anaesthesia with a propofol infusion.
  - Ephedrine, oxytocin, and ergometrine can be used.

- Father MH susceptible (fetus at risk)
  - Avoid MH-triggering agents which cross the placenta, i.e. inhalational agents, until after delivery of the baby.
  - Suxamethonium, being highly charged, can be used as it does not cross the placenta to any great extent.

### Associated conditions

- **Central core disease (CCD)** is a non-progressive inherited condition causing peripheral muscle weakness and occasionally musculoskeletal and cardiac problems. It is the only condition known to be associated with MH, but this is not invariable. CCD patients should be treated as potentially MH susceptible but offered screening because of the discordant association. Other muscle diseases are not thought to be related to MH but clearly cause anaesthetic problems in their own right.
- **Heat stroke and King–Denborough syndrome** remain controversial (see p314).
- **Neuroleptic malignant syndrome** and sudden infant death syndrome are not associated with MH (see p287).

### Anaesthesia for the MH-susceptible patient

MH 'triggering' agents	Avoid suxamethonium and all anaesthetic vapours/volatiles
MH 'safe' agents	All induction agents including ketamine, all analgesics, all non-depolarising agents, all local anaesthetics
	Atropine/glycopyrronium/neostigmine
	Ephedrine and other vasopressors
	Metoclopramide/droperidol
	Nitrous oxide, benzodiazepines
Monitoring	ECG, NIBP, ETCO <sub>2</sub> , core temperature
	Check temp 2hr preop to establish baseline and 4–6hr postop
Anaesthetic equipment	If no vapour-free machine is available, remove the vaporisers and blow both the anaesthetic machine and the ventilator with oxygen for 20–30min. Use fresh clean tubing/masks/ET tubes/soda lime etc. If possible select a ventilator with little inner tubing, e.g. Nuffield Penlon
Dantrolene	This is not required prophylactically, as no reaction should occur. It is unpleasant for the patient and markedly prolongs the action of non-depolarising muscle relaxants. However, it should be readily available

### MH centres and the British MH Association (BMHA)

- There is only one MH centre in the UK: Dr P.J. Halsall, MH Investigation Unit, Clinical Sciences Building, St James's University Hospital, Leeds LS9 7TF. Tel: 0113 2065274; Fax: 0113 2064140; Hotline: 07947 609601 (usually available for medical emergencies only).
- The British MH Association (BMHA) is a charitable patient support group which provides the 'hotline', warning cards/discs, translations for travel abroad, and newsletters, as well as fundraising for research. Secretary: Mrs A. Winks, 11 Gorse Close, Newthorpe, Nottingham NG16 2BZ. Tel: 01773 717901.
- There are 16 MH centres in Europe. Contact the European MH Group Secretary Dr P.J. Halsall (address above) for further details or see the EMHG website: <http://www.emhg.org>.
- For the USA and Canada contact MHAUS, 39 East State St, PO Box 1069, Sherburne, NY 13460, USA. Tel: in North America, 1-800-MH-Hyper; outside North America, 1-315-464-7079; <http://www.mhaus.org>. Hotline: 1-800-98-MHAUS.
- For Australia contact Dr Neil Street, Anaesthetic Dept, The New Children's Hospital, Westmead, NSW, PO Box 3515, Parramatta 2124. Tel: (02) 9845 0000; Fax: (02) 9845 3489.
- For New Zealand contact Dr Neil Pollock, Anaesthetic Dept, Palmerston North Hospital, Mid Central Health, Palmerston North. Tel: (06) 3569169; Fax: (06) 3508566.

### Further reading

- Davis PJ, Brandon BW (2009). Editorial. The Association of Malignant Hyperthermia and Unusual Disease: when you're hot you're hot, or maybe not. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **109**, 1001–1003.
- Ellis FR, Halsall PJ, Christian AS (1990). Clinical presentation of suspected malignant hyperthermia during anaesthesia in 402 probands. *Anaesthesia*, **45**, 838–841.
- AAGBI. *Guidelines for the Treatment of an MH Crisis*. London: Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland. [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).
- Halsall PJ, Hopkins PM (2003). Inherited disease and anaesthesia. In: Healy TEJ, Knight PR (eds), *A Practice of Anaesthesia*, 7th edn. London: Arnold, 363–376.
- MacLennan DH, Phillips MS (1992). Malignant hyperthermia. *Science*, **256**, 789–794.
- Urwyler A, Deufel T, McCarthy TV, West SP for the European MH Group (2001). Guidelines for the molecular genetic testing of susceptibility to malignant hyperthermia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **86**, 283–287.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Psychiatric disorders and drugs

## Aidan O'Donnell

Psychiatric disorders 278

Antidepressant drugs 282

Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) 284

Antipsychotic drugs and lithium 286

Sedation of agitated patients on the ward 288

Anaesthesia for drug-misusing patients 290

Anaesthesia for electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) 292

See also:

The opioid-dependent patient 1108

The patient with a substance abuse disorder 1110

## Psychiatric disorders

- Some form of psychiatric illness is present in about 10% of the UK population at any time. The commonest psychiatric disorder is depression. Most psychiatric patients are well controlled most of the time. Many patients are on long-term drug therapy which should be continued perioperatively where possible.
- Major psychiatric illness affects about 1% of the population. It carries a significant risk of self-harm or suicide. Alcohol and drug misuse is common among the psychiatric population. The stress of hospitalisation for surgery may exacerbate coexisting psychiatric problems.

The anaesthetic implications of psychiatric illness are as follows:

- Where the capacity of the patient to give consent is impaired (e.g. dementia, mania, psychosis).
- Where the psychiatric illness itself also causes physical illness (e.g. anorexia nervosa).
- Where the psychiatric medication may interact with anaesthetic drugs and techniques (e.g. antidepressants).

### Consent

Most patients can give consent normally (see p18). In England and Wales, the Mental Capacity Act (2005) and in Scotland the Adults with Incapacity Act (2000) clarify capacity and consent issues. Patients who are detained under the Mental Health Act (1983) may only be compelled to accept psychiatric treatment under the terms of the Act.

### Anxiety

Anxiety in the anaesthetic room is extremely common and usually best managed with explanation, reassurance, oral premedication, or IV sedation (e.g. midazolam 2mg IV) titrated to effect. Anxiety disorder may be acute or chronic (symptoms are similar) or occur as part of other disorders (e.g. depression). Extreme agitation may make cannulation difficult. Patients may hyperventilate and have high levels of circulating catecholamines.

### Dementia

Dementia refers to irreversible global deterioration in higher mental functioning. Fifty percent of cases are due to Alzheimer's disease.

- Prevalence: 1% aged 65–74 rising to 10% aged >75, and 25% aged >85yr. Slightly more common in women.
- Mean life expectancy is ~7yr from diagnosis.
- Patients may be unable to give informed consent: an incapacity form should be completed by the consultant responsible.
- Patients are usually confused and may be agitated (occasionally violent) or profoundly withdrawn.
- Patients with early or mild dementia are increasingly being treated with antidementia drugs. Donepezil, rivastigmine, and galantamine are all anticholinesterases, which may prolong the action of suxamethonium

and partially antagonise the effects of non-depolarising neuromuscular-blocking drugs.

- Regional anaesthesia may still be desirable if significant comorbidity: ketamine (e.g. 5–20mg IV) may facilitate this and preserves airway reflexes and BP (titrate to effect). (Midazolam may cause disinhibition, which may paradoxically worsen agitation.)
- Patients with dementia may be at increased risk of post-operative cognitive dysfunction (POCD).

### **Anorexia nervosa<sup>1,2,3</sup>**

Anorexia nervosa is a chronic, severe, multisystem disorder which carries the highest morbidity and mortality rate of any psychiatric disorder. Up to 20% of patients may die prematurely.

- Anorexia (abnormal body image with deliberate weight loss through food restriction) is present in 0.3% of young women, and is more common in teenagers. Bulimia nervosa (uncontrolled binge eating and purging) is more common (~1%). In both disorders patients are about 90% female.
- Typically anorexics are 25% below their ideal weight (bulimics may be normal or even overweight). A diagnostic criterion is BMI <17.5.
- Many patients have psychiatric comorbidity such as depression, anxiety, and obsessive-compulsive disorder.
- Misuse of laxatives, emetics, diuretics, and other substances to increase weight loss is common. Patients are evasive about their behaviour. A well-documented history (e.g. from the GP) is valuable.
- Clinical features are those of malnutrition and starvation: cachexia, hair loss, amenorrhoea, and osteoporosis. Immunocompetence is usually preserved until >50% of normal body weight is lost. Endocrine derangements cause amenorrhoea and impaired thyroid function and glycaemic control, and may mimic panhypopituitarism.
- CVS: significant bradycardia and hypotension are common (e.g. systolic BP <100mmHg). ECG changes may be present in up to 80% of patients (AV block; ST depression; T wave inversion and prolonged QT (associated with significant risk of sudden death)). Arrhythmias are common. Myocardial impairment may occur. Patients are at risk of cardiac failure if overfilled intraoperatively.
- RS: prolonged starvation causes loss of lung elasticity. Airway pressures may be high.
- Renal: GFR is reduced. Two-thirds of patients have proteinuria. Excessive losses of Na<sup>+</sup>, K<sup>+</sup>, Cl<sup>-</sup>, and H<sup>+</sup> from the stomach result in hypochloraemic metabolic alkalosis and hypokalaemia. Severe hypokalaemia is uncommon but should be corrected with caution preoperatively. Hypocalcaemia may accompany hypokalaemia.
- GI: anorexics and bulimics may have paradoxically delayed gastric emptying. Fasting is not a reliable way of ensuring an empty stomach.



- Anaesthetic management: patients need more laboratory tests than their age alone would suggest. Check FBC, U&Es, LFTs, glucose,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ,  $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ , phosphate, and ECG. Rehydrate patient preoperatively and correct any abnormal electrolyte levels, but refeeding is dangerous and should not be attempted. Rapid sequence induction is recommended. Hypokalaemia and hypocalcaemia may potentiate neuromuscular blockade. Patients are prone to hypothermia. Patients should be positioned carefully because of their risks of pressure necrosis and nerve palsies.
- Hypoalbuminaemia may cause elevated levels of unbound drugs in the plasma; and drug metabolism and elimination may be slowed. Avoid hyperventilation (this exacerbates hypokalaemia). Avoid large infusions, which may precipitate pulmonary oedema.
- Reversal of neuromuscular blockade with neostigmine may provoke rhythm instability. Always use a nerve stimulator and consider allowing the block to wear off spontaneously.

### **Alcohol<sup>4</sup>**

Alcohol use is common and causes problems as a result of both acute intoxication and the health effects of chronic consumption. Ask all adults about alcohol consumption, although their answers may be unreliable.

- Acute alcohol intoxication causes problems with consent. Non-emergency surgery should be avoided. If surgery is unavoidable, ensure adequate rehydration with careful attention to electrolyte and glucose disturbances. Give IV B-vitamins (e.g. Pabrinex® slow IV bd for 7d).
- Acute intoxication may cause vomiting, hypoglycaemia, and delayed gastric emptying. Rapid sequence induction is advised.
- Patients with acute alcohol ingestion are partially anaesthetised and reduced concentrations of volatile agents may be required.
- Chronic alcohol excess induces tolerance to general anaesthetics and is associated with a two- to five-fold increase in postoperative complications.
- Alcoholic cardiomyopathy is characterised by a dilated, hypokinetic LV and decreased EF. Patients may present with congestive cardiac failure and oedema, exacerbated by low serum albumin. Consider echocardiogram.
- Alcoholic liver disease: the earliest form is reversible fatty liver progressing to alcoholic hepatitis (abdominal pain, weight loss, jaundice, fever) and later cirrhosis (jaundice, ascites, portal hypertension, hepatic failure). Correct clotting abnormalities preoperatively. Transfuse appropriately if required. Patients with liver failure require intensive care if surgery is planned (see also p144).
- Ketoacidosis may present after binge drinking in association with vomiting and fasting. Blood alcohol levels may already have normalised.
- Anticipate alcohol withdrawal symptoms. Most patients can tolerate 24–48h abstinence perioperatively. Do not complicate management by attempting alcohol withdrawal perioperatively.

- Seizures are most commonly seen 6–48h after cessation of drinking, typically tonic-clonic. Several fits over a period of a few days are common. Low  $K^+$  and  $Mg^{2+}$  predispose. Seizures may be preceded by disorientation and agitation (*delirium tremens*). Treat with benzodiazepines, e.g. diazepam 10mg IV, repeated as required.

- 1 Seller CA, Ravalia A (2003). Anaesthetic implications of anorexia nervosa. *Anaesthesia*, **58**, 437–443.
- 2 Denner AM, Townley SA (2009). Anorexia nervosa: perioperative implications. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*, **9**, 61–64.
- 3 Morris J, Twaddle S (2007). Anorexia nervosa. *British Medical Journal*, **334**, 894–898.
- 4 Chapman R, Plaat F (2009). Alcohol and anaesthesia. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*, **9**, 10–13.

## Antidepressant drugs

The aetiology of depression is complex and multifactorial. The monoamine theory of depression postulates that depression is caused by functional deficiency of serotonin and noradrenaline in the CNS. Manipulation of CNS monoamines remains the most successful pharmacological approach to depression. Several families of drugs have this effect.

### Tricyclic antidepressants (TCA)

Formerly the mainstay of treatment of depressive illness, TCAs have largely been superseded by SSRIs (fewer side effects and safer in overdose). They may be used in the treatment of other problems, e.g. chronic pain. They need to be given for 2–4 wk to become effective.

- TCAs block reuptake of monoamines (e.g. serotonin, noradrenaline) from the synaptic cleft by competing for a transport protein.
- Most have atropine-like side effects: dry mouth, blurred vision, urinary retention, and constipation. Other common side effects are sedation and postural hypotension.
- They are strongly bound to plasma proteins, and their effects may be enhanced by competing drugs (e.g. aspirin, warfarin, digoxin).
- In overdose, TCAs are extremely toxic, producing agitation, delirium, respiratory depression, and coma. Cardiac arrhythmias with prolongation of the QT interval are frequent. There is no specific antidote and treatment is supportive, although intensive care may be required. Alkalinisation of plasma reduces the amount of free drug.
- It is not necessary (and may be harmful) to withdraw TCAs perioperatively.
- Increased sensitivity to catecholamines may result in hypertension and arrhythmias following administration of sympathomimetic drugs (adrenaline, noradrenaline). Indirect sympathomimetics (e.g. ephedrine, metaraminol) should be avoided (see p284).
- Ventricular arrhythmias may occur with high concentrations of volatile agents, especially halothane.
- TCAs may delay gastric emptying.
- Anticholinergic drugs (e.g. atropine) which cross the blood–brain barrier may precipitate postoperative confusion.
- Tramadol increases risk of CNS toxicity.

### St John's wort (*Hypericum perforatum*)<sup>1</sup>

- Extract of the plant contains several alkaloids which are similar in structure to tricyclic antidepressant drugs.
- Useful and safe as monotherapy in mild depressive illness.
- May induce certain cytochrome P450 enzymes, thereby enhancing the metabolism of many drugs, including warfarin, digoxin, theophylline, ciclosporin, tacrolimus, HIV protease inhibitors, and oral contraceptive drugs.
- May interact with other drugs, e.g. SSRIs, to cause serotonin syndrome (see p283).

### Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)

SSRIs are the most commonly prescribed antidepressants worldwide, and are increasingly being prescribed for other conditions (e.g. panic disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder). They are highly specific inhibitors of pre-synaptic reuptake of serotonin from the synaptic cleft and are much less toxic in overdose than TCAs.

- Common side effects affect the GI tract (nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, upper GI bleeding) and the CNS (insomnia, agitation, tremor, headache, sexual dysfunction). Cardiovascular side effects are rare (occasional reports of bradycardia).
- In patients with pre-existing ischaemic heart disease, SSRIs may precipitate coronary vasoconstriction.
- SIADH has been described with the use of SSRIs, especially in the elderly, and may present with hyponatraemia (p186).
- High doses of SSRIs may impair platelet aggregation, and cause prolonged bleeding times.
- **Serotonin syndrome**<sup>2,3</sup>, is a toxic crisis resulting from increased synaptic levels of serotonin in the brainstem and spinal cord due to overdose of SSRIs, or a combination of other drugs affecting serotonin (especially TCAs, MAOIs, pethidine, and tramadol). It presents as alteration in behaviour (agitation, confusion), motor activity (rigidity, myoclonus, hyperreflexia), and autonomic instability (pyrexia, tachycardia, diarrhoea, unstable BP). It may progress to seizures, oculogyric crises, DIC, rhabdomyolysis, myoglobinuria, acute renal failure, arrhythmia, coma, and death. It may mimic the neuroleptic malignant syndrome (p287). The patient is likely to require intensive care. Treatment is mainly supportive, and the episode usually lasts <24hr.
- SSRIs inhibit cytochrome P450 enzymes, which may prolong or enhance the activity of other drugs, notably warfarin, theophylline, phenytoin, carbamazepine, tolbutamide, benzodiazepines (diazepam, midazolam), type 1c antiarrhythmics (e.g. flecainide), tricyclic antidepressants, and some NSAIDs.

### Anaesthesia for patients on SSRI

- Abrupt withdrawal of SSRIs can precipitate a withdrawal syndrome.
- Check urea and electrolytes to exclude hyponatraemia, especially in the elderly.
- A coagulation screen should be assessed and corrected if necessary.
- Benzodiazepines should be used cautiously as their effects may be prolonged.
- Pethidine, tramadol, pentazocine, and dextromethorphan should be avoided (see above).

1 Mills E, Montori VM, Wu P, et al. (2004). Interaction of St John's wort with conventional drugs: systematic review of clinical trials. *British Medical Journal*, **329**, 27–30.

2 Chinniah S, French JLH, Levy D (2008). Serotonin and anaesthesia. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*, **8**(2), 43–45.

3 Jones D, Story OA (2005). Serotonin syndrome and the anaesthetist. *Anaesthesia and Intensive Care*, **33**, 181–187.

## Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)<sup>1</sup>

MAOIs are third-line antidepressants, used in refractory cases. The enzyme monoamine oxidase is present on mitochondrial membranes, where it deaminates (thereby inactivating) monoamine neurotransmitters in the cytoplasm. It has two isoenzymes, A and B.

- MAOA preferentially metabolises serotonin, noradrenaline, and adrenaline, and predominates in the CNS. MAOB preferentially metabolises non-polar aromatic amines such as phenylethylamine and methylhistamine. It predominates in the liver, lungs, and non-neural cells; 75% of all MAO activity is due to MAOB.
- Tyramine (a monoamine found in cheese and other foods) and dopamine are substrates for both A and B.
- **Indirect sympathomimetics**, which are metabolised by MAO, may have greatly exaggerated effects. They may displace noradrenaline from neurotransmitter vesicles in such high amounts that a fatal hypertensive crisis may be precipitated.
- Older drugs (**tranylcypromine, phenelzine, isocarboxazid**) bind covalently to the MAO enzyme and are non-selective for A and B. Regeneration of new enzyme takes 2–3wk.
- Newer drugs are reversible, and selective for MAOA: known as reversible inhibitors of monoamine oxidase A (RIMA). **Moclobemide** is the only RIMA available in the UK.
- **Linezolid** (antibacterial used against MRSA) is a non-selective but reversible MAOI: treat patients as if on a classical MAOI.
- **Selegiline** is an MAOB inhibitor used in Parkinson's disease.
- Methylene blue (methylthioninium chloride) has MAOI properties.

### Preoperative withdrawal

- If the patient is taking tranylcypromine, phenelzine, or isocarboxazid, ideally it must be stopped at least 2wk prior to surgery to be of benefit. This may provoke drastic relapses in symptoms and should not be done without consultation with a senior psychiatrist. If stopped for <2wk patients should be considered as still on MAOI.
- If the patient is taking moclobemide, it can safely be omitted for 24hr preoperatively and restarted afterward.
- It is not necessary to stop selegiline if taken in doses of <10mg/d. At this dose there is no reaction with sympathomimetics. Pethidine, however, should still be avoided.

### Anaesthesia for a patient on MAOI

- General anaesthesia can be provided with caution to patients who are taking an MAOI.
- The most dangerous interactions are with **indirect sympathomimetics** and some opioids (especially **pethidine**, which is absolutely contraindicated with any MAOI).
- **Indirect sympathomimetics** (ephedrine, metaraminol, amphetamine, cocaine, tyramine), which release stored noradrenaline from vesicles, may precipitate potentially fatal hypertensive crises and are absolutely contraindicated with any MAOI.

- **Direct sympathomimetics** (e.g. noradrenaline, adrenaline, phenylephrine, methoxamine, dopamine, dobutamine, isoprenaline) may have an exaggerated effect and should be used with caution.
- Treat hypotension initially with IV fluid, then cautious doses of phenylephrine (e.g. 10–20 µg).
- Opioid drugs which have serotonergic properties (including **pethidine** and dextromethorphan) may precipitate serotonin syndrome (p283).
- MAOIs can inhibit hepatic microsomal enzymes, prolonging the action of all opioids and enhancing their effect. This can be treated with naloxone.
- Phenelzine decreases plasma cholinesterase levels and prolongs the action of suxamethonium. This is specific to phenelzine and is not typical of MAOIs.
- Pancuronium releases stored noradrenaline and should be avoided.
- Safe drugs: induction agents propofol, thiopental, and etomidate; non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking drugs (except pancuronium); volatile agents and nitrous oxide; NSAIDs; benzodiazepines.
- Local anaesthetic drugs (except cocaine) are safe (caution if contain adrenaline). Axial and regional blocks are ideal; however, hypotension should be treated cautiously. Felypressin is a satisfactory alternative to adrenaline if a vasoconstrictor is required.
- Anticholinergic drugs (atropine, glycopyrronium) are safe.
- Morphine is the opioid of choice and should be titrated cautiously to effect. However, there is no direct evidence of problems with fentanyl, alfentanil, remifentanil, or sufentanil.

#### Drug interactions with MAOIs

Drugs to be avoided	Reason	Suitable alternative
Pethidine, tramadol, dextromethorphan	Risk of serotonin syndrome	Morphine, fentanyl
Ephedrine, metaraminol, cocaine	Hypertensive crises	Phenylephrine, noradrenaline
Pancuronium	Releases stored noradrenaline	Vecuronium, atracurium
Suxamethonium	Phenelzine only (decreased cholinesterase activity)	Mivacurium, rocuronium

1 Luck JF, Wildsmith JAW, Christmas DMB (2003). Monoamine oxidase inhibitors and anaesthesia. *Royal College of Anaesthetists Bulletin*, **21**, 1029–1034.

## Antipsychotic drugs and lithium

### Antipsychotic drugs

- Antipsychotic drugs (formerly known as major tranquillisers or neuroleptics) include haloperidol, chlorpromazine, olanzapine, and risperidone, and are used in the treatment of schizophrenia and similar disorders. Their main action is antagonism at CNS dopamine ( $D_2$ ) receptors.
- Most antagonise other receptors, including histamine ( $H_1$ ), serotonin ( $5HT_2$ ), acetylcholine (muscarinic), and  $\alpha$ -adrenergic receptors.
- Main side effects include sedation, extrapyramidal motor disturbances, and the development of tardive dyskinesia with chronic use. Other side effects include gynaecomastia, weight gain, postural hypotension, antimuscarinic effects, obstructive jaundice (uncommon), and agranulocytosis (rare but severe). Most are powerful antiemetics.
- Many drugs prolong the QT interval, especially when combined with other drugs which may do the same (e.g. antidepressants).
- Clozapine is associated with a risk of agranulocytosis.
- **Neuroleptic malignant syndrome**<sup>1</sup> is a rare idiosyncratic reaction to antipsychotic drugs which resembles malignant hyperthermia (p270). Typical patients are young males. Features include hyperthermia, tachycardia, extrapyramidal dysfunction (rigidity, dystonia), and autonomic dysfunction (sweating, labile BP, salivation, urinary incontinence). CK and WCC are raised. Patients should be treated in ICU. Mortality is ~20%.
- Abrupt withdrawal of antipsychotic medication is dangerous.
- Antipsychotic drugs potentiate sedative and hypotensive effects of anaesthetic agents (including opioids).

### Lithium

- Lithium is an inorganic ion used as a mood stabiliser in the treatment of bipolar affective disorder. It has a low therapeutic ratio, with optimal plasma concentration 0.4–1.0mmol/l.
- Lithium mimics sodium in excitable tissues, being able to permeate voltage-gated ion channels, and accumulates inside cells, causing slight loss of intracellular potassium and partial depolarisation.
- Chronic use causes weight gain, renal impairment, and hypothyroidism.
- Lithium toxicity occurs at >1.5mmol/l and is exacerbated by hyponatraemia, diuretic therapy, and renal disease. Features include lethargy/restlessness, nausea/vomiting, thirst, tremor, polyuria, renal failure, ataxia, convulsions, coma, and death. Haemodialysis is effective.
- Lithium potentiates both depolarising and non-depolarising neuromuscular blockade: nerve stimulator monitoring should be used.
- Lithium may cause T wave flattening or inversion, but clinically important cardiovascular effects are rare.
- NSAIDs should be used with caution (risk of exacerbating renal impairment and causing toxicity).

1 Adnet P, Lestavel P, Krivosic-Horber R (2000). Neuroleptic malignant syndrome. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 129–135.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## **Sedation of agitated patients on the ward**

Anaesthetists may be asked to help with sedation of agitated patients on general wards, and are more likely to be familiar with the effects of sedation than junior medical or surgical staff.

- Patients are likely to be in an acute confusional state: exacerbated by pain, unfamiliar/threatening surroundings, and strangers. They may be disoriented, agitated, disinhibited, or violent, and may experience visual or auditory hallucinations.
- When presentation is acute in a previously lucid patient, the cause is usually organic. Establishing and treating the cause may remove the need for sedation.
- Exclude hypoglycaemia, hypoxia, pain, alcohol withdrawal, and full bladder.
- Differential diagnosis includes infection (chest, urine, lines), drugs (cocaine, LSD, sedatives, analgesics), and metabolic derangement (e.g. hyponatraemia). Less frequently: head injury, stroke, acute psychiatric disorder (e.g. mania), acute porphyria.

### **Approach to the patient**

- Ensure the safety of yourself and other staff. A calm and reassuring approach will help the patient and any onlookers.
- If physical restraint is necessary, ensure plenty of help is available (hospital security, porters, and even police) and discuss with psychiatrist.
- Establish venous access if possible and bandage the cannula.
- Aim to render patient calm and cooperative rather than unconscious.
- Do not leave a sedated patient unattended.

### **Drug therapy**

- Haloperidol 5mg IV initially (reduce dose in elderly, e.g. 1mg). Repeat after 5min if no effect. Titrate to effect. Maximum dose: 18mg/24hr according to BNF, but higher doses are occasionally warranted.
- Midazolam 1–2mg IV may also be useful (titrate to effect). May cause paradoxical disinhibition, especially in the elderly.
- Alcohol withdrawal: give diazepam 5–10mg IV (or chlordiazepoxide 50mg PO) and repeat as required. Clomethiazole and IV alcohol are no longer advised.
- Ketamine is useful in emergencies if patient is extremely violent or dangerous. Give 0.5–1mg/kg IV (or 5–10mg/kg IM).
- Do not use propofol (too short acting), opioids (respiratory depression), or drugs you may be unfamiliar with.
- In A&E, or where the history is unknown, further investigation (e.g. CT scan) may be appropriate. In this circumstance, rapid sequence induction of anaesthesia with full monitoring may be required.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Anaesthesia for drug-misusing patients

### General considerations<sup>1</sup>

- In the UK, around 10% of adults have used an illegal drug in the past year. Misuse of street drugs occurs in all socio-economic groups. Drug misuse causes the following specific problems:
- Acute intoxication may impede informed consent. In addition the effects of the drug may counteract (stimulants) or enhance (sedatives) the effects of anaesthetic drugs. Consider drug misuse in all patients with a reduced conscious level, or requiring emergency surgery and anaesthesia.
- Chronic drug misuse is associated with poor nutrition, medical and psychiatric comorbidity, and the presence of viral infections.
- Intravenous drug users often have no accessible veins. IV drug misuse is associated with IV infective complications. HIV and viral hepatitis are commonest. Bacterial endocarditis is rare but serious, and associated with pulmonary abscesses, embolic phenomena from vegetations, and vasculitis.
- Drugs in common use fall into four groups (see table). Combinations of drugs are common, often with alcohol.

#### Street drugs in common use

Drug	Clinical signs
Cannabis	Tachycardia, abnormal affect (e.g. euphoria, anxiety, panic, or psychosis), poor memory, fatigue
Stimulants: cocaine, amphetamines, ecstasy	Tachycardia, labile blood pressure, excitement, delirium, hallucinations, hyperreflexia, tremors, convulsions, mydriasis, sweating, hyperthermia, exhaustion, coma
Hallucinogens: LSD, phencyclidine, ketamine	Sympathomimetic, weakly analgesic, altered judgement, hallucinations, toxic psychosis, dissociative anaesthesia
Opioids: morphine, heroin, opium	Euphoria, respiratory depression, hypotension, bradycardia, constipation, pinpoint pupils, coma

### Anaesthesia

- Keep a high index of suspicion—especially in trauma.
- Difficult venous access—IV drug users may be able to direct you to a patent vein. May need central venous cannulation or cut-down, or consider use of ultrasound for vein location. Consider inhalational induction.
- Take full precautions against infection risk.
- Plan postoperative analgesia with patient preoperatively (see below).
- Do not attempt drug withdrawal perioperatively.

### Opioids

- Patients who misuse opioids should expect the same quality of analgesia as other patients. The commonest opioid misused is heroin. Recovering opioid users may be taking methadone.

- If opioids are the only method of providing analgesia they should be administered in the same way as for normal patients, with doses titrated to effect (large doses may be required—see p1108 for a suitable dosing regime). Combinations of regional nerve blocks and NSAIDs may avoid the need for opioids.
- Opioid-addicted surgical patients should be supported by specialist addiction services during the perioperative period (usually contactable via the local psychiatric services).
- A small group of 'ex-addicts' may have fears about being prescribed opioids precipitating relapse. This should not become an obstacle to treating postoperative pain, but opioids should not be given without first obtaining consent.

### Cocaine and crack cocaine

- Cocaine is usually 'sniffed' in powder form. Free-base ('crack') cocaine is heat stable and can be smoked.
- Cocaine toxicity is mediated by central and peripheral adrenergic stimulation. Presenting symptoms include tachycardia, hypertension, aortic dissection, arrhythmias, accelerated coronary artery disease, coronary spasm, infarction, and sudden death. Intracerebral vasospasm can lead to stroke, rigidity, hyperreflexia, and hyperthermia. Inhalation of cocaine can cause alveolar haemorrhage and pulmonary oedema.
- Psychiatric symptoms range from elation and enhanced physical strength to full toxic paranoid psychosis.
- Patients who need surgery following ingestion of cocaine may need intensive care while they are stabilised. Most of the life-threatening side effects of cocaine are due to vasospasm and can be reversed using combinations of vasodilators, antiarrhythmic agents, and  $\alpha$ -/ $\beta$ -blockers titrated against effect using full invasive monitoring.
- Combination local anaesthetic/vasoconstrictors (or any vasopressor) should be avoided. Tachycardia or hypertensive crisis may result. If vasopressors are required in theatre, use very small doses and titrate against response.
- Intra-arterial injections of cocaine have led to critical limb and organ ischaemia. Successful treatment has included regional plexus blockade, IV heparin, stellate ganglion block, intra-arterial vasodilators, urokinase, and early fasciotomy.

### Ecstasy (3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA))

- Ecstasy is a stimulant drug related to amphetamine. It is usually taken in tablet form. Approximately 30 people die from taking ecstasy annually in the UK.
- Hyperthermia ( $>39^{\circ}\text{C}$ ), disseminated intravascular coagulation, and dehydration are common features.
- Excessive ADH release may also cause hyponatraemia leading to coma.
- Carefully monitor fluid and electrolyte replacement.

## Anaesthesia for electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)

Procedure	Electrically induced seizure
Time	5–10 min
Pain	+/-
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Nil
Practical technique	Short IV GA, FM only, bite block

### General considerations

ECT is safe and effective in the treatment of severe depression unresponsive to drugs or where there is a high risk of suicide. ECT is commonly carried out in an isolated site: ensure skilled assistance and adequate resuscitation facilities. Anaesthetic equipment may be old or unfamiliar.

### Physiological effects of ECT

- During the seizure there is parasympathetic hyperactivity: bradycardia and hypotension, lasting about 15s, followed by a more prolonged (5min) sympathetic stimulation: tachycardia, hypertension, dysrhythmias, increased myocardial oxygen requirement.
- CNS: increased ICP, CBF, and cerebral oxygen requirement.
- Other: hypersalivation, increased intragastric pressure, increased intraocular pressure, occasionally incontinence.

### Preoperative

- A careful preoperative assessment (including investigations) should be undertaken, as for any general anaesthetic.
- Consent is normally arranged by the psychiatrist responsible.
- ECT is usually given several times weekly for several weeks: read the notes for documentation of previous problems.
- Absolute contraindications: recent MI or CVA, pheochromocytoma, intracranial mass lesion, intracranial or aortic aneurysm.
- Relative contraindications: uncontrolled angina, congestive cardiac failure, severe osteoporosis, major bone fracture, glaucoma, retinal detachment. ECT in pregnancy is possible.
- Avoid sedative premedication, which is anticonvulsant.
- Glycopyrronium (0.1–0.3mg IV) may be used to reduce secretions and to counteract bradycardia. Consider antacids if history of reflux.

### Perioperative

- Efficacy of ECT is dependent on seizure quality as measured by EEG-derived variables such as the Postictal Suppression Index. However, there is no further benefit beyond about 1min.
- Good technique provides short GA, muscle relaxation to lessen risk of trauma, attenuation of physiological effects, and rapid recovery.

- Thorough preoxygenation is recommended.
- Propofol, thiopental, etomidate, and ketamine (less suitable) may be used for induction. Propofol attenuates the sympathetic response but shortens the seizure more than the others. Etomidate shortens the seizure less but sympathetic response may be more pronounced. Inhalational sevoflurane is effective but takes longer. All general anaesthetics shorten the seizure in a dose-related fashion: use light doses.
- Suxamethonium (0.5–1mg/kg) is given to ‘modify’ the seizure (reduce muscle power to prevent injury during seizure). Mivacurium (0.2mg/kg) may be used instead but will probably require reversal.
- Insert a bite-block to prevent damage to the mouth and teeth.
- Maintain the airway with a facemask and/or oral airway. Hand-ventilate the patient with oxygen until breathing resumes afterward.
- The psychiatrist may titrate the magnitude of the stimulus to the length of seizure: be prepared to maintain anaesthetic with further boluses of induction agent if a second stimulus is required.
- Sympathetic response may be attenuated with alfentanil (10µg/kg) or esmolol (e.g. 0.25mg/kg). Remifentanil, labetalol, sodium nitroprusside, and hydralazine have also been used.
- Seizure augmentation: both caffeine and theophylline lower the seizure threshold and prolong the seizure. Moderate hyperventilation with bag and mask before the seizure is also effective.
- If the seizure lasts longer than 120s it should be terminated, e.g. with diazepam 10mg IV or propofol titrated to response.

## Postoperative

- Post-ictal agitation, confusion, or aggression may occur in up to 10% of patients. They should be nursed in a calm environment and may occasionally require sedation (e.g. midazolam 1mg IV).
- Headache and muscle pains are commonly reported and usually respond to simple analgesics.
- Drowsiness and cognitive impairment are very common but typically resolve within a few hours.
- No evidence of memory loss is demonstrable at 6 months. However, patients sometimes complain of memory loss for specific life events.
- Other complications include nausea, exacerbation of ischaemic heart disease, fractures/dislocations, dental/oral injury, and laryngospasm.
- ECT does not increase the risk of other types of seizure.
- Overall mortality is about 1 per 80 000 treatments.

## Further reading

- Bowley CJ, Walker HAC (2005). Anaesthesia for ECT. In: Scott AIF (ed) *The ECT Handbook*, 2nd edn. London: Royal College of Psychiatrists. <http://www.rcpsych.ac.uk/files/pdfversion/cr128.pdf>.
- Ding Z, White PF (2002). Anesthesia for electroconvulsive therapy. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **94**, 1351–1364.
- Tess AV, Smetana GW (2009). Medical evaluation of patients undergoing electroconvulsive therapy: current concepts. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **360**, 1437.
- Jackson P, Gleeson D (2010). Alcoholic liver disease. *Contin Educ Anaesth Crit Care Pain*, **10**, 66–71.
- Flood S, Bodenham A (2010). Lithium: mimicry, mania, and muscle relaxants. *Contin Educ Anaesth Crit Care Pain*, **10**, 77–80.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Uncommon conditions

Graham Hocking

James Lloyd





**Aarskog–Scott syndrome**

Cervical spine hypermobility/odontoid anomaly, mild/moderate short stature, cleft lip/palate, skin and skeletal anomalies/laxity, interstitial pulmonary disease, pectus excavatum.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation.<sup>1</sup>

**Achalasia of the cardia**

Motor disorder of the distal two-thirds of the oesophagus, failure of relaxation of lower oesophageal sphincter  $\rightarrow$  dilatation, dysphagia, regurgitation, and risk of malignant change.  $\Delta$   $\uparrow$  Gastric reflux.<sup>2</sup>

**Achondroplasia**

Dwarfism, normal size trunk, short limbs, disproportionately large head, flat face, possible small larynx, bulging skull vault, and kyphoscoliosis. Spinal stenoses in the canal/foramen magnum can occur.  $\uparrow$  risk of obstructive sleep apnoea.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation. Care on neck flexion (cord compression). Central neural blocks may have unpredictable spread (use smaller amounts).<sup>3, 4</sup> (See also p202.)

**Acromegaly**

Enlarged jaw/tongue/larynx, nerve entrapment syndromes, respiratory obstruction including sleep apnoea, diabetes mellitus, hypertension, cardiac failure, thyroid and renal impairment, possible narrow cricoid ring, associated organ dysfunction, perioperative glucose intolerance.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation and airway maintenance.<sup>5, 6</sup> (See also p162.)

**Alagille's syndrome (syndromic bile duct paucity)**

Paucity of interlobular bile ducts, chronic cholestasis, coagulopathy. Pretreat with vitamin K. Splenomegaly may cause thrombocytopenia, cardiac/musculoskeletal/ocular/facial abnormalities, pathological fractures, neuropathies (vitamin deficiencies), retinopathy, CVS assessment (stenosis/hypoplasia common), sagittal spinal cleft, and cerebellar ataxia. Document pre-existing peripheral neuropathy.  $\Delta$   $\uparrow$  Gastric reflux (abdominal distension).<sup>7</sup>

**Albers–Schönberg disease (marble bones),  
see osteopetrosis****Albright's osteodystrophy (pseudohypoparathyroidism type 1a)**

Resistance of target tissues to parathyroid hormone, short stature, round face, short neck, short 4th and 5th metacarpals, hypocalcaemia (may  $\rightarrow$  neuromuscular irritability, convulsions), hyperphosphataemia, and inappropriately high PTH.

**Albright's syndrome (McCune–Albright syndrome)**

Defective regulation of cAMP, multiple unilateral bone lesions, skin pigmentation,  $\text{♀}$  sexual precocity, bony deformity (including skull), fractures, spinal cord compression, acromegaly, thyrotoxicosis. Cushing's syndrome may coexist. Identify endocrine abnormalities.  $\Delta$  May need larger than expected ETT. Cardiac arrhythmias and bony deformity may complicate regional blocks.<sup>8</sup>

### Alport syndrome

Hereditary nephropathy, predominantly ♂, characterised by nephritis → renal failure, hypertension, sensorineural deafness, myopia, thrombocytopenia with giant forms of platelets. ► Check renal function and clotting.<sup>9</sup>

### Alstrom syndrome

Obesity from infancy, nystagmus, sensitivity to light, progressive visual impairment with blindness by 7yr, sensorineural hearing loss, diabetes mellitus and renal failure in early adult life, cardiac disease, problems associated with obesity/organ dysfunction.<sup>10</sup>

### Alveolar hypoventilation

Central hypoventilation due to midbrain lesion/severance of spinal tracts from the midbrain (Ondine's curse), periods of prolonged apnoea, hypoxia, hypercarbia, abnormal respiratory drive, take care with O<sub>2</sub> supplements if relying on hypoxic drive, cor pulmonale, polycythaemia, autonomic dysfunction. ⚠ Re-establishing spontaneous ventilation may be difficult, consider regional techniques, postoperative respiratory failure.<sup>11,12</sup>

### Amyloidosis

Abnormal deposition of hyaline material in tissues, macroglossia. Beware laryngeal amyloid. Unexpected cardiac or renal failure can occur. Associated with other pathologies; assess to detect systems affected and risk of postoperative organ failure.<sup>13</sup>

### Amyotonia congenita, see *spinal muscular atrophy*

### Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis

Progressive degeneration of lower motor neurons, motor nuclei of the brainstem, descending pathway of the upper motor neurons, atrophy and weakness involving most skeletal muscles including tongue, pharynx, larynx, and chest wall muscles, fasciculation, sensation normal, impaired ventilation. ⚠ Altered response to muscle relaxants, aspiration risk (laryngeal incompetence), sensitive to respiratory depressants (see also p265).<sup>14, 15</sup>

1 Teebi AS et al. (1993). *Am J Med Genet*, **46**, 501–509.

2 Hay H (2001). *Eur J Anaesthesiol*, **17**, 398–400.

3 Krishnan BS et al. (2003). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **13**, 547–549.

4 Wardall GJ, Frame WT (1990). *Br J Anaes*, **64**, 367–370.

5 Seidman PA et al. (2000). *Br J Anaes*, **84**, 179–182.

6 Khan ZH, Rasouli MR (2009). *Eur J Anaesthesiol*, **26**, 354–355.

7 Yildiz TS et al. (2007). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **17**, 91–92.

8 Langer RA et al. (1995). *Anesth Analg*, **80**, 1236–1239.

9 Kashtan CE (1999). *Medicine*, **78**, 338–360.

10 Lynch GM et al. (2007). *Anaesth Int Care*, **35**, 484–487.

11 Wiesel S, Fox GS (1990). *Can J Anaesth*, **37**, 122–126.

12 Strauser LM et al. (1999). *J Clin Anesth*, **11**, 431–437.

13 Noguchi T et al. (1999). *J Clin Anesth*, **11**, 339–341.

14 Rowland LP, Schneider NA (2001). *Ne Engl J Med*, **344**, 1688–1700.

15 Mishima Y et al. (2002). *Masui*, **51**, 762–764.

**Analbuminaemia**

Deficiency of albumin. Sensitivity to all protein-bound drugs—titrate drugs carefully.<sup>1</sup>

**Andersen's disease,**

see glycogenoses, type IV

**Andersen's syndrome**

Triad of potassium-sensitive periodic paralysis/ventricular arrhythmias/dysmorphic features, long QT, spontaneous attacks of paralysis with acute  $K^+$  changes, baseline level may be hypokalaemia/normokalaemia/hyperkalaemia.<sup>2</sup>

**Anhidrotic/hypohidrotic ectodermal dysplasia (Christ–Siemens–Touraine syndrome)**

Hypodontia, hypotrichosis, hypohidrosis, heat intolerance, recurrent chest infections (poor mucus formation).  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation.<sup>3</sup>

**Ankylosing spondylitis**

Asymmetric oligoarthritis, total vertebral involvement, cardiomegaly, aortic regurgitation, cardiac conduction abnormalities, pulmonary fibrosis, bamboo spine.  $\Delta$  Difficult airway/neuraxial blockade.<sup>4,5</sup> (See also p195.)

**Antley–Bixler syndrome**

Autosomal recessive, multiple bone/cartilaginous abnormalities, midface hypoplasia, significant craniosynostosis, choanal stenosis/atresia, femoral bowing, radiohumeral synostosis, multiple joint contractures, CVS/renal/GI malformations.  $\Delta$  Potential difficult airway. Extremity deformities may complicate vascular access and positioning.<sup>6</sup>

**Apert's syndrome**

Craniosynostosis, high forehead, maxillary hypoplasia, relative mandibular prognathism, cervical synostosis, visceral malformations, congenital heart anomalies. Assess for other organ involvement and  $\uparrow$  ICP.  $\Delta$  Airway difficulties, perioperative respiratory problems (especially wheezing).<sup>7</sup>

**Arnold–Chiari malformation**

Group of congenital hindbrain anomalies causing downward displacement of pons and medulla with variable neurological sequelae.  $\blacktriangleright$  Preoperative assessment of CNS function and response to neck movement and ICP, careful neuroanaesthetic (usual potential problems).<sup>8</sup>

**Arthrogryposis (congenital contractures)**

Skin and SC tissue abnormalities, contracture deformities, micrognathia, cervical spine and jaw stiffness, congenital heart disease (10%), hypermetabolic response is probably not MH.  $\Delta$  Difficult airway and venous access, sensitive to thiopental.<sup>9,10</sup>

### Asplenia syndrome

Complex congenital heart defects, asplenia, visceral anomalies 2° to abnormal lateralisation, cardiac failure, hiatus hernia/reflux, recurrent pneumonias. Part of the heterotaxy group of syndromes.<sup>11</sup>

### Ataxia-telangiectasia

Progressive cerebellar ataxia, conjunctival telangiectasia, progressive neurological degeneration, recurrent chest and sinus infections, bronchiectasis, malignancies (leukaemias), sensitivity to X-rays/radiotherapy (cellular damage), premature ageing.<sup>12</sup>

### Axenfeld–Rieger syndrome

Ocular and dental defects, maxillary hypoplasia, heart defects, short stature, mental deficiency.  $\Delta$  Airway problems.<sup>13</sup>

### Bardet–Biedl syndrome, see also Laurence–Moon syndrome

Obesity, retinitis pigmentosa, polydactyly, mental retardation, hypogonadism, renal failure.<sup>14</sup>

### Bartter syndrome

Growth retardation, hypertrophy and hyperplasia of the juxtaglomerular apparatus, ADH antagonism by prostaglandins, hyperaldosteronism, hypokalaemic alkalosis, normal BP, ↓ response to vasopressors, platelet abnormalities. ► Maintain CVS stability, control serum K<sup>+</sup>, meticulous fluid balance, caution with renally excreted drugs, neuroaxial anaesthesia may be hazardous (stature, clotting, pressor response).<sup>15</sup>

### Beckwith–Wiedemann syndrome (infantile gigantism)

Macroglossia, microcephaly, omphalocele, perinatal/postnatal gigantism, possible congenital heart disease (ASD/VSD/PDA/hypoplastic LV), neonatal hypoglycaemia (hyperinsulinism).  $\Delta$  Abnormal airway anatomy, extubate awake.<sup>16,17</sup>

- 1 Koot BG (2004). *Eur J Pediatr*, **163**, 664–670.
- 2 Young DA (2005). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **54**, 1019–1020.
- 3 Kuriakose R, Balakrishnan M. (2005). *Mid East J Anaesth*, **18**, 647–650.
- 4 Woodward LJ, Kam PC (2009). *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 540–548.
- 5 Lu PP et al. (2001). *Can J Anaesth*, **48**, 1015–1019.
- 6 Boswell D, Mayhew J (2007). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **17**, 497–498.
- 7 Hutson LR et al. (2007). *J Clin Anesth*, **19**, 551–554.
- 8 Cakmakaya OS et al. (2006). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **16**, 355–356.
- 9 Hopkins PM et al. (1991). *Anaesthesia*, **46**, 374–375.
- 10 Nguyen NH et al. (2000). *J Clin Anesth*, **12**, 227–230.
- 11 Uchida K et al. (1992). *Masui*, **41**, 1793–1797.
- 12 Gatti RA et al. (1991). *Medicine*, **70**, 99–117.
- 13 Asai T et al. (1998). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **8**, 444.
- 14 Mahajan R et al. (2007). *Minerva Anaesthesiol*, **73**, 191–194.
- 15 Abston PA, Priano LL (1981). *Anesth Analg*, **60**, 764–766.
- 16 Kimura Y et al. (2008). *J Anesth*, **22**, 93–95.
- 17 Gurkowski MA, Rasch DK. (1989). *Anesthesiology*, **70**, 711–712.

**Behçet's syndrome**

Chronic multisystem vasculitis of unknown aetiology, triad of recurring iritis/mouth ulceration/genital ulceration, possible altered fibrinolysis, vasculitis may involve other organ systems. ► fully assess other organ function. ⚠ Prior oral ulceration/scarring may complicate airway management, minimise needle punctures (diffuse inflammatory skin reaction), autonomic hyper-reflexia may occur with spinal cord involvement.<sup>1</sup>

**Bernard–Soulier syndrome (giant platelet syndrome)**

Congenital lack of membrane glycoprotein GP1b, ↓ number of huge platelets, ↑ bleeding time, severe bleeding tendency, possibly improves with age, platelet infusions may be needed.

**Blackfan–Diamond syndrome (congenital red-cell aplasia)**

Congenital hypoplastic anaemia, growth retardation, congestive cardiac failure, hepatosplenomegaly (↓ FRC), hypersplenism, thrombocytopenia.<sup>2</sup>

**Bland–White–Garland syndrome**

Anomalous origin of left coronary artery from pulmonary trunk, chronic myocardial ischaemia/subendocardial fibrosis/LV dilation/valvular insufficiency (papillary muscle damage), congestive cardiac failure. ⚠ Often difficult to wean ventilation, beware perioperative myocardial failure.<sup>3</sup>

**Bloom's syndrome**

Rare autosomal recessive disorder, chromosome breakage/recombination, short stature, photosensitive, facial telangiectatic erythema, predisposition to malignant diseases. Limit X-rays (may damage cells). ⚠ Potential difficulties with mask fit and laryngoscopy.<sup>4</sup>

**Brugada syndrome**

Abnormal human cardiac sodium channel, RBBB/ST elevation in leads V1–3, sudden death from VF (up to 1 in 1000 young SE Asian ♂), normal cardiac anatomy, tachyarrhythmias not responsive to medical therapy. ► May have implantable cardioverter defibrillator if pre-existing syncope (requires usual care during surgery), treat intraoperative tachyarrhythmias by cardioversion, avoid neostigmine (worsens ST elevation—risk of VT/VF), safety of techniques needing high doses of local anaesthetics not yet tested, spinal anaesthesia appears safe.<sup>5, 6</sup>

**Buerger's disease (thromboangiitis obliterans)**

Peripheral vascular disease with ulceration, Raynaud's phenomenon, hyperhidrosis, bronchitis, emphysema, non-invasive BP may over-read.

**Bullous cystic lung disease**

Non-communicating lung cysts may be more compliant than normal lung. ► Risk of pneumothorax with IPPV, avoid N<sub>2</sub>O, high-frequency jet ventilation used successfully.<sup>7</sup>

### Burkitt's lymphoma

Undifferentiated lymphoblastic lymphoma most commonly affecting the jaw (also abdominal organs/breasts/testes).  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation.<sup>8</sup>

### Cantrell's pentalogy

Defect of supraumbilical abdominal wall, agenesis of lower part of sternum/anterior portion of diaphragm, absence of diaphragmatic part of pericardium, cardiac malformation (VSD/ASD), hypoplastic lungs.  $\blacktriangleright$  Check for R  $\rightarrow$  L shunting, avoid pressure to lower thorax/abdomen.<sup>9</sup>

### Carpenter's syndrome

Cranial synostosis, small mandible, congenital heart disease (PDA/VSD), obesity, umbilical hernia, mental retardation, cerebrospinal malformations (narrowed foramen magnum, hypoplastic posterior fossa, kinked spinal cord).  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation.<sup>10</sup>

### Central core disease, see congenital myopathy

### Cerebrocostomandibular syndrome

Micrognathia, cleft palate, tracheal anomalies, rib defects/microthorax, mental deficiency, early death from respiratory complications.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation.<sup>11</sup>

### Chagas' disease (American trypanosomiasis)

Many patients are asymptomatic. Malaise, anorexia, fever, hepatomegaly, mega-colon/mega-oesophagus, unilateral oedema, cardiac failure, chronic myocarditis, associated organ dysfunction.  $\Delta$   $\uparrow$  Gastric reflux.<sup>12</sup>

### Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease (peroneal muscular atrophy)

Chronic peripheral neuromuscular denervation/atrophy, spinal/lower limb deformities,  $\uparrow$  K<sup>+</sup>, may affect respiratory muscles (restrictive pattern), evidence suggests low MH risk.  $\blacktriangleright$  Avoid suxamethonium.<sup>13</sup>

### CHARGE association

Coloboma/Heart anomaly/choanal Atresia/Retardation/Genital/Ear anomalies.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation (micrognathia).<sup>14</sup>

### Chediak-Higashi syndrome

Albinism, photophobia, nystagmus, weakness, tremor, thrombocytopenia, susceptible to infection.<sup>15</sup>

1 Turkoz A et al. (2002). *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*, **16**, 468–470.

2 Willig TN et al. (2000). *Curr Opin Hematol*, **7**, 85–94.

3 Kleinschmidt S et al. (1996). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **6**, 65–68.

4 Aono J et al. (1992). *Masui*, **41**, 255–257.

5 Kim JS et al. (2004). *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*, **48**, 1058–1061.

6 Canbay O et al. (2007). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **17**, 1225–1227.

7 Normandale JP et al. (1985). *Anaesthesia*, **40**, 1182–1185.

8 Palmer CD et al. (1998). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **8**, 506–509.

9 Laloyaux P et al. (1998). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **8**, 163–166.

10 Batra YK et al. (2008). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **18**, 1235–1237.

11 Smith KG, Sekar KC (1985). *Clin Pediatr (Phila)*, **24**, 223–225.

12 Fernandez Gil M et al. (2009). *Rev Esp Anesthesiol Reanim*, **56**, 262–265.

13 Dhir S et al. (2008). *Can J Anaesth*, **55**, 515–520.

14 Blake K et al. (2009). *Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol*, **73**, 219–226.

15 Ulsoy H et al. (1995). *Middle East J Anesthesiol*, **13**, 101–105.

**Cherubism**

Tumourous mandibular and maxillary lesions, intraoral masses, may develop acute respiratory distress, profuse bleeding, tracheostomy may be needed. ⚠ Difficult intubation.<sup>1</sup>

**Chronic granulomatous disease**

Rare genetically transmitted disorder, recurrent life-threatening infections with catalase-positive micro-organisms, excessive inflammatory reactions, granuloma formation, multiple organ system involvement including pulmonary granulomata, long-term prophylactic antibiotics. ⚠ Regurgitation/aspiration risk (GI granulomata).<sup>2</sup>

**Cockayne's syndrome**

Rare autosomal recessive condition, failure of DNA repair, dysmorphic dwarfism, mental retardation in infancy/childhood, hypertension, hepatic deficiencies, osteoporosis, deafness, blindness, other effects of premature ageing (see progeria). ⚠ Airway management problems, ↑ risk of gastric aspiration, weight-appropriate equipment.<sup>3</sup>

**Congenital adrenal hyperplasia (adrenogenital syndrome)**

Congenital disorders leading to defects in cortisol biosynthesis, ↑ ACTH, disordered androgens, may mimic pyloric stenosis in neonate, electrolyte abnormalities. ► Adequate perioperative fluid/steroid therapy.

**Congenital analgesia**

Hereditary disorder → self-mutilation, defective thermoregulation, vaso-motor control, sensitivity to anaesthetic drugs. ► Careful positioning.<sup>4</sup>

**Congenital myopathy (central core disease) (see also p274)**

Non-progressive extremity weakness (lower > upper), difficulty rising from sitting, ↑ lumbar lordosis, ptosis, most test positive for MH *in vitro*. ⚠ Avoid trigger factors, ventilatory weakness, sensitive to muscle relaxants.<sup>5, 6</sup>

**Conradi–Hunermann syndrome (chondrodysplasia punctata)**

Epiphyseal calcifications, short stature, hypertelorism, saddle nose, short neck, tracheal stenosis, scoliosis, renal and congenital heart disease. ⚠ Ventilatory failure due to airway and thoracic deformities, renal impairment, skin protection (use patient's creams/padding), attention to thermoregulation (lose heat quickly).<sup>7</sup>

**Cornelia de Lange syndrome**

Duplication/partial trisomy chromosome 3, psychomotor retardation, skeletal craniofacial deformities, VSD, GI anomalies, assess cardiorespiratory function, susceptible to infections. ⚠ Possible difficult airway, ↑ gastric reflux.<sup>8, 9</sup>

### Costello syndrome

Mental and growth retardation, short neck, macroglossia, hypertrophied tonsillar/supraglottic tissues, laryngeal papillomata, choanal atresia, cardiac arrhythmias, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, talipes, scoliosis. ⚠️ Potential airway difficulties, ↑ gastric reflux, arrhythmias.<sup>10</sup>

### CREST syndrome (also see p198)

Form of scleroderma, widespread necrotising angiitis with granulomata, Calcinosis/Raynaud's phenomenon/oEsophageal dysfunction/Sclerodactyly/Telangiectasia, multiple organ involvement, nerve compression syndromes, arrhythmias, contractures, pulmonary fibrosis. ⚠️ Airway difficulties, ↑ gastric reflux.

### Cretinism

Congenital hypothyroidism, neurological and intellectual damage, muscle weakness, cardiomyopathy, respiratory complications, steroid cover, glucose and electrolyte abnormalities. ⚠️ Intubation problems (macroglossia), sensitive to anaesthetic drugs.

### Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease (CJD)

One of the transmissible spongiform encephalopathies. Progressive fatal encephalopathy, responsible for recent changes in surgery/anaesthesia relating to re-use/sterilisation of equipment. Four types: *sporadic CJD* (85–90% cases, older patients, rapidly progressive over few months); *familial CJD* (5–10%, due to gene mutation); *iatrogenic CJD* (<5%, transmission from surgical instruments/implants/growth hormone); *variant CJD* (young patients, slowly progressive 1–2yr); caused by prions (small proteinaceous infectious particles resistant to inactivation—contain abnormal isoform of a cellular protein), highest concentration in CNS/eye/lymphoid tissue, progressive neurological signs—psychiatric symptoms/altered sensation/visual loss/ataxia/weakness/involuntary movements/cognitive impairment/aphasia. ► Involve staff from communicable diseases, follow protocols for handling fluids/waste, remove unnecessary equipment/staff from theatre, universal precautions, consider antisialogogue to reduce secretions, portable suction to stay with patient throughout entire theatre visit/recovery, consider recovering in theatre—send directly back to ward, quarantine all used equipment (ventilator, etc.), use disposable equipment where possible, bipolar diathermy plume may contain inhalable prions (monopolar better), warn laboratory staff.<sup>11</sup>

1 Maydew RP, Berry FA. (1985). *Anesthesiology*, **62**, 810–812.

2 Wall RT et al. (1990). *J Clin Anesth*, **2**, 306–311.

3 Raghavendran F et al. (2008). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **18**, 360–361.

4 Nagasako EM et al. (2003). *Pain*, **101**, 213–219.

5 Johi RR et al. (2003). *Br J Anaesth*, **91**, 744–747.

6 Farbu E et al. (2003). *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*, **47**, 630–634.

7 Pandit JJ, Evans FE (1996). *Anaesthesia*, **51**, 992–993.

8 Corsini LM et al. (1998). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **8**, 159–161.

9 Hirai T et al. (2006). *Masui*, **55**, 454–456.

10 Shukry M et al. (2008). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **18**, 567–568.

11 Hirsch N et al. (2005). *Anaesthesia*, **60**, 664–667.



**Cri-du-chat syndrome**

Inherited disease resulting in mental retardation, abnormal cry (due to abnormal larynx), laryngomalacia, microcephaly, micrognathia, macroglossia, spasticity, congenital heart disease (30%), hypotonia (possible airway obstruction by soft tissues).  $\Delta$  Potential airway problems, long curved epiglottis, narrow diamond-shaped glottis, temperature instability.<sup>1</sup>

**Crouzon's disease**

Craniosynostosis, hydrocephalus,  $\uparrow$  ICP, maxillary hypoplasia, mandibular prognathism, prominent nose, coarctation. Assess other organ involvement/ICP.  $\Delta$  Airway difficulty, postoperative respiratory obstruction, correction procedures can bleed profusely.<sup>2,3</sup>

**Cutis laxa (elastic degeneration)**

Defective elastin cross-linking probably 2° to copper deficiency, extreme laxity of facial/trunk skin, no retraction after stretching, fragile skin and blood vessels, respiratory infections/emphysema common.  $\blacktriangleright$  Pendulous pharyngeal/laryngeal mucosa may obstruct airway, careful positioning.

**Cystic hygroma**

Benign multilocular lymphatic tumour of neck/oral cavity/tongue causing local pressure symptoms including airway compromise.  $\Delta$  Oral intubation often impossible (enlarged tongue), partially obstructed airway in awake patient may totally obstruct on induction, tracheostomy complicated by submandibular involvement.<sup>4</sup>

**Dandy-Walker syndrome**

Congenital obstruction to foramina of Luschka/Magendie, progressive head enlargement, hydrocephalus, craniofacial abnormalities, cardiac/renal/skeletal malformations, altered medullary respiratory control, usually require CSF shunt.  $\Delta$  Control ICP, risk of respiratory failure/recurrent apnoea postoperatively, consider ICU.<sup>5</sup>

**Delleman syndrome (oculocerebrocutaneous syndrome)**

Somatic mutation of autosomal dominant gene only compatible with life in mosaic form, multiple brain/skin/eye/bony abnormalities, hydrocephalus, vertebral anomalies, seizures can occur under general anaesthesia (seen as unexplained autonomic changes), aspiration pneumonitis.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation, postoperative apnoea monitoring.<sup>6,7</sup>

**Dermatomyositis (polymyositis)**

Inflammatory myopathy, skeletal muscle weakness  $\rightarrow$  dysphagia/recurrent pneumonia/aspiration, myocarditis, cardiomyopathy (arrhythmias/cardiac failure), steroid supplementation, anaemia.  $\Delta$  Restricted mouth opening, enhanced/delayed effect of muscle relaxant.<sup>8</sup>

### DiGeorge syndrome (velocardiofacial/CATCH 22 syndrome)

Cardiac abnormalities/Abnormal facies/Thymic hypoplasia/Cleft palate/Hypocalcaemia/chromosome 22 affected, immune deficiency, recurrent chest infections, hypotonia.  $\Delta$  Upper airway problems/stridor, obstructive apnoea, hyperventilation-induced seizures ( $\downarrow$   $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ), gastro-oesophageal reflux.<sup>9</sup>

### Down's syndrome

Commonest congenital abnormality (1.6 per 1000 deliveries), higher morbidity and mortality, characteristic dysmorphic features, impaired global development, congenital cardiac defects (40%—predominantly endocardial cushion defects/VSD), Eisenmenger's syndrome (especially if there is associated obstructive sleep apnoea), recurrent respiratory tract infection (relative immune deficiency and a degree of upper airway obstruction from tonsillar/adenoidal hypertrophy), atlantoaxial instability (30% but frequently asymptomatic—routine X-ray not indicated), epilepsy (10%), obesity and potentially difficult venous access, hypothyroidism (40%), careful airway assessment (relatively large tongue, crowding of midfacial structures, high arched narrow palate, micrognathia, short broad neck), careful cardiorespiratory assessment (including investigation) as indicated—beware asymptomatic disease, optimise where possible, reduced threshold for postoperative HDU/ICU, often uncooperative (sedative premed often helpful—caution if airway obstructed), drying agents useful if hypersalivation (caution may have exaggerated sensitivity to mydriatic/cardiac effects of atropine),  $\uparrow$  incidence of gastro-oesophageal reflux, avoid excessive neck movement, prone to hypoventilation—consider IPPV, postoperative pain management may be problematic (consider regional blocks/LA, PCA possible in selected patients), parents/carers often indispensable in managing postoperative agitation, hypotonia (up to 75%) may compromise airway, prone to atelectasis/respiratory tract infections—consider humidified oxygen/physiotherapy.<sup>10</sup>

### Dubowitz syndrome

Retarded growth, microcephaly, craniofacial deformations, dysmorphic extremities, psychomotor development varies—normal/retarded, thin hair, cryptorchism, hyperactivity, thorough assessment required since the condition may involve the cutaneous, dental, digestive, musculoskeletal, ocular, urogenital, cardiovascular, neurological, haematological, and immune systems.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation.<sup>11</sup>

1 Brislin RP et al. (1995). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **5**, 139–141.

2 Payne JF, Cranston AJ (1995). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **5**, 331–333.

3 Martin TJ et al. (2008). *Int J Obstet Anesth*, **17**, 177–181.

4 Sharma S et al. (1994). *Singapore Med J*, **35**, 529–531.

5 Ewart MC, Oh TE (1990). *Anaesthesia*, **45**, 646–648.

6 Sadhasivam S, Subramaniam R (1998). *Anesth Analg*, **87**, 553–555.

7 Jamieson BD, Kuczkowski KM (2005). *Ann Fr Anesth Reanim*, **24**, 830.

8 Ganta R et al. (1988). *Br J Anaesth*, **60**, 854–858.

9 Yotsui-Tsuchimochi H et al. (2006). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **16**, 454–457.

10 Borland LM et al. (2004). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **14**, 733–738.

11 Tsukahara M, Opitz JM (1996). *Am J Med Genet*, **63**, 277–289.

**Dwarfism**

Manifestation of over 100 syndromes, disproportionate short stature (cf 'midgets'—proportionate), large tongue, atlantoaxial instability, spinal stenosis and/or compression, thoracic dystrophy (ventilatory problem/frequent pneumonia), scoliosis/kyphoscoliosis, congenital cardiac disease, evaluate and protect the cervical spine, document pre-existing neurological deficit if central blockade considered.  $\Delta$  Difficult airway.<sup>1</sup>

**Dyggve–Melchior–Clausen syndrome**

Autosomal recessive, mental retardation, small stature (short vertebral column), thoracic kyphosis, protruding sternum, reduced articular mobility, microcephaly.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation.<sup>2</sup>

**Dysautonomia (Riley–Day syndrome)**

One of the hereditary sensory and autonomic neuropathies. Emotional lability, autonomic instability may  $\rightarrow$  dysautonomic crisis (sweating, vomiting, unstable HR/BP), poor thermoregulation, gastric reflux/drooling, sensitivity to respiratory depressants with reduced hypoxic drive (need IPPV), reduced somatic pain sensitivity but visceral/muscle sensation intact, volatile agents can cause hypotension and bradycardia.<sup>3</sup>

**Eaton–Lambert syndrome, see myasthenic syndrome (also p258).****Ebstein's anomaly (tricuspid valve disease)**

Congenital heart defect, downward displacement of deformed tricuspid valve, atrialisation of RV, may be no obvious clinical signs, association with Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome, risk of SVT during induction.<sup>4</sup>

**Edward's syndrome (trisomy 18)**

Craniofacial anomalies, congenital heart disease, mental/physical delays, pain assessment difficult, only less severe cases survive.<sup>5</sup>

**Ehlers–Danlos syndrome**

Group of conditions with defective collagen cross-linking, variable features depending upon the tissue distribution of different collagens, extensible fragile skin, joint laxity/hypermobility, recurrent dislocations, prolonged/spontaneous bleeding, rupture of cerebral/other vessels, bowel perforation, ocular abnormalities, kyphoscoliosis, spontaneous pneumothorax.  $\blacktriangleright$  Careful positioning/padding, beware undiagnosed pneumothorax, intubation may cause severe tracheal bruising.<sup>6</sup>

**Eisenmenger's syndrome (pulmonary hypertension, VSD, right ventricular failure) (see also p79)**

Cyanotic congenital heart disease, usually uncorrectable, pulmonary hypertension/VSD/RV failure, medical therapy may prolong life (thirties), high mortality in pregnant patients due to  $\downarrow$  SVR and  $\uparrow$  shunt (termination has been advocated), prevent increases in right-to-left shunt (caused by e.g.  $\uparrow$  PVR/ $\downarrow$  SVR from volatiles/histamine release, etc.).  $\blacktriangleright$  Avoid dehydration, consider pancuronium (sympathetic stimulation beneficial), air from infusions/syringes can cross VSD, risk of asystole under GA, slow equilibration of inhaled gases.<sup>7</sup>

### Ellis–Van Creveld disease (chondroectodermal dysplasia)

Dwarfism, pulmonary/cardiac abnormalities (ASD/VSD/single atrium), polydactyly, hepatic/renal involvement, airway anomalies, respiratory failure.<sup>8</sup>

### Epidermolysis bullosa

Extreme bullae formation of skin and mucosa, dystrophic nails, flexion contractures/deformities, carious teeth, small mouth caused by scarred lip contractures are characteristic, avoid skin/mucous membrane trauma, shearing force worse than direct pressure. ► Care with positioning, electrodes (consider using defib pads as an interface), tape, padding below BP cuff, longest acceptable inflation interval, lubricate everything well, keep upper airway manipulations to a minimum, consider postoperative ICU.<sup>9,10</sup>

### Erythema multiforme

Acute self-limiting condition of skin and mucous membranes—consider drug-related cause, concentric rings of erythematous papules/bullae (epidermal necrosis), severe cases can be fatal (Stevens–Johnson syndrome). ► Beware postintubation laryngeal oedema.

### Fabry syndrome

$\alpha$ -Galactosidase deficiency, deposition of glycosphingolipid in most organs, ischaemic heart disease/LVH/abnormal conduction, hypertension, renal failure, autonomic instability (may  $\uparrow$  with neuraxial block), abnormal thermoregulation, hyperhidrosis, pain 2° nerve infiltration. ► Document any neurological deficit prior to regional techniques, monitor/control core temperature.<sup>11</sup>

### Factor V Leiden mutation

Resistance to anticoagulant effect of protein C, high risk of PE ► careful control of anticoagulation.

### Familial dysautonomia, see *dysautonomia*

### Familial periodic paralysis,

see also *hypokalaemic familial periodic paralysis*. Muscular weakness related to  $K^+$  changes (absolute  $K^+$  value is not important).

### Fanconi's anaemia

Congenital aplastic anaemia, growth retardation, hyperpigmentation, defective DNA regeneration. Limit exposure to X-rays (sensitive).<sup>12</sup>

1 Morrow MJ, Black IH (1998). *Br J Anaesth*, **81**, 619–621.

2 Eguchi M et al. (2001). *Masui*, **50**, 1116–1167.

3 Ngai J et al. (2006). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **16**, 611–620.

4 Horishita T et al. (2005). *Anesth Analg*, **101**, 608.

5 Courreges P et al. (2003). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **13**, 267–269.

6 Campbell N, Rosaeg OP (2002). *Can J Anaesth*, **49**, 493–496.

7 Jones HG, Stoneham MD (2006). *Anaesthesia*, **61**, 1214–1218

8 Abeles AI, Tobias JD (2008). *J Clin Anaesth*, **20**, 618–621.

9 Herod J et al. (2002). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **12**, 388–397.

10 Edler AA et al. (2008). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **18**, 1107–1109.

11 Watanabe H et al. (1995). *Masui*, **44**, 1258–1260.

12 Jacob R, Venkatesan T (2006). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **16**, 981–985.

**Fanconi syndrome (renal tubular acidosis)**

Generalised defect in proximal tubular function, glycosuria, polyuria, polydipsia, phosphate/ $K^+$ /bicarbonate wasting, aminoaciduria, muscle weakness, acidosis, dwarfing, osteomalacia, usually secondary to other disease.

► Correct/maintain careful fluid/electrolyte balance.<sup>1</sup>

**Farber's disease (lipogranulomatosis)**

Ceramidase deficiency, hoarse cry, painful swollen joints, periarticular nodules, pulmonary infiltrates, mental handicap, thickened heart valves, cardiomyopathy, renal/hepatic failure, usually die by 2yr (airway problems), laryngeal granulomata may complicate intubation. ⚠ Difficult intubation, postextubation laryngeal oedema/bleeding, anatomical neck deformity may complicate urgent tracheostomy.<sup>2</sup>

**Felty's syndrome**

Hypersplenism in rheumatoid arthritis, pancytopenia, haemolysis due to red cell sequestration, ↑ plasma volume. (See also p193.)

**Fibrodysplasia ossificans progressiva**

Progressive bony infiltration of tendons/muscles/fascia/aponeuroses leading to joint ankylosis throughout the body. ► Permanent ankylosis of the jaw may follow minimal soft tissue trauma, atlantoaxial subluxation possible, restrictive pulmonary disease, cardiac conduction abnormalities. ⚠ Intubation difficulties.<sup>3</sup>

**Fibromatosis (including juvenile and hyaline forms)**

Large cutaneous nodules (especially head/neck/lips), joint contractures, gingival hypertrophy, osteolytic lesions. ⚠ Potential airway problems.<sup>4</sup>

**Fraser syndrome (cryptophthalmos—'hidden eye')**

Cryptophthalmos, laryngeal atresia/hypoplasia, fixed posterior arytoids, cleft lip/palate, genitourinary abnormalities, possible congenital heart disease/neurological abnormalities. ⚠ Potential airway problems.<sup>5</sup>

**Freeman–Sheldon (craniocarpotarsal dysplasia or 'whistling face') syndrome**

Progressive congenital myopathy, multiple deformities of face/hands/feet, microstomia with pursed lips, micrognathia, anterior larynx, neck rigidity, postoperative respiratory complications. ⚠ Difficult intubation, difficult venous access, possible MH risk.<sup>6</sup>

**Friedreich's ataxia**

Autosomal recessive progressive ataxia, myopathy, cardiomyopathy with failure/arrhythmias (may have implantable cardioverter-defibrillator), diabetes, peripheral neuropathy. ► Kyphoscoliosis → respiratory failure ?suxamethonium sensitivity—not supported by the evidence.<sup>7</sup>

### Gaisbock's syndrome

Relative polycythaemia due to ↓ plasma volume in middle-aged obese smoking hypertensive ♂, arterial thrombotic risk, myocardial/cerebral ischaemia. Consider venesection to normal haematocrit.

### Gardner's syndrome (familial polyposis coli)

Multiple colonic polyps (risk of malignant change), soft tissue tumours, osseous neoplasms. ► Possible laryngeal polyps.

### Gaucher's disease

Autosomal recessive disorder of lipid catabolism, end-organ dysfunction from glycosphingolipid accumulation, three variants differ in onset/CNS involvement, seizures, hypersplenism, thrombocytopenia, anaemia, gastro-oesophageal reflux, chronic aspiration. ► Possible upper airway obstruction (bulbar involvement/infiltration of upper airway). Check and correct haematological parameters if required.<sup>8,9</sup>

### Gilbert's disease

Asymptomatic familial unconjugated non-haemolytic hyperbilirubinaemia. Perioperative jaundice may be precipitated by stress/surgery/starvation.<sup>10</sup>

### Glanzmann's disease (thrombasthenia)

Lack of membrane protein GPIIb and GPIIIa, normal number/sized platelets, no clot retraction, defective aggregation, moderately severe bleeding diathesis, platelet transfusions sometimes ineffective due to antiplatelet antibodies.<sup>11</sup>

### Glomus jugulare tumours

Highly vascular benign tumour of glomus body, invades locally, may affect cranial nerves (progressive deafness/tinnitus), may need to sacrifice local structures (carotid, etc.). ⚠ Sudden severe haemorrhage during excision (?hypotensive technique). Consider cerebral protection measures.<sup>12,13</sup>

### Glucagonoma

Rare tumour of pancreatic islet  $\alpha$  cells, usually ↑ blood glucagon/glucose levels (↓ glucose also reported), potential significant metabolic/myocardial dysfunction, control blood glucose—large amounts of glucagon can be released during tumour handling. ► Careful evaluation of nutrition/fluid/electrolytes, thromboembolic prophylaxis.<sup>14</sup> (See also p180.)

1 Joel M, Rosales JK (1981). *Anesthesiology*, **55**, 455–456.

2 Asada A et al. (1994). *Anesthesiology*, **80**, 206–209.

3 Vashisht R, Prosser D (2006). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **16**, 684–688.

4 Norman B et al. (1996). *Br J Anaesth*, **76**, 163–166.

5 Jagtap SR et al. (1995). *Anaesthesia*, **50**, 39–41.

6 Agrimis A et al. (2004). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **14**, 874–877.

7 Schmitt HJ et al. (2004). *Br J Anaesth*, **92**, 592–596.

8 Kita T et al. (1998). *Masui*, **47**, 69–73.

9 Ioscovich et al. (2005). *Can J Anesth*, **52**, 845–847.

10 Taylor S (1984). *Anaesthesia*, **39**, 1222–1224.

11 Monte S, Lyons G (2002). *Br J Anaesth*, **88**, 734–738.

12 Braude BM et al. (1986). *Anaesthesia*, **41**, 861–865.

13 Mather SP, Webster NR (1986). *Anaesthesia*, **41**, 856–860.

14 Gin VC, Zacharias M (2009). *Anaesth Intensive Care*, **37**, 329–330.

**Glucose-6-phosphate-dehydrogenase deficiency (favism)**

Predominantly ♂ (X-linked hereditary defect), attacks of haemolytic anaemia precipitated by infections/some drugs (including aspirin, methylene blue, phenytoin, vitamin K, chloramphenicol), chronic anaemia (increased 2,3-DPG) of 5–10g/dl. (See also p214.)<sup>1</sup>

**Glycogenoses (glycogen storage diseases)****Type I (Von Gierke's disease)**

Mental retardation, hepatosplenomegaly, renal enlargement, hypoglycaemic convulsions, stomatitis, bleeding diathesis, leucopenia, tendency to hypoglycaemia during fasting, lactic acidosis, cautious attention to metabolic/homeostatic derangements, abdominal distension may affect ventilation.<sup>2</sup>

**Type II (Pompe's disease)**

Wide spectrum of severity. Neonatal acyanotic cardiac death to normal life, cardiomegaly/cardiomyopathy, progressive cardiac failure, outflow obstruction, generalised hypotonia, neurological deficits, macroglossia, normal glucose tolerance, postoperative respiratory insufficiency, potential exaggerated hyperkalaemic response to suxamethonium. Consider local anaesthetic alternatives.<sup>3</sup>

**Type III (Forbes' disease)**

Perioperative hypoglycaemia.

**Type IV (Andersen's disease)**

Hepatosplenomegaly, cirrhosis, hepatic dysfunction, severe growth retardation, death before 3yr, muscular hypotonia, muscle relaxants generally unnecessary, ↓ doses of IV drugs, prone to perioperative hypoglycaemia/heat loss.

**Type V (McArdle's disease)**

Muscle weakness, exercise-induced myoglobinuria, renal failure, perioperative hypoglycaemia, no firm clinical association with MH.<sup>4</sup>

**Goldenhar syndrome (oculoauriculovertebral syndrome, hemifacial microsomia)**

Eye/ear abnormalities, micrognathia, maxillary hypoplasia, cleft/high arched palate, cervical synostosis, congenital heart anomalies (Fallot/VSD), craniovertebral anomalies, atropine-resistant bradycardia. ⚠ Difficult intubation.<sup>5</sup>

**Goltz–Gorlin syndrome (focal dermal hypoplasia)**

Dental/facial asymmetry, stiff neck, hypertension, airway papillomatosis. ⚠ Difficult airway.<sup>6</sup>

**Goodpasture's syndrome**

Severe repeated intrapulmonary haemorrhages with fibrosis, restrictive lung defect, hypertension, anaemia, renal failure.

### Gorham syndrome ('disappearing bone disease')

Massive osteolysis—replacement of bone by fibrovascular tissue (most common in second/third decade), pathological fractures, lymphangiomatosis, respiratory and neurological deficits, relapsing pleural effusions, chylothorax/pericardium. ► Assess respiratory function, check cervical spine (often involved), avoid suxamethonium (may cause/worsen pathological fractures), consider postoperative ICU respiratory support, poor prognosis.<sup>7</sup>

### Grönblad–Strandberg disease, see *pseudoxanthoma elasticum*

### Haemochromatosis ('bronze diabetes')

Iron deposits in liver/pancreas/joints/skin/heart, cirrhosis, diabetes, arthritis, late cardiac failure, may be having weekly venesections.

### Haemolytic uraemic syndrome

Triad of renal failure/haemolytic anaemia/thrombocytopenia, multisystem disorder may also involve CVS/respiratory/CNS/hepatic systems.<sup>8</sup>

### Haemorrhagic telangiectasia (Osler–Weber–Rendu syndrome)

Familial telangiectasia of mucous membranes (nose/oropharynx/viscera/skin), GI bleeding, repeated haemorrhages, bleeding difficult to control, may have pulmonary AV fistulae. ► Avoid trauma, invasive procedures complicated (poor tissues).<sup>9</sup>

### Hallermann–Streiff syndrome

Oculomandibulodyscephaly, dwarfism. ⚠ Direct laryngoscopy may be hazardous/difficult (brittle teeth, temporomandibular joint dislocation).

### Hallervorden–Spatz disease

Rare progressive disorder of basal ganglia, myotonia/dystonic posturing, scoliosis, dementia, trismus, volatile agents relieve the posturing (returns after discontinuation). ⚠ Difficult intubation.<sup>10</sup>

### Hand–Schüller–Christian disease (histiocytic granulomata)

Diabetes insipidus, hepatic failure, respiratory failure, pancytopenia, electrolyte problems. ⚠ Difficult intubation (small larynx).

### Hartnup disease

Defective tubular/jejunal reabsorption of most neutral amino acids leading to tryptophan malabsorption/nicotinamide deficiency, pellagra, psychiatric disorders, cerebellar ataxia.

1 Cappellini MD, Fiorelli G (2008). *Lancet*, **371**, 64–74.

2 Shenkman Z et al. (1996). *Can J Anaesth*, **43**, 467–470.

3 Ing RJ et al. (2004). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **14**, 514–519.

4 Bollig G et al. (2005). *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*, **49**, 1077–1083.

5 Sukhupragarn W, Rosenblatt WH (2008). *J Clin Anesth*, **20**, 214–217.

6 Holzman RS (1991). *J Clin Anesth*, **3**, 422–425.

7 Szabo C, Habre W (2000). *Anaesthesia*, **55**, 157–159.

8 Tobias JD (2007). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **17**, 584–587.

9 Waring PH et al. (1990). *Anesth Analg*, **71**, 96–99.

10 Hurtado P et al (2009). *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*, **56**, 180–184.



**Hay–Wells syndrome**

Maxillary hypoplasia/micrognathia/palatal hypoplasia. ⚠ Difficult intubation.

**Hecht–Beals syndrome (trismus pseudocamptodactyly/ Dutch–Kentucky syndrome)**

Arachnodactyly, kyphoscoliosis, multiple joint contractures, crumpled ears, ventilatory defect, mitral valve prolapse, aortic root dilatation. ⚠ Difficult intubation (restricted mouth opening).<sup>1,2</sup>

**Henoch–Schönlein purpura**

Multisystem IgA-mediated vasculitis, rash, arthralgia, abdominal pain, normal platelet count (?abnormal aggregation), haemorrhagic risk, nephritis (30%) may → renal failure.<sup>3</sup>

**Hepatolenticular degeneration (Kinnier–Wilson disease)**

Defective copper metabolism, hepatic failure, epilepsy, trismus, weakness. Sensitive to muscle relaxants (see also Wilson's disease).

**Holt–Oram syndrome (hand–heart syndrome)**

Rare disorder combining congenital cardiac anomalies (ASD/VSD/occasionally others) and upper limbs (hypoplastic thumbs/clavicles), dysrhythmias frequent even with normal anatomy, risk of sudden death, hypoplastic vasculature. ► Potentially difficult venous access (especially central), often previous cardiac surgery.<sup>4</sup>

**Homocystinuria**

Homocysteine excreted in urine, mental handicap, Marfan-like syndrome, venous/arterial thrombotic episodes, pulmonary embolisms (requiring heparinisation), renal failure, hypoglycaemia.<sup>5</sup>

**Hunter syndrome (mucopolysaccharidosis II), see mucopolysaccharidoses****Huntington's chorea/juvenile Huntington's disease**

Similar conditions, progressive degenerative involuntary choreoathetoid movements and dementia, dysphagia/regurgitation → ⚠ pulmonary aspiration, poor respiratory function, possible associated autonomic neuropathy, depression/apathy → cachexia and malnourishment. ► Exaggerated response to thiopental and suxamethonium.<sup>6,7</sup>

**Hurler syndrome (gargoylism, mucopolysaccharidosis I)**

Most severe mucopolysaccharidosis, death at early age. See *mucopolysaccharidoses*.

**Hutchinson–Gilford syndrome (premature ageing syndrome), see progeria****Hyperviscosity syndrome (Waldenström's macroglobulinaemia, multiple myeloma)**

Thrombotic risk. Preoperative plasmapheresis may be needed.

### Hypokalaemic familial periodic paralysis

Attacks of severe muscle weakness/flaccid muscle paralysis with ↓ serum  $K^+$ , perioperative attack may compromise spontaneous ventilation, avoid drugs known to cause  $K^+$  shifts (e.g.  $\beta$ -agonists), arrhythmias, sensitive to muscle relaxants.<sup>8,9</sup>

### Hypoplastic left heart syndrome

Hypoplasia of LV/mitral valve/ascending aorta, aortic valve atresia. Previously 100% mortality, survival depends upon PDA, balance of PVR and SVR (both circulations in parallel supplied by single ventricle), control of pulmonary blood flow. ► VF may occur with surgical manipulation.<sup>10</sup>

### Ichthyosis

Hyperkeratotic plates of flaky/fissured skin. ► Difficulty placing and securing catheters/cannulae/electrodes (consider bandaging), perioperative temperature control.<sup>11</sup>

### Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (see also p220)

Thrombocytopenia  $<50 \times 10^9/l$ , petechiae, consider platelet infusions, beware rebound thrombosis after splenectomy. ► Minimise airway trauma (consider LMA), avoid regional blocks, avoid heparin/aspirin.

### Isaac's syndrome (continuous muscle fibre activity syndrome, neuromyotonia, quantal squander)

Autoimmune condition, continuous involuntary muscle fibre activity, fasciculation, delayed relaxation, ataxia, incoordination, anticonvulsants effective, regional blocks acceptable. ⚠ Exaggerated response to muscle relaxants, ↑ risk of aspiration (bulbar involvement).<sup>12</sup>

### Ivemark syndrome, see asplenia syndrome

### Jervell-Lange-Nielsen syndrome

Congenital prolonged QT interval/enlarged T wave, deafness. ⚠ Prone to ventricular arrhythmias/cardiac arrest, consider pacemaker insertion/ $\beta$ -blockade (for CVS stability), select drugs/technique known to minimise catecholamine levels.<sup>13</sup>

- 1 Nagata O et al. (1999). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **9**, 444–447.
- 2 Vaghadia H, Blackstock D (1988). *Can J Anaesth*, **35**, 80–85.
- 3 Sedeeck KA, Liu J (2009). *Pediatr Anaesth*, **19**, 811–812.
- 4 Ioscoich A et al. (2007). *Int J Obstet Anesth*, **16**, 86–88.
- 5 Yamada T et al. (2005). *J Clin Anesth*, **17**, 565–567.
- 6 Cangemi CF, Miller RJ (1998). *Anesth Prog*, **45**, 150–153.
- 7 Gupta K, Leng CP (2000). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **10**, 107–109.
- 8 Ahlawat SK, Sachdev A (1999). *Postgrad Med J*, **75**, 193–197.
- 9 O'Neill GN. (2006). *Int Anesthesiol Clin*, **44**(2), 91–106.
- 10 Walker A et al. (2009). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **19**, 119–125.
- 11 Kubota R et al. (2003). *Masui*, **52**, 1332–1334.
- 12 Ginsburg G et al. (2009). *Muscle & Nerve*, **40**, 139–142.
- 13 Ryan H (1988). *Can J Anaesth*, **35**, 422–424.

**Jeune's syndrome (asphyxiating thoracic dystrophy)**

Pulmonary hypoplasia, severe thoracic defect preventing normal inter-costal function, renal dysfunction, myocardial dysfunction in older patients. ► Minimise ventilator pressures.<sup>1</sup>

**Joubert syndrome**

Abnormal respiratory control (brainstem/cerebellar hypoplasia), hypotonia, ataxia, mental retardation, sensitive to respiratory depressant effects of anaesthetic agents (including N<sub>2</sub>O). ► Spontaneously breathing general anaesthetic may be problematic, special care with opioids (↑ apnoea time), close postoperative observation.<sup>2,3</sup>

**Kartagener's syndrome**

Abnormal cilia → sinusitis, bronchiectasis, and situs inversus in 50% of cases, dextrocardia (usually structurally normal in situs inversus), immunoincompetence, chronic/recurrent chest infections. Fully assess CVS/RS function, preoperative physiotherapy. ► Reverse ECG lead position/defibrillator paddles, etc., right lateral displacement (obstetrics), humidify gases, local/regional block preferred.<sup>4</sup>

**Kawasaki disease (mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome)**

Acute childhood (<5yr) febrile illness → coronary arteritis, aneurysms/thrombotic occlusions/arrhythmias/sudden death, accelerated atherosclerosis → IHD. Degree of CVS dysfunction determines technique. ⚠ Invasive lines have ↑ complication risk.<sup>5</sup>

**Kearns–Sayre syndrome**

Mitochondrial myopathy, cardiac conduction abnormalities common (range from bundle branch block to third-degree AV block), sudden death, generalised CNS degeneration, progressive external ophthalmoplegia, progressive skeletal muscle weakness → respiratory failure (care with opioids). ► Possible sensitivity to induction agents/muscle relaxants, consider inhalation induction with deep anaesthesia intubation, may need rapid cardiac pacing.<sup>6</sup>

**Kelly–Paterson syndrome, see Plummer–Vinson syndrome****Kenny–Caffey syndrome**

Proportional dwarfism, macrocephaly, eye anomalies, dysmorphic facies, mandibular hypoplasia, episodic hypocalcaemic tetany, may be associated with Mounier–Kuhn syndrome, hypocalcaemia, anaemia, thoracic/skeletal abnormalities. ⚠ Difficult airway.<sup>7</sup>

**King Denborough syndrome**

Slowly progressive myopathy, short stature, kyphoscoliosis, pectus carinatum, cryptorchidism, characteristic facial appearance. ⚠ ?MH risk.<sup>8</sup>

**Klinefelter's syndrome**

Chromosomal abnormality 47XXY, poor sexual development, tall stature, reduced intelligence, vertebral collapse from osteoporosis, may have ↓ muscle bulk/power. ► Care during positioning.<sup>9</sup>

### Klippel–Feil syndrome

Three main types differ in severity. Congenital fusion of cervical and/or thoracic vertebrae, short neck, limited range of motion, possible cervical cord compression, syncope on sudden rotation of head, kyphoscoliosis, cardiac/respiratory/renal anomalies. ⚠ Difficult intubation, keep neck in neutral axis (basilar insufficiency).<sup>10</sup>

### Klippel–Trenaunay syndrome (angio-osteohypertrophy)

Generalised haemangiomas, soft tissue hypertrophy, bone overgrowth and/or A-V malformations may → high output cardiac failure, consumptive coagulopathy (see also *Proteus syndrome*). ⚠ Possible airway problems, possible epidural/subdural vascular malformations (consider neurovascular imaging before neuraxial block).<sup>11,12</sup>

### Kniest syndrome

Dwarfism, tracheomalacia, micrognathia, cleft palate, stiff atlanto-occipital instability. ⚠ Difficult intubation.<sup>13</sup>

### Kugelberg–Welander syndrome (spinal muscular atrophy type III), see *spinal muscular atrophy*

### Larsen's syndrome

Multiple congenital dislocations, unstable cervical spine, subglottic stenosis, prominent forehead, flattened face, chronic respiratory disease from kyphoscoliosis. ⚠ Difficult intubation.<sup>14</sup>

### Laurence–Moon syndrome, see also *Bardet–Biedl syndrome*

Mental retardation, spastic paraplegia, retinitis pigmentosa, hypogonadism.

### Leber's hereditary optic neuropathy

Mitochondrial DNA mutation → optic nerve atrophy. ► Possible idiopathic hypoventilation, sensitivity to sedatives/opioids reported.<sup>15,16</sup>

### Leigh syndrome

Necrotising encephalomyelopathy, abnormal mitochondrial function, abnormal central respiratory control, cardiomyopathy, hypotonia, seizures, ↑ reflux/aspiration. ⚠ Postoperative respiratory failure.<sup>17</sup>

- 1 Borland LM (1987). *Anesthesiology*, **66**, 86–88.
- 2 Vodopich DJ, Gordon GJ (2004). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **14**, 871–873.
- 3 Galante D et al. (2009). *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*, **53**, 693–694.
- 4 Dylan Bould M, Gothard JW (2006). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **16**, 977–980.
- 5 Morrison JE et al. (2005). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **15**, 1053–1058.
- 6 Baldwin MK, Nembhard VN (2009). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **19**, 639–640.
- 7 Janke EL et al. (1996). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **6**, 235–238.
- 8 Habib AS et al. (2003). *Can J Anaesth*, **50**, 589–592.
- 9 Lanfranco F et al. (2004). *Lancet*, **364**, 273–283.
- 10 Stallmer ML et al. (2008). *J Clin Anesth*, **20**, 447–451.
- 11 Christie IW et al. (1998). *Anaesth Intensive Care*, **26**, 319–321.
- 12 Sivaprakasam MJ, Dolak JA (2006). *Can J Anesth*, **53**, 487–491.
- 13 Martin Felius G et al. (1985). *Rev Esp Anestesiol Reanim*, **32**, 127–129.
- 14 Lauder GR, Sumner E (1995). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **5**, 133–138.
- 15 Hunter AR (1984). *Anaesthesia*, **39**, 781–783.
- 16 Sadler M et al. (2002). *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*, **73**, 347–348.
- 17 Shear T, Tobias JD (2004). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **14**, 792–797.

**LEOPARD syndrome**

Rare inherited progressive disorder related to Noonan syndrome. Lentigines/ECG abnormality/Ocular hypertelorism, obstructive cardiomyopathy/Pulmonary valve stenosis/Abnormal ♂ genitalia/Retarded growth/Deafness. ► CVS assessment will determine technique, cardiomyopathy may be occult.<sup>1</sup>

**Leprechaunism (Donohue syndrome)**

'Gnome' facies, dwarfism, cutis laxa, acanthosis nigricans, adipose tissue atrophy, extreme wasting, dysphagia requiring parenteral feeding, mentally defective (see *cutis laxa*; *dwarfism*), abnormal insulin receptor → hyperinsulinism. ► Maintain blood sugar during fasting.<sup>2</sup>

**Lesch–Nyhan syndrome (hyperuricaemia)**

Disorder of purine metabolism, hyperuricaemia, spasticity, choreoathetosis, dystonia, self-injurious behaviour, aggression, normal cognitive function, seizures, possible atlantoaxial instability, sudden unexplained death, abnormalities in respiration, apnoea, chronic pulmonary aspiration, abnormal adrenergic pressor response—severe bradycardia. ► Caution with exogenous catecholamines, ↑ incidence of vomiting/regurgitation.<sup>3</sup>

**Letterer–Siwe disease (histiocytosis-X)**

Histiocytic granulomata in viscera/bones, similar clinical course to acute leukaemia, pancytopenia, anaemia, purpura, haemorrhage, pulmonary infiltration, hepatic involvement, tooth loss.<sup>4</sup>

**Lipodystrophy (total lipodystrophy)**

Generalised loss of body fat, fatty fibrotic liver, hepatic failure, portal hypertension, splenomegaly, hypersplenism, anaemia, thrombocytopenia, nephropathy, renal failure, diabetes mellitus. ► Care with temperature.<sup>5</sup>

**Long QT syndrome**

Mutations in cardiac ion channels, prolonged ventricular repolarisation, genetic/drug induced, 60% of patients are symptomatic (syncope, seizure-like episodes, cardiac arrest). ► High risk of perioperative malignant ventricular arrhythmias (may be refractory), preoperative β-blockade, normalise all electrolytes, prevent sympathetic activation (pain, laryngoscopy, extubation, normocapnia, etc.), invasive monitoring advisable, maintain temperature (hypothermia prolongs QT), adequate analgesia essential, torsades de pointes may be self-limiting/require cardioversion/magnesium/pacing, consider postoperative ICU.<sup>6</sup>

**Lowe syndrome (oculocerebrorenal syndrome)**

Metabolic acidosis due to renal-tubular dysfunction, renal failure, convulsions, mental retardation, abnormal skull shape, bone fragility, hypotonia, hypocalcaemia, glaucoma/cataracts.<sup>7</sup>

### Maffucci syndrome

Progressive condition. Enchondromatosis and multiple soft tissue haemangiomas (including airway/cervical spine), ↑ risk of malignancy, intracranial lesions, anaemia, coagulopathy, pathological fractures, GI bleeding. ► ↑ risk of epidural haematoma (spinal lesions), assess for ↑ ICP, may be sensitive to vasodilating drugs.<sup>8</sup>

### Mandibulofacial dysostosis (Treacher–Collins syndrome)

Mandibulofacial dysostosis, deafness, hypoplasia of facial bones (mandible/maxilla/cheek), characteristic facies, cardiovascular malformations. ► Postoperative laryngeal/pharyngeal oedema may develop, difficult airway, sleep apnoea, respiratory distress, sudden death all reported.<sup>9</sup>

### Maple syrup urine disease

Branched chain ketoacid decarboxylase deficiency, failure to thrive, fits, cerebral degeneration, neonatal acidosis.<sup>10</sup>

### Marchiafava–Micheli syndrome

Autoimmune haemolytic anaemia, venous thromboembolism, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea.

### Marfan's syndrome

Autosomal dominant disorder of connective tissue metabolism, tall with long/thin fingers, dilation of ascending aorta, dissecting aneurysms, aortic/mitral regurgitation, coronary thrombosis, cataracts/retinal detachment/lens dislocation, emphysema, spontaneous pneumothorax, pectus excavatum, beware possible tracheomalacia, obstructive sleep apnoea, easy joint dislocation, cervical spine bony/ligamentous abnormality (routine X-ray not indicated), high arched palate, crowded teeth, kyphoscoliosis. ► Control BP, perioperative β-blockade if not already treated, minimise sympathetic response, consider invasive monitoring, central blocks are acceptable (see also p64).<sup>11</sup>

### Maroteaux–Lamy syndrome (mucopolysaccharidosis VI), see mucopolysaccharidoses

- 1 Torres J et al. (2004). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **14**, 352–356.
- 2 Garcia-Candel A et al. (2007). *Rev Esp Anesthesiol Reanim*, **54**, 256–257.
- 3 Larson LO, Wilkins RG (1985). *Anesthesiology*, **63**, 197–199.
- 4 Broscheit J et al. (2004). *Eur J Anaesthesiol*, **21**, 919–921.
- 5 Koga Y et al. (1987). *J Anesth*, **1**, 112–114.
- 6 Booker PD et al. (2003). *Br J Anaesth*, **90**, 349–366.
- 7 Saricaoglu F et al. (2004). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **14**, 530–532.
- 8 Chan SK et al. (1998). *Anaesth Intensive Care*, **26**, 586–589.
- 9 Nagamine Y, Kurahashi K (2007). *Anesth Analg*, **105**, 626–628.
- 10 Fuentes-Garcia D, Falcon-Arana L (2009). *Br J Anaesth*, **102**, 144–145.
- 11 Singh SI et al. (2008). *Can J Anaesth*, **55**, 526–531.

**Marshall–Smith syndrome**

Accelerated bone maturation, dysmorphic facial features, airway abnormalities including possible atlantoaxial instability, laryngomalacia/tracheomalacia, patients often die in early infancy from respiratory complications.

► Facemask ventilation may be impossible, maintain spontaneous breathing if possible, consider elective use of nasopharyngeal airway during induction/emergence.<sup>1,2</sup>

**Meckel's syndrome (Meckel–Gruber syndrome)**

Microcephaly, micrognathia, cleft epiglottis/palate, congenital CVS disease, polycystic kidneys, renal failure, encephalocele. ⚠ Difficult intubation.<sup>3</sup>

**Meig's syndrome**

Large ovarian cyst in peritoneal space (space/pressure effects) and pleural effusion, may → respiratory distress, poor nutrition. ► Intravascular volume correction.<sup>4</sup>

**Menkes' disease**

Suppression of copper-dependent enzymes resulting from copper deficiency, kinky hair, bone/connective tissue lesions, hypothermia, seizures, mental retardation. ⚠ ↑ gastro-oesophageal reflux, airway complications (poor pharyngeal motor tone).<sup>5</sup>

**MERRF syndrome**

Mitochondrial encephalomyopathy, mixed seizures, myoclonus, progressive ataxia, spasticity, mild myopathy, growth retardation, deafness, dementia.<sup>6</sup>

**Mikulicz's syndrome**

Salivary/lacrimal gland enlargement, anticholinergics probably best avoided. ► Glandular tissue may complicate airway management.

**Miller–Fisher syndrome (variant of Guillain–Barré syndrome (p264))****Miller's syndrome**

Rare congenital disorder, facies similar to Treacher–Collins syndrome, congenital heart disease (ASD/VSD/PDA), limb abnormalities. ► Consider early tracheostomy for airway maintenance (especially if repeated procedures planned), difficult venous access, ↑ gastric reflux.

**Moebius syndrome**

Multiple cranial nerve palsies, orofacial malformations, limb anomalies, ↑ incidence of other anomalies (congenital cardiac/spinal/alveolar hypoventilation/peripheral neuropathies), ↑ risk of aspiration (↑ drooling/gastric reflux). ⚠ Difficult intubation, ↑ risk of postoperative respiratory failure.<sup>7</sup>

**Morquio syndrome (mucopolysaccharidosis IV)**

Short stature, short neck, hypoplastic odontoid/atlandoaxial instability (compression of long tracts/paraplegia can occur), potential narrowed tracheal lumen (infiltration), sleep apnoea, loss of muscle tone, hypermobility/loose skin, aortic incompetence, prominent sternum, end organ dysfunction, respiratory and cardiac failure in early adult life. ⚠ Difficult airway.<sup>8</sup>

### **Moschcowitz disease (thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura)**

Triad of haemolytic anaemia/consumptive thrombocytopenia/CNS dysfunction, renal disease, bleeding risk, often need splenectomy (rebound thrombocytosis). ► Padding/positioning important (see also TTP).<sup>9</sup>

### **Mounier-Kuhn syndrome**

Diffuse tracheobronchomegaly, communicating paratracheal cysts. ► Intubate trachea/pack pharynx if ventilation needed.<sup>10</sup>

### **Moya moya disease (in the German literature ‘Nishimoto–Takeuchi–Kudo–Suzuki’s disease’)**

Severe internal carotid artery stenosis, fine network of vessels around basal ganglia, CNS deterioration can follow general anaesthesia. ► Optimise cerebral perfusion (BP/CO<sub>2</sub>, etc.).<sup>11, 12</sup>

### **Mucopolysaccharidoses (Hunter, Hurler, Morquio, Maroteaux–Lamy, Scheie syndromes)**

Abnormal mucopolysaccharide metabolism (lack of lysosomal enzyme), anatomical abnormalities/organ dysfunction from progressive deposition in tissues, upper airway obstruction (infiltration of lips/tongue/epiglottis/tonsils/adenoids) and lower airway, obstructive/restrictive ventilatory defects (abnormal laryngeal/tracheal cartilage, copious airway secretions, vertebrae/thoracic deformities), recurrent infection, protruberant abdomen, ↑ muscle tone, cardiovascular abnormalities (coronary infiltration/valvular disease/myocardial insufficiency). ⚠ Difficult intubation (craniofacial abnormalities—short neck/stiffened temporomandibular joints/large tongue/anterior larynx), difficulty increases with age, generally die from pneumonia/cardiac complications. (See also Further reading.)<sup>13</sup>

### **Multiple myeloma**

Neoplastic proliferation of plasma cells characterised by immunoglobulin disorders, renal failure, haemorrhagic tendency, hyperviscosity syndrome, anaemia, ↑ susceptibility to infections, hypercalcaemia, pathological fractures → care positioning.<sup>14</sup>

- 1 Antila H et al. (1998). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **8**, 429–432.
- 2 Darnedde G et al. (1998). *Can J Anaesth*, **45**, 660–663.
- 3 Miyazu M et al. (2005). *J Anesth*, **19**, 309–310.
- 4 Hirota M et al. (1995). *Masui*, **44**, 874–879.
- 5 Passariello M et al. (2008). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **18**, 1225–1226.
- 6 Vilela H et al. (2005). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **15**, 77–79.
- 7 Gondipalli P, Tobias JD (2006). *J Clin Anesth*, **18**, 55–59.
- 8 Morgan KA et al. (2002). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **12**, 641–644.
- 9 Dias PJ, Gopal S (2009). *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 444–446.
- 10 Bourne TM et al. (1995). *Anaesthesia*, **50**, 545–546.
- 11 Baykan N et al. (2005). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **15**, 1111–1115.
- 12 Kato R et al. (2006). *Int J Obstet Anesth*, **15**, 152–158.
- 13 Walker RW et al. (2003). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **13**, 441–447.
- 14 Wake M et al. (1995). *Masui*, **44**, 1282–1284.



**Myasthenic syndrome (Eaton–Lambert syndrome)**  
(see also p258)

Paraneoplastic condition, defective acetylcholine release at neuromuscular junctions, proximal muscle weakness including ocular/bulbar muscles, post-tetanic facilitation, respiratory complications, autonomic dysfunction. ► Impaired oesophageal motility, sensitive to muscle relaxants.<sup>1,2</sup>

**Myositis ossificans, see fibrodysplasia ossificans progressiva****Myotonia congenita (Thomsen's disease) (see also p267)**

Defective skeletal muscle  $\text{Cl}^-$  channel → failure of muscle relaxation, can be precipitated by cold, surgery, diathermy, anticholinesterases. Widespread dystrophy and/or hypertrophy, palatopharyngeal dysfunction, ↑ aspiration risk, cardiomyopathy. ⚠ Suxamethonium may cause myotonia with difficult intubation/ventilation, normal response to non-depolarising muscle relaxants, no absolute association with MH.<sup>3</sup>

**Nager syndrome**

Oromandibular hypogenesis (like Treacher–Collins syndrome), vertebral malformations (cervical spine involvement), congenital cardiac defects. ⚠ Mandibular/midface manifestations may complicate perioperative/post-operative airway management.<sup>4</sup>

**Nance–Insley syndrome (otospondylomegaepiphyseal dysplasia 'OSMED')**

Disrupted cartilaginous growth leading to midface hypoplasia/micrognathia/cleft palate, disproportionate short stature/short limbs, progressive sensorineural deafness, joint contractures, vertebral abnormalities. ⚠ Difficult airway.<sup>5</sup>

**Nemaline myopathy**

Congenital myopathy, non-progressive hypotonic symmetrical muscle weakness (including skeletal/diaphragm, sparing cardiac/smooth), rarely cardiomyopathy, skeletal deformities, facial dysmorphism, chronic aspiration, poor respiratory function (restrictive). ⚠ Abnormal drug responses (including relaxants), MH not described.<sup>6,7</sup>

**Nesidioblastosis (congenital hyperinsulinism)**

Autonomous insulin secretion unaffected by blood glucose, neonatal/infantile apnoea, hypoglycaemia, hypotonia, seizures, usually require total pancreatectomy. ► Monitor perioperative blood glucose.<sup>8</sup>

**Neurofibromatosis**

Café au lait spots, cutaneous neurofibromas, occult pheochromocytoma (5% of patients) in neurofibromatosis type 1, intracranial/neuraxial tumours more common in neurofibromatosis type 2. Multisystem involvement requires thorough preoperative assessment. ⚠ Airway neurofibromas may → difficult airway, CNS imaging before neuraxial techniques, avoid proconvulsants.<sup>9,10</sup>

### Niemann–Pick disease

Sphingomyelin accumulation in organs (liver/spleen/bone marrow), progressive central/peripheral nervous system degeneration, respiratory failure, mental retardation, anaemia, hepatosplenomegaly, thrombocytopenia. ⚠ Difficult intubation/ventilation.<sup>11</sup>

### Noonan's syndrome

Short stature, cardiac defects (pulmonary stenosis/hypertrophic cardiomyopathy/VSD), mental retardation, micrognathia, short webbed neck, pectus excavatum, vertebral anomalies, lymphoedema, platelet/coagulation defects, renal failure. ⚠ Difficult intubation.<sup>12</sup>

### Ondine's curse/Ondine–Hirschsprung disease, see *alveolar hypoventilation*

### Opitz–Frias syndrome (hypospadias dysphagia syndrome)

Recurrent pulmonary aspiration of intestinal contents, achalasia of the oesophagus, subglottic stenosis, hypertelorism, micrognathia, high arched palate.<sup>13</sup>

### Osler–Weber–Rendu syndrome, see *haemorrhagic telangiectasia*

### Osteogenesis imperfecta (brittle bone disease)

Inherited connective tissue disorder. Four types ranging in severity, bone fragility, frequent fractures and/or deformities, blue sclera (not all types), excessive bleeding. ► Teeth easily damaged, tendency to hyperthermia—probably not MH.<sup>14</sup>

### Osteopetrosis (Albers–Schönberg disease)

Group of disorders. Increased bone density, changes in modelling with overgrowth, range of severity, brittle bones, nerve compression syndromes, mental retardation, hearing loss, leucoerythroblastic anaemia (bone marrow involvement), thrombocytopenia, hepatosplenomegaly (↓ FRC), ↓ myocardial contractility (hypocalcaemia). ⚠ Head/mandibular involvement may affect intubation, cervicomedullary stenosis (cord trauma during intubation). Take care moving and positioning—risk of fractures.<sup>15</sup>

- 1 Itoh H et al. (2001). *Anaesthesia*, **56**, 562–567.
- 2 Telford RJ, Holloway TE (1990). *Br J Anaesth*, **64**, 363–366.
- 3 Farbu E et al. (2003). *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand*, **47**, 630–634.
- 4 Groeper K et al. (2002). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **12**, 365–368.
- 5 Denton R (1996). *Anaesthesia*, **51**, 100–101.
- 6 Asai T et al. (1992). *Anaesthesia*, **47**, 405–408.
- 7 Klingler W et al. (2009) *Anesth Analg*, **109**, 1167–1173.
- 8 Hardy OT, Litman RS (2007). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **17**, 616–621.
- 9 Hirsch NP et al. (2001). *Br J Anaesth*, **86**, 555–564.
- 10 Spiegel JE et al. (2005). *Int J Obstet Anesth*, **14**, 336–339.
- 11 Schilling T et al. (2007). *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth*, **21**, 428–431.
- 12 McBain J et al. (2006). *Can J Anaesth*, **53**, 274–278.
- 13 Bolsin SN, Gillbe C (1985). *Anaesthesia*, **40**, 1189–1193.
- 14 Karabiyik L et al. (2004). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **14**, 524–525.
- 15 Burt N et al. (1999). *Anesth Analg*, **88**, 1292–1297.

**Paramyotonia congenita (Eulenburg's disease)**

Variant of hyperkalaemic periodic paralysis, cold-induced myotonia, flaccid paralysis, worsened by exercise. Assess sensitivity to cold/frequency of myotonic episodes. ► Warm theatre/fluids/patient, probably normal response to non-depolarising muscle relaxants, avoid suxamethonium ( $\uparrow K^+$ ), central neural blocks safe, no clear MH tendency (see also p267).<sup>1,2</sup>

**Patau's syndrome (trisomy 13)**

Multiple craniofacial/cardiac/neurological/renal anomalies, 'rockerbottom feet', thoracic kyphoscoliosis, possible neural tube defects, ineffective cough, full cardiac assessment (severe malformations in 80% of cases), impaired renal function, polycythaemia, platelet dysfunction.  $\Delta$  Difficult airway, postoperative respiratory problems, apnoeic episodes.<sup>3</sup>

**Pemphigus vulgaris**

Autoimmune disease, impaired cell adhesion within epidermis, bullous eruptions of skin/mucous membrane, possible ulceration/bullae/oedema of glottis after intubation. ► Lubricate everything well, take care with fluid/electrolyte balance (include losses from bullae), perioperative steroids to reduce exacerbation, regional/general anaesthetic acceptable, avoid friction (airway manipulation/monitors/positioning lines, etc.).<sup>4</sup>

**Pendred's syndrome**

Genetic defect in thyroid hormone synthesis. Hypothyroidism, goitre, deafness. Treat as hypothyroidism.<sup>5</sup>

**Pfeiffer syndrome (acrocephalosyndactyly type V)**

Growth/developmental retardation, sagittal craniosynostosis, hypertelorism, low-set ears, micrognathia with mandibular ankylosis, congenital heart defects, genital anomalies, solid cartilaginous trachea lacking rings may be present.<sup>6</sup>

**Pharyngeal pouch (Zenker's diverticulum)**

Epithelial-lined diverticulum above the upper oesophageal sphincter, often asymptomatic, dysphagia. Empty pouch manually (by patient) prior to induction or carefully with large bore nasopharyngeal tube, consider intubation in head-up position or under local anaesthetic, avoid coughing. ► Tracheal soiling not prevented by cricoid pressure.<sup>7</sup>

**Phenylketonuria**

Defective phenylalanine-4-hydroxylase, mental retardation, cerebral damage, epilepsy, sensitive to opioids/barbiturates. Consider inhalation induction, may have B12 deficiency. ► Avoid  $N_2O$  and proconvulsants.<sup>8</sup>

**Pickwickian syndrome**

Morbid obesity, episodic somnolence, hypoventilation, hypoxaemia, polycythaemia, pulmonary hypertension, cardiac failure, prone to wound infection, DVT/PE risk. ► Difficult IV access/positioning, sensitive to respiratory depressants, regional anaesthesia ideal for peripheral surgery, alert ICU following major surgery, CPAP beneficial.<sup>9</sup>

### Pierre–Robin syndrome

Cleft palate, micrognathia, mandibular hypoplasia, receding mandible fails to hold tongue forward—falls against posterior pharyngeal wall, congenital heart disease. ⚠️ Difficult airway.<sup>10</sup>

### Plott's syndrome

Laryngeal-abductor paralysis, retardation, sixth nerve palsy, stridor at rest, cyanosis during crying/exertion. ➤ ↑ risk of postoperative stridor/coughing.<sup>11</sup>

### Plummer–Vinson syndrome (Paterson–Brown–Kelly syndrome)

Upper oesophageal web, dysphagia, regurgitation risk, iron-deficiency anaemia, glossitis, angular stomatitis, ↑ risk of postcricoid carcinoma. ⚠️ Regurgitation risk.<sup>12</sup>

### Pneumatosis cystoides intestinalis

Multiple intramural gas-filled cysts in gut, disturbed bowel function, systemic sclerosis association. ➤ Avoid N<sub>2</sub>O.<sup>13</sup>

### Pompe's disease, see glycogenoses, type II

### Post-poliomyelitis syndrome

New neuromuscular symptoms occurring >15yr after clinical stability attained in patients with prior history of symptomatic poliomyelitis, limb atrophy, slow progression with periods of stabilisation, bulbar dysfunction, cold intolerance. ⚠️ Respiratory muscle involvement, sleep apnoea.<sup>14</sup>

### Potter's syndrome (bilateral renal agenesis)

Incompatible with life. Pulmonary hypoplasia, characteristic facial features. ⚠️ Ventilation may be impossible despite intubation.

### Prader–Willi syndrome

Mental retardation, severe obesity, polyphagia, dental caries, congenital muscle hypotonia, short stature, hypogonadism, cardiovascular anomalies, arrhythmias, altered thermoregulation, convulsions. ➤ Difficult venous access, blood glucose should be maintained IV during fasting, perioperative respiratory problems may occur.<sup>15</sup>

- 1 Kaneda T et al. (2007). *J Anesth*, **21**, 500–503.
- 2 Rosenbaum HK, Miller JD (2002). *Anesthesiol Clin N Am*, **20**, 623–664.
- 3 Pollard RC et al. (1996). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **6**, 151–153.
- 4 Mahalingam TG et al. (2000). *Anaesthesia*, **55**, 160–162.
- 5 Reardon W (1999). *J Med Genet*, **36**, 595–598.
- 6 Moore MH et al. (1995). *Cleft Palate Craniofac J*, **32**, 62–70.
- 7 Cope R, Spargo P (1990). *Anesth Analg*, **71**, 312.
- 8 Dal D, Celiker V (2004). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **14**, 701–702.
- 9 Neuman GG et al. (1986). *Anesth Analg*, **65**, 985–987.
- 10 Semjen F et al. (2008). *Anaesthesia*, **63**, 147–150.
- 11 McDonald D (1998). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **8**, 155–157.
- 12 Hoffman RM, Jaffe PE (1995). *Arch Intern Med*, **155**, 2008–2011.
- 13 Sutton DN, Poskitt KR (1984). *Anaesthesia*, **39**, 776–780.
- 14 Lambert DA et al. (2005). *Anesthesiology*, **103**, 638–644.
- 15 Lirk P et al. (2004). *Eur J Anaesthesiol*, **21**, 831–833.

**Progeria**

Premature ageing of skin, bones and cardiovascular system → arthritis/IHD/hypertension/cardiomyopathy at young chronological age. Plan technique around 'physiological age'. ⚠ Micrognathia, small mouth, abnormal dentition may → difficult ventilation/intubation.<sup>1</sup>

**Progressive external ophthalmoplegia (PEO)**

Progressive mitochondrial myopathy, ptosis, diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, short stature. ► Sensitive to all induction agents, ↑ MH risk.<sup>2</sup>

**Proteus syndrome**

Congenital progressive hamartomatous disorder, partial gigantism, hemihypertrophy (often whole side of the body), macrocephaly, scoliosis, cervical spine abnormalities, cystic lung changes, (probably explains 'the Elephant Man'). ⚠ Difficult airway, avoid N<sub>2</sub>O (see also *bullous cystic lung disease*; *Klippel–Trenaunay syndrome*).<sup>3</sup>

**Prune-belly syndrome (Eagle–Barrett syndrome)**

Almost exclusively ♂. Absent abdominal muscles, genitourinary malformations/bilateral undescended testes, pulmonary hypoplasia, weak cough, congenital heart disease, skeletal anomalies, imperforate anus, careful fluid balance, renal failure may coexist. ⚠ Difficult airway (micrognathia), beware postoperative respiratory distress.<sup>4</sup>

**Pseudoxanthoma elasticum (Grönblad–Strandberg disease)**

Hereditary disorder of elastic tissue. Four types—variable features, fragile connective tissue, vascular complications (slow progressive occlusive arterial disease), retinal changes with early blindness/myopia, blue sclera, high arched palate, lungs not affected, valvular disease/hypertension/IHD/arrhythmias. ► Fragile tissue—haemorrhage with minor trauma (including airway), care in fixing IV lines.<sup>5</sup>

**Pulmonary cysts**

Can ↑ in size and rupture during anaesthesia (especially with N<sub>2</sub>O).

**Refsum's disease**

Defective metabolism of phytanic acid, sensorimotor polyneuropathy, ataxia, retinal damage, deafness. ► Document any neurology before performing regional blocks.

**Rett syndrome**

Devastating disabling ♀ neurological disease, second commonest cause of mental retardation in ♀ after Down's. Long QT, sudden death, abnormal respiratory control when awake (hyperventilation/apnoea), respiratory pattern normal under general anaesthesia, full respiratory assessment ideal but may be technically difficult, ↑ pain threshold (abnormal processing), scoliosis, may be sensitive to sedative drugs/resistant to muscle relaxants, prolonged weaning. Consider depth of anaesthesia monitoring.<sup>6</sup>

### Rigid spine syndrome

Very limited spinal flexion, generalised proximal limb weakness, limb contractures, progressive scoliosis, restrictive ventilatory defect, cardiomyopathy, conduction defects, pulmonary hypertension, RV failure.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation, flexible ETT provides better fit in hyperextended trachea, avoid suxamethonium ( $\uparrow K^+$ ), low MH risk, care with muscle relaxants, careful positioning/padding, consider postoperative HDU/ICU.<sup>7</sup>

### Riley-Day syndrome, see *familial dysautonomia*

### Romano-Ward syndrome

Congenital delay of cardiac depolarisation, prolonged QT interval, risk of sudden death during induction of anaesthesia.  $\blacktriangleright$  Consider preoperative pacing.<sup>8</sup>

### Rubinstein-Taybi syndrome

Microcephaly, craniofacial abnormalities, mental retardation, broad thumbs/toes, recurrent respiratory infections/chronic lung disease, congenital heart disease (33% of cases), arrhythmias.  $\Delta$  Difficult airway.<sup>9</sup>

### Russell-Silver syndrome

Short stature, facial/limb asymmetry, mandibular hypoplasia, micrognathia, macroglossia, sweating, fasting hypoglycaemia, intelligence usually normal, congenital heart disease.  $\Delta$  Difficult airway (including mask fit), monitor neuromuscular block (normal doses may overdose), care with temperature control (minimal body fat) and blood glucose.<sup>10</sup>

### Saethre-Chotzen syndrome

Craniosynostosis, micrognathia, renal failure.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation.<sup>11</sup>

### Scheie syndrome (mucopolysaccharidosis V), see *mucopolysaccharidoses*

### Scimitar syndrome

Anomalous venous drainage of right lung into IVC, right lung hypoplasia. Scimitar-shaped radiographic shadow of the anomalous vein gives syndrome its name.

### Seckel syndrome

'Bird-headed dwarfism', microcephaly, mental retardation, micrognathia, beak-like nose, laryngeal stenosis.  $\blacktriangleright$  Potential difficult airway.<sup>12</sup>

1 Nguyen NH, Mayhew JF (2001). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **11**, 370–371.

2 Guasch E et al. (2003). *Anaesthesia*, **58**, 607–608.

3 Cekmen N et al. (2004). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **14**, 689–692.

4 Baris S et al. (2001). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **11**, 501–504.

5 Youngs PJ et al. (2003). *Int J Obstet Anesth*, **12**, 48–50.

6 Khalil SN et al. (2002). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **12**, 375.

7 Jorgensen BG et al. (1999). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **9**, 352–355.

8 Kubo K et al. (2005). *J Anesth*, **19**(2), 174–176.

9 Twigg SJ et al. (2002). *Br J Anaesth*, **89**, 786–787.

10 Scarlett MD, Tha MW (2006). *West Indian Med J*, **55**, 127–129.

11 Easely D, Mayhew JF (2008). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **18**, 81.

12 Rajamani A et al. (2005). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **15**, 338–341.

**Shprintzen syndrome (velocardiofacial syndrome)**

Caused by 22q11.2 deletion. See *DiGeorge syndrome*.

**Shy-Drager syndrome (central nervous and autonomic degeneration)**

Progressive neurovegetative disorder with primary autonomic failure, severe orthostatic hypotension/syncope, anhidrosis, disordered thermoregulation, impotence/urinary incontinence, respiratory obstruction/sleep apnoea.  $\Delta$   $\uparrow$  aspiration risk (gut motility disorder plus laryngeal weakness), IPPV may cause CVS instability (reduced venous return—ensure normovolaemia), regional blocks used successfully, consider fludrocortisone to sustain plasma volume.<sup>1,2</sup>

**Simmond's syndrome and Sheehan's syndrome (postpartum pituitary necrosis)**

Pituitary infarction following postpartum haemorrhage, variable degree of pituitary insufficiency. Assess endocrine derangement.

**Sipple syndrome (multiple endocrine neoplasia type IIa) (see also p178 and p586)**

Phaeochromocytoma, medullary carcinoma of thyroid with or without parathyroid hyperplasia. Assess degree of endocrine dysfunction, treat as for phaeochromocytoma.<sup>3</sup>

**Sjögren's syndrome (keratoconjunctivitis sicca)**

Dry eyes without rheumatoid arthritis, may also have other autoimmune disease, dysphagia/abnormal oesophageal motility, renal defects, pulmonary hypertension, peripheral neuropathy, vasculitis, assess for other systemic conditions.  $\blacktriangleright$  Worsened by anticholinergic drugs, improved by humidification.<sup>4</sup>

**Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome**

Abnormal cholesterol biosynthesis, severe growth failure, congenital anomalies affecting most organ systems, early death, developmental delay, self-injurious/ritualistic behaviour, typical dysmorphic facial features (micrognathia/cleft palate/small and abnormally hard tongue), thymic hypoplasia, intrinsic lung disease,  $\uparrow$  gastric reflux and aspiration, possibly susceptible to infection.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation.<sup>5</sup>

**Spinal muscular atrophy (see also p265)**

Peripheral motor neurons affected, upper motor neurons spared,  $\downarrow$  rate of progression through types I–IV, muscular wasting (see also *amyotrophic lateral sclerosis*), proximal/respiratory muscle weakness (IPPV advisable), kyphoscoliosis, restrictive chest defects, bulbar dysfunction. Regional blocks may be technically difficult, beware altered distribution of local anaesthetics.  $\Delta$  Difficult intubation (spinal deformity/aspiration risk), avoid suxamethonium (chronic denervation/ $K^+$ ), abnormal reaction to muscle relaxants (if essential, monitor blockade and ensure full reversal), postoperative respiratory support may be indicated,  $\uparrow$  risk of pulmonary aspiration.<sup>6</sup>

### Strümpell's disease (hereditary spastic paraplegia)

Progressive spastic paresis predominantly of the lower extremities, poor respiratory function/reserve. ► Avoid suxamethonium, possible sensitivity to non-depolarising muscle relaxants, regional anaesthesia probably acceptable.<sup>7</sup>

### Sturge-Weber syndrome

Unilateral angiomatic lesions of the leptomeninges/upper face, contralateral hemiparesis, seizures, mental retardation, evaluate for associated abnormalities. ► Careful intubation/extubation (angiomas of mouth/upper airway), prevent ↑ ICP/IOP.<sup>8</sup>

### Takayasu's disease (pulseless disease, occlusive thromboaropathy, or aortic arch syndrome)

Chronic autoimmune inflammatory disease. Elastic tissue replaced by fibrous tissue leading to blood vessel narrowing/occlusion/aneurysms (preferentially large arteries—aorta and branches), often self-limiting, hypertension (usually renovascular), IHD, cerebrovascular disease, non-invasive blood pressure measurements may be inaccurate, many have postoperative CVS complications from poorly controlled hypertension. ► Maintain organ perfusion (BP, CO<sub>2</sub>, etc.), consider regional blocks (care—cardiovascular effect of spinal).<sup>9</sup>

### Tangier disease (familial $\alpha$ -lipoprotein deficiency)

Deficient HDL apoprotein, accumulation of cholesterol in reticuloendothelial tissue, enlarged orange tonsils, hepatosplenomegaly, corneal opacities, polyneuropathy, IHD, anaemia, thrombocytopenia. ► Sensitivity to muscle relaxants.<sup>10</sup>

### TAR syndrome (thrombocytopenia, absent radius)

May also have Fallot's tetralogy.

### Tay-Sachs disease ('familial amaurotic idiocy')

Accumulation of GM2 gangliosides in CNS/peripheral nerves, progressive cerebral degeneration/seizures/dementia/blindness, usually die <2yr, characteristic macular cherry spot appearance, progressive neurology leads to respiratory complications.

1 Malinovsky JM et al. (2003). *Can J Anaesth*, **50**, 962–963.

2 Niquille M et al. (1998). *Anesth Analg*, **87**, 396–399.

3 Luo A et al. (2003). *Chin Med J (Engl)*, **116**, 208–211.

4 Takahashi S et al. (1990). *Masui*, **39**, 1393–1396.

5 Matveevskii A et al. (2006). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **16**, 322–324.

6 Wilton NC (2009). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **19**, 1041–1047.

7 McIver T et al. (2007). *Int J Obstet Anesth*, **16**, 190–191.

8 Batra RK et al. (1994). *Can J Anaesth*, **41**, 133–136.

9 Ioscovich A et al. (2008). *Int J Obstet Anesth*, **17**, 358–364.

10 Mentis SW (1996). *Anesth Analg*, **83**, 427–429.



**Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura**

Rare severe disease pentad of haemolytic anaemia/consumptive thrombocytopenia/CNS dysfunction/renal impairment/fever. May need therapeutic splenectomy. Preferably postpone elective surgery until remission.

► Check coagulation (usually normal)/renal/liver function, consider prophylactic antiplatelet drugs/corticosteroids, platelet transfusion contraindicated (may worsen disease), use packed cells/FFP, strict asepsis (often immunocompromised), avoid IM route/nasal intubation, control BP (renal/cerebral perfusion), take care with positioning (see also p220).<sup>1</sup>

**Tourette syndrome**

Profane vocalisations, repetitious speech, muscle jerking. Sedating premedication beneficial, continue normal medication. ► Do not confuse tic-like behaviour with seizure activity on induction/emergence, pimozide may cause prolonged QT, beware interaction of psychotropic drugs and sympathomimetics.<sup>2</sup>

**Toxic epidermal necrolysis ('scalded skin syndrome')**

Split at level of stratum granulosum, epidermal erythema/blistering/necrosis, made worse by lateral shearing forces, can be drug related.

► Prevent friction (monitors/lines/airway manipulation/positioning, etc.), consider fluid losses from blisters/exposed areas of dermis, manage like severe second-degree burn.<sup>3</sup>

**Treacher–Collins syndrome, see *mandibulofacial dysostosis*****Trisomy 13, see *Patau's syndrome*****Trisomy 18, see *Edward's syndrome*****Trisomy 21, see *Down's syndrome*****Tuberous sclerosis (Bourneville's disease)**

Neurocutaneous syndrome, facial angiofibromas, seizures, mental retardation, CVS/CNS/renal hamartomas, may affect airway/lungs/ CVS—spontaneous rupture/bleeding, spontaneous pneumothoraces. ► Careful positioning/padding, avoid pro-convulsants, consider full preoperative CVS assessment (cardiac rhabdomyoma in 30–50% of patients).<sup>4</sup>

**Turner's syndrome**

XO karyotype, micrognathia, short webbed neck, often ↑ gastric reflux, diabetes, hypothyroidism, coarctation/dissecting aortic aneurysms/pulmonary stenosis, renal anomaly (50% of patients). ⚠ Possible difficult intubation.<sup>5</sup>

**Urbach–Wiethe disease**

Type of histiocytosis (see Hand–Schuller–Christian disease), hyaline deposits in larynx and pharynx—hoarseness/aphonia. ⚠ Cautious intubation, laryngeal opening may be small.

**Von Recklinghausen's disease, see *neurofibromatosis*****Von Willebrand's disease (pseudohaemophilia), see p218**

**WAGR syndrome**

Wilms' tumour/Aniridia/Genitourinary abnormalities/Retardation.

**Weaver syndrome**

Unusual craniofacial appearance, micrognathia, may have large stature in adulthood.  $\Delta$  Airway problems (may  $\downarrow$  with age as mandible grows).<sup>6</sup>

**Weber-Christian disease**

Global fat necrosis (including retroperitoneal/pericardial/peritoneal/meningeal), associated organ dysfunction (e.g. adrenals, constrictive pericarditis).  $\blacktriangleright$  Avoid trauma to superficial fat during movement/positioning during surgery (cold, heat, pressure).

**Wegener's granulomatosis**

Necrotising granulomata in inflamed vessels of multiple organ systems (CNS/ CVS/renal/RS), pneumonia, bronchial destruction, valvular dysfunction, abnormal cardiac conduction, arteritis (cerebral aneurysms, arterial line difficulty), IHD, renal failure, peripheral neuropathy.  $\Delta$  Consider possible laryngeal stenosis.<sup>7</sup>

**Welander's muscular atrophy**

Peripheral muscular atrophy.  $\blacktriangleright$  Sensitive to thiopental/muscle relaxants/opioids, good prognosis.

**Werdnig-Hoffman disease (spinal muscular atrophy type I acute, and type II chronic), see spinal muscular atrophy****Wermer's syndrome (multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1)**

Parathyroid/pituitary/adrenal/thyroid adenomas, pancreas islet cell tumours. Assess endocrine dysfunction.

**Werner syndrome (premature aging syndrome), see progeria****Wiedemann-Rautenstrauch syndrome, see progeria****Williams' syndrome**

Characteristic elfin facies, congenital heart disease (aortic/pulmonary stenosis), hypercalcaemia, feeding problems, severe gag reflex, dental abnormalities, stellate blue eyes, retardation but social personality, hyperacusis.  $\Delta$  Potential difficult mask ventilation/intubation.<sup>8</sup>

**Wilson's disease**

Inborn error of copper metabolism. Basal ganglia degeneration, neurological symptoms, hepatic and renal failure.  $\blacktriangleright$  Respiratory complications, difficulty reversing muscle relaxants.<sup>9</sup>

1 Benington SR et al. (2009). *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 1018–1021.

2 Sener EB et al. (2006). *Int J Obstet Anesth*, **15**, 163–165.

3 Rabito SF et al. (2001). *J Clin Anesth*, **13**, 133–137.

4 Causse-Mariscal A et al. (2007). *Int J Obstet Anesth*, **16**, 277–280.

5 Mashour GA et al. (2005). *J Clin Anesth*, **17**, 128–130.

6 Crawford MW, Rohan D (2005). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **15**, 893–896.

7 Rookard P et al. (2009). *Middle East J Anesthesiol*, **20**, 21–29.

8 Medley J et al. (2005). *Paediatr Anaesth*, **15**, 243–247.

9 De Souza Hobaika AB (2008). *Middle East J Anesth*, **19**, 905–908.

**Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome**

Faulty presentation of antigen to macrophages. Thrombocytopenia, coagulopathy, anaemia, immunodeficiency, recurrent infections.

**Wolf–Hirschhorn syndrome**

Rare chromosomal abnormality. Variable psychomotor retardation, seizures, VSD/ASD, characteristic facies, midline fusion abnormalities, many die by age 2 (cardiac failure/bronchopneumonia). Assess for system dysfunction, MH risk unproven.<sup>1</sup>

**Wolfram syndrome (DIDMOAD syndrome)**

Diabetes Insipidus, Diabetes Mellitus, Optic Atrophy, Deafness. ►Fluid/electrolyte control important.

**Wolman's syndrome**

Familial xanthomatosis, adrenal calcification, hepatosplenomegaly, hypersplenism, anaemia, thrombocytopenia. Platelet transfusion may only be successful after splenectomy.

**Zellweger syndrome (cerebrohepatorenal syndrome)**

Reduced/absent peroxisomes in brain/liver/kidney, flat/round face, micrognathia, cleft palate, polycystic kidneys, impaired adrenal function, apnoeas, congenital heart defects, hypotonia, areflexia, seizures, hepatomegaly/biliary dysgenesis. ⚠ Difficult intubation, care with muscle relaxants.<sup>2</sup>

**Further reading**

Baum VC, O'Flaherty JE (2007). *Anesthesia for Genetic, Metabolic and Dysmorphic Syndromes of Childhood*, 2nd edn. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Benumof JL (1998). *Anesthesia and Uncommon Diseases*, 4th edn. Philadelphia: WB Saunders.

Hines RL, Marschall K (2008). *Stoelting's Anesthesia and Co-Existing Disease*, 5th edn. Philadelphia: WB Saunders.

Merlin GB et al. (2000). Specific genetic diseases at risk for sedation/anesthesia complications. *Anesth Analg*, **91**, 837–855. [good review]

Russell SH, Hirsch NP (1994). Anaesthesia and myotonia. *Br J Anaesth*, **72**, 210–216.

For online information about rare conditions try:

<http://www.diseasesdatabase.com>.

<http://www.rarediseases.org/>.

MedlinePlus has extensive information from the National Institutes of Health and other trusted sources on over 650 diseases and conditions. <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/healthtopics.html>.

Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man, OMIM (TM). McKusick-Nathans Institute for Genetic Medicine, Johns Hopkins University (Baltimore, MD) and National Center for Biotechnology Information, National Library of Medicine (Bethesda, MD), 2000. <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/omim/>. [Click on 'Search the OMIM Database' and enter name of condition in search field.]

<sup>1</sup> Mohiuddin S, Mayhew JF (2005). *Pediatr Anesth*, **15**, 254–255.

<sup>2</sup> Platis CM et al. (2006). *Pediatr Anesth*, **16**, 361–362.

# Cardiac surgery

## Rhys Evans

Determinants of myocardial oxygen supply and demand 332

Risk scoring 334

Cardiopulmonary bypass 336

Coronary artery bypass grafting 340

Emergency coronary artery bypass graft  
(failed angioplasty) 344

Aortic valve replacement: stenosis 346

Aortic valve replacement: regurgitation 348

Mitral valve replacement: stenosis 350

Mitral valve replacement: regurgitation 352

Thoracic aortic surgery 354

Pulmonary thromboemblectomy 358

Redo cardiac surgery 360

Cardioversion 361

Anaesthesia for implantable defibrillators 362

See also:

Patent ductus arteriosus 841

## Determinants of myocardial oxygen supply and demand

Coronary blood flow to the left ventricle occurs only during diastole. Increased heart rate decreases the diastolic interval, with little change in the length of systole.

Myocardial oxygen **supply** depends upon:

- $O_2$  content of arterial blood (Hb and  $SaO_2$ ).
- Myocardial (coronary) blood flow; this is further determined by
  - Diastolic blood pressure (dependent upon systolic pressure and heart rate).
  - Diastolic interval (length of diastole, again dependent upon heart rate).
  - Blood viscosity (decreased on cardiopulmonary bypass).
  - Coronary vascular resistance (variable coronary vascular tone and fixed atheromatous lesions).
  - LVEDP (higher pressures decrease flow).

Myocardial oxygen **demand** depends upon:

- Myocardial wall tension (systolic blood pressure).
- Number of contractions per minute (i.e. heart rate).
- 'Physiological' heart rates and systemic arterial pressures provide optimal coronary flow.
- Bradycardia provides long diastolic intervals and hence more time for coronary blood flow, together with few contractions demanding oxygen, but falling diastolic pressure during prolonged diastole decreases coronary perfusion pressure and hence CBF becomes limited in late diastole.
- Tachycardia increases mean diastolic pressure and hence coronary perfusion pressure but allows relatively little time for the flow to occur; increased numbers of contractions also increase myocardial  $O_2$  consumption.
- High blood pressure provides higher diastolic pressures for improved coronary perfusion and hence  $O_2$  supply, but generation of increased systolic pressures increases  $O_2$  consumption.
- Low blood pressures are generated by low myocardial wall tension, and hence low systolic pressures and  $O_2$  demand, but the associated low diastolic pressure limits coronary blood flow and hence  $O_2$  supply.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Risk scoring

The 'additive' EuroSCORE (European System for Cardiac Operative Risk Evaluation) is a simple method for calculating predicted operative mortality for patients undergoing cardiac surgery. For each risk factor a weight or number is assigned—these weights are then added to give an *approximate percentage predicted perioperative mortality*. In very high-risk patients, this simple additive model may underestimate the risk and the full 'logistic' version of EuroSCORE may be used to give a more accurate prediction (see [www.euroscore.org/calculators.htm](http://www.euroscore.org/calculators.htm)).

Factors	Definitions	Score
<b>Patient-related factors</b>		
Age	Per 5yr or part thereof over 60yr	1
Sex	Female	1
Chronic pulmonary disease	Long-term use of bronchodilators or steroids for lung disease	1
Extracardiac arteriopathy	Any one or more of the following: claudication, carotid occlusion, >50% stenosis, previous or planned intervention on the abdominal aorta, limb arteries, or carotids	2
Neurological dysfunction	Severely affecting ambulation or day-to-day functioning	2
Previous cardiac surgery	Requiring opening of the pericardium	3
Serum creatinine	>200µmol/l preoperatively	2
Active endocarditis	Patient still under antibiotic treatment for endocarditis at the time of surgery	3
Critical preoperative state	Any one or more of the following: ventricular tachycardia, fibrillation, aborted sudden death, preoperative cardiac massage, preoperative ventilation before arrival in the anaesthetic room, preoperative inotropic support, intra-aortic balloon counterpulsation, preoperative acute renal failure (anuria or oliguria <10ml/hr)	3
<b>Cardiac-related factors</b>		
Unstable angina	Rest angina requiring IV nitrates until arrival in the anaesthetic room	2
LV dysfunction	Moderate or LVEF 30–50%	1
	Poor or LVEF <30%	3

Factors	Definitions	Score
Recent myocardial infarction	<90d	2
Pulmonary hypertension	Systolic PA pressure >60mmHg	2
<b>Operation-related factors</b>		
Emergency	Carried out on referral before the beginning of the next working day	2
Other than isolated CABG	Major cardiac procedure other than or in addition to CABG	2
Surgery on thoracic aorta	For disorder of ascending arch or descending aorta	3
Postinfarct septal rupture		4



## Cardiopulmonary bypass

- Cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) replaces the function of heart and lungs while the heart is arrested, allowing for a bloodless and stable surgical field.
- Membrane oxygenators are most commonly used. These contain minute hollow fibres, giving a large surface area for gas exchange ( $2\text{--}2.5\text{m}^2$ ). Gas exchange occurs down concentration gradients; increasing the gas flow removes more  $\text{CO}_2$  and increasing  $\text{FiO}_2$  increases oxygenation.
- Prior to CPB, full anticoagulation of the patient is required, with an activated clotting time (ACT) recorded at  $>400\text{s}$ .
- The bypass circuit is primed with crystalloid (e.g. Hartmann's solution), heparin, and occasionally mannitol. The bypass machine normally delivers non-pulsatile flow of  $2.4\text{L}/\text{min}/\text{m}^2$  (to correspond to a typical cardiac index).
- Mean arterial pressure (MAP) is normally maintained between 50 and 70mmHg by altering systemic vascular resistance (SVR).
- Volume, as crystalloid/colloid/blood, can be added to or removed by ultrafiltration, to maintain a haematocrit of 20–30%.
- CPB causes haemolysis, platelet damage, and consumption of coagulation factors. This is usually minimal for the first 2hr.
- Other problems include poor venous drainage, aortic dissection, and gas embolisation.
- Risk of a cerebrovascular episode (CVE) ranges from 1–5% and is associated with increasing age, hypertension, aortic atheroma, previous CVE, diabetes, and type of surgery (aortic arch replacement  $>$  valve replacement  $>$  coronary artery surgery).
- Hypoperfusion and emboli are the main aetiological factors. Strategies to reduce cerebral injury (thiopental, steroids, mannitol, use of arterial filters in the bypass circuit) lack an evidence base. Maintaining optimum perfusion pressures, normoglycaemia, scrupulous surgical de-airing of the heart, and careful temperature control may decrease the incidence of neurological sequelae.

### Instituting cardiopulmonary bypass

- Baseline ABG, ACT, and thromboelastogram (TEG) should be measured.
- Prior to instituting bypass, the patient should be anticoagulated with heparin 300IU/kg (use central rather than peripheral line for administration to minimise risk of delivery failure). ACT must be confirmed at  $>400\text{s}$  prior to aortic cannulation.
- Before cannulation, systolic blood pressure should be decreased (to 80–100mmHg) to reduce the risk of aortic dissection.
- Prepare and pressurise cardioplegia to 300mmHg, ensuring a bubble-free circuit if cold crystalloid cardioplegia is to be used.
- Once bypass is established the ventilator is turned off and an IV anaesthetic (e.g. propofol  $6\text{mg}/\text{kg}/\text{hr}$ ) started. A benzodiazepine (e.g. midazolam) or a volatile agent administered by vaporiser mounted on the bypass machine are suitable alternatives.

- The perfusionist maintains a perfusion pressure of 50–70mmHg by the use of vasoconstrictors (e.g. metaraminol) and vasodilators (e.g. GTN, phentolamine).
- Blood gases and ACT are checked every 30min.
- Tranexamic acid may be administered (2g at commencement of CPB, 1g after CPB, or as an infusion).
- The patient's temperature is actively lowered, or allowed to drift, to 28–34°C, depending on the type of surgery and surgical preference.

### Coming off bypass

- This is a team effort between the surgeon, anaesthetist, and perfusionist. The aim is to wean the patient from the bypass machine, allowing the heart and lungs to re-establish normal physiological function.
- Before coming off bypass:
  - The nasopharyngeal temperature should have returned to 37°C.
  - Potassium should be 4.5–5mmol/l.
  - Haematocrit should be >20%.
  - Acid/base should be in the normal range.
- Heart rate should be 70–100bpm and sinus rhythm (if possible). Epicardial pacing may be required. Defibrillate and use atropine/ isoprenaline/adrenaline as necessary.
- Ventilate with 100% oxygen and ensure the lung bases are expanded.
- The venous line is progressively clamped and the heart gradually allowed to fill/eject. It is usual practice to come off bypass with the heart relatively 'underfilled'. This avoids overdistension of the ventricles, which may not yet function normally.
- The perfusionist will transfuse 100ml perfusate boluses as required. Be vigilant—watch the heart performance and filling carefully. If the ventricle is performing poorly, commence inotropic support (e.g. adrenaline).
- Do not draw up protamine (1mg/100 IU heparin—usually 3mg/kg) until off CPB. When the surgeon requests protamine, clearly inform the perfusionist to turn off the suction and administer slowly IV (ideally peripherally though maintaining wide-bore venous access protamine-free for fluid administration). Protamine may cause systemic hypotension and pulmonary hypertension. Rapid volume administration may be required.

### Following bypass

- Ensure adequate anaesthesia and analgesia with a volatile agent (e.g. isoflurane) and an opioid.
- Systolic blood pressure should be controlled at 80–140mmHg by careful filling and adjustments of vasodilator/inotrope infusions, as necessary.
- Maintain serum potassium levels at 4–5mmol/l. Hypokalaemia should be treated with aliquots of 20mmol KCl (in 100ml over 30min).
- Check ABG, ACT, and TEG.

### Cardioplegia

- Based on Ringer's solution containing potassium (20mmol/l), magnesium (16mmol/l), and procaine.

- When rapidly infused (1 litre) this renders the heart asystolic.
- Cold (4°C) cardioplegia affords myocardial protection against ischaemia. Further doses (500ml) are repeated every 20min or when electrical activity returns.
- Can be blood or crystalloid based. The advantages of blood cardioplegia are largely theoretical and based on the assumption that haemoglobin will carry oxygen and thus help reduce myocardial damage. Reperfusion (warm blood) cardioplegia is sometimes used towards the end of bypass to wash out products of metabolism.
- Cardioplegia is usually administered antegrade (via the coronary arteries), but retrograde cardioplegia may be delivered via the coronary sinus (in which case, monitor infusion pressure).

### **Temperature management**

- During bypass, the patient's nasopharyngeal temperature may be allowed to 'drift' down to 34°C, or the patient can be actively cooled to a lower temperature (28–34°C).
- Generally, a cooler temperature allows better cerebral protection.
- Different centres vary in approach, but marked hypothermia is usually reserved for more complex cases.

### **Intermittent cross-clamping and fibrillation**

- Coronary arterial grafts can be undertaken using either cardioplegia or intermittent cross-clamping with fibrillation.
- In intermittent cross-clamping, the aorta is clamped and a fibrillator pad placed underneath the heart to induce VF. The graft bottom-end anastomosis can then be sutured. After each graft the cross-clamp is removed and the heart cardioverted into sinus rhythm; the graft top-end anastomosis is then completed.
- Advantages are that no cardioplegia is used (hence a lower incidence of complete heart block) and after each graft is attached, the ECG can be inspected for ischaemia.
- As the heart is not protected by cardioplegia, surgical time needs to be kept to a minimum (<10min) to avoid myocardial damage.

### **Volatile agents and CPB**

- All volatile agents cause vasodilatation, cardiac depression, and bradycardia in a dose-dependent manner.
- Isoflurane has been shown in the animal model to cause coronary 'steal' phenomenon, but this has not been convincingly demonstrated in man.
- Desflurane has a very similar cardiodynamic profile to isoflurane but may cause slightly greater stimulation of sympathetic outflow.
- There is probably little to choose between different anaesthetic agents in terms of morbidity and mortality.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Coronary artery bypass grafting

<b>Procedure</b>	Bypassing a coronary artery stenosis with an arterial or venous graft
<b>Time</b>	3hr
<b>Pain</b>	+++ /++++
<b>Position</b>	Supine $\pm$ crucifix
<b>Blood loss</b>	Moderate (X-match 2U)
<b>Practical techniques</b>	ETT, IPPV, arterial/CVP, urinary catheter, temperature monitoring, usually on CPB. Consider PA flotation catheter and TOE

### Preoperative

- Commonly associated medical problems include hypertension, COPD/smoking, diabetes, cerebrovascular disease, and renal dysfunction.
- History of angina, recent MI, or CVE.
- Investigations: recent FBC, U&Es, clotting screen, chest radiograph, ECG. Respiratory function tests and arterial blood gases may be appropriate.
- Careful assessment of left ventricular function:
  - Orthopnoea and paroxysmal dyspnoea are important symptoms of LV failure.
  - Exercise ECG.
  - Coronary angiography within past 12 months.
  - Echocardiography assessment (transthoracic or transoesophageal).
  - A useful assessment of left ventricular function is exercise tolerance.
- EuroSCORE scoring system (see p334).
- Premedication with IM opioid and anticholinergic (e.g. papaveretum/hyoscine 15.4mg/0.4mg for an adult male, which is very amnesic, soporific, and analgesic; alternatively an oral anxiolytic, but this lacks analgesia for awake line placement). Prescribe oxygen supplementation from time of premedication.
- Continue all cardiac medication preoperatively (some centres stop aspirin/antiplatelet drugs/ACE inhibitors).

### Echocardiography

Ejection fraction 40–50%	mild LV impairment
Ejection fraction 30–40%	moderate LV impairment
Ejection fraction <30%	severe LV impairment

### Perioperative

- Insert peripheral venous and arterial lines preinduction, preoxygenate, and induce with fentanyl 10–15 $\mu$ g/kg and a cardiostable induction agent. Paralyse with non-depolarising muscle relaxant, intubate, and maintain anaesthesia with a volatile agent in an oxygen and air mixture. Insert internal jugular lines and urinary catheter.

- Five-lead ECG with ST segment monitoring is advised (lead II for rhythm and V5 for ischaemia).
- Use a nasopharyngeal temperature probe.
- Indications for a pulmonary artery flotation catheter (PAFC) include:
  - LVEF <30%.
  - Mitral valve procedures, as filling and PA pressure monitoring are important postoperatively.
  - Patients with raised preoperative creatinine.
  - A preoperative alternative is to insert a left atrial line, or use transoesophageal echocardiography (TOE) to assess filling and ventricular function.
- Avoid hyper- or hypotension and tachy- or bradycardia. Aim for cardiovascular stability with volume, GTN infusion, and careful boluses of vasoconstrictor (e.g. metaraminol 0.5–1mg).
- Prophylactic antibiotics timed to coincide with skin incision:
  - Co-amoxiclav 1.2g IV (ceftriaxone 2g IV if penicillin allergy; teicoplanin 800mg IV if MRSA risk)
  - Gentamicin 1.5mg/kg
- Anticipate blood pressure surge during sternotomy; cover with fentanyl/volatile supplements and/or GTN.
- Give heparin 300IU/kg and ensure ACT >400s pre-bypass.
- Maintain systolic blood pressure in range 80–100mmHg for aortic cannulation.
- Continue as for Cardiopulmonary Bypass (p336).
- Once the chest is closed and the patient stable, transfer intubated to recovery unit.
- Patients require optimum filling postoperatively, particularly in the presence of bleeding, diuresis and vasodilatation caused by warming. If cardioplegia has been used, temporary pacing wires will be inserted and temporary pacing may be needed.

### Postoperative

- Check FBC, TEG/clotting, and ABG, and ensure blood loss is <200ml/hr.
- Once warm, awake, weaned, and not bleeding (i.e. a stable patient) extubate. Administer morphine (0.02mg/kg/hr) with GTN to keep systolic BP <140mmHg—to protect the graft anastomoses and reduce bleeding.

### Special considerations

- For severe left main stem disease, adequate myocardial perfusion must be preserved by maintaining diastolic pressure and diastolic interval (i.e. heart rate) at preoperative values.
- Unstable angina with poor ventricle: consider insertion of PAFC and an intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP) in the anaesthetic room.
- Thoracic epidurals are used in some centres, claiming improved haemodynamic stability and excellent postoperative pain relief, but this is controversial due to the perceived risk of epidural haematoma and paraplegia following anticoagulation for CPB.
- Arterial grafts (internal mammary/radial artery) are prone to spasm; therefore maintain GTN infusion postoperatively. Avoid noradrenaline if possible.

**Off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting (OPCAB)**

Management is as for CABG but without bypass and using a 'stabiliser' to keep the heart as still as possible.

- Keep patient well filled with crystalloid.
- Keep patient warm (blood/fluid warmer, warming mattress/blanket, HME, etc.).
- May need vasoconstrictor when surgeon manipulates heart to maintain adequate BP.
- Consider TOE or oesophageal Doppler probe.
- Patient may still require full or half-dose heparin (surgical preference).
- If patient unstable, may need to go on bypass (1–10% of cases).
- For right/posterior descending coronary artery grafts, patient is placed in Trendelenburg position to increase venous return.
- Postoperatively: as for CABGs on bypass.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Emergency coronary artery bypass graft (failed angioplasty)

### Preoperative

- The patient will be collapsed in peri-arrest with the need for urgent surgery to correct ischaemia.
- Should have good arterial access from the 'cath lab'.
- Patient will probably need inotropes, if not already started. Ideally attain some degree of stability, or cardiac arrest may follow induction.
- An IABP can help poor coronary perfusion by increasing diastolic pressure, plus improve left ventricular function by offloading the heart.
- Consider placement of central venous access under local anaesthetic before induction (administration of cardioactive drugs in case of cardiac arrest during induction).
- Patient may have had streptokinase, clopidogrel, abciximab, or other antiplatelet drug and may require platelets and antifibrinolytics post-bypass.

### Perioperative

- May need a pulmonary artery flotation catheter, but do not waste time if speed is important. It can be inserted later during the case.
- Cautious induction with a reduced dose of fentanyl (250–500µg) and etomidate (4–6mg). Cardiovascular stability is essential.
- Adrenaline should be prepared to be given as a bolus, 10 or 100µg/ml as appropriate.
- Do not forget to give heparin (300IU/kg) before aortic cannulation.
- Institute CPB as soon as possible.

### Postoperative

- Inotropes should be maintained post-CPB; restart IABP if placed preoperatively and consider insertion of IABP if not.
- There is no urgency to extubate the patient. A period of stability is required.
- There is a high risk of renal failure.
- Consider additional antibiotics if operation was non-sterile.

**Intra-aortic counterpulsation balloon pump (IABP)**

- Inserted percutaneously; triggered by arterial pressure or (preferably) ECG.
- Inflation (with helium) during diastole 'augments' diastolic pressure and improves coronary blood flow and O<sub>2</sub> delivery without increasing O<sub>2</sub> demand.
- Deflation during systole reduces afterload and offloads the LV, improving LV ejection.
- Requires heparinisation.
- Position must be checked by CXR (tip just distal to left subclavian artery).
- Indications include: myocardial ischaemia, cardiac failure, weaning from CPB, MR, and VSD.
- Contraindications include: AR, AAA, and aortic dissection.

## Aortic valve replacement: stenosis

(See also p62)

Procedure	Replacement of aortic valve
Time	3hr
Pain	+++/>++++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Moderate (X-match 2U)
Practical techniques	As for CABG

The anatomical problems and consequences of particular valve lesions should be understood to appreciate the physiological requirements necessary for forward flow of blood before and after valve replacement. The LV is pressure-overloaded with myocardial hypertrophy and high wall tension.

Mechanical valves tend to be used in younger patients, as they are longer lasting; however, anticoagulation (warfarin) is needed to prevent clot formation around the valve. In elderly patients, biological tissue (homograft) valves can be used, as long-term anticoagulation is not needed. These valves probably only last for ~15yr.

### Preoperative

- A sudden change in heart rhythm (e.g. atrial fibrillation) can precipitate LV failure.
- Perform echocardiography and angiography to assess LV function and coronary blood flow.
- Aortic stenosis causes LV hypertrophy, with no increase in LV volume and a stiff non-compliant ventricle with poor diastolic function (relaxation). This increases oxygen demand and requires higher filling pressures. If long-standing, the LV fails, LVEDP increases (causing mitral regurgitation and a high PAP), and there is ultimately RV failure.

- An LV–aorta gradient exceeding 40mmHg or aortic orifice of <0.8cm represents significant obstruction to LV outflow.
- Surgery is indicated if gradient >70mmHg with good LV (>50mmHg with poor LV).
- If a known gradient is decreasing, this is a sign of LV failure.

### Perioperative

- Heart rate: ‘aortic stenosis—always slow’. Tachycardia is not well tolerated as it shortens diastole, hence time for coronary blood flow,

and increases oxygen demand. The atrial kick of sinus rhythm improves filling of a stiff LV.

- Preload: should be increased to aid filling of stiff LV; beware vasodilators reducing preload and cardiac output.
- SVR: afterload must be meticulously maintained with  $\alpha_1$  agonists, (e.g. metaraminol, noradrenaline). A reduction in diastolic pressure may critically reduce coronary blood flow to a hypertrophic LV; again, use extreme caution with vasodilators.
- Contraction: the stiff and thickened LV may require adrenaline.

### Post-bypass

- Pacing may be required (damage to AV node).
- Preload: volume remains essential for adequate filling and perfusion of a stiff LV; consider sequential A-V pacing to stimulate atrial contraction and augment ventricular filling.
- SVR: an infusion of noradrenaline may be required once well filled.
- Contraction: inotropic support (e.g. adrenaline) may be required to improve LV performance.

### Special considerations

- Consider a pulmonary artery flotation catheter as filling is crucial, particularly in the postoperative period. Pre-bypass, the high pulmonary arterial pressure in long-standing aortic stenosis may underestimate LV filling.
- Good myocardial protection for a hypertrophied ventricle by meticulous cardioplegic technique during CPB is the key to a good outcome.

## Aortic valve replacement: regurgitation

(See also p64)

Procedure	Replacement of aortic valve
Time	3hr
Pain	+++ /++++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Moderate (X-match 2U)
Practical techniques	As for CABG

### Preoperative

- Aortic regurgitation (AR) may be associated with aortic root dilation or dissection.
- In AR the LV is volume overloaded with LV dilation. There is increased sympathetic drive, causing tachycardia, increased contractility, peripheral vasoconstriction, and fluid retention to increase preload.
- Surgery is indicated once symptomatic; angina is a late symptom indicating end-stage disease.

### Perioperative

- 'Full, fast, and forward for a regurgitant lesion.'
- Heart rate: cardiac output is rate dependent; increasing the rate reduces regurgitation during diastole and encourages forward flow. Avoid bradycardia and aim for a rate of 90bpm. Collapsing diastolic pressure due to AR also decreases coronary perfusion, so again keep HR up to maintain mean diastolic pressure and hence coronary blood flow.
- Preload: LV is stiff with increased volume; therefore maintain adequate filling. Sinus rhythm is of benefit, but patients are often in atrial fibrillation. Consider A-V sequential pacing.
- SVR: anaesthesia causes a reduction in SVR, reducing the regurgitant fraction and encouraging forward flow. Vasodilators have similar effects but may also reduce venous return/preload. Pre-bypass, beware of excessive systemic vasodilatation decreasing diastolic pressure and hence coronary perfusion.
- Contraction: if LV function is poor, inotropic support/inodilators may be required.

Severity of AR is assessed by echocardiography with colour flow Doppler: dimensions of jet into LV cavity on apical five-chamber view indicate severity. Jet width >60% at cusp level indicates severe AR (fifth chamber is aortic root).

### Post-bypass

- Preload: because of LV dilatation, adequate filling is essential and must be maintained.
- SVR: a reduction will encourage forward flow, particularly if the LV is impaired.
- Contraction: inotropic support may be required. An inodilator (e.g. milrinone, enoximone) will both reduce the SVR and improve LV function.

### Special considerations

- An intra-aortic balloon pump is contraindicated in aortic regurgitation but may be useful post-bypass when the aortic valve is competent to offload the LV and optimise cardiac output, and to augment diastolic pressure and hence coronary blood flow.
- Careful control of blood pressure is needed pre-bypass in patients with aortic root dilatation or dissection. Aim to keep systolic blood pressure <120mmHg with vasodilators/volatile agents.

With mixed regurgitant/stenotic lesions manage the dominant lesion.

## Mitral valve replacement: stenosis

(See also p66)

Procedure	Replacement of mitral valve
Time	3–4hr
Pain	+++ /++++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Moderate (X-match 2U)
Practical techniques	As for CABG; PAFC and TOE likely to be indicated

Prosthetic mitral valves are often mechanical—most patients are anticoagulated anyway because of chronic AF.

### Preoperative

- Frail, flushed, often in atrial fibrillation and on warfarin, with a fixed cardiac output and possible pulmonary hypertension.
- Almost always due to rheumatic heart disease, normally asymptomatic for 20yr.
- Surgery required if dyspnoea on mild exertion/at rest.
- Continue antiarrhythmic therapy and convert those on warfarin to heparin preoperatively.
- Echocardiography and angiography to assess pulmonary arterial pressure, ventricular function, and coronary arteries.
- Opioid/anticholinergic premedication with oxygen supplementation.

Normal valve surface area	4–6cm <sup>2</sup>
Symptom-free until	1.6–2.5cm <sup>2</sup>
Moderate stenosis	1–1.5cm <sup>2</sup>
Severe stenosis	<1.0cm <sup>2</sup>

### Perioperative

- Heart rate: mitral flow is relatively fixed, keep <100bpm and sinus rhythm if possible to maximise time for diastole and coronary blood flow.
- Preload: does not normally need augmenting pre-bypass.
- SVR: because of fixed cardiac output the SVR is often raised—avoid reducing it as the diastolic pressure will fall and with it coronary blood flow. Venodilation will also reduce cardiac return and cardiac output for which the heart cannot compensate.

- PVR: pulmonary hypertension secondary to raised PVR and PA pressures may be at least partially reversible. Avoid pulmonary vasoconstriction, and consider techniques to improve pulmonary vasodilatation:
  - Maintain filling pressures.
  - Avoid hypoxia/hypercapnia even at the expense of raised mean intrathoracic pressures.
  - Check ABGs regularly—avoid acidosis.
  - Pulmonary vasodilators if PA pressure >two-thirds systemic pressure: nitric oxide is first-line choice, alternatively inhaled epoprostenol, and consider phosphodiesterase (PDE) inhibitors (milrinone, sildenafil).
- Contraction: severe mitral stenosis leads to pulmonary hypertension and with it right ventricular failure. The left ventricle is normally unaffected until end-stage disease. Inotropic support (e.g. adrenaline) may be required if the right ventricle is very dilated and failing.
- Heart rate: disruption of conducting pathways from surgery can cause heart block and arrhythmias requiring pacing and/or chronotropic agents (e.g. atropine, isoprenaline).

### Post-bypass

- Preload: keep well filled as obstruction to flow has been removed (PAWP 13–16mmHg).
- SVR: a reduction will now encourage forward flow.
- PVR: maintain pulmonary vasodilatation to optimise pulmonary blood flow and left-sided filling.
- Contraction: inotropic support (e.g. adrenaline) may be required if the right ventricle is failing, in order to optimise cardiac output.

### Special considerations

- Use a pulmonary arterial flotation catheter to assess PA pressure, PVR, filling, and requirement for inotropes.
- Pulmonary arterial pressures take several days/weeks to decrease. Nitric oxide/pulmonary vasodilators may help.
- Catastrophic atrioventricular disruption (rupture) in the early postoperative period is rare and usually fatal.



## Mitral valve replacement: regurgitation

(See also p68)

Procedure	Replacement or repair of mitral valve
Time	3hr
Pain	+++ /++++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Moderate (X-match 2U)
Practical techniques	As for CABG plus PAFC and TOE

### Preoperative

- May result from papillary muscle rupture due to MI; therefore ischaemic heart disease may co-exist. If acute, may cause pulmonary oedema.
- Seventy five percent of cases have atrial fibrillation. Continue antiarrhythmic therapy and change warfarin to heparin.
- The LV is volume overloaded; mitral regurgitation (MR) increases pulmonary arterial pressure and may cause RV failure.

### Perioperative

- 'Full, fast, and forward for a regurgitant lesion.'
- Heart rate: avoid bradycardia, maintain HR >70/min (increases forward flow but also increases regurgitation).
- Preload: keep the patient well filled, again to encourage forward flow.
- SVR: an increase in SVR increases the regurgitant fraction. Vasoconstrictors should be avoided if there is a drop in blood pressure—fluids should be given to supplement circulating blood volume. Avoid bradycardia.
- PVR: avoid pulmonary vasoconstriction and attempt to decrease PVR (see mitral stenosis above). PA pressure monitoring is useful.
- Contraction: inotropes are rarely needed pre-bypass; however, with acute MR an intra-aortic balloon pump decreases afterload and improves cardiac output.

Severity of MR relates to regurgitant fraction and PVR.

- Echocardiography with colour flow Doppler:
  - If regurgitant jet fills area of LA  $>8\text{cm}^2$  = severe MR
  - If regurgitant jet fills area of LA  $<4\text{cm}^2$  = mild MR
- Raised PA pressure = chronic significant MR (pulmonary hypertension).

### Post-bypass

- LV function is often overestimated in mitral regurgitation, as the pulmonary circulation provides a low-pressure release system for a poor ventricle. On replacing the valve the LV has to work harder, which may precipitate failure and the need for inotropes/inodilators.

- Preload: adequate filling is still essential.
- SVR: afterload reduction will benefit forward flow and cardiac output.
- PVR: the pulmonary vasculature is often highly reactive and prone to vasoconstrictive spells. Avoid factors causing pulmonary vasoconstriction and consider pulmonary vasodilators. Although IPPV raises mean intrathoracic pressure and hence PVR, this is more than offset by the pulmonary vasodilatation resulting from optimised ABGs (see also p351).
- Contraction: inotropic support may be required for a failing LV.

### Special considerations

- A pulmonary arterial flotation catheter is indicated in MR as PA pressure monitoring and correct ventricular filling are essential.
- An IABP may also be of use in the short term for a failing LV.
- Pacing may be required if the conduction system has been surgically damaged.
- Mitral valve repair is increasingly attempted in these patients. Anaesthetic management is similar to mitral valve replacement.

## Thoracic aortic surgery

Procedure	Replacement of ascending aorta/aortic arch with a tubular graft
Time	3–4hr
Pain	+++ /++++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Moderate/severe (X-match 6U)
Practical techniques	As for CABG ± deep hypothermic circulatory arrest

### General considerations

- Thoracic aortic aneurysms and dissection are usually due to atherosclerosis. They can be divided into two groups: those with hypertension and those with hereditary conditions such as Marfan's syndrome.
- More than 66% have co-existing ischaemic heart disease, and dilatation of the aortic root with aortic regurgitation is common.
- They are classified as type A, involving the ascending aorta to the brachiocephalic artery, and type B, the arch/descending aorta.
- Type A and those involving the arch are treated surgically; the remainder of type B (descending lesions) are treated medically.
- Arch involvement, although rare, is treated surgically, under deep hypothermic circulatory arrest.
- They may present as elective or emergency procedures.

### Preoperative

- For emergency dissections, control of blood pressure, bleeding, and fluid resuscitation are the main priorities. Wide-bore venous access is essential; consider inserting a PA catheter sheath (for rapid transfusion through the side-arm and later placement of PAFC). An arterial line should be inserted under LA preinduction; be aware of unequal pulses.
- Crossmatch 6 units of red cells urgently: warn the laboratory regarding the need for clotting factors, platelets, and more blood later.
- Vasodilators (e.g. GTN, labetalol) may be required to keep the systolic pressure <120mmHg.

### Managing hospital transfer of patient for emergency thoracic aortic surgery

- Adequate analgesia
- Oxygen
- Wide-bore IV access
- Monitoring: invasive BP plus non-invasive BP monitoring on contralateral arm, SpO<sub>2</sub>, ECG
- BP control/antihypertensive therapy (e.g. labetalol infusion)

## Perioperative

- It is essential to avoid hypertension during induction as this can rupture the thoracic aorta.
- Once stable, patients should be treated as those with aortic regurgitation (see p348)—avoid bradycardia and reduced afterload, and keep well filled.
- Inotropes/vasoconstrictors should be avoided as any dissection can extend or rupture.
- Be aware that a dissection, and surgical clamps, may interfere with invasive arterial monitoring.
- Tranexamic acid (2g at start of CPB and 1g after CPB, or infusion) should be administered to decrease thrombolysis. Clotting should be monitored with TEG.
- Femoral artery cannulation is usually required as the ascending aorta is to be resected; administer heparin (300IU/kg) and ensure adequate anticoagulation (ACT >400s) before femoral cannulation.
- If the aortic root is involved the aortic valve may need to be replaced and the coronary arteries reimplanted.
- Perform regular ABGs and monitoring of acid–base for indices of organ perfusion.
- Inotropic support (e.g. adrenaline) may be required before coming off bypass.

## Post-bypass

- Bleeding and control of the arterial pressure are major problems.
- Following administration of protamine check coagulation; if indicated administer FFP and platelets.
- Meticulous control of systolic pressure at <120mmHg.
- Aortic dissection may involve renal and mesenteric vessels—monitor indices of kidney/gut perfusion.

## Special considerations

### Circulatory arrest

- Protection of the central nervous system by deep hypothermia during prolonged periods of circulatory arrest is necessary if the arch of the aorta is to be operated on (during this procedure it is not possible to perfuse the cerebral vessels easily on bypass).
- Hypothermia depresses the metabolic rate and oxygen consumption in the brain and also seems to protect cerebral integrity during reperfusion. The maximum safe duration of **deep hypothermic circulatory arrest (DHCA)** is thought to be ~45min at 18°C. In neonates, this can be extended to 60min.
- Most centres do not rely solely on hypothermia to protect the brain; the head can be packed in ice, and consider adding thiopental (7mg/kg) or steroid e.g. methylprednisolone (15mg/kg) and mannitol (0.5g/kg) to the pump prime in an effort to decrease cerebral metabolic demand further and protect against ischaemic damage.
- The shorter the period of DHCA the better. Incidence of postoperative neurological problems is directly proportional to the time of DHCA.

- To aid rapid cooling, and to ensure that the brain is cooled, a vasodilator (e.g. GTN) is given. This prevents localised vasoconstriction due to hypothermia.
- Once the circulation has been arrested, all infusions and pumps are stopped.
- It is essential to measure both core and skin temperature and to make sure the core temperature reaches  $<20^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- On rewarming, switch on warming blankets but do not set to  $>10^{\circ}\text{C}$  above patient temperature in order to avoid burns. Start propofol infusion (3–6mg/kg/hr as tolerated), check coagulation, and if necessary order FFP (4U) and platelets (1 pooled donor pack), as these patients frequently encounter bleeding problems. A vasodilator (e.g. GTN), if tolerated, may be used to maintain vasodilatation and help rewarming.
- Mannitol (0.5g/kg) may also be given to encourage a diuresis.
- When core temperature reaches  $35^{\circ}\text{C}$  start inotrope (e.g. adrenaline) to improve cardiac function.
- A steep head-down tilt is used to allow air out of the aortic graft. Keeping the patient warm is difficult as it takes a considerable time to warm thoroughly. Skin temperature must be  $>33^{\circ}\text{C}$  with a core temperature of  $\geq 37^{\circ}\text{C}$ , before attempting to come off bypass. Do not rush as rebound cooling occurs in recovery, which will exacerbate poor myocardial function and any coagulopathy.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Pulmonary thromboemblectomy

Procedure	Removal of clot/tumour from pulmonary artery
Time	2–3hr
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Moderate (X-match 4U)
Practical techniques	As for CABG

### Preoperative

- The patient is often collapsed—resuscitation may be in progress.
- Presentation with tachycardia, tachypnoea, hypoxia, cyanosis with distended neck veins, and signs of RV failure.
- A healthy heart requires 50–80% of the pulmonary trunk to be obstructed before RV failure.
- The patient may have recently received thrombolytic therapy.
- Urgent CPB to re-establish oxygenation is the priority, so rapid decision-making is essential.

### Perioperative

- Once the decision is taken to operate, speed is the key—allow no delays. Do not forget to give heparin (300IU/kg).
- Intubate and ventilate with 100% oxygen, maintaining perfusion with inotropes as necessary, and institute CPB as soon as possible.
- There may be substantial airway haemorrhage from pulmonary infarction. Ventilation may be difficult and the ETT may require frequent suctioning. A double lumen ETT may be helpful to control pulmonary bleeding and aid ventilation.
- The surgeons should consider placing an IVC filter post-embolectomy.

### Post-bypass

- Inotropic support is likely to be needed; keep well filled and reduce SVR with vasodilators if tolerated.
- Nitric oxide, inhaled epoprostenol, or a PDE inhibitor (e.g. milrinone, sildenafil) may help reduce a raised pulmonary arterial pressure. Delay heparinisation (following CPB) for 24hr to reduce surgical bleeding.

### Special considerations

- Very high right-sided pressures may open the foramen ovale and cause right-to-left shunting. This will worsen hypoxia and may allow paradoxical emboli, causing a CVE.
- With significant pulmonary emboli the capnograph will detect very little or no expired CO<sub>2</sub>. Following embolectomy, if successful, this should show dramatic improvement, as the pulmonary circulation is re-established.

### Diagnosis of PE

- Chest pain, dyspnoea, tachypnoea, haemoptysis, cyanosis, tachycardia, dysrhythmia, raised JVP, hypotension, oliguria, collapse, arrest
- ABGs: hypoxia, hypo-/hypercapnia, metabolic acidosis
- CXR: oligaemic lung fields, prominent PA
- ECG: S1Q3T3, RV strain, normal in 50% of cases
- Te/Xe V/Q lung scan, pulmonary angiography, spiral CT-PA

### Assessment of severity

- Minor (<30% pulmonary obstruction, no RV dysfunction):
  - Non-specific symptoms, pleuritic chest pain, dyspnoea, tiredness
  - Specific treatment = anticoagulation (heparin, then warfarin)
- Moderate (30–50% pulmonary obstruction, some RV dysfunction but normotensive):
  - Haemoptysis, tachypnoea → respiratory alkalosis, raised JVP, tachycardia
  - Specific treatment = thrombolysis
- Massive (>50% pulmonary obstruction, severe RV failure, and haemodynamic impairment/collapse):
  - Severe chest pain, dyspnoea, hypotension, hypoxia, syncope, shock, arrest
  - Specific treatment = embolectomy

### General treatment

- Oxygen, IV access, fluid resuscitation, analgesia, inotropic support, ventilatory support, as required. Specific treatment (above) according to severity.



## Redo cardiac surgery

### Preoperative

- There is often poor LV function.
- Venous/arterial access as for CABG but often more difficult.
- Crossmatch 6U.

### Perioperative

- Place external defibrillator pads on the patient, as VF is a risk at sternotomy and during dissection of adhesions. This can be a problem with extensive use of diathermy as it obscures the ECG and with VF all you may notice is a flat arterial trace (be vigilant).
- Femoral cannulation may be required for CPB; give heparin (300IU/kg) before femoral artery cannulation.
- There is a risk of torrential bleeding as the right ventricle may be stuck by adhesions to the underside of the sternum. Ensure adequate wide-bore venous access (e.g. PAFC sheath) and have blood checked and available in theatre.
- Coagulopathy is common. Monitor TEG and consider giving tranexamic acid (2g at the start of CPB and 1g after CPB, or infusion).

### Postoperative

- There is increased risk of postoperative bleeding. After administering protamine, check coagulation and administer clotting factors if indicated.
- There may be problems related to poor LV function.

## Cardioversion

Procedure	DC shock to convert an arrhythmia back to sinus rhythm
Time	5–10min
Pain	—
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	Monitor ECG/SpO <sub>2</sub> /NIBP; propofol ± LMA; ETT if full stomach

### Preoperative

- Atrial fibrillation is the commonest arrhythmia—acute or chronic.
- Often a remote site, with patients who are cardiovascularly unstable.
- If possible transfer to an anaesthetic room in theatre with help nearby.
- Treat as for any surgical procedure, and have a physician ready to cardiovert the patient.
- Potassium should be in the normal range as the myocardium may become unstable.
- If in AF >24hr and not anticoagulated the left atrium should be checked for clot with a transoesophageal echo before cardioversion. This can be done under propofol sedation. If clot is present anticoagulation for 4wk is required and then check again. If clear, continue with propofol and secure the airway as appropriate.

### Perioperative

- Attach monitoring, with ECG leads connected through the defibrillator and synchronised to R wave.
- Any 'day case' GA suitable, including sevoflurane by inhalation.
- Preoxygenate, induce slowly with, e.g., a minimal dose of propofol. Maintain the airway using a facemask. RSI/ETT if risk of aspiration.
- Consider etomidate if haemodynamically unstable.
- Opioids/muscle relaxants are not usually necessary.
- Obese patients and those who are likely to have an awkward airway can be defibrillated in the lateral position.
- Safety during defibrillation—follow the ALS protocol. Remove oxygen during shock.
- AF—start at 150J biphasic defibrillator, 200J standard defibrillator.
- Atrial flutter—start with 50J, and increase by increments of 50J. (Some advise full shock to start.)

### Postoperative

- Turn the patient into the recovery position with supplemental oxygen and recover with full monitoring as for any anaesthetic.

### Special considerations

- Digoxin increases the risk of arrhythmia—omit on the day.
- Amiodarone improves the success of cardioversion to sinus rhythm.

## Anaesthesia for implantable defibrillators

Procedure	Implanting pacemaker/defibrillator
Time	1–3hr
Pain	+
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	LA + sedation; GA: ETT/IPPV or LMA/SV ± invasive arterial monitoring

### General considerations

- Implantable defibrillators are placed in patients who are at risk of sudden death due to malignant cardiac arrhythmias. Patients range from young and otherwise fit adults with normal cardiac contractility to extremely compromised cardiac patients.
- The procedure may be straightforward, when two venous wires (sensing and shocking) are positioned transvenously, or complex when pacemakers are replaced or the coronary sinus is catheterised to gain access to the LV myocardium.
- In many units cardiologists provide their own sedation service.
- During the procedure VF is induced on a number of occasions to test the device. The patient needs to be sedated during this phase.
- Invasive monitoring (arterial line) is advisable for any patients with impaired contractility.
- The cardiologist usually gains access via the left cephalic vein and uses fluoroscopy to guide the position of the leads.
- Careful asepsis is important to avoid infection of the prosthesis. IV antibiotics are usually given.
- Monitor the total dose of local anaesthetic used by the cardiologist.

### Preoperative

- Careful assessment is required to assess the functional cardiac reserve. Use local anaesthesia and sedation for anyone who is compromised.
- Ensure resuscitation drugs and equipment are available, as well as an external defibrillator.
- Draw up vasopressors and vagolytic drugs ready for use (e.g. ephedrine/ metaraminol/glycopyrronium). Have dedicated, skilled assistance.
- Give a good explanation to the patient of what will happen.

### Perioperative

- If sedation is planned, give small doses of a short-acting sedative (e.g. midazolam) and an opioid (e.g. fentanyl) until comfortable, co-operative, but sleepy. Administer oxygen. Deepen the sedation immediately before defibrillator testing—propofol TCI is ideal at minimal doses.

- If the defibrillator is to be placed under the muscle, it is often difficult to get fully effective regional anaesthesia, and a short period of deeper sedation/anaesthesia may be required.
- If GA is planned ensure recovery is organised preoperatively. Use light anaesthesia with careful induction as many of these patients have limited cardiac reserve. An X-ray table may not tip and induction may be safer on a tilting trolley.
- ECG is recorded by the cardiologist.
- Antibiotics will be required according to local protocols.

### Special considerations

- During VF testing, if the device does not work, do not allow the heart to be stopped for long. Repeated shocks may be required.
- After VF and defibrillation the BP may remain low for a short period. Vasopressors may be required.
- If the patient has an existing pacemaker to be changed and the cardiologist is using diathermy, loss of pacemaker function can occur.
- Cardiac catheter laboratories are difficult places to work in—space may be at a premium. Do not allow yourself to be distracted by the range of other activities taking place.
- A large plastic sheet (similar to an awake carotid set-up) allows the anaesthetist access to the patient's airway without compromising sterility. Infection is a serious complication.

### Further reading

- Andropoulos DB, Stayer SA, Russell IA, Mossad EB (eds) (2010). *Anesthesia for Congenital Heart Disease*. Hoboken: Wiley Blackwell.
- Berton C, Cholley B (2002). Equipment review: new techniques for cardiac output measurement—oesophageal Doppler, Fick principle using carbon dioxide, and pulse contour analysis. *Critical Care*, **6**, 216–221.
- Gothard J, Kelleher A, Haxby E (2003). *Cardiovascular and Thoracic Anaesthesia*. London: Butterworth-Heinemann.
- Hensley FA, Martin DE, Gravelle GP (eds) (2007). *A Practical Approach to Cardiac Anesthesia*. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.
- Hwang NC, Sinclair M (eds) (1997). *Cardiac Anaesthesia: A Practical Handbook*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Kaplan JA, Reich DL, Lake CL, Konstadt SN (eds) (2006). *Kaplan's Cardiac Anesthesia*. Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Klein A, Vuylsteke A, Nashef SAM (eds) (2008). *Core Topics in Cardiothoracic Critical Care*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Mets B (2000). The pharmacokinetics of anesthetic drugs and adjuvants during cardiopulmonary bypass. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*, **44**, 261–273.
- Ridley S (2003). Cardiac scoring systems—what is their value? *Anaesthesia*, **58**, 985–991.
- Sidebotham D, Merry A, Leggett MBashein G (eds) (2003). *Practical Perioperative Transoesophageal Echocardiography*. London: Butterworth-Heinemann.
- Singh S, Hutton P (2003). Cerebral effects of cardiopulmonary bypass in adults. *British Journal of Anaesthesia CEPD Reviews*, **3**, 115–119.
- Stone KR, McPherson CA (2004). Assessment and management of patients with pacemakers and implantable cardioverter defibrillators. *Critical Care Medicine*, **32**, S155–S165.
- Timperley J, Leeson P, Mitchell ARJ, Betts T (eds) (2007). *Pacemakers and ICDs (Oxford Specialist Handbooks in Cardiology)*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Tuman KJ, McCarthy RJ, Spiess BD et al. (1989). Does choice of anesthetic agent significantly affect outcome after coronary artery surgery. *Anesthesiology*, **70**, 189–198.
- van Dijk D, Keizer AM, Diephuis JC, Durand C, Vos LJ, Hijman R (2000). Neurocognitive dysfunction after coronary artery bypass surgery: a systematic review. *Journal of Thoracic and Cardiovascular Surgery*, **120**, 632–639.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Thoracic surgery

## Nicki Ross and Bruce McCormick

General principles 366

Analgesia 369

Isolation of the lungs 370

Management of one lung ventilation 376

Rigid bronchoscopy and stent insertion 378

Superior/cervical mediastinoscopy 380

Lung surgery: wedge resection, lobectomy,  
and pneumonectomy 382

Thoracoscopy and video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery  
(VATS) procedures 384

Lung volume reduction surgery and bullectomy 386

Drainage of empyema and decortication 388

Repair of bronchopleural fistula 390

Pleurectomy/pleurodesis 392

Oesophagectomy 394

Chest injury 396

See also:

Thoracoscopic sympathectomy 462

First rib resection 463

Tracheo-oesophageal fistula 840

Inhaled foreign body 854

Chest injuries 876

## General principles

Successful thoracic anaesthesia requires the ability to control ventilation of the patient's two lungs independently, skilful management of the shared lung and airway, and a clear understanding of planned surgery. Good communication between surgeon and anaesthetist is essential.

Patients undergoing thoracic surgery are commonly older and less fit than other patients (30% >70yr, 50% >ASA 3). Long-term smoking, bronchial carcinoma, pleural effusion, empyema, oesophageal obstruction, and cachexia are all common and can significantly reduce cardiorespiratory physiological reserve.

### General considerations

- Discuss planned procedure and any potential problems with the surgeon.
- Optimise lung function before elective surgery—try to stop patients smoking, arrange preoperative physiotherapy and incentive spirometry. Optimise bronchodilator therapy and consider a course of oral steroids.
- The lateral decubitus position with operating table 'broken' to separate ribs is used for the majority of procedures.
- Postoperative mechanical ventilation stresses pulmonary suture lines and increases air leaks and the risk of chest infection, so avoid if possible.
- Minimise postoperative respiratory dysfunction by providing good analgesia and physiotherapy.
- Prescribe postoperative oxygen therapy routinely to compensate for increased V/Q mismatch. Warmed humidified 40% oxygen via a facemask is recommended after pulmonary surgery. Nasal cannulae delivering oxygen at 3 l/min are better tolerated and satisfactory for most other patients.

### Preoperative assessment

- Patients require a standard assessment with particular emphasis on cardiorespiratory reserve.
- Examine most recent CXR and CT scans. Check for airway obstruction and tracheal or carinal distortion/compression which can cause difficulties with double lumen tube placement. Discuss scans with surgeon—tumours impinging on chest wall, crossing fissures, or in proximity to major vessels have implications for surgery performed.
- Patients with significant cardiac disease form a high-risk group.

### Lung resection<sup>1</sup>

Based on history, examination, and simple pulmonary function tests (PFTs), patients may be classified as:

- Clinically fit with good exercise tolerance and normal spirometry—accept for surgery.
- Major medical problems, minimal exercise capacity, and grossly impaired PFTs—high risk for surgery, consider alternative treatment.

- Reduced exercise capacity (short of breath on climbing two flights of stairs) and abnormal spirometry with or without moderate co-existing disease—require careful evaluation of risks/benefits of surgery.

Pulmonary function (see p102 and p1264) tests are often used to determine suitability for lung resection surgery by estimating postoperative lung function. Always consider the results in context of patient's general health and proposed resection.

- Spirometry reflects the 'bellows' function of the respiratory system while tests of diffusion capacity (e.g. carbon monoxide transfer factor, DLCO) assess the ability to transfer oxygen to the circulation. It is important to realise that patients with diffuse alveolar lung disease can have severely impaired gas transfer with relatively normal spirometry (see also p103).
- Generally accepted minimum preoperative values of FEV<sub>1</sub> for the following procedures are: pneumonectomy >55%, lobectomy >40%, wedge resection >35% of patient's predicted value.
- Predicted postop (ppo) value of PFTs is preop value  $\times (5 - \text{number of lobes resected})/5$ . Goal is for ppoFEV<sub>1</sub> and ppoDLCO >40% of predicted normal (FEV<sub>1</sub> 0.8–1.0 litre for average male).
- If preoperative DLCO <40% predicted normal, ppoFEV<sub>1</sub> <800ml, or ppoFVC <15ml/kg it is likely that postoperative ventilation will be needed (poor cough with an FVC <1 litre).
- Ventilation scans may be used to account for non-functional lung (e.g. atelectasis beyond an obstructing tumour).
- Exercise testing or exercise pulse oximetry should be used to refine clinical assessment in borderline cases. Failure to cover at least 200m or a fall in SpO<sub>2</sub> of more than 4% in a '6 min walk test' indicates a very high risk.<sup>2</sup>

### Important scenarios encountered by thoracic anaesthetists

- **Sub-glottic obstruction** of the trachea/carina from extrinsic compression (retrosternal thyroid, lymph node masses, etc.) or invasion of the lumen, usually by a bronchial or oesophageal carcinoma.
- **Dynamic hyperinflation** of the lungs following positive pressure ventilation in patients with severe emphysema, bullae, lung cysts, or in the presence of airway obstruction acting as a 'flap valve' resulting in gas trapping. Progressive lung distension creates the mechanical equivalent of a tension pneumothorax. The increase in intrathoracic pressure compromises venous return and right ventricular function, dramatically reducing cardiac output. 'PEA arrest' may follow. Emergency treatment is to disconnect the patient from the ventilator, open the tracheal tube to atmosphere, relieve any airway obstruction, and support right ventricular function. Remember, 'if in doubt let it (the trapped gas) out!'<sup>3</sup>
- Significant mediastinal shifts can occur due to large pleural effusions, tension pneumothorax, and lateral positioning leading to a severe reduction in cardiac output. Prompt recognition and correction of the underlying cause is vital.



- Sudden falls in cardiac output presenting as acute severe hypotension can be caused by surgical manipulation within the chest, obstructing venous return or cardiac filling. The effects can be reduced by volume loading the patient, but the surgeon or assistant should be advised and requested to 'stop squashing the heart!'

- 1 British Thoracic Society and Society of Cardiothoracic Surgeons Working Party (2001). Guidelines on the selection of patients with lung cancer for surgery. *Thorax*, **56**, 89–108.
- 2 Burke JR, Duarte IG, Thourani VH, Miller JL (2003). Preoperative risk assessment for marginal patients requiring pulmonary resection. *Annals of Thoracic Surgery*, **76**, 1767–1773.
- 3 Conacher I (1998). Dynamic hyperinflation—the anaesthetist applying a tourniquet to the right heart. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **81**, 116–117.

## Analgesia

- Thoracotomy incisions are extremely painful. Inadequate pain relief increases the neurohumoral stress response and impairs mobilisation and respiration, leading to an increase in respiratory complications.
- Chronic pain syndrome after thoracic surgery occurs in 25–60% of patients.<sup>1</sup> The multiple pathogenic mechanisms proposed include pre-, intra-, and postoperative factors.
- Effective analgesia is crucial and a technique combining paracetamol, NSAIDs, a regional block, intraoperative opioids, and regular or patient-controlled postoperative analgesia is recommended.
- Perioperative intercostal nerve blocks or percutaneous paravertebral blocks are useful for thoracoscopic procedures with oral or patient-controlled opioid analgesia postoperatively.
- Unless specifically contraindicated, patients undergoing thoracotomy or thoracoabdominal incisions should receive continuous thoracic epidural or paravertebral regional analgesia. These techniques have equivalent analgesic efficacy, and similar effects on the stress response and respiratory function. Paravertebral blockade is associated with fewer adverse events (hypotension, urinary retention, and PONV).<sup>2</sup>
- With either technique it is imperative to match the level of block to that of the incision—usually T5/6 or T6/7.
- Perioperative epidural blockade should be established cautiously (3–4ml of 0.25% bupivacaine) as an extensive thoracic sympathetic block can cause a major reduction in cardiac output and severe hypotension.
- Percutaneous paravertebral injection of 0.5% bupivacaine (0.3ml/kg) may be performed. A continuous postoperative infusion of bupivacaine (0.5% for 24hr, then 0.25% for 3–4d) at 0.1ml/kg/hr via a surgically placed paravertebral catheter provides excellent post-thoracotomy analgesia.

1 Wildgaard K, Ravn J, Kehlet H (2009). Chronic post-thoracotomy pain: a critical review of pathogenic mechanisms and strategies for prevention. *European Journal of Cardio-Thoracic Surgery*, **36**, 170–180.

2 Gulbahar G, Kocer B, Muratli SN, et al. (2010). A comparison of epidural and paravertebral catheterization techniques in post-thoracotomy pain management. *European Journal of Cardio-Thoracic Surgery*, **37**, 467–472.

## Isolation of the lungs

- Achieving independent ventilation of the lungs is not always straightforward.
- One lung ventilation (OLV) is associated with a number of complications and should be used only when the benefits outweigh the risks.

### Advantages of OLV

- Protects dependent lung from blood and secretions.
- Allows independent control of ventilation to each lung.
- Improves surgical access and reduces lung trauma.

### Disadvantages of OLV

- Inevitably creates a shunt and usually causes hypoxia.
- Acute lung injury occurs in 2–5% of cases.
- Increases technical and physiological challenge.

### Indications for isolation and separation of the two lungs

- To avoid contamination of a lung in cases of infection, massive pulmonary haemorrhage, or bronchopulmonary lavage.
- Control the distribution of ventilation in massive air leaks or severe unilateral lung disease (e.g. giant bullae and lung cysts).
- Improving access for surgery is a *relative* indication for OLV. If isolation of the lung proves difficult the need to pursue OLV should be discussed with the surgeon since satisfactory access can often be achieved by careful lung retraction.

### Techniques

- **Double lumen endobronchial tubes** (DLTs) are the commonest and most versatile approach.
- **Bronchial blockers** (Univent tube or Arndt endobronchial blocker). Useful in experienced hands, especially in patients who are difficult to intubate or have distorted tracheobronchial anatomy/tracheostomy.
- DLT and bronchial blockers have been shown to be clinically equivalent in the provision of OLV.<sup>2</sup>
- Single lumen endobronchial tubes are rarely used.

#### Double lumen endobronchial tubes

- Traditional reusable red rubber DLTs are still used in some specialist centres, but disposable plastic (polyvinyl chloride—PVC) tubes are in wider general use.
- Described as ‘right’ or ‘left’ according to main bronchus they are designed to intubate.
- Right-sided tubes have a hole or slit in the wall of the endobronchial section to facilitate ventilation of the right upper lobe.
- Sizes of plastic DLTs are given in Charriere (Ch) gauge (equivalent to French gauge), which is the external circumference of the tube in millimetres. Thus a 39Ch tube has an external diameter of about 13mm. Note that diameter of the bronchial segment of the tubes varies between manufacturers (for the same tube gauge).

- The lumens of DLTs are small compared with standard single lumen tubes used in adults. The internal diameters of the lumens of the 39 and 35Ch 'Broncho-Cath' DLTs are only 6.0 and 4.5mm, respectively.
- Bronchoscopic placement and checking requires a narrow scope (<4mm diameter) ideally with an integral battery light source for ease of manipulation.
- A major contraindication to use of a DLT is very distorted tracheobronchial anatomy or an intraluminal lesion—placement is likely to be difficult and possibly dangerous.

#### *Types of DLT*

- Carlens (left-sided): has a carinal 'hook' to aid correct placement.
- White's (right-sided): has a carinal hook and slit in the tube wall for right upper lobe.
- Robertshaw (right- and left-sided): D-shaped lumens; traditionally a red rubber reusable tube, now available as a single-use version in small, medium, and large sizes.
- Single-use PVC (right- and left-sided): high-volume, low-pressure cuffs; bronchial cuff and pilot tube coloured blue; radiopaque marker stripe running to tip of bronchial lumen; available in sizes 28–41Ch, e.g. 'Broncho-Cath' (Mallinckrodt) and 'Sheribronch' (Sheridan).

#### *Selection of DLT*

- Use the largest DLT that will pass easily through the glottis. 41Ch or 39Ch gauge PVC tube (large or medium Robertshaw) for males, 37Ch gauge PVC tube (medium Robertshaw) for females. Small individuals may need a 35Ch gauge or small Robertshaw tube.
- It is common practice to choose a left-sided tube unless the surgery involves proximal left lobar resection or left pneumonaectomy, or abnormal bronchial anatomy is likely to obstruct intubation of the left main bronchus. A left-sided tube is less likely to block a lobar bronchus and gives a greater tolerance to shifts in tube position, which inevitably occur when the patient is moved.
- Where indicated use a right-sided tube. Placement is generally straightforward if bronchoscopically guided.

#### *Placement of DLT*

- Assess the risks/benefits of using a DLT. Examine the X-rays, CT scans, and any previous bronchoscopy reports for tracheobronchial anatomy and lung pathology—is there distortion or narrowing which will interfere with bronchial intubation?
- Check the Y connector and ensure that 15mm connectors are inserted into proximal ends of the DLT ('Broncho-Caths' come with these connectors separately wrapped).
- Most plastic DLTs are supplied with a malleable stylet which can be used to adjust the curve of the tube to facilitate intubation.
- Commence intubation with the concavity of the endobronchial section of the DLT facing anteriorly—once the tip is past the glottis, partially withdraw the stylet and rotate the tube 90° to bring the oropharyngeal curve into the sagittal plane. Turn the patient's head to the side

opposite to the bronchus to be intubated (i.e. to the right for a left-sided DLT) and gently slide the tube down the trachea until resistance is felt to further advancement.

- At this stage treat DLT as an ordinary ETT—inflate only the tracheal cuff to achieve a seal and confirm ventilation of both lungs.
- It is easy to push plastic DLTs in too far. The patient's height is the main determinant of correct insertion depth—the usual insertion depth to the corner of the mouth in a patient 170cm (5' 7") tall is 29cm [depth changes by 1cm for every 10cm (4") change in the patient's height].<sup>1</sup>
- The diameter of a DLT makes intubation more difficult than with a standard tube, even with a good view of the larynx. The Airtraq optical laryngoscope is useful in this situation, but prior experience and generous lubrication are required. Alternative strategies in difficult intubation include intubation over an airway exchange catheter (AEC), intubation with a standard tube followed by change to a DLT over an AEC, or use of a bronchial blocker (see below).

#### *Clinical confirmation of DLT position*

- Check the tube position and establish isolation of lungs. Beware of pathology affecting clinical signs—compare with preoperative clinical examination findings and radiology. It is easy to get confused, so check tube position by achieving the lung isolation required for the surgery.
- Check that you can achieve ventilation on the non-operative lung. Clamp off the gas flow to the operative lung at the Y connector and allow the lung to deflate by opening the sealing cap on this lumen.
- Look for chest movement—is there appropriate unilateral expansion on the non-operative side?
- Listen—auscultate both lungs and listen over the end of the open tube. A leak indicates air passing around the deflated bronchial cuff. Listen whilst inflating the bronchial cuff 1ml at a time (use a 5ml syringe) until the leak stops. If a reasonable seal cannot be obtained with <4 ml of air, the tube is either incorrectly placed or too small for the patient. Check specifically that all lobes are ventilated, especially the right upper if using a right-sided DLT.
- Feel—assess compliance by 'bagging' right, left, and both lungs. Very poor compliance (high inflation pressures) which is not explained by the patient's pathology suggests malposition—peak pressure on OLV should be <35cmH<sub>2</sub>O.
- Close the sealing cap and remove the Y connector clamp. Some anaesthetists then confirm it is possible to isolate and achieve OLV of the opposite lung via the tracheal lumen.
- Remember that the operative lung will only partially collapse until the pleural cavity is opened.
- Endobronchial tubes often move when the patient is placed in the lateral position. Recheck isolation and OLV once the patient is in position and before surgery starts.

*Fibreoptic bronchoscope*

- Ideally the position of every DLT should be checked bronchoscopically. At the very least a suitable bronchoscope must be immediately available to assess DLT placement if there are clinical problems with the tube or with OLV.
- This is invaluable where bronchial intubation is difficult and can be used to 'railroad' the tube into the correct main bronchus. Insert the bronchoscope via the bronchial lumen, partially withdraw the DLT so its tip lies in the trachea, and locate the carina. Left-right recognition is aided by looking for the longitudinal muscle that runs along the posterior wall of the trachea. Advance scope into the appropriate main bronchus, then slide the tube into position.
- Several bronchoscopic studies have shown that up to 80% of DLTs are malpositioned to some extent even when clinical signs are satisfactory. The upper surface of the bronchial cuff (blue) should lie just below the carina when visualised via the tracheal lumen.
- Always confirm positioning of the right-sided tube by bronchoscopy. The lateral 'slit' in the wall of the distal bronchial lumen should be aligned with the right upper lobe bronchus.

**Bronchial blocker technique**

- A balloon-tipped catheter ('blocker') is manipulated through a single lumen tracheal tube into the appropriate main (or lobar) bronchus with the aid of a narrow fibreoptic bronchoscope.
- Good lubrication of both bronchoscope and blocker is essential.
- The position of the blocker should be rechecked after the patient has been positioned for surgery.
- Placement is usually straightforward in the supine position, but can be awkward in the lateral position.
- The lung or lobe is isolated from ventilation by inflating the balloon within the bronchus. The isolated lung slowly collapses as the trapped gas is absorbed or escapes via the blocker's narrow central lumen.
- Collapse can be accelerated by ventilating with 100% oxygen for a few minutes and then inflating the blocker at end expiration when lung volume is at its minimum.
- Re-inflation of the collapsed lung requires deflation of the blocker and consequently loss of isolation of the lungs. (A correctly positioned DLT will maintain separation of the airways to each lung until extubation.)
- During pneumonectomy or sleeve resection (bronchial reanastomosis) the blocker has to be withdrawn to allow surgical access to the bronchus.

There are two modern forms of bronchial blocker:

- Univent tube: a single lumen tube with an internal channel in its wall containing an adjustable blocker bearing a high-volume, low-pressure cuff.
- Arndt wire-guided endobronchial blocker (Cook<sup>TM</sup>): a stiff catheter with a cylindrical cuff and an adjustable 'wire' loop at its tip which guides the blocker along the outside of a fiberoptic bronchoscope into the required bronchus. Supplied with a special adapter which allows it to be deployed through a conventional single lumen or cuffed tracheostomy tube.

*Indications for using a bronchial blocker<sup>1</sup>*

- On the rare occasions when isolation of a lobar bronchus is required (localised bronchiectasis or haemorrhage, lung abscess, bronchopleural fistula, previous lung resection and poor tolerance of OLV).
- In patients who are difficult to intubate or have a permanent tracheostomy.
- To avoid the reintubation required to change to or from a DLT in patients receiving pre- or postoperative IPPV.

1 Brodsky JB, Benumof JL, Ehrenwerth J, Ozaki GT (1991). Depth of placement of left double-lumen endobronchial tubes. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **73**, 570–572.

2 Campos JH (2003). Which device should be considered the best for lung isolation: double-lumen endotracheal tube versus bronchial blockers. *Current Opinion in Anaesthesiology*, **20**, 27–31.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Management of one lung ventilation

The physiology is complex and some aspects remain controversial.<sup>1</sup> One lung ventilation inevitably creates a shunt through the unventilated lung and the crucial factor in managing OLV is to minimise the effects of this shunt.

### Initiating OLV

- Start with typical ventilator settings during two lung ventilation ( $\text{FiO}_2$  0.33,  $V_T$  9–10ml/kg, and  $P_{AW} \leq 25\text{cmH}_2\text{O}$ ).
- Increase  $\text{FiO}_2$  to 0.5 and decrease  $V_T$  to 6–8ml/kg before initiating OLV. Note the  $P_{AW}$  generated by this  $V_T$ .
- Clamp Y connection to operative (non-dependent) lung and open sealing cap on that lumen of the DLT to allow the gas to escape.
- Observe the airway pressure closely. It will increase by 30–40% (about 7–10cmH<sub>2</sub>O) if OLV is achieved. If the operative lung was non-functioning prior to anaesthesia (collapse secondary to bronchial obstruction or massive effusion) the pressure may not change.
- If  $P_{AW}$  is excessive ( $>35\text{cmH}_2\text{O}$ ) or rises abruptly with each inspiration exclude mechanical causes (e.g. kinked connector, clamp incorrectly placed) and DLT malposition or obstruction (e.g. ventilating lobe rather than lung, sputum plugs, opening of tracheal lumen against wall of trachea).
- Adjust  $V_T$  and ventilation profile to limit  $P_{AW}$  to  $\leq 35\text{cmH}_2\text{O}$  and ideally to  $\leq 30\text{cmH}_2\text{O}$ . Incidence of acute lung injury is reduced by employing a 'protective ventilation strategy'-lower  $P_{AW}$ , PEEP.
- Observe  $S_p\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{ETCO}_2$  closely. If necessary increase ventilatory rate to maintain acceptable minute volume and carbon dioxide clearance.
- Check with surgeon that lung is collapsing (may take a few minutes in patients with obstructive airways disease) and that mediastinum has not 'sunk' into dependent hemithorax.

### Failure to achieve OLV

- If inflation pressure does not increase when OLV is attempted be suspicious that OLV has not been achieved. DLT is likely not to be in far enough and should be advanced under fibrescopic guidance.
- If surgeon says lung has not collapsed, but DLT position appears satisfactory, suction down operative lumen, to clear secretions and hasten lung collapse (particularly in emphysematous lungs).

### Hypoxia on OLV

- Hypoxia is a frequent complication of OLV, and is more common when the right lung is collapsed.
- It usually occurs after a few minutes of OLV (as oxygen in non-ventilated lung is absorbed).
- $\text{SpO}_2$  dips but then often rises again a few minutes later as the non-ventilated lung collapses more completely and blood flow through it decreases.
- Increase  $\text{FiO}_2$  and try to ensure an adequate cardiac output.

- Confirm correct positioning of DLT—are all lobes ventilated? Check with fiberoptic bronchoscope if unsure.
- If partial collapse of the ventilated (dependent) lung is suspected ('sinking' mediastinum) try 5–10cmH<sub>2</sub>O PEEP on that lung—this may help, but the effect is unpredictable and PEEP may be limited by P<sub>AW</sub>. Peak P<sub>AW</sub> may be limited by changing from volume-controlled to pressure-controlled ventilation.
- If still hypoxic, warn surgeon, partially reinflate non-dependent lung, and then apply 5–10cmH<sub>2</sub>O CPAP via a simple reservoir bag/APL valve arrangement (CPAP System, Mallinckrodt™) supplied with 100% oxygen from an auxiliary oxygen flowmeter or cylinder at 5l/min. This will reliably improve saturations—simply insufflating oxygen into the collapsed non-dependent lung will not.
- If hypoxia persists use intermittent inflation of non-dependent lung with oxygen breaths from the CPAP circuit—this needs to be co-ordinated with surgical activity.
- If these manoeuvres are not successful return to two lung ventilation.
- The surgeon may clamp the appropriate pulmonary artery, thus eliminating the shunt and improving oxygenation.
- Persisting with OLV in the face of continuing hypoxia (SpO<sub>2</sub> <90%) is dangerous and can rarely be justified.

### Returning to two lung ventilation<sup>1</sup>

- Gently suction the non-ventilated lung to clear any blood or pus—use the long suction catheters supplied with the DLT.
- Close sealing cap on lumen to non-ventilated lung and remove clamp on the Y connector.
- Switch to manual ventilation and reinflate the collapsed lung under direct vision. Long sustained ventilation breaths are effective, and inflation pressures up to 35–40cmH<sub>2</sub>O are often required to fully re-expand all areas of the lung.
- Return patient to mechanical ventilation and, unless significant volumes of lung have been resected, return to original two lung ventilator settings and FiO<sub>2</sub>.
- Adjust respiratory rate to maintain normocapnia.
- Always be prepared to return to OLV immediately should problems occur, e.g. large air leak from operated lung.

1 Wilson WC, Benumof JL (2005). Physiology of one lung ventilation. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*, 6th edn, Chapter 49, 1890–1894. Philadelphia: Elsevier, Churchill Livingstone.

## Rigid bronchoscopy and stent insertion

Procedure	Endoscopic inspection of tracheobronchial tree—± biopsy, stents, removal of foreign body
Time	5–20min
Pain	+
Position	Supine with head and neck extended
Blood loss	Usually minimal
Practical techniques	TIVA with propofol boluses/target-controlled infusion, alfentanil/ remifentanyl, intermittent suxamethonium. IPPV through bronchoscope with oxygen via Venturi needle and Sanders injector

### Preoperative

- Check for airway obstruction—stridor, tracheal tumour on CT scan, or foreign body.
- Suitable as day-case procedure in appropriate patients.
- Warn about postoperative coughing, haemoptysis, and suxamethonium myalgia.
- Often combined with mediastinoscopy to assess suitability for lung resection.
- The airway will be unprotected so patients at risk of regurgitation should be pretreated to reduce the volume and acidity of gastric secretions (omeprazole 40mg PO the night before and 40mg 2–6hr before procedure). Ranitidine is an alternative.

### Perioperative

- Give full preoxygenation.
- Confirm surgeon is in the theatre before inducing the patient.
- Boluses of midazolam (2–3mg) and alfentanil (500–1000µg) facilitate induction and may reduce risk of awareness.
- A preinduction ‘taming’ dose of non-depolarising relaxant (e.g. vecuronium 0.5mg) can reduce suxamethonium pains.
- Normally induce in the anaesthetic room, transfer to theatre with a facemask, and give suxamethonium just prior to bronchoscopy.
- If there is potential airway obstruction (foreign body or tracheal compression) inhalation induction in theatre with sevoflurane in oxygen is recommended until airway is secure.
- Co-ordinate ventilation with surgical activity.
- Observe or palpate abdomen to detect recovery of muscle tone.
- Suction upper airway and confirm adequate muscle power before removing the scope.

### Postoperative

- Turn patient biopsied side down to avoid bleeding into normal lung.

- Sit fully upright as soon as awake.
- Blood clot can cause severe lower airway obstruction requiring immediate intubation, suction, and repeat bronchoscopy.

### Special considerations

- The procedure is very stimulating and can generate a marked hypertensive response.
- Extreme cardiovascular responses need to be obtunded and profound relaxation provided, but with prompt return of laryngeal reflexes and spontaneous respiration.
- Vocal cords can be sprayed with local anaesthetic (4% topical lidocaine), but this will not prevent carinal reflexes and may impair postoperative coughing.
- Rarely, biopsy can precipitate a life-threatening airway bleed.
- Stent insertion can be technically difficult and may involve periodic loss of airway control.
- A short-acting non-depolarising muscle relaxant can be employed, but it is difficult to achieve the profound paralysis required using mivacurium. Some patients will also undergo superior mediastinoscopy and so longer-acting agents can be used.
- Bradycardias caused by repeat doses of suxamethonium are rarely seen during rigid bronchoscopy in adults. Atropine should be drawn up, but routine administration is not recommended since this will exacerbate any tachycardia.
- Use of rocuronium followed by reversal with sugammadex may be an alternative.

## Superior/cervical mediastinoscopy

Procedure	Inspection and biopsy of tumours and lymph nodes in superior and anterior mediastinum via small suprasternal or anterior intercostal incision
Time	20–30min
Pain	+
Position	Supine or slightly head up, arms by sides and head ring with bolster under shoulders
Blood loss	Usually minimal but potential for massive haemorrhage, G&S
Practical techniques	IPPV via single lumen tube

### Preoperative

- Suitable as day-case procedure in appropriate patients.
- Check for superior vena cava obstruction and tracheal deviation or compression due to large mediastinal masses.
- Often preceded by rigid bronchoscopy ('Bronch & Med').

### Perioperative

- Tape eyes and check tracheal tube connectors as the head will be obscured by drapes.
- Give boluses of IV fentanyl during surgery.
- Insert 16G cannula in lower leg vein after induction (see below).
- Watch for surgical compression of trachea—monitor tidal volume and airway pressures.
- Monitor BP in left arm and put pulse oximeter on right hand (see below).

### Postoperative

- Paracetamol and NSAID.

### Special considerations

- There is the potential for massive haemorrhage from the great vessels—risk is increased in patients with SVC obstruction (hence cannula in leg)—may require immediate median sternotomy.
- The brachiocephalic artery can be compressed by mediastinoscope, restricting blood flow to the right arm and carotid artery, creating a risk of cerebral ischaemia. Place pulse oximeter on right hand to monitor perfusion.
- Mediastinotomy can cause a pneumothorax.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Lung surgery: wedge resection, lobectomy, and pneumonectomy

Procedure	Excision of pulmonary tissue either selectively (wedge resection or lobectomy) or a whole lung (pneumonectomy)
Time	2–4hr
Pain	+++++
Position	Lateral decubitus with table ‘broken’, elbows flexed to bring forearms parallel to face with upper arm in gutter support
Blood loss	200–800ml—occasionally significantly more; G&S, X-match 2U for lobectomy/pneumonectomy
Practical techniques	IPPV via DLT using OLV during resection phase. Epidural or paravertebral regional anaesthesia with catheter for postoperative analgesia, art line for pneumonectomy and less fit patients

### Preoperative

- Cancer is the commonest indication for lung resection—others include benign tumours, bronchiectasis, and TB.
- Assess cardiorespiratory reserve and estimate post-resection lung function (see p367).
- Assess airway with respect to placement of DLT.
- Plan postoperative analgesia regime.

### Perioperative

- Select appropriate DLT and check lung isolation carefully after intubation.
- Use a left-sided tube unless the surgery involves a proximal left lobectomy or pneumonectomy or abnormal bronchial anatomy is likely to obstruct intubation of the left main bronchus.
- IV infusion in non-dependant arm—14–16G cannula.
- Radial arterial lines function better in the dependent arm as that wrist is usually extended.
- CVP monitoring is unreliable in lateral position with open chest. Central lines are not recommended for routine use but may be indicated for access purposes or postoperative monitoring. Similarly oesophageal Doppler monitoring is unhelpful since lateral position and an open chest prevent a steady signal for analysis.
- OLV facilitates surgery and prevents soiling of dependent lung.
- Continuous display of the airway pressure/volume loop is a valuable adjunct to monitoring and managing OLV.

- Surgical manipulation often causes cardiac and venous compression, which reduces cardiac output/blood pressure and may cause arrhythmias.
- Suction the airway to the collapsed lung prior to reinflation.
- The bronchial suture line is 'leak tested' under saline by manual inflation to 40cmH<sub>2</sub>O.
- Titrate IV fluids to losses and duration of surgery. Avoid excessive fluid replacement especially in pneumonectomy.
- Preoperative epidural or paravertebral block with surgically inserted catheter. Epidural can be used preoperatively, but cautious incremental boluses are recommended (3ml of 0.25% bupivacaine ± opioid).

### Postoperative

- Aim to extubate patient awake and sitting at end of procedure.
- Prescribe continuous supplementary oxygen—humidified is preferable, but nasal cannulae are more likely to stay on the patient in the ward.
- Ensure good analgesia is achieved.
- A CXR is usually required in recovery room.

### Special considerations

- Occasionally patients with bronchial carcinoma may have 'non-metastatic' manifestations (Eaton–Lambert myasthenic syndrome or ectopic hormone production). See p256 and p174 and p178.
- Perioperative mortality from pneumonectomy is 5%. Acute lung injury occurs in 2–5% of resections and is three times more common after pneumonectomy when the mortality is 25–50%.<sup>1</sup> Additional risk factors include the inflammatory response to surgery, chronic alcohol abuse, genetic predisposition, intraoperative plateau pressures >15cmH<sub>2</sub>O, and >4000ml of IV fluid in first 24hr.<sup>2</sup> Incidence may be reduced by the intraoperative use of lung protective strategies (as established in adult respiratory distress syndrome—management) and goal-directed fluid therapy.
- Arrhythmias, especially atrial fibrillation, are quite common after pneumonectomy and many advocate prophylactic digitalisation (digoxin 500µg IV over 30min given during surgery followed by 250µg/d orally for 4–5d).

1 Licker M, de Perrot M, Spiliopoulos A, Robert J, Diaper J, Chevalley C, Tschopp JM (2003). Risk factors for acute lung injury after thoracic surgery for lung cancer. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **97**, 1558–1565.

2 Slinger PD (2006). Postpneumonectomy pulmonary edema: good news, bad news. *Anesthesiology*, **105**(1), 2–5.



## Thoracoscopy and video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS) procedures

Procedure	Inspection of thoracic cavity via scope passed through intercostal incision. Used for drainage of effusions, lung and pleural biopsy, pleurectomy/ pleurodesis, pericardial biopsy/ window
Time	30–120min
Pain	++/+++
Position	Lateral decubitus with table ‘broken’, elbows flexed to bring forearms parallel to face with upper arm in gutter support
Blood loss	Minimal–200ml, G&S
Practical techniques	IPPV and OLV via left-sided DLT. Percutaneous paravertebral block/catheter or intercostal blocks, $\pm$ art line

### Preoperative

- Assess as for a thoracotomy but this procedure is less invasive, with less postoperative deterioration of lung function.
- Discuss regional analgesia and where appropriate PCA.

### Perioperative

- Consider invasive arterial pressure monitoring for high-risk or compromised patients.
- IV infusion in upper arm; arterial line in radial artery of dependent arm.
- Boluses of fentanyl (50–100 $\mu$ g) for intraoperative analgesia.
- Commence OLV (using left-sided DLT) before insertion of trocar.
- Good collapse of the lung is required for surgical access.
- Intercostal or paravertebral blocks. A paravertebral catheter can be inserted under thoracoscopic guidance for more extensive procedures.

### Postoperative

- Extubate, sit up, and start supplementary oxygen in theatre before transfer to recovery.
- CXR in recovery is required to confirm full lung re-expansion.
- Patients need balanced analgesia as for lung resection. PCA morphine may be required for 24–48hr for more painful procedures such as pleurectomy, pleurodesis, and wedge resections.
- Encourage early mobilisation.

### Special considerations

- There is always the possibility of conversion to an open thoracotomy.
- Epidural is not usually necessary but worth considering if bilateral.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Lung volume reduction surgery and bullectomy

Procedure	Non-anatomical resection of regions of hyperinflated and poorly functioning pulmonary tissue
Time	2–5hr
Pain	+++ /+++++
Position	Median sternotomy (bilateral surgery)—supine with arms to sides. Thoracotomy—lateral decubitus (as for lung resection)
Blood loss	200–800ml, X-match 2U
Practical techniques	Thoracic epidural preinduction. GA with TIVA, relaxant, DLT—extreme care with IPPV and OLIV

Lung volume reduction surgery is a surgical treatment for selected patients with severe respiratory failure secondary to emphysema. The aim is to reduce total lung volume to more physiological levels by resecting most diseased areas, thereby improving respiratory function. Most of these patients belong to a group in which general anaesthesia would normally be avoided at any cost. The procedure is also considered for those with bullous disease and recurrent pneumothoraces.

### Preoperative

- Patients require intensive assessment, careful selection, and optimisation prior to surgery.
- Cardiac assessment for lung volume reduction surgery often includes coronary angiography and right heart catheterisation to evaluate IHD, ventricular function, and pulmonary artery pressures.
- Patients are often on corticosteroids—perioperative supplementation is required.
- A clear understanding of pathophysiology and adequate thoracic experience is essential to safe anaesthetic management.<sup>1</sup>

### Perioperative

- Surgery may be performed via sternotomy, thoracotomy, or by video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery.
- There is a serious risk of rupturing emphysematous bullae with IPPV, causing leaks and tension pneumothorax.
- Nitrous oxide is contraindicated and, since an increased alveolar–arterial gradient may exist for volatile agents, total IV anaesthesia with remifentanyl and propofol is recommended.<sup>2</sup>
- Continuous spirometry, and invasive arterial and CVP monitoring are essential.

- Clinical assessment of DLT placement is difficult—verify position bronchoscopically.
- Limit risk of ‘gas trapping’ and dynamic pulmonary hyperinflation (see p367) by deliberate hypoventilation and permissive hypercapnia ( $\text{PaCO}_2$  up to 8.5kPa). Recommend  $V_T$  6–7ml/kg, 10–12bpm, I:E ratio 1:4, and peak airway pressure <30cmH<sub>2</sub>O.
- Disconnect from ventilator intermittently to allow lungs to ‘empty’.
- Bronchospasm and sputum retention with mucus plugging can be a problem.
- Use colloids for fluid replacement to minimise risk of pulmonary oedema.

### Postoperative

- HDU or ICU care will be required—extubate as soon as possible.
- Anticipate and accept raised  $\text{PaCO}_2$  (7–9kPa) and adjust  $\text{FiO}_2$  to maintain  $\text{SaO}_2$  in range 90–92%.
- Watch closely for air leaks—use a maximum of 10cmH<sub>2</sub>O suction on intercostal drains.
- Requires excellent pain relief, skilled physiotherapy, and a pulmonary rehabilitation programme.

### Special considerations<sup>1,2</sup>

- Commonest complication is prolonged air leak—more than 7 days in 50% of patients.
- Mortality from recent series is 5–10%.
- The National Emphysema Treatment Trial demonstrated that lung volume reduction surgery benefits patients with predominantly upper lobe disease and a low baseline exercise capacity.
- Patients with an isolated congenital bulla or ‘lung cyst’ require same careful intraoperative anaesthetic management but are usually much fitter and do not normally require invasive cardiological assessment.

1 Hillier J, Gillbe C (2003). Anaesthesia for lung volume reduction surgery. *Anaesthesia*, **58**, 1210–1219.

2 Purugganan RV (2008). Intravenous anesthesia for thoracic procedures. *Current Opinion in Anesthesiology*, **21**, 1–7.

## Drainage of empyema and decortication

Procedure	Surgical removal of pus (empyema) and organised thick fibrinous pleural membrane (decortication)
Time	Drainage 20–40min; decortication 2–3hr
Pain	+++ /+++++
Position	Lateral decubitus for thoracotomy
Blood loss	Simple drainage: minimal Decortication: 500–2000ml, X-match 2U
Practical techniques	GA with IV induction, relaxant, intubation, IPPV DLT advised for decortication (risk of air leaks); single lumen tube adequate for drainage procedures; art line/CVP

### Preoperative

- Intrapleural infection usually secondary to pneumonia, intercostal drains, and chest surgery.
- Patients are often debilitated by infection and may be frankly septic.
- Respiratory function often already compromised by pneumonia or prior lung resection.
- Check for bronchopleural fistula created by erosion into the lung.

### Perioperative

- Empyema usually drained by rib resection and insertion of a large-bore intercostal drain.
- Thoracoscopy may be used to break down a loculated effusion or empyema and free pleural adhesions.
- Decortication requires 'thoracotomy' anaesthetic with epidural analgesia since paravertebral catheter usually not possible due to loss of pleura.
- Decortication frequently causes significant haemorrhage.
- Arterial line/CVP monitoring are advisable for all but the fittest of patients.

### Postoperative

- Balanced analgesia with regular paracetamol, NSAID, regional block (intercostal blocks useful for drainage procedures), and opioids.
- High-dependency care is recommended for debilitated patients undergoing decortication.

### Special considerations

- The surgical principle is to remove infected tissue including pleural 'peel', fully re-expand the lung, and obliterate the infected pleural space.
- Air leaks are common following decortication of the visceral pleura and lobectomy is occasionally required if a massive air leak or severe parenchymal lung damage occurs.
- Decortication is a major procedure which requires careful evaluation of risks and benefits in elderly, frail, and sick patients.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Repair of bronchopleural fistula

Procedure	Closure of communication between pleural cavity and trachea or bronchi
Time	2–3hr (for thoracotomy approach)
Pain	++++/+++++
Position	Keep sitting upright with affected side tilted down until good lung isolated, then lateral decubitus for thoracotomy
Blood loss	300–800ml, G&S, X-match 2U if anaemic
Practical techniques	IV induction and fiberoptic guided endobronchial intubation with DLT. Awake fiberoptic guided intubation with DLT. Intubation with DLT under deep inhalation anaesthesia with spontaneous ventilation

### Preoperative

- Features are productive cough, haemoptysis, fever, dyspnoea, SC emphysema, and falling fluid level in post-pneumonectomy space on the chest radiograph.
- The severity of symptoms is proportional to the size of the fistula—big fistulae with large air leaks cause severe dyspnoea and may necessitate urgent respiratory support.
- Patients are often debilitated with respiratory function compromised by infection and prior lung resection.
- Check previous anaesthetic charts for ease of intubation and type of DLT used.
- Check the anatomy of the lower airway carefully on chest radiograph—it is often distorted by previous surgery.
- Patients require supplementary oxygen, a functioning chest drain, IV antibiotics, and fluids.

### Perioperative

- Key principles are to protect the ‘good’ lung from contamination and to control the distribution of ventilation. Failure to adequately isolate lungs after induction will put the patient at grave risk.
- Small or moderate fistulae are usually assessed by bronchoscopy and may be amenable to sealing with tissue glue.
- Commence invasive arterial pressure monitoring before induction.
- Traditionally, awake intubation under local anaesthesia has been recommended as the safest option, but ultimately the technique should be selected to give the best balance of risks and benefits for each patient. Many thoracic anaesthetists use a modified rapid sequence induction and advance the DLT under direct vision with a fiberoptic bronchoscope to ensure correct placement in the bronchus contralateral to fistula. The potential exists to enlarge the fistula by inappropriate placement of the DLT.

- IPPV increases gas leakage, causing loss of tidal volume and the risk of tension pneumothorax.
- TIVA is recommended—delivery of volatile agents may be unreliable with large gas leaks. Ketamine may be useful in high-risk patients.

### Postoperative

- Plan HDU/ICU care for all but the most straightforward cases.
- Minimise airway pressures during ventilation and extubate as soon as possible.
- Use standard post-thoracotomy analgesic regimen, but watch renal function with NSAIDs.

### Special considerations

- Most fistulae are postoperative complications of pneumonectomy or lobectomy, but some are secondary to pneumonia, lung abscesses, and empyema.
- Anaesthesia for repair of bronchopleural fistula is challenging and not recommended for an 'occasional' thoracic anaesthetist!

### Tips for controlling a massive air leak (i.e. unable to ventilate effectively)

If a DLT cannot be positioned satisfactorily these are worth attempting:

- Intubate with an uncut cuffed 6mm-diameter single lumen tube—pass fiberoptic bronchoscope through tube into intact main bronchus and 'railroad' the tube into the bronchus to isolate and ventilate the good lung.
- Ask the surgeon to pass a rigid bronchoscope into the intact main bronchus and slide a long flexible bougie or Cook™ airway exchange catheter (which allows jet ventilation) into bronchus—remove bronchoscope and railroad single lumen tube.
- If all else fails an Arndt endobronchial blocker or a large Fogarty embolectomy catheter passed into the fistula via a rigid bronchoscope may control the leak temporarily.



## Pleurectomy/pleurodesis

Procedure	Stripping of parietal pleura from inside of chest wall (pleurectomy). Production of adhesions between parietal and visceral pleura either chemically (talc, tetracycline) or by physical abrasion (pleurodesis)
Time	Pleurectomy 1–2hr; pleurodesis 20–40min
Pain	+++/>++++
Position	Lateral decubitus for open thoracotomy or VATS. May be supine for pleurodesis
Blood loss	Minimal if thoracoscopic; up to 500ml for thoracotomy, G&S
Practical techniques	IPPV, DLT, and OLV advised for open/VATS procedures. A single lumen tube is usually adequate for talc pleurodesis

### Preoperative

- Patients fall into two groups: the relatively young and fit with recurrent pneumothoraces (check for asthma) and older patients compromised by COPD or recurrent pleural effusions (check respiratory reserve).
- Even very large unilateral effusions rarely cause orthopnoea in previously healthy patients. Symptomatic orthopnoea should alert the anaesthetist to possible additional pathology such as heart failure.
- Check a recent CXR for pneumothorax and/or effusion.
- A preoperative intercostal drain is advised if pneumothorax present.
- Check the planned surgical approach.
- Discuss postoperative analgesia and regional technique.

### Perioperative

- Keep airway pressures as low as possible in patients with history of pneumothorax.
- Be alert for pneumothoraces as they can tension rapidly on IPPV even with drain in situ and can be on the 'healthy' side.
- Avoid nitrous oxide.
- Collapse the lung during instillation of irritant to facilitate pleural coating. If using a single lumen tube preoxygenate and then briefly disconnect lungs from ventilator.
- Aim for full expansion of lung at end of procedure to appose parietal and visceral pleura.

### Postoperative

- Extubate and sit the patient upright before transfer to recovery room.
- A CXR is needed to check full lung expansion. Suction on intercostal drains is often prescribed to assist expansion.

- Pleural inflammation usually causes severe pain, particularly when abrasion of the pleura is performed.
- Use regular paracetamol, but avoid NSAIDs which may make pleurodesis less effective.
- Thoracic epidural is recommended for pleurectomy, especially bilateral procedures, and is sited and used as for a thoracotomy. A combination of morphine PCA with intercostal blocks is an alternative. Paravertebral blocks are usually unsuitable due to damage to the pleura.

### Special considerations

- Pleurectomy is usually performed for recurrent pneumothorax combined with stapling of lung tissue responsible for recurrent air leaks (usually apical 'blebs' or small bullae).
- Pleurodesis is often used to manage malignant pleural effusions (mesothelioma, metastatic carcinoma)—there may be large volumes of fluid causing significant respiratory compromise.
- Patients with massive pleural effusions (more than two-thirds of the hemithorax on chest radiograph or >2000ml) should have these 'tapped' and partially drained at least 12hr before surgery because rapid intraoperative reinflation of the collapsed lung can precipitate unilateral postoperative 're-expansion' pulmonary oedema.
- Patients with extensive effusions are also at risk of circulatory collapse when turned 'effusion side up' for surgery. The mechanism is probably a combination of mediastinal shift and high intrathoracic pressure on IPPV reducing venous return and cardiac output. If this occurs return the patient to the supine position and drain the effusion before proceeding.

## Oesophagectomy

Procedure	Total or partial excision of oesophagus with mobilisation of stomach (occasionally colon) into chest
Time	3–6hr
Pain	+++++
Position	Supine with arms by sides and/or lateral decubitus for thoracotomy
Blood loss	500–1500ml; X-match 2U
Practical techniques	IPPV, DLT useful if thoracotomy. Art/CVP lines, urinary catheter, thoracic epidural, or paravertebral catheter for thoracoabdominal incision

### Preoperative

- Establish indication for surgery—usually oesophageal cancer but occasionally for non-malignant disease (benign stricture, achalasia).
- The anaesthetic plan requires understanding of surgical approach:
  - **Transhiatal:** laparotomy and cervical anastomosis
  - **Ivor–Lewis:** laparotomy and right thoracotomy
  - **Thoracoabdominal:** left thoracotomy crossing costal margin and diaphragm
  - **McKeown 3 stage:** laparotomy, right thoracotomy, and cervical anastomosis
  - **Minimally invasive:** thoroscopic oesophageal mobilisation, laparoscopic gastric mobilisation, and cervical anastomosis
- Preoperative malnutrition or cachexia is common and associated with higher risk of postoperative morbidity and mortality. Requires careful cardiorespiratory assessment.
- Plan for duration of surgery and need to reposition patient during procedure.
- Preoperative adjuvant chemotherapy may leave residual immunosuppression but can dramatically improve dysphagia.
- Reflux is a risk. Give preoperative ranitidine or omeprazole if patient can swallow.
- Book HDU or ICU according to patient's fitness and local protocols.

### Perioperative

- Consider all patients with oesophageal disease to be at risk of regurgitation, so rapid sequence induction with cricoid pressure advised.
- If thoracotomy is planned use a DLT and OLV to facilitate surgical access and reduce trauma to the lung.
- Plan regional anaesthesia according to surgical approach. Paravertebral LA infusion with morphine PCA for thoracoabdominal approach. For

laparotomy/thoracotomy a mid-thoracic epidural (using 3ml boluses of 0.25% bupivacaine perioperatively and postoperative infusion).

- A nasogastric tube will be required initially. It is removed for resection and reinserted under surgical guidance following anastomosis.
- Do not put internal jugular line on side required for cervical anastomosis.
- Monitor core temperature and be obsessional about keeping patient warm (efficient fluid warmer and forced-air warming blanket).
- Stay ahead with fluid replacement—for open procedures aim for 10ml/kg/hr of crystalloid plus colloid or red cells to replace blood loss.
- Check Hb (HemoCue® ideal) and blood gases intraoperatively—watch for metabolic acidosis suggesting inadequate tissue perfusion.
- Arrhythmias and reduced cardiac output causing hypotension may occur during intrathoracic oesophageal mobilisation.
- Change DLT to a single lumen tube to improve surgical access prior to cervical anastomosis (if performed).

### Postoperative

- Patients require intensive and experienced postoperative nursing care in a specialist ward, HDU, or ICU.
- If cold (<35.5°C) or haemodynamically unstable ventilate until condition improves.
- Aim for minimum urine output of 1ml/kg/hr.
- Use a jejunostomy or nasoduodenal tube for early enteral feeding.

### Special considerations

- Oesophagectomy has one of the highest perioperative mortality rates of all elective procedures (up to 5% even in specialist centres).
- 66% of deaths are from systemic sepsis secondary to respiratory complications or anastomotic breakdown.
- Over 30% of patients suffer a major complication.
- In some centres minimally invasive (endoscopic) oesophagectomy is replacing the traditional open approaches. Beware 'tension capnothorax' if pleura is breached during laparoscopic hiatal dissection.
- Occasional practice in anaesthesia (or surgery) for oesophagectomy is not recommended.

## Chest injury

The emergency diagnosis and initial treatment of major thoracic trauma is described on pp876–8. This section deals with the anaesthetic management for definitive repair of ruptures of the diaphragm, oesophagus, and tracheobronchial tree.

### General considerations

- Serious chest injuries are frequently associated with major head, abdominal, and skeletal injuries and appropriate attention and priority must be given to their management (cervical spine immobilisation, laparotomy to arrest bleeding, splintage of limb fractures).
- Fewer than 30% of patients with thoracic trauma require a thoracotomy, but persistent bleeding from intercostal drains exceeding 200ml/hr is an indication for urgent surgery.
- Most deaths from thoracic trauma are due to exsanguination. Good IV access with two large-bore cannulae will allow rapid infusion.
- Emergency thoracotomy in the resuscitation room is seldom indicated and rarely associated with a favourable outcome.
- Standard principles of emergency anaesthesia should be applied.
- Maintain a high index of suspicion for tension pneumothorax during IPPV as an intercostal drain does not guarantee protection.
- Massive air leaks usually indicate significant tracheobronchial injury (see below).
- Patients with major thoracic trauma are at high risk of multiple organ failure and require postoperative management in an ICU.

### Repair of ruptured diaphragm

- Clinical features and diagnosis are described on p877.
- May present as a chronic condition or as intestinal obstruction of a herniated bowel, so check preoperative fluid and electrolyte status.
- Defect should be closed promptly but this seldom needs to be done as an emergency.
- The surgical approach is via standard lateral thoracotomy or thoracoabdominal incision.
- Intraoperative management is as for a fundoplication (p401).
- Avoid nitrous oxide as it distends the bowel and may make reduction of the hernia more difficult.
- DLT and OLV facilitate surgical access for repair.
- A nasogastric tube should be used to decompress the stomach.

### Repair of ruptured oesophagus

- Clinical features and diagnosis are described on p878—surgical emphysema and pleural effusions are frequently present.
- Other causes of oesophageal rupture include excessive abdominal straining and unco-ordinated vomiting (Boerhaave's syndrome). Oesophageal perforation can be caused by foreign bodies but is often iatrogenic (during endoscopic procedures).

- Mediastinitis is followed rapidly by sepsis and a systemic inflammatory response syndrome with associated problems of circulatory shock, renal failure, and ARDS.
- The principles of surgical management are initially drainage and prevention of further contamination.
- Careful endoscopic assessment will determine extent of oesophageal disruption.
- Small tears in unfit frail patients may be managed conservatively with chest drainage and nasogastric suction, but normally urgent surgery is required.
- Patients should be stabilised preoperatively in ICU with chest drainage, IV fluid replacement, analgesia, invasive monitoring, and inotropic support.
- Intraoperative management is as for oesophagectomy (see p394).
- Upper and lower oesophageal injuries require right and left thoracotomy, respectively.
- Primary closure may be possible if the oesophagus is healthy; if not oesophagectomy will be required.
- Arrhythmias are common, particularly atrial fibrillation, due to mediastinitis.
- Change the DLT for a single lumen tube before transfer to intensive care for postoperative ventilation.
- Even patients who are stable at the end of the repair procedure remain at high risk of major complications for several days.
- Early postoperative feeding—feeding jejunostomy or parenterally.
- There is a significant incidence of dehiscence resulting in oesophagopleurocutaneous fistula with high mortality.

### Repair of tracheobronchial injury

- Most patients with significant tracheal/bronchial disruption do not reach hospital alive.
- Clinical features of laryngeal and tracheobronchial injuries are described on p878.
- The priority is 100% oxygen and relief of tension pneumothorax, which may require two large-bore intercostal drains with independent underwater seals.
- If ventilation and oxygenation are acceptable call for thoracic surgical assistance and try to assess and identify site of airway injury by fiberoptic bronchoscopy before intubation.
- Airway management and anaesthetic principles apply as for a large bronchopleural fistula (p390).
- Adequate positive pressure ventilation may be impossible with single lumen tube.
- A torn bronchus can be isolated by fiberoptic guided intubation of the contralateral intact main bronchus with an appropriate DLT.
- An uncut single lumen tube can be guided past an upper tracheal tear with a bronchoscope so its cuff lies distal to the injury.

- Once the airway is secure and ventilation is stabilised proceed to urgent thoracotomy for repair.
- Carinal disruption may require cardiopulmonary bypass to maintain oxygenation during repair.
- Inappropriate management can lead to later stenosis and long-term airway problems.

### **Further reading**

Ghosh S, Latimer RD (1999). *Thoracic Anaesthesia Principles and Practice*. London: Butterworth-Heinemann.

Wilson WC, Benumof JL (2005). Anesthesia for thoracic surgery. In: Miller RD, ed. *Miller's Anesthesia*, 6th edn, Chapter 49. Philadelphia: Elsevier Churchill Livingstone.

*This page intentionally left blank*



Operation	Description	Time	Pain	Position/approach	Blood loss/ X-match	Notes
Fibreoptic bronchoscopy	Visual inspection of tracheo-bronchial tree ± biopsy and bronchial brushings/lavage	5–10min	+	Supine	None	GA rarely used. Single lumen tube (SLT) (8–9mm) with bronchoscopy diaphragm on angle piece. IPPV with relaxant appropriate to duration. Expect high airway pressures while scope in ETT. Suction can empty breathing system
Lung biopsy	Diagnostic sampling of lung tissue for localised or diffuse abnormality	30–60min	+++ /++++	Lateral/VATS or minithoracotomy	Minor/G&S: X-match if anaemic	DLT and OLV facilitate VATS procedures. Patients with diffuse disease can have very poor lung function—risk of ventilator dependence and significant mortality
Oesophagoscopy and dilatation (O&D)	Visual inspection of oesophagus via rigid or fibreoptic scope ± dilatation of stricture with flexible bougies or balloon	5–20min	–/+	Supine	None	Regurgitation risk so rapid sequence induction advised. SLT on left side of mouth—watch for airway obstruction and ETT displacement during procedure. Flexible oesophagoscopy often done under IV sedation
Oesophageal stent insertion	Endoscopic placement of tubular stent through oesophageal stricture	10–30min	+ /++	Supine	None	Often emaciated, may be anaemic. Preop IV fluids to correct dehydration. Rapid sequence induction, SLT, and awake extubation in lateral position. Small risk of oesophageal rupture

Fundoplication/ hiatus hernia repair	'Antireflux' procedure—fundus of stomach wrapped round lower oesophagus, may require a gastroplasty to lengthen oesophagus	2–3min	++++/+++++	Supine/laparotomy. Lateral/left thoracotomy. Now often done laparoscopically	Moderate/G&S: if Hb <12 X- match 2U	Often obese—check respiratory function. Rapid sequence induction or awake fiberoptic intubation mandatory. Nasogastric tube required. DLT helpful for thoracic approach. Epidural or paravertebral catheter and PCA recommended
Pectus excavatum/ carinatum repair	Correction of 'funnel chest'/'pigeon chest' deformity of sternum	3–5hr	+++ /++++	Supine—arms to sides/midline sternal incision	Moderate to severe/X-match 2U	Primarily cosmetic unless deformity severe. Usually young fit adults. GA, IPPV via SLT, and mid-thoracic epidural recommended. Risk of pneumothoraces. Minimally invasive technique for pectus excavatum repair is becoming increasingly popular— epidural still recommended
Thymectomy	Excision of residual thymic tissue and/or thymoma from superior and anterior mediastinum	2–3hr	++/+++	Supine—arms to sides/median sternotomy	Moderate/ X-match 2U	Usually for myasthenia gravis. Check for airway compression, other autoimmune diseases, thyroid function, and steroid, immunosuppressive, and anticholinesterase therapy (see p256). GA, IPPV via SLT, intravenous anaesthesia, minimal or no relaxant, and monitoring of neuromuscular transmission. May need postop ventilatory support

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Neurosurgery

## Alex Manara and Samantha Shinde

General principles 404

Craniotomy 408

Ventriculo-peritoneal shunt 410

Evacuation of traumatic intracranial haematoma 412

Pituitary surgery 416

Posterior fossa surgery 418

Awake craniotomy 422

Vascular lesions 424

Complications of aneurysmal subarachnoid  
haemorrhage (SAH) 426

Anaesthesia for vascular lesions 428

Interventional radiology 430

Venous air embolism (VAE) 432

Neurological determination of death 434

Organ retrieval from a beating heart donor 436

See also:

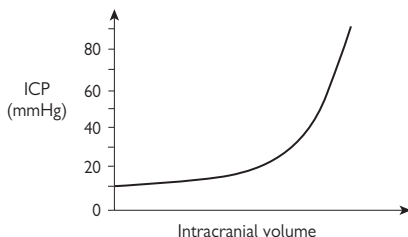
Spinal surgery 484

Cervical spine fracture 500

## General principles

### Intracranial pressure (ICP)

Normal ICP is 5–12 mmHg. Changes in ICP reflect changes in the volume of intracranial contents held within the confines of the skull (brain substance 1200–1600 ml, blood 100–150 ml, CSF 100–150 ml, ECF <75 ml). Compensatory mechanisms initially reduce the effect of an intracranial space-occupying lesion on ICP by displacing CSF into the spinal subarachnoid space, increasing absorption of CSF, and reducing intracranial blood volume. Eventually these mechanisms are overwhelmed and further small increases in intracranial volume result in a steep rise in intracranial pressure (see figure 16.1). If a lesion develops slowly it may reach a relatively large volume before causing a significant rise in ICP. A lesion that appears relatively small on a CT scan may have developed quickly, allowing little time for compensation.



**Fig. 16.1**

### Causes of raised ICP

- Increased brain substance: tumour, abscess, haematoma
- Increased CSF volume: hydrocephalus, benign intracranial hypertension, blocked shunt
- Increased blood volume:
  - Increased cerebral blood flow (CBF): hypoxia, hypercarbia, volatile anaesthetic agent
  - Increased cerebral venous volume: increased thoracic pressure, venous obstruction in the neck, head-down tilt, coughing
- Increased extracellular fluid: cerebral oedema

### Cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP)

CPP is the effective pressure that results in blood flow to the brain.

$$CPP = MAP - (ICP + VP)$$

Venous pressure (VP) at the jugular bulb is usually zero or less, and therefore CPP is related to ICP and mean arterial pressure (MAP) alone. The CPP therefore varies with the patient's MAP, but CBF is maintained constant by autoregulation.

### **Cerebral blood flow**

Autoregulation maintains CBF between a MAP of 50 and 140mmHg. Outside these limits CBF varies passively with perfusion pressure. In patients with chronic hypertension the lower and upper limits of autoregulation are higher than normal, so that a MAP that may be adequate in a normal patient may lead to cerebral ischaemia in the hypertensive patient. Autoregulation is also impaired or abolished acutely in the presence of a brain tissue acidosis, i.e. with hypoxia, hypercarbia, acute intracranial disease, and following head injury.

CBF varies with:

- **Metabolism:** CBF is primarily determined by the metabolic demands of the brain. It increases during epileptic seizures and with pain/anxiety. It is reduced in coma, hypothermia, and with anaesthetic agents.
- **Carbon dioxide tension:** hypocapnia results in cerebral vasoconstriction and a reduction in CBF. The greatest effect is at normal  $\text{PaCO}_2$ , where a change of 1kPa (7.5mmHg) results in a 30% change in blood flow. MAP modifies the response of CBF to hyperventilation. High perfusion pressures increase the responsiveness to hyperventilation, whereas hypotension of 50mmHg abolishes the effect of  $\text{PaCO}_2$  on CBF.
- **Oxygen tension:**  $\text{PaO}_2$  is not an important determinant of CBF, a value of <7kPa (53mmHg) being required before cerebral vasodilatation occurs.
- **Temperature:** hypothermia reduces cerebral metabolism by ~5% per degree centigrade, thereby reducing CBF.
- **Viscosity:** there is no effect on CBF when the haematocrit is between 30 and 50%. CBF will increase with reduced viscosity outside this range.
- **Anaesthetic agents:** see below.

### **Measuring intracranial pressure**

- **Ventricular:** a catheter inserted into a lateral ventricle via a burr hole is the gold standard for measuring ICP. This also allows drainage of CSF as a treatment option. Risks include haemorrhage at insertion and ventriculitis with prolonged use. Insertion may be difficult in patients with cerebral oedema and small ventricles.
- **Intraparenchymal:** micro-miniature silicone strain gauge monitors can be inserted into the brain parenchyma to monitor ICP. They are accurate and relatively easy to insert even by non-neurosurgical staff. They are currently the most common technique used to measure ICP

### **Anaesthesia in the presence of raised ICP**

Symptoms and signs to identify patients with a raised ICP preoperatively:

- **Early:** headache, vomiting, seizures, focal neurology, papilloedema.
- **Late:** increasing blood pressure and bradycardia. Agitation, drowsiness, coma, Cheyne Stokes breathing, apnoea. Ipsilateral then bilateral pupillary dilatation, decorticate then decerebrate posturing.
- **Investigations:** evaluate CT/MRI scans for the presence of generalised oedema, midline shift, acute hydrocephalus, and site/size of any lesion.

**Management aims**

Do not increase ICP further.

- Avoid increasing CBF by avoiding hypercarbia, hypoxia, hypertension, and hyperthermia. Use IPPV to control  $\text{PaCO}_2$  and ensure good oxygenation, adequate analgesia, and anaesthetic depth.
- Avoid increasing venous pressure. Avoid coughing and straining, the head-down position, and obstructing neck veins with ET tube ties.
- Prevent further cerebral oedema. While patients are generally fluid restricted, it is important to maintain intravascular volume and CPP. Do not use hypotonic solutions—fluid flux across the blood–brain barrier is determined mainly by plasma osmolality not oncotic pressure. Maintenance of a high normal plasma osmolality is essential.
- Maintain CPP: hypotension will decrease CPP in the presence of a raised ICP. Control blood pressure using fluids and vasopressors as necessary. Aim for a CPP  $>70\text{mmHg}$ .
- Avoid anaesthetic agents that increase ICP (see below).

**Specific measures to decrease ICP**

- Reduce cerebral oedema using osmotic or loop diuretics, or both. Give mannitol  $0.25\text{--}1\text{g/kg}$  over 15min or furosemide  $0.25\text{--}1\text{mg/kg}$ . Insert a urinary catheter in patients receiving diuretics.
- Modest hyperventilation to  $\text{PaCO}_2$  of  $4.0\text{--}4.5\text{kPa}$  ( $30\text{--}34\text{mmHg}$ ) has a transient effect in reducing ICP for 24hr. Excessive hyperventilation results in cerebral ischaemia and a loss of autoregulation. Note:  $\text{ETCO}_2$  is lower than  $\text{PaCO}_2$ .
- Corticosteroids reduce oedema surrounding tumours and abscesses but have no role in head injury. They take several hours to work. Dexamethasone  $4\text{mg}$  6-hourly is often given electively preoperatively.
- CSF may be drained via a ventricular or lumbar drain.
- Position the patient with a head-up tilt of  $30^\circ$  to reduce central venous pressure. Ensure that MAP is not significantly reduced as the overall result could be a reduction in CPP.

**Anaesthetic agents and ICP**

- Volatile agents uncouple metabolism and flow, reducing cerebral metabolism while increasing CBF and ICP. They abolish autoregulation in sufficient doses. Halothane causes the greatest increase in ICP and isoflurane the least. ICP is unaffected by concentrations of  $<1$  MAC of isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane. Enflurane may cause seizures and has no place in neuroanaesthesia. Nitrous oxide is a weak cerebral vasodilator increasing CBF and therefore ICP. It has also been shown to increase cerebral metabolic rate.
- IV anaesthetic agents all decrease cerebral metabolism, CBF, and ICP with the exception of ketamine. Ketamine has some neuroprotective properties but is considered contraindicated in neurosurgery.  $\text{CO}_2$  reactivity and autoregulation of the cerebral circulation are well maintained during propofol/thiopental anaesthesia.

- Other drugs:
  - Suxamethonium causes a rise in ICP through muscle fasciculation increasing venous pressure. This effect is of little clinical relevance. Suxamethonium should still be used when rapid intubation is required in the presence of a potentially full stomach (e.g. head injury).
  - Opioid analgesics have little effect on CBF and ICP if hypercapnia is avoided.  $\text{CO}_2$  reactivity is maintained.



## Craniotomy

Procedure	Excision or debulking of tumour, brain biopsy, drainage of cerebral abscess
Time	1–12hr
Pain	+ / + + +
Position	Supine, head-up tilt, or lateral decubitus
Blood loss	0–2000ml, G&S, or X-match 2U
Practical techniques	ETT, IPPV, art line, CVP

### Preoperative

- Assess the patient for symptoms and signs of raised ICP. Document any neurological deficits. Assess the gag reflex.
- Intracranial tumours may be metastatic: primary sites include the lung, breast, thyroid, and bowel.
- Check CT/MRI scans—the duration and complexity of the procedure are determined by the size, site, and vascularity of lesions being excised.
- Patients receiving diuretics or who have been vomiting may have disordered electrolytes. Patients receiving dexamethasone may be hyperglycaemic.
- Restrict IV fluids to 30ml/kg/d if cerebral oedema present. Avoid glucose-containing solutions. They may cause hyperglycaemia, which is associated with a worse outcome after brain injury. They also reduce osmolality, resulting in increased cerebral oedema.
- Ensure graduated compression stockings are fitted to prevent DVT.
- Prophylactic or therapeutic phenytoin may be required (a loading dose of 15mg/kg followed by a single daily dose of 3–4mg/kg).

### Perioperative

- Patients undergoing burr hole biopsy require standard monitoring. Those scheduled for craniotomy also need arterial line/CVP, neuromuscular monitoring, and core temperature. Insert a urinary catheter for long procedures and in patients who receive diuretics.
- Induce with thiopental 3–5mg/kg or propofol 2–3mg/kg combined with remifentanyl (0.2–0.5µg/kg/min). Give IV induction agents slowly to avoid reducing BP and CPP. A non-depolarising relaxant is used to facilitate intubation. Remifentanyl usually attenuates the hypertensive response to intubation—if not use additional agents such as lidocaine 1.5mg/kg or a β-blocker (labetalol 5mg increments). Use an armoured ETT to prevent kinking and secure in place with tapes as ties may cause venous obstruction. Protect the eyes.
- Avoid N<sub>2</sub>O. Maintain anaesthesia using either volatile agent (sevoflurane/isoflurane <1 MAC) or TCI propofol (3–6µg/ml). Remifentanyl infusion is continued at a lower rate (0.15–0.25µg/kg/min) titrated to response. Top-up doses of muscle relaxants are rarely

required when remifentanyl is used. In the absence of remifentanyl use fentanyl 5 µg/kg at induction followed by top-up doses as required or an alfentanil infusion (25–50 µg/kg/hr).

- Patients may be placed in the supine or lateral position. Avoid extreme neck flexion or rotation, which may impair cerebral venous return, and maintain a head-up tilt. If the head is turned for surgery, support the shoulder to reduce the effect on neck veins.
- Application of the Mayfield 3-point fixator to secure the head can cause a marked hypertensive response. Pin sites can be infiltrated with local anaesthetic and if necessary give a further dose of remifentanyl (0.5–1 µg/kg) or propofol (0.5–1 mg/kg).
- Aim for normotension during most procedures. Modest hypotension may infrequently be required to improve surgical field. Mild hypocapnia is used in tumour surgery. Aim for PaCO<sub>2</sub> of 4.0–4.5 kPa (30–34 mmHg).
- Avoid hypotonic solutions for fluid maintenance. Replace blood loss with colloid or blood.
- Maintain normothermia. Hypothermia is rarely indicated.
- Use intermittent pneumatic compression device to the calves or feet.
- Closure of the dura, bone flap, and scalp takes at least half an hour. Administer IV morphine at this stage to provide analgesia when the remifentanyl is stopped. Sudden hypertension on awakening may be treated with small boluses of labetalol. Avoid coughing if possible.

### Postoperative

- Further incremental doses of IV morphine may be required in the immediate postoperative period in the recovery area.
- Many routine craniotomies can be managed postoperatively on an adequately staffed neurosurgical ward. Continued monitoring of the patient's conscious level and neurological state is essential. Consider postoperative sedation and ventilation if there is continuing cerebral oedema or if the patient was severely obtunded preoperatively.
- On return to the ward the majority of patients will experience pain in the mild to moderate range after craniotomy. At this stage codeine phosphate (60–90 mg) combined with regular paracetamol is usually sufficient in >90% of patients. If not PCA with morphine may be used.

### Special considerations

- NSAIDs should be used only for postoperative analgesia after careful consideration. While they reduce opioid requirements and enhance opioid analgesia, they also increase bleeding time—a postoperative intracranial haematoma is potentially disastrous. Many patients will have also received diuretics and are potentially hypovolaemic.
- A central line is indicated for the majority of craniotomies to allow measurement of CVP, infusion of vasoactive drugs, and aspiration of air in the case of venous air embolism.

## Ventriculo-peritoneal shunt

Procedure	CSF drainage for hydrocephalus
Time	45–120min
Pain	++
Position	Supine, head-up tilt
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	ETT, IPPV

Shunts are inserted for hydrocephalus. CSF is diverted from the cerebral ventricles to other body cavities, from where it is absorbed. Most commonly a ventriculo-peritoneal shunt is created, more rarely a ventriculo-atrial or ventriculo-pleural shunt. An occipital burr hole enables a tube to be placed into the lateral ventricle. This is then tunneled subcutaneously down the neck and trunk and inserted into the peritoneal cavity through a small abdominal incision. A flushing device can be placed in the burr hole to keep the system clear, and a valve system is incorporated to prevent CSF draining too rapidly with changes in posture.

### Preoperative

- As for craniotomy (p408).
- Many patients requiring shunts are children and the usual paediatric considerations apply.
- Patients often have raised intracranial pressure.
- Emergency cases may have a full stomach, requiring a rapid sequence induction.

### Perioperative

- Shunt procedures are shorter and simpler than craniotomies. Use routine monitoring. Arterial and central venous lines are not required.
- Antibiotic treatment or prophylaxis is required and strict antisepsis protocols are normally followed to reduce the incidence of shunt infection.
- Advancing the trocar to allow tunnelling of the shunt is particularly stimulating. Additional analgesia and/or muscle relaxation is often required at this stage.

### Postoperative

- Any deterioration in the patient's conscious level is an indication for CT scan to exclude shunt malfunction or subdural haematoma.

### Special considerations

- Patients are at risk of intracranial haemorrhage if CSF is drained too rapidly.
- Shunts often block or become infected, requiring revision.
- Watch for signs of pneumothorax as the trocar is placed subcutaneously.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Evacuation of traumatic intracranial haematoma

Procedure	Evacuation of extradural or subdural haematoma
Time	1.5–3hr
Pain	+ / +++
Position	Supine, head-up
Blood loss	200–2000ml, X-match 2U
Practical techniques	ETT, IPPV, art line, CVP

Intracranial haematoma may be extradural, subdural, or intracerebral.

- Extradural: urgent evacuation is required and certainly within an hour of pupillary dilation. The haematoma is usually the result of a tear in the middle meningeal artery. It is virtually always associated with a skull fracture, except in children, when the fracture may be absent.
- Subdural haematoma results from bleeding from the bridging veins between the cortex and dura. Early evacuation of acute subdural haematoma improves outcome. Chronic subdural haematomas may occur in the elderly, often after trivial injury. They present insidiously with headaches and confusion and can be evacuated via burr hole under local anaesthesia.
- Intracerebral haematoma occurs in hypertensive individuals, as a complication of treatment with warfarin, or as a result of bleeding from an intracranial aneurysm.

### Preoperative

- As for head injury (p872).
- Most patients will have a reduced or deteriorating GCS.
- Intracranial pressure is usually raised.
- Patients may have associated injuries to the chest, pelvis, or abdomen requiring resuscitation and treatment in their own right—see pp876–81. Protect C-spine if necessary.
- Patients may have a full stomach, requiring rapid sequence induction. Insert an orogastric tube after intubation.
- Check blood clotting profile and the availability of blood products prior to surgery.

### Perioperative

- As for craniotomy (p408).
- Patients require standard monitoring, including invasive blood pressure and CVP monitoring.
- Ensure smooth induction and normotension. Maintain CPP using fluids and vasopressors if necessary. Assume that the ICP is 20mmHg—the minimum acceptable MAP is therefore 80mmHg to achieve a CPP of 60mmHg.

- Ensure head-up tilt; avoid nitrous oxide, ventilate to an  $\text{ETCO}_2$  of 4.0kPa (30mmHg) and give mannitol (0.5–1g/kg) or 5% saline (100ml) and furosemide (0.25–1mg/kg) as required.
- Once decompression has occurred there may be a decrease in systemic blood pressure, which can usually be treated with volume replacement.

### Postoperative

- Most patients should be transferred to ICU. Further management should be guided by a protocol to maintain CPP and prevent secondary insults to the brain (see below).

### Special considerations

- It is essential for the various teams to communicate and set priorities in the management of patients with multiple injuries. Priorities will vary from patient to patient—see pp891–2.
- Hypotension in a head-injured patient is a medical emergency and must be treated promptly and aggressively.

### Postoperative and ICU management of the head-injured patient

- Management of head-injured patients is similar for postoperative patients and those not requiring surgery. Patients are best managed using a protocol designed primarily to maintain an adequate CPP/ cerebral oxygenation and control ICP. It involves identifying and treating causes of secondary brain insults.
- Causes of secondary insult are:
  - Intracranial—haematoma, oedema, convulsions, hydrocephalus, abscess, hyperaemia
  - Systemic—hypotension, hypoxia, hyponatraemia, pyrexia, anaemia, sepsis, hypercarbia, hyperglycaemia
- Steroids should not be administered to patients following severe head injury.

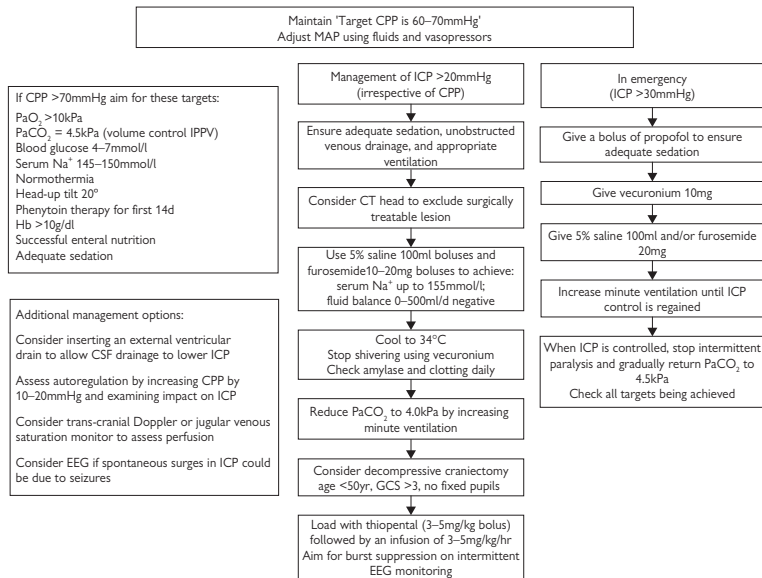


Fig. 16.2 Guidelines for managing adults with severe head injuries in ICU.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Pituitary surgery

Procedure	Trans-sphenoidal hypophysectomy
Time	90–180min
Pain	++
Position	Supine, head-up tilt
Blood loss	Nil usually, but large if venous sinus disrupted, G&S
Practical techniques	ETT, IPPV, art line

Pituitary tumours account for 15% of all intracranial tumours. They present with either hypersecretion of hormones (acromegaly/Cushing's syndrome) or mass effects (headaches, visual field defects, hydrocephalus, hypopituitarism). Hypophysectomy is undertaken urgently if the patient's sight is deteriorating rapidly.

### Preoperative

Special considerations for acromegalic patients (see also p162):

- Possible airway compromise due to macroglossia, prognathism, and hypertrophy of epiglottis/vocal cords
- Hypertension and left ventricular hypertrophy
- Sleep apnoea, diabetes mellitus

Special considerations for Cushing's patients (see also p174):

- Hypertension, truncal obesity
- Electrolyte abnormalities (hypokalaemia, hyperglycaemia)
- Steroid cover necessary pre- and postoperatively

### Perioperative

- As for craniotomy (p408).
- A throat pack should be inserted following intubation. Moffett's solution (p634) may be instilled into each nostril to improve surgical conditions.
- Surgical access is via the sphenoidal air sinuses.
- If there is suprasellar extension a lumbar drain is inserted into the CSF. The anaesthetist may be required to instil a volume of sterile saline to advance the tumour into the operative field.
- Major haemorrhage may occur if there is disruption of the cavernous sinus/carotid arteries which lie lateral to the pituitary gland.

### Postoperative

- Codeine phosphate is the analgesic of choice.
- Diabetes insipidus may occur in up to 50% of patients. It is managed initially with IV desmopressin (0.25–1µg).
- Cerebrospinal rhinorrhoea may occur. It is usually self-limiting, but, if persistent, intermittent CSF drainage via a lumbar drain may be required.

**Special considerations**

Patients with preoperative pan-hypopituitarism or who develop postoperative endocrine disturbances should be referred to an endocrinologist for advice on hormone replacement. If a craniotomy is planned rather than a transphenoidal approach, refer to p408.

## Posterior fossa surgery

Procedure	Excision or debulking of tumour, vascular procedures, foramen magnum decompression
Time	3–14hr
Pain	+ / +++
Position	See below
Blood loss	100–2000ml, G&S
Practical techniques	ETT, IPPV, art line, CVP, consider monitoring for venous air embolism

The posterior fossa lies below the tentorium cerebelli and contains the pons, medulla, and cerebellum. Within the brainstem lie the main motor and sensory pathways, the lower cranial nerve nuclei, and the centres that control respiration and cardiovascular function. An increase in pressure in this area results in decreased consciousness, hypertension, bradycardia, respiratory depression, and loss of protective airway reflexes. The exit pathways for CSF from the ventricular system are also located here and obstruction results in hydrocephalus. Space-occupying lesions and surgical disturbance in this area can therefore have a profound physiological impact.

### Preoperative

- Patients with posterior fossa lesions may have a reduced level of consciousness and impaired airway reflexes. Bulbar palsy may lead to silent aspiration. Pulmonary function must be assessed.
- Assess intracranial pressure—may be raised. If hydrocephalus is present, ventricular drainage may be required before the definitive procedure.
- Assess fluid status—may be dehydrated if vomiting. A reduced intravascular volume will result in hypotension on induction or if placed in the sitting position.
- Check electrolytes and glucose, particularly if taking diuretics or steroids.
- Assess cardiovascular function, particularly the presence of untreated hypertension, postural hypotension, and septal defects.

### Perioperative

- As for craniotomy (p408).
- Insert an NG tube if risk of postoperative bulbar dysfunction.
- Further specialised monitoring is required for posterior fossa surgery, including monitoring for venous air embolism (p432) and nerve tract injury. The appropriate electrophysiological monitor used to detect nerve tract injury depends upon the neural pathway at risk during the procedure. Spontaneous or evoked electromyographic activity, somatosensory evoked potentials, or brainstem auditory evoked potentials are frequently monitored. Lumbar CSF drainage is

occasionally requested to improve surgical conditions and to reduce the incidence of postoperative CSF leaks.

- Avoid  $N_2O$ —it increases cerebral metabolic rate and CBF and may worsen the outcome of air embolism. Finally, there is a risk that any residual intracranial air will increase in volume and cause postoperative pneumocephalus.
- Surgical interference with vital centres may result in sudden and dramatic cardiovascular changes. Inform the surgeon—more gentle retraction or dissection usually resolves the problem. Use drugs such as atropine and  $\beta$ -blockers only if absolutely necessary as they make the interpretation of further changes difficult.

### Patient positioning

Surgical access to the posterior fossa requires the patient to be sitting, prone, or lateral. Careful attention is required in positioning the patient as procedures are often prolonged.

- Sitting position: use of this position is declining. It provides optimum access to midline lesions, improves cerebral venous drainage, and lowers intracranial pressure. However, complications include haemodynamic instability, venous air embolism, and the possibility of paradoxical air embolism, pneumocephalus, and quadriplegia. Absolute contraindications include cerebral ischaemia when upright and awake, and the presence of a patent ventriculo-atrial shunt or patent foramen ovale (should be screened preoperatively). Relative contraindications are uncontrolled hypertension, extremes of age, and COPD. To achieve this position the head and shoulders are gradually elevated with the neck partially flexed and the forehead resting on a horseshoe ring mounted on a frame. Avoid excessive head flexion since this can cause jugular compression, swelling of the tongue and face, and cervical cord ischaemia.
- Prone position: allows good surgical access without the risks associated with the sitting position. Abdominal compression should be avoided as it results in increased cerebral venous pressure. This is achieved by adequately supporting the chest and pelvis.
- Lateral position: the lateral or 'park bench' position is particularly suitable for lateral lesions such as acoustic neuroma and operations on a cerebellar hemisphere. The neck is flexed and the head rotated towards the floor ensuring that the jugular veins are not obstructed. Pressure points over the shoulder, greater trochanter, and peroneal nerves should be protected.

### Postoperative

- Most patients can be safely extubated and managed on a properly staffed neurosurgical ward postoperatively.
- Airway obstruction can occur after posterior fossa surgery due to macroglossia, partial damage to the vagus, and excessive flexion of the cervical spine.
- Surgery on medulla or high cervical lesions carries a significant risk of postoperative impairment of respiratory drive.

- The patient should be admitted to ICU for ventilation if the preoperative state was poor, the surgical resection was extensive, there is significant cerebral oedema, or there are intraoperative complications.

### Special considerations

- Acoustic neuroma: the facial nerve is particularly vulnerable and is monitored using electromyographic needles placed over the face. This allows the surgeon to identify when the nerve is at risk. Neuromuscular blockade should be used only at induction to allow intubation. Often 8th nerve function is also monitored to preserve any residual hearing. This requires a constant level of anaesthesia so that neurophysiological changes can be attributed to surgery rather than variations in anaesthetic depth. These requirements are best met using a remifentanyl infusion combined with a constant level of anaesthesia using a low concentration of an inhalation agent or a propofol infusion.
- Venous air embolism (see p432).
- Postoperative analgesia is managed as for craniotomy.

#### Posterior fossa lesions

Tumour	Notes
Gliomas	Cerebellar astrocytomas, ependymomas, particularly arising from the fourth ventricle
Medulloblastoma	Often arising from the vermis of the cerebellum, usually in children
Acoustic neuroma	Arising from the 8th nerve in the cerebello-pontine angle, usually benign
Haemangioblastoma	Young adults
Meningiomas	Less common in the posterior fossa
Metastatic tumours	
Abscesses and haematoma	
Vascular lesions	Aneurysms of the superior cerebellar, posterior inferior cerebellar, and vertebral arteries
Developmental lesions	Arnold–Chiari malformation

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Awake craniotomy

Procedure	Epilepsy surgery, excision of tumours in eloquent cortical areas
Time	1.5–4hr
Pain	+ / +++
Position	See below
Blood loss	100–2000ml, G&S
Practical techniques	LMA, art line, consider monitoring for venous air embolism

Awake craniotomy allows intraoperative assessment of the patient's neurological status. It is mainly used to allow accurate mapping of the resection margins in epilepsy surgery, accurate location of electrodes in surgery for movement disorders, and excision of tumours from eloquent areas of the cortex (sensory, motor, speech areas). In tumour surgery the aim is to achieve maximal tumour resection with minimal neurological deficit. It is used most effectively in combination with modern imaging techniques such as 3D navigation systems. Awake craniotomy may be associated with a lower requirement for high-dependency care, shorter length of stay, and reduced costs. In the past a combination of local anaesthesia and sedation was used, but the use of an asleep–awake–asleep technique with a laryngeal mask airway (LMA) is gaining popularity since it is associated with a lower incidence of complications such as oversedation, airway obstruction, hypoventilation, and an uncooperative patient.

### Preoperative

- As for craniotomy (p408).
- Both the neurosurgeon and neuro-anaesthetist must be experienced in awake craniotomy. Appropriate patient selection is essential. The patient must be well informed, motivated, and able to tolerate lying still for the duration of surgery. Confusion, anxiety, and difficulty in communication are contraindications. Obesity, oesophageal reflux, and highly vascular tumours may also cause problems.
- The patient should be given a full explanation of the procedures involved.
- Premedication is generally avoided, but routine medication should be administered on the day of surgery. Anticonvulsant prophylaxis should be prescribed routinely for all patients and dexamethasone for those undergoing tumour surgery.

### Perioperative

- Aims are to ensure adequate sedation, analgesia, cardiorespiratory stability, and to avoid hypercarbia and nausea and vomiting, as well as ensuring an awake and co-operative patient when required for intraoperative testing. Many techniques can be used to achieve this. Routine monitoring as for craniotomy should be used, including urinary catheterisation if the procedure is expected to be prolonged.

- IV antiemetic prophylaxis is administered routinely (e.g. ondansetron 4mg IV). Anaesthesia is induced and maintained with a target-controlled infusion of propofol and a remifentanyl infusion (0.05–1 µg/kg/min). The propofol dose is titrated against the patient's responses, haemodynamics, and possibly bispectral index monitoring. The patient's lungs are ventilated using an LMA, allowing monitoring and control of ventilation/ $\text{PaCO}_2$ . This minimises the risks of hypoventilation and airway obstruction, providing good operative conditions. Adequate local anaesthetic infiltration of the Mayfield fixator pin sites and the operative field is essential.
- When the tumour is exposed the remifentanyl is reduced to 0.005–0.01 µg/kg/min to allow return of spontaneous ventilation. When this occurs the LMA is removed and the propofol stopped. Once the resection is complete the patient is re-anaesthetised and the LMA reinserted until the end of the procedure.
- Preoperative complications include: seizures, respiratory depression, restlessness, airway obstruction, air embolus, and brain swelling.

### Postoperative

- Morphine should be administered at the end of the procedure.
- Other aspects of postoperative care are as for craniotomy (p408).

### Special considerations

- Ensure that a calm and quiet atmosphere is maintained in theatre. The patient should be draped in a fashion that allows constant access to the patient's airway and minimises the feeling of claustrophobia.
- Bispectral index monitoring may be useful in guiding the target-controlled infusion.



## Vascular lesions

Vascular lesions presenting for surgical management are usually either intracranial aneurysms or arteriovenous malformations.

### Intracranial aneurysms

- Berry aneurysms occur at vessel junctions, cerebral arteries having a weaker, less elastic muscle layer than systemic vessels. They may occur in association with atherosclerosis, polycystic kidneys, hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia, coarctation of the aorta, and Marfan's, Ehlers–Danlos, and Klinefelter's syndromes. The most common sites are the internal carotid system (41%), the anterior cerebral artery (34%), and the middle cerebral artery (20%).
- They are more common in females and 40–60yr olds, and in 25% of cases they are multiple. In the UK, the incidence is 10–28:100 000 per year. The prevalence of aneurysm is 6% of the population in prospective angiographic studies.
- Aneurysms do not usually rupture until they are >5mm in diameter. They then present as a subarachnoid or intracerebral haemorrhage. Classic symptoms include sudden onset of severe headache with loss of consciousness, which may be transient in mild cases. Occasionally a patient presents with a focal neurological deficit due to the pressure of an enlarging aneurysm on surrounding structures.
- Grading of subarachnoid haemorrhage (World Federation of Neurosurgeons): the grade of SAH influences morbidity and mortality. It is also of value in deciding whether to operate or coil early (grades 1–3) or to delay intervention (grades 4–5).

Grade	GCS (see p873)	Motor deficit
1	15	—
2	13–14	—
3	13–14	+
4	7–12	±
5	3–6	±

### Arteriovenous malformations

- These are dilated arteries and veins with no intervening capillaries.
- They may present clinically with subarachnoid haemorrhage or seizures.
- High blood flow through such lesions may 'steal' blood from surrounding tissue leading to ischaemia.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Complications of aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage (SAH)

### Neurological complications

#### Rebleeding

- The initial bleed and subsequent bleeds are the main cause of mortality. The highest risk period is in the first 24hr, during which there is a 4% risk of rebleeding, followed by a further risk of 1.5% per day for the next 4wk.
- There is a 60% risk of death with each episode of rebleeding. The main aim of management is to prevent rebleeding by securing the aneurysm either surgically by clipping it or angiographically by obliterating it endoluminally. (See 'Interventional radiology', p430.)
- Surgery was previously delayed for up to 10d to avoid the peak of vasospasm.
- The introduction of nimodipine has resulted in earlier surgery, ideally within 72hr. Grade 1–2 patients may be operated upon immediately.
- Most aneurysms are now secured by coiling. Craniotomy and clipping are much less common.

#### Delayed neurological deficit (DND)

- DND may present as focal or diffuse deficits and is a major cause of morbidity. It is the second main cause of mortality.
- It is associated with vasospasm caused by substances released as the subarachnoid blood undergoes haemolysis. The most likely spasmogenic agent is oxyhaemoglobin.
- Although angiographic vasospasm occurs in up to 75% of studied patients, only half of these patients develop DND. Up to 20% of symptomatic patients will develop a stroke or die of vasospasm despite optimal management.
- DND peaks 3–14d after the initial bleed. With increasingly early surgery for aneurysms, it is now commonly seen postoperatively.

#### Treatment

- Calcium channel blockers: **nimodipine** is a relatively selective calcium channel antagonist with effective penetration of the blood–brain barrier. It is started at the time of diagnosis and continued for 3wk (60mg NG/PO 4-hourly). Alternatively it can be administered IV (1mg/hr increasing to 2mg/hr) either centrally or peripherally with a fast flowing IVI. Nimodipine may cause systemic hypotension, which should be managed aggressively with fluids and, if necessary, vasopressors.
- **Hypertensive, hypervolaemic therapy** with or without **haemodilution** ('Triple H' therapy): this is based on the theory that vasospasm can be prevented or reversed by optimising cerebral blood flow. Goals are to increase cardiac output and blood pressure using volume expansion and then vasoactive drugs. The resulting haemodilution may improve cerebral blood flow by reducing viscosity. Disagreement exists as to the fluids/drugs that should be used and which haemodynamic goals to aim for. Suggested values are normal MAP + 15%, CVP >12mmHg, Hct 30–35%. Some centres advocate the use of PA catheters to

monitor therapy. Noradrenaline ( $0.025\text{--}0.3\mu\text{g/kg/min}$ ) and dobutamine ( $2\text{--}15\mu\text{g/kg/min}$ ) are used to increase MAP.

- In some centres balloon angioplasty or intra-arterial papaverine are also used.

### **Hydrocephalus**

Blood in the subarachnoid space may obstruct drainage of CSF and result in hydrocephalus and raised ICP. Sudden reduction in pressure with the insertion of a ventricular drain may increase the risk of rebleeding by reducing the transmural pressure across the aneurysm. Hydrocephalus must be ruled out by CT scan before attributing neurological deterioration to DND/vasospasm.

### **Other neurological complications**

These include seizures and cerebral oedema.

### **Medical complications**

Life-threatening medical problems occur in nearly 40% of patients and account for about 23% of deaths. Many of the cardiorespiratory complications following SAH are related to the massive sympathetic surge and catecholamine release that follow SAH.

- Severe LV dysfunction/cardiogenic shock: nearly 45% of patients have an ejection fraction  $<50\%$  or regional wall motion abnormalities. Treat with dobutamine.
- ECG abnormalities: up to 27% of patients will have ECG changes—T wave inversion, ST segment abnormalities, and Q waves. Strongly associated with a poor neurological grade but not predictive of all causes of mortality.
- Neurogenic pulmonary oedema: initially a hydrostatic pulmonary oedema resulting from an increase in pulmonary artery pressure, followed by damage to the pulmonary microvasculature and an increase in pulmonary capillary permeability.
- Hyponatraemia: many patients are hypovolaemic and hyponatraemic as a result of excessive atrial natriuretic peptide release. Fluid restriction is inappropriate and it should be managed with sodium repletion.
- Other complications include deep vein thrombosis, pneumonia, and hepatic, renal, and GI dysfunction.

### **Outcome following subarachnoid haemorrhage**

Approximately 20% of patients will die from SAH at the time of the initial bleed. Of those who survive to reach hospital a further 15% will die within 24hr and 40% will make a good recovery.

## Anaesthesia for vascular lesions

Procedure	Clipping of intracranial aneurysm, endovascular coiling of aneurysm
Time	>3hr
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine, head-up, lateral, or prone
Blood loss	200–2000ml; X-match 2U
Practical techniques	ETT, IPPV, art line, CVP

Clipping an aneurysm involves the use of microsurgery to apply a spring clip across the neck of the aneurysm. Aneurysms arising from branches of the vertebral or basilar arteries require a posterior fossa craniotomy, whereas others may be reached from a frontal or fronto-parietal approach. There is often a need to control the aneurysm prior to clipping by applying a temporary clip to a proximal vessel.

### Preoperative

- Assess the effects of the haemorrhage and any pre-existing arterial disease on the brain and other organs. See p426.
- Ensure adequate fluid intake, and that fluid is not being unnecessarily restricted.
- Nimodipine treatment should be instituted.
- Ensure graduated compression stockings are fitted.
- Phenytoin (15mg/kg followed by a single daily dose of 3–4mg/kg) should be prescribed prophylactically for the majority of patients.
- Discuss the anticipated difficulty of the surgical approach with the surgeon as it influences the decision to use induced hypothermia, barbiturates, and other forms of cerebral protection.

### Perioperative

As for craniotomy (p408) but note the following:

- Standard monitoring including invasive blood pressure monitoring should be instituted prior to induction. A CVP line can be inserted after induction. It will be useful not only intraoperatively but also in the postoperative period to help guide 'Triple H' therapy (p426).
- Ensure adequate venous access with large-bore cannulae.
- Aim to avoid increases in arterial pressure that may result in aneurysm rupture, but maintain adequate cerebral perfusion pressure. Aim for the preinduction BP  $\pm$  10%.
- Hypocapnia can result in cerebral ischaemia after SAH and must be avoided. Ventilate to a normal PaCO<sub>2</sub>.
- Maintain core temperature at 36–37°C for all grade 1–3 patients.

- Modern neurosurgical practice is to use temporary spring clips rather than induced hypotension. The latter may still be required in difficult cases or if rupture occurs. In this situation aim for a systolic BP of 60–80mmHg. Moderate hypotension may be achieved using isoflurane (up to 1.5MAC). Further hypotension is achieved using labetalol (5–10mg increments). Sodium nitroprusside is rarely used. Hypotension must not be induced in the presence of vasospasm.
- If rupture occurs:
  - Call for help.
  - Increase IV infusions and start blood transfusion.
  - Inducing hypotension helps to reduce bleeding.
  - Ipsilateral carotid compression.
- Other cerebral protection measures should be considered electively if temporary clipping of a major cerebral vessel is planned or in case of aneurysm rupture. This includes inducing the administration of thiopental (3–5mg/kg bolus followed by 3–5mg/kg/hr), in which case EEG monitoring should ideally be used to allow titration of the dose to burst suppression. It may be necessary to use a vasopressor to support MAP when infusing thiopental. Inducing hypothermia to a temperature of 32°C is reserved for complex surgical vascular procedures. The patient is cooled using surface devices and rewarmed once the cerebral circulation is restored.

### Postoperative

- ICU/HDU care is required postoperatively for patients with a poor grade preoperatively, those who had a stormy perioperative course, and those requiring treatment for vasospasm.
- Codeine phosphate and regular paracetamol may be prescribed for analgesia.
- A decrease in the GCS may indicate vasospasm, intracranial haematoma, or hydrocephalus—perform a CT scan.

### Arteriovenous malformations (AVMs)

- Surgery is not urgent unless the AVM or a resulting haematoma is causing pressure effects.
- The procedure may be associated with significant blood loss—crossmatched blood and adequate IV access are essential.
- Blood may be shunted through the AVM, resulting in relative ischaemia to the surrounding tissue. When the lesion is excised, a relative hyperperfusion of surrounding tissue may occur, resulting in cerebral oedema and increased ICP.
- There is no risk of vasospasm and when indicated hypotension may be induced with relative safety. This is achieved using isoflurane ± labetalol as outlined for SAH (see above).
- In children AVMs can cause high output failure due to intracerebral shunt. CCF may be precipitated by excision of the lesion.

## Interventional radiology

### Intracranial aneurysms

Most intracranial aneurysms are currently treated by releasing Guglielmi detachable coils (GDC) into the aneurysmal lumen via microcatheters inserted in the femoral artery until occlusion of the aneurysm is achieved. This approach is associated with better independent survival at 1yr than after craniotomy and clipping of the aneurysm. The risk of death is significantly lower in the coiled than the clipped group at 5yr. The risk of late rebleeding is acceptable but higher after coiling than clipping.

- The procedure is undertaken in an angiography suite by a neuro-radiologist. Ensure a skilled anaesthetic assistant and monitoring facilities as for a GA clipping of aneurysm.
- A CVP line is not always necessary. It is preferable to monitor the arterial pressure before induction of anaesthesia, although the femoral artery introducer sheath inserted by the radiologist can be transduced. This provides a reliable mean but overestimates diastolic and underestimates systolic BP.
- The patient will need a urinary catheter, temperature monitoring, and warming devices and a wide-bore IV cannula.
- A baseline ACT should be measured before starting the procedure. After femoral cannulation an initial dose of heparin (5000IU) is administered followed by an infusion or intermittent doses to keep the ACT 2–3 times baseline. Reversal of heparin with protamine may be required at the end of the procedure.
- It is important to maintain a normal MAP and PaCO<sub>2</sub>. This may be difficult as coiling is not a particularly stimulating procedure.
- The induction and maintenance of anaesthesia is the same as for clipping of an aneurysm, although a normal ETT tube or a ProSeal LMA may be used instead of an armoured tube.
- Recovery should be smooth and rapid. An incompletely secured aneurysm may require control of MAP postoperatively. Patients who have had neurological complications need to be transferred to a neurological ITU for postoperative ventilation.

### Special considerations

- Unfamiliar environment, remote site, radiation, radiology equipment, closed skull, contrast and flush, heparin, antiplatelet drugs, and thrombolysis.
- In patients with a high risk of a thrombotic event from a coil in the parent vessel, it may be necessary to administer aspirin (500mg IV) and to continue heparin into the postoperative period. Thrombotic events occurring during the procedure are often managed with abciximab.

### Complications

- Intraoperative vasospasm can result from manipulation of the vessel and is managed by withdrawing the catheter from the vessel and allowing a few minutes for recovery. Alternatively intra-arterial nimodipine may be administered.

- Rupture of the aneurysm or haemorrhage is identified by extravasation of contrast. The intracranial haemorrhage may increase ICP and MAP with or without a bradycardia. Aim to reverse the heparin and reduce MAP to the level before the bleed. Measures to reduce ICP (see p406 and p414) may be required.
- Patients with a reduced postoperative GCS should have a CT scan to exclude hydrocephalus or vascular complications. It may be necessary to insert an EVD and transfer to ICU for continued management.

### **AVM: cerebral and spinal**

Embolisation may be used to obliterate an AVM or reduce its size before definitive surgery. This minimises intraoperative bleeding whilst preserving the arterial supply to the brain. Staged procedures are commonly undertaken due to rapid blood flow, multiple fistulae, feeding and draining vessels, and associated aneurysms. The material used is usually a liquid polymer (e.g. Onyx) or glue.

Anaesthesia is as for coiling of aneurysms. Hypotension can cause intracerebral steal, and raised ICP from recent intracranial haemorrhage may worsen hypertension. Controlled hypotension may be used for short periods to produce 'flow arrest' through the AVM and enable embolic glue to set rather than be carried straight through. This is achieved by using isoflurane  $\pm$  labetalol as outlined for SAH (see p429).

#### **Special considerations**

- The femoral artery may need cannulation on multiple occasions. An angio-seal (artificial collagen plug) is therefore not used; instead haemostasis is achieved by applying pressure manually which may take 15–20min. The patient should remain anaesthetised for this to avoid coughing or movement of the leg. Retroperitoneal haematoma may occur.
- If the nidus is suitable, the AVM may be treated by radiosurgery in a specialist centre.

#### **Complications**

- Inadvertent occlusion of normal vessels causing cerebral ischaemia.
- Pulmonary embolus from systemic shunting of particulate materials.
- Bleeding from incomplete embolisation, perforation of arterial feeders, or rupture of an associated aneurysm. Subtle changes in the dynamics of the fistula may also increase the risk of haemorrhage.
- The sudden occlusion of the AVM can result in cerebral hyperperfusion, if the AVM and normal brain share venous drainage. This will result in cerebral oedema and increased ICP.



## Venous air embolism (VAE)

- VAE can occur whenever the operative site is higher than the right atrium. Its incidence is particularly high during craniotomy in the sitting position, and when the surgeon is dissecting tissues that do not allow veins to collapse despite a negative pressure within them (e.g. the emissary veins in the posterior fossa).
- VAE causes pulmonary microvascular occlusion, resulting in increased physiological dead space. Bronchoconstriction may also develop. A large volume of air causes frothing within the right atrium, leading to obstruction of the right ventricular outflow tract and a reduction in cardiac output.
- Signs of VAE include hypotension, arrhythmias, increased PA pressure, decreased  $\text{ETCO}_2$ , and hypoxia.
- $\text{N}_2\text{O}$  does not increase the risk of VAE but may worsen its outcome.

### Detection of VAE

- End-tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  is generally the most useful monitor as it is widely available and sensitive. Air embolism results in a *sudden* reduction in  $\text{ETCO}_2$ . Hyperventilation, low cardiac output, and other types of embolism will also result in reduction in  $\text{ETCO}_2$ .
- Doppler ultrasound is the most sensitive non-invasive monitor. It uses ultra-high-frequency sound waves to detect changes in blood flow velocity and density. Unfortunately, it is not quantitative and does not differentiate between a massive or physiologically insignificant air embolism. Positioning the probe and diathermy interference can prove problematic.
- Trans-oesophageal echo allows determination of the amount of air aspirated but is more invasive, difficult to place, and needs expertise to interpret.
- Pulmonary artery catheters are invasive but sensitive monitors for VAE. However, an increase in PA pressure is not specific for air.
- The least sensitive monitor is a precordial or oesophageal stethoscope to detect a 'millwheel' murmur. This is apparent only after massive VAE, which is usually clinically obvious.

### Prevention

- Avoid the sitting position unless essential.
- Elevate the head only as much as necessary.
- Ensure adequate blood volume to maintain a positive CVP.
- Small amounts of PEEP (5–10  $\text{cmH}_2\text{O}$ ) may reduce the risk of air entrainment.
- A 'G-suit' or medical antishock trousers may be used to increase venous pressure and reduce hypotensive episodes in patients in the sitting position.

### Treatment

- Treatment is supportive.
- Inform the surgeon, who should flood the operative field with fluid. This stops further entrainment of air and allows the identification of open veins that can be cauterised or waxed if within bone.
- Stop N<sub>2</sub>O if in use and increase the FiO<sub>2</sub> to 1.0.
- If possible position the operative site below the level of the heart to increase venous pressure.
- Aspirate air from the CVP line. The tip should be placed close to the junction of the SVC and the right atrium.
- Support the blood pressure with fluid and vasopressors.
- If a large volume of air has been entrained and surgical conditions permit, turn the patient into the left lateral position to attempt to keep the air in the right atrium.
- Commence CPR if necessary.

### Paradoxical air embolism

- Air emboli may enter the systemic circulation through the Thebesian veins in the heart, the bronchial vessels, or a patent foramen ovale. Such defects may be small and not picked up preoperatively.
- Small volumes of air in the systemic circulation can have disastrous consequences.
- Intracardiac septal defects are an absolute contraindication to surgery in the sitting position.

## Neurological determination of death

The most common causes of brainstem death are head injury, intracranial haemorrhage, cerebral tumours, and hypoxic brain injury. To diagnose brainstem death the patient needs to fulfil certain preconditions and have absent brainstem reflexes.

### Preconditions

- The patient is deeply comatose, apnoeic, and dependent on mechanical ventilation.
- The coma must be caused by a known and irreversible cause of brain injury.
- Reversible causes for brainstem depression have been excluded: sedatives, muscle relaxants, alcohol, hypothermia, and metabolic or endocrine disturbances.

### Absence of brainstem responses

Tests of brainstem reflexes should be performed only when the preconditions are fulfilled.

- Pupils are fixed and there is no direct or consensual response to light. The pupils are usually dilated, but this is not essential for the diagnosis.
- Corneal reflex is absent.
- There is no motor response within the cranial nerve distribution to painful stimuli applied centrally or peripherally. Spinal reflexes may persist in brainstem-dead patients.
- Oculo-vestibular reflex is absent. There is no eye movement in response to the injection of 50ml ice-cold water into the external auditory meatus—direct access to the tympanic membrane should be verified using an auroscope. The eyes should be observed for at least 1min after each injection.
- There is no gag or cough reflex in response to a suction catheter passed into the pharynx or down the endotracheal tube.
- Apnoea is present on disconnection from mechanical ventilation. This test is done last, to avoid unnecessary hypercarbia should any of the other reflexes be present. The patient should be preoxygenated by ventilating with 100% O<sub>2</sub> and the minute ventilation reduced to achieve a PaCO<sub>2</sub> of 6kPa (45mmHg). The patient is then disconnected and observed continuously for any respiratory movement for 5min. The PaCO<sub>2</sub> should be measured and should be high enough to ensure an adequate stimulus to ventilation [ $>6.7$ kPa (50mmHg) in a previously normal individual]. Hypoxia is avoided during apnoea by passing a suction catheter down the endotracheal tube and supplying 5–10l/min of oxygen while monitoring the SaO<sub>2</sub>.

### Other considerations

- Diagnosis of brainstem death should be made by two medical practitioners trained and experienced in the field. One must be a consultant and the other could be a second consultant or a doctor who has been registered for a minimum of 5yr. Neither should be a member of the transplant team.
- The tests must be performed on two occasions separated by an adequate time interval to satisfy all concerned.

- The diagnosis should not normally be considered until at least 6hr after the onset of apnoeic coma or 24hr after the restoration of circulation if the cause was cardiac arrest.
- Death is confirmed after the second set of tests, but the time of death is recorded as the completion of the first set of brainstem death criteria.
- No additional tests are required in the UK, but other countries may require EEG, carotid angiography, or brainstem evoked potentials.
- The coroner (Procurator Fiscal in Scotland) needs to be informed of most of these patients due to the underlying diagnosis, and if organ donation is contemplated.
- Care of the relatives is essential at this time irrespective of whether the patient is to be an organ donor or not.

## Organ retrieval from a beating heart donor

Procedure	Procurement of donor organs via long midline incision and median sternotomy
Time	Up to 6hr depending on which organs are retrieved
Pain	N/A
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Large fluid losses likely, X-match 4U
Practical techniques	Usually from ICU IPPV, CVP, and art line

Demand for donor organs continues to exceed supply and potential organ donors should be identified and discussed with a donor coordinator. The only absolute contraindications to donation are CJD, HIV, active TB, and recent malignancy in the potential donor.

### Pathophysiology of brainstem death

- Early, short-lived massive sympathetic outflow occurs during brainstem herniation, causing hypertension, tachycardia, myocardial dysfunction, impaired organ perfusion, and tissue ischaemia.
- Autonomic collapse results in a reduction in cardiac output, hypotension, and atropine-resistant bradycardia. Circulatory collapse follows if left untreated.
- Deterioration in lung function is common due to neurogenic pulmonary oedema, acute lung injury, and pre-existing disease.
- Reduced circulating  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  with increased peripheral conversion of  $T_4$  to reverse  $T_3$  causes depletion of myocardial energy stores, myocardial dysfunction, and a global shift to anaerobic metabolism.
- Hyperglycaemia is due to reduced circulating insulin and insulin resistance.
- Reduced ADH secretion leads to neurogenic diabetes insipidus with hypovolaemia and electrolyte disorders (hypernatraemia, hypermagnesaemia, hypokalaemia, hypophosphataemia, hypocalcaemia).
- Release of tissue fibrinolytic agents and plasminogen activators from necrotic brain causes a coagulopathy.
- Temperature regulation is lost due to hypothalamic dysfunction resulting in hypothermia.

### Preoperative

- Check that brainstem death has been confirmed and that agreement to organ donation has been obtained from the relatives and the coroner.
- Emphasis in management changes from cerebral resuscitation to optimal organ perfusion and oxygenation.
- Ensure intravascular volume resuscitation using continuous CVP monitoring. Avoid overhydration in potential lung donors

where a CVP >6mmHg may increase the A–a oxygen gradient and reduce the number of donor lungs that can be retrieved successfully. If hypotension persists despite fluid replacement then an infusion of vasopressin should be started as the first line vasopressor. PAFC and transoesophageal echocardiography are often requested for potential heart donors with high inotrope requirements. They allow assessment of cardiac structure and function, and prevent intravascular overload.

- Continue regular chest physiotherapy and suctioning.
- If desmopressin has been used to control diabetes insipidus it should be changed to vasopressin (ADH)—restores vascular tone and arterial pressure without a direct myocardial effect.
- The use of hormone resuscitation using T<sub>3</sub> replacement, methylprednisolone, and vasopressin varies amongst transplant centres. Their use should be guided by the local retrieval team or in-house protocols. High-dose methylprednisolone increases the successful retrieval of lungs for transplantation.
- Correct hypernatraemia with 5% glucose (Na<sup>+</sup> <155mmol/l). Glucose 4%/sodium chloride 0.18% with potassium chloride should be used to replace normal urinary water and electrolyte losses. Clotting abnormalities should be corrected with clotting factors and platelets.
- Central venous access via the right internal jugular vein and left radial arterial access are preferred due to early ligation of the left innominate vein and right subclavian artery respectively.
- Order CXR, ECG, echocardiography, and 4-hourly ABGs for potential heart/lung donors.

### Target parameters

CVP	4–10mmHg (< 6mmHg for potential lung donors)
MAP	60–80mmHg
PCWP	10–15mmHg
Cardiac index	>2.2–2.5 l/min/m <sup>2</sup>
Hb	10g/dl (Hct 30%)
SpO <sub>2</sub>	>95% (with lowest FiO <sub>2</sub> and PEEP)
Tidal volume	<10ml/kg
PaCO <sub>2</sub>	4.5–5.5kPa (34–41mmHg)
Urine output	1–3ml/kg/hr
Peak inspiratory pressure	<30cmH <sub>2</sub> O

**Hormone resuscitation**

	<b>Bolus</b>	<b>Infusion</b>	<b>Action</b>
Liothyronine (tri-iodothyronine, T <sub>3</sub> )	4µg	3µg/hr	Reverses myocardial dysfunction and reduces inotrope requirements
Vasopressin (ADH)	1U	0.5–2U/hr	Treats diabetes insipidus and restores vascular tone. Titrated to MAP >60mmHg or SVR 800–1200 dyn.s/cm <sup>5</sup>
Insulin		Sliding scale	To maintain blood sugar 6–9 mmol/l
Methylprednisolone	15mg/kg		Improves oxygenation and increases donor lung procurement by reducing cytokine-mediated cellular injury

**Perioperative**

- Standard monitoring plus CVP, arterial line, core temperature, and urine output. Maintain core temperature >35°C. Frequent analysis of ABGs, electrolytes, Hct, glucose, and clotting. Large-bore IV access (right upper limb) is mandatory for replacement of fluid losses (up to 8 litres) with crystalloid, colloid, or red cells (keep Hct >30%).
- Need for general anaesthesia is controversial. Many use up to 1 MAC isoflurane or fentanyl (5–7µg/kg) to control reflex pressor responses during surgery. This can also be achieved using labetalol or GTN. Non-depolarising neuromuscular blocking agents are administered to obtund reflex muscular contractions due to the preserved spinal reflexes and improve surgical access. Pancuronium and vecuronium are cardiostable and preferred.
- Large and frequent haemodynamic fluctuations occur due to compression of the inferior vena cava, manipulation of the adrenals, and blood/fluid loss. Hypotension is treated with colloid titrated to CVP, vasopressin infusion, and metaraminol (0.5mg increments).
- Broad-spectrum antibiotics are given as per local transplant protocol.
- Full heparinisation (300IU/kg) should be administered centrally prior to surgical cannulation of the major vessels.
- Epoprostenol (5–20ng/kg/min) may be needed for 10min via pulmonary artery if lungs are to be harvested.
- PAFC/CVC withdrawn before ligation of SVC.
- Note time of aortic cross-clamp as beginning of organ ischaemic time.
- At the end discontinue mechanical ventilation/monitoring and remove the ETT after lung inflation and trachea cross-clamp.
- The abdominal surgical team continues to operate in circulatory arrest.

## Special considerations

- Empathy and sensitivity in dealing with the donor's family is paramount throughout the management of the potential organ donor.
- The quality of care afforded the multi-organ donor could affect the outcome of more than six recipients.
- In the event of cardiac arrest CPR should be commenced, as procurement of liver and kidneys can still proceed rapidly with cross-clamping of the aorta at the diaphragm and infusion of cold preservation solution into the distal aorta and portal vein.

## Further reading

- Academy of Medical Royal Colleges (2008). A code of practice for the diagnosis and confirmation of death. [www.aomrc.org.uk/aomrc/admin/reports/docs/dofd-final.pdf](http://www.aomrc.org.uk/aomrc/admin/reports/docs/dofd-final.pdf).
- Clayton TJ, Nelson RJ, Manara AR (2004). Reduction in mortality from severe head injury following introduction of a protocol for intensive care management. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **93**, 761–767.
- Cottrell JE (1996). Trends in neuroanaesthesia. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*, **43**, R61–R74.
- Doraaairaj IL, Hancock SM (2008). Anaesthesia for interventional radiology. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain Medicine*, **8**, 86–89.
- Guidelines for adult organ and tissue transplantation (2004). The Intensive Care Society's Working Group on Organ and Tissue Donation. <http://www.ics.ac.uk>.
- International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial (ISAT) Collaborative Group (2002). International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial (ISAT) of neurosurgical clipping versus endovascular coiling in 2143 patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms: a randomised trial. *Lancet*, **360**, 1267–1274.
- Joshi S, Dash HH, Ornstein E (1997). Anaesthetic considerations for posterior fossa surgery. *Current Opinions in Anaesthesiology*, **10**, 321–326.
- Porter JM, Pidgeon C, Cuningham AJ (1999). The sitting position in neurosurgery: a critical appraisal. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **82**, 117–128.
- Sneyd JR, Whaley A, Dimpel HL, Andrews CJH (1998). An open, randomized comparison of alfentanil, remifentanil and alfentanil followed by remifentanil in anaesthesia for craniotomy. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **81**, 361–364.
- Todd MM, Hindman BJ, Clarke WR, Torner JC (2005). For the intraoperative hypothermia for aneurysm surgery trial (IHAST). Mild intraoperative hypothermia during surgery for intracranial aneurysm. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **352**, 135–145.
- Young PJ, Matta BF (2000). Anaesthesia for organ donation in the brainstem dead—why bother? *Anaesthesia*, **55**, 105–106.



*This page intentionally left blank*

# Vascular surgery

## Mark Stoneham

General principles 442

Abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA) repair 444

Emergency repair of AAA 448

Endovascular stenting of elective or emergency AAA 449

Thoraco-abdominal aortic aneurysm repair 450

Carotid endarterectomy 452

Peripheral revascularisation operations 456

Axillobifemoral bypass 458

Amputations 460

Thoracoscopic sympathectomy 462

First rib resection 463

Varicose vein surgery 464

See also:

Thoracic aortic surgery 354

## General principles

Most vascular surgery involves operating on arteries diseased or damaged by atherosclerosis, causing poor peripheral blood flow (ischaemia) or emboli. Mortality is high: elective abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA) surgery = 7%;<sup>1</sup> emergency AAA >50%. This is markedly increased in the presence of uncontrolled cardiovascular disease. Operations may be long and involve blood transfusion, marked fluid shifts, and significant impairment of lung function.

- Vascular patients are usually elderly arteriopaths with significant associated disease. Hypertension (66%), ischaemic heart disease (angina, MI), heart failure, diabetes mellitus, and COPD (50% are current or ex-smokers) are common. Many patients are taking aspirin,  $\beta$ -blockers, diuretics, heart failure medications, and, perhaps, insulin or oral hypoglycaemics.
- Some patients are anticoagulated, others will receive anticoagulants perioperatively, so consider the pros and cons of regional techniques carefully (see pp1174–7). However, regional techniques can reduce morbidity and mortality (see below).
- Vascular patients tend to have serial operations, so there may be several previous anaesthetic records to review. 30–40% of vascular operations occur out of hours.
- Measure NIBP in both arms—there may be differences due to arteriopathy (use the higher of the two values clinically or put your arterial line in this side).
- All patients receiving synthetic vascular grafts require prophylactic antibiotic cover.
- Develop a working relationship with your vascular surgeon—you will have a better chance of being warned of untoward events (e.g. aortic clamping/unclamping, sudden massive blood loss, etc.).

## Preoperative assessment

- Quantify the extent of any cardiorespiratory disease, both in terms of the planned surgical procedure and the postoperative period. Carefully consider (and document) whether regional anaesthesia is appropriate.
- Include direct questions about exercise tolerance (walking distance on the flat, ability to climb stairs) and ability to lie supine. Look for signs of cardiac failure.
- Investigations: FBC, U&Es, ECG, CXR, coagulation, and LFTs.
- A dynamic assessment of cardiac function is required for elective aortic surgery and for patients with symptomatic/new cardiac disease. Echocardiography gives the left ventricular ejection fraction (EF) and is simple and non-invasive. Patients with new ECG abnormalities or symptomatic heart disease need: exercise ECG; stress echocardiography; radionuclide thallium scan; multigated acquisition scan (MUGA); or cardiopulmonary exercise testing (CPX) (see p1053). Refer patients with critically ischaemic heart disease to cardiology for angiography and possible coronary revascularisation before aortic surgery.<sup>2</sup> Emergent vascular patients may have to undergo surgery before such dynamic investigations can be performed.

- Lung function tests (including ABG analysis while breathing air) should be performed in patients with significant respiratory disease presenting for AAA repair.

### Premedication

Continue  $\beta$ -blockers and statins perioperatively. Anxiolytic premedication may be useful for major surgery.

### Regional anaesthesia and analgesia in vascular surgical patients

Regional anaesthesia may be used alone for distal vascular surgery and is commonly used for carotid surgery, although no major differences in outcome between general and regional anaesthesia were shown by the GALA trial of 3500 patients undergoing CEA.<sup>3</sup> Epidural analgesia is commonly used to supplement general anaesthesia for AAA. The advantages of regional techniques include:

- Improved patient monitoring (carotid endarterectomy)
- Improved blood flow, reduced DVT, reduced reoperation (peripheral revascularisation)<sup>4</sup>
- Postoperative pain relief (AAA, distal revascularisation, amputation)
- Reduced pulmonary complications (AAA surgery)
- Pre-emptive analgesia for amputations—possible reduction in phantom limb pain
- Treatment of proximal hypertension during aortic cross-clamp

### Epidural catheters and anticoagulation

See pp1174–7.

- 1 Bayly PJ et al. (2001). In-hospital mortality from abdominal aortic surgery in Great Britain and Ireland. *British Journal of Surgery*, **88**, 687–692.
- 2 McFalls EO, Ward HB, Moritz TE (2004). Coronary artery revascularization before elective major vascular surgery. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **352**, 2795–2804.
- 3 GALA Trial Collaborators Group (2008). General anaesthesia versus local anaesthesia for carotid surgery: a randomized, controlled trial. *Lancet*, **372**, 2132–2142.
- 4 Schunn CD et al. (1998). Epidural versus general anaesthesia: does anesthetic management influence early infrainguinal graft thrombosis? *Annals of Vascular Surgery*, **12**, 65–69.

## Abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA) repair

Procedure	Excision of aortic aneurysmal sac and replacement with synthetic graft (tube/trouser graft)
Time	2–4hr
Pain	++++
Position	Supine, arms out (crucifix)
Blood loss	500–2000+ml, X-match 6U. Suitable for auto-transfusion
Practical techniques	ETT + IPPV, art + CVP lines. Epidural if possible

### Preoperative

- The elderly often have multiple coexisting diseases.
- Mortality for elective surgery is 5–10% (predominantly MI and multi-organ failure).
- Careful preoperative assessment is essential. Scrutinise ECG for signs of ischaemia and check for any renal impairment. Patient needs dynamic cardiac assessment preoperatively (see pp47–9 and p1053). Check access sites for CVP and arterial line.
- HDU/ICU for postoperative care. Alert the patient to this plan especially if a period of postoperative IPPV is planned. Preoptimisation is performed in some units—patients are admitted to the HDU/ICU a few hours preoperatively to have lines, etc. inserted and to have haemodynamic status ‘optimised’. This is not widely adopted.
- Continue the usual cardiac medications perioperatively.

### Perioperative

- Have available vasoconstrictors (ephedrine and metaraminol), vasodilators (GTN), and  $\beta$ -blockers (labetalol).
- Two 14G or greater IV access. A hot-air and IVI warmer are essential. Monitor intraoperative temperature.
- A Level-1<sup>®</sup> fluid warmer or equivalent is extremely useful.
- There is not good evidence supporting the use of isovolaemic haemodilution; however, cell salvage should be considered in every case as there is good evidence that it reduces the usage of allogeneic blood in aortic surgery.
- Arterial line and thoracic epidural (T6–T11) preinduction. Take a baseline blood gas sometime before cross-clamping.
- Have at least two syringe drivers present—inotropes, vasodilators, and eventually the epidural will all need them.
- Use a five-lead ECG (leads II and V5)—this increases the sensitivity for detection of myocardial ischaemia.
- Triple lumen CVP after induction. Consider inserting a PA introducer in complex cases as this will allow rapid fluid administration and facilitates PA catheter insertion if necessary (use right internal jugular

or left subclavian vein to facilitate easier insertion of PA catheter if required).

- Be obsessive about temperature control from the start. Avoid heat loss as it is easier to keep a patient's temperature constant than to try to increase it
- Continuous cardiac output monitoring is useful during the cross-clamp period for all patients, particularly those with impaired cardiac function. Possibilities include: PA catheter, LiDCO, PiCCO, and oesophageal Doppler; however, the latter is not accurate during aortic cross-clamping.
- Careful induction with monitoring of invasive arterial blood pressure. Use moderate/high-dose opioid, e.g. remifentanyl (0.1–0.2 µg/kg/min) or high-dose fentanyl (5–10 µg/kg). Treat hypotension with fluids at first and then cautious vasoconstriction (metaraminol 0.25–0.5 mg).
- Hypothermia is likely unless energetic efforts are made to maintain temperature during induction, line insertion, and perioperatively. Warming blankets should not be placed on the lower limbs while the aortic cross-clamp is in place as this may worsen lower limb ischaemia.
- Insert a urinary catheter for hourly measurement of urine output.
- Heparin will need to be given just before cross-clamp—3000–5000U is usual. This may be reversed after unclamping with protamine 0.5–1 mg per 100U heparin IV slowly—hypotension results if given too quickly.
- Proximal hypertension may follow aortic cross-clamping and is due to a sudden increase in SVR, increased SVC flow, and sympatho-adrenal response. Treat by deepening anaesthesia and/or a bolus of  $\beta$ -blocker (labetalol 5–10 mg), GTN infusion, or epidural LA.
- While the aorta is clamped, metabolic acidosis will develop due to ischaemic lower limbs. Maintaining minute ventilation will cause a respiratory alkalosis to develop which will minimise the effects of this metabolic acidosis when the aorta is unclamped. Check arterial blood gases to assess haematocrit, metabolic acidosis, respiratory compensation, and ionised calcium.
- Cross-clamp time is usually 30–60 min. During this time, start giving fluid, aiming for a moderately increased CVP (5 cmH<sub>2</sub>O greater than baseline) by the time unclamping occurs. This helps cardiovascular stability, reduces sudden hypotension, and may help preserve renal function. Release of the cross-clamp one limb at a time also helps haemodynamic stability.
- Hypotension following aortic unclamping is caused by a decreased SVR, relative hypovolaemia, and myocardial 'stunning' due to return of cold metabolic waste products from the legs. Treat with IV fluids and/or lighten anaesthetic depth and/or small doses of inotropes, e.g. adrenaline 10 µg aliquots (1 ml of 1:100 000) and/or a bolus of calcium gluconate (up to 10 ml 10%). Inotropes may be needed postoperatively.
- For fluid replacement, give isotonic crystalloid or colloid to replace insensible, third space, and initial blood loss. Give blood products when a deficiency is identified, e.g. haematocrit <25%, platelets <100 × 10<sup>9</sup>/l. Check the activated clotting time (normal <140s) if you suspect coagulopathy. Thromboelastography will give you the whole coagulation picture.

**Postoperative**

- ICU/HDU is essential postoperatively. HDU may be appropriate for otherwise fit patients who can be extubated at the end of the case. Extubate if warm, haemodynamically stable, and with a working epidural. Otherwise transfer to ICU intubated.
- Opioid infusion and/or PCA if no epidural. Routine observations including invasive arterial and central venous pressure monitoring and urine output should be continued postoperatively to assess haemodynamic stability. There is potential for large fluid shifts which need replacement. Assess distal pulses.

**Special considerations**

- Management of epidural: a bolus of epidural diamorphine 2–3mg at induction will last for 12–24hr. Use epidural LA sparingly until the aorta is closed. It is easier to treat the hypotension of aortic unclamping with a functioning sympathetic nervous system.
- Renal failure occurs in 1–2% of cases and is multifactorial in origin—but is associated with a mortality of 50% following AAA repair. It is more likely if the cross-clamp is suprarenal. There is no evidence that dopamine prevents renal failure, merely acting as an inotrope. Mannitol is used routinely by some (0.5g/kg during cross-clamp) as a free-radical scavenger and osmotic diuretic. Avoid hypovolaemia and monitor urine output hourly.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Emergency repair of AAA

This is a true anaesthetic and surgical emergency. It may be:

- Acute: presents with cardiovascular collapse. Death is likely unless rupture is contained in the retroperitoneal space.
- Dissecting: dissects along the arterial intima—presents with back/abdominal pain.

Prehospital mortality for ruptured AAA is 50% and half of those reaching hospital also do not survive. Management is as for elective AAA (see p444), with the following additional considerations:

- Where doubt exists (and patient is haemodynamically stable), diagnosis is confirmed by ultrasound or CT scan.
- If hypovolaemic shock present, resuscitate to a systolic pressure of 90mmHg. Avoid hypertension, coughing, and straining as this may precipitate a further bleed. Titrate IV morphine against pain.
- Preinduction insert two 14G peripheral cannulae and (ideally) an arterial line. Use of the brachial artery may be necessary and sometimes an arterial 'cut down' is indicated. Central venous access can wait until after the cross-clamp is applied. If peripheral IV access is difficult insert a 'Swan' sheath into the right internal jugular vein.
- Epidural analgesia is usually inappropriate.
- A urinary catheter can be placed before or after induction.
- Induction must be in theatre, with the surgeons scrubbed, surgical preparation completed, drapes on, and blood available in theatre and checked. Rapid sequence induction is usually required. Suitable induction agents include midazolam/remifentanyl, etomidate (also give hydrocortisone 50–100mg), and ketamine. As soon as endotracheal intubation is confirmed, the surgeons can begin. Treat hypotension with IV fluids and small doses of vasopressors/inotropic agents.
- Hot-air warming and at least one warmed IVI are essential (a Level-1® blood warmer is invaluable).
- Use colloid or crystalloid depending on preference. Use a balanced crystalloid such as Hartmann's solution rather than 0.9% sodium chloride (helps prevent metabolic acidosis).
- Have both IV lines running maximally at induction. One assistant should be dedicated to managing IV fluid and ensuring an uninterrupted supply. Once the cross-clamp is applied some haemodynamic stability may be restored.
- Cell salvage, if available, is mandatory.
- Hypothermia, renal impairment, blood loss, and coagulopathy are common perioperative problems. Hypothermia is a particular hazard, as the patient will continue to bleed postoperatively (platelet function is markedly reduced below 35°C). Whilst there is no place for routine administration of platelets and FFP, consider early use when needed.
- Do not attempt to extubate at the conclusion of surgery—a post-operative period of ventilation on the ICU is essential to allow correction of biochemical/haematological abnormalities.
- Use near patient testing (Hb and thromboelastograph) if available to guide blood product administration. If patient is exsanguinating and crossmatched blood is not available, use type-specific.

## Endovascular stenting of elective or emergency AAA

Procedure	Placement and deployment of bifurcated stent by interventional radiologists into aortic aneurysmal sac via femoral arteries
Time	1–4hr
Pain	+
Position	Supine
Blood loss	0–2000+ ml, X-match 6U
Practical technique	Epidural + sedation, art + CVP lines

This technique is associated with lower operative morbidity and mortality than standard open AAA repair,<sup>1</sup> but it is still unproven whether it lowers the risk of aneurysm rupture; thus, postoperatively, patients must be kept under CT surveillance for the rest of their lives. Significant complications such as migration of the stent and endoleak can develop as well as frank rupture.

- The procedure is usually performed in the radiology/angio suite. The surgeons gain access to the aorta via the femoral arteries and the stent is inserted by an interventional radiologist.
- If aneurysm rupture does occur (incidence is around 2%), mortality rises to >50%.
- Preassessment, monitoring, and crossmatching are all exactly as for open repair. However, since the patient will not undergo aortic cross-clamping, patients who have been refused open surgery because of significant left ventricular impairment may tolerate endovascular repair. ICU is usually not needed postoperatively.
- General or regional anaesthesia is appropriate, depending on preference, although regional anaesthesia may shorten the procedure.<sup>2</sup> One regime is an epidural/sedation technique consisting of an epidural bolus of diamorphine 2–3mg, followed by a bupivacaine 0.25% infusion (4–8ml/hr) in conjunction with propofol TCI (0.5–1µg/kg/min).
- Postoperatively, the patient may go to the HDU or the vascular ward for overnight monitoring.
- Increasingly, patients with ruptured AAAs are being stented,<sup>3</sup> which may improve outcome once standardised protocols are established.

1 Prinssen M et al. (2004). A randomized trial comparing conventional and endovascular repair of abdominal aortic aneurysms. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **351**, 1677–1679.

2 Asakura Y et al. (2009). General versus locoregional anesthesia for endovascular aortic aneurysm repair: influences of the type of anesthesia on its outcome. *Journal of Anesthesia*, **23**, 158–161.

3 Rayt HS et al. (2008). A systematic review and meta-analysis of endovascular repair (EVAR) for ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm. *European Journal of Vascular and Endovascular Surgery*, **36**, 536–544.

## Thoraco-abdominal aortic aneurysm repair

<b>Procedure</b>	Excision of aortic aneurysmal sac extending above the origin of the renal arteries and replacement with a synthetic graft. May involve thoracotomy and the need for one lung ventilation
<b>Time</b>	3–6hr
<b>Pain</b>	++++
<b>Position</b>	Supine, arms out (crucifix), may be R lateral if thoracotomy
<b>Blood loss</b>	1000ml–+++; X-match 8U, plus platelets and FFP
<b>Practical techniques</b>	DLT + IPPV, art + CVP lines. Thoracic epidural

Thoracic aneurysms of the ascending aorta require median sternotomy and cardiopulmonary bypass. Transverse aortic arch repair often requires hypothermic circulatory arrest as well.

### Special considerations

As for infrarenal aortic aneurysm repair, with the following considerations:

- The aneurysm may compress the trachea and distort the anatomy of the upper vasculature.
- Intensive care is essential for postoperative ventilation and stabilisation.
- The aortic cross-clamp will be much higher than for a simple AAA. This means that the kidneys, liver, and splanchnic circulation will be ischaemic for the duration of the cross-clamp.
- Access to the thoracic aorta may require one lung ventilation—thus a left-sided double lumen tube (DLT) may be required (see pp370–4). A Univent® tube is a possible alternative (p374).
- Proximal hypertension following aortic cross-clamping is more pronounced. Use aggressive vasodilatation with GTN (infusion of 50mg/50ml run at 10ml/hr until it starts to work) or esmolol (2.5g/50ml at 3–15ml/hr).
- Hypotension following aortic unclamping is often severe, requiring inotropic support postoperatively—use adrenaline (5mg/50ml) starting at 5ml/hr.
- Acidosis is a particular problem—metabolic acidosis develops during cross-clamping and is potentially exacerbated by respiratory acidosis due to prolonged one lung ventilation. Use balanced crystalloids, consider using bicarbonate, and ventilate postoperatively until it is resolved.

- Renal failure occurs in up to 25% of cases—principally related to the duration of cross-clamp. Monitor urine output, give mannitol 25g before cross-clamping, and maintain the circulating volume.
- Spinal cord ischaemia leading to paralysis may develop. This is related to the duration of cross-clamping and occurs because a branch of the thoracic aorta (artery of Adamkiewicz) reinforces the blood supply of the cord. Techniques used for prevention (none are infallible) include: CSF pressure measurement and drainage through a spinal drain; spinal cord cooling through an epidural catheter; intrathecal magnesium; distal perfusion techniques; cardiopulmonary bypass; and deep hypothermic circulatory arrest. Surgeons performing this surgery have their own preferred techniques.
- Fluid balance is as for infrarenal AAA, although blood loss will be more extreme, blood transfusion will almost certainly be required, and platelets and FFP are more commonly used. Cell salvage is mandatory.
- Patients require ventilation postoperatively until acidosis and hypothermia are corrected and the lungs fully re-expanded.

## Carotid endarterectomy

Procedure	Removal of atheromatous plaque from the internal carotid artery (ICA). The ICA is clamped, opened, the plaque stripped off, and then the artery closed either directly or with a Gore-Tex <sup>®</sup> vein patch
Time	1–3hr
Pain	++
Position	Supine, head up. Contralateral arm board
Blood loss	Minimal, G&S
Practical techniques	Cervical plexus block + sedation, art line. ETT + IPPV, arterial line

An operation to reduce the incidence of stroke in symptomatic (TIA or CVE) patients with >70% carotid stenosis. Combined perioperative mortality and major stroke incidence of 2–5%. Patients are usually elderly arteriopathies, but dynamic cardiac assessment is not usually required.

- Monitoring cerebral perfusion during carotid cross-clamping is an important, but controversial, area. Advocates of regional anaesthesia cite the advantages of having a conscious patient in whom neurological deficits are immediately detectable and treatable by the insertion of a carotid shunt or pharmacological augmentation of BP.
- Under GA, other techniques may be used for monitoring cerebral perfusion, including measurement of carotid artery stump pressure, electroencephalograph (EEG) processing, monitoring somatosensory evoked potentials, transcranial Doppler of the middle cerebral artery, and, more recently, near-infrared spectroscopy. Individual units will have their own protocols.
- Considerable controversy exists as to whether to use general or regional anaesthesia.<sup>1</sup>

### Preoperative

- Elderly patients, often with severe cardiovascular disease. Most are hypertensive. BP control during CEA can be difficult.<sup>2</sup>
- Determine the normal range of BP from ward charts. Measure BP in both arms. Use the highest and aim for 160/90.
- Document pre-existing neurological deficits so that new deficits may be more easily assessed.
- Have available vasoconstrictors (ephedrine and metaraminol) and vasodilators (GTN, labetalol).
- Consider cerebral monitoring techniques—there will be protocols in your unit.
- Premedication: sedative/anxiolytic, particularly if using GA.

## Perioperative

- 20G and 14G IV access plus an arterial line in the contralateral arm (out on an arm board).
- Monitoring: five-lead ECG, arterial line, NIBP, SpO<sub>2</sub>, ET/CO<sub>2</sub>.
- Maintain BP within 20% of baseline. During cross-clamping, maintain BP at or above baseline. If necessary use vasoconstrictors, e.g. metaraminol (10mg diluted up to 20ml, give 0.5ml at a time).

## General anaesthesia for CEA

- Careful IV induction. Blood pressure may be labile during induction and intubation. Give generous doses of short-acting opioids and consider spraying the cords with lidocaine.
- Most anaesthetists use an endotracheal tube—the LMA cuff has been shown to reduce carotid blood flow, but this is of unknown significance. Secure the tube and check connections very carefully (head is inaccessible during surgery).
- Remifentanyl infusion combined with superficial cervical plexus block gives ideal conditions, with rapid awakening. Otherwise isoflurane/opioid technique. Maintain normocarbida. Avoid nitrous oxide.
- Extubate before excessive coughing develops. Close neurological monitoring in recovery until fully awake.

## The 'awake carotid'

- Cervical dermatomes C2–C4 may be blocked by deep and/or superficial cervical plexus block or cervical epidural (rarely used in the UK). See also p1136.
- Patient preparation and communication are vital. A thorough explanation of the awake technique is invaluable.
- The site for the injection is the cervical transverse processes, which may be palpated as a bony ridge under the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid. For the deep block use three 5ml injections of 0.5% bupivacaine at C2, 3, and 4 or a single injection of 10–15ml 0.5% bupivacaine at C3. Reinforce this with 10ml 0.5% bupivacaine injected along the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid (superficial block). Avoid the deep block in patients with respiratory impairment as they may not tolerate unilateral diaphragmatic paralysis. Infiltration along the jawline helps to reduce pain from submandibular retractor.
- Ensure the patient's bladder is emptied preoperatively. Give IV fluids only to replace blood loss—a full bladder developing while the carotid is cross-clamped can be tricky to manage.
- Sedation (e.g. propofol TCI 0.5–1µg/ml, remifentanyl 0.05–0.1µg/kg/min) may be carefully employed during block placement and dissection. Once dissection is complete, patient discomfort is much reduced. Avoidance of sedation during carotid cross-clamping will allow continuous neurological assessment. Give oxygen throughout.
- An L-bar angled over the patient's neck allows good access for both surgeon and anaesthetist.
- Despite an apparently perfect regional block, ~50% of patients will require LA supplementation by the surgeon, particularly around the carotid sheath. This is reduced using remifentanyl sedation.
- Monitor the patient's speech, contralateral motor power, and cerebration.

- Neurological deficit presents in three ways:
  - Profound unconsciousness on cross-clamping
  - Subtle but immediate deficit following cross-clamping, e.g. confusion, dysphasia, delay in answering questions
  - Delayed deficit—usually related to relative hypotension.
- Attentive monitoring of the patient is vital, particularly during cross-clamping. If neurological deficit develops, tell the surgeon who will place a shunt. Recovery should be rapid once the shunt is in place—if it is not, convert to general anaesthesia. Pharmacological augmentation of blood pressure may improve cerebation by increasing the pressure gradient of collateral circulation across the circle of Willis. Increase the inspired oxygen concentration. A small percentage of patients will require conversion to general anaesthesia (use of an LMA is probably easiest).
- For patients who do not tolerate regional anaesthesia, GA is the best option.

### Postoperative

- Careful observation in a well-staffed recovery room for 2–4hr is mandatory. HDU is optimal if available, particularly for those patients who develop a neurological deficit.
- Airway oedema is common in both GA and regional cases, presumably due to dissection around the airway. Cervical haematoma occurs in 5–10% of cases. Immediate re-exploration is required for developing airway obstruction (the regional block should still be working). Remove skin sutures in recovery as soon as the diagnosis is made to allow drainage of the haematoma.
- Haemodynamic instability is common postoperatively. Hyperperfusion syndrome, consisting of headaches and ultimately haemorrhagic CVE, is caused by areas of brain previously 'protected' by a tight carotid stenosis being suddenly exposed to hypertensive BP. Thus BP must be controlled. Careful written instructions should be given to staff about haemodynamic management. An example is:
  - If systolic BP >160mmHg, give labetalol 5–10mg boluses IV or a hydralazine infusion.
  - If systolic BP <100mmHg, give colloid 250ml stat.
- New neurological symptoms and signs require immediate surgical consultation.
- Carotid stenting is a developing procedure for symptomatic carotid patients performed in the radiology suite in which a stent is placed under local anaesthetic into the stenotic carotid artery. Anaesthetic supervision may be required because of the complications, which include perioperative stroke and haemodynamic disturbances.

- 1 GALA Trial Collaborators Group (2008). General anaesthesia versus local anaesthesia for carotid surgery: a randomized, controlled trial. *Lancet*, **372**, 2132–2142.
- 2 Stoneham MD, Thompson JP (2009). Arterial pressure management and carotid endarterectomy. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **102**, 442–452.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Peripheral revascularisation operations

Procedure	Bypass operations for patients with occlusive arterial disease of the legs. The long saphenous vein or a Gore-Tex <sup>®</sup> graft is used to bypass occluded arteries
Time	1–6hr
Pain	+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Usually 500–1000ml, X-match 2U
Practical techniques	Combined spinal/epidural with sedation, consider art line. ETT/IPPV, consider LMA

- Femoropopliteal bypass—femoral to above-knee popliteal artery
- Femorodistal bypass—femoral to anterior or posterior tibial artery
- Femorofemoral crossover graft—from one femoral artery to another

### Preoperative

- Constitute a large proportion of elective vascular surgery.
- Duration of surgery is unpredictable—overruns are not uncommon.
- Assess cardiovascular system. Usually better tolerated than aortic surgery. A dynamic assessment of cardiac function is not usually necessary unless there have been new developments, e.g. unstable angina.
- The choice between general and regional anaesthesia is up to the individual. There is a suggestion that regional anaesthesia is associated with lower reoperation rates.<sup>1</sup> Long operations (>3hr) may make pure regional techniques impractical, but they are still possible.

### Perioperative

- IV access: ensure at least one large (14 or 16G) IV cannula.
- Insert arterial line for long cases (over 2hr), if haemodynamic instability is expected or in sicker patients. Otherwise use standard monitoring with five-lead ECG. CVP monitoring is rarely necessary.
- GA techniques include ETT + IPPV or LMA + SV. The surgeon should be able to perform femoral nerve block perioperatively.
- Regional anaesthesia is an alternative offering good operating conditions and postoperative pain relief. Single-shot spinal anaesthesia may not allow enough time for some procedures. Combined spinal/epidural anaesthesia is better. Consider epidural diamorphine (2–3mg) and start an infusion of 0.25% bupivacaine at 5–10ml/hr. Always give supplemental oxygen. If the patient requests sedation propofol TCI is ideal.

- Heparin (3000–5000U) should be given before clamping—reverse with protamine 0.5–1mg/100U heparin slowly after unclamping.

### Postoperative

Oxygen overnight.

1 Christopherson R et al. (1993). Perioperative morbidity in patients randomized to epidural or general anesthesia for lower extremity vascular surgery. Perioperative Ischemia Randomized Anesthesia Trial Study Group. *Anesthesiology*, **79**, 422–434.

## Axillobifemoral bypass

Procedure	Extraperitoneal bypass (trouser graft) from axillary artery to femoral arteries
Time	2–4hr
Pain	++++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	<1000ml, X-match 2U
Practical techniques	GA—ETT, IPPV, art line, consider CVP

This operation is performed less commonly due to the rapid advance of stenting techniques; however, it is still occasionally performed on patients with completely occluded aorto-iliac vessels. It is a last-chance operation for patients with completely occluded aortic or iliac arteries. Some will already have had aortic surgery and have infected grafts. It is an extraperitoneal operation, so patients with severe cardiorespiratory disease who might be excluded from aortic surgery may tolerate it better. However, do not be misled—it is still a long operation which can involve significant blood loss, morbidity, and even mortality.

### Preoperative

- Usual preoperative assessment of vascular patients (p442). Try to obtain recent information about cardiac function. An echocardiograph can easily be done at the bedside.
- Some of these patients will be very sick either from pre-existing cardiorespiratory disease or from infected aortic grafts. Surgery may be their only hope of life, although it carries very high risk. Provided the patient understands this, the operation may be appropriate. These are not cases for inexperienced trainees to undertake alone.

### Perioperative

- General anaesthesia with ETT and IPPV is appropriate. An arterial line and large-gauge cannula are mandatory, CVP monitoring is optional.
- Heparin/protamine will be required at clamping/unclamping.

### Postoperative

- Extubation at the end of surgery is usually possible, but a period of time on the HDU is recommended if possible.
- PCA for postoperative analgesia.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Amputations

(Below/through/above knee, Syme's, digits, etc.)

Procedure	Removal of necrotic or infected tissue due to vascular ischaemia
Time	30–120min
Pain	++++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Usually 200–500ml, G&S
Practical techniques	Spinal or epidural with sedation. Sciatic/femoral blocks $\pm$ GA

### Preoperative

- Commonly sick, bed-bound diabetics with significant cardiovascular disease who have had repeated revascularisation attempts previously.
- Many will be in considerable discomfort preoperatively (less so the diabetics) and may be on large doses of enteral or parenteral opioids. Regional analgesia may give more predictable postoperative relief.

### Perioperative

- Spinal anaesthesia  $\pm$  sedation offers excellent anaesthesia, which can be directed unilaterally. The duration of block (and postoperative pain relief) can be extended with intrathecal diamorphine (0.25–0.5mg). Clonidine 15 $\mu$ g intrathecally has also been used.
- Epidural analgesia offers better postoperative analgesia and can be sited preoperatively if required (pre-emptive analgesia).
- General anaesthesia is an option, but additional regional blockade is advisable (combined sciatic/femoral blocks will ensure analgesia for up to 24hr). An epidural catheter may be placed next to sciatic nerve by surgeon for postoperative infusion of LA (e.g. bupivacaine 0.25% 5ml/hr).
- Occasionally these patients are septic due to the necrotic tissue. The only way they will improve is to have the affected part amputated so cancellation *may* not be an option.

### Postoperative

- Regional analgesia is the best option, otherwise PCA.
- Phantom limb pain is a problem for 60–70% of amputees at some time. It must be distinguished from surgical pain—get pain team input.
- Pre-emptive analgesia (preoperative siting of epidural) is believed by some to reduce the incidence and severity of chronic pain.<sup>1</sup>

- Combined sciatic/femoral nerve blocks are an alternative to epidural, particularly when the patient is receiving anticoagulation.
- Even with perfect regional analgesia you may need to continue enteral opioids postoperatively.

1 Reuben SS et al. (2007). Preventing the development of chronic pain after orthopaedic surgery with preventative multimodal analgesic techniques. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **89**, 1343–1358.

## Thoracoscopic sympathectomy

Procedure	For patients with sweaty palms/axillae. The sympathetic trunk is divided via a thoracoscope inserted through a small axillary incision
Time	30–60min
Pain	++
Position	Supine, affected arm on arm board
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	IPPV via double lumen tube, SV via LMA

- Patients are usually young and fit with hyperhidrosis (sweaty palms and axillae).
- Surgical technique involves cutting the thoracic sympathetic trunk at T2 or T3 thoracoscopically.
- Traditionally this is done using one lung anaesthesia (double lumen tube), with the patient in the reverse Trendelenburg position.
- A simpler technique involves the patient breathing spontaneously through an LMA. When the surgeon insufflates CO<sub>2</sub> into the pleural cavity, the lung is pushed away passively, allowing surgery to take place. The degree of shunt produced is less dramatic than with one lung ventilation. Assisted ventilation must be avoided, except to reinflate the lung manually at the end. The CO<sub>2</sub> insufflator machine regulates intrapleural pressures.
- With either technique, at the conclusion of the procedure, the lung must be re-expanded (under the surgeon's direct vision) to prevent pneumothorax.
- Local anaesthetic can be deposited by the surgeon directly onto the sympathetic trunk and into the pleural cavity.
- A postoperative chest radiograph is required to confirm lung reinflation.
- Synchronous bilateral sympathectomy is a much more challenging operation. This can lead to profound hypoxia when the second lung is collapsed, due to persistent atelectasis in the first lung. It is certainly inappropriate for all but the very fittest patients. The mortality of this procedure has been highlighted.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Collin J (2004). Uncovering occult operative morbidity and mortality. *British Journal of Surgery*, **91**, 262–263.

## First rib resection

Procedure	Resection of the first/cervical rib in patients with thoracic outlet syndrome
Time	1–2hr
Pain	++
Position	Supine, affected arm on arm board
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	IPPV via COETT, avoid muscle relaxants

- Patients are usually young and fit.
- The position is similar to that for thoracoscopic sympathectomy.
- Muscle relaxants should be avoided, as the surgeon needs to be able to identify the brachial plexus perioperatively. Intubate under opioid/induction agent alone or use mivacurium/opioid and then hyperventilate with isoflurane/opioid or similar.
- At the conclusion of surgery, the wound is filled with saline and manual ventilation performed with sustained inflation pressures  $>40\text{cmH}_2\text{O}$ . This is to check for a lung leak and exclude pleural injury.
- A superficial cervical plexus block provides good postoperative analgesia. See p453 and p1136.
- A postoperative CXR is required in recovery.



## Varicose vein surgery

Procedure	Removal of tortuous veins of the lower extremities: High tie and strip—long saphenous vein removal (sometimes bilateral) Short saphenous vein surgery—tied off in popliteal fossa
Time	30min to 3hr
Pain	++
Position	Supine or prone for short saphenous surgery
Blood loss	Up to 1000ml
Practical techniques	LMA/SV for most; ETT/IPPV for prone

- Patients are usually young and fit.
- The main operation is usually combined with multiple avulsions to remove varicosities. These are minute scars, which can, however, bleed profusely.
- Blood loss can be minimised by elevating the legs.
- Patients may need combined long and short saphenous surgery (i.e. two operative incisions on the same leg) and may require turning during the operation. In selected slim patients without aspiration risk, this can be done with the patient breathing spontaneously through an LMA.
- A combination of NSAIDs and local anaesthetic into the groin wound gives good postoperative analgesia. Caudal anaesthesia is possible for prolonged re-explorations.
- Bilateral surgery is common and takes 30–60min per incision.
- Redo surgery is also common and can be very prolonged.

### Further reading

- Caldicott L, Lumb A, McCoy D (2000). *Vascular Anaesthesia: A Practical Handbook*. Oxford: Butterworth Heinemann.
- Howell SJ (2007). Carotid endarterectomy. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **99**, 119–131.
- Levine WC et al. (2005). Thoracoabdominal aneurysm repair: anesthetic management. *International Anesthesiology Clinics*, **43**, 39–60.
- Mukherjee D, Eagle KA (2003). Perioperative cardiac assessment for noncardiac surgery: eight steps to the best possible outcome. *Circulation*, **107**, 2771–2774.
- Shine TS, Murray MJ (2004). Intraoperative management of aortic aneurysm surgery. *Anesthesia Clinics of North America*, **22**, 289–305.

# Orthopaedic surgery

## Richard Griffiths and Ralph Leighton

General principles 466  
Fat embolism syndrome (FES) 468  
Cement implantation syndrome 469  
Tourniquets 470  
Total hip replacement 472  
Revision of total hip replacement 475  
Total knee replacement 476  
Arthroscopic lower limb procedures 478  
Cruciate ligament repair 479  
Ankle surgery 480  
Summary of ankle procedures 481  
Foot surgery 482  
Summary of forefoot procedures 483  
Spinal surgery 484  
Summary of spinal surgery procedures 487  
Shoulder surgery 489  
Total shoulder replacement 490  
Elbow replacement surgery 492  
Anaesthesia for hand surgery 494  
Other hand surgical procedures 496  
Anaesthesia for major trauma 498  
Cervical spine fracture 500  
Anaesthesia for repair of cervical spine fracture 502  
Anaesthesia for limb fractures 504  
Compartment syndrome 506  
Anaesthesia for femoral neck fracture 508  
Procedures for fractured neck of femur 511

### See also:

Congenital talipes equinovarus 852  
Femoral osteotomy 853  
Pelvic fractures 880  
Spinal injuries 882  
Patients with spinal cord injuries 250–4  
Amputation 460  
Which blocks for which operation 1186

## General principles

Approximately 160 000 major joint replacements are performed annually in England and Wales.<sup>1</sup> Emphasis is now shifting to longer, more minimally invasive surgery permitting shorter hospital stays.<sup>2</sup> A diverse population of mostly elderly patients presents many challenges to the anaesthetist. Many operations are amenable to regional anaesthesia.

Frequent problems include arthritis, obesity, co-morbidity/polypharmacy, lengthy procedures, significant blood loss, and specific problems related to tourniquets, bone cement, and venous thromboembolism.

### Preoperative

- Liaison with the surgeon is essential, particularly if undertaking regional techniques.
- Arthritis often makes assessment of cardiorespiratory fitness difficult.
- Patients with rheumatoid disease are at risk of atlanto-axial instability (p192).
- If planning a regional technique (particularly a central block), it is important to consider factors affecting clotting (timing of the last dose of anticoagulant) and discuss specific risks and benefits with the patient (see pp1174–7).
- A high risk of venous thromboembolism occurs with certain operations requiring antithrombotic measures, e.g. LWMH, stockings, foot pumps (p12).

### Perioperative

- Give IV antibiotic prophylaxis (p1254).
- Utmost care with positioning is essential to avoid soft tissue or nerve injuries. This is a shared responsibility between the anaesthetist and surgeon.
- Maintenance of normothermia with blood warmers and warm-air blankets can reduce both morbidity and mortality.<sup>3</sup>
- Consider invasive monitoring for those patients with CVS disease.
- Blood loss may be significant (use a large-bore cannula with an extension) and may be increased by certain pathologies, e.g. Paget's.
- Monitor blood loss accurately. Consider cell salvage including drain salvage.
- A urinary catheter should be inserted for long procedures, or when epidurals/spinal opioids are used.

### Postoperative

- Good analgesia will have a positive effect on recovery, mobility, and discharge.
- Liaise with the surgeon if prescribing NSAIDs—some surgeons may use indometacin to reduce new bone growth.

## Regional anaesthesia

- Regional anaesthesia may be used for most joint replacements, (alone, with sedation, or as an adjuvant to GA). Central neuraxial blockade and major nerve blocks are commonly performed.
- In major orthopaedic surgery, blocks may provide postoperative pain relief and may reduce PONV.
- There is some evidence that regional anaesthesia, either alone or in combination with general anaesthesia, may reduce the incidence of thromboembolic complications, particularly in hip and knee surgery.<sup>4</sup>
- Good fixation of cement and joint prosthesis requires a dry, bloodless surgical field. Regional anaesthetic (particularly spinal/epidural) reduces bleeding at the surgical site without the need for other pharmacological hypotensive anaesthetic techniques.
- Surgeons often prefer the operating conditions produced by regional techniques.<sup>5</sup>

1 National Joint Registry; <http://www.njrcentre.org.uk>.

2 Connolly D (2003). Orthopaedic anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*, **58**, 1189–1193.

3 Kirkbride DA (2003). Thermoregulation and mild peri-operative hypothermia. *BJA CEPD Reviews*, **3**, 24–28.

4 Rodgers A, Walker S, Schug S, et al. (2000). Reduction of postoperative mortality and morbidity with epidural or spinal anaesthesia: results from overview of randomized trials. *British Medical Journal*, **321**, 1493–1505.

5 Oldman M, McCartney CJL, Leung A, et al. (2004). A survey of orthopedic surgeons' attitudes and knowledge regarding regional anesthesia. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **98**, 1486–1490.

## Fat embolism syndrome (FES)<sup>1</sup>

FES is associated with trauma or surgery and has an extremely variable presentation—diagnosis is often made by exclusion. Although embolisation of fat occurs frequently, the syndrome is comparatively rare (1%). Early surgery and avoidance of intramedullary fixation have both reduced the incidence. Current treatment is supportive (early mortality 1–20%), but serious long-term complications are uncommon.

FES is classically seen in patients with long bone fractures who develop sudden tachypnoea and hypoxia. Although sometimes a petechial rash is seen (check conjunctiva), firm diagnosis is frequently difficult.

### Features (as defined by Gurd)<sup>2</sup>

#### Major

- Respiratory symptoms—tachypnoea, dyspnoea, bilateral crepitations, haemoptysis, diffuse shadowing on CXR.
- Neurological signs—confusion, drowsiness.
- Petechial rash.

#### Minor

- Tachycardia.
- Retinal change—fat or petechiae.
- Jaundice.
- Renal—oliguria or anuria.

#### Laboratory

- Thrombocytopenia.
- Sudden decrease in Hb by 20%.
- Raised ESR.
- Fat macroglobulaemia.

### Treatment

- Early resuscitation and stabilisation are vital.
- Early O<sub>2</sub> therapy may prevent onset of syndrome.
- May require mechanical ventilation (10–40% of patients).
- Steroid use is controversial.<sup>3</sup>
- FES usually resolves within 7d.

1 Mellor A, Soni N (2001). Fat embolism. *Anaesthesia*, **56**, 145–154.

2 Gurd AR, Wilson RL (1974). The fat embolism syndrome. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery, British Volume*, **56**, 408–416.

3 National Joint Registry; <http://www.njrcentre.org.uk>.

## Cement implantation syndrome

Methylmethacrylate bone cement is an acrylic polymer that has been used extensively in orthopaedic surgery for 30yr. Its use is associated with the potential for hypoxia, hypotension, and cardiovascular collapse. Fatal cardiac arrest is a reported complication. There are many suggested aetiologies, of which fat embolisation appears to be the most likely. Air embolisation (Doppler evidence in 30% of patients) and direct effects of the cement are also possible. There is now a proposed classification of bone cement implantation syndrome (BCIS), ranging from grade 1, with mild hypotension and hypoxia, to grade 3, with cardiovascular collapse.<sup>1</sup>

Severe embolic events (up to 85% of patients) and pulmonary dysfunction (mean reduction in SaO<sub>2</sub> 7%) are most common with femoral cement insertion.<sup>2</sup> The ability of the patient to withstand these should be considered before use.<sup>3</sup>

Problems typically occur shortly after cement insertion. Hypotension is common (10–30%), independent of anaesthetic technique and worsened if there is any degree of hypovolaemia.

### Prevention and treatment

- Suction applied to the bone cavity to evacuate air and fat during cement insertion dramatically reduces the incidence of complications.
- Measure blood pressure frequently during this time.
- Ensure adequate blood volume prior to cementing.
- Increase FiO<sub>2</sub> (hypoxia common).
- Stop N<sub>2</sub>O.

It has been suggested that  $\alpha$ -agonists might be superior to adrenaline when resuscitating these patients.<sup>4</sup>

1 Donaldson AJ, Thomson HE, Harper NJ, Kenny NW (2009). Bone cement implantation syndrome. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **102**, 12–22.

2 Pitto RP, Koessler M, Kuehle JW (1999). Comparison of fixation of the femoral component without cement and fixation with use of a bone-vacuum cementing technique for the prevention of fat embolism during total hip arthroplasty. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **81**, 831–843.

3 Parry G (2003). Sudden deaths during hip hemi-arthroplasty. *Anaesthesia*, **58**, 922–923.

4 McBrien ME, Breslin DS, Atkinson S, Johnston JR (2001). Use of methoxamine in the resuscitation of epinephrine-resistant electromechanical dissociation. *Anaesthesia*, **56**, 1085–1089.

## Tourniquets<sup>1</sup>

Tourniquets are commonly used to produce a bloodless field.

- Only pneumatic tourniquets should be used, as mechanical tourniquets can cause areas of unpredictably high pressure in the underlying tissues.
- Small tourniquets on fingers and toes are dangerous because they are easily forgotten. It is best to use a rubber strip with artery forceps.
- **Expressive exsanguination** using an Esmarch bandage is contraindicated in cases of tumour or severe infection because of the risks of dissemination. It is also contraindicated if DVT is suspected—fatal pulmonary embolism has been reported.<sup>2</sup> It also represents a potential risk of left ventricular failure from fluid overload if compression of both legs is carried out simultaneously (adds 15% to the circulating volume); therefore limit to one leg only in patients at risk. Effective exsanguination can be achieved by arm or leg elevation for 5min at 90°, without mechanical compression.
- Peripheral arterial disease is a relative contraindication to use.
- Avoid in severe crush injuries.
- **Sickle cell disease:** use of tourniquets is controversial. Sickling of red blood cells under anoxic conditions causes thrombosis, but some surgeons use limb tourniquets after *full* exsanguination. If employed, use for as short a time as possible (see also pp206–8).

### Site of application

The upper arm and thigh have sufficient muscle bulk to distribute the cuff pressure evenly and are the recommended sites. For short operations (<1hr) in fit patients, a calf tourniquet is preferred by some surgeons.

### Cuff width

The American Heart Association concluded that if a sphygmomanometer cuff has a width of 20% greater than the diameter of the upper arm or 40% of the circumference of the thigh (to a maximum of 20cm), then the pressure in the underlying central artery will be equal to that in the cuff. This avoids the need for excessively high cuff pressures. Modern silicone cuffs tend to be smaller than this, measuring 90mm width (bladder 70mm) for the arm and 105mm (bladder 75mm) for the leg. Cuff length should exceed the circumference of the extremity by 7–15cm. The cuff should be positioned at the point of maximum circumference of the limb. The tissues immediately underlying the cuff should be protected with cotton wool. This is not necessary with a correctly applied modern silicone cuff.

### Pressure

- Base on the unsedated patient's blood pressure measured on the ward preoperatively.
- **Upper limb:** systolic BP + 50mmHg. **Lower limb:** twice systolic BP. This higher pressure is needed because there is often not enough room above the operating site for a full-sized cuff.
- The use of lower inflation pressures may minimise complications following the use of tourniquets and speed up postoperative recovery. In a normotensive patient a pressure of 200mmHg should be ideal for the upper limb and 250mmHg for the lower limb.

## Tourniquet time

The minimum time possible should be the aim. Notify the surgeon at 1hr and remove as soon as possible after that. If the operation is difficult, time can be extended to 1.5hr. Two hours should be regarded as a maximum, but this will not be safe for all patients. Pulmonary emboli can occur following tourniquet release. When monitored using transoesophageal echocardiography the rate was higher with increased tourniquet time.<sup>3</sup>

## Tourniquet pain

After 30–60min of cuff inflation a patient may develop an increase in heart rate and diastolic blood pressure. This response results from 'tourniquet pain'. This also occurs under anaesthesia, although the response is usually abolished by spinal or epidural techniques. In volunteers when a tourniquet is inflated, a dull pain, associated with an increase in blood pressure, occurs after 30min. Often the physiological changes are resistant to analgesic drugs and increased depth of anaesthesia. Beta blockers in particular labetalol may be useful. Small doses of ketamine given IV (0.25mg/kg) before tourniquet inflation has been reported to attenuate these blood pressure rises.<sup>4,5</sup>

- 1 Deloughry JL, Griffiths R (2009). Arterial tourniquets. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia Critical Care and Pain*, **9**, 56–60.
- 2 Boogaerts JG (1999). Lower limb exsanguinations and embolism. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Belgica*, **50**, 95–98.
- 3 Hirota K, Hashimoto H, Kabara S, et al. (2001). The relationship between pneumatic tourniquet time and the amount of pulmonary emboli in patients undergoing knee arthroscopic surgeries. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **93**, 776–778.
- 4 Satsumae T, Yamaguchi H, Sakaguchi M, et al. (2001). Preoperative small dose ketamine prevented tourniquet induced arterial pressure increase in orthopaedic patients under general anesthesia. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **92**, 1286–1289.
- 5 Kam PC, Kavanaugh R, Yoong FF (2001). The arterial tourniquet: pathophysiological consequences and anaesthetic implications. *Anaesthesia*, **56**, 534–536.



## Total hip replacement

Procedure	Prosthetic replacement of femoral head and acetabulum
Time	90–120min
Pain	+++
Position	Lateral or supine
Blood loss	300–500ml, G&S
Practical techniques	Spinal with sedation or GA/LMA ± nerve block

Total hip replacement is one of the most frequently performed orthopaedic operations. The 6th annual report from the NJR<sup>1</sup> shows that there are around 60 000 primary hip operations per year. Cemented arthroplasties account for 40% of all operations, with uncemented procedures totalling another 40%. There were also 5000 primary hip resurfacing operations performed, typically in younger patients. Regional anaesthesia offers several advantages and can be supplemented with sedation or general anaesthesia. Prevention of thromboembolic complications is of the utmost importance.<sup>1</sup>

### Preoperative

- Careful preoperative evaluation of the patient is essential.
- It may be appropriate to avoid the use of cement in patients with severe cardiac disease, and this should be discussed with the surgeon beforehand.
- Antithrombotic measures should commence on admission to hospital.

### Perioperative

- Place a 16G or larger cannula in the upper arm (if a lateral position is anticipated).
- Ensure adequate hydration prior to performing a spinal anaesthesia and during cement insertion.
- For single-shot spinal anaesthesia: ~3ml bupivacaine 0.5% depending on patient size. Diamorphine (0.25–0.5mg) may be added for more prolonged analgesia.
- When using spinal anaesthesia in the lateral position, intermittent doses of midazolam or TCI propofol are useful sedation techniques, with facemask supplemental oxygen. On occasions, induction of general anaesthesia is required. For the supine position, consider an LMA with light general anaesthesia.
- For longer cases, a combined spinal/epidural technique can be used. Postoperative analgesic requirements rarely require this approach for an uncomplicated primary hip replacement.

- GA (rather than sedation)  $\pm$  epidural or suitable block should be considered for any complex operation because of the prolonged surgical time.
- Using an epidural postoperatively will necessitate inserting a urinary catheter (which also helps monitor fluid balance) at some stage in the majority of patients. This is best performed at the time of surgery.
- If centroneuraxial blockade is contraindicated, a psoas lumbar plexus block (or a femoral 3 in 1 block) provides comparable analgesia and can be used to supplement general anaesthesia.
- Aim to maintain BP at an adequate level based on preoperative readings; hypotension is not indicated.
- Intra-operative antibiotic prophylaxis will be required.
- Actively warming the patient reduces intraoperative blood loss significantly<sup>2</sup> and reduces morbidity and mortality.
- Blood recovery and autologous transfusion should be considered for complex surgery.

### Postoperative

- Surgeons usually prefer the patient to be placed on their bed in the supine position with the legs abducted using a pillow to prevent dislocation of the prosthesis.
- Anti-thromboembolic prophylaxis is important—at least 1% of patients develop DVT even with measures in place—see p12.
- Oxygen therapy for up to 24hr is advisable in most patients.
- Haemoglobin should be checked 24hr postoperatively and treated with either transfusion or iron supplements as indicated (see below).
- Patients are mobilised at 24–48hr and simple IM opioids with regular paracetamol or NSAIDs are usually sufficient for postoperative analgesia. If an epidural has been inserted, a postoperative infusion is rarely necessary and needs to cease prior to mobilisation.

### Special considerations

- Blood loss varies significantly. It is also affected by anaesthetic technique. The average loss is 300–500ml (reduced by centroneuraxial techniques). A similar amount may be lost in the drain and tissues postoperatively.
- The decision to transfuse is multifactorial and includes general fitness, continuing surgical losses, and local practice.
- The benefits of epidural analgesia may be limited to the early postoperative period (up to 6hr).<sup>3</sup>
- Use of bone cement is associated with a 3-fold higher risk for PE.<sup>4</sup>
- Unfractionated heparin is associated with a 6-fold higher risk for DVT compared with LMWH.<sup>5</sup>

**Bilateral total hip replacement**

- Preferred by some surgeons in younger, fit patients.
- This is a major operation; careful patient selection is vital. Significant CVS disease increases mortality.
- GA with epidural is most practical.
- Consider invasive monitoring (arterial line  $\pm$  CVP).

- 1 Winkler M, Marker E, Hetz H (1998). The peri-operative management of major orthopedic procedures. *Anaesthesia*, **53**(S2), 37–41.
- 2 Winkler M, Akca O, Birkenberg B, Hetz H, et al. (2000). Aggressive warming reduces blood loss during hip arthroplasty. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **91**, 978–984.
- 3 Choi PT, Bhandari M, Scott J, Douketis J (2004). Epidural analgesia for pain relief following hip or knee replacement (Cochrane Review). In: *The Cochrane Library, Issue 2, 2004*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- 4 B Borghi, A Casati (2002). Thromboembolic complications after total hip replacement. *International Orthopedics*, **26**, 44–47.
- 5 Kirkbride DB (2003). Thermoregulation and mild peri-operative hypothermia. *BJA CEPD Reviews*, **3**, 24–28.

## Revision of total hip replacement

Procedure	Revision of previous total hip replacement. Revision may include one or both components
Time	2–6hr depending on complexity
Pain	+++++
Position	Lateral or supine
Blood loss	1 litre, occasionally considerably more, X-match 2U
Practical techniques	GA $\pm$ epidural/nerve block

This is essentially the same as primary hip replacement except for increased length of surgery, blood loss, and postoperative pain. The complexity of surgery is very variable. These operations can be prolonged, with substantial blood loss, so discuss the anticipated operation with the surgeon.

### Preoperative

General principles as for total hip replacement, except:

- Patients are more elderly and usually have more medical problems.
- The operation takes longer, at least 2–3hr, often more. This is too long for a single-shot spinal.
- Blood loss can be significant, with 1 litre or more commonly lost perioperatively.
- Postoperative pain can be a significant problem.

### Perioperative

- Generally as for primary hip replacement, including a urinary catheter.
- If significant blood loss is anticipated, or the patient's CVS status indicates it, insert an arterial line and consider a CVP line.
- Technique should be planned according to the length of surgery, the operative position, and patient factors.
  - For complex revisions anticipated to take >3hr, an IPPV technique with epidural supplementation may be most appropriate.
  - If central neuraxial block is contraindicated, consider supplementing GA with nerve blocks (femoral 3 in 1 or psoas compartment lumbar plexus).
- Use blood recovery and autologous transfusion wherever possible.
- Perioperative blood transfusion is frequently required and blood loss may be substantial. 2U of crossmatched blood should be available in theatre, with the ability to obtain more within 30min.

### Postoperative

- Mobilisation varies with the complexity of the revision and the strength of reconstruction.
- For pain relief, an epidural infusion is useful. PCA is a suitable alternative.
- Supplemental oxygen is required for 24hr or longer, particularly if significant blood loss or underlying cardiorespiratory disease.
- Prevention of thromboembolic complications is of the utmost importance.

## Total knee replacement

Procedure	Prosthetic replacement of the knee joint
Time	1–2hr
Pain	++++/+++++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Minimal with tourniquet, 250–500ml without. G&S. Postoperative autologous blood salvage often used
Practical techniques	Sciatic/femoral blocks ± spinal/LMA, Spinal ± GA Epidural or combined spinal/epidural ± LMA

Similar patient population to hip surgery. Generally a shorter operation with less blood loss and cement hypotension. A tourniquet is commonly used. Postoperative pain can be extreme and must be anticipated; tourniquet pain often occurs despite nerve blocks.

### Preoperative

As for hip surgery.

### Perioperative

- The patient is always supine and therefore airway control under sedation can be a problem.
- General anaesthesia combined with a femoral nerve block or spinal anaesthesia with intrathecal opioids are both effective techniques.<sup>1</sup> If nerve blocks are contraindicated postoperative PCA should be considered.
- A tourniquet is commonly used; therefore perioperative blood loss is not problematic, although expect to lose up to 500ml (and frequently more) from the drains in the first hour postoperatively. There is a trend to reduce use of the tourniquet.
- If a tourniquet is used one may see 'breakthrough' of tourniquet pain after about 1hr, causing CVS stimulation and hypertension. This is more common with leg blocks and is treated by deepening anaesthesia or adding IV opioid. Ketamine (0.25mg/kg) is effective at preventing the associated rise in blood pressure.<sup>2</sup> Ensure the patient is well preloaded before the tourniquet is released. A short-lived reperfusion event is common (fall in BP and SaO<sub>2</sub>, rise in ETCO<sub>2</sub>) and is usually best prevented by fluid loading before and during tourniquet release.

### Postoperative

- Postoperative pain is usually the most significant problem and this is the main determinant of the anaesthetic technique, as discussed below.
- When blood loss into the drains continues to be brisk after the first 500ml, the surgeon will often clamp the drains for a period of time.

### Special considerations

- Femoral and sciatic nerve blocks have the following advantages:
  - Good postoperative pain relief in the first 12–24hr. Supplement with regular NSAID and oral analgesics plus parenteral opioid (PCA or IM).
  - Avoid the need for a urinary catheter.
  - Allow the patient more mobility in bed.
  - If possible, perform blocks 30min prior to surgery to allow onset time for surgical anaesthesia. This technique usually gives very good postoperative pain relief. Needs to be combined with spinal or GA as surgical anaesthesia is not produced.
- Spinal anaesthesia supplemented with diamorphine (0.25–0.5mg); some combine this with nerve blocks.
- Patients undertake exercises in the operated leg at 24hr and are mobilised at 48hr.

### Bilateral total knee replacement

- Bilateral knee replacements should only be considered in young, fit, motivated patients.<sup>3</sup> Elderly patients and those with significant CVS disease are high risk.
- The advantage is that two admissions/operations are avoided.
- The disadvantage is that bilateral TKR is a major CVS stress and is associated with unpredictable blood loss and fluid requirements.
- GA + epidural is probably the most practical technique.
- Invasive monitoring should be considered (arterial line).

### Revision of total knee replacement

Same as primary knee replacement except it takes longer,  $\geq 2$ hr.

- The technique is as for primary knee replacement.
- If done without a tourniquet then 2U of blood should be crossmatched.

1 Fischer HBJ, Simanski CJP, Sharp C (2008). A procedure-specific systematic review and consensus recommendations for postoperative analgesia following total knee arthroplasty. *Anaesthesia*, **63**, 1105–1123.

2 Satsumae T, Yamaguchi H, Sakaguchi M, et al. (2001). Preoperative small dose ketamine prevented tourniquet induced arterial pressure increase in orthopaedic patients under general anesthesia. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **92**, 1286–1289.

3 Oakes DA, Hanssen AD (2004). Bilateral total knee replacement using the same anesthetic is not justified by assessment of the risks. *Clinical Orthopaedics & Related Research*, **428**, 87–91.

## Arthroscopic lower limb procedures

Procedure	Arthroscopy, EUA, and washout $\pm$ excision of torn cartilage, removal of loose body
Time	20–60min
Pain	++
Position	Supine with leg over side of table
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	GA/LMA or spinal

### General principles

- The patient population is generally younger than those having joint replacements.
- Smaller procedures are done as day cases and therefore require a technique that allows early ambulation and discharge home. The main procedures undertaken are EUA, meniscal surgery/loose body removal, synovectomy, and ligament reconstruction.
- Virtually all are done on the knee, though arthroscopy is also performed on the ankle.
- Arthroscopy for knees with osteoarthritis is not supported by evidence of effectiveness.<sup>1</sup>

### Technique

- Premedication with paracetamol and NSAID.
- GA/LMA is a 'standard' day-case anaesthetic with IV opioids such as fentanyl 1 $\mu$ g/kg.
- A tourniquet is often used.
- Prescribe NSAIDs and strong oral analgesics to take home.
- Many surgeons instil 10–20ml of 0.5% bupivacaine  $\pm$  morphine (10mg) into the joint cavity for postoperative pain relief.
- Ketamine in low dosage (IV) has been suggested to enhance analgesia (0.15mg/kg).<sup>2</sup>
- Ideally IV morphine should be avoided in day-case arthroscopic procedures due to the high incidence of PONV.
- EUA  $\pm$  washout can be performed under intra-articular and infiltration LA alone. Nerve blocks have been used but are limited by the long duration of action of anaesthesia and the failure to block the site of the arterial tourniquet.

1 <http://www.jr2.ox.ac.uk/bandolier/band102/b102-3.html>.

2 Menigaux C, Guignard B, Fletcher D, et al. (2001). Intraoperative small-dose ketamine enhances analgesia after outpatient arthroscopy. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **93**, 606–612.

## Cruciate ligament repair

Procedure	Arthroscopic reconstruction of anterior cruciate ligament using patellar tendon $\pm$ hamstrings
Time	1.5–2hr
Pain	+++ /++++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	Patellar tendon and hamstring repair: LMA + GA with combined femoral and/or sciatic blocks

### Technique

- These operations are of two main types: using the patellar tendon only for the repair and using both the patellar tendon and hamstring ligaments.
- Usually 12hr of analgesia is required prior to mobilisation.
- If the patellar tendon only is used, postoperative pain is less of a problem and a femoral nerve block is very effective for 12–24hr.
- If the hamstrings are used, the operation takes longer and there is more postoperative pain. Consider GA with femoral and sciatic nerve blocks performed prior to induction.
- Use weaker concentrations of bupivacaine (0.125–0.25%) for nerve blocks, so that mobilisation/discharge is not delayed.



## Ankle surgery

### General principles

- Four main types of procedure: tendon transfers, open reduction and internal fixation (ORIF) of fractures, joint arthrodesis, and prosthetic joint replacement.
- Ankle arthrodesis takes 1–2hr. Tendon transfer is generally quicker than this and joint replacement may take longer.
- These operations are amenable to regional anaesthetic techniques, either alone or combined with GA.
- Tourniquets are often used and tourniquet pain has to be considered (see p470).
- Patients may be supine, prone, or, occasionally, on their side.
- In the case of ORIF following trauma, surgery may need to be undertaken urgently if distal circulation is compromised. Beware of the risk of aspiration from a full stomach and also take time to ensure that any other significant injury has been properly managed.
- If regional block is considered for ORIF, check that there is no concern about the development of compartment syndrome postoperatively as the symptoms will be masked by the block (see p506).

### Technique

- Local, regional, general, or a combination of techniques can be used for all procedures on the ankle.
- Nerve blocks are popular and for ankle surgery require sciatic (or popliteal) and femoral (or saphenous) nerve blockade—the saphenous nerve (terminal branch of the femoral nerve) supplies skin down to the medial malleolus of the ankle.
- Nerve blocks following a spinal anaesthetic improve analgesia well into the first postoperative day. General anaesthesia can also be combined with nerve blocks.
- Care must be taken in trauma cases with fractured ankles as nerve blocks may mask compartment syndrome. Always discuss your proposed technique with the surgeon. The general rule is that nerve blocks are best avoided in trauma cases. Local infiltration is useful.
- Tendon transfers last up to 1hr and are not particularly painful postoperatively.
- ORIF may be an emergency if the vascular supply is compromised, and a rapid sequence induction is the best anaesthetic option in this situation. A good alternative for ORIF is spinal anaesthesia. The addition of intrathecal opioid (e.g. diamorphine 0.25–0.5mg) prolongs the period of analgesia.
- Ankle joint replacement is a procedure that is increasing in popularity. Usually the procedure is accomplished within 2hr.

## Summary of ankle procedures

Procedure	Time (hr)	Pain (+ to +++)	Position	Blood loss	Practical technique
Tendon transfer/repair	~1	++	Supine (ruptured tendo-achilles—prone)	Nil with tourniquet	GA + LMA with infiltration of LA by surgeon Spinal if supine. IPPV if prone
ORIF of ankle fracture	Variable 1.5–2	++/+++	Supine, occasionally on side or prone	Nil with tourniquet	GA (if in doubt RSI) or spinal Generally avoid nerve blocks
Arthrodesis of ankle joint	1.5–2	+++	Supine	Nil with tourniquet	GA or spinal with nerve blocks PCA Spinal + nerve blocks
Prosthetic replacement of ankle joint	2+	++/+++	Supine	Nil with tourniquet	GA + nerve blocks Spinal + nerve blocks

## Foot surgery

### General principles

- Most operations are on the forefoot and toes, e.g. first metatarsal osteotomy, Keller's, excision of ingrowing toenails, and terminalisation of toes. Other operations are in the midfoot, such as tendon transfers and some osteotomies.
- The patient population varies and many are elderly. Those for terminalisation of toes may well have concomitant problems such as diabetes and/or CVS disease.
- Osteotomies tend to be painful postoperatively.
- Surgical time is 30min to 1hr.
- Many are done as day cases and require early ambulation and discharge with adequate pain relief.
- Nerve blocks make a valuable contribution to postoperative analgesia, particularly in osteotomies and nail bed excision, and promote early ambulation. However, onset time is relatively long and they need to be performed a full 40min prior to surgery if planned without GA. With experience this can work well, but for the less experienced it is best to undertake them primarily for postoperative pain relief in combination with LMA and GA.
- Adrenaline must not be used for 'ring' or 'web-space' blocks and is best avoided in ankle blocks if peripheral circulation is poor.
- Breakthrough pain from the tourniquet can be a problem, especially if surgery is longer than 45min. Place the tourniquet as distally as possible to reduce this effect.

### Technique

- Regional blocks useful for foot surgery include ring/web-space or ankle blocks for toe surgery, ankle block for forefoot surgery, and sciatic (or popliteal) nerve block for operations on the midfoot. Most commonly these blocks are performed for postoperative pain relief and are combined with GA.
- An alternative in all cases is spinal anaesthesia.

## Summary of forefoot procedures

Site	Procedure	Time (min)	Pain (+ to +++++)	Position	Blood loss/ X-match	Technique
Toes	Excision of nail bed, terminalisation	30	+++	Supine	Nil	Ring or toe web-block with sedation or GA/LMA + ankle block
Forefoot	Tendon transfers	30–60	+ / ++	Supine	Nil	GA/LMA + local infiltration Ankle block with sedation or GA/LMA
Forefoot	First metatarsal osteotomy, Keller's	30–60	+++	Supine	Nil	GA/LMA with ankle block or infiltration
Midfoot	Tendon transfers	30–60	+ / ++	Supine	Nil	GA/LMA + local infiltration
Midfoot	Osteotomy	30–60	+++	Supine	Nil	GA/LMA ± sciatic nerve block at knee

## Spinal surgery

### Definition

- Surgery on the spinal column between the atlanto-occipital junction and the coccyx.
- Can be loosely divided into four categories:
  - Decompression of the spinal cord and nerves.
  - Stabilisation and correction of spinal deformity.
  - Excision of spinal tumours.
  - Trauma.

### General principles

Children present for scoliosis surgery, young and middle-aged adults for decompressive surgery, and older patients for stabilisation.

- Most procedures are in the prone position, although anterior and lateral approaches are used. Some procedures will involve turning the patient during the operation.
- Airway access will be limited during surgery and must be secure.
- Prevent excessive abdominal or thoracic pressure due to incorrect patient positioning, which may compromise ventilation and circulation.
- Surgical blood loss can be considerable. Ensure good vascular access and accurate measurement of blood loss. Consider cell salvage.
- Long procedures necessitate active prevention of heat loss.
- Assessment of spinal function may be required during the procedure.

### The prone position

A specially designed mattress allowing unhindered movement of the abdomen and chest (e.g. a **Montreal mattress**) should be used to minimise complications as outlined below.

- Turning the patient from prone to supine requires log rolling by a trained team to avoid applying twisting forces in the axial plane. This is especially important for the poorly supported cervical spine, which may be unstable due to fractures or degenerative disease. The surgeon should be present as part of the team for this manoeuvre. Specially designed mechanical hoists can be used to transfer patients from trolley to operating table.
- Pressure on the abdomen applies pressure to the diaphragm and increases intrathoracic pressure, which in turn decreases thoracic compliance. This can lead to basal atelectasis and the need for higher lung inflation pressures, particularly in obese patients.
- Raised intra-abdominal pressure also compresses veins and decreases venous return, which may result in hypotension or increased venous bleeding from the surgical site.
- Accurate assessment of the circulation with invasive arterial monitoring and an indwelling urinary catheter is recommended for all major procedures. Central venous pressure may be difficult to interpret in the prone position and is rarely required.

- Peripheral pressure areas are at particular risk in the prone position. Pillows and silicone pads should be used judiciously to protect all areas. Ensure that the breasts and genitalia are not trapped. During long cases it may be necessary to move the patient's limbs and head every hour to avoid stagnation of peripheral blood and the development of pressure necrosis. Pay particular attention to the nose, eyes, chin, elbows, knees, and ankles.
- The arms are usually placed 'above the head' which puts the brachial plexus at risk of stretching or being pressed against the mattress. Ensure that the axillae are not under tension after positioning.

### Anaesthesia<sup>1</sup>

- Plans for the recovery period should be made in advance and will be dictated by local experience. Long cases, those involving excessive blood loss, and major paediatric cases will need postoperative care in the HDU. Few patients require postoperative ventilatory support.
- Secure venous access is vital. It may be difficult to access the cannula so an extension with a three-way tap is recommended.
- Choice of anaesthetic will be dictated by personal experience but most will choose an IV induction with muscle relaxation and opioid supplementation. Both low-flow volatile anaesthesia and TIVA are frequently used. Remifentanyl is useful perioperatively.
- If spinal cord integrity is at risk during surgery, it may be necessary to use **spinal cord monitoring**. This is a specialist service provided by a neurophysiologist but may require that muscle relaxation is allowed to wear off. It may be necessary to deepen anaesthesia during this phase, but in reality this is rarely a problem. Somatosensory evoked potential monitoring is the most commonly employed technique. Intra-operative monitoring has superseded the 'wake-up test' when patients were woken in the middle of surgery and asked to perform simple motor functions before being reanaesthetised.
- In patients with paraplegia or other large areas of muscle denervation (2d–8 months), suxamethonium should be avoided (see pp250–4).
- Airway access is likely to be limited once the procedure has started, so securing oral endotracheal intubation with a non-kinking tube is usual. Patients with unstable necks due to trauma or rheumatoid arthritis can be intubated using awake fiberoptic intubation or with manual in-line stabilisation, depending on the degree of instability and the anticipated difficulty of intubation (p192). The tube should be moulded around the face with no bulky joints adjacent to the skin. A throat pack may be used to decrease the flow of secretions onto the pillow and the tube then secured with adhesive tape or film. Attention to detail and the use of padding are vital to protect pressure areas.
- Most patients will be paralysed and ventilated for these procedures, with positional considerations noted above.

- Check the position of the endotracheal tube when the patient has been turned. Check that ventilation is adequate without excessive inflation pressures before surgery starts, as the only recourse may be to return the patient to the supine position if problems develop.
- Blood loss may be significant, with venous oozing proving hard to control. The use of cell salvage techniques (pp1072–4) is advisable for long procedures involving instrumentation of multiple levels. All patients should have samples grouped and saved and more major procedures should have blood crossmatched even if cell salvage is employed (see below).
- Hypotensive anaesthesia may reduce blood loss during major spinal surgery. The mean arterial pressure should be maintained at a safe level—for normotensive patients >60mmHg. Direct arterial monitoring is mandatory when the blood pressure is being manipulated.
- The type of analgesia required will vary depending on the magnitude of surgery. Minor procedures (e.g. microdiscectomy) may manage with NSAIDs alone in association with infiltration of the operative site with local anaesthetic. Most procedures will necessitate opioids. PCA morphine is effective after adequate IV loading. The use of regional analgesia is encouraged where there is no need to assess neurological function, and the use of epidural and paravertebral analgesia is growing in popularity for major procedures such as correction of scoliosis. The catheter is usually placed by the surgeon at the end of the procedure and infusions of local anaesthetic or opioids continued for several days postoperatively.
- Effective analgesia is particularly important for surgery to the thoracic spine where postoperative respiratory function will be compromised if analgesia is inadequate. Consider also using incentive spirometry and chest physiotherapy.

## Summary of spinal surgery procedures

Operation	Description	Time (hr)	Position	Blood loss/X-match	Pain (+ to +++++)	Notes
Discectomy or microdiscectomy	Excision of herniated inter-vertebral disc	1–2	Prone	Not significant	+/++	Microdiscectomy can be done as day case
Cervical discectomy	Excision of herniated cervical intervertebral disc	2	Prone/head on horseshoe or halo traction pins	Not significant	++/+++	May be an emergency with neurological deficit
Spinal fusion ± decompression	Correction of spondylolisthesis or spinal stenosis for pain or instability—often several levels	1–2 (then 1 per level)	Prone	500–2000ml, X-match 4U	+++ /++++	May take bone graft from pelvis. Metal implantation
Cervical fusion ± decompression	Fusion of unstable neck (e.g. arthritis, trauma)	2–3	Supine or prone. Cervical traction in place or applied at start	300–1000ml, G&S	++/+++	Neck can be very unstable and need awake fiberoptic intubation. Application of traction pins very stimulating

(continued)



Table (Contd.)

Operation	Description	Time (hr)	Position	Blood loss/X-match	Pain (+ to +++++)	Notes
Excision of spinal tumour (e.g. vertebrectomy)	Tumours may be primary or secondary from any part of the spine	2–6+	Supine, prone, or lateral tilt	Potentially massive, X-match 6U + clotting factors available	+++ /++++	Often difficult surgery with potential for major blood loss and neurological damage
Kyphoscoliosis surgery	Correction of major spinal deformities in patients who may have severe physical disability	3–6+	Supine and/or prone	Potentially massive, X-match 6U + clotting factors available	+++ /+++++	Often in children with severe restrictive respiratory disease and co-existing abnormalities. May involve surgery in abdominal and thoracic cavities. Spinal nerve monitoring used in some centres. May need postop ICU for IPPV
Repair of vertebral fracture	Repair for neurological deficit or instability	2–6	Supine and/or prone	500–2000ml, X-match 4U	++ /++++	Often associated with other major injury (esp. rib fracture). May be in ICU/IPPV. Neurological deficit often not reversible. Note: suxamethonium may be contraindicated

# Shoulder surgery

## General considerations

Soft tissue operations around the shoulder are frequently extremely painful. This pain is not predictable and may last for several days, although it is certainly worst within the first 48hr.

## Anaesthesia

- The patient is usually positioned with the head distal to the anaesthetist, requiring particular attention to the security of the airway. It is often easier to intubate the patient (south-facing RAE or armoured tube), except for shorter procedures, where an LMA may be suitable. Long ventilator and gas sampling tubes are required.
- Venous access should be placed in the opposite arm (with a long extension) or at the ankle/foot.
- The patient may be placed supine with head-up tilt, lateral, or in a deck-chair position. When using steep head-up tilt in patients with compromised cardiovascular function, change posture slowly and consider direct arterial pressure monitoring.
- There is the potential for air embolus whilst in these positions.
- Although blood loss is rarely significant, patients may be unable to take oral fluids for some hours postoperatively.
- Regional anaesthesia is a useful adjunct in shoulder anaesthesia and an **interscalene block** is the method of choice (p1138). Although procedures may be performed under regional anaesthesia alone, it is more commonly used to supplement general anaesthesia and to provide postoperative analgesia. When planning an interscalene block, inform the patient that their whole arm may go numb, and that they may sense that full inspiration is not possible when they wake up (phrenic nerve blockade). Interscalene block is contraindicated in patients with contralateral phrenic nerve/diaphragmatic palsy, or recurrent laryngeal nerve damage. Interscalene catheters can be used for prolonged postoperative analgesia.<sup>1</sup>
- When an interscalene block is impractical, infiltration of local anaesthetic by the surgeon may also provide postoperative analgesia. A catheter can be placed in the subacromial space and used to instil further quantities of local anaesthetic in the postoperative period.<sup>2</sup> This is particularly effective in Bankart's and capsular shift operations.
- For rotator cuff repairs an epidural catheter placed surgically over the repair can be used to supplement postoperative analgesia. Regular boluses (10ml 0.25% bupivacaine 2–4hrly) are better than infusion.
- Potent analgesia is often required for 1–2d. The combination of PCA opioid/NSAIDs/paracetamol is usually effective. Good posture (sitting up with the elbow supported on a pillow) is also important.

1 Denny NM, Barber N, Sildown DJ (2003). Evaluation of an insulated Tuohy needle system for the placement of interscalene brachial plexus catheters. *Anaesthesia*, **58**, 554–557.

2 Axelsson K, Nordenson U, Johanson E, et al. (2003). Patient-controlled regional analgesia (PCRA) with ropivacaine after arthroscopic subacromial decompression. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*, **47**, 993–1000.

## Total shoulder replacement

Procedure	Prosthetic shoulder replacement
Time	2–3hr
Pain	+++ /++++
Position	Supine, head up, or deck-chair
Blood loss	250–500ml
Practical techniques	ET + IPPV, interscalene block

### Preoperative

- Many patients are elderly; severe rheumatoid disease is common.
- Ask about respiratory function/reserve if planning an interscalene block (some diaphragmatic function will be lost for several hours).
- Check the airway (particularly in rheumatoid arthritis) and range of neck movement. Some patients will need fiberoptic intubation.

### Perioperative

- Consider performing an interscalene block before inducing anaesthesia (see p1138).
- Place IV infusion and blood pressure cuff on the opposite arm with a long extension.
- Intubate with a preformed 'south-facing' ETT.
- Hypotension is common when changing to head-up position.
- If interscalene block has been performed, anaesthesia is usually unremarkable. Sometimes breakthrough stimulation occurs during the glenoid phase (may receive fibres from T2 which are not always covered by the block).
- If no interscalene block, load the patient with morphine and ask the surgeon to infiltrate with local anaesthetic (20–30ml 0.25% bupivacaine).
- Antibiotic prophylaxis.

### Postoperative

- Pain is worst in the first 24hr postoperatively. PCA/intermittent morphine is usually satisfactory.
- NSAIDs are useful.

### Special considerations

- Air/fat embolism is a rare event.
- In high-risk patients direct arterial monitoring is advised.

### Other shoulder operations

- Most shoulder surgery may be carried out using the anaesthetic guidelines above. Arthroscopic surgery is generally less painful and patients get effective postoperative analgesia if the surgeon injects 10–20ml bupivacaine 0.5% within the joint space at the end of surgery.
- Bankart's and capsular shift operations for recurrent dislocations are more painful for larger, muscular patients but not generally as painful as cuff repairs and open acromioplasties.
- Massive cuff repairs are often extremely painful and an interscalene block is useful. PCA should be considered and a loading dose of morphine should be administered during surgery. Consider interscalene catheter with infusion of LA.
- Pain following any operation around the shoulder is unpredictable and some patients who have had short procedures suffer severe pain for several days. A flexible approach is required for analgesia.
- Beware the pain-free patient following major shoulder surgery and connected to PCA morphine. When the regional block wears off, effective analgesia may take some time to establish.

## Elbow replacement surgery<sup>1</sup>

Procedure	Prosthetic elbow replacement
Time	Variable
Pain	+ / ++
Position	Supine, arm out on table
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	GA, tourniquet

Total elbow arthroplasty is performed in patients with an ankylosed or a very stiff elbow (e.g. rheumatoid). The operation aims to provide an increase in the range of motion of the joint and pain relief. Complications, including reoperation, are frequent.

### Technique

- Assess the patient for other manifestations of rheumatoid disease. (See p192.)
- LMA/ETT GA and IV opioids.
- A tourniquet is often used.
- Ensure careful poisoning to prevent tissue injury and to reduce postoperative pain from other arthritic areas.
- Regional techniques—vertical infraclavicular block (VIB—see p1140) is probably the block of choice.
- Postoperative ulnar nerve compression is common and may necessitate further surgery.

<sup>1</sup> Mansat P, Morrey BF (2000). Semiconstrained total elbow arthroplasty for ankylosed and stiff elbows. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **82**, 1260–1268.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Anaesthesia for hand surgery

Procedure	Various
Time	Variable
Pain	+ / +++
Position	Supine, arm out on table
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	Regional analgesia $\pm$ GA, tourniquet

The majority of hand surgery procedures are suitable for local or regional anaesthesia as a day case. This can be combined with general anaesthesia or additional sedation if required. Some procedures such as carpal tunnel release or trigger finger release can be done under local infiltration alone. Intravenous regional anaesthesia (IVRA) is suitable for procedures below the elbow of 30min or less, although it is now rarely performed.

An upper arm tourniquet is almost always used for any type of hand surgery. Positioning and duration of use will be an important determinant of whether the patient is able to tolerate regional or local anaesthesia alone. Patients with a good brachial plexus block will usually tolerate 60–90min of arm ischaemia.

An axillary brachial plexus block can provide excellent anaesthesia to the hand, arm, and forearm, although tourniquet pain may be a problem. Other approaches include infra- and supraclavicular approaches.

### Preoperative

- Full assessment as for GA. The patient may request a GA and regional anaesthesia may fail.
- Check that patients can lie flat for the proposed duration of operation if planned to be awake.
- Assess movement of the operative arm. Can the patient achieve the necessary position for regional block or the surgery planned?

### Perioperative

- Make sure the patient's bladder is empty.
- Use full monitoring whether or not GA/sedation is to be used.
- Perform local block with the patient awake or lightly sedated.
- Choose an appropriate and familiar block for the planned site of surgery  $\pm$  tourniquet.
- Augment plexus anaesthesia with elbow or wrist blocks as necessary to improve success rates.
- Provide sedation or GA depending on safety and the patient's wishes. Have equipment and drugs ready to convert to sedation or GA if necessary during the operation.

### Postoperative

- Surgery involving soft tissues and skin is generally less painful than surgery to the bones and joints.
- Simple analgesic combinations are usually adequate for the less painful procedures.
- Opioids or regional catheter techniques may be required for the more painful operations.
- Some patients dislike the postoperative 'dead arm' following brachial plexus block.

### Special considerations

- Tourniquet pain can be reduced by blocking the intercostobrachial nerve subcutaneously on the medial aspect of the upper arm above the level of the tourniquet.
- Adrenaline-containing solutions should be avoided near digits.



## Other hand surgical procedures

Operation	Description	Time (min)	Pain (+ to +++++)	Notes
Trigger finger release and carpal tunnel release	Tendon or nerve release	5–15	+	These procedures can usually be carried out under local infiltration anaesthesia
Dupuytren's contractures (simple)	Usually confined to ulnar and median distribution. Usually <30min tourniquet time	<60	+	GA with wrist block or infiltration. Brachial plexus block with upper arm tourniquet ± GA. Quick procedure: wrist block with wrist tourniquet
Dupuytren's contracture (complex)	Severe disease or redo procedure may need skin grafting	60–120	+	Prolonged tourniquet time means that a brachial plexus block or a GA with local block is often required
MCP joint replacement (e.g. Swanson)	MCP joint replacement usually for rheumatoid	30 per joint	++/+++	Generally frailer patients with systemic disease
Tenolysis, capsulotomies, tendon grafts	These procedures may need patient participation to assess the adequacy of the procedure	15–60	+ / ++	If hand movement is required then any block must be distal. A wrist block with sedation is usually adequate
Digit reimplantation	Microvascular surgery	Hours	++	A GA is usually required because of the prolonged procedure Regional anaesthesia for the sympathectomy is helpful
Ulnar head excision or trapeziectomy	Surgery for wrist pain in rheumatoid disease	30–60	++/+++	As pain is severe a single-shot brachial block or catheter technique is ideal with or without a GA

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Anaesthesia for major trauma

Major trauma presents many challenges to the anaesthetist. Multiple injuries can cause significant physiological disturbance and may require urgent and/or prolonged surgery from different specialties. Significant injuries may be unrecognised, or not present until surgery. All patients should be resuscitated according to ATLS guidelines. See also pp862–70.

### General considerations

- Major trauma cases often require a number of procedures. Life-saving surgery clearly takes priority, but it may be possible to perform several procedures at once.
- The patient should be personally fully reviewed preoperatively. Major injuries are easily missed in A&E. Check the CXR for missed pathology.
- Immediately prior to anaesthesia, every patient should have a minimum of an ATLS primary survey. A high index of suspicion should exist for injuries that may not have been apparent at the initial assessment but may cause cardiorespiratory compromise—pneumothorax, spinal cord injury, cardiac tamponade, fat embolism, and occult haemorrhage.
- Hypothermia causes significant morbidity and should be rigorously avoided and treated.
- Life-saving surgery should not be delayed by unnecessary investigations.

### Management of anaesthesia

#### Team work

It is important to use all members of the medical staff efficiently. Effective communication is an important determinant of outcome.

#### Airway

- Endotracheal intubation is usual.
- Intubation is more likely to be difficult; all the usual equipment should be available before starting induction of anaesthesia.
- Always assume a full stomach. Place a gastric tube during surgery to attempt gastric decompression. The tube should be placed orally if there are associated nasal/mid-face or base-of-skull fractures.

#### Ventilation

- Ventilator settings may have to be adjusted from 'normal' values to take into account problems that are particular to trauma patients.
- Patients with actual or potentially raised ICP should have their  $\text{PaCO}_2$  kept at 4.5–5kPa (35–38mmHg) to help maintain a stable ICP.
- Patients with chest trauma may require the use of special ventilator settings. It may be necessary to use an ICU ventilator.

#### Circulatory access

- Ensure adequate venous access—preferably two 14–16G cannulae. If venous access is difficult consider a cut-down/femoral line/external jugular line, or intraosseous access.
- Do not delay life-saving surgery with attempts to fully resuscitate hypovolaemia.

- Continue resuscitation during transfer to theatre; 'permissive hypovolaemia' or 'hypotensive resuscitation' to a systolic BP of 80mmHg may be preferable for the trauma victim with ongoing uncontrolled haemorrhage.<sup>1</sup>
- Although not introduced into civilian practice as yet, aggressive treatment of blood loss in recent military campaigns has reduced the impact from the four hypos—**hypothermia, hypoxaemia, hypovolaemia, and hypocoagulability**.<sup>2</sup>
- Attach one IV line to a high-performance warming system, preferably with an automatic pressurisation system. This line should be dedicated to fluid resuscitation, unless haemorrhage is massive: this ensures adequate heating of all infused fluid. Ideally one person should be solely responsible for checking and dealing with all fluid on this line.
- An arterial line should be inserted when practical. They are not normally required immediately and should not delay surgery.
- Central venous access is not usually a priority and may be difficult due to injuries to the vasculature and hypovolaemia. It is best carried out after fluid resuscitation. A femoral line may be the most practical (and quickest) option if infusions of vasopressors/inotropes are required—however, avoid in abdominal trauma.

### Temperature

- Use a temperature probe and peripheral nerve stimulator. Try to maintain body temperature.

### Regional anaesthesia

- Regional anaesthesia may be considered as an adjunct, although preoperative urgency, haemodynamic instability, coagulopathy, and the possibility of compartment syndrome often make it impractical.

### Problems

- **Unexplained hypotension** and tachycardia: consider hypovolaemia, pneumothorax, pericardial tamponade, and fat/air embolism.
- **Unexplained hypoxia** is often associated with a rise in inflation pressure: consider tension pneumothorax and fat embolism.
- **Unexplained hypertension**: consider pain, raised ICP (search for associated neurological signs, obtain brain CT scan), and rarely traumatic disruption of thoracic aorta.

### Changing anaesthetic teams

Major trauma cases often involve prolonged surgery by multiple teams; you may need to hand over the patient to different anaesthetist(s). This handover should be as detailed as possible. The anaesthetist should document the time and details of the handover on the anaesthetic record.

1 Stern SA (2001). Low-volume fluid resuscitation for presumed hemorrhagic shock: helpful or harmful? *Current Opinions in Critical Care*, **7**, 422–430.

2 Moor P, Rew D, Midwinter MJ, Doughty H (2009). Transfusion for trauma: civilian lessons from the battlefield? *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 469–472.

## Cervical spine fracture

Surgery for cervical spine fracture may comprise application of stabilising devices (halo traction, skull tongs, plaster jacket) or definitive fixation of the bony column (usually performed as a semi-elective procedure).

### General considerations

- Patients have usually suffered major trauma, although fractures can occur following minor injury if pre-existing cervical spine disease.
- Controversy exists as to the best method of securing the airway. Awake intubation is considered safe in trained hands; however, it may result in coughing and can be difficult and unpleasant for the patient. Direct laryngoscopy under general anaesthesia with manual in-line neck stabilisation (MILNS) may be associated with more neck movement.

### Anaesthesia

- Patients for halo traction, skull tong application, and other stabilising procedures will usually be in full neck immobilisation. This is removed following application of the stabilising device—usually under local anaesthetic. Sedation may be required. General anaesthesia is occasionally required for more complex stabilisation or in confused/agitated patients. It should be performed as per anterior cervical stabilisation (p502 and p487).
- Patients for open cervical spine stabilisation require either an anterior or a posterior approach and, in a few patients, both.
- Perform a full neurological examination before anaesthesia to assess the level and extent of any spinal cord injury. This is particularly important for patients who are to be turned prone.
- Anterior approaches are usually performed in the supine head-up position, through an oblique incision across the anterior aspect of the neck. The posterior approach is performed in the prone position, using a longitudinal incision. Occasionally, fractures to C1/C2 may require an approach through the mouth.
- Arterial and venous lines should be placed, and must be well secured to prevent kinking. A forced-air warming system should be used and urinary catheterisation is required. Nasogastric decompression is usual for prolonged surgery, or those with pre-existing spinal cord injury.
- For prone positioning, extreme care is needed during turning (involve the surgeon). The surgeon should control the head/neck, while at least three people perform the turn. The anaesthetist should hold the ET tube in situ and should be in charge of coordinating the turn. Some centres use awake intubation, followed by awake positioning prior to induction of anaesthesia.
- Blood loss is rarely significant for these procedures, and so deliberate arterial hypotension is not usually required.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Anaesthesia for repair of cervical spine fracture

Procedure	Anterior/posterior repair of cervical fracture
Time	2–6hr
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine head-up or prone for posterior approach
Blood loss	250–1000ml, X-match 4U
Practical techniques	GA, art line, awake FOI

### Preoperative

- Mostly trauma patients, often with other injuries. Sometimes older patients with fractures in a previously diseased cervical spine. Check for other manifestations of the underlying disease (e.g. rheumatoid).
- Check presence/degree of cervical spine injury, level of lesion, and likely approach.
- Check the need for postoperative ventilation and HDU care. More common with high lesions, which may need aggressive chest physiotherapy.
- Consider the technique of intubation. The patient may be in skull traction, which does not limit mouth opening but does limit neck movement. Full neck immobilisation (with a hard cervical collar and sandbags/tape) limits both neck movement and mouth opening.

### Perioperative

- Insert arterial and venous lines, preferably in the same arm.
- Intubation: awake nasal intubation is commonest,<sup>1</sup> but a smaller tube size results. Awake oral intubation is harder to perform but gives a larger tube size. If the surgeon is planning an intraoral approach, check whether an oral or nasal ETT is preferred.
- Suxamethonium is contraindicated in patients with spinal cord lesions that are >72hr old. In practice, it is rare to need suxamethonium.
- Positioning should be in combination with the surgeon. Some request check of residual neurological function following awake intubation and after turning prone.
- Check all pressure areas before draping. Procedures are prolonged.
- Bone graft may be required and is usually taken from the iliac crest.

### Postoperative

- PCA morphine is usually satisfactory.
- NSAIDs are useful.

### Special considerations

- Patients with acute spinal cord lesions may demonstrate signs of neurogenic shock including bradycardia and hypotension (see pp250–4). This is best treated with judicious use of fluids and pressor agents, guided by CVP monitoring. Cervical spine surgery is rarely performed in the first few hours after injury, which makes these problems uncommon. However, spinal hyper-reflexia may occur in patients with longer-standing lesions, and these should be treated symptomatically (p250).
- Tracheostomy is not advisable in patients scheduled for anterior fusion. Discuss with the surgeon if this is a likely option.

1 Sidhu VS, Whitehead EM, Ainsworth QP, Smith M, Calder I (1993). A technique of awake fibre-optic intubation. Experience in patients with cervical spine disease. *Anaesthesia*, **48**, 910–913.



## Anaesthesia for limb fractures

Procedure	Closed or open reduction of limb fractures
Time	5min to many hours
Pain	Variable
Position	Usually supine
Blood loss	Minimal, but can be up to 2000ml for open procedures
Practical techniques	GA $\pm$ block, regional block alone

Discuss with the surgeon the nature and duration of the likely repair (MUA may become ORIF). If planning a regional block, you should also discuss the risk of compartment syndrome (see p506).

### Preoperative

- Check that no additional surgery is likely.
- Ensure the absence of other significant chest/abdominal/head injuries.
- Patients with recent (<24hr) moderate or severe head injury require very careful consideration before proceeding to non-life-saving surgery.
- Check the state of cervical spine clearance where relevant.
- Check the state of hydration of the patient and the time of the last food/drink in relation to the time of injury.
- In practice, the stomach may never empty in some patients, particularly children, and if in doubt consider the patient at risk of a full stomach.
- Check a chest radiograph for all major trauma patients.

### Perioperative

- Ensure at least one large-gauge infusion/IVI warmer for all open reductions involving proximal limb fractures.
- Do not site IV on an injured limb.
- Blood loss is very variable. Proximal limb fractures (femur, humerus) and use of bone grafting cause considerable blood loss.
- The use of a tourniquet will reduce bleeding but may be contraindicated because of the fracture type/site.
- Give antibiotic prophylaxis prior to commencement of surgery/application of tourniquet.
- Patients are at risk of fat embolism (p468).
- Patients with pre-existing head injury may require ICP monitoring and postoperative ventilation. General anaesthesia can obscure the signs of deterioration in conscious level, and anaesthesia may also contribute to a rise in ICP.

### Postoperative

- Postoperative analgesia requirements depend on the nature of the surgery.
- Closed reductions can often be managed with a combination of perioperative opioid and NSAIDs/paracetamol/opioid orally.
- More complex repairs, including external fixation, may require the use of a PCA.

### Special considerations

- Regional anaesthesia can be a useful addition for the provision of analgesia, and may also be used as the sole anaesthetic for some fracture reductions. However, a local anaesthetic block may obscure neurological signs of a developing compartment syndrome. The best strategy is to discuss the problem with the surgeon beforehand.
- In humeral fractures where surgical wire banding is planned, avoid regional blocks. The radial nerve is easily trapped during surgery and the diagnosis is delayed with a regional block.
- If bone grafting is anticipated from the pelvis then the donor site will be painful.

## Compartment syndrome<sup>1</sup>

Compartment syndrome arises when the circulation and tissues within a closed space are compromised by increased pressure. Ischaemia, necrosis, and loss of function result, further increasing compartmental pressure. Damage can become irreversible after only 4hr.

Compartment syndrome is a serious limb-threatening condition, which may also lead to systemic organ dysfunction if incorrectly managed. It should be anticipated in any significant limb injury, with or without fracture, especially in crush situations. It can also be caused by tourniquets, malpositioning in theatre, systemic hypotension, haemorrhage, oedema, and direct injection of drugs. In obtunded patients, where clinical signs may be masked, or in the presence of spinal cord injuries, measurement of compartmental pressure may be indicated. Early diagnosis and treatment are vital. Urgent fasciotomy may be required.

Signs and symptoms of compartment syndrome include:

- Pain mainly over the affected compartment, worsened by passive stretching of the muscles.
- Tense swelling over the compartment, with drum-tight fascia/skin.
- Paraesthesia in the distribution of nerves traversing the compartment.
- Weakness or paralysis of the limb is a late sign.
- Distal pulses are usually present.

### Measuring compartment pressures

- This can be undertaken using a pressure transducer (as in an arterial line) attached to a needle placed into the suspect compartment.
- If the compartmental pressure is within 30mmHg of the diastolic pressure, diagnosis is confirmed.

### Special considerations

- Compartment syndrome can occur with open fractures—some compartments may not be able to decompress through the open wound.
- Keep the limb at the level of the heart. Avoid elevation as this may decrease perfusion below critical levels.
- Release all constricting bandages, dressings, or casts encircling the limb. If this does not rapidly relieve symptoms, urgent surgical fasciotomy will be required to save the limb.
- After fasciotomy the limb should be splinted to prevent contractures and the fracture stabilised to prevent further bleeding.
- Ensure the patient is well hydrated and has a good urine output. Myoglobinuria is maximal after reperfusion.

### Regional anaesthesia

Avoid local blocks or epidurals if patient is at risk of developing compartment syndrome as the analgesia will mask early signs. The cardinal symptom is pain, and this occurs early in the syndrome. Risk is especially high in tibial and forearm fractures, so avoid blocks in these situations.

<sup>1</sup> Martin JT (1992). Compartment syndromes: concepts and perspectives for the anaesthesiologist. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **75**, 275–283.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Anaesthesia for femoral neck fracture

Procedure	Cannulated screws, dynamic hip screw (DHS), cemented/uncemented hemi-arthroplasty
Time	10–120min
Pain	+ / +++
Position	Supine (?on hip table), occasionally lateral
Blood loss	250–750ml
Practical techniques	SV LMA and regional block Spinal ± sedation ETT + IPPV

Hip fractures are common—~80 000 per annum in the UK (80% female). Average age is 81yr and 80% occur in those >75yr. In Western society the lifetime risk is 18% (women) and 6% (men).<sup>1</sup> Three-month mortality is ~12%, increasing to 21% at 1yr.<sup>2</sup>

### Preoperative

- Physiological reserve is reduced and comorbidity is common. Ideally resuscitation should start as soon as the patient is admitted to hospital. Thorough preoperative assessment must take place and surgery should be scheduled for the earliest possible daytime session.
- Surgical treatment can be either fracture fixation or femoral head replacement, depending on the nature of fracture, surgical preference, previous mobility, and life expectancy. Conservative (non-operative) management is always one option for the grossly unfit.
- Determine which procedure is to be performed. Cannulated hip screws are quick, largely non-invasive procedures with a small incision and little blood loss. Cemented/uncemented hemiarthroplasty is a longer procedure, similar to the femoral part of a primary hip replacement. Dynamic hip screw/Richard's screw and plate are intermediate procedures.
- Any decision to delay surgery should be based on a realistic attempt to improve the patient's medical condition, rather than a fruitless pursuit of 'normal' values. A mild chest infection is unlikely to improve in a bed-bound elderly patient, whereas frank pneumonia with sepsis and dyspnoea may respond to rehydration, antibiotics, and chest physiotherapy. Good communication between surgeons, orthogeriatricians, and anaesthetists is important.
- An attempt should be made to control atrial fibrillation preoperatively to prevent severe perioperative hypotension.
- Dehydration is common as oral intake is often much reduced. Intravenous fluids must be commenced as soon as the patient is admitted to a hospital.
- Analgesia should be commenced as often the patient is in considerable pain. A fascia iliaca block instituted in an A&E setting can provide 'dynamic' analgesia and reduces the requirement for opioids.<sup>3</sup>

## Perioperative

- For fracture fixation the patient is usually positioned supine on a 'hip table'. This involves placement of a groin prop, with the table supporting the upper body only. Feet are tied into shoe supports, and the table is then elevated to allow radiographic screening. For hemiarthroplasty the patient is lateral or supine on an ordinary operating table.
- Blood loss is variable. Much of the measured loss is old haematoma, but significant haemorrhage may occur and necessitate transfusion.
- Choice of anaesthetic technique: regional and general anaesthesia are both advocated, but there is little evidence to support one technique over another.<sup>4,5</sup> Options include:
  - Regional anaesthesia: epidural, spinal, psoas plexus (p1158, 1168, 740), and 3 in 1 nerve block (p1160) have all been used for operative anaesthesia and postoperative analgesia. Sedation may be necessary, but any sedative can produce unpredictable effects in the elderly and should only be used when necessary.
  - Spinal anaesthesia may decrease the incidence of postoperative confusion and DVT but can be associated with perioperative hypotension. A small dose of IV ketamine or alfentanil may be useful as analgesia when turning the patient before performing the block, but avoiding all sedatives is preferable.
  - General anaesthesia with opioid supplementation.
  - Regurgitation and aspiration occasionally occurs with LMAs in this group—if patient is at risk use endotracheal intubation.
- Check pressure points after placement on the 'hip table' as these patients are prone to pressure damage.
- Use some form of passive or active warming device to prevent hypothermia. Insulate the head and secure a warming blanket/polythene sheet around the chest and lower abdomen.
- Cemented hemiarthroplasty may be associated with a marked drop in arterial pressure, ET $\text{CO}_2$ , and heart rate during cement insertion. Take the same precautions as with a total hip replacement (p472).

## Postoperative

- Pain is often only due to the incision, which is small for cannulated screws and DHS, but larger for hemiarthroplasty, although DHS procedures may carry a considerable amount of postoperative pain.<sup>6</sup>
- Fracture pain will be reduced but is still present on rolling and turning in bed.
- Postoperative analgesia can be provided by regular IV paracetamol; opioids should be used sparingly.<sup>7</sup> Most patients will require some postoperative analgesia, although some do not. Take care with NSAIDs because of the increased risk of gastrointestinal and renal complications.

### Special considerations

- In high-risk patients, procedures can be undertaken with local anaesthesia alone. Morbidity and mortality risks should be understood by the patient and relatives, and in some patients resuscitation status should be reviewed.
- A useful resource for all anaesthetists involved in the management of hip fracture patients is the NHS Hip Fracture Anaesthesia Network.<sup>8</sup>

- 1 Gillespie W (2001). Hip fracture. *British Medical Journal*, **322**, 968–975.
- 2 Parker MJ, Pryor GA, Myles J (2000). 11 year results in 2,846 patients of the Peterborough hip fracture project: reduced morbidity, mortality and hospital stay. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*, **71**, 34–38.
- 3 Foss NB, Kristensen BB, Bundgaard M et al. (2007). Fascia iliaca compartment blockade for acute pain control in hip fracture patients: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*, **106**, 773–778.
- 4 Urwin SC, Parker MJ, Griffiths R (2000). General versus regional anaesthesia for hip fracture: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **84**, 450–455.
- 5 AAGBI Safety Guideline Fractured Neck of Femur (2010). [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).
- 6 Foss NB, Kristensen MT, Palm H, Kehlet H (2009). Postoperative pain after hip fracture is procedure specific. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **102**, 111–116.
- 7 Cuvillon P, Ripart J, Debureaux S et al. (2007). Analgesia after hip fracture repair in elderly patients: the effect of a continuous femoral nerve block: a prospective and randomised study. *Annales Françaises d'Anesthésie et de Réanimation*, **26**, 2–9.
- 8 NHS Networks. <http://www.networks.nhs.uk/nhs-networks/hip-fracture-anaesthesia>.

## Procedures for fractured neck of femur

Operation	Description	Time (min)	Pain (+ to +++++)	Position	Blood loss/X-match	Notes
Cannulated screws	Screws across femoral neck (previously 'Garden screws')	20	+++	Supine, hip table	Nil	Minimally invasive, small thigh incision. Can be done with local/nerve block and sedation if necessary. X-ray guided
Richards screw and plate (RSP)	Plate along femur with compression screw into femoral head	30–45	++	Supine, hip table	<400ml	Somewhat larger thigh incision/blood loss. X-ray guided
Dynamic hip screw (DHS)	As RSP	30–45	++	Supine, hip table	<400ml	As RSP
Dynamic compression screw (DCS)	As RSP	30–45	++	Supine, hip table	<400ml	As RSP
Girdlestone osteotomy	Removal of femoral head. No prosthesis	30–45	++	Supine	<400ml	More extensive incision, but no prosthesis, hence quicker than below. Limited mobility afterwards
Austin Moore hemiarthroplasty	Replacement of femoral head. No cement	60–90	+++	Supine	400–600ml	Similar to total hip replacement, without acetabular component
Thompson's hemiarthroplasty	Replacement of femoral head. Cemented	60–90	+++	Supine	400–600ml	Similar to total hip replacement, without acetabular component
Exeter bipolar	Replacement of femoral head and acetabular component. Cemented	60–90	+++	Supine	400–800ml	Similar to total hip replacement, with acetabular component



*This page intentionally left blank*

# Plastic surgery

## Jon Warwick

General principles 514

Breast reduction 518

Breast augmentation 520

Correction of prominent ears 521

Facelift (rhytidectomy) 522

Free flap surgery 524

Liposuction 528

Skin grafting 530

Other plastic surgical procedures 532

## General principles

Complexity of anaesthesia ranges from the routine to the challenging. Some extensive procedures (e.g. free flap repairs, craniofacial reconstruction) may involve invasive monitoring, extensive blood loss, and postoperative intensive care support.

### Regional techniques

Minor body surface procedures may be performed under local anaesthetic infiltration alone. Upper and lower limb surgery is especially suitable for regional or peripheral nerve block. Sedation to supplement a regional technique may be required in anxious patients or for longer procedures. Propofol (0.5–1.0 µg/ml TCI, or 10–15 ml/hr of 1% solution) supplemented with a small dose of midazolam (1–2 mg) is effective. Significant body surface procedures (e.g. excision and grafting of skin tumours) can be accomplished in those unfit for general anaesthesia using extensive infiltration of local anaesthesia and IV sedation. Incremental sedation with ketamine (10 mg) and midazolam (1 mg) is a safe and potent analgesic/sedative combination in the elderly.

### The difficult airway (see also p982)

Patients with head and neck pathology causing airway difficulty are often encountered. Airway difficulty may arise from anatomical deformity due to tumour, trauma, infection, previous operation, or scarring. Competence in difficult airway techniques (e.g. fiberoptic intubation) is required. The 'shared airway' is regularly a feature of head and neck surgery. Discuss with the surgeon which tube you propose to use, and by which route to achieve the best surgical access (oral, nasal, conversion to tracheostomy). How will the tube be secured (tied, taped, stitched)?

### Poor access to patient

The operating site may be extensive (e.g. burns debridement) or multiple (e.g. free flap procedures). This may produce added difficulty with:

- Heat conservation. It may be difficult to achieve enough access to the patient's body surface area to maintain temperature. Heated under-blankets are useful.
- Monitoring. ECG leads, the pulse oximeter probe, and blood pressure cuff may all be difficult to position adequately.
- Vascular access. Position cannulae away from the operative field. Use femoral vessels or the foot if necessary. Long extension sets may be required.

### Smooth emergence

Avoid the patient coughing and straining at the end of the procedure. This will put tension on delicate suture lines and increase bleeding and haematoma formation, especially for facial procedures. The combination of propofol maintenance and the laryngeal mask airway produces a particularly smooth emergence.

### Attention to detail

Successful anaesthesia for plastic surgery requires thoroughness and careful attention to detail. Patients for aesthetic surgery will have high expectations and will be well informed.

### Analgesia

Pain relief is always a challenge—in practice, effective pain control may be more readily achievable in patients recovering from plastic surgery for several reasons:

- Most procedures are performed on the body surface. These tend to be less painful than procedures involving the body cavities and are usually amenable to local anaesthetic infiltration. Continuous catheter techniques may be useful in limb procedures.
- Patients recovering from head and neck procedures are often surprisingly comfortable despite extensive surgery.
- Major body cavities and abdominal musculature are usually not involved. The pain experienced after abdominoplasty is significantly less than pain following laparotomy.
- Plastic surgery procedures seldom involve new fractures of long bones.
- The gastrointestinal tract is usually unaffected. The oral route for drugs is frequently available which may make dosing and administration of analgesics simpler.

### Long operations

Patients undergoing complicated reconstructive procedures may be in theatre for many hours. Give careful consideration to:

- **Vascular access.** Check that line placement will not interfere with the site of surgery. Invasive arterial monitoring is desirable. A central venous line will assist with estimations of intravascular volume and provide dependable venous access in the postoperative period. Site at least one large-bore peripheral (14–16G) cannula for fluid administration and a small cannula (20–22G) for other infusions such as TCI and PCA.
- **Blood loss.** Ensure blood has been crossmatched. The initial dissection is usually the period of most blood loss and a moderate hypotensive technique may help to limit this. Thereafter losses may be insidious and ongoing. Aim to keep track by swab weighing, visual estimation, regular haemoglobin or haematocrit estimations.
- **Fluid balance.** Urinary catheterisation is essential. Ensure careful monitoring of fluid balance, especially in children and patients with poor cardiorespiratory function.
- **Body temperature.** Monitor core temperature (e.g. rectal, nasopharyngeal, oesophageal). Maintain temperature by using low fresh gas flows, a heat-moisture exchange (HME) filter, warmed IV fluids, a warm ambient theatre temperature (e.g. 24°C), a heated mattress, or external warming blankets (e.g. 'Bair Hugger®'). Take care not to overheat.
- **Positioning.** Ensure that structures such as the cervical spine and brachial plexus are not in positions of stress. Take care with pressure areas. Make liberal use of cotton wool padding ('Gamgee') over bony prominences. Raise the heels off the table using foam pads or boots.

- **DVT prophylaxis.** Venous thromboembolism is often initiated during surgery. All patients should receive daily low molecular weight heparin, thromboembolism ('TED') stockings, and intermittent calf compression whilst in theatre.
- **Nasogastric tube.** Consider emptying the stomach. Children are especially prone to gastric distension during prolonged procedures.
- **Eye care.** Lightly tape and pad the eyes for protection. Avoid excessive padding, since this may negate the natural protection afforded by the bony orbit. Prophylactic antibiotic ointment is unnecessary. Do not allow corneal abrasion to develop from surface drying.
- **ET tube cuff pressure.** Cuff pressure will gradually increase if N<sub>2</sub>O is used. Where possible, recheck the cuff pressure at intervals during the case if possible.
- **Postoperative care.** Discuss the preferred site of postoperative care with the nursing staff and surgical team. Surgeons often prefer patients to return to the plastic surgery ward where wound care and nursing observation may be more attuned to the specifics of the operation. Closer patient observation, invasive monitoring, and regular blood gas estimation may be more achievable in an ICU/HDU. The site for immediate postoperative care is principally dictated by the general condition of the patient.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Breast reduction

Procedure	Reduction of breast size by glandular resection. Usually bilateral
Time	3hr
Pain	++
Position	Supine, 30° head up. Arms may be positioned on boards, or with elbows flexed and hands placed behind the upper part of the buttocks
Blood loss	500ml, G&S
Practical techniques	IPPV via ETT or LMA

### Preoperative

- Bilateral breast reduction is not primarily an aesthetic procedure. These patients may suffer from severe neck and back pain. Participating in exercise and sport is not possible. There may be symptoms of emotional disturbance.
- Patients are usually fit—aged 20–40yr. Many surgeons exclude patients with a body mass index >30 due to a higher incidence of wound breakdown, infection, and haematoma formation.
- A mastopexy is a surgical procedure for correcting breast ptosis when breast volume is adequate. Anaesthetic implications are similar. Blood loss is less.
- FBC and group and save. Crossmatching is generally unnecessary except for larger reductions.
- Timing in relation to the menstrual cycle is unimportant.
- All patients should receive DVT prophylaxis (TED stockings, daily low molecular weight heparin).

### Perioperative

- Balanced GA—IPPV may be preferable since the surgeon often puts pressure on the chest wall during surgery. IPPV will maintain satisfactory chest expansion with good aeration, control of PaCO<sub>2</sub>, and help minimise blood loss. An LMA may be satisfactory for IPPV.
- Place ECG electrodes on the patient's back. Lie the patient on 'incontinence pads' to absorb blood loss.
- Take care to position the patient carefully on the operating table. The anaesthetic machine is usually at the head end. Ensure that the chest and arms are symmetrical. Confirm that cannulae are firmly positioned and their plastic caps covered with cotton wool/'Gamgee' if the hands are to be positioned behind the buttocks. Local pressure damage to skin may otherwise ensue. Drip extension sets are needed; ensure that the drip runs freely.

- Blood loss depends on surgical technique. Use of cutting diathermy causes less bleeding than a scalpel. Infiltration with dilute adrenaline-containing LA helps reduce blood loss. All surgeons have their own recipe. Check the dosage being used; in practice this is seldom a concern (see liposuction p528).
- Fewer than 5% of patients require transfusion. Mild falls in haemoglobin are well tolerated in this young patient group.
- Moderate reductions may involve removal of 500g of tissue per breast.

### Postoperative

- Bilateral breast reduction does not cause significant postoperative pain. Following a dose of morphine towards the end of surgery, regular simple analgesics and NSAIDs are usually adequate. IV PCA is generally unnecessary. An occasional dose of IM opioid may be required.
- Haematoma formation is an early complication. Occasionally nipple perfusion may be compromised and requires decompression of the pedicle. Return to theatre may be indicated. Later complications include wound infection, dehiscence, and fat necrosis.

### Special considerations

Occasionally patients for massive breast reduction are encountered (>1kg tissue removal per breast). Two to 4U of blood should be crossmatched. The complication rate is higher. Older patients may have coexisting cardiopulmonary disease and require further investigation. Intubation and IPPV is the preferred technique.



## Breast augmentation

Procedure	Bilateral or unilateral augmentation of breast size
Time	90min
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine, 30° head up. Arms may be out on boards, or with elbows flexed and hands placed behind the upper part of the buttocks
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	Spontaneous ventilation or IPPV via LMA

### Preoperative

- Breast augmentation may be performed for:
  - Reconstruction following mastectomy.
  - Correction of breast asymmetry.
  - Aesthetic bilateral augmentation.
- Patients are usually fit and well. Check FBC.

### Perioperative

- Position on the operating table as for breast reduction.
- Conventional augmentation involves creation of an SC pocket for a silicone implant via an inframammary incision.
- Modern techniques involve pocket formation by the insertion of an inflatable capsule mounted on an introducer via a small incision in the anterior axillary line. This is then removed and the implant inserted.

### Postoperative

- Postoperative discomfort may be related to the size of the implants. Large implants cause more tissue stretching and postoperative pain. In general, breast augmentation appears to cause more discomfort than breast reduction. Give regular NSAIDs and simple analgesics. Opioid analgesia may be needed, but PCA techniques are seldom required.
- Haematoma formation may require early return to theatre. Later complications include infection, capsule formation, and rupture.

### Special considerations

- An association between silicone breast implants and development of systemic symptoms of connective tissue diseases has been suggested. This association has not been proven following data from large studies.
- Soybean-oil-filled implants have been withdrawn from use in the UK. There are insufficient data concerning the long-term consequences of soybean oil breakdown. Saline implants are not perceived as sufficiently realistic and are unpopular with many women.
- Breast reconstruction following mastectomy is common. Options include insertion of a breast implant, reconstruction with a pedicled myocutaneous flap (e.g. latissimus dorsi or transverse rectus abdominis muscle 'TRAM'), and a free flap repair (usually TRAM).

## Correction of prominent ears

Procedure	Surgical correction of prominent ears, usually caused by the absence of an antehelical fold May be unilateral
Time	1hr
Pain	+
Position	Supine, 30° head up
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	Day-case anaesthesia, flexible LMA, and spontaneous ventilation

### Preoperative

- Patients are usually children (4–10yr) and fit. They may not present for surgery until teenage or early adulthood.
- Surgery is offered as the child grows older and is aware of prominent ears. Often precipitated by teasing at school. Child may be self-conscious and anxious.
- Obtain consent for suppositories.

### Perioperative

- Day-case anaesthetic technique.
- Anaesthetic machine usually at the foot end.
- PONV is common. Propofol maintenance is well tolerated.
- Avoid morphine. Use shorter-acting opioids (fentanyl or alfentanil) and NSAIDs.
- Surgeons use extensive LA/adrenaline infiltration to aid surgery. This provides good analgesia.
- 20ml/kg crystalloid IV may improve the quality of early recovery.

### Postoperative

- NSAIDs (e.g. ibuprofen syrup 20–30mg/kg/day) and paracetamol.
- Dressings should be firm without being excessively tight. Scalp discomfort and itching can be a source of irritation.
- Excessive pain may be due to haematoma formation and requires a return to theatre for drainage.

### Special considerations

Allow time for extensive bandaging at the end of the operation. If intubation is used, early reduction in anaesthetic depth will lead to coughing when the head is manipulated for bandage application. An LMA is ideal.

## Facelift (rhytidectomy)

Procedure	Surgical reduction of facial folds and wrinkles to create a more youthful appearance
Time	3–4hr. More extensive procedures 6–8hr
Pain	+
Position	Supine, 30° head up
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	IPPV via LMA or ETT, hypotensive technique, facial nerve blocks

### Preoperative

- Most patients are aged 45–65yr and fit and well. They may have high expectations of anaesthesia and surgery and may have undergone previous facelift procedures.
- NSAIDs should be discontinued for at least 2wk prior to surgery.

### Perioperative

- Many surgeons in the USA perform routine facelift procedures under LA infiltration alone. Cost constraints in patients who are self-funding have contributed to this practice. Standard practice in the UK is for GA. Facelifts should always be regarded as major procedures.
- Incisions are placed in concealed areas (e.g. preauricular, extending up to the temporal region within the hair). The skin is mobilised by SC undermining and wrinkles/skin folds are improved by traction. Redundant skin is excised. Surgery is adapted to suit the needs of the patient and may include forehead lift, upper and lower blepharoplasty, and removal of submental/submandibular fat. It is occasionally combined with septorhinoplasty.
- Discuss the choice of airway device with the surgeon (e.g. oral tube or nasal north-facing). Consider using a throat pack if there is nasal surgery.
- The anaesthetic machine is usually at the patient's foot end. Long breathing system tubing and drip extension sets are required.
- A moderate hypotensive technique (70–80 systolic) and 30° head-up tilt will help minimise blood loss and improve surgical conditions. Remifentanyl is ideal.
- Use routine antiemetics.
- LA infiltration and specific nerve blocks provide good postoperative pain relief.
- Use a warming blanket.

### Postoperative

- A smooth emergence is important to avoid bleeding beneath delicate suture lines. Propofol maintenance and flexible LMA are ideal. Clonidine (1–2µg/kg) is helpful in creating smooth conditions

for emergence. Avoid postoperative shivering (treat with pethidine 25mg IV). Bleeding and haematoma formation may require an early return to theatre.

- There is a requirement for morphine in the immediate recovery period and to facilitate a smooth emergence, but pain is not a prominent feature of facelift. Discomfort is attributed to platysma tightening. Regular postoperative NSAIDs and simple analgesics are required. Marked pain should raise the suspicion of haematoma formation.

### Special considerations

- The observed benefits from facelift procedures may only last 3–5yr. Repeat operations are common. Some patients may undergo several facelifts during their lifetime.
- Recent advances have involved more extensive procedures with deeper tissue undermining. These are all performed under GA. The composite facelift mobilises platysma, cheek fat, and orbicularis oculi muscle. This flap is then repositioned *en bloc* with the overlying skin. Complications are more frequent.

## Free flap surgery

Procedure	The transfer of tissue from a donor site and microvascular anastomosis to a distant recipient site
Time	Variable depending on procedure. Minimum 4hr, often 6–8hr or longer
Pain	+++
Position	Variable. Usually supine. May require position change during surgery
Blood loss	Often 4–6U
Practical techniques	ETT + IPPV, art + CVP lines, urinary catheter, epidural catheter for lower limb flaps

### Preoperative

- Free flaps are most commonly used to provide tissue cover following trauma or resection for malignancy. This is a widely used reconstructive technique. Understand what operation is proposed and what the aims of surgery are. Typical procedures are:
  - Free transverse rectus abdominis muscle (TRAM) myocutaneous flap to reconstruct a breast following mastectomy.
  - Free gracilis muscle flap to cover an area of lower limb trauma with tissue loss.
  - Free radial forearm fasciocutaneous flap to the oropharynx following tumour excision.
- The aim of anaesthesia is to produce a hyperdynamic circulation with high cardiac output, adequate vasodilation, and wide pulse pressure. Patients with lower limb trauma are often young and fit. Patients with head and neck cancer are often smokers with ischaemic heart disease. The elderly or patients with limited cardiorespiratory reserve may not be suitable for surgery.

### Perioperative

- Be prepared for a long surgical procedure. All patients should receive a balanced GA. Regional anaesthesia alone is seldom appropriate for these long procedures.
- Isoflurane is the inhalational agent of choice due to its beneficial effects on systemic vascular resistance (SVR). Propofol maintenance is also ideal since it lowers SVR, is rapidly metabolised, is antiemetic, and may avoid postoperative shivering (there is also some *in vitro* evidence that propofol may be more favourable for microvascular flow by avoiding the effect of volatiles on red cell membrane stiffness). Remifentanyl is used by many.
- A regional block is helpful to supplement anaesthesia. The sympathetic block and dense analgesia produce excellent conditions for graft survival. Lower limb flaps are especially suitable. Surgery on multiple sites may not all be covered by the block. Skin grafts are often taken from the leg to cover a muscle flap.

- Anaesthetic management requires a good practical knowledge of circulatory physiology. Blood flow through the microvasculature must be optimal to help ensure flap survival. Blood flow is primarily influenced by changes in perfusion pressure, calibre of vessel, and blood viscosity (Hagen–Poiseuille formula). We only have a superficial understanding of the physiology of the microcirculation. Much of our anaesthetic management is based on perceived wisdom, rather than on the results of randomised controlled trials.
- Monitor core (e.g. rectal, oesophageal) and peripheral **temperature**. Insulate the skin probe from any overlying warming blanket. Aim for a normal or even supranormal core temperature and a core–peripheral difference of  $<2^{\circ}\text{C}$ . This must be achieved by the time that microvascular anastomosis is commenced. A widening of the core—peripheral temperature difference may herald vasoconstriction. Local vascular spasm may jeopardise the surgery.
- Correct any preoperative fluid deficit and commence **volume loading**. Continue maintenance crystalloid, and add 10ml/kg colloid bolus (e.g. Gelofusine<sup>®</sup> or Voluven<sup>®</sup>) as required to expand the intravascular volume. Aim for CVP 12mmHg (or 2–4mmHg above baseline), urine output 2ml/kg/hr, widened pulse pressure, and low SVR. Colloid will expand the intravascular volume more effectively than crystalloid. Transplanted tissue lacks intact lymphatics and excess crystalloid may contribute to flap oedema. Take care to avoid excessive volume loading in the elderly, who are more prone to develop pulmonary oedema.
- **Moderate hypotension** and haemodilution during the early phase of dissection may help limit blood loss. Thereafter, maintain systolic arterial pressure (SAP) at  $>100\text{mmHg}$  or higher depending on preoperative blood pressure recordings.
- Viscosity is closely related to haematocrit (Hct). Viscosity rises dramatically when Hct  $>40\%$ . Aim for 30%, which in theory gives the best balance between blood viscosity, arterial oxygen content, and tissue oxygen delivery.
- **Dextran** reduces platelet adhesiveness and factor VIII concentration. It may help maintain graft patency. Depending on surgical preference, give 500ml Dextran 40 during the procedure, and include 500ml in the daily IV fluid for 2–3d.
- Potent vasodilators (e.g. sodium nitroprusside, hydralazine, and phenoxybenzamine) are unnecessary. Sufficient vasodilation can be produced by the anaesthetic agent provided that the patient is warm, volume loaded, pain free, and normocarbic. Nifedipine 10mg given with the premedication and continued three times a day for 5d in high-risk patients such as smokers, diabetics, and arteriopathies may improve flap survival. Chlorpromazine 1–2mg IV (dilute a 50mg ampoule to give a 1mg/ml solution for injection) is useful to narrow a widened core—peripheral temperature difference when all other factors have been corrected. The surgeon may use papaverine directly on the vessels to prevent local spasm.
- Prophylactic antibiotics are given at induction and may be repeated during the procedure.

### Postoperative

- Aim for a smooth emergence.
- Continue meticulous care well into the postoperative period. Flap observation is a specialised nursing skill and care is often best provided on the plastic surgical ward. The need for HDU/ITU may be dictated by patient factors.
- Vasoconstriction from cold, pain, low circulating volume, hypotension, and hypocarbia will put the flap at risk and needs prompt correction.
- Treat shivering with pethidine 25mg IV. Continue with warming blanket in recovery.
- The health of the flap is monitored clinically. Hourly observations include a **'flap chart'** where temperature, colour, and arterial pulses (using a Doppler probe if possible) are monitored. A pale, pulseless flap with sluggish capillary filling may indicate problems with the arterial supply. A swollen, dusky flap, which blanches easily with a brisk capillary return, indicates a venous outflow problem. An early surgical decision needs to be made concerning re-exploration.
- Analgesia by continuous epidural is ideal for lower limb flaps. An axillary brachial plexus catheter (e.g. continuous infusion of 0.25% bupivacaine 5ml/h for 2–3d) is useful for procedures on the forearm and hand.
- Careful consideration should be given as to whether more invasive analgesic techniques are justified for procedures on the upper torso (e.g. thoracic epidural or intrapleural analgesia). Potential risks may outweigh the benefits. These patients often do very well with IV PCA. For head and neck procedures IV PCA is best.
- Attitudes vary concerning perioperative NSAIDs. They are valuable analgesics and reduce platelet adhesiveness. They may produce increased oozing following lengthy and extensive surgery. Administration postoperatively when clot is more established may be preferable.

### Special considerations

- The reimplantation of severed digits or limbs should be managed as for a free flap.
- A 'pedicle flap' is constructed when arteriovenous connections remain intact but the raised flap is rotated to fill a neighbouring defect. Examples include rotation of rectus abdominus muscle to fill a sternal wound, rotation of pectoral muscle to reconstruct a defect in the side of the neck following tumour excision, and pedicled latissimus dorsi breast reconstruction. Whilst the procedure may be technically simpler than free tissue transfer, anaesthesia requires similar attention to detail.
- Overall free flap survival is >95%. Flap failure will result in further reconstructive procedures. Patients in poor general condition with coexisting disease have the highest risk of flap failure.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Liposuction

Procedure	Vacuum aspiration of SC fat via a small skin incision and a specialised blunt-ended cannula
Time	Variable 30–90min
Pain	+
Position	Variable, depending on site. Usually supine
Blood loss	1–40% of the volume of fat aspirated, depending on infiltration technique
Practical techniques	Local infiltration with IV sedation/LMA and spontaneous ventilation

### Preoperative

- Procedure may be used for:
  - Lipoma removal.
  - Gynaecomastia.
  - Reducing the bulk of transplanted flaps to make them more closely contour the surrounding skin.
  - Cosmetic removal of SC fat ('liposculpture') in the abdominal wall, thighs, buttocks, and arms.
- Patients presenting for aesthetic surgery are often fit and well.

### Perioperative

- The total amount of fat aspirated depends on patient requirement and surgical judgement.
- Fat is infiltrated with dilute local anaesthetic with adrenaline. Back and forth movement of the cannula disrupts fatty tissue which is then aspirated by either suction apparatus or syringe.
- Injection of fluid helps fat breakdown and aids aspiration. There are several recipes for SC infiltration solutions: 1000ml warmed Hartmann's solution containing 50ml 1% lidocaine and 1ml 1:1000 adrenaline is popular; 1ml infiltrate per 1ml aspirate is commonly used (superwet technique).
- The tumescent technique refers to a large volume of LA/adrenaline infiltrate to produce tissue turgor. Developed as an outpatient technique and performed without additional anaesthesia or sedation. 3ml infiltrate per 1ml aspirate is often used. There is little evidence that this technique is superior to the superwet technique, and it may produce more complications. It may provide unsatisfactory anaesthesia when used alone. Additional sedation or general anaesthesia may be necessary.
- Blood loss depends on the volume of LA/adrenaline infiltrate used and the extent of liposuction required. Loss is approximately 1% of the volume of the aspirate for the tumescent technique. This may increase to 40% without SC infiltration.
- Extensive liposuction physiologically resembles a burn injury and large fluid shifts result. Replace aspirate 1:1 with IV crystalloid.

### Postoperative

- Pressure dressings are usually applied.
- Encourage oral fluids and monitor urine output.
- Check Hct following extensive liposuction (>2500ml aspirate).
- Bruising can be considerable.
- Use NSAIDs and simple analgesics for pain relief.

### Special considerations

- Dose safety limits for large-volume LA infiltration are controversial. Doses significantly higher than the conventional lidocaine/adrenaline toxic dose (5mg/kg) are often used, e.g. 30–70mg/kg. This may be possible due to the adrenaline producing slower drug absorption, the poor vascularity of fat, and the aspiration of much of the infused solution before the drug has been absorbed.
- Complications are associated with excessive liposuction. In the UK aspiration is restricted to approximately 2 litres of fat. Considerably higher-volume procedures have been reported especially in the USA (in excess of 10 litres). Deaths have occurred from pulmonary oedema and lidocaine toxicity. Morbidity is related to high aspiration volume and high lidocaine dosage.

## Skin grafting

<b>Procedure</b>	Free skin grafts applied to surgically created raw surfaces following debridement, or to granulating wounds
<b>Time</b>	Variable 30min–2hr
<b>Pain</b>	++/+++ (especially the donor site)
<b>Position</b>	Variable. Depends on the area to be grafted. Usually supine
<b>Blood loss</b>	Nil for simple grafts. Extensive debridement and grafting of burns may require 6–8U
<b>Practical techniques</b>	GA/LMA spontaneous respiration (with lateral cutaneous nerve of thigh or femoral 3 in 1 block if thigh donor site). Spinal for lower limb surgery

### Preoperative

- Patients for simple excision and grafting of isolated lesions may be otherwise well.
- Elderly patients for excision/grafting of skin lesions or pretibial lacerations may be in poor general health. A local or regional technique may be preferable to a GA.
- Patients with extensive burns for debridement and grafting require careful assessment—see below.

### Perioperative

- **Full thickness skin graft (FTSG).** Consists of epidermis and dermis. Used in small areas where the thickness, appearance, and texture of skin are important. Usually harvested with a scalpel. FTSG can be harvested using SC LA infiltration with a 27G needle. Addition of hyaluronidase aids spread (e.g. 1500IU to 100ml LA solution). The donor site needs to be closed directly:
  - Postauricular skin for grafts to the face
  - Groin or antecubital fossa to the hand for management of flexion contractures.
- **Split skin graft (SSG).** Consists of epidermis and variable portion of dermis. Much wider usage than FTSG. Usually harvested with a skin graft knife or power-driven dermatome. Donor sites will heal spontaneously within 2wk. Donor sites are chosen according to the amount of skin required, colour and texture match, and local convenience. Meshing is used to expand the extent of the area that the graft is required to cover. Common donor sites are the thigh, flexor aspect of forearm, upper arm, and abdomen. SSG can be harvested using LA cream. It should be applied at least 2hr in advance and covered with an occlusive dressing. Anaesthesia does not extend into the deeper dermis so the technique is unsuitable for FTSG. Lateral cutaneous nerve of thigh (LCNT) or femoral 3 in 1 block provides useful analgesia of a thigh donor site. Excess harvested skin can be stored at 4°C for 2–3wk.

## Postoperative

- The SSG donor site is a painful wound. Supplement with local anaesthesia (LCNT or femoral block) where possible. The type of dressing is important for donor site comfort. 'Kaltostat'® alginate dressing impregnated with LA (e.g. 40ml 0.25% bupivacaine) is commonly used. Dressings are difficult to secure on the thigh and frequently slip when the patient mobilises. A thin adhesive fabric dressing (e.g. sterile 'Mefix'®) is used by some surgeons and may afford better protection and donor site comfort. The dressing is soaked off after 2wk. NSAIDs and simple analgesics are usually required for 3–4d. Itching follows when the acute pain settles and healing is under way.

## Special considerations

### **Burns patients** (see also pp884–9)

- Extensive debridement and grafting of burns is a major procedure. These patients should receive a balanced GA. Current management is to aim to debride burnt tissue and cover with SSG at the earliest opportunity (often within 48hr). This converts the burn to a healthy surgical wound. Potential sources of sepsis are eradicated, fluid shifts are less, and intensive care management tends to be more stable.
- Two anaesthetists may be required. Two surgical teams will considerably speed up the procedure and help minimise complications.
- Blood loss. Ensure 6–8U are crossmatched. Debrided tissue bleeds freely. Losses can be difficult to estimate, particularly in small children. Regularly check Hct and maintain at approximately 30%.
- Temperature control. A large exposed body surface area will lose heat rapidly by radiation and evaporation. Measure core temperature. Use all methods available for heat conservation. Little body surface area may be available for warming blankets. Maintain the operating theatre at 25°C.
- Monitoring. Placement of non-invasive monitoring devices may be difficult. An arterial line facilitates measurement of blood pressure and blood sampling. A central venous line is valuable to provide reliable venous access for this and future procedures, and helps in the management of intravascular volume. Maintain strict asepsis during line insertion. Cannulae may need to be stitched. Try to place through intact skin. A urinary catheter is essential.
- Suxamethonium is contraindicated except in the first 24hr following burn. Massive K<sup>+</sup> release may cause cardiac arrest.
- Postoperative care. Return to the burns unit. Large body surface area burns (e.g. >40%) or those with additional injury (e.g. smoke inhalation) may need continued ventilation on ICU until warm and stable.
- Analgesia is best provided by IV opioids either as PCA or continuous infusion. Suggest early intervention of the acute pain team. Dressing changes may be helped by Entonox or ketamine/midazolam sedation.
- Antibiotics and early nutrition are important to increase survival.

## Other plastic surgical procedures

Operation	Description	Time (min)	Pain (+ to +++++)	Position	Blood loss/ X-match	Notes
Abdominoplasty	Excision of redundant lower abdominal skin	120	++ to +++	Supine	G&S	LMA or ETT, IPPV
Carpal tunnel release	Release of flexor sheath at the wrist to relieve median nerve entrapment	30	+	Supine, arm board	Nil (tourniquet)	LA infiltration, brachial plexus block, or day-case GA
Dupuytren's contracture	Excision of contracted palmar fascia	60–90	+	Supine, arm board	Nil (tourniquet)	Brachial plexus block or day-case GA
External angular dermoid	Excision of congenital dermoid cyst usually from lateral supraorbital ridge	30	ns	Supine, head ring	Nil	LMA and spontaneous ventilation
Flexor/extensor tendon repair	Repair of hand tendons following trauma. Often multiple. May be extensive. May involve nerve/vessel repairs	30–120	+ to ++	Supine, arm board	Nil (tourniquet)	Brachial plexus block ± GA, LMA and spontaneous ventilation, IPPV for extensive repairs
Gynaecomastia	Excision or liposuction of excess male breast tissue	45	+ to ++	Supine	Nil	LMA and spontaneous ventilation

Hypospadias repair	Correction of congenital abnormality of male urethra. Usually infant	90	++	Supine	Nil	LMA and spontaneous ventilation. Caudal or penile block
Insertion of tissue expander	SC insertion of saline-filled silastic bags, often scalp	45	+ to ++	Supine, head ring	Nil	LMA and spontaneous ventilation
Neck, axilla, and groin dissection	Block dissection of regional lymph nodes to excise secondary malignant disease	90–120	++	Supine, head ring	2U	LMA or ETT, IPPV
Preauricular sinus	Excision of congenital sinus tract, often bilateral	45	+	Supine, head ring	Nil	LMA and spontaneous ventilation
Pretibial laceration	Excision of pretibial wound and SSG	45	+ to ++	Supine	Nil	Spinal or GA
Syndactyly	Release of congenital fusion of two or more digits. May be bilateral. May require FTSG	60–180	++	Supine	Nil (tourniquet)	LMA and spontaneous ventilation. ETT + IPPV for extensive repairs

*This page intentionally left blank*

# General surgery

## Matt Rucklidge

Major colorectal surgery 536

Analgesia 540

Temperature control 542

Fluid management 544

Summary of general surgical procedures 545

Oncological considerations\* 546

The sick laparotomy 548

Laparoscopic surgery 554

Laparoscopic cholecystectomy 558

Laparoscopic hemicolectomy/anterior resection 560

Appendicectomy 562

Inguinal hernia repair 563

Haemorrhoidectomy 564

Testicular surgery 565

Breast surgery 566

See also:

Diaphragmatic hernia 836

Gastroschisis/exomphalos 838

Pyloric stenosis 842

Intussusception 843

Herniotomy 844

\* Andrew McLeod  
Tim Wigmore



## Major colorectal surgery

### General considerations

Major surgery generates a neuroendocrine, metabolic, and inflammatory response which may result in adverse physiological changes including: pulmonary dysfunction, increased cardiac demand, pain, nausea, and vomiting. This may result in delayed mobilisation, prolonged hospital stay, and increased morbidity and mortality.

### Fast-track surgery and enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS)

Fast-track surgery and enhanced recovery programmes use a collection of strategies to decrease postoperative surgical complications and improve patient recovery. Pioneered by Danish surgeon Henrik Kehlet in the 1990s, enhanced recovery programmes are now in place throughout the world. The strategies are applicable to many surgical specialties; however, they are mostly associated with colorectal surgery.<sup>1</sup>

Key aspects of ERAS include:

- A multiprofessional approach to the planning and perioperative management of surgery, anaesthesia, and recovery.
- Detailed preoperative patient education, information, and risk assessment.
- Avoidance of preoperative dehydration. Clear fluids up to 2hr before surgery should be routine and carbohydrate drinks before surgery may be beneficial.
- No sedative premedication.
- No bowel preparation—may cause dehydration and difficulty in perioperative fluid management.
- Avoid routine use of NG tubes and surgical drains.
- Prophylactic antibiotics administered within 30min before surgical incision to reduce the risk of surgical site infection.
- Minimally invasive surgical approaches (small incisions or laparoscopic techniques) may reduce pain and length of hospital stay.
- Avoidance of perioperative hypothermia (see p542).
- Appropriate fluid management using a goal-directed approach, e.g. oesophageal Doppler management.
- Close attention to the prevention of nausea and vomiting.
- Multimodal analgesia including simple analgesics (paracetamol, NSAIDs) and local anaesthetic techniques (thoracic epidural, rectus sheath block, transversus abdominis plane (TAP) block), or intrathecal opioids, which reduce parenteral opioid use and opioid complications. Close involvement of the Acute Pain Team postoperatively.
- Early removal of urinary catheter.
- Early enteral feeding—may reduce muscle loss, length of stay, and possibly infection.
- Early mobilisation and input from physiotherapy.

## Preoperative preparation

- History, examination, ECG if indicated, FBC, U&Es. Other blood tests as indicated.
- Assessment of exercise function (e.g. CPET)—see p1053.
- Optimise nutrition and cardiac and respiratory function.
- Discuss analgesia strategies.
- Discuss invasive monitoring if planned.
- Consider premedication with H<sub>2</sub> antagonist or proton pump inhibitor if risk of regurgitation and discuss rapid sequence induction.
- Consider whether postoperative HDU/ICU care is indicated (e.g. poor preoperative respiratory and/or cardiac function, anticipated prolonged and complex procedure) and ensure bed is booked before surgery.
- Ensure clear fluids (including clear carbohydrate drinks) are taken up to 2hr prior to surgery to reduce dehydration.

## Perioperative

- Large-bore IV access with long extension if access to arms restricted.
- Site low thoracic epidural if planned and administer test dose (see pp540–1).
- Rapid sequence induction if evidence of abdominal obstruction or risk of regurgitation.
- Prophylactic antibiotics before skin incision (see p1254).
- Avoid prolonged exposure during preparation for surgery and establish active patient warming (fluid warmer, hot air blanket, warming mattress/blanket) as soon as possible. Monitor central temperature and aim for normothermia (see p542).
- Urinary catheter with urimeter.
- Appropriate (goal-directed) fluid management (see p544).
- Postoperative nausea and vomiting are common after gastrointestinal surgery. Reduce risk through adequate hydration, multimodal analgesia to avoid or limit opioids, avoidance of nitrous oxide, and administration of different classes of antiemetic.
- Procedures may be prolonged; pay special attention to pressure areas. Be prepared for lithotomy or Lloyd-Davies position with steep head-down tilt. Prolonged surgery in this position may require higher FiO<sub>2</sub> and PEEP to maintain oxygenation due to reduction in FRC.
- If no epidural, consider insertion of a wound catheter or rectus sheath catheters to provide postoperative local anaesthetic.
- Administration of 80% oxygen during surgery and for 2hr afterwards has been suggested to reduce the risk of surgical site infection;<sup>2</sup> however, this effect has not been consistently found.<sup>3</sup> Nitrous oxide-free anaesthesia with 80% oxygen has been shown to result in fewer wound infections compared with a mix of 30% oxygen and 70% nitrous oxide, but it is unclear whether this effect was due to nitrous oxide or the higher oxygen concentration.<sup>4</sup>

### Postoperative

- Maintain normothermia, using active warming in recovery if required.
- Prescribe overnight oxygen and continue as required to maintain  $\text{SpO}_2 > 95\%$ . Supplemental oxygen should be prescribed if using an opioid-based analgesic technique (e.g. PCA, opioid infusion).
- Treat nausea and vomiting aggressively.
- Close monitoring of fluid balance. Consider on-going losses from abdominal drains, ileostomy, and NG aspirate. Following major surgery, measure urine output hourly for at least 48hr.
- Arrange a chest radiograph if CVP line sited.
- If epidural sited, continue for 48hr.
- Prescribe regular paracetamol (IV or oral) or NSAIDs if not contraindicated. Other agents, including clonidine, gabapentin, and ketamine, may further reduce postoperative opioid use and opioid side effects.
- Referral to Acute Pain Team for postoperative review.
- Worsening postoperative pain may indicate a complication of surgery.
- Consider daily FBC/U&Es until return of normal bowel function.

### Intraoperative monitoring

- Balance the health of the patient with the complexity and duration of the surgical procedure and consider the additional information invasive monitoring will provide against risks involved in placement and interpretation.
- Oesophageal Doppler provides a minimally invasive means of real-time continuous cardiac output monitoring as well as indicating preload, afterload, and myocardial contractility. Studies have demonstrated reduced morbidity and length of hospital stay if fluid therapy for colorectal surgery is guided by a protocol-based algorithm using data provided from oesophageal Doppler monitoring <sup>5</sup>(See p1046.)

#### Suggested indications for additional monitoring

Oesophageal Doppler	Abdominal surgery with potential fluid shifts, CVS compromise, likely requirement for perioperative inotropes
Arterial line	CVS, respiratory compromise, major blood loss, need for blood gas sampling
Central venous pressure	Need for vasopressors. Large fluid shifts, major blood loss, CVS or renal compromise. Requirement for postoperative total parenteral nutrition

- 1 Kehelet H(2009). Fast-track colorectal surgery. *Lancet*, **371**, 791–793.
- 2 Greif R et al.(2000). Supplemental perioperative oxygen to reduce the incidence of surgical-wound infection. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **342**, 161–167.
- 3 Meyhoff CS et al.(2009). Effect of high perioperative oxygen fraction on surgical site infection and pulmonary complications after abdominal surgery. The PROXI randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*, **302**, 1543–1550.
- 4 Myles PS et al.(2007). Avoidance of nitrous oxide for patients undergoing major surgery: a randomized controlled trial. *Anesthesiology*, **107**, 221–231.
- 5 Wakeling HG et al.(2005). Intraoperative oesophageal Doppler guided fluid management shortens postoperative hospital stay after major bowel surgery. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **95**, 634–642.

## Analgesia

Abdominal incisions are painful. High quality multimodal analgesia is essential to limit opioid-related side effects (nausea, vomiting, sedation, ileus, urinary retention) and encourage early mobilisation. This can include:

- Local infiltration of small wounds.
- Intraperitoneal infiltration in laparoscopic surgery.
- Transversus abdominis plane (TAP) block—see p1155.
- Rectus sheath infiltration—see p1156.
- Insertion of wound catheter.
- Spinal ( $\pm$  intrathecal opioid) injection.
- Epidural analgesia.
- Simple IM/SC opioids for less invasive procedures, e.g. appendicectomy, reversal of colostomy.
- Parenteral opioids by PCA, e.g. lower abdominal procedures, open cholecystectomy following failed laparoscopy, and for any laparotomy when an epidural is contraindicated or refused. Continuous infusion techniques may be preferable in the elderly population who may become confused postoperatively and unable to use a PCA effectively. Ensure additional oxygen therapy and hourly sedation/pain scoring.
- Epidural analgesia provides effective analgesia, although there is a 30% failure rate over 3d of infusion.

Regular paracetamol should be administered to reduce opioid or epidural requirements. Prescribe NSAIDs with caution in the elderly; this group may be susceptible to side effects.

### Epidural analgesia

#### *Advantages include*

- Improved pain relief. Thoracic epidurals provide superior analgesia to systemic opioids for laparotomy.
- Improved postoperative respiratory function, resulting in reduced incidence of respiratory failure.
- Improved postoperative gastrointestinal motility.
- Improved myocardial function. By providing superior analgesia, stress-induced increases in heart rate, coronary vasoconstriction, and myocardial workload are reduced.
- Potentially improved postoperative patient mobilisation.
- Reduction in thromboembolism.
- Reduced sedation and postoperative nausea and vomiting.

#### *Disadvantages include*

- Risks related to insertion including postdural puncture headache, epidural haematoma, and abscess. See p740.
- Risk related to misplaced catheter, e.g. intrathecal, intravascular.
- Perioperative hypotension which may lead to excessive administration of postoperative fluids.
- Epidural failure.
- Postoperative motor blockade delaying patient mobilisation.
- Itch associated with epidural opioids. Urinary retention.

### Epidural analgesia and outcome after abdominal surgery

Whilst improved analgesia is well established, the influence of epidural analgesia on mortality/morbidity following major abdominal surgery is less clear. A meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials found neuraxial block was associated with significantly decreased perioperative morbidity and mortality.<sup>1</sup> However, a large randomised controlled trial, the MASTER Anaesthesia Trial, demonstrated no significant improvement in major morbidity or mortality between control and epidural groups in the trial<sup>2</sup> or in selected subgroups at increased risk of respiratory and cardiac complications.<sup>3</sup>

### Practical considerations for epidural analgesia

- The catheter should be sited at an appropriate level. A useful guide is to place the catheter at a level corresponding to the dermatome innervating the middle of the planned abdominal incision. In general, site at T10–T11 for lower abdominal procedures and T8–T9 for upper abdominal procedures.
- Placement whilst awake or anaesthetised is controversial. Inserting the epidural awake is probably safer in adults (especially if thoracic) since it enables patient feedback during insertion and test dosing.
- Epidural test dose, e.g. 3ml 0.5% bupivacaine.
- Give an intraoperative epidural loading dose of 8–10ml 0.25–0.5% bupivacaine /Levobupivacaine with 50–100µg fentanyl (divide into 3–4ml boluses) and assess response.
- Bupivacaine/Levobupivacaine takes 15–20min to achieve its maximum effect and top-ups should be performed cautiously. An extensive sympathetic block may develop with relatively low volumes of local anaesthetic in thoracic epidurals.
- If extensive bleeding is expected, or in cardiovascularly unstable patients, it is often wise to avoid epidural local anaesthetic until bleeding is controlled and the patient has stabilised.
- Epidural block for AP resection (which requires analgesia and anaesthesia across thoracic, lumbar, and sacral dermatomes) can be difficult. Effectiveness of the epidural may be improved by the addition of epidural opioid and larger volumes of weak anaesthetic solution, e.g. 0.125% bupivacaine. The epidural is usually effective for postoperative (mainly incisional) pain.
- An appropriate regime for postoperative analgesia consists of a mix of LA and opioid, e.g. bupivacaine 0.125% + fentanyl 4µg/ml (2–10ml/hr) or bupivacaine 0.167% + diamorphine 0.1mg/ml (2–10ml/hr).

1 Rodgers A et al. (2000). Reduction of post-operative mortality and morbidity with epidural or spinal anaesthesia: results of overview from randomized trials. *British Medical Journal*, **321**, 1493–1497.

2 Rigg JRA et al. (2002). Epidural anesthesia and analgesia and outcome of major surgery: a randomized trial. *Lancet*, **359**, 1276–1282.

3 Peyton P et al. (2003). Perioperative epidural analgesia and outcome after major abdominal surgery in high risk patients. *Regional Anesthesia*, **96**, 548–554.

## Temperature control

Patients under anaesthesia may become hypothermic due to loss of the behavioural response to cold, impairment of thermoregulatory heat-preserving mechanisms, anaesthetic-induced peripheral vasodilatation, exposure during surgery, and the use of unwarmed intravenous or irrigation fluids. In addition, fluid depletion prior to anaesthesia may result in poor peripheral perfusion and impaired heat distribution.

Patients undergoing laparotomy are at high risk of inadvertent hypothermia due to prolonged procedures, an open abdomen, and limited access for external body warming. Even mild hypothermia is associated with a number of adverse outcomes:

- Myocardial ischaemia or arrhythmias.
- Increased perioperative blood loss.
- Increased surgical wound infection.
- Prolonged duration of action of neuromuscular antagonists.
- Increased duration of recovery and possible increased hospital stay.

Inadvertent perioperative hypothermia has been identified by the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) as a common, but preventable, complication of surgery and anaesthesia which may be associated with poor patient outcome.<sup>1</sup>

NICE recommends the following:

- Maintaining patient thermal comfort preoperatively by encouraging the wearing of warm clothing.
- Assessment of risk of perioperative hypothermia.
- Maintaining ambient temperature in wards and theatre suites.
- Recording core temperature immediately prior to leaving the ward, every 30min intraoperatively and every 15min in recovery until a temperature of 36°C is recorded.
- Only commencing induction of anaesthesia if the patient's core temperature is above 36°C.
- Active warming of all patients having anaesthesia for longer than 30min and warming of intravenous fluids if more than 500ml used.

Hypothermia develops in a characteristic three-phase pattern.

- Phase 1: rapid reduction in core temperature of 1–1.5°C within first 30–45min as the tonic vasoconstriction that normally maintains core to periphery temperature gradient is inhibited.
- Phase 2: more gradual reduction in core temperature of a further 1°C over the next 2–3hr due to heat loss by radiation, convection, and evaporation exceeding heat gain determined by metabolic rate. Evaporative heat loss is exacerbated during major abdominal surgery.
- Phase 3: a plateau phase where heat loss is matched by metabolic heat production. Occurs when anaesthetised patients become sufficiently hypothermic that vasoconstriction is triggered. If a thoracic epidural is used, compensatory vasoconstriction is lost.

### Cutaneous warming

- **Passive insulation.** A single layer of insulation (e.g. space blanket) traps a layer of air and may reduce cutaneous heat loss by 30%. Insulation to exposed areas, e.g. wrapping the head, may further reduce heat loss.
- **Active warming.** Forced air warming devices are more effective than passive insulation. They reduce heat loss through radiation and may increase heat gain if forced air is warmer than the skin. Active warming by a circulating water mattress, or electric mattress, pad, or blankets can also be used, though evidence for their superiority over forced air warming devices is limited.

### Internal warming

- **Airway humidification.** A heat and moisture exchange filter (HME) humidifies and warms inhaled gases; however, <10% of heat loss occurs via the respiratory tract.
- **Fluid warming.** Prevents conductive heat loss associated with the administration of cold fluids. Intravenous fluids should be warmed to 37°C by an active warming device and irrigation fluids should be prewarmed in a thermostatically controlled cabinet.
- **Invasive internal warming techniques.** Cardiopulmonary bypass and peritoneal dialysis are very effective at transferring significant heat but are not relevant for management of mild perioperative hypothermia. The use of irrigation fluids in the bladder or abdomen which have not been warmed to body temperature may induce significant heat loss.

1 National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) (2008). *Clinical Guideline 65 Perioperative Hypothermia (Inadvertent)*. <http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/cg65quickrefguide.pdf>.



## Fluid management

Patients undergoing laparotomy are at risk of significant fluid loss. Appropriate fluid administration throughout the perioperative period helps maintain cardiac output and oxygen delivery. There is evidence that outcome following major surgery can be improved by optimising fluid therapy. Intraoperative treatment with IV fluids to achieve an optimal value of stroke volume (see p1046) should be used where possible as this may reduce postoperative complication rates and duration of hospital stay.

### Causes of fluid loss

- **Preoperative:** reduced fluid intake due to underlying disease process and preoperative fasting. Increased fluid losses due to vomiting, bowel preparation, and sequestration into an obstructed bowel.
- **Intra-operative:** large evaporative losses from an open abdomen, sequestration of fluid into the omentum and bowel lumen (third space loss), blood loss, and nasogastric loss.
- **Postoperative:** ongoing sequestration of fluid into the omentum and bowel (paralytic ileus), ongoing blood and nasogastric loss.

Losses must be replaced with an individualised fluid regime that reflects both fluid and electrolyte requirements. Those with large preoperative fluid deficits should have IV fluids instigated well before surgery. During surgery with an open abdomen, crystalloid maintenance rates are between 10 and 30ml/kg/hr. A balanced crystalloid solution (e.g. Hartmann's solution) is usually appropriate. Significant fluid shifts may affect serum electrolyte concentrations and these should be monitored throughout the perioperative period.

### Postoperative paralytic ileus

- Bowel function begins to return 24–36hr postoperatively, but may not return to normal until 72hr or longer. Prolonged ileus leads to collection of fluid and gas in the bowel resulting in distension, pain, nausea, vomiting, and delayed mobilisation/discharge. The aetiology of the ileus is multifactorial and includes manipulation of the bowel at surgery, hormonal stress response, increased sympathetic activity, postoperative pain, immobility, opioids, hypokalaemia, and other electrolyte imbalances.

## Summary of general surgical procedures

Operation	Description	Time (hr)	Pain (+ to +++++)	Position	Blood loss (l)	Notes
Hemicolectomy	Resection of right or left hemicolon	1–3	++++	Supine	0.5	Low thoracic epidural or opioid infusion/PCA
Sigmoid colectomy	Resection of sigmoid colon with bowel anastomosis	1–3	++++	Supine. Head down. May need Lloyd-Davies	0.5–1.0	Low thoracic epidural or opioid infusion/PCA
Hartmann's procedure	Resection of sigmoid colon with colostomy	1–3	++++	Supine. Head down. May need Lloyd-Davies	0.5–1.0	Low thoracic epidural or opioid infusion/PCA
Anterior resection	Resection of rectum	2–3	++++	Head down. Lloyd-Davies	0.5–1.5	Low thoracic epidural
AP resection	Resection of rectum and anus	2–4	+++++	Head down. Lloyd-Davies	0.5–2.0	Low thoracic epidural. Can be difficult to block sacral nerve roots. CVP line
Gastrectomy	Resection of stomach	2–3	+++++	Supine	0.5–1.0	Thoracic epidural, consider CVP/art line
Cholecystectomy (open)	Resection of gall bladder	1	+++ / ++++	Supine	0.5	Right upper quadrant incision. PCA
Closure of loop colostomy or loop ileostomy	Local closure of colostomy or loop ileostomy	0.5–1	++	Supine	Nil	Still requires muscle relaxation. May need PCA
Reversal of Hartmann's	Laparotomy. Bowel ends re-anastomosed	1–2	++++	Supine. Head down. May need Lloyd-Davies	0.5–1.5	Low thoracic epidural

## Oncological considerations

### General considerations

- **Cardiac injury** may be induced by drugs (anthracyclines, fluorouracil, trastuzumab) or the stress of chemotherapy on a compromised heart. Anthracycline induced cardiac failure may be irreversible and has mortality above 30%.
- **Pulmonary toxicity** occurs in 10% of patients exposed to bleomycin, consisting of acute followed by chronic fibrosing alveolitis. Inspired oxygen fraction should be limited as oxygen free radicals may be mediators.
- **Hepatic veno-occlusive disease (HVD)** is a progressive obliteration of venous channels in the liver.
- **Tumour lysis syndrome** can follow initial chemotherapy (typically for lymphoma and high count leukaemias). Mass cell death leads to acute renal impairment, with hyperkalaemia, hyperuricaemia, hyperphosphataemia and hypocalcaemia.
- **Mediastinal masses** (particularly in leukaemia or lymphoma patients), can cause complete airway collapse under anaesthesia, even in the asymptomatic. Warning signs include stridor, wheeze, orthopnoea and SVC obstruction.
- **Superior vena cava obstruction** can arise from compression by tumour or lymph nodes (usually bronchogenic carcinoma) or direct vessel invasion. Pleural effusions and ascites are common in ovarian cancer, metastatic disease and mesothelioma.
- **Paraneoplastic syndromes** occur in 10% of cancer patients (esp. lung, lymphoma, breast, prostate, ovarian, and pancreatic tumours). Anaesthetic considerations:
  - Lambert Eaton myasthenic syndrome is common in small cell lung cancer (SCLC) and breast, thymus and GI tract tumours. See p256.
  - Cushing's syndrome occurs in tumours of lung, pancreas, thymus and ovary. See p174.
  - Hypercalcaemia is caused by bony metastases or parathyroid like compounds. See p168.
  - Hyponatraemia and SIADH like syndromes may be caused by SCLCs and also lymphoma, leukaemia and pancreatic / carcinoid tumours. See p174 and p186.
  - Cachexia can be caused by vomiting, loss of appetite or other GI disturbances. Hypoalbuminaemia (<35g/l) is a risk factor for poor outcomes.
- **Radiotherapy** may cause fever, nausea/vomiting and patients may be dehydrated. Previous radiotherapy causes ongoing localised fibrosis, which may impede laryngoscopy and airway management.
- **Chemotherapy** commonly causes immunosuppression and myelosuppression.
- **Venous Thromboembolism (VTE)** affects at least 15% of cancer patients.
- **Do Not Attempt Resuscitation (DNAR)** orders may be present in cancer patients. Where these conflict with safe anaesthetic principles it is reasonable to modify or suspend the order perioperatively.

### Anaesthesia for oncology procedures

- Dexamethasone as an antiemetic should be avoided as it may have a cytotoxic effect and risks precipitation of tumour lysis.
- Inspired oxygen concentration should be considered during patients who have been treated with bleomycin.
- Brachytherapy places a radioactive source close to the tumour via an applicator. It is often used in patients unfit for surgery, and may involve single or multiple treatments. Procedures usually last 1.5–3 hours but may be longer. Blood loss is usually minimal, but postoperative pain may be an issue. Postoperative radioactivity can require patients to be recovered in an isolated environment. Anaesthetic options are:
  - Light general anaesthesia.
  - Sedation (although this may not produce reliable immobility).
  - Epidural or spinal anaesthesia (some procedures may outlast spinal block requiring insertion of catheters)

### Further reading

Hack HA, Wright NB, Wynn RF (2008). The anaesthetic management of children with anterior mediastinal masses. *Anaesthesia*, **63**, 837–46.

Glaisyer HR, Sury MR (2005). Recovery after anaesthesia for short pediatric oncology procedures: propofol and remifentanyl compared with propofol, nitrous oxide, and sevoflurane. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **100**, 959–63.

Farquhar-Smith P, Wigmore T, eds (2011). *Anaesthesia, Intensive Care and Pain Management for the Cancer Patient*. Oxford University press, Oxford (in press).

## The sick laparotomy

(See also septic shock pp896–9, ICU patient pp890–1.)

Patients for emergency abdominal surgery are at high risk of perioperative complications and mortality may be as high as 30%. Poor outcome is associated with inability to mount a physiological response to the systemic inflammatory response, poor cardiac function, and reduced  $\text{DO}_2$ . The time available for preparation is often limited and it is important to balance the benefits of preoperative resuscitation with those of timely surgery. Whatever the underlying pathology, disordered cellular metabolism results in generalised organ system dysfunction including:

- Cardiovascular—widespread vasodilatation, loss of reactivity to catecholamines, depressed myocardial function, arrhythmias.
- Pulmonary—acute lung injury or ARDS, fluid extravasation into pulmonary interstitium, alveolar collapse, hypoxaemia, shunting, reduced compliance and FRC, and increased work of breathing.
- Haematological—DIC with low platelets, hypofibrinogenaemia, prolonged clotting times.
- Renal—hypoperfusion due to relative hypovolaemia and systemic vasodilatation may result in renal failure and altered drug clearance.
- Metabolic—impaired glucose tolerance, altered drug metabolism.
- Hepatic—impaired hepatic oxygen delivery at a time of increased hepatic oxygen consumption resulting in liver dysfunction.

### Preoperative assessment

- Discuss the probable diagnosis with the surgical team. Different abdominal problems have different implications for anaesthetic management:

Surgical problem	Anaesthetic implications and management
Upper intestinal perforation	Often haemodynamically stable. Early surgery may improve outcome
Lower intestinal perforation	With faecal soiling mortality is high. Postoperative ICU/HDU should be routine as deterioration is common
Bowel obstruction	May be hypovolaemic due to third space losses. Often time for preoperative resuscitation. Beware risk of perforation
Ischaemic bowel	May be painless and sometimes difficult to diagnose. May have metabolic acidosis and demands urgent laparotomy. Arrange postoperative ICU/HDU
Haematemesis/melaena	May be difficult to assess blood loss. Hypovolaemic shock common. Consider immediate transfer to theatre for laparotomy or endoscopy to locate bleeding point. Ensure adequate blood and blood products

- Investigations: FBC, electrolytes (including magnesium), LFTs, amylase, clotting, ECG, chest radiograph, and blood group and save.
- ABGs and lactate are useful to assess the degree of metabolic derangement and may indicate the severity of illness, impact of resuscitation, and the appropriate environment for perioperative care. An unresponsive metabolic acidosis is a poor predictor of outcome.

### Haemodynamic optimisation

Preoptimisation has been shown to improve survival in high-risk elective surgery and the same principles apply to the compromised emergency patient. The ultimate goals are to restore effective tissue perfusion and oxygen delivery. There is evidence that early attempts to restore tissue perfusion and oxygen delivery may reduce mortality in patients with sepsis and septic shock.<sup>1</sup>

- Finding the correct balance between preoperative resuscitation and surgical urgency is critical, though often difficult. Preoperative admission to ICU/HDU, invasive arterial and central venous pressure monitoring, aggressive rehydration, and occasionally inotropic support may be appropriate.

### Preoperative preparation

- Consensus guidelines on intravenous fluid therapy for adult surgical patients include the following recommendations for the high-risk surgical patient.<sup>2</sup> In general, balanced salt solutions (e.g. Hartmann's solution) should be used in place of 0.9% sodium chloride to reduce the risk of inducing hyperchloraemic acidosis.
- Ideally, perioperative hypovolaemia should be diagnosed by flow-based measurements. When direct flow measurements are not possible, hypovolaemia can be diagnosed clinically on the basis of pulse, peripheral perfusion and capillary refill, venous (JVP/CVP) pressure, and Glasgow Coma Scale, together with acid–base and lactate measurements.
- Excessive losses from gastric aspiration/vomiting should be treated preoperatively with an appropriate crystalloid solution which includes an appropriate potassium supplement. Hypochloraemia is an indicator for the use of 0.9% sodium chloride; otherwise a balanced crystalloid solution (e.g. Hartmann's solution) should be used.
- In high-risk surgical patients, preoperative IV fluids and inotropes to achieve predetermined goals for cardiac output and oxygen delivery may improve survival.
- Hypovolaemia due to blood loss should be treated with either a balanced crystalloid (e.g. Hartmann's solution) or colloid, until blood is available.
- Oxygen should be administered preoperatively to all sick patients.
- A nasogastric tube should be inserted in patients presenting with intestinal obstruction.

- Electrolytes will often be deranged and should be corrected as far as possible prior to surgery.
- Monitor blood sugar; control will likely deteriorate in diabetic patients and non-diabetics may develop impaired glucose tolerance.
- Metabolic acidosis should improve with aggressive fluid and cardiovascular manipulation. If the pH does not respond and remains low ( $<7.2$ ) the patient is at high risk. Tissue hypoxia is the likely cause of acidosis if blood lactate is high. If acidotic with normal lactate, exclude renal failure and underlying metabolic disorders, e.g. diabetic ketoacidosis. If surgery is indicated and the pH is unresponsive, 1mmol/kg (1ml/kg) of 8.4% sodium bicarbonate IV should be considered.
- Thrombocytopenia and coagulopathy should be anticipated and treated appropriately, especially in the septic patient and following transfusion of large volumes of stored blood. Liaise with haematologists to optimally manage transfusion of blood products. Increased INR may require administration of vitamin K (5–10mg slow IV).
- Haemoglobin should be maintained above 8g/dl.
- Use IV morphine for pain control prior to surgery and avoid NSAIDs due to risk of renal damage, decreased platelet function, and gastroduodenal ulceration.
- Check that appropriate antibiotics have been given if indicated.

### Monitoring

- Invasive arterial BP monitoring should be established preinduction. A central line may be required for perioperative vasopressors. Central access also allows monitoring of central venous oxygen saturation (ScvO<sub>2</sub>) which may help identify an imbalance between oxygen delivery and consumption. A low perioperative ScvO<sub>2</sub> has been shown to be related to increased risk of postoperative complications in high-risk surgery. Aim for ScvO<sub>2</sub>  $\geq 70\%$ .<sup>3</sup>
- Oesophageal Doppler monitoring allows real-time estimation of stroke volume and cardiac output and can help guide fluid therapy, vasopressor, and inotrope use. See p1046.
- A number of new devices which derive stroke volume and cardiac output from the arterial waveform characteristics without the need for calibration or thermodilution are now in clinical use (e.g. LIDCO*rapid*, Vigilio/Flotrac). While data on accuracy and reliability are limited, these less invasive and simple to use devices may help assess fluid responsiveness and guide fluid and vasopressor management in patients having major surgery.

### Perioperative care

- Consider anaesthetising all sick patients on the operating table in theatre, and in some cases insist the theatre team are scrubbed and prepared for surgery.
- Aspirate nasogastric tube prior to induction.
- Have a large-bore IV infusion running connected to pressurised fluids.

- Anticipate hypotension following induction. Have vasopressors (ephedrine and metaraminol/phenylephrine) and vagolytics (atropine, glycopyrronium) drawn up and to hand.
- Preoxygenate and perform rapid sequence induction.
- Choice of induction agent and dose depends on cardiovascular stability. Thiopental is commonly used for rapid sequence induction. Etomidate causes less hypotension on induction; however, it may temporarily interfere with steroid synthesis so its use in critically ill patients (already at risk of adrenocortical insufficiency) is controversial.<sup>4</sup> If etomidate is used, administer steroid cover with 50–100mg hydrocortisone. Ketamine (1–2mg/kg IV) may be useful in the severely compromised patient, but avoid in those with pre-existing cardiovascular disease.<sup>5</sup>
- Relaxants. Suxamethonium for rapid sequence, then use drugs metabolised independently of liver and renal function, e.g. atracurium.
- Analgesia. Centroneuraxial blockade should be used cautiously in this group of patients due to risks of infective complications, excessive hypotension, and potential coagulopathy. If an epidural is used, local anaesthetic agents should be restricted until cardiovascular stability is achieved. In some patients this may be postoperatively on the ICU.
- Fentanyl/morphine for intraoperative analgesia. Give with induction and supplement as needed. Caution with remifentanyl; may cause significant hypotension if hypovolaemic.
- Active warming should be strenuously undertaken with the aim of maintaining normothermia (see p544).
- Patients who require repeated bolus doses of vasopressors, despite an adequately restored circulating volume, should be commenced on an infusion of vasopressor/inotrope early. In the emergency situation an infusion of adrenaline (make up 1:10 000 and start at 5ml/hr) can be commenced and continued until the most appropriate agent is determined. Noradrenaline is the first choice for the vasodilated septic patient. Dopamine may be useful in patients with compromised systolic function but causes more tachycardia and may be more arrhythmogenic. Dobutamine may be useful in patients with measured or suspected low cardiac output in the presence of adequate fluid resuscitation but may worsen hypotension if fluid resuscitation is inadequate. The influence of dopexamine on the mortality of patients undergoing major abdominal surgery has been widely examined, but results are conflicting.<sup>6</sup> Dopexamine stimulates dopamine receptors and is a potent beta 2 agonist. It inhibits noradrenaline reuptake but has no direct alpha activity. These actions result in positive inotropism, afterload reduction, and renal and splanchnic dilatation. A low-dose dopexamine infusion has been recommended to supplement goal-directed fluid therapy in emergency major surgery,<sup>7</sup> but a large randomised clinical trial is required to resolve the controversies regarding its effect on survival in such patients.



### Postoperative

- Wherever possible, patients who have undergone major surgery should be nursed in HDU/ICU for a period of stabilisation. Patients who are cold, cardiovascularly unstable, acidotic, or hypoxic should be kept intubated and ventilated until stable. If inotropes/ vasopressors have been needed in theatre they should be continued postoperatively and measures of cardiac output and oxygen delivery continued. If an ICU/HDU bed is unavailable, patients should be kept in recovery for ongoing observation and support.
- Urine output should be measured hourly throughout the perioperative period, maintaining an output  $>0.5\text{ml/kg/hr}$ . In patients with persistently low urine output, assess whether ATN is developing and reconsider fluid balance.
- Postoperative CXR to check CVP line position.
- Administer oxygen for a minimum of 72hr postoperatively.
- Regular chest physiotherapy.

- 1 Rivers E et al. (2001). Early goal-directed therapy in the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **345**, 1368–1377.
- 2 Hollenberg S et al. (2004). Practice parameters for haemodynamic support of sepsis in adult patients: 2004 update. *Critical Care Medicine*, **32**, 1928–1944.
- 3 Collaborative Study Group on Perioperative ScvO<sub>2</sub> Monitoring (2006). Multicentre study on peri and postoperative central venous oxygen saturation in high-risk surgical patients. *Critical Care*, **10**, R158, <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/pmc1794462/>.
- 4 Powell-Tuck J et al. (2008). *British Consensus Guidelines on Intravenous Fluid Therapy for Adult Surgical Patients*. [www.ics.ac.uk/downloads/2008112340\\_giftasup%20final\\_31-10-08.pdf](http://www.ics.ac.uk/downloads/2008112340_giftasup%20final_31-10-08.pdf).
- 5 Gopal S et al. (2009). Meta-analysis on the effect of dopexamine on in-hospital mortality. *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 589–594.
- 6 Pearse RM et al. (2008). Effect of dopexamine infusion on mortality following major surgery: individual patient data meta-regression analysis of published clinical trials. *Critical Care Medicine*, **36**, 1323–1329.
- 7 Morris C, McAllister C. (2005). Etomidate for emergency anaesthesia; mad, bad and dangerous to know? *Anaesthesia*, **60**, 737–740.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Laparoscopic surgery

Laparoscopic surgery is well established for a range of procedures including cholecystectomy, hernia repair, and appendicectomy. It is increasingly being adopted for more complex surgery including colonic resection and nephrectomy. Benefits of laparoscopy over laparotomy include:

- Reduced tissue trauma, wound size, and postoperative pain.
- Improved postoperative respiratory function, reduced postoperative ileus.
- Earlier mobilisation, shorter hospital stays.
- Improved cosmetic results.

### Surgical requirements

- Insufflation of gas (usually carbon dioxide) into the peritoneal cavity creates a capnoperitoneum and separates the abdominal wall from the viscera.
- Carbon dioxide, being non-combustible, allows the use of diathermy or laser.
- Carbon dioxide is insufflated at a rate of 4–6l/min to a pressure of 10–15mmHg.
- The capnoperitoneum is maintained by a constant gas flow of 200–400ml/min.

### Physiological effects of capnoperitoneum

#### Respiratory

Airway pressure	↑
FRC	↓
Pulmonary compliance	↓
V/Q mismatch	↑

#### Cardiovascular

Venous return	↓
Systemic vascular resistance	↑
Cardiac output	↔↓
Risk of arrhythmias	↑

#### Gastrointestinal

Risk of regurgitation	↑
-----------------------	---

#### Neurological

ICP	↔↑
CPP	↔↑

### Patient positioning

- Upper abdominal procedures—place head up (reverse Trendelenburg). Lower abdominal procedures—place head down (Trendelenburg). Some left tilt is usual with cholecystectomy.
- Patients placed head down are at greater risk of reduction in FRC, V/Q mismatch, and atelectasis. Cephalad movement of the lungs and carina in relation to a fixed endotracheal tube increases the risk of endobronchial intubation.
- Patients placed head up are at increased risk of reduced blood pressure and cardiac output due to decreased venous return. Those most at risk include the hypovolaemic patient, the elderly, and patients with pre-existing cardiovascular disease.

### Effects of gas insufflation

- Carbon dioxide is the most frequently used gas—being colourless, non-flammable, non-toxic, and highly soluble.
- Stretching of the peritoneum may cause vagal stimulation resulting in sinus bradycardia, nodal rhythm, and occasional asystole. Anticipate and treat with vagolytics, e.g. atropine, glycopyrronium.
- Gas insufflation may result in sympathetic response leading to hypertension and tachycardia.
- CO<sub>2</sub> is readily absorbed from the peritoneum and may cause hypercarbia and acidosis.
- Extraperitoneal gas insufflation may occur through a misplaced trocar or insufflation needle, via an anatomical defect (e.g. between pleura and peritoneum), or when gas under pressure within the abdomen dissects through tissue planes. This may result in subcutaneous emphysema, capnomediastinum, capnopericardium, or capnothorax.
- Passage of CO<sub>2</sub> from the abdomen can be anticipated in laparoscopic procedures around the diaphragm (e.g. see 'Hiatal hernia repair', p401) where a communication is made between the abdomen and chest. Capnomediastinum and capnothorax may occur and suggestive signs include a rapidly rising ET-CO<sub>2</sub>, rising airway pressures, and falling O<sub>2</sub> saturations. Evacuating the CO<sub>2</sub> from the abdomen will often rapidly resolve the problem and recommencing surgery under reduced insufflation of CO<sub>2</sub> will usually enable completion of surgery. If there is significant cardiac or respiratory compromise, manage like a tension pneumothorax by needle decompression.
- During prolonged procedures with a rising ET-CO<sub>2</sub> a 'CO<sub>2</sub> break' may be required (see p556).
- Venous gas embolism may rarely occur when gas is inadvertently insufflated directly into a blood vessel. Physiological effects are less with CO<sub>2</sub> than air due to its greater plasma solubility; however, a significant embolism may be fatal. Signs of venous gas embolism include reduced ET-CO<sub>2</sub>, desaturation, arrhythmias, myocardial ischaemia, hypotension, and elevated CVP (see p432).
- CVS depression with a fall in cardiac output. Treat with fluids, vasodilators, and inotropes.

**Trauma**

- Introduction of trocars may cause damage to organs (e.g. spleen, bladder, liver, bowel, stomach). Organ damage may not always be apparent at the time of injury.
- Damage to blood vessels may result in massive haemorrhage, necessitating rapid conversion to an open procedure.

**Preoperative**

- Contraindications to laparoscopic surgery are relative; risks are increased with ischaemic heart disease, valvular heart disease, increased intracranial pressure, and hypovolaemia.
- All patients scheduled must be considered at risk of conversion to an open procedure and a plan for analgesia discussed.
- Laparoscopic procedures are increasingly performed in obese patients due to improved postoperative recovery when compared to an open procedure.
- Premedication with H<sub>2</sub>-antagonists or proton pump inhibitors if at risk of aspiration (e.g. obesity, hiatus hernia). Simple analgesics (paracetamol, NSAIDs) may be beneficial.

**Perioperative**

- General anaesthesia with endotracheal intubation, muscle relaxation, and controlled ventilation is considered the safest technique as it protects against pulmonary aspiration, enables control of PaCO<sub>2</sub>, and aids surgical exposure.
- Avoid gastric distension during bag-mask ventilation which may increase the risk of gastric injury during trocar insertion.
- For lower abdominal procedures a urinary catheter may be required to decompress the bladder and reduce risk of injury.
- Systemic absorption of CO<sub>2</sub> and raised intra-abdominal pressure will require increased minute volume and result in higher intrathoracic pressure.
- Aim for normocarbica, but beware of adverse effects of high intrathoracic pressure. Controlling ET-CO<sub>2</sub> during prolonged procedures, especially in the obese and head down position, can be difficult and may occasionally necessitate intermittent release of intraperitoneal gas or tolerance of a degree of hypercarbia. With high peak inspiratory pressures, check position of the ETT and try a change to pressure-controlled ventilation, I:E ratio of 1:1, and 5cm H<sub>2</sub>O PEEP. When the patient is levelled out, remember to check tidal volume or alter ventilation mode/pressures.
- Nitrous oxide is controversial due to possible associations with bowel distension and increased postoperative nausea and vomiting.
- Analgesia: dictated by the procedure. Pain may be intense but short-lived and short-acting opioids, e.g. fentanyl and alfentanil, may be effective for short procedures. Remifentanyl infusion can be useful for longer procedures and may help counter the haemodynamic changes due to the capnoperitoneum. Longer-acting opioids may be required for extensive laparoscopic operations.

- Fluids: avoid hypovolaemia as this exaggerates the deleterious CVS effects of laparoscopy.
- Antiemetics: high incidence of nausea and vomiting following laparoscopic surgery. Give prophylactic antiemetic and prescribe postoperatively.
- Monitoring: pay close attention to  $\text{ETCO}_2$  and airway pressure. Invasive arterial blood pressure and CVP monitoring may be required for extensive procedures, or for patients with CVS or respiratory compromise.

If hypoxia occurs consider:

- Hypoventilation—inadequate ventilation due to capnoperitoneum, head down position, etc.
- Reduced cardiac output—IVC compression, arrhythmias, haemorrhage, myocardial depression, venous gas embolism, extraperitoneal gas.
- V/Q mismatch—reduced FRC, atelectasis, endobronchial intubation, venous gas embolism, pulmonary aspiration, and rarely pneumothorax.
- Subcutaneous emphysema during the procedure should arouse suspicion—stop gas insufflation immediately and check for the source of the problem.

### Postoperative

- At the end of the operation encourage the surgeon to expel as much intraperitoneal gas as possible to reduce postoperative pain.
- Intraperitoneal local anaesthetic infiltration of port sites may reduce postoperative analgesia requirements. 20–30ml 0.25% bupivacaine on the gallbladder bed may reduce postoperative analgesic requirements for laparoscopic cholecystectomy.
- Pain varies and is often worst in the first few hours. Shoulder tip pain due to diaphragmatic irritation may be troublesome but is usually short-lived. Significant pain extending beyond the first day raises the possibility of intra-abdominal complications.
- Prescribe regular paracetamol and NSAIDs with opioid PRN for more extensive procedures. Consider postoperative antiemetic.

### Special considerations

- LMA: some anaesthetists use an LMA for laparoscopic procedures. This is an individual choice but should be avoided if patient has a history of reflux or obesity, with an anticipated difficult or prolonged procedure, or with an inexperienced surgeon. An LMA may be useful for short procedures (e.g. laparoscopic sterilisation) provided that the anaesthetist is experienced and patient selection appropriate. The proseal LMA and LMA Supreme has a drainage tube to permit drainage of gastric secretions and provides a higher seal pressure than the standard LMA, which is advantageous.
- Regional anaesthesia is not generally used as the sole anaesthetic technique because of the high level of block required to cover the capnoperitoneum.
- Laparoscopic appendectomy: may aid diagnosis of patients with right lower quadrant pain and prevent unnecessary laparotomy. Less useful if perforated appendix is suspected.

## Laparoscopic cholecystectomy

Procedure	Laparoscopic removal of gall bladder
Time	40–80min
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine, 15–20° head up, table tilted towards surgeon
Blood loss	Not significant
Practical techniques	GA, ETT, IPPV

### Preoperative

- Patients are classically, though not always, 'female, forty, fair, fat, and fertile'.
- Complications of gall stone disease (e.g. pancreatitis) may make surgery more difficult and increase the risk of conversion to open procedure.
- With appropriate planning, facilities, and patient information the procedure can be performed as a day case. Experienced units may be able to manage 70% or more laparoscopic cholecystectomy cases as day patients. Procedures for managing unanticipated admissions must be in place.
- If planned as a day case, list early in the day.
- Consider NSAID and paracetamol premedication.

### Perioperative

- Ensure effective facemask ventilation following induction to avoid inflating the stomach which increases the risk of injury during trochar insertion. Insert a naso/orogastric tube following intubation and remove at the end of surgery to deflate the stomach if necessary.
- Ensure adequate IV access—haemodynamic changes may be profound and potential for sudden blood loss.
- Combination of capnoperitoneum and obesity may make ventilation difficult.
- Paracetamol and NSAIDs IV if not administered preoperatively.
- High risk for PONV. Consider prophylactic antiemetics (e.g. dexamethasone and ondansetron).
- IV fluids improve speed of recovery.
- Short-acting opioids (remifentanyl, fentanyl) may counter the haemodynamic fluctuations and limit postoperative opioid-related side effects.
- Ask the surgeon to infiltrate port sites with local anaesthetic at the end.
- Conversion to open procedure is typically about 5%. This is usually due to difficulty identifying the cystic duct, suspected common bile duct injury, uncontrolled bleeding from the cystic artery, stones present in the common bile duct, or acute inflammatory changes.

### Postoperative

- IV opioids may be required. Avoid/limit morphine to encourage early mobilisation and recovery.

### Special considerations

- This can be a very stimulating procedure, particularly during diathermy around the liver.
- Local anaesthetic applied to the gall bladder bed may reduce postoperative analgesic requirements (20ml 0.25% bupivacaine).
- If conversion to open cholecystectomy, pain can be significant and a morphine PCA may be required. Local anaesthetic should be infiltrated by surgeons and a wound catheter for postoperative local anaesthetic may be beneficial.



## Laparoscopic hemicolectomy/anterior resection

Procedure	Laparoscopic removal of colon
Time	90–180min
Pain	+++ /++++
Position	Supine, steep head down, table tilted towards/away from surgeon
Blood loss	<500ml (increases if converted to laparotomy)
Practical techniques	GA, ETT, IPPV

### Preoperative

- Laparoscopic surgery involves small incisions, extreme positioning, and less postoperative pain but may be prolonged, particularly while surgeons are learning the skills. Conversion to open surgery is more common than with cholecystectomy and is influenced by surgical experience and complexity of procedure.
- Open surgery provokes less cardiovascular stress during surgery, but this is increased postoperatively; the reverse is true of laparoscopic surgery. Caution has been suggested for patients with significant cardiac failure from extensive laparoscopic surgery, but the postoperative advantages would mitigate against this approach.
- Patients may be anaemic due to malignancy—check Hb and group and save.
- Many patients are elderly and have significant comorbidity.
- Surgery will involve prolonged steep head down tilt—beware of patients at risk from raised ICP (recent head injury) or intracranial haemorrhage (venous malformations, aneurysms).

### Perioperative

- Careful facemask ventilation following induction to avoid inflating the stomach.
- Some surgeons will request a naso-/orogastric tube during surgery. Check as it is easier to place before surgery starts.
- An arterial line is useful with the transducer fixed in position to ensure it does not become dislodged during patient positioning.
- Endotracheal intubation and adequate muscle relaxation throughout the case—always use a PNS. Remifentanyl infusion is useful to moderate the stimulating effects of the capnoperitoneum.
- Multimodal analgesia. Rectus sheath catheters, TAP block, or wound catheters with PCA usually work well.
- Monitor temperature and warm actively.
- Ensure all fixings are firmly tightened down and the shoulders padded.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis.
- CVP or Doppler for high-risk patients—both have disadvantages in terms of position and diathermy interference.

- Avoid letting surgeon persist for too long in the steep head down position if progress is not being made—time passes quickly for them!
- Restrict IV crystalloid during surgery as fluid losses are small and the head down positioning causes venous engorgement. Ensure the head is in a neutral position and that ETT fixation does not restrict venous blood flow.
- Ventilation is described on p556.
- Careful eye protection is advised as gastric secretions may reflux in the steep head-down position.

### Postoperative

- Conjunctival oedema is common and some anaesthetists have reported restlessness after prolonged head down.
- PCA morphine or fentanyl. Other analgesics as indicated.

## Appendicectomy

Procedure	Resection of appendix
Time	20–40min
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Not significant
Practical techniques	Rapid sequence induction, ETT, IPPV, ilioinguinal block, TAP block

### Preoperative

- Patients are usually aged 5–20yr and are often fit unless appendix ruptured.
- Occasionally present in the elderly. May be the presenting condition of caecal adenocarcinoma requiring right hemicolectomy.
- Check fluid status and replace deficit prior to surgery if possible.
- Obtain consent for suppositories.
- If considering ilioinguinal block, warn of possible associated femoral nerve blockade.

### Perioperative

- Rapid sequence induction.
- Muscle relaxation required for surgery.
- Consider NSAID and paracetamol IV.
- Ask the surgeon to infiltrate locally or perform right ilioinguinal nerve block or right-sided TAP block.
- Extubate awake on left side.

### Postoperative

- Prescribe regular simple analgesics, PRN opioid, antiemetic, and IV fluids until tolerating oral fluids.

# Inguinal hernia repair

Procedure	Repair of inguinal muscular canal defect through which bowel protrudes
Time	30–60min
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Not significant
Practical techniques	GA, SV, LMA, inguinal field block. Spinal. Local infiltration and/or sedation

## Preoperative

- Patients are usually adult males or young children.
- Can usually be performed as a day-case procedure

## Perioperative

- Inguinal hernia field block may be used as sole technique for surgery or to complement general anaesthesia (see p1153).
- Iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves are easily blocked 2cm caudal and medial to the anterior superior iliac spine (see p1153). Genitofemoral nerve is located 1–2cm above the midpoint of the inguinal ligament, deep to the aponeurosis of the external oblique. This may be left to the surgeon to block, reducing the risk of vascular or peritoneal puncture.

## Special considerations

- If day case, prescribe adequate analgesia to take home, e.g. NSAID, paracetamol, tramadol 50–100mg qds.
- Repair using inguinal hernia field block is probably the technique of choice in the high-risk patient if operator is experienced in local anaesthetic techniques. Low-dose propofol infusion may be a useful adjunct in cases performed solely under local anaesthetic.
- Mesh insertion usually requires administration of prophylactic antibiotics.

## Haemorrhoidectomy

Procedure	Excision of haemorrhoids
Time	20min
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine, lithotomy, head down
Blood loss	Not significant
Practical techniques	GA, SV LMA $\pm$ caudal. Spinal ('saddle block')

### Preoperative

- Assess suitability for LMA/lithotomy/head down position. Consider ETT if the patient is obese or history of reflux.

### Perioperative

- Opioid analgesia (fentanyl or alfentanil)—short but intensely painful stimulus.
- Caudal anaesthesia is useful for postoperative analgesia (20ml bupivacaine 0.25%), but beware risk of urinary retention. Infiltration by the surgeon during the procedure is usually as effective.
- Potential for bradycardia/asystole as surgery starts. Anticipate and have vagolytics to hand.

### Postoperative

- Avoid PR route of drug administration.

### Special considerations

- Avoid spinal anaesthesia followed by head down tilt.
- Anal stretch is an intense stimulus. There is a risk of laryngospasm and coughing if anaesthesia is too light. Anticipate and deepen the anaesthetic, e.g. increase volatile and give a bolus of short-acting opioid, e.g. alfentanil (500 $\mu$ g). The anal stretch can also produce an increase in vagal tone.
- A sacral-only spinal block ('saddle block') using heavy bupivacaine is a useful alternative with little effect on cardiovascular dynamics.

## Testicular surgery

Procedure	Removal/biopsy of testis, marsupialisation of hydrocele, vasectomy, testicular torsion
Time	30min–1hr
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Not significant
Practical techniques	GA, LMA, spermatic cord block. RSI/ETT if emergency (e.g. torsion). Spinal LA infiltration

### Preoperative

- May be suitable for day surgery.

### Perioperative

- Beware vagal responses—have atropine ready.

### Special considerations

- Innervation of testes and scrotum: somatic innervation is via ilioinguinal, genitofemoral, pudendal, and posterior scrotal nerves (branches of posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh) with nerve root contributions from L1–S3. Autonomic innervation is from the sympathetic chain T10–L4 and the parasympathetic plexus S1–S3. Local techniques therefore need to cover T10–S3.
- A spermatic cord block can be used as an adjunct to GA or as part of a local technique for scrotal surgery. The block covers all nerves except the pudendal and posterior scrotal branches. If used as part of a local anaesthetic technique supplemental infiltration of the scrotal skin is also required.
- Spermatic cord is best blocked under direct vision by the surgeon. However, if a local technique is planned, feel for the spermatic cord as it enters the top of the scrotum and infiltrate 5–10ml local anaesthetic around it.

## Breast surgery

See also breast reduction (p518) and breast augmentation (p520).

### General considerations

Breast cancer is now the most common cancer in the UK and the incidence has increased by 50% over the last 25yr. Mortality from breast cancer, however, has fallen steadily since 1990, probably because of earlier detection and improved treatment. Over this time there have been significant advances in more extensive combined procedures of breast resection and reconstruction. Patients are often anxious and management of postoperative pain and nausea/vomiting may be difficult.

### Preoperative

- Anxiety is often high. It is important to gain the patient's confidence at the preoperative visit, discuss analgesia, and prescribe anxiolysis (e.g. temazepam 10–20mg) if necessary.
- Patients who have recently undergone chemotherapy may be immunocompromised. Check FBC for evidence of bone marrow suppression and anticipate potentially difficult venous access.
- Reconstructive procedures, mastectomy following radiotherapy, mastectomy where breasts are large, and breast reduction surgery increase the risk of blood loss. Check Hb and ensure blood is grouped and saved.

### Perioperative

- Standard monitoring is appropriate for most procedures. Longer procedures will require active warming and temperature measurement.
- Avoid venous access on the side of surgery.
- Additional invasive monitoring may be required for prolonged reconstructive procedures including free flap surgery (see p524).
- LMA and spontaneous ventilation is often appropriate for short to medium length procedures. Use intubation and mechanical ventilation for prolonged procedures, the obese, and patients at risk of aspiration.
- Give balanced analgesia including NSAID if tolerated, systemic opioid, and regional techniques if necessary (see below).
- Breast surgery patients are at high risk of PONV. Avoid causative agents and administer prophylactic antiemetics.

### Regional analgesia

- Regional techniques may offer advantages in some cases; however, the risks in healthy women undergoing minor procedures may outweigh the benefits.
- Consider for more radical procedures, e.g. radical mastectomy/axillary clearance and breast reconstruction.
- Four types of regional analgesia can be used: paravertebral block, thoracic epidural, intercostal blocks, and intrapleural block. Beware of the complications of each technique. Ultrasound may be beneficial in paravertebral block.

- A retrospective study found that breast surgery supplemented by a paravertebral block may reduce the risk of cancer recurrence; however, further prospective studies are required.<sup>1</sup>

### Postoperative

- HDU may be required after extensive procedures.
- If a paravertebral catheter or thoracic epidural is sited, continue infusion postoperatively.

### Special considerations

- Patients may present with previous breast surgery and axillary clearance. Cannulation should be avoided in the arm on the affected side due to the risk of infection and potential development of lymphoedema. There is limited evidence of the risk of short-term cannulation in the affected side, and if venous access is limited it may be appropriate to use the affected side and remove at the end of the case.
- Chronic pain typically presenting in the affected anterior chest wall, ipsilateral axilla, or upper arm may occur following breast surgery. Intensity of pain following extensive surgery, postoperative radiotherapy, and chemotherapy are risk factors.

<sup>1</sup> Exadaktylos AK *et al.* (2006). Can anesthetic technique for primary breast cancer surgery affect recurrence or metastasis? *Anesthesiology*, **105**, 660–664.



*This page intentionally left blank*

# Liver transplantation and resection

**Mark Bellamy**

General principles 570

Liver transplantation 572

Hepatic resection 576



## General principles

The majority of patients who present for liver transplantation have either acute hepatic failure or end-stage liver disease. A small proportion undergo transplantation for other conditions, including polycystic liver disease, hepatoma, and metabolic liver disease which could give rise to future liver failure or catastrophic systemic illness (e.g. Wilson's disease). Most transplants are performed semi-electively in those with end-stage disease. Worldwide, the commonest indication for hepatic transplantation is post-hepatitis C cirrhosis. This is likely to change in the future as more effective antiviral therapies become available.

Preoperative assessment includes investigation/treatment of:

- Jaundice, hyponatraemia, ascites, pleural effusions
- Diabetes
- Renal failure
- Systemic vasodilatation with hypotension and cardiac failure
- Poor nutritional state and reduced muscle mass
- Portopulmonary syndromes (associated severe portal and pulmonary hypertension leading to right ventricular failure and potential cardiac arrest intraoperatively)
- Hepatopulmonary syndromes (hypoxia and intrapulmonary shunting occurs in 0.5–4% of patients with cirrhotic liver disease)
- Varices (oesophageal, gastric, rectal, abdominal wall)
- Coagulopathy (prolonged prothrombin time, low platelet count, fibrinolysis)

Haemodynamic instability can result from cardiac involvement in the underlying process (e.g. alcoholic cardiomyopathy), from pericardial effusions, and from circulatory failure due to dilatation and low SVR.

Anaemia resulting in a low plasma viscosity further reduces SVR.

Surgical techniques vary, but there are a number of common features:

- **Stage 1** of the operation is dissection (which involves laparotomy) and haemostasis (including ligation of varices). The liver is exposed, its anatomy defined, and slings placed around the major vessels.
- **Stage 2** of the operation is the **anhepatic** phase during which the hepatic artery, portal vein, hepatic veins, and bile duct are divided.

Two main techniques are used for hepatectomy and implantation of the donor liver:

- Division of the hepatic veins with caval preservation, followed by a 'piggy back' implant, where the new liver, with its own attached vena cava, is anastomosed, cava-to-cava, with the recipient's native vena cava. This can be done side-to-side or end-to-side. Surgery is performed with the native vena cava side-clamped, so that surgery can be completed while preserving venous return from the lower part of the body.
- Removal of the liver with its included portion of vena cava, followed by implantation of the new liver by anastomosis of the donor vena cava (above and below the liver) into the position of the original cava. The second technique is used less commonly, as the native has to be cross-clamped at both points of division. Venous return during this phase is severely compromised leading to haemodynamic instability.

Venovenous bypass is employed in some centres to facilitate venous return from the lower part of the body (femoral vein to right internal jugular or brachiocephalic vein).

- Anastomoses are then made between donor and recipient portal vein. During this stage, patients with acute liver failure may become profoundly hypoglycaemic, although this is less common in patients being transplanted for chronic liver disease.
- **Stage 3** of the procedure is the post-reperfusion phase, beginning with the re-establishment of blood flow through the liver (portal vein to vena cava). This may be accompanied by a massive reperfusion syndrome, comprising release of cytokines, complement activation, transient reduction in core temperature, arrhythmias, and hypotension. Immediately after reperfusion, there is a rapid elevation in plasma  $K^+$  as it is washed out of the liver graft (although usually minor, this can sometimes reach 8–9mmol/l with poorer quality grafts). Preservation solution constituents, including adenosine, may also have a clinically important effect (bradycardia, hypotension).

As the cell membranes of the graft begin to function normally, electrolyte gradients are restored and a fall in plasma  $K^+$  ensues (sometimes producing ventricular ectopic beats). Hypotension at this stage results from myocardial depression and subsequently vasodilatation. Myocardial depression usually resolves within 2 or 3min, but the vasodilatation may persist for several hours. Following reperfusion, the hepatic artery is re-anastomosed and finally the bile duct reconstructed, either by direct duct-to-duct anastomosis or by construction of a Roux loop.

## Liver transplantation

Procedure	Transplantation of entire liver
Time	4–10h
Pain	Variable, but less than other comparable procedures (e.g. gastrectomy, thoracotomy). Back pain/shoulder pain may be a feature. PCA (occasionally epidural) effective
Position	Supine, one or both arms out
Blood loss	Extremely variable. 0–4000ml, X-match 10U (initially, then use uncrossmatched blood if necessary) and FFP 0–12U. Cell saver mandatory (typically reinfuse 2000ml)
Practical techniques	ET, IPPV—details below

### Preoperative

- Includes investigation and correction of the factors mentioned above.
- Usual tests include: FBC, U&Es, clotting, ECG, echocardiogram, stress ECG/dobutamine stress echo, chest radiograph, liver/chest CT, spirometry, immunology, virology, and hepatic angiographic MRI scan.
- Preoperative fluids are not routinely administered except in patients with renal impairment and hyperacute liver failure (dextrose-based solutions).

### Perioperative

- Establish peripheral venous and arterial access before induction.
- Induce anaesthesia (propofol, thiopental, etomidate) and relaxant (atracurium, vecuronium). Vasopressors may be required.
- Ventilate to normocarbida using oxygen-enriched air and volatile agent (isoflurane, desflurane, sevoflurane). Establish infusion of an opioid agent (alfentanil, remifentanil, fentanyl). Patients undergoing transplantation for fulminant liver failure are at risk of raised intracranial pressure. In this patient group volatile agents must be avoided and TCI propofol used. ICP monitoring may be used depending upon the jaundice–encephalopathy interval (0–7d always—raised ICP in 70% of cases, 7–28d occasionally—raised ICP in 20%, 28–90d seldom—raised ICP in 4%).
- Establish central venous monitoring. Transoesophageal echocardiography (TOE) is used in some centres. Insert a large-bore nasogastric tube. In patients with suspected pulmonary hypertension there may be a role for pulmonary artery catheterisation.
- Lines for venovenous bypass can either be placed by the surgical team using femoral cut downs, or be inserted percutaneously, using extra-corporeal membrane oxygenation lines (21Fr in the right internal jugular and right femoral veins). These are used for both venovenous bypass and large vascular access. Venovenous bypass uses heparin-bonded circuitry, so systemic anticoagulation is unnecessary.

- The patient's temperature must be rigorously maintained as hypothermia quickly develops, especially during the anhepatic phase or with massive transfusion. A forced warm air blanket should be placed over the patient's head, upper chest, and arms, and another over the legs.
- Fluids are administered by a rapid infusion system and are warmed through a counter-current heating mechanism (e.g. Level-1<sup>®</sup> system with high-flow disposables and high-flow taps, allowing transfusion of 600ml/min at body temperature). Perioperatively and postoperatively, the Hct is maintained between 0.26 and 0.32 by infusion of blood, and the right ventricular end-diastolic volume index maintained at 140ml/m<sup>2</sup> by infusion of other colloidal fluids as appropriate.
- FFP is transfused approximately 2U per unit of blood transfused. Clotting is monitored and fine-tuned by thromboelastography.
- Antifibrinolytic agents are commonly administered—tranexamic acid (15mg/kg bolus, then 5mg/kg/h by infusion) is given during the anhepatic phase.
- A glucose-containing solution is infused continuously to maintain blood sugar.
- K<sup>+</sup> and Ca<sup>2+</sup> should be monitored regularly during surgery and supplemented when required to maintain normal values. Hypocalcaemia is common during the anhepatic phase as a result of chelation with unmetabolised citrate. This can lead to cardiac depression and poor clotting. Recheck electrolytes immediately prior to graft reperfusion.
- Severe metabolic acidosis is common but rarely needs correction. At the start of reperfusion, a bolus dose of 10mmol calcium is administered to protect the patient against the cardiac effects of potassium released from the liver graft. Progressive hypotension follows reperfusion. This may be severe and require small incremental IV doses of adrenaline (50µg) to maintain mean arterial pressure at a clinically acceptable value (above 70mmHg). In severely ill patients, an infusion of noradrenaline may subsequently be required.
- Coagulopathy with defibrination and thrombocytopenia may also occur at graft reperfusion. Treatment includes bolus doses of antifibrinolytic drugs and platelets, as guided by the thromboelastograph. The haemodynamic and biochemical mayhem of graft reperfusion should resolve rapidly in the event of a functioning liver graft. Persisting acidosis or hypocalcaemia are suggestive of graft primary non-function, which represents a transplantation emergency. This may necessitate urgent retransplantation.
- There is no proven strategy for avoiding renal failure, other than optimising fluid balance and avoiding nephrotoxins. In patients at particularly high risk, avoidance of nephrotoxic immunosuppressants (such as ciclosporin, tacrolimus) in the early postoperative period may have a role.

### Postoperative

- Patients should be managed on ICU. Early extubation is often feasible. As a result of improved techniques, the mean intensive care stay post-transplant can be reduced to 6hr.
- Analgesia: PCA/epidural/paravertebral blocks have all been used to good effect. Epidural analgesia is possible in only a minority of cases because of coagulopathy. Avoid NSAIDs (interaction with calcineurin inhibitors to induce renal failure).
- Postoperative fluids: maintenance fluid/nasogastric feed at 1.5ml/kg/h. Give blood/HAS/FFP to maintain CVP at 10–12mmHg, Hct at 0.26–0.32, and PT <23s.
- Bleeding postoperatively is relatively uncommon (5–10%).
- Graft primary non-function occurs in up to 5% of cases, requiring retransplantation.
- Hepatic artery thrombosis occurs in 0.5–5% of cases. Thrombectomy may be attempted, but super-urgent retransplantation may be necessary.
- Other postoperative problems include sepsis (10–20%) and acute rejection (up to 40%). These are managed medically with good results.
- Immunosuppression is usually started with standard triple therapy (steroid/azathioprine/tacrolimus) and then tailored to the individual. Other drugs in current use include ciclosporin, mycophenolate mofetil, sirolimus, and basiliximab.
- Long-term results of liver transplantation are encouraging. One-year survival figures in major centres now run between 85% and 95%, with a good long-term quality of life.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Hepatic resection

Procedure	Resection of liver tissue
Time	2–6hr
Pain	As for transplantation. Epidural more common
Position	Supine, arms out
Blood loss	1000ml, X-match 10U
Practical techniques	ET, IPPV. Details below and on p572

The major indication for hepatic resection is metastatic colorectal adenocarcinoma. Most patients presenting for hepatic resection are otherwise relatively fit. Stigmata of liver disease and significant jaundice are unusual, except in those presenting for radical hepatic resection for cholangiocarcinoma, where some patients require biliary stenting or drainage preoperatively to reduce jaundice prior to major surgery. The principles underlying anaesthesia for this group of patients are similar to those for any patient undergoing a major laparotomy.

- Major liver resection usually results in 30–75% of functional hepatic tissue being removed. As the remaining hepatocytes function poorly for some days following surgery, short-acting drugs should be used.
- Drugs that might compound postoperative hepatic encephalopathy, or which rely on hepatic metabolism, should be avoided (e.g. benzodiazepines).
- Most resections are accomplished with minimal blood loss but unexpected catastrophic haemorrhage may occur.
- Resection commences with perihepatic dissection and identification of vascular anatomy.
- Intraoperative diagnostic ultrasound is often used to pinpoint lesions requiring resection.
- Bleeding occurs from either vascular inflow (portal vein, hepatic artery) or venous back bleeding. Branches of the hepatic artery and portal vein to the segment of liver to be resected have usually been ligated, so inflow bleeding should not be a major problem. In practice, the line of resection often passes through a watershed area, between vital and devitalised tissue, and remaining inflow bleeding may require additional control by intermittent cross-clamping of vascular inflow to the rest of the liver (the so-called Pringle manoeuvre). This results in a degree of ischaemia-reperfusion injury to the remaining liver tissue, and potentially poor postoperative liver function. This can be minimised by ischaemic preconditioning and the use of intermittent rather than continuous clamping.
- Very radical liver resections are now possible where the liver is totally excised and dissected *ex vivo* following perfusion with ice-cold preservation solution. Healthy parts of the liver are then attached to a Gore-Tex® vena cava graft and reimplanted. This is a prolonged and difficult procedure and anaesthetically similar to a liver transplantation.

### Preoperative

- As for any major abdominal surgery, but including screening of liver function and coagulation.

### Perioperative

- Patients undergoing major liver resection should have large venous access. Arterial pressure monitoring is common but no longer universal as surgical techniques have improved. Central venous pressure monitoring, at one time universal, is now used on the basis of clinical need—in major centres, the surgeon and anaesthetist can predict those cases where it is likely to be unnecessary.
- Thoracic epidural analgesia is utilised to good effect postoperatively, though there is controversy (but few data) on the risks posed by postoperative coagulopathy.
- The anaesthetic technique employed should be aimed at preserving hepatic blood flow and minimising liver injury. Artificial ventilation of the lungs with oxygen-enriched air and a volatile agent is the best way of achieving this. Isoflurane and desflurane are associated with the best preservation of hepatic blood flow.

### Fluid management

- Maintenance of a high central venous pressure used to be common to reduce the risk of air embolism, but it is associated with an increased risk of venous back bleeding.
- A reduced central venous pressure substantially reduces bleeding. This approach has dramatically reduced transfusion requirements, with no reported adverse consequences, despite the theoretically increased risk of air embolus. Techniques for reducing the central venous pressure include epidural boluses and either head up (reverse Trendelenburg) or head-down (Trendelenburg) tilt. Tilt in either direction can potentially reduce the pressure in the cava at the level of the hepatic veins. It is the author's own practice to use head-up tilt, aiming for CVP of 0–2mmHg and systolic BP of 70–80mmHg.
- Intraoperative blood sampling allows accurate transfusion replacement. Fresh frozen plasma is occasionally also required in cases of massive haemorrhage, in cases where there is a prolonged hepatic inflow cross-clamp time, or where very little hepatic tissue remains. However, intraoperative coagulopathy is relatively uncommon. Peak disturbances in clotting are seen on postoperative days 2–3. As with patients undergoing liver transplantation, active warming measures should be taken to maintain the patient's temperature and minimise any coagulopathy.

### Postoperative

- Patients should initially be managed in an HDU. Coagulopathy and encephalopathy may develop postoperatively in those who have undergone very major resections. This has practical implications for the timing of removal of epidural catheters, etc—which may require FFP cover.
- The overall results of radical hepatic resection are very encouraging, with many cases treated that were previously considered inoperable. Many remain disease-free 5yr following resection. In those cases where recurrences arise, further hepatic resection is often possible.

### Further reading

- Abu Hilal M, Lodge JP (2008). Pushing back the frontiers of resectability in liver cancer surgery. *European Journal of Surgery and Oncology*, **34**(3), 272–280.
- Dalmau A, Sabaté A, Aparicio I (2009). Hemostasis and coagulation monitoring and management during liver transplantation. *Current Opinions in Organ Transplantation*, **14**(3), 286–290.
- Della Rocca G, Brondani A, Costa MG (2009). Intraoperative hemodynamic monitoring during organ transplantation: what is new? *Current Opinions in Organ Transplantation*, **14**(3), 291–296.
- Lentschener C, Ozier Y (2002). Anaesthesia for elective liver resection: some points should be revisited. *European Journal of Anaesthesiology*, **19**(11), 780–788.
- Mandell MS, Tsou MY (2008). The development of perioperative practices for liver transplantation: advances and current trends. *Journal of the Chinese Medical Association*, **71**(9), 435–441.
- Park GR, Kang Y (eds) (1995). *Anesthesia and Intensive Care for Patients with Liver Disease*. London: Butterworth Heinemann.

# Endocrine surgery

**Anna Batchelor**

Thyroidectomy 580

Parathyroidectomy 584

Phaeochromocytoma 586



## Thyroidectomy

Procedure	Removal of all or part of the thyroid gland
Time	1–2hr depending on complexity
Pain	+ / ++
Position	Bolster between shoulders with head ring. Head-up tilt
Blood loss	Usually minimal. Potentially major if retrosternal extension
Practical techniques	IPPV + reinforced ETT

### General considerations (see also p164)

- Complexity can vary from removal of a thyroid nodule to removal of long-standing retrosternal goitre to relieve tracheal compression.
- Retrosternal goitre is usually excised through a standard incision, but occasionally a sternal split is required.
- Recurrent laryngeal nerves and parathyroid glands may be damaged or removed.
- Straightforward unilateral surgery can be performed under superficial and deep cervical plexus block, but general anaesthesia is usual (see p1136).

### Preoperative

- Ensure that the patient is as near euthyroid as possible—see p164.
- Check for complications associated with hyperthyroidism: AF, tachycardia, proptosis.
- Acute preparation of thyrotoxic patients involves iodine and corticosteroids—both inhibit conversion of T4 to T3 and narrow the window for surgery, necessitating joint management with the surgeon and endocrinologist.
- Check biopsy histology for malignancy.
- Ask about duration of goitre. Long-standing compression of the trachea may be associated with tracheomalacia.
- Ask about positional breathlessness. Make a routine assessment of the airway.
- Examine the neck. How big is the goitre? Can you feel below the gland (retrosternal spread)? Is there evidence of tracheal deviation (check radiograph)?
- Look for signs of SVC obstruction.
- Listen for stridor.
- Check the range of neck movements preoperatively and do not extend them outside of their normal range during surgery.
- Preoperative paracetamol/NSAIDs (oral or rectal) help postoperative pain control.

## Investigations

- FBC, U&Es,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and thyroid function tests are routine.
- Chest radiograph. Check for tracheal deviation and narrowing. Thoracic inlet views may be necessary if retrosternal extension is suspected, and to detect tracheal compression in the anterior–posterior plane (retrosternal enlargement may be asymptomatic).
- CT scan accurately delineates the site and degree of airway encroachment or intraluminal spread. Advisable if there are symptoms of narrowing (e.g. stridor, positional breathlessness), or more than 50% narrowing on the radiograph. Plain radiographs overestimate diameters due to magnification effects and cannot be relied on when predicting endotracheal tube diameter and length.
- ENT consultation to document cord function for medicolegal purposes is not routine in all units unless abnormality is likely, e.g. previous surgery and malignancy. Pre-existing cord dysfunction may be asymptomatic. Fiberoptic examination also defines any possible laryngeal displacement (useful in airway planning).

## Airway planning

- The majority of cases are straightforward even when there is some tracheal deviation or compression. A reinforced ETT will negotiate most distorted tracheas and permit optimal head positioning. Preoxygenation should be followed by IV induction and a neuromuscular blocking drug (after checking that the lungs can be inflated manually).
- The following features should lead to a more considered approach and may require discussion with the surgeon and radiologist:
  - **Malignancy.** Cord palsies are likely. Distortion and rigidity of surrounding structures. Possibility of intraluminal spread. Larynx may be displaced. Tumour can produce obstruction anywhere from glottis to carina.
  - Significant **respiratory symptoms** or >50% narrowing on chest radiograph or lateral thoracic inlet view.
  - Coexisting predictors of **difficult intubation**.

## Options to secure the airway for complicated thyroid surgery

- Teamwork between anaesthetist and surgeon is the key to successful and safe airway management.
- **Inhalational induction** with sevoflurane or halothane in patients with stridor and suspected difficult upper airway. Stridor and decreased minute ventilation delay the onset of sufficiently deep anaesthesia for intubation. Topical local anaesthetic may be useful.
- **Fiberoptic intubation** (p1000). Attempts to pass a fiberoptic bronchoscope in an awake patient with stridor are difficult as the narrowed airway may become obstructed by the instrument. May be useful where there is marked displacement of the larynx or coexisting difficulties with intubation, e.g. ankylosing spondylitis.

- LMA may be difficult to place in patients with laryngeal displacement.
- **Tracheostomy** under local anaesthetic. This will only be possible if the tracheostomy can be easily performed below the level of obstruction.
- Ventilation through a **rigid bronchoscope** is a backup option when attempts to pass an ETT fail. The surgeon and necessary equipment should be immediately available for complex cases, particularly those involving significant mid to lower tracheal narrowing.

### Perioperative

- Eye padding, lubrication, and tape are important, especially if patient is exophthalmos.
- Full relaxation is required to accommodate tube movements. Local anaesthetic spray on the ETT reduces the stimulation produced by tracheal manipulation during surgery.
- Securely fix the ETT with tape, avoiding ties around the neck. Access to check tube is difficult during procedure.
- Head and neck extension with slight head-up tilt.
- Consider a superficial cervical plexus block for postoperative analgesia. Some surgeons infiltrate subcutaneously with local anaesthetic and adrenaline before starting. Local anaesthesia at the end can produce spurious nerve palsies (see p1136).
- Arms to sides, IV extension.
- Communicate with the surgeon if there are excessive airway pressures during manipulation of the trachea. Obstruction may be due to airway manipulation distal to the tube or the bevel of the tube abutting on the trachea.
- Monitor muscle relaxation on the leg.
- In cases of long-standing goitre some surgeons like to feel the trachea before closing to assess tracheomalacia. They may ask for partial withdrawal of the endotracheal tube so that the tip is just proximal to the operative site.
- At end of surgery reverse muscle relaxant and extubate. Any respiratory difficulty should lead to immediate reintubation. The traditional practice of inspecting the cords immediately following extubation is difficult and unreliable. Possible cord dysfunction and postoperative tracheomalacia is better assessed with the patient awake and sitting up in the recovery room.

### Postoperative

- Intermittent opioids with oral/rectal paracetamol and NSAIDs.
- The opioid requirement is reduced with SC infiltration and superficial cervical plexus blocks.
- Use fiberoptic nasendoscopy if there is doubt about recurrent laryngeal nerve injury.

### Postoperative stridor

- **Haemorrhage** with tense swelling of the neck. Remove clips from skin, and sutures from platysma/strap muscles to remove the clot. In extremis this should be done at the bedside. Otherwise return to theatre without delay.
- **Tracheomalacia.** Long-standing goitre may cause tracheal collapse. Immediate reintubation followed by tracheostomy may be necessary.
- **Bilateral recurrent laryngeal nerve palsies.** This may present with respiratory difficulty immediately postoperatively or after a variable period. Stridor may only be obvious when the patient becomes agitated. Assess by fibreoptic nasendoscopy. May require tracheostomy.

### Other postoperative complications

#### Hypocalcaemia

- Hypocalcaemia from parathyroid removal is rare. Serum calcium should be checked at 24hr and again daily if low.
- Presentation—may present with signs of neuromuscular excitability, tingling around the mouth, or tetany. May progress to fits or ventricular arrhythmias.
- Diagnosis—carpopedal spasm (flexed wrists, fingers drawn together) may be precipitated by cuff inflation (Trousseau's sign). Tapping over the facial nerve at the parotid may cause facial twitching (Chvostek's sign). Prolonged QT interval on ECG.
- Treatment: serum calcium below 2mmol/l should be treated urgently with 10ml 10% calcium gluconate over 3min plus oral alfacalcidol 1–5g orally. Check level after 4hr and consider calcium infusion if still low. If hypocalcaemic but level above 2mmol/l treat with oral calcium supplements (see also p169).

#### Thyroid crisis

- This is rare as hyperthyroidism is usually controlled beforehand with antithyroid drugs and  $\beta$ -blockers. May be triggered in uncontrolled or undiagnosed cases by surgery or infection.
- Diagnosis: tachycardia and rising temperature. May be difficult to distinguish from MH. Higher mixed venous  $PvCO_2$  and higher CPK in MH.
- Treatment: see p165.

#### Pneumothorax

Pneumothorax is possible if there has been dissection behind the sternum.

### Further reading

Farling PA (2000). Thyroid disease. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 15–28.



## Parathyroidectomy

Procedure	Removal of solitary adenoma or four glands for hyperplasia
Time	1–3hr
Pain	+ / ++
Position	Bolster between shoulders with head ring. Head-up tilt
Blood loss	Usually minimal
Practical techniques	IPPV + ETT

### General considerations (see also p168)

- Usual indication for operation is primary hyperparathyroidism from parathyroid adenoma.
- With preoperative localisation, removal of simple adenoma has been described using sedation and local anaesthesia. General anaesthesia is more usual.
- Carcinoma may require *en bloc* dissection.
- Total parathyroidectomy may also be performed in secondary hyperparathyroidism associated with chronic renal failure.
- Hypercalcaemia may produce significant debility, particularly in the elderly.

### Preoperative

Hypercalcaemia is usual. With moderate elevation ensure adequate hydration with 0.9% sodium chloride. Levels over 3mmol/l should be corrected before surgery as follows:

- Urinary catheter.
- 0.9% sodium chloride 1 litre in first hour, then 4–6 litres over 24hr.
- Pamidronate 60mg in 500ml saline over 4hr.
- Watch for fluid overload. CVP measurement may be necessary in some patients. Monitor electrolytes including magnesium, phosphate, and potassium.
- Severe hypercalcaemia may occasionally necessitate emergency surgery. Benefits usually outweigh risks as long as managed as above.
- Preoperative imaging using ultrasound and unilateral exploration may be performed for adenoma.
- Secondary hyperparathyroidism occurs secondary to low serum calcium in chronic renal failure. In this situation:
  - Total parathyroidectomy may be required. Control afterwards is easier if no functioning parathyroid tissue is left.
  - Dialysis will be required preoperatively.
  - The risk of bleeding is increased.
  - Alfacalcidol is usually started preoperatively.

- Primary hyperparathyroidism has been associated with increased risk of death from cardiovascular disease, hypertension, left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH), valvular and myocardial calcifications, impaired vascular reactivity, alterations in cardiac conduction, impaired glucose metabolism, and dyslipidaemia. Parathyroid hormone has serious consequences on cardiac function in renal failure.
- Methylene blue may be used to highlight parathyroid glands. Most useful in four gland hyperplasia, parathyroids are highly vascular and take up the dye faster than surrounding tissues. If given too far in advance the effect is lost as surrounding tissue colours. The usual dose is 5mg/kg diluted in 500ml given over 1hr prior to surgery. Complications of methylthioninium chloride (methylene blue) use include restlessness, paraesthesia, burning sensation, chest pain, dizziness, headache, and mental confusion. Pulse oximetry will not be accurate if infusion is too fast.

### Perioperative

- Similar anaesthetic considerations as for thyroid surgery.
- Airway encroachment is not usually a problem.
- Operation times may be unpredictable, especially if frozen section or parathyroid assays are performed.
- Consider active heat conservation.

### Postoperative

- Serum calcium checked at 6 and 24hr. Hypocalcaemia may occur (for diagnosis and treatment see p580, 'Thyroidectomy', and also p583). Continuation of alfacalcidol in secondary hyperparathyroidism lessens the chance of hypocalcaemia postoperatively.
- Perform fiberoptic nasendoscopy if recurrent laryngeal nerve damage is suspected.
- Pain not usually severe, especially with local anaesthetic infiltration or superficial cervical plexus blocks. Rectal paracetamol is useful. Avoid NSAIDs in patients with poor renal function.

### Further reading

Mihai R, Farndon JR (2000). Parathyroid disease and calcium metabolism. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 29–43.

## Phaeochromocytoma

Procedure	Removal of 1 or 2 adrenals or extra-adrenal tumour
Time	1–2hr open, possibly longer if laparoscopic
Pain	+ / ++ (depending if open or laparoscopic)
Position	Lateral or supine for open, lateral for laparoscopic
Blood loss	Variable
Practical techniques	IPPV + ETT, art and CVP lines, $\pm$ cardiac output monitor

- Tumours of chromaffin cells secreting noradrenaline (commonest), adrenaline, or dopamine (least common). May secrete more than one amine.
- May secrete other substances, e.g. VIP, ACTH.
- 90% occur in adrenals, 10% bilateral, may be anywhere along the sympathetic chain from base of the skull to pelvis.
- Most are benign, a few are malignant.
- Occur in all age groups, less commonly in children.
- Can occur in association with multiple endocrine neoplasia 2A (MEN2A—medullary thyroid carcinoma, parathyroid adenomas) and MEN2B (medullary thyroid carcinoma and Marfanoid features). Both have abnormalities of the RET oncogene on chromosome 10 (see p178).
- Also found in patients with neurofibromatosis and Von Hippel–Lindau syndrome (see p320).

### Presentation

- Hypertension can be constant, intermittent, or insignificant.
- Association of palpitations, sweating, and headache with hypertension has a high predictive value.
- Anxiety, nausea and vomiting, weakness, and lethargy are also common features.
- Acute presentations include pulmonary oedema, myocardial infarction, and cerebrovascular episodes.
- Can present perioperatively. Unless the diagnosis is considered and appropriate treatment instituted mortality rate is high—up to 50%.

### Diagnosis

- Clinical suspicion.
- With increased genetic testing of families more patients are being diagnosed before they become symptomatic.
- Urinary catecholamines or their metabolites (metadrenaline and normetadrenaline) measured either over 24hr or overnight.
- CT radiocontrast may provoke phaeo crises and its use must be avoided in unblocked patients. Modern contrast agents may be used.

- MIBG (meta-iodobenzylguanidine) scan—a radiolabelled isotope of iodine taken up by chromaffin tissue.
- MRI.
- Search in the abdomen first and widen the search if tumour not located. MIBG is particularly helpful in revealing unusual sites.

### Investigations relevant to anaesthesia

- CVS including cardiac echo (patients with persistent hypertension, those with any history of ischaemia or evidence of heart failure). Patients can present with a catecholamine cardiomyopathy.
- Blood glucose—excess catecholamines result in glycogenolysis and insulin resistance—some patients become frankly diabetic.

### Preoperative

- Refer the patient to an experienced team. It is not acceptable to manage on an occasional basis.
- Usual management is sympathetic blockade with first  $\alpha$ - and then  $\beta$ -blocker if required for tachycardia (**phenoxybenzamine** and then **atenolol**).
- Preoperative blockade:
  - Allows safe anaesthesia for the removal of the tumour
  - Prevents hypertensive response to induction of anaesthesia
  - Limits surges in BP seen during tumour handling.
- Avoid unopposed  $\beta$ -blockade—theoretical risk of increasing vasoconstriction and precipitating crisis. Although this has been reported, many patients will already have received  $\beta$ -blockers for hypertension before presentation without adverse effects.
- Prazosin and doxazosin have been used. These are competitive selective  $\alpha_1$  blockers. They do not inhibit presynaptic NA reuptake and thus avoid the tachycardia seen with non-selective  $\alpha$ -blockade. The literature contains reports both in favour and against the use of selective blockade.
- Calcium channel blockers (particularly nicardipine) have been used. This inhibits noradrenaline-mediated calcium influx into smooth muscle, but does not affect catecholamine secretion by the tumour.
- Metirosine is an inhibitor of catecholamine synthesis. It is toxic and not widely used.
- It has been suggested that modern cardiovascular drugs, along with invasive monitoring and better understanding of the physiology, should allow safe removal of the tumours without preoperative preparation. Patients with phaeochromocytoma are very varied, as are their tumours; some patients may have a smooth intraoperative course whilst others may develop acute pulmonary oedema and heart failure and die. Any study inevitably has small numbers of patients. Caution should be exercised in discarding a safe, tried, and tested regime of  $\alpha \pm \beta$ -blockade.

**Assessment of sympathetic blockade**

- 24hr ambulatory BP monitoring. Aim for BP <140/90 throughout the 24hr period, with heart rate <100bpm.
- Erect and supine BP and heart rate. Should exhibit a marked postural drop with compensatory tachycardia.
- The duration of blockade is determined by the practicalities of tumour localisation and scheduling of surgery.
- Blockade is started to treat symptoms as well as to prepare for surgery.

**Perioperative**

- Laparoscopic or open adrenalectomy through a midline, transverse, or flank incision (introduction of gas for laparoscopic resection can result in hypertension in normal subjects and this may be exaggerated in patients with pheochromocytomas).
- Premedication as required (e.g. temazepam 20–30mg).
- Monitoring to include direct BP and CVP (triple lumen to allow drug infusions). Consider cardiac output monitoring in patients with CVS disease and catecholamine cardiomyopathy.
- Large-bore IV access.
- Monitor and maintain temperature, particularly during laparoscopic resection which can be prolonged.
- Induction: avoid agents that release histamine and thus catecholamines (use etomidate or propofol, alfentanil or remifentanil, and vecuronium).
- Hypotension is unlikely but may be treated with adrenaline infusion.
- Maintenance: isoflurane.
- Epidural with opioid and local anaesthetic if appropriate to surgical approach (sympathetic blockade will not prevent catecholamine-induced vasoconstriction), otherwise fentanyl/alfentanil/remifentanil until tumour removal, when morphine can be substituted for postoperative analgesia.
- Fluctuations in BP tend to be transient and medication needs to respond in a similar fashion. SNP is effective and is preferred to phentolamine, because it provides rapid control with no prolonged effects. The doses required are unlikely to lead to toxicity.
- Nicardipine and magnesium are also useful (block catecholamine release, block receptors, provide direct vasodilator and possibly myocardial protection).
- Control heart rate at <100bpm with metoprolol or esmolol.
- Once the tumour is resected BP takes several minutes to decline. Prevent hypotension by ensuring an adequate preload. Maintain a high CVP of 10–15mmHg. Several litres of crystalloid may be needed.
- Hypotension following resection can be due to low cardiac output or a low SVR. Treat the first with adrenaline and the latter with noradrenaline. Vasopressin has been used in resistant hypotension. Terlipressin 1mg bolus, followed if required by vasopressin starting at 0.04U per minute, then titrated to effect.
- It is unusual to require inotropic support by the time the patient is ready to leave theatre unless there are coexisting medical problems.

## Postoperative

- Patient should be nursed in an HDU for 12hr.
- Monitor blood glucose. Catecholamines cause an increase in glucose levels; in their acute absence blood glucose may drop. Residual  $\beta$ -blockade may limit response to this.
- If both adrenals are resected the patient will require steroid support immediately. Hydrocortisone 100mg bolus in theatre decreasing to maintenance dose after surgical stress. Fludrocortisone 0.1mg daily may be commenced with oral intake.
- Even when only one adrenal is removed patients may occasionally be relatively hypoadrenal and require support. If this is suspected (e.g. unexpectedly low BP) a small dose of hydrocortisone (50mg) will do no harm, whilst the result of cortisol estimation is awaited.

## Special considerations

### Pregnancy

- There are many reports of the combination of a newly diagnosed phaeochromocytoma and pregnancy. Overall mortality is up to 17%.
- Phenoxybenzamine and metoprolol are safe.
- If phaeochromocytoma is diagnosed before mid-trimester it should be resected at this stage.
- There is a high mortality associated with normal delivery; consider LSCS with or without resection of the phaeochromocytoma at the same procedure.

### Management of an unexpected phaeochromocytoma

- Any patient who has unexplained pulmonary oedema, hypertension, or severe unexpected hypotension should prompt consideration of the diagnosis; however, it can be very difficult. There is no quick available test to support the diagnosis in the acute situation.
- Once the diagnosis has been considered, if possible, surgery should be discontinued to allow acute treatment, investigation, and blockade prior to definitive surgery. Attempts to remove the tumour during a crisis may result in significant morbidity or even mortality.
- Treatment acutely should consist of vasodilators and IV fluid; this may be counterintuitive in a patient with severe pulmonary oedema. The circulating volume in patients with phaeochromocytoma may be markedly reduced and vasodilatation will result in a profound drop in BP. Glyceryl trinitrate can usually be successfully titrated in this situation.
- Patients who present with hypotension have an acutely failing heart due to profound vasoconstriction. These are the most difficult patients in whom to make the diagnosis and to treat. Additional catecholamines in this situation merely fuel the fire but are difficult to resist. The mortality rate is very high.

### Further reading

- Hull CJ (1986). Pheochromocytoma—diagnosis, preoperative preparation and anaesthetic management. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **58**, 1453–1468.
- O'Riordan JA (1997). Pheochromocytomas and anesthesia. *International Anesthesiology Clinics*, **35**, 99–127.
- Prys-Roberts C (2000). Pheochromocytoma—recent progress in its management. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 44–57.

# Urological surgery

## Julia Munn

Cystoscopic procedures 592  
Transurethral resection of prostate (TURP) 594  
TURP syndrome 596  
Transurethral resection of bladder tumour 598  
Open (retropubic) prostatectomy and radical prostatectomy 599  
Nephrectomy and heminephrectomy 600  
Cystectomy 602  
Laparoscopic urological surgery 604  
Percutaneous stone removal 606  
Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy 607  
Renal transplant 608  
Other urological procedures 610

### See also:

Hypospadias repair 848  
Circumcision 846  
Orchidopexy 847



## Cystoscopic procedures

- Includes cystoscopy, transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP), bladder neck incision, transurethral resection of bladder tumour, ureteroscopy, and/or stone removal or stent insertion.
- The majority of patients are undergoing procedures for benign prostatic hypertrophy or carcinoma of the bladder. The incidence of both these conditions increases markedly over 60yr and bladder cancer is smoking-related, so patients frequently have coronary artery disease and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.
- FBC, creatinine, and electrolytes should be checked preoperatively because bladder cancers can bleed insidiously. Both bladder cancer and benign prostatic hypertrophy can cause an obstructive uropathy/renal impairment and drugs and technique should be chosen accordingly.
- **Flexible cystoscopy** is largely used for diagnostic purposes, does not require full bladder distension, and can normally be performed under local anaesthetic. Biopsies can be taken this way with only a small amount of discomfort and skilled surgeons can perform retrograde ureteric catheterisations. Occasional patients insist on sedation/GA for flexible cystoscopy. Midazolam or propofol is ideal.
- **Rigid cystoscopy** requires general anaesthesia, due to scope diameter and the use of irrigating solution to distend the bladder and allow visualisation of the surgical field. If large volumes of irrigant are absorbed systemic complications due to fluid overload can result (see TURP syndrome, p596).
- Spinal anaesthesia works well for rigid cystoscopic procedures, and is commonly used for TURP. Sensory supply to the urethra, prostate, bladder neck, and bladder mucosa is from S2–S4. Pain from bladder distension, however, is carried by T10–L2, so a higher block is required. Many patients will request sedation. In the elderly population 1–2mg midazolam is usually adequate. Higher doses may result in loss of airway control, confusion, and restlessness. A low-dose propofol infusion is an alternative. Spinal anaesthesia is advantageous for patients with severe COPD, as long as the patient can lie flat without coughing.
- Either hyperbaric or isobaric bupivacaine can be used. Hyperbaric bupivacaine usually produces a higher block than the isobaric solution, especially when the injection is performed with the patient in the lateral position and then turned supine; 2.5–3ml ‘heavy bupivacaine’ 0.5% usually gives a block to T10. Do not tilt the patient head down unless the block is not sufficiently high.
- Patients with chronic chest disease tend to cough on lying flat. During surgery under regional block coughing can seriously impair surgical access. Sedation can help to reduce the cough impulse.
- Patients with spinal cord injuries (see pp250–4) often require repeated urological procedures. Bladder distension during cystoscopy is very stimulating and prone to cause autonomic hyperreflexia so a GA or spinal is advisable—check previous anaesthetic charts.
- Take particular care positioning elderly patients in lithotomy, especially those with joint replacements.

- **Permanent pacemakers** are not normally a problem, even with the almost continuous diathermy required for TURP, as long as the diathermy plate is positioned caudally, usually on the thigh.
- **Implantable defibrillators** can be triggered by the diathermy so need to be switched off preoperatively (see p94).
- **Penile erection** can make cystoscopy difficult and surgery hazardous. It usually occurs due to surgical stimulation when the depth of anaesthesia is inadequate, and can usually be managed by deepening anaesthesia. If the erection still persists small doses of ketamine can be useful.
- **Antibiotic prophylaxis** (single dose of an agent with Gram-negative cover) is often required, particularly if the patient has indwelling urinary catheter, obstructed ureter, and positive results on preoperative MSU.
- **DVT prophylaxis:** graduated compression stockings are generally considered adequate in low-risk patients undergoing cystoscopic procedures, as most will mobilise rapidly following surgery. However, low-dose heparin should also be used in patients with additional risk factors or those who have recently undergone other surgery and a period of immobility (see p12).

### Postoperative complications of rigid cystoscopic procedures

- **Perforation of the bladder** can occur and can be difficult to recognise, especially in the presence of a spinal block, which may mask abdominal pain. Perforations are classified as extraperitoneal, when pain is said to be maximal in the suprapubic region, and intraperitoneal when there is generalised abdominal pain, shoulder tip pain due to fluid tracking up to the diaphragm, and signs of peritonism. Intraperitoneal perforations need fluid resuscitation and urgent surgery to prevent progressive shock.
- **Bacteraemia** can have a very dramatic onset with signs of profound septic shock. If the diagnosis is made quickly, there is usually a rapid response to IV fluids and appropriate antibiotics (e.g. gentamicin—single dose 3–5mg/kg followed by cefuroxime 750–1500mg 8-hourly; modify according to sensitivities on preoperative MSU). Always suspect this diagnosis with unexplained hypotension after a seemingly straightforward urinary tract instrumentation.
- **Bladder spasm** is a painful involuntary contraction of the bladder occurring after any cystoscopic technique, most commonly in patients who did not have an indwelling catheter preoperatively. Diagnosis is supported by the failure of irrigation fluid to flow freely in and out of the bladder. It responds poorly to conventional analgesics but is often eased by small doses of IV benzodiazepine, e.g. diazepam 2.5–5mg or hyoscine butylbromide 20mg IV slowly or IM.
- Bleeding and fluid overload are dealt with under anaesthesia for TURP (p594).

## Transurethral resection of prostate (TURP)

Procedure	Cystoscopic resection of the prostate using diathermy wire
Time	30–90min, depending on size of the prostate
Pain	+
Position	Lithotomy ± head down
Blood loss	Very variable (200–2000ml), can be profuse and continue postop. G&S
Practical techniques	Spinal ± sedation GA, LMA, and SV GA, ETT, and IPPV

### Preoperative

- Patients are frequently elderly with coexistent disease and multiple medications.
- Check creatinine and serum sodium; suggest postponing surgery if Na is significantly low as this is likely to fall further with absorption of irrigant.
- Heart failure or uncontrolled atrial fibrillation is a particular risk due to fluid absorption. Aim for optimal medical control preoperatively.
- Assess mental state and communication—spinal anaesthesia is difficult if the patient is confused or deaf.

### Perioperative

- Insert a large cannula (16G) and use warmed IV fluids.
- **Spinal anaesthesia:** in theory it is easier to detect signs of fluid overload (see below); shown in some, but not all, studies to reduce blood loss; 2.5–3ml bupivacaine (plain or hyperbaric) is usually adequate; frequent BP check—hypotension unusual with the above doses but can occur suddenly; check BP at end when the legs are down (unmasks hypotension).
- **GA:** consider intubation if the patient is very obese or has a history of reflux; intraoperative fentanyl or morphine plus diclofenac 100mg PR provides adequate analgesia; unusual to need opioids postoperatively.
- **Blood loss** can be difficult to assess. In theory can be calculated from measuring Hb and volume of discarded irrigation fluid. In practice it is more common to visually assess the volume and colour, but this can be misleading. Checking the patient's Hb with a bedside device (e.g. HemoCue®) is useful. Blood loss is generally related to the size and weight of prostatic tissue excised (normally 15–60g), the duration of resection, and the expertise of the operator.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis frequently required
- Obturator spasm (see p598).

- Fluid therapy: crystalloid can be used initially. Bear in mind that a significant volume of hypotonic irrigating fluid may be absorbed, so do not give excessive volumes and never use dextrose. Consider switching to a colloid if hypotension results from the spinal anaesthesia. Replace blood loss with colloid and be ready to transfuse if the Hb falls below target.

### Postoperative

- Bladder irrigation with saline via a three-way catheter continues for approximately 24hr, until bleeding is reduced—inadvertent slowing of irrigation can lead to clot retention.
- There is generally little pain, but discomfort from the catheter or bladder spasm may be a problem (see p593).
- Severe pain suggests clot retention, bladder spasm (p593), or bladder perforation (p593).
- Clot retention can give a very distended painful bladder and vagal symptoms. It requires washout, sometimes under anaesthetic.
- Bleeding can continue and require further surgery—resuscitation may be necessary.
- Measure FBC, creatinine, and electrolytes the day following surgery.

### Special considerations

- Hypothermia may result when large volumes of irrigation fluid are used (the fluid should be warmed to 37°C).
- If the prostate is very large (>100g), a retropubic prostatectomy may carry fewer complications.
- The risk of complications increases with resection times of >1hr. If a resection is likely to take longer than an hour consider limiting the resection to one lobe only, leaving the other to be done at a later date.

### Laser prostatectomy and transurethral vaporisation of the prostate (TUVAP)

- Several ‘minimally invasive’ techniques using lasers and other forms of heat have been developed which reduce prostate size. These generally cause less bleeding and absorption of fluid so are sometimes chosen for patients perceived to be at higher risk from conventional TURP.
- The few randomised controlled trials show a reduction in the need for transfusion, reduced need for bladder irrigation, and reduced length of stay in hospital. However, no clear difference in complication rate or long-term urological outcome has yet been demonstrated.
- Anaesthetic requirements and duration of surgery are similar to TURP.

### Brachytherapy for localised prostate carcinoma

- This consists of insertion of radioactive pellets through rods positioned in the prostate under ultrasound control.
- Patient may require two or more procedures in the same day. Repeated GAs are possible, but a spinal catheter topped up before each procedure works well.

## TURP syndrome

- A combination of fluid overload and hyponatraemia,<sup>1,2</sup> which occurs when large volumes of irrigation fluid are absorbed via open venous sinuses. Irrigation fluid must be non-conductive (so that the diathermy current is concentrated at the cutting point) and non-haemolytic (so that haemolysis does not occur if it enters the circulation), and must have neutral visual density, so that the surgeon's view is not distorted. For these reasons it cannot contain electrolytes but cannot be pure water. The most commonly used irrigant is glycine 1.5% in water, which is hypotonic (osmolality 220mmol/l).
- Some irrigation fluid is normally absorbed, at about 20ml/min, and on average patients absorb a total of 1–1.5 litres, but absorption of up to 4–5 litres has been recorded. In clinical practice it is almost impossible to accurately assess the volume absorbed.
- The amount of absorption depends upon the following factors:
  - Pressure of infusion—the bag must be kept as low as possible to achieve adequate flow of irrigant at minimum pressure, usually 60–70cm above bladder, never more than 100cm. Higher pressures increase absorption.
  - Venous pressure—more fluid is absorbed if the patient is hypovolaemic or hypotensive.
  - Long duration of surgery and large prostate—problems are more common with surgery lasting more than 1hr or with a prostate weighing more than 50g.
  - Blood loss—large blood loss implies a large number of open veins.
- TURP syndrome is more likely to occur in patients with poorly controlled heart failure. Do not increase the risks of fluid overload by giving an unnecessarily large volume of IV fluid.
- Glycine is a non-essential amino acid which functions as an inhibitory neurotransmitter and it is unclear whether glycine toxicity plays a part in the syndrome. Ammonia is a metabolite of glycine and may also contribute to CNS disturbance.
- Ensure that irrigation fluid is changed to saline in recovery to prevent further absorption of hypotonic glycine.
- Signs of **pulmonary oedema**, **cerebral oedema**, and **hyponatraemia** are the usual presenting features. They will be detected earlier in the awake patient. Mortality is high unless recognised and treated promptly.
- **Early symptoms** include restlessness, headache, and tachypnoea, and these may progress to respiratory distress, hypoxia, frank pulmonary oedema, nausea, vomiting, visual disturbances, confusion, convulsions, and coma. In the anaesthetised patient the only evidence may be tachycardia and hypertension. Rapid absorption of a large volume can lead to reflex bradycardia. Hypotension can also occur. The diagnosis can be confirmed by low serum sodium. An acute fall to <120mmol/l is always symptomatic. A quick check of  $\text{Na}^+$  is often possible by checking an ABG (use venous blood unless concerned about acid/base balance).

- If detected intraoperatively, bleeding points should be coagulated, surgery terminated as soon as possible, and IV fluids stopped. Give furosemide 40mg and check serum  $\text{Na}^+$  and Hb. Support respiration with oxygen or intubation and ventilation if required. Administer IV anticonvulsants if fitting.
- Both severe acute hyponatraemia and over-rapid correction of chronic hyponatraemia can result in permanent neurological damage (most commonly central pontine myelinolysis).
- If the serum sodium has fallen acutely to  $<120\text{mmol/l}$ , and is associated with neurological signs, consider giving hypertonic saline ( $\text{NaCl}$  1.8–3%) to restore  $\text{Na}^+$  to around  $125\text{mmol/l}$ . See p186.
- The volume of 3% saline (in millilitres) which will raise the serum  $\text{Na}^+$  by  $1\text{mmol/l}$  is twice the total body water (TBW) in litres. TBW in men is about 60% of body weight, i.e. for a 70kg man
  - Calculate  $\text{TBW} = 70 \times 0.6 = 42$  litres.
  - Therefore 84ml 3% saline will raise serum  $\text{Na}^+$  by  $1\text{mmol/l}$ .
  - 1008ml 3% saline over 24hr will raise serum  $\text{Na}^+$  by  $12\text{mmol/l}$ .
- In practice give  $1.2\text{--}2.4\text{ml/kg/hr}$  of 3% saline until symptomatic improvement. This should produce a rise in serum  $\text{Na}^+$  of  $1\text{--}2\text{mmol/l/hr}$ .
- Correction should ideally not be faster than  $1.5\text{--}2\text{mmol/l/hr}$  for 3–4hr, then  $1\text{mmol/l/hr}$  until symptomatic improvement or  $\text{Na}^+ >125\text{mmol/l}$ . Maximum rise should not exceed  $12\text{mmol/l}$  in 24hr.
- Beware of compounding effects on  $\text{Na}^+$  by other simultaneous treatments (diuretics, colloids, etc.).
- Admit to ICU/HDU for management, including regular measurements of  $\text{Na}^+$ .<sup>1</sup>

1 Adrogue HJ, Madias NE (2000). Hyponatremia *New England Journal of Medicine*, **342**, 1581–1589.

2 Kumar S, Berl T (1998). Sodium. *Lancet*, **352**, 220–228.

## **Transurethral resection of bladder tumour**

Procedure	Cystoscopic diathermy resection of bladder tumour
Time	10–40min
Pain	+ / ++ and bladder spasm
Position	Lithotomy
Blood loss	0–>500ml
Practical techniques	GA with LMA Spinal ± sedation

### **Preoperative**

- Most common in smokers—check for CAD and COPD.
- Check Hb—chronic blood loss is common.
- Check renal function.
- Refer to previous anaesthetic charts—many patients have repeated surgery.

### **Perioperative**

- Obturator spasm occurs when the obturator nerve, which runs adjacent to the lateral walls of the bladder, is directly stimulated by the diathermy current. It causes adduction of the leg and can seriously impair surgical access and increase the risk of bladder perforation. It can usually be controlled by reducing the diathermy current.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis (see p593).

### **Postoperative**

- Pain can be a problem with extensive resections—NSAIDs are useful (check renal function).
- Bladder spasm is common (see p593).

### **Special considerations**

- If using a spinal anaesthetic, ensure block to above T<sub>10</sub> (see p592).

## Open (retropubic) prostatectomy and radical prostatectomy

Procedure	Retropubic = open excision of grossly hypertrophied benign prostate Radical = open complete excision of malignant prostate
Time	60–120min (retropubic), 120–180min (radical)
Pain	+++ /++++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	500–2000ml (retropubic), 1000–3000ml (radical) X-match 4U
Practical techniques	ETT, IPPV, $\pm$ epidural/rectus sheath blocks and PCA

### Preoperative

- Retropubic—elderly men, as for TURP.
- Radical—patients are selected if relatively young and medically fit.
- Check renal function.
- Consider HDU bed for radical prostatectomy depending on local practice and medical factors.

### Perioperative

- Prepare for major blood loss with a large IV cannula, blood warmer, heated blankets, etc.
- A Pfannenstiel-type incision is used for retropubic and lower midline for radical prostatectomy.
- Consider using arterial line and CVP line or cardiac output monitoring, particularly in patients with cardiovascular disease.
- Ensure blood is available and reorder intraoperatively as necessary.
- Cell salvage techniques can be useful where blood loss is expected to be substantial (radical prostatectomy).
- Air embolism is a possible complication.
- Epidural should be used cautiously intraoperatively to avoid exacerbating hypotension due to blood loss.
- Consider using remifentanyl infusion intraoperatively.

### Postoperative

- Epidural or rectus sheath blocks and PCA.



## Nephrectomy and heminephrectomy

Procedure	Excision of kidney for tumour, other pathologies, or live donor
Time	1–2.5hr
Pain	+++ /++++
Position	Supine or lateral (kidney position)
Blood loss	Depends on pathology, 300–>3000ml. G&S/X-match as required
Practical techniques	ETT + IPPV ± thoracic epidural

### Preoperative

- Ascertain the pathology and surgical incision planned before deciding on the technique and monitoring.
- Check Hb—renal tumours can cause anaemia without blood loss.
- Check BP and renal function—‘non-functioning’ kidney or renovascular disease is associated with renal impairment and hypertension.
- Consider cell salvage intraoperatively.
- Check serum electrolytes—renal tumour can cause inappropriate ADH secretion.
- Check chest radiograph if there is a tumour—there may be metastases, pleural effusions, etc.
- Radiofrequency ablation is being developed for some tumours, and avoids the need for open surgery. Laparoscopic nephrectomy is also becoming more common (see p604).

### Perioperative

- Common surgical practice in the UK is for laparotomy via a paramedian or transverse incision for a tumour, and a loin incision with retroperitoneal approach for other pathologies or donor nephrectomy.
- Loin incision requires the ‘kidney position’, i.e. lateral with patient extended over a break in the table—a marked fall in BP is common on assuming this position due to reduced venous return from the legs and possible IVC compression. Further compression during surgery may result in a severe reduction in venous return and cardiac output.
- Ask the surgeon about the predicted extent of surgery—a large tumour may necessitate extensive dissection, possibly via a thoracotomy, or opening of the IVC to resect tumour margins, in which case sudden, torrential blood loss is possible. Occasionally the IVC is temporarily clamped to allow dissection and to control haemorrhage; this gives a sudden fall in cardiac output. Inform the surgeon if BP falls suddenly, have colloid and blood checked and available to infuse immediately under pressure, and have a vasoconstrictor or inotrope such as metaraminol or ephedrine prepared.

- Use large IV cannulae, blood warmer, CVP, and arterial line if the procedure is anything other than an uncomplicated, non-malignant nephrectomy or small isolated tumour.
- If an epidural is used, a high block will be required postoperatively, but use it cautiously intraoperatively until bleeding is under control.

### Postoperative

- All approaches are painful—epidurals are useful but need to cover up to T7/8 for a loin incision. Rectus sheath blocks may be useful for the anterior approach. PCA or opioid infusion is an alternative.
- Intercostal blocks will give analgesia for several hours after a loin incision.
- NSAIDs are useful if renal function is good postoperatively and the patient is not hypovolaemic.
- Monitor hourly urine output.

### Heminephrectomy

- Heminephrectomy is increasingly performed for a well-localised tumour or in a patient with only one kidney (beware precarious renal function).
- Blood loss can be large, as vessels are more difficult to control.
- Some surgeons suggest administration of mannitol and/or heparin before clamping of the renal artery in an attempt to maintain renal perfusion
- If renal function is markedly impaired preoperatively, optimisation of fluid balance throughout the perioperative period is extremely important. Admission to HDU postoperatively should be considered.

## Cystectomy

Procedure	Excision of bladder plus urinary diversion procedure (e.g. ileal conduit) or bladder reconstruction (orthotopic bladder formation)
Time	2–3hr (longer with bladder reconstruction)
Pain	++++
Position	Lithotomy + head-down
Blood loss	700–>3000ml, X-match 4U
Practical techniques	ETT, IPPV, arterial line + oesophageal Doppler or CVP ± epidural or rectus sheath catheters and PCA

### Preoperative

- Check for CAD, COPD, renal function, and FBC.
- Book HDU bed depending on local practice/coexisting problems.
- Ensure thromboprophylaxis is prescribed.

### Perioperative

- The commonest postoperative problem is prolonged ileus, which contributes significantly to morbidity and mortality, and several of the measures recommended are thought to reduce its incidence.
- Prepare for major blood loss: large IV cannulae, blood warmer, CVP or oesophageal Doppler cardiac output, and direct arterial monitoring are routine. Ensure blood is available and reorder intraoperatively as necessary. Consider autotransfusion intraoperatively. If blood salvage is used discontinue it when the bowel is opened.
- Remifentanyl infusion gives stable anaesthesia and controllable BP; mild hypotension can aid surgery by reducing blood loss.
- Use epidural cautiously intraoperatively: there will be plenty of time after the main blood-losing episode to establish an adequate block.
- Take measures to prevent heat loss, e.g. warm air blanket.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis as for bowel resection.
- Use of nasogastric tubes is decreasing—ask surgeon if specifically required.
- Blood loss can be insidious from pelvic venous plexuses: weigh swabs.
- Air embolism is a possible complication, as in any major pelvic surgery.

### Postoperative

- Epidural anaesthesia (or rectus sheath catheters and PCA) is advisable for at least 2d.
- NSAIDs are useful, but ensure good renal function before prescribing.
- Use CVP/urine output to guide fluid replacement—requirements are usually large due to intraperitoneal loss and ileus.
- Urine output via a new ileal conduit is difficult to monitor as drainage tends to be positional. Following orthotopic reconstruction urine drains from a number of different catheters so needs to be calculated each hour to monitor output.
- Early feeding may be associated with reduced incidence of certain postoperative complications.
- Leakage from a ureteric anastomosis may present as urine in the abdominal drain—confirm by comparing biochemistry of the drainage fluid and urine from the conduit.

## Laparoscopic urological surgery

- This is an increasingly common technique for many abdominal, retroperitoneal, and pelvic procedures in urology—including nephrectomy, live donor nephrectomy, pyeloplasty, prostatectomy, and cystectomy.
- There have been only a few controlled trials of adequate size comparing surgical outcomes from open and laparoscopic procedures. Tendency to show reduced pain/length of stay and faster return to oral diet compared to open surgery.
- Preoperative investigation and preparation as for equivalent open procedure. Gastric acid suppression with a PPI/H<sub>2</sub> blocker has been recommended to reduce risk from aspiration of gastric content.
- Duration may be considerably longer than open operation so plan heat conservation, etc.
- Positioning depends on procedure—lateral for retroperitoneal approach to kidney; cystectomy and prostatectomy will require head-down position.
- Potential complications are the same as in any laparoscopic procedure (see p554) plus others due to prolonged increase in intra-abdominal pressure (IAP) and steep head-down tilt:
  - Increase in SVR and BP with increased myocardial work and risk of myocardial ischaemia; further increases in IAP can reduce cardiac output and BP.
  - Reduction of renal function with theoretical risk of postoperative renal dysfunction, or of poor transplant kidney function in the case of donor nephrectomy. Possibly helped by perioperative fluid loading to maintain a diuresis.
  - Decrease in FRC, atelectasis, worsening V/Q mismatch, and reduction in compliance. PEEP may be useful.
  - Risk of endobronchial intubation due to cephalad migration of trachea.
  - Increased risk of regurgitation of gastric contents.
  - Increased intracranial pressure, which could be exacerbated by hypercarbia, and increased intraocular pressure (beware patients with glaucoma). Presumed high risk of DVT—ensure appropriate thromboprophylaxis.
  - Significant CO<sub>2</sub> absorption can occur (increasing catecholamine release) so end tidal CO<sub>2</sub> must be monitored, and ventilation may need to be adjusted accordingly throughout the case.
- Suggest avoid using N<sub>2</sub>O. A remifentanyl infusion works well
- Risk of diaphragmatic tear during retroperitoneal nephrectomy.
- Postoperative pain is considerably less than for open procedures but can still be severe enough to require opioid analgesia in addition to simple analgesics.
- The urinary diversion stage of a cystectomy is often performed as an open procedure so appropriate regional analgesia recommended.

### Robot-assisted laparoscopic surgery

- The commonest use of robots to date is in urological surgery, mostly in radical prostatectomy.
- Advantages to the surgeon over conventional laparoscopy include provision of 3-D vision; filtration of any hand tremor; scaling down of hand movements to allow very precise work; greater range of movements within the patient; and a comfortable and stable position for the surgeon.
- Advantages to the patient are thought to be a reduction in blood loss, pain, and length of stay, with a reduced incidence of incontinence and erectile dysfunction following prostatectomy.
- In addition to the problems of pneumoperitoneum listed above, the specific disadvantages for the anaesthetist include:
  - Poor access to the patient, so ensure reliable, large-bore, venous access.
  - Robotic equipment is locked in position once inserted into the abdomen so any inadvertent patient movement can cause grave surgical complications—infusions of muscle relaxants with monitoring by PNS recommended.
  - Difficulties communicating with the surgeon due to the bulk and space required for the equipment—team needs to be familiar with audio equipment and also able to remove robot quickly in case of an emergency requiring resuscitation.
- Large urine output can interfere with surgical field—suggest minimal IV fluid until anastomosis complete (may reduce risk of airway oedema).
- An increase in operative time with even steeper head-down tilt has been associated with the following complications:
  - Neuropraxia, especially brachial—take care with positioning shoulder brace.
  - Facial/airway oedema and stridor.
  - Acid burns to eyes and oral ulceration due to reflux of gastric acid—keep face visible throughout to observe for this. Consider gastric tube and protective eye goggles.
  - Cerebral oedema—a short-acting volatile agent and/or remifentanyl allows rapid assessment of conscious level postoperatively.

## Percutaneous stone removal

Procedure	Endoscopic excision of renal stone via nephrostomy
Time	60–90min
Pain	++/+++
Position	Prone oblique
Blood loss	Variable, 0–1000ml
Practical techniques	ETT and IPPV

### Preoperative

- Usually healthy young and middle-aged adults, but stones may be due to underlying metabolic problem or due to bladder dysfunction from neurological disability.
- Check renal function.

### Perioperative

- Patient initially in the lithotomy position to insert ureteric stents, then turned semiprone to place nephrostomy posterolaterally below the twelfth rib, under radiographic control—potential to dislodge lines and for pressure area damage.
- Consider an armoured ETT to prevent kinking, and secure well. Need to turn head towards operative side so best to position ETT in same side of mouth.
- Support the chest and pelvis to allow abdominal excursion with ventilation.
- Support and pad the head, arms, and lower legs and pad eyes.
- Check ventilation during and after position changes.
- May need to temporarily interrupt ventilation for radiographs.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis may be required.

### Postoperative

- Pain from nephrostomy is variable.
- Paracetamol, NSAIDs (check renal function), PCA morphine, or oral codeine.

### Special considerations

- Hypothermia can occur if large volumes of irrigation fluid are used.
- Insertion of nephrostomy is often close to the diaphragm with possibility of breaching the pleura, causing pneumothorax or hydrothorax—if in doubt perform a CXR postoperatively.
- Rupture of the renal pelvis is a recognised complication when large volumes of irrigant may enter the retroperitoneal space.
- Postoperative Gram-negative septicaemia is a significant risk after any urinary tract surgery for stones (see p593).

## Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy

Procedure	Non-invasive fragmentation of renal stones using pulsed ultrasound
Time	20–40min
Pain	+ / + +
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	Sedation for adults. GA/LMA for children

In the early days of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy patients were suspended in a water bath in a semi-sitting position, which produced a number of problems for the anaesthetist. Developments in the 1980s meant that a water bath was no longer required and more recent refinements of the ultrasound beam have made it less uncomfortable so that with most current lithotriptors only a few patients need anaesthesia or sedation.

### Preoperative

- Patients often undergo repeated lithotripsy, so refer to previous treatment records where possible.
- Premedication with paracetamol/NSAID (note renal function) is usually effective for treatment.

### Perioperative

- Lateral position with arms above the head.
- Renal stones are located using ultrasound or an image intensifier and the shock wave focused on the stones.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis may be required.

### Postoperative

Mild discomfort only—oral analgesics or NSAIDs are adequate.

### Special considerations

- Shock wave can cause occasional dysrhythmias, which are usually self-limiting. If persistent, the shock waves can be delivered in time with the ECG (refractory period). Judicious use of anticholinergics (glycopyrronium 200µg) will increase the heart rate and increase the frequency of delivered shock.
- Pacemakers can be deprogrammed by the shock wave—seek advice from a pacemaker technician.
- Energy from shock waves is released when they meet an air/water interface. It is advisable to use saline, rather than air, for ‘loss of resistance’ if siting an epidural.



## Renal transplant

Procedure	Transplantation of cadaveric or live donor organ
Time	90–180min
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Not significant—500ml
Practical techniques	ETT and IPPV, CVP

### Preoperative

- Usual problems related to chronic renal failure and uraemia (see pp128–32).
- Chronic anaemia is common (Hb usually around 8g/dl). Do not transfuse to normal levels.
- There has usually been recent haemo- or peritoneal dialysis, therefore some degree of hypovolaemia and possibly residual anticoagulation.
- Check postdialysis potassium. Patient's normal value may be quite high.
- Avoid A-V fistulae when placing the IV cannula. Avoid using large forearm or antecubital veins if possible (may be needed for future fistulae).

### Perioperative

- Fluid load prior to induction—wide swings in arterial pressure are not uncommon.
- Commonly used agents that can be used in renal failure include isoflurane, atracurium, remifentanyl, and fentanyl.
- Consider central line with strict aseptic technique and monitor central venous pressure—many units have protocols.
- Prior to graft insertion, gradually increase CVP to 10–12mmHg (using colloids or crystalloids) to maintain optimal graft perfusion and promote urine production.
- Maintain normothermia.
- Most centres use a cocktail of drugs once the graft is perfused to enhance survival (e.g. hydrocortisone 100mg, mannitol 20% 60ml, furosemide 80mg or more). Have these prepared.

### Postoperative

- PCA is adequate; if using morphine beware of much reduced clearance. An epidural is also possible, but there is a danger of bleeding on insertion (residual anticoagulation from haemodialysis, poor platelet function, etc.) and problems with fluid loading and maintaining blood pressure postoperatively.
- Avoid NSAIDs.
- Monitor CVP and urine output hourly. Maintain mild hypervolaemia to promote a diuresis. Many units have protocols for fluid balance, e.g. previous hour's urine output plus 50ml saline per hour.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Other urological procedures

Operation	Description	Time (min)	Pain (+ to +++++)	Position	Blood loss/X-match	Notes
Ureteroscopy	Investigate obstruction, remove stones	20–60	+	Lithotomy	Nil	LMA + SV. Check renal function. Possible antibiotic prophylaxis
Insert ureteric stent	To relieve ureteric obstruction, using image intensifier	20	+	Lithotomy	Nil	LM + SV. Possible antibiotic prophylaxis
Remove ureteric stent	Cystoscopy to retrieve stent	10–20	+	Lithotomy	Nil	Awake or LMA + SV. Often possible with flexi scope and LA
Insert suprapubic catheter	Transcutaneous insertion of catheter into full bladder	15	+	Lithotomy or supine	Nil	Sedation + LA or LMA + SV. Often frail patients with advanced neurological disease
Bladder neck incision	Transurethral diathermy incision of prostate at narrowed bladder neck	15–30	++	Lithotomy	Nil	LMA + SV. Younger patients than TURP
Urethroplasty	Reconstruction of urethra narrowed by trauma or infection—very variable procedure	90–240	++++	Lithotomy	300–2000ml	ETT + IPPV ± epidural. Beware prolonged lithotomy. Consider epidural for postoperative pain

Nesbitt's procedure	Straightening of penile deformation from Peyronie's disease	60–120	+++	Supine	Nil	LMA + SV. Consider caudal or penile block
Circumcision	Excision of foreskin	20	++	Supine	Nil	LMA + SV + LA. Penile block or caudal useful. Topical lidocaine gel to take home. LA alone possible in frail elderly
Urethral dilatation	Stretching of narrowed urethra with serial dilators	10	+	Lithotomy or supine	Nil	LMA or spinal Possible antibiotic prophylaxis
Urethral meatotomy	Incision to widen urethral meatus	10	+	Supine	Nil	LMA + SV
Orchidectomy	Remove testis/es—through groin or scrotum depending on pathology	20–45	++	Supine	Nil	LMA + SV + ilioinguinal block. Need to block to T9/10 if using regional technique due to embryological origins
Vasectomy	Division of vas deferens via scrotal incision	20–40	++	Supine	Nil	LMA + SV. Often under LA
Pyeloplasty	Refashioning of obstructed renal pelvis via loin incision. Children and young adults	90–120	++++	Lateral 'kidney position'	300–500ml	ETT + IPPV + epidural/PCA. Similar considerations as nephrectomy. May be significant blood loss in children

### Further reading

- Conacher ID, Soomro NA, Rix D (2004). Anaesthesia for laparoscopic urological surgery. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **93**, 859–864.
- Irvine M, Patil V (2009). Anaesthesia for robot-assisted laparoscopic surgery. *British Journal of Anaesthesia CEACCP*, **9**(4), 125–129.
- Maffezzini M, Campodonico F, Canepa G, Gerbi G, Parodi D (2008). Current perioperative management of radical cystectomy with intestinal urinary reconstruction for muscle-invasive bladder cancer and reduction of the incidence of postoperative ileus. *Surgical Oncology*, **17**, 41–48.
- O'Donnell AM, Foo ITH (2009). Anaesthesia for transurethral resection of the prostate. *British Journal of Anaesthesia CEACCP*, **9**(3), 92–96.
- SarinKapoor H, Kaur R, Kaur H (2007). Anaesthesia for renal transplant surgery. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*, **51**, 1354–1367.

# Gynaecological surgery

## John Saddler

General principles 614

Minor gynaecological procedures 615

ERPC, STOP (VTOP) 616

Laparoscopy/laparoscopic sterilisation 618

Tension-free vaginal tape (TVT) 620

Abdominal hysterectomy 622

Vaginal hysterectomy 624

Ectopic pregnancy 626

Other gynaecological procedures 628

## General principles

Many gynaecological patients are fit and undergo relatively minor procedures as day cases. Others are inpatients undergoing more major surgery. Elderly patients often require operations to relieve pelvic floor prolapse.

- Many patients are apprehensive, even for relatively minor surgery.
- Postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) is a particular problem. With high-risk patients use appropriate techniques, avoid nitrous oxide, and give prophylactic antiemetics.
- Pelvic surgery is associated with deep vein thrombosis (DVT)—ensure that adequate prophylactic measures have been taken.
- Prophylactic antibiotics reduce postoperative wound infection rates for certain operations—check your hospital protocol.
- Patients on the OCP should be managed according to local protocol; guidelines are suggested on p12.
- Vagal stimulation may occur during cervical dilatation, traction on the pelvic organs or the mesentery, or during laparoscopic procedures.
- Take care during patient positioning. Patients are often moved up or down the table, when airway devices can be dislodged and disconnections can occur. Pre-existing back or joint pain may be worsened in the lithotomy position, and if the legs are supported in stirrups there is a potential for common peroneal nerve injury.
- During laparotomies ensure that patients are kept warm.
- During major gynaecological surgery considerable blood loss may occur, and surgery may be prolonged.

## Minor gynaecological procedures

Procedure	D&C, hysteroscopy, oocyte retrieval
Time	20–30min
Pain	+
Position	Supine, lithotomy
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	LMA, SV, day case

Minor operations that enable access to the endometrial cavity through the cervix include:

- **D&C** (dilatation and curettage). Largely superseded now by hysteroscopic examination.
- **Hysteroscopy**: the surgeon is able to visualise the endometrial cavity using a rigid scope. The hysteroscope is flushed with crystalloid to enable better visualisation. Fluid volume is measured to ensure there is no uterine perforation (suspect if volume recovered less than the volume infused).
- A brief general anaesthetic may be requested for an oocyte retrieval procedure. Patients will have received prior hormonal stimulation to induce the production of oocytes in the ovaries. These are removed with the aid of ultrasound through a transvaginal approach. This may also be performed with sedation.

### Preoperative

- Many patients will be treated as day cases.
- Consider prescribing diclofenac and ranitidine, or obtain permission for rectal administration perioperatively.

### Perioperative

Spontaneous ventilation using a facemask or LMA, propofol (infusion or intermittent bolus) or volatile.

### Postoperative

Simple oral analgesics, plus antiemetic of choice.

### Special considerations

- Vagal stimulation may occur with cervical dilatation; anticholinergic drugs should be immediately available.
- Stimulation may also induce laryngospasm—ensure adequate depth of anaesthesia.
- There is a risk of uterine perforation through the fundus whenever surgical instruments are introduced through the cervix and into the endometrial cavity. Antibiotics are usually prescribed if this is thought to have occurred. A small perforation can be treated expectantly; larger perforations may require a laparoscopy to evaluate the extent of the perforation.



## ERPC, STOP (VTOP)

Procedure	ERPC (evacuation of retained products of conception). STOP/VTOP (suction or vaginal termination of pregnancy)
Time	10–20min
Pain	+
Position	Supine, lithotomy
Blood loss	Usually minimal
Practical techniques	LMA, SV, day case

### Preoperative

- **ERPC:** remaining products of conception may have to be surgically removed after an incomplete miscarriage. This usually occurs between 6–12wk gestation. Substantial blood loss may have occurred preoperatively, and may continue perioperatively. IV access and crystalloid/colloid infusion are required if haemorrhage appears anything more than trivial.
- **STOP/VTOP** is a procedure undertaken at up to 12wk gestation.

### Perioperative

- LMA or FM. Intubate unfasted emergency patients.
- Avoid high concentrations of volatile agents due to the relaxant effect on the uterus. Propofol induction followed by intermittent boluses or TIVA and an opioid (fentanyl) is appropriate.
- A drug to help contract the uterus and reduce bleeding is usually requested. Oxytocin 5U is usually given. This may cause an increase in heart rate. The use of ergometrine, a vasoconstrictor, is declining because it raises arterial pressure.

### Postoperative

Oral analgesics and antiemetic.

### Special considerations

- Pregnancies beyond 12 weeks can be terminated surgically by dilatation and evacuation (D+E). The procedure is similar to a STOP/VTOP, but there is greater potential for blood loss. Larger doses of oxytocin may be required.
- If there are symptoms of reflux oesophagitis, ranitidine or PPI premedication and intubation are indicated.
- If a pregnancy has gone beyond 16wk, it may be terminated medically with prostaglandin. These patients may still require an ERPC, and should be managed similarly to a retained placenta (see p768).

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Laparoscopy/laparoscopic sterilisation

Procedure	Intra-abdominal examination of gynaecological organs through a rigid scope $\pm$ clips to Fallopian tubes
Time	15–30min
Pain	+ / ++
Position	Supine, lithotomy, head down tilt
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	ETT/IPPV, LMA/SV, day case

### Preoperative

- Usually fit young adults.
- Obtain consent for suppositories or give oral analgesics preoperatively.

### Perioperative

- Use a short-acting non-depolarising muscle relaxant. 'Top-ups' may be required. Monitor with a nerve stimulator and use reversal agents if necessary at the end.
- Endotracheal intubation.
- Give a short-acting opioid (e.g. fentanyl) and PR NSAID (e.g. diclofenac 100mg).
- Encourage the surgeon to infiltrate the skin incisions with local analgesia.
- An alternative technique for uncomplicated short procedures is to use spontaneous ventilation and an LMA. This is only suitable for non-obese patients and the potential for gastric regurgitation and aspiration must be assessed carefully. If gas insufflation is hampered by abdominal muscle tone, deepen anaesthesia or use a small dose of mivacurium, and assist ventilation until the return of SV.

### Postoperative

Opioids (morphine) may be required.

### Special considerations

- As many of these procedures are short and may only take 10–15min, mivacurium is a logical muscle relaxant to use.
- Bradycardias are common, due to vagal stimulation. Atropine should be readily available. Many anaesthetists administer glycopyrronium prophylactically at induction.
- Shoulder pain is common postoperatively due to diaphragmatic irritation. Although self-limiting, it can be difficult to treat, and is reduced by expelling as much carbon dioxide from the abdomen as possible at the end of the procedure.

- Occasionally, surgical instruments damage abdominal contents which may result in severe blood loss, and a laparotomy is required.
- Very rarely, carbon dioxide gas may be inadvertently injected intravascularly, resulting in **gas embolus**. This results in ventilation/perfusion mismatch, with a fall in  $\text{ETCO}_2$ , impaired cardiac output, hypotension, arrhythmias, and tachycardia. If this is thought to have occurred, the surgeon should be alerted, nitrous oxide should be discontinued, and the patient should be resuscitated.
- If an LMA is used, consider premedication with oral ranitidine or a PPI, and the use of a device with a gastric channel (e.g. Proseal).

## Tension-free vaginal tape (TVT)

Procedure	Tape insertion for stress incontinence
Time	20min
Pain	+
Position	Lithotomy
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	Various (see below)

### Preoperative

- Obtain consent for suppositories if planned.

### Perioperative

- Several anaesthetic techniques are currently employed.
- Some surgeons are happy with a spontaneous breathing technique with LMA.
- Many require the patient to cough, so that the tension in the tapes can be adjusted. Here, a spinal or local anaesthetic technique can be employed, usually with sedation/or light TCI.
- PR NSAID (e.g. diclofenac) is advisable
- Take care with positioning (lithotomy position).

### Postoperative

- Patients may be day cases, but some stay overnight.
- Opioids (e.g. morphine) are only rarely required.

### Special considerations

- Anaesthetic technique is largely determined by the surgical approach. Liaise carefully with the surgeon before induction of anaesthesia.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Abdominal hysterectomy

Procedure	Removal of uterus through abdominal incision (may also include ovaries as bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy)
Time	1hr, often longer
Pain	+++
Position	Supine, head down
Blood loss	250–500ml, G&S
Practical techniques	ETT, IPPV, PCA

### Preoperative

- Patients may be anaemic if they have had menorrhagia or postmenopausal bleeding.
- Renal function may be abnormal if an abdominal mass has been compressing the ureters.
- Many patients are anxious and require premedication.
- Postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) is common.
- Ensure prophylaxis for deep vein thrombosis (DVT) has been initiated.

### Perioperative

- Oral intubation and ventilation.
- If a Pfannenstiel ('bikini line') incision is anticipated, consider bilateral ilioinguinal blocks with bupivacaine (see p1153). The patient should be warned about the possibility of femoral nerve involvement. 'TAP' blocks are an alternative (see p1155).
- Deep muscle relaxation is required to enable the surgeon to gain optimal access.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis is usually required.
- Head-down positioning is often requested which may cause ventilation pressures to rise with diaphragmatic compression. Central venous pressure will increase and gastric regurgitation is also more likely.
- Blood loss is variable; some hysterectomies bleed more than expected. Crossmatch blood early if bleeding appears to be a problem.
- Heat loss through the abdominal incision can be significant. Use a warm air blanket over the upper body during the operation.

### Postoperative

- Pain is usually reasonably well controlled with a PCA. This can be supplemented with local anaesthetic blocks or wound infiltration, regular paracetamol, and NSAIDs. Regular administration of antiemetics may be required.
- Oxygen therapy is indicated for 24hr postoperatively or longer. Patients usually tolerate nasal cannulae better than face masks.

### Special considerations

- **Epidurals** provide useful analgesia in patients who have had midline ('up and down') incisions. **Rectus sheath catheters** are increasingly being used as an alternative to epidurals, usually in combination with a PCA.
- **Wertheim's hysterectomy** is undertaken in patients who have cervical and uterine malignancies. The uterus, Fallopian tubes, and often the ovaries are removed, but, in addition, the pelvic lymph nodes are dissected out. These operations take much longer and there is a potential for substantial blood loss. Invasive monitoring with central venous access or oesophageal Doppler monitoring, and invasive arterial pressure monitoring should be considered particularly for compromised patients. Epidural analgesia is useful for postoperative pain.



## Vaginal hysterectomy

Procedure	Removal of the uterus through the vagina
Time	50min
Pain	+ / ++
Position	Lithotomy
Blood loss	Variable, usually less than 500ml
Practical techniques	LMA, SV, caudal. Spinal

### Preoperative

A degree of uterine prolapse enables the operation to be performed more easily. Patients are therefore usually older and may be frail with underlying cardiac or respiratory problems.

### Perioperative

- A spontaneous breathing technique with LMA is usual. Give a longer-acting IV opioid (e.g. morphine 5–10mg or pethidine 50–100mg) and supplement with NSAIDs.
- A caudal with 20ml bupivacaine 0.25% improves postoperative analgesia, but beware toxic levels (see below).
- Spinal anaesthesia (3ml bupivacaine 0.5%) with or without supplemental sedation is a satisfactory alternative.
- The surgeon usually infiltrates the operative field with a vasoconstrictor to reduce bleeding. Local analgesia infiltration at the same time will aid postoperative analgesia. Monitor the cardiovascular system carefully during this period, and ensure that safe doses of these drugs are not exceeded.
- Take care with positioning. Many patients will have hip and/or knee arthritis, and may have had surgery to these joints. Lloyd-Davies leg slings may be preferable to leg stirrups if leg joints articulate poorly. The common peroneal nerve may be compressed in leg stirrups.
- Keep the patient warm, preferably with a warmed air blanket.

### Postoperative

- This operation is less painful than an abdominal hysterectomy. If opioids, NSAIDs, and local analgesia infiltration/caudal have been given intraoperatively, further analgesia needs are often very modest (IM/oral opioids).
- Elderly patients will require supplemental oxygen for at least 24hr postoperatively.

### Special considerations

- The procedure is often supplemented by either an anterior or a posterior repair which reduces bladder and bowel prolapse through the vagina.
- It is usually not possible to remove the Fallopian tubes and ovaries during a vaginal hysterectomy because of the restricted surgical field.

- Laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy (LAVH) is designed to enable the uterus, Fallopian tubes, and ovaries to be removed through the vagina. The operation begins with a laparoscopy, at which the broad ligament is identified and detached. There is a risk of haemorrhage and ureteric damage at this stage. The anaesthetic principles for laparoscopy apply except that a longer-acting muscle relaxant and an endotracheal tube should be used. Once satisfactory mobility of the gynaecological organs has been achieved at laparoscopy, they are then removed through a vaginal incision. PCA analgesia should be considered postoperatively.

## Ectopic pregnancy

Procedure	Laparotomy to stop bleeding from ruptured tubal pregnancy
Time	40min
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Can be massive, X-match 2U
Practical techniques	ETT, IPPV, PCA

### Preoperative

- The presentation is variable. A stable patient may have ill-defined abdominal pain and amenorrhoea, others may present with life-threatening abdominal haemorrhage. At least one large-bore IV cannula should be inserted prior to theatre, and crystalloids, colloids, or blood products infused according to the clinical picture.
- FBC, crossmatch, and possibly a clotting screen should be requested on admission.
- Seek help from a second anaesthetist if the patient is unstable.

### Perioperative

- Rapid sequence induction.
- Careful IV induction if blood loss is suspected. Consider etomidate (give IV hydrocortisone 50–100mg if used) or ketamine if shocked.
- Continue IV fluid resuscitation.

### Postoperative

- Clotting abnormalities are not uncommon if large volumes of blood have been lost. Send a clotting screen for analysis if necessary, and organise fresh frozen plasma and platelet infusions if indicated.
- Actively warm the patient in the recovery room with heated blankets if possible.
- PCA for postoperative analgesia.

### Special considerations

- Stable patients may undergo a diagnostic laparoscopy. Be aware that the pneumoperitoneum may impede venous return, resulting in hypotension.
- Many centres now perform the whole operation through the laparoscope as a routine, and only convert to a laparotomy if there are any complications.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Other gynaecological procedures

Operation	Description	Time (min)	Pain (+ to +++++)	Position	Blood loss/ X-match	Notes
Colposuspension	Abdominal procedure for stress incontinence	40	+++	Supine	G&S	ETT, IPPV
Cone biopsy/LLETZ	Removal of the terminal part of the cervix through the vagina	30	++	Supine	G&S	May bleed postoperatively. LMA, SV
Laparotomy, investigative	Abdominal assessment of pelvic mass	125	++++	Supine	2U	Ovarian tumours may be adherent to adjacent structures. Potentially large blood loss
Myomectomy	Abdominal excision of fibroids from uterus	60	+++	Supine	G&S	Blood loss may be greater than expected. ETT, IPPV
Oophorectomy	Removal of ovaries	40	+++	Supine	G&S	ETT, IPPV
Repair, anterior	Repair of anterior vaginal wall	20	++	Lithotomy	Nil	Often combined with vaginal hysterectomy. LMA ± caudal
Repair, posterior	Repair of posterior vaginal wall	20	++	Lithotomy	Nil	Often combined with vaginal hysterectomy. LMA ± caudal
Sacrocolpopexy	Abdominal repair of vault prolapse	60	+++	Supine	G&S	ETT, IPPV
Sacrospinous fixation	Vaginal operation for vault prolapse	40	++	Lithotomy	Nil	

Shirodkar suture	Insertion of suture around cervix to prevent recurrent miscarriage	20	++	Lithotomy	Nil	May need antacid prophylaxis (see p766)
Thermoablation	Thermal obliteration of endometrium	20	++	Lithotomy	Nil	May require opioids
TCRE	Endoscopic resection of endometrium	30	+	Lithotomy	Nil	Systemic absorption of water may occur from the glycine solution. Treat as for TURP syndrome
Vulvectomy, simple	Excision of vulva	90	+++	Lithotomy	G&S	
Vulvectomy, radical	Excision of vulva and lymph nodes	150	++++	Lithotomy	2U	Epidural analgesia recommended

*This page intentionally left blank*

# **Ear, nose, and throat surgery**

## **Fred Roberts**

General principles 632  
Preoperative airway obstruction 636  
Obstructive sleep apnoea 638  
Grommet insertion 640  
Tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy: child 642  
Tonsillectomy in adults 645  
Myringoplasty 646  
Stapedectomy/tympanoplasty 647  
Nasal cavity surgery 648  
Microlaryngoscopy 650  
Tracheostomy 652  
Laryngectomy 654  
Pharyngectomy 656  
Radical neck dissection 658  
Parotidectomy 660  
Other ENT procedures 662

See also:

Cleft lip and palate repair 850



## General principles

Airway problems are the major concern in ear, nose, and throat (ENT) surgery, related to both the underlying clinical problem and the shared airway.

Presenting pathology may:

- Produce airway obstruction
- Make access difficult or impossible.

Surgeons working in or close to the airway can:

- Displace or obstruct airway equipment
- Obscure the anaesthetist's view of the patient
- Limit access for the anaesthetist during operation
- Produce bleeding into the airway (intra- and postoperatively).

The surgeon and anaesthetist should plan together to use techniques/equipment that provide good conditions for surgery whilst maintaining a safe, secure airway. Whenever an airway problem is suspected intraoperatively, correcting it is the first priority, stopping surgery if necessary. Other structures around the head are inaccessible during surgery and need protection—especially the eyes. Ensure they are kept closed with appropriate tape, padded as necessary, and that pressure from equipment is prevented, especially for long cases.

### Airway/ventilation management

#### *ETT or LMA*

- Traditionally an endotracheal tube (ETT) has been used for airway protection for the majority of ENT work.
- Preformed RAE (Ring, Adair, Elwyn) tubes provide excellent protection with minimal intrusion into the surgical field.
- An oral (south-facing) RAE tube is used for nasal and much oral surgery, although a nasal tube (north-facing) allows better surgical access to the oral cavity.
- The laryngeal mask airway (LMA) or equivalent supraglottic airway is increasingly being used, usually of the reinforced flexible type. It offers adequate protection against aspiration of blood or surgical debris and reduces complications of tracheal intubation/extubation. It restricts surgical access to a greater degree, however, and is more prone to displacement during surgery (with potentially catastrophic results).

#### *SV or IPPV*

- Neuromuscular blockade (NMB) is not required for most ENT surgery.
- Many ENT anaesthetists still favour spontaneous ventilation (SV), regarding movement of the reservoir bag as a valuable sign of airway integrity.
- If SV is used via an ETT, suxamethonium produces the best conditions for intubation, but side effects are troublesome, particularly myalgia in a population where early ambulation is likely. Alternatives include mivacurium, combinations of high-dose propofol and alfentanil/remifentanil, and deep inhalational anaesthesia.
- IPPV enables faster recovery and return of airway reflexes.

### Deep or light extubation

- Many ENT procedures create bleeding into the airway. Suction (and pack removal) under direct vision before extubation is essential in such cases, taking care not to traumatise any surgical sites.
- One particular danger site for blood accumulation is the nasopharynx behind the soft palate, an area not readily visible. Blood pooling here can be aspirated following extubation, with fatal results (**'Coroner's clot'**). It is best cleared using either a nasal suction catheter or a Yankauer sucker rotated so its angled tip is placed behind the uvula.
- Laryngospasm can follow extubation, particularly in children, from recent instrumentation of the larynx or irritation by blood. The risk is minimised by extubating either deep or light (not in-between).
- Deep extubation is best suited to SV. At the end of surgery, continue or even increase the volatile agent concentration, but change gases to 100% oxygen (to increase the FRC store). After careful suction, insert a Guedel airway, turn patient left lateral/head down (**tonsil position**), check respiration is regular (turning can produce transient coughing/breath holding), then extubate.
- Check airway/respiration are fine, and keep patient in this position until airway reflexes return. Since the patient remains anaesthetised in recovery, at risk of airway complications, appropriately skilled recovery staff are essential with the anaesthetist immediately available.
- In the early recovery period, continuous low suction can be done via a catheter just protruding from the Guedel airway.
- Light extubation is best suited to IPPV. After careful suctioning, any residual NMB is reversed, inhalational agents discontinued, and the trachea extubated after laryngeal reflexes have returned.
- Light extubation often produces a brief period of coughing/restlessness initially. This is less frequent with the use of opioids.
- Light extubation is recommended in all patients with a difficult airway.

### Throat packs<sup>1</sup>

- A throat pack (wet gauze or tampons) is often used around the ETT/LMA to absorb blood that might otherwise pool in the upper airway.
- A throat pack is particularly useful during nasal operations where bleeding can be substantial and is not cleared during surgery.
- The pack must be removed before extubation, as it can lead to catastrophic airway obstruction if left. Systems to ensure removal include:
  - Tie or tape the pack to the ETT.
  - Place an identification sticker on the ETT or patient's forehead.
  - Include the pack in the scrub nurse's count.
  - *Always perform laryngoscopy prior to extubation.*

**Nasal vasoconstrictors**

- Vasoconstriction is used to reduce bleeding in most nasal surgery. Cocaine (4–10%) and adrenaline (1:100 000–1:200 000) are the most commonly used agents, administered by:
  - Spray
  - Paste/gel
  - Soaked swabs
  - Infiltration (not cocaine).
- The recommended maximum dose of cocaine is 1.5mg/kg, though absorption from topical application is only partial. Sympathomimetic activity can result transiently after cocaine absorption.
- Moffett (1947) described a mixture for topical nasal vasoconstriction consisting of:
  - 2ml cocaine 8%
  - 1ml adrenaline 1:1000
  - 2ml sodium bicarbonate 1%.
- Moffett's solution is still used with assorted modifications, e.g. cocaine 10%, bicarbonate 8.4%, or mixed in aqueous gel.

**Remifentanyl**

- The intense opioid action of remifentanyl, combined with its rapid recovery profile, has led to its growing popularity.
- Normally given by infusion, clinical applications include:
  - Middle ear surgery/major head and neck resections (controlled arterial pressure reduces bleeding)
  - Parotidectomy (facilitates IPPV without relaxant)
  - Laryngoscopy/pharyngoscopy (attenuates hypertensive response).
- Beware of bradycardia/hypotension on induction, particularly in the elderly: give a 5–10ml/kg IV fluid preload and glycopyrronium for bradycardia.
- Inter-patient variability greatly limits the value of predetermined infusion schemes.
- For major surgery, to prevent postoperative rebound hypertension/agitation in recovery, continue remifentanyl at a low infusion rate or give morphine 15–20min before the end of surgery: clonidine up to 150µg IV is also useful.

1 Throat packs. National Patient Safety Agency alert. <http://www.nrls.npsa.nhs.uk/resources/?entryid45=59853>.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Preoperative airway obstruction

(See also p990)

### Assessment

- Patients with preoperative airway obstruction usually present for surgery either to establish the diagnosis or to relieve the obstruction.
- The most common level for obstruction is the larynx, producing stridor (high-pitched, inspiratory) and markedly reduced exercise tolerance. Classified as supraglottic, glottic, or subglottic.
- In adults, tumours are the commonest cause of upper airway obstruction, though haematoma or infection (including epiglottitis) is also possible. In children, infection (croup) or foreign body is more likely; in the UK, Hib vaccination has virtually eliminated childhood epiglottitis.
- Extreme airway obstruction will cause obvious signs of respiratory distress at rest. Exhaustion or an obtunded conscious level indicate the need for immediate intervention.
- If obstruction has a gradual onset, patients can compensate very effectively and moderately severe obstruction can develop without gross physical signs. Features to help recognise a substantial degree of upper airway obstruction include:
  - Long, slow inspirations, with pauses during speech.
  - Worsening stridor during sleep (history from spouse/night nursing staff) or exercise.
- Oropharyngeal lesions rarely present with airway obstruction and assessment is normally straightforward on preoperative examination. Important features are limitation of mouth opening and tongue protrusion, and identification of any masses compromising the airway.
- Useful information may come from radiographs (plain films, CT/MRI) or ENT clinic flexible or indirect laryngoscopy.

### Management

- For life-threatening airway obstruction emergency intervention may be needed, but usually surgery will be a planned procedure.
- For emergencies, avoid undue delays. Whilst preparing theatre, helium by facemask (FM) can improve flow past the obstruction (low density favourable for turbulent flow), though this must not delay definitive management. Medical helium comes premixed (79%) with oxygen (21%); additional oxygen should be added via a Y connector.
- The main problems in securing airway access are:
  - Airway obstruction likely to be worsened by lying the patient flat, instrumenting the larynx, or general anaesthesia (all techniques).
  - Identifying the laryngeal inlet may be difficult because of anatomical distortion (especially supraglottic lesions).
  - Severe stenosis may make passage of tube difficult (particularly glottic or subglottic tumours).
- There is little evidence to support any one particular anaesthetic technique. However, the use of IV induction agents or NMB carries the catastrophic risk of 'can't intubate/can't ventilate' in a patient unable to breathe spontaneously.

- The three main options for establishing secure airway access are:
  - Direct laryngoscopy/tracheal intubation under deep inhalational anaesthesia using sevoflurane or halothane.
  - Tracheal intubation under local anaesthesia (LA) using fiberoptic laryngoscopy.
  - Tracheostomy under LA (or deep inhalational general anaesthesia with FM or LMA in less severe cases).
- Fiberoptic intubation under LA may be difficult with stenotic lesions as the airway may be completely blocked by the scope during the procedure.
- Mason and Fielder<sup>1</sup> reviewed the merits of each technique for airway obstruction at different levels, but concluded none is universally certain, safe, and easy and the final decision in each case will be strongly influenced by the particular skills and experience of the anaesthetist and surgeon concerned.
- Whichever technique is used, a full range of equipment should be prepared, including different laryngoscopes, cricothyroidotomy kit, and tubes in various sizes. An ETT kept on ice will be stiffer and may be useful to get past an obstructing lesion.
- In children, deep inhalational anaesthesia is the only realistic option. Delays in getting to theatre must be avoided because of rapid and unpredictable decline in condition. To minimise upset in a small child, it may well be best to delay IV cannulation until after induction—usually this is best undertaken with the child sitting, being comforted by a parent. A moderate degree of CPAP is very effective at keeping the airway patent as anaesthesia deepens. Once deep, and if stable, LA spray to the larynx can be helpful in extending the available time for laryngoscopy before airway reflexes return. In epiglottitis, distortion of the epiglottis can make recognition of the glottis very difficult; a useful tip is to press on the child's chest and watch for a bubble of gas emerging from the larynx.
- If complete airway obstruction occurs and all conventional attempts to secure the airway fail, emergency surgical access to the airway is the only option. Cricothyroidotomy is preferable to tracheostomy for emergency airway access, as it is quicker to perform, more superficial, and less likely to bleed (above the thyroid gland). (See p986.)

1 Mason RA, Fielder CP (1999). The obstructed airway in head and neck surgery. *Anaesthesia*, **54**, 625–628.

## Obstructive sleep apnoea (see p122)

- Obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA)<sup>1</sup> is the most common form of sleep apnoea syndrome. The airway obstructs intermittently because of inadequate muscle tone/coordination in the pharynx. The problem usually occurs in association with other factors such as obesity.
- In adults, surgery for OSA may include nasal operations and uvulopalatopharyngoplasty (UPPP), although the role of UPPP in OSA is controversial as it may render nasal CPAP less effective in the long term.
- In children, OSA usually results from extreme adenotonsillar hypertrophy, and adenotonsillectomy is performed to relieve this.<sup>2</sup>
- OSA produces total obstruction with repeated episodes of hypoxia leading to arousal (though not awakening). Multiple episodes can occur each night, with oxygen saturation falling repeatedly to below 50%.
- Repeated interruptions to sleep produce daytime lethargy and somnolence, whilst extensive nocturnal hypoxia can lead to pulmonary or systemic hypertension with ventricular hypertrophy and cardiac failure.
- A careful history (from the partner or parent) is the most valuable information initially. In OSA, snoring is interrupted by periods of silent apnoea broken by a 'heroic' deep breath.
- Sleep studies reveal the extent of apnoea. If a history unexpectedly gives a clear picture of OSA consider patient referral.
- In children with suspected OSA, features of chronic hypoxaemia should be sought. These include polycythaemia and right ventricular strain (large P wave in leads II and V1, large R wave in V1, deep S wave in V6). If features exist, echocardiography and referral for sleep studies should be considered. In severe cases, corrective otolaryngological surgery should be undertaken before unrelated elective surgery.
- Perioperatively the biggest danger is impairment of respiratory drive and hypoxic arousal mechanisms by the sedative action of drugs.
- Anaesthetic management is aimed at minimising periods of sedation and ensuring that ventilation and oxygenation are maintained until the patient is adequately recovered. Specific points include:
  - Avoidance of preoperative sedative drugs.
  - Intubation is usually not a problem unless other factors are present.
  - Long-acting opioids should be avoided if possible. Use NSAIDs, paracetamol, tramadol, or local infiltration where feasible.
  - When needed, long-acting opioids should be given IV and titrated carefully against response (around 50% normal dose requirement).
  - Close overnight monitoring (including pulse oximetry). Admission to HDU or even ITU may be necessary.
  - For nasal surgery a nasopharyngeal airway can be incorporated into the nasal pack and left in place overnight.

1 Loadman JA, Hillman DR (2001). Anaesthesia and sleep apnoea. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, 86, 254–266.

2 Warwick JP, Mason DG (1998). Obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome in children. *Anaesthesia*, 53, 571–579.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Grommet insertion

Procedure	Myringotomy and grommet insertion, usually bilateral
Time	5–15min
Pain	+
Position	Supine, head tilted to side, head ring
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	FM or LMA SV using T-piece

### Preoperative

- Usually children (1–8yr), day case if sole procedure.
- Repeated ear infections, check for recent URTI.

### Perioperative

- FM suitable if surgeon happy to work round it, but assistant needed to adjust vaporiser, etc. Insert Guedel airway before draping and ensure reservoir bag visible throughout (T-piece ideal if facemask used).
- LMA is popular.

### Postoperative

PRN paracetamol or diclofenac oral/PR—many need no analgesia.

### Special considerations

- If FM airway difficult, change early to LMA.
- Reflex bradycardia occasionally seen related to partial vagal innervation of tympanic membrane.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy: child

Procedure	Excision of lymphoid tissue from oropharynx (tonsils) or nasopharynx (adenoids)
Time	20–30min
Pain	+++
Position	Supine, pad under shoulders
Blood loss	Usually small, can bleed post-op
Practical techniques	South-facing uncuffed RAE tube or reinforced LMA, placed in groove of split blade of Boyle–Davis gag SV or IPPV

### Preoperative

- Careful history to exclude OSA (see p638) or active infection.
- Topical local anaesthesia on hands (mark sites of veins).
- Consent for PR analgesia.

### Perioperative

- IV or inhalational induction (sevoflurane)—Guedel airway useful if nasopharynx blocked by large adenoids.
- Intubate (uncuffed RAE) using relaxant or deep inhalational anaesthesia or insert LMA using propofol/opioid or deep inhalational anaesthesia.
- Secure in midline, no pack (obscures surgical field).
- Beware surgeon displacing/obstructing tube intraoperatively, particularly after insertion or opening of Boyle–Davis gag.
- T-piece ideal for SV, but ensure reservoir bag always visible.
- Reliable IV access essential, though IV fluids not routine.
- Analgesia with diclofenac/paracetamol PR, morphine or pethidine IV/IM.
- Careful suction of oropharynx and nasopharynx at end under direct vision (surgeon may do).
- Extubate left lateral/head down (tonsil position), with Guedel airway.

### Postoperative

- Keep patient in tonsil position until airway reflexes return.
- High-quality recovery care essential.
- Analgesia with PRN paracetamol or diclofenac oral/PR, morphine or pethidine IV/IM.
- Leave IV cannula (flushed) in place in case of bleeding.

### Special considerations

- In small children, a pillow under the chest can be used to provide necessary tilt.
- Avoid blind pharyngeal suction with rigid sucker as this may start bleeding from tonsil bed.

- NSAIDs increase bleeding slightly (especially if given preoperatively)<sup>1</sup>this needs to be balanced against benefits.
- LA infiltration of tonsil bed is not recommended.
- Beware continual swallowing in recovery, a sign of bleeding from tonsil/adenoid bed.
- Adenoidectomy/tonsillectomy is increasingly being done as day cases in suitable patients, with extended stay and education of parents to recognise signs of bleeding.

### Variant Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease (see p303)

- Prions, which accumulate in lymphoid tissue such as the tonsils and adenoids, are not reliably destroyed during standard methods of surgical sterilisation. Inter-patient transmission of prion-borne conditions, such as variant Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease (vCJD), via theatre equipment contaminated during tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy is therefore a potential risk, although the predicted epidemic of vCJD has not materialised.
- In January 2001 the UK Department of Health issued guidelines that all relevant surgical and anaesthetic equipment used for tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy should be single-use.
- An increased risk of haemorrhage associated with disposable instruments led to the removal of this guideline for surgical equipment.
- In the UK the single-use guideline remains in place, however, for all anaesthetic equipment that is placed in the mouth, such as ETTs and LMAs. The guideline also recommends sheathed or single-use laryngoscope blades, although it is difficult to see how a laryngoscope used solely at the start of a case represents a greater contamination risk in this context than for any other operation.

### Bleeding after adenotonsillectomy

- May be detected in recovery or many hours later.
- Loss may be much greater than readily apparent (swallowed blood).
- Senior anaesthetist must be involved.
- Problems include:
  - Hypovolaemia
  - Risk of aspiration (fresh bleeding and blood in stomach)
  - Difficult laryngoscopy because of airway oedema and blood
  - Residual anaesthetic effect.
- Resuscitate preoperatively, check Hb (HemoCue® ideal), crossmatch, and give blood as needed. Note: Hb will fall as IV fluids administered (dilution).
- Options:
  - Rapid sequence induction: enables rapid airway protection, but laryngoscopy may be difficult (blood, swelling)—generally preferred.
  - Inhalational induction left lateral/head down: allows time for laryngoscopy, but takes longer and unfamiliar technique to many.
- Use wide-bore gastric tube to empty stomach after bleeding stopped.
- Extubate fully awake.
- Extended stay in recovery for close monitoring.

- Nasopharyngeal pack occasionally needed (secured via tapes through nose) if bleeding from adenoids cannot be controlled. Usually very uncomfortable—patient may need midazolam/morphine to tolerate.
- Check postoperative Hb.

1 Moiniche S, Romsing J, Dahl JB, Tramer MR (2003). Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs and the risk of operative site bleeding after tonsillectomy: a quantitative systematic review. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **96**, 68–77.

## Tonsillectomy in adults

As for child, except:

- Usually more painful postoperatively in adult—give morphine in theatre.
- IPPV-relaxant technique used more commonly. Mivacurium useful with quick surgeon.
- Preoperative oral NSAID avoids suppository use, though may increase bleeding risk.
- Occasionally patients present with peritonsillar abscess (quinsy). Now normally treated with antibiotics and tonsillectomy performed later. If drainage essential because of airway swelling, pus usually aspirated with syringe and large needle under LA infiltration.

## Myringoplasty

Procedure	Reconstruction of perforated tympanic membrane with autograft (usually temporalis fascia)
Time	60–90min
Pain	++
Position	Supine, head tilted to side, head ring, head-up tilt
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	South-facing RAE tube or LMA (usually reinforced) SV or IPPV

### Preoperative

Usually young, fit patients.

### Perioperative

- Ensure coughing avoided during surgery: LA spray to larynx, monitor neuromuscular block if IPPV-relaxant technique used.
- Dry field improves the surgical view, though not as important as for stapedectomy—head-up tilt and avoiding hypertension/tachycardia normally sufficient.
- Remifentanyl infusion suitable.
- Routine antiemetic useful.

### Postoperative

- PRN paracetamol or diclofenac oral/IV; may need morphine.
- PRN antiemetic.

### Special considerations

Using nitrous oxide may produce diffusion into middle ear and risk graft lifting off: less important with advances in surgical technique and the use of remifentanyl—discuss with surgeon.

## Stapedectomy/tympanoplasty

Procedure	Excision/reconstruction of damaged middle ear structures
Time	2–4hr
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine, head tilted to side, head ring, head-up tilt
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	South-facing RAE tube or LMA (usually reinforced) IPPV normally Arterial line often used

### Preoperative

- Check for cardiovascular disease, as this will limit degree of hypotension possible.
- Oral premedication options include benzodiazepines,  $\beta$ -blockers, and clonidine.

### Perioperative

- Monitor to ensure adequate neuromuscular block.
- Bloodless field enables greater surgical accuracy—simple measures include: potent opioid preinduction, ensure coughing avoided at intubation (LA spray to larynx helpful), head-up tilt to reduce venous pressure.
- Further benefit achieved by lowering arterial BP (mean of 50–60mmHg in healthy patients) and HR (<60bpm).
- Remifentanyl infusion ideal to achieve this. Alternatively, use IV  $\beta$ -blocker (metoprolol 1mg increments, esmolol infusion) plus vasodilator (isoflurane, hydralazine, phentolamine): IV labetalol (combined  $\alpha/\beta$ -blocker, 5mg increments) also used, though less individual control of HR and BP.
- Arterial line strongly advised with cardiovascular disease or if potent vasodilators used: head-up tilt further reduces perfusion pressure to brain.
- Give antiemetic routinely.

### Postoperative

- Regular antiemetic for 24–48hr.
- PRN paracetamol or diclofenac oral/IV/PR; may need morphine.

### Special considerations

- N<sub>2</sub>O diffusion into middle ear may disrupt surgery, though less important than in myringoplasty. Either avoid (reduction in PONV) or use until 20min before end of case, then discontinue.



## Nasal cavity surgery

Procedure	Submucous resection (SMR) of septum, septoplasty, turbinectomy, polypectomy, functional endoscopic sinus surgery (FESS)
Time	20–60min
Pain	++
Position	Supine, head ring, head-up tilt
Blood loss	Usually minor
Practical techniques	South-facing RAE tube or LMA (usually reinforced) SV or IPPV Throat pack

### Preoperative

- Obstructive airways disease often associated with nasal polyps.
- Combination of above procedures frequently performed.

### Perioperative

- Facemask ventilation often needs Guedel airway due to blocked nose.
- Nasal vasoconstrictor usually applied (LA/adrenaline infiltration, cocaine spray/paste, Moffett's solution).
- Leave eyes untaped for polypectomy (optic nerve can be close and surgeon needs to check for eye movement).
- Suck out pharynx (particularly behind soft palate—'Coroner's clot' see p633) before extubation: less easy with LMA.

### Postoperative

- Left lateral/head down with Guedel airway in place until airway reflexes return.
- Analgesia with PRN paracetamol or diclofenac oral/IV/PR.
- Nose usually packed producing obstruction of nasal airway—if disturbing to patient, or in cases of OSA, nasopharyngeal airway(s) can be incorporated into the pack.
- Sit patient up as soon as awake to reduce bleeding.

### Special considerations

- Leave IV cannula in overnight, as can bleed postoperatively.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Microlaryngoscopy

Procedure	Examination of larynx using operating microscope (+ excision/biopsy)
Time	10–30min
Pain	+ / ++
Position	Supine, pad under shoulders, head extended
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	<p>Microlaryngeal tube and conventional IPPV TIVA and jet ventilation using injector system (O<sub>2</sub> + entrained air) via:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• injector needle on the operating laryngoscope</li> <li>• semi-rigid tracheal catheter</li> <li>• cricothyroidotomy needle/cannula</li> </ul>

### Ventilation during microlaryngoscopy

#### *Microlaryngeal tube and conventional IPPV*

- Microlaryngeal tube is a long 5.0mm ETT with a high-volume/ low-pressure cuff.
- Enables maintenance of anaesthesia with inhalational agents.
- Protects against aspiration of blood/surgical debris but restricts surgeon's view.
- Use long, slow inspiration for IPPV because of high resistance of tube. Measured inflation pressure will be high, but patient's airway pressures distal to tube will be lower.

#### *Jet ventilation*

- Ventilation achieved using an injector system, such as the adjustable-flow Manujet<sup>®</sup>, delivering O<sub>2</sub> and entrained air via:
  - Injector needle attached to proximal end of operating laryngoscope and ventilation started when correctly aligned with larynx. Various needle sizes available with different flow rates. Technique not suitable if good view of larynx is unobtainable and has disadvantage of blowing debris/smoke into trachea with ventilation.
  - Semi-rigid tracheal catheter (ordinary suction catheter not suitable) with tip placed mid-way down the trachea. Special catheters available with gas sampling port or made from laser-proof material.
  - Cricothyroidotomy needle/cannula placed through cricothyroid membrane under LA before induction and aimed towards carina. Commercial versions available or Tuohy needle can be used: beware gas injected into tissues if needle misplaced/displaced.
- Induce in theatre or use microlaryngeal tube initially, then remove and change to jet ventilation when all ready in theatre (not with cricothyroidotomy needle).
- Ensure anaesthetic machine in theatre is situated close to enable easy FM ventilation at induction/recovery.

- TIVA needed for maintenance (propofol/remifentanyl infusion).
- Ventilate using normal respiratory rate and adjust inspiratory flow (alter injector settings or change needle size) to produce appropriate degree of chest expansion.
- Accurate flow/pressure measurement not easy: barotrauma a potential risk.
- Stop ventilation intermittently during surgical work (clear communication essential).
- Provides minimal obstruction to surgical view.
- At end of case, either continue jet ventilation until SV re-established or discontinue and ventilate by FM until SV recommences.

### Preoperative

- Patients often elderly and usually smokers; CVS/RS problems common.
- Carefully assess airway for evidence of obstruction. History, examination, ENT clinic assessment, plain films, and CT scan may all help, but if any degree of stridor present obstruction must be substantial (see p636).
- Ensure all equipment is ready before induction, including cricothyroidotomy kit, and that surgeon is available for emergency tracheostomy if required.

### Perioperative

- If airway obstruction suspected, secure airway initially using principles on p636. Inserting a cricothyroid cannula under LA preinduction provides a route for ventilation in the event of total obstruction.
- Give short-acting opioid (alfentanil, remifentanyl) to attenuate hypertensive response.
- Muscle relaxation is usually essential: mivacurium or intermittent suxamethonium (+ glycopyrronium/atropine to prevent bradycardia).
- Use of rocuronium and reversal with sugammadex may be an option.
- LA spray to larynx reduces risk of laryngospasm, though this impairs airway protection, so recover left lateral, head down.

### Postoperative

- Analgesia with PRN paracetamol or diclofenac oral/IV/PR.
- May develop stridor postoperatively from oedema of an already-compromised airway—dexamethasone 8–12mg IV sometimes used to prevent this.

### Special considerations

- Jet ventilation essential if laser work planned.
- Microlaryngoscopy can be used to inject inert material (Teflon<sup>®</sup>) into paralysed vocal cords to improve phonation, though this can lead to airway obstruction if overdone.
- High-frequency jet ventilation has been used, though complex and assessment of ventilation difficult.

## Tracheostomy

Procedure	Insertion of a tracheal tube via neck incision
Time	30min
Pain	++
Position	Supine, pad under shoulders, head ring, head-up tilt
Blood loss	Normally small, though can bleed from thyroid vessels
Practical techniques	IPPV, ETT with tubing going 'north', changed to tracheostomy tube during case LMA if airway not a problem, IPPV or SV Can be done under LA

### Preoperative

- Normally done for long-term ICU ventilation or airway obstruction.
- ICU patients almost certainly already intubated. If ventilation difficult and oxygenation critical, set up ICU ventilator in theatre, using TIVA rather than inhalational agents.
- Stop NG feeds if applicable.
- If tracheostomy is for airway obstruction, secure airway initially using principles on p636.
- Before induction ensure all equipment prepared (including cricothyroidotomy kit) and surgeon ready for emergency tracheostomy if required.

### Perioperative

- Secure ETT with tape to allow easy removal during case, with pilot cuff readily accessible.
- Aspirate NG tube (if present) and clear oropharynx of secretions before draping.
- Drape patient to allow anaesthetist access to ETT for tube change.
- Long tubing needed for breathing circuit and gas sampling.
- Before changing to tracheostomy tube, preoxygenate for 3–4min (increasing volatile agent as necessary) and check neuromuscular blockade is adequate.
- Ensure scrub nurse has correct tracheostomy tube and sterile catheter mount.
- Deflate ETT cuff before surgeons incise trachea, so it can be reinflated and ventilation continued if problems occur.
- Withdraw ETT slowly into upper trachea (do not remove from trachea until tracheostomy secure and certain) and connect breathing circuit and capnograph to new tracheostomy tube via sterile catheter mount.

- Beware false passage created during tracheostomy tube insertion, especially in the obese: check position with fibreoptic endoscopy if any doubt.
- If problems occur, remove tracheostomy tube and advance ETT back down trachea.

### Postoperative

- Regular suction to new tracheostomy (blood, secretions).
- Humidify inspired gases.
- Analgesia in recovery with diclofenac IV/PR or morphine IV. Usually little analgesia required thereafter.
- A new tracheostomy often produces protracted coughing—morphine, benzodiazepines, or low-dose propofol useful for control.
- Antiemetic as required.
- If tube comes out, reinsertion can be very difficult in first few days—oro-tracheal intubation often more practical. Two retraction sutures left in tracheal incision are useful for identifying and opening the stoma.

### Special considerations

- Can be done under LA, though difficult in a dyspnoeic, struggling patient.
- In ICU tracheostomy is now commonly done percutaneously using dilatational technique: theatre cases are likely to be the difficult ones.
- Tracheostomy is not the ideal route of approach for emergency airway access: cricothyroidotomy is more accessible and less likely to bleed.
- LMA can be used if tracheostomy is done at start of larger procedure and upper airway normal.

### Tracheostomy tubes

- Specific features available include:
  - Fenestration: allows speech by occluding lumen with finger and exhaling through hole in back wall of tube.
  - Inner tube (e.g. Shiley<sup>®</sup>): permits removal for cleaning.
  - Adjustable flange: length can be modified for short trachea or deep stoma.
  - Channel in obturator for guide-wire.
- Tube change:
  - New tube must be inserted with obturator in place to prevent stomal damage.
  - May be difficult to find trachea in new tracheostomy: guide-wire very useful.
  - Prepare for oro-tracheal intubation in case of problems.
  - Cannot be left in place longer than 28d (classified as an implant thereafter).

## Laryngectomy

Procedure	Excision of larynx (epiglottis and glottis) with creation of an end-stomal tracheostomy
Time	3–4hr
Pain	+++
Position	Supine, pad under shoulders, head ring, head-up tilt
Blood loss	Moderate to substantial; X-match 2–4U
Practical techniques	IPPV, ETT with tubing going 'north', changed to tracheostomy during case Art line, urinary catheter, CVP line if surgery likely to be long/complicated or if indicated by cardiac disease

### Preoperative

- Some degree of airway obstruction likely. Patient likely to have had recent GA (for diagnosis) to guide airway management: beware if some time has elapsed.
- If no recent GA, assess the airway as for microlaryngoscopy (p650).
- Usually smokers: CVS/respiratory system problems and malnutrition common.
- Discuss implications of tracheostomy preoperatively (communication, secretions, coughing produced by tube). Speech therapist will do much of this.

### Perioperative

- Insert fine-bore NG feeding tube at induction and fix securely (can be sutured to nasal septum).
- Warming blanket and fluid warmer.
- Long tubing needed for breathing circuit and gas sampling tube.
- Remifentanyl infusion ideal.
- Substantial blood loss can accumulate under drapes at back of neck and may not be apparent until end of case.
- For CVP access, all neck lines hinder surgery: femoral best, though antecubital fossa (ACF) or subclavian can be used.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis for at least 24hr.
- When changing to tracheostomy tube, see precautions for tracheostomy (p652), though end-stoma makes tracheal access safer and easier.
- During surgery, long tube (armoured or special preformed) via tracheostomy is useful to enable surgical access round stoma—beware endobronchial intubation.

### Postoperative

- HDU ideal.
- Humidification and regular suction essential (blood, secretions).
- New tracheostomy produces protracted coughing—morphine, benzodiazepines, or low-dose propofol useful for control.
- Analgesia with PRN diclofenac IV/PR, morphine IV/IM/SC. Suitable for PCA, although analgesic requirements are surprisingly low. Paracetamol suspension (via NG tube) useful after initial postoperative period.
- Antiemetic as required.

### Special considerations

- Beware of air emboli during dissection—early detection by sudden fall in ETCO<sub>2</sub>.
- For previous laryngectomy patients presenting for surgery, to ventilate via stoma use paediatric facemask turned through 180°, LMA applied to neck, or intubate awake after LA spray to stoma. Tracheostomy tube insertion is usually easy, though check stoma for stenosis or tumour recurrence and always preoxygenate.
- Partial laryngectomy, with laryngeal reconstruction and temporary tracheostomy, favoured by some as alternative to radiotherapy in early laryngeal tumours.



## Pharyngectomy

Procedure	Excision of pharynx (includes glossectomy and radical tonsillectomy): may involve mandibular split for access and tissue transfer
Time	6–8hr
Pain	+++++
Position	Supine, pad under shoulders, head ring, head-up tilt
Blood loss	Major; X-match 4U initially
Practical techniques	IPPV, ETT (nasal may be best) with tubing going 'north' initially, changed to tracheostomy during case Art line, CVP line, urinary catheter

### Preoperative

- Discuss plans with surgeons to ensure what needs to be left untouched, e.g. forearm flap.
- Assess airway carefully: patient likely to have had recent GA (for diagnosis) to guide airway management.
- CVS/respiratory system problems and malnutrition common.
- Inform patient about lines, tracheostomy, etc.
- Ensure ICU bed available.

### Perioperative

- Insert fine-bore NG feeding tube at induction and fix securely (can be sutured to nasal septum).
- Femoral route best for CVP access.
- Long tubing needed for breathing circuit and gas sampling tube.
- Warming blanket and fluid warmer.
- Access to patient severely restricted: ensure all lines/tubes secure at start.
- Remifentanyl infusion ideal.
- Substantial blood loss may be hidden under drapes: check regular HemoCue®.
- Ensure patient is well-filled, especially if free-flap used (aim for Hb of ~10g/dl)—see p524.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis for at least 24hr.

### Postoperative

- ICU essential.
- Keep sedated and ventilated until stable and warm.
- Regular flap observations.
- Avoid tracheostomy ties round neck (may compromise flap blood supply).
- Humidification and regular suction (blood, secretions) to tracheostomy.
- Analgesia with PCA morphine once awake and PRN diclofenac/paracetamol NG/IV/PR.
- Antiemetic as required.

## Radical neck dissection

Procedure	Excision of sternomastoid, internal and external jugular veins, and associated lymph nodes. Modified or selective neck dissection preserves some of these structures (notably IJV)
Time	2–4hr
Pain	+++
Position	Supine, pad under shoulders, head on ring tilted to side, head-up tilt
Blood loss	Moderate to substantial, X-match 2–4U
Practical techniques	IPPV, ETT with tubing going 'north' Art line, urinary catheter, CVP line if surgery likely to be long/complicated or with cardiac disease

### Preoperative

- Assess airway carefully, as may be an associated head and neck tumour or previous major surgery.
- May be performed with another procedure, e.g. laryngectomy.

### Perioperative

- Warming blanket and fluid warmer.
- Long tubing is needed for the breathing circuit and gas sampling.
- Remifentanyl infusion ideal.
- Can bleed briskly from large neck vessels, with substantial accumulation of blood under drapes (that may not be apparent until end of case).
- For CVP access femoral is best. Must avoid remaining jugulars, as head and neck venous drainage dependent on them.

### Postoperative

- Head and neck oedema likely for several days (impaired venous drainage). Keep head up as much as possible and avoid excessive IV fluids.
- To reduce chance of agitation/rebound hypertension and wound haematoma in recovery, continue remifentanyl at a low infusion rate or give morphine 15–20min before end of surgery: clonidine up to 150µg IV also very useful. Treat any hypertension early.
- Analgesia with PRN paracetamol or diclofenac oral/IV/PR, morphine IV/IM. Surprisingly low analgesic requirements normally.
- Antiemetic as required.

### Special considerations

- Beware of air emboli during dissection—early detection by sudden fall in  $\text{ETCO}_2$ .
- Surgical manipulation of carotid sinus can produce marked bradycardia.
- If neck dissection previously done on other side, oedema is usually worse and can raise ICP. Dexamethasone 8–12mg IV preoperatively (then 4mg IV 6-hourly) is used by many to reduce this.

## Parotidectomy

Procedure	Excision of parotid gland, usually preserving facial nerve
Time	2–5hr
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine, head ring, head tilted to side and moderately extended, head-up tilt
Blood loss	Usually small/moderate, G&S. Greater for malignancy
Practical techniques	South-facing RAE tube and IPPV normally used, though SV possible for suitable patients Reinforced LMA and IPPV or SV also possible No NMB during dissection

### Preoperative

- Check if suitable for SV—not if elderly, obese, or respiratory disease.
- Check mouth opening, especially if malignant.

### Perioperative

- Warming blanket and fluid warmer, plus urinary catheter if prolonged.
- Avoid neuromuscular blockade (NMB) after initial dose (check recovery with PNS).
- Remifentanyl infusion ideal to allow IPPV without NMB and also reduce blood loss.
- Alternatively suppress respiratory drive with other opioid, volatile agent, or propofol infusion combined with moderate hyperventilation.
- LA spray to larynx useful to prevent coughing.
- If SV used, ensure patient settled initially using high level of volatile agent.

### Postoperative

- To reduce chance of agitation/rebound hypertension and wound haematoma in recovery, continue remifentanyl at a low infusion rate or give morphine 15–20min before end of surgery, keep head up, and treat hypertension early: clonidine up to 150µg IV is very useful.
- Antiemetic as required.
- Analgesia with PRN morphine IV/IM, paracetamol or diclofenac oral/IV/PR.

### Special considerations

- Surgeon normally uses nerve stimulator to identify facial nerve during dissection and may wish to leave ipsilateral eye exposed to monitor response. Avoid prolonged NMB—initial dose has usually worn off in time for surgical dissection.
- Large-bore IV access at start, as can bleed substantially (especially malignant tumours).

## Other ENT procedures

Operation	Description	Time (min)	Pain	Position	Blood loss	Notes
Mastoidectomy	Clearance of cholesteatoma from mastoid cavity	90–120	++	Head-up tilt, head tilted to side on ring	Minimal	RAE tube or LMA, SV, or IPPV. Bloodless field needed (see stapedectomy). If disease close to facial nerve, surgeon may request no relaxant used (see parotidectomy)
Drilling of ear exostoses	Excision of external auditory ('swimmer's') exostoses	60–90	++	Head-up tilt, head tilted to side on ring	Minimal	RAE tube or LMA, SV, or IPPV
BAHA	Application of bone-anchored hearing aid	90–120	++	Head-up tilt, head tilted to side on ring	Minimal	LA + sedation or GA with RAE tube or LMA, SV, or IPPV
MUA nose	Correction of nasal fracture	1–15	+	Supine	Small	If quick, preoxygenate + propofol only. If longer, RAE tube or reinforced LMA + throat pack. Occasionally bleeds dramatically
Removal of foreign body from nose	Removal of foreign body from nose, usually in child	5–10		Supine, head ring	Nil	Gas induction, RAE tube or LMA, throat pack, SV. Avoid FM ventilation if possible (risk of pushing FB down into lower airway)
Rhinoplasty	Cosmetic alteration or reconstruction of nose using bone/cartilage graft	60–90	++	Head-up tilt, head ring	Small	RAE tube or reinforced LMA, SV, or IPPV, throat pack. Moderate hypotension useful to decrease bleeding

Lateral rhinotomy	Resection of nasal tumour via lateral rhinotomy	90	++	Head-up tilt, head ring	Moderate	RAE tube or reinforced LMA, SV, or IPPV, throat pack. Moderate hypotension useful to decrease bleeding
Uvulo-palato-pharyngoplasty (UPPP)	Excision of uvula and lax tissue from soft palate, sometimes using laser	20–30	+++	Supine, pad under shoulders	Small	RAE tube or reinforced LMA, SV, or IPPV. Laser-proof tube if needed. Regular postop diclofenac + paracetamol. OSA precautions if indicated
Submandibular gland excision	Excision of blocked/diseased submandibular gland	45–60	++	Supine, pad under shoulders, head ring	Small	RAE tube or reinforced LMA on opposite side, SV or IPPV
Tracheo-bronchial foreign body removal	Removal of inhaled foreign body using rigid bronchoscope, usually in child (see also p854)	20–30	NS	Supine, pad under shoulders	Nil	Deep inhalational anaesthesia using oxygen and halothane, allowing surgeon intermittent access. LA spray. Atropine useful to prevent bradycardia
Laryngoscopy in child	Examination of larynx in child, usually for recurrent stridor or aspiration	15–20	NS	Supine, pad under shoulders	Nil	Inhalational induction, LA spray to larynx. Either SV via rigid surgical laryngoscope (circuit connected to scope) or LMA with bars removed and fiberoptic laryngoscopy through it (ideal for small child and enables larynx to be viewed during emergence)



Table Contd.

Operation	Description	Time (min)	Pain	Position	Blood loss	Notes
Direct pharyngoscopy	Examination of pharynx using rigid pharyngoscope	10–15	+	Supine, pad under shoulders	Nil	Check for reflux. Small (6.5–7) oral RAE tube secured on left, IPPV, mivacurium or intermittent suxamethonium. Risk of bleeding if biopsies done
Endoscopic stapling of pharyngeal pouch	Division of opening to pharyngeal pouch using staple gun endoscopically	15–20	+	Supine, pad under shoulders	Nil	Preoxygenate, avoid FM ventilation, small (6.5–7) oral RAE tube secured on opposite side, IPPV. NG tube at end and IV fluids as nil by mouth postop
Excision of pharyngeal pouch	Excision of pharyngeal pouch via external approach	45–60	++	Supine, pad under shoulders, head ring	Nil	Preoxygenate, avoid FM ventilation, small (6.5–7) oral RAE tube secured on opposite side, IPPV. Surgeon may want oesophageal bougie inserted to help recognise anatomy. Antibiotic cover, NG tube at end, and IV fluids as nil by mouth postop

Insertion of speaking valve (e.g. Provox®)	Insertion of speaking valve via tracheo-oesophageal puncture, following laryngectomy	15	+	Supine, pad under shoulders, head ring	Nil	Micro-laryngoscopy tube inserted via tracheostomy, IPPV, mivacurium or intermittent suxamethonium, remifentanyl or alfentanil to reduce CVS response
Pharyngo-laryngo-oesophagectomy	Resection of larynx, pharynx, and oesophagus for tumour of hypopharynx, using stomach pull-up or free jejunum transfer. Involves laparotomy ± thoracotomy	6–8hr	++++	Supine, pad under shoulders, head ring	Major, X-match 4–6U	No access to patient whatsoever! Prepare as for laryngectomy with all lines, plus double-lumen tube if doing thoracotomy. Consider epidural analgesia for laparotomy/ thoracotomy (using plain LA) with PCA morphine to cover remaining surgical sites. ICU mandatory postop; see also p394

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Maxillofacial and dental surgery

## Babinder Sandhar

Oral/maxillofacial surgery 668

Extraction of impacted/buried teeth 670

Maxillary/mandibular osteotomy 672

Fractures of the zygomatic complex 674

Mandibular fractures 675

Anaesthesia for dentistry 676

Simple dental extractions 677

Sedation for dentistry 678

## Oral/maxillofacial surgery

### General principles

Anaesthesia for intraoral/maxillofacial procedures requires management of a shared airway and potentially difficult intubation. Nasal intubation is frequently used to improve access to the mouth. At the preoperative visit check nostril patency and ask about epistaxis and the use of anticoagulants. Discuss choice of airway with surgeon.

- Simple intraoral procedures are often possible using a reinforced laryngeal mask airway. However, access to the mouth is inevitably compromised. The LMA may be dislodged and vigilance is required. Similarly, for unilateral intraoral procedures an oral ETT placed on the opposite side of the mouth may be acceptable.
- If the nasal route is chosen for intubation, use a local anaesthetic and/or **vasoconstrictor** mixture (cocaine 5–10%, lidocaine 5%/phenylephrine 0.5%—Co-phenylcaine<sup>®</sup>) or xylometazoline (Otrivine<sup>®</sup>). There are many varieties of nasal tube—the ‘Polar Preformed North Nasal’ from Portex<sup>®</sup> is ideal. These ‘north-facing’ tubes are made of soft material and cause little nasal trauma. Sizes of 6.0, 6.5, and 7.0mm should be available. Place in warm water before use to soften the material even further.
- **Protect the eyes** with tape and eye pads.
- Position the patient with the head at the opposite end to the anaesthetic machine—a long breathing circuit is normally required.
- Stabilise the head with a horseshoe or head ring. For operations on the roof of the mouth use a bolster under the shoulders to extend the neck further.
- **Throat packs** are used to minimise contamination of the airway with blood and debris. Ribbon gauze or tampons may be used. A robust system should be in place to ensure that throat packs are not inadvertently left in situ. They should be included in the swab count (see p633).
- Laryngoscopy should always be performed at the end of the procedure to clear any debris and ensure that packs have been removed.

### Extubation

- There is a risk of aspiration of blood, pus, and debris. Patients are therefore best extubated in the left lateral position with head-down tilt.
- Some anaesthetists extubate the patient ‘deep,’ having used a spontaneous breathing technique, whereas others use opioid/relaxant and prefer to extubate awake. The use of a nasotracheal tube, which does not stimulate the gag reflex as much as an oral tube, facilitates the latter approach.
- If a nasal tube has been used it is possible to convert it into a nasopharyngeal airway by withdrawing it until the tip lies in the oropharynx, cutting at the 15cm mark and inserting a safety pin at the proximal end (to prevent the tube slipping back into the nostril).

### Cardiac arrhythmias

Cardiac arrhythmias may occur during dental extraction if a spontaneously breathing technique is chosen. Volatile agents (particularly halothane) sensitise the myocardium to catecholamines, but this is less common with isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane. Contributory factors include hypercarbia, hypoxia, light anaesthesia, and injected sympathomimetic agents. Correction of the underlying problem and infiltration of local anaesthetic by the surgeon virtually abolishes arrhythmias.

### Free-flap surgery

- Many major maxillofacial reconstructions are performed using tissue/bone free flaps (particularly from the radial forearm).
- These operations are lengthy, 6–18hr.
- The same principles apply as for plastic surgery free flaps (p524) with the added complication of a potentially difficult airway, both pre and post surgery.
- Surgical tracheostomy may be indicated because of the potential for postoperative airway compromise.
- HDU or ICU care is usually indicated postoperatively.

## Extraction of impacted/buried teeth

Procedure	Removal of teeth
Time	3–45min
Pain	+
Position	Supine, head ring, bolster under shoulders if teeth to be extracted in roof of mouth
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	Nasal tube and IPPV—extubate awake Nasal tube and SV—extubate deep LMA and SV

### Preoperative

- Careful assessment of the airway. Check nostrils for patency.
- If the patient has a dental abscess there may be marked swelling of the face and severe trismus. Awake fiberoptic intubation may be necessary (see p1000).

### Perioperative

- Consider LMA/oral tube for simple/unilateral extractions.
- Intubate with a warmed, preformed nasal tube after applying vasoconstrictor to the nasal mucosa (see p668).
- Protect the eyes with tape and pads.
- The surgeon should anaesthetise the appropriate terminal branches of the maxillary division (infraorbital, greater palatine, nasopalatine) and mandibular division (inferior alveolar, lingual, buccal, mental) of the trigeminal nerve with a long-acting local anaesthetic (bupivacaine 0.25% or 0.5% with adrenaline 1:200 000).
- Give an intraoperative opioid and NSAID.
- IV antibiotics are administered to minimise the risk of infection (usually benzylpenicillin 600mg).
- Steroids (e.g. dexamethasone 8mg IV) are given to minimise swelling.
- Extubate in the left lateral position with head-down tilt.

### Postoperative

- Balanced analgesia with regular paracetamol and NSAIDs. Prescribe rescue analgesia with PRN codeine phosphate/tramadol.

### Special considerations

- Talk to the surgeon to ascertain the likely length of surgery. Remember that some patients require general anaesthesia only because they are 'dental phobic.' The surgical extractions may be simple and operative time consequently very short. A short-acting muscle relaxant may be required.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Maxillary/mandibular osteotomy

Procedure	Surgical realignment of the facial skeleton
Time	Lengthy, 4–6hr
Pain	++
Position	Supine, with head-up tilt, head ring
Blood loss	Variable. Occasionally can be severe. G&S
Practical techniques	Nasal tube and IPPV—extubate awake. Art line

Patients presenting for orthognathic surgery may have malformations isolated to one jaw or have multiple craniofacial deformities as part of a syndrome. They have often had prior dental extractions and preoperative orthodontic work. There are many surgical procedures performed to correct facial deformities. Patients are usually in their late teens or early twenties and are generally fit and healthy. When a mandibular osteotomy is performed, the bone is plated and often stabilised by wiring the maxilla and mandible together. If vomiting occurs postoperatively or intraoral bleeding occurs, fatal airway obstruction may occur unless the fixation can be instantly removed. This requires expert trained staff and adequate facilities postoperatively.

### Preoperative

- Assess the airway carefully. Check the nostrils for patency.
- Check Hb and crossmatch blood as per surgical blood ordering schedule (2U).
- Thromboembolic prophylaxis (TEDS, unfractionated or low-molecular-weight heparin). Consider the use of intermittent pneumatic compression boots in theatre.

### Perioperative

- Intubate nasally using a preformed nasal tube (see p668).
- Good venous access. Consider invasive pressure monitoring due to length of surgery.
- Put Lacri-Lube® into the eyes and protect them with pads and tape.
- Position the patient carefully on the operating table. Place the head on a ring and tilt the table head up.
- Use a balanced anaesthetic technique and aim for an awake, co-operative patient who can maintain their airway at completion of surgery. Induced hypotension is useful to help minimise blood loss. Remifentanyl infusion (0.04–0.25µg/kg/min) as part of a balanced anaesthetic may help control blood pressure.
- Give IV antibiotics and steroids (e.g. dexamethasone 8mg IV) to minimise swelling.
- Keep the patient warm. Measure core temperature, warm IV fluids, and use a heating mattress and/or hot air blower.

- Monitor blood loss carefully. The HemoCue® is an accurate way of tracking haemoglobin concentration in theatre.
- The patient's jaws will frequently be wired together on completion of surgery. Ensure that throat packs are removed and that the oropharynx is cleared of blood and debris before this is done.
- Administer prophylactic antiemetics (granisetron + cyclizine ± haloperidol) to minimise the risk of nausea and vomiting. Dexamethasone is also effective.
- Extubate the patient once fully awake. Withdraw the nasal tube and cut (15cm mark at the nostril) to leave as a nasopharyngeal airway.
- Prescribe small doses of IV opioid to be administered in recovery.
- Ensure that you and the nursing staff are familiar with the position of the wires that hold the jaws together. Make sure wire cutters are with the patient at all times.

### Postoperative

- Some units send these patients to HDU. Others send them to the ward after a lengthy period in recovery.
- Administer humidified oxygen.
- Ensure all oral analgesics are prescribed in a soluble form. PRN IM or SC opioids should also be prescribed.
- Continue prophylactic antibiotics and steroids postoperatively as per your unit's protocol.
- Prescribe IV fluids. Encourage the patient to take fluid by the oral route as soon as possible.

## Fractures of the zygomatic complex

Procedure	Elevation of fractured zygomatic complex $\pm$ fixation
Time	10–180min
Pain	+ / ++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Minor (significant with internal fixation)
Practical techniques	Oral RAE tube and IPPV LMA/SV for simple elevation

These fractures may occur in isolation or may be associated with damage to other parts of the facial skeleton. There may be limitation of mouth opening due to interference with movement of the coronoid process of the mandible by the depressed zygomatic complex. Following elevation, the fracture may be stable or unstable and require internal fixation. Most surgery is carried out via a temporal approach or a percutaneous route through the cheek. Intraoral and transantral routes have also been described but are rarely used. Unstable fractures require plating or wiring via skin or intraoral incisions.

### Preoperative

- Assess the patient carefully for associated injuries. Treatment of these fractures does not have high clinical priority. The operation is often easier if a period of time elapses (5–7d) to allow the associated facial swelling to disperse.
- Make a careful airway assessment.

### Perioperative

- Intubate the patient with an oral RAE tube. For simple fracture elevations a flexible LMA may be used, but discuss with surgeon whether open fixation of the fracture is planned.
- Lubricate and protect the eyes.
- Give antibiotics and steroids as requested.
- Extubate in the lateral position with the fractured side uppermost.

### Postoperative

- IV opioids may be required in recovery.
- Consider balanced oral analgesia for the ward.

## Mandibular fractures

Procedure	Reduction and fixation of a fractured mandible
Time	2–3hr
Pain	+
Position	Supine, with head-up tilt, head ring
Blood loss	Variable. Consider G&S
Practical techniques	Nasal tube and IPPV Fibreoptic intubation may be required

Mandibular fractures can be treated by either closed reduction and indirect skeletal fixation (using interdental wires, arch bars, or splints) or open reduction and direct skeletal fixation using bone plates. When indirect skeletal fixation is used the patient's jaws are wired together at the completion of surgery. When direct skeletal fixation is used this is not usually the case.

### Preoperative

- Ensure careful assessment for associated injuries.
- Make a meticulous assessment of the airway. There may be severe trismus and marked soft tissue swelling.
- Assess nostril patency. Check for evidence of basal skull fracture and CSF leak as these contraindicate nasal intubation.

### Perioperative

- Trismus makes intubation look potentially difficult preoperatively as mouth opening may be markedly limited, but this tends to relax following induction.
- Bilateral mandibular fractures also allow increased anterior jaw displacement after induction, but airway maintenance by facemask may not always be easy due to increased jaw movement/swelling. A rapid sequence induction with suxamethonium is usually appropriate.
- Marked swelling may make intubation more difficult and an awake fibreoptic intubation may occasionally be required.
- Gas induction is often difficult due to pain when applying the facemask.

### Postoperative

As for patients having maxillary/mandibular osteotomies.

## Anaesthesia for dentistry

### General considerations

- General anaesthesia for dental procedures should be reserved for patients unable to tolerate local anaesthesia (i.e. young children and adults with mental disability) and undertaken in a hospital setting.
- **Facilities** should be the same as for any other day surgery procedure.
- **Selection criteria.** Patients with significant intercurrent disease should be referred for in-patient treatment, as for any other day-case procedure. Mentally disabled patients may have difficulty understanding the procedure and are often anxious. A short-acting anxiolytic agent, such as oral midazolam, and topical anaesthetic cream may be helpful. Mental disability may be part of a more complex medical disorder, such as Down's syndrome or other congenital abnormality. It is important to exclude any significant cardiac pathology and consider endocarditis prophylaxis depending on local guidelines. Patients requiring extensive extractions or restoration work can be admitted to a day-case unit for treatment, but may require overnight stay if medically compromised.
- **Positioning.** There is no longer a place for 'chair dental anaesthesia.' Postural hypotension can be easily overlooked and it is now standard practice to keep patients supine.
- **Arrhythmias.** Dental anaesthesia is associated with a high incidence of arrhythmias, usually related to hypoxia, hypercarbia, inadequate anaesthesia, and volatile anaesthetic agents. Arrhythmias are mainly ventricular and may progress (rarely) to ventricular fibrillation. Halothane is associated with an arrhythmia frequency of up to 75% in dental anaesthesia and is rarely used now. The incidence of hypoxia-induced arrhythmias can be reduced by using 100% oxygen for maintenance. End-tidal CO<sub>2</sub> may be difficult to measure when using a nasal mask but can be controlled when using an LMA.
- **Local anaesthetic infiltration** should be used whenever possible—ensure caution in very young children, where it may lead to accidental biting/laceration.
- **Dental labelling.** Deciduous teeth are assigned letters A–E in each quadrant and adult teeth are numbered 1–8.
- **Simple extractions** are very quick procedures lasting only a few minutes. A nasal mask can be used, but laryngeal mask airways (plain or flexible) are preferable for multiple extractions. A prop/gag and a mouth pack are inserted by the dentist to prevent soiling of the lower airway—ensure that it does not obstruct the airway. When extractions are complete, a pack is positioned over the dental sockets to absorb any oozing blood. During extractions, patency of the airway must be maintained and may require support of the jaw.
- Restoration work can take over an hour and often requires intubation and ventilation.

## Simple dental extractions

Procedure	Dental extractions
Time	2–10min
Pain	+ / ++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	Nasal mask/LMA

### Preoperative

- Usually children 3–12yr.
- Beware of undiagnosed pathology, e.g. heart murmurs.
- Obtain consent for analgesic suppositories if required.

### Perioperative

- Give pre-emptive oral analgesia if possible, e.g. paracetamol (20mg/kg), and NSAID.
- Apply topical anaesthetic for cannulation if IV induction planned.
- Give propofol for induction, sevoflurane for gas induction.
- Tape the eyes.
- Maintenance with volatile agent or IV agent.
- Use local anaesthetic infiltration (by dentist); avoid opioids except in longer cases or in-patients.
- Stabilise the head and neck manually during the procedure.
- Place in lateral position, slightly head down at the end.

### Postoperative

- Regular paracetamol (15mg/kg) for 12–48hr.
- Diclofenac (1mg/kg) or ibuprofen (5–10mg/kg) as indicated.

### Special considerations

- The dentist may apply considerable pressure during extraction and the anaesthetist should apply counter-pressure to support and stabilise the head and jaw.
- Beware of potential hypoxia. Give 100% oxygen for maintenance if necessary.
- When using a nasal mask, mouth breathing can occur around the dental pack, resulting in decreased uptake of the anaesthetic agent and the patient becoming light. This can be a problem when using short-acting agents such as sevoflurane—use isoflurane for maintenance or give small increments of propofol.
- Children with blocked noses can be safely anaesthetised using an LMA (provided there is no upper respiratory tract infection).

## Sedation for dentistry

Patients who are unable to tolerate dental treatment under LA can often be managed by a combination technique using sedation. These procedures are usually performed by the dentist in the dental clinic. Oral or IV sedation can be provided by short-acting benzodiazepines such as midazolam, but the effects can be unpredictable, especially in children. Inhalational sedation can be provided by subanaesthetic concentrations of nitrous oxide (up to 50%) in oxygen using a nasal mask—termed ‘relative analgesia.’ Whichever route of administration is used, it is important to ensure that the patient *remains conscious throughout*.

### General considerations

- Ideally patients should be ASA1 or 2.
- Patients will require an escort for the procedure and to care for them afterwards.
- Written instructions should be provided regarding limitations on driving (as for GA) and operating machinery postoperatively. The patient should also be told to avoid a heavy meal/alcohol prior to treatment.
- Inhalational sedation cannot be used in patients with nasal obstruction or those unable to co-operate with breathing through a nasal mask.
- LA is used in all patients after sedation has been established.
- The patient should be able to communicate throughout the procedure.

### Suitable regimes

- For adults, midazolam 2mg IV, wait 90s, then give 1mg every 30s until sedated.
- Low-dose propofol infusion (only with suitable training).
- 100% oxygen via nasal mask, add 10% nitrous oxide for 1min, then 20% for 1min. Continue increments of 5% until sedated (up to 50%).

### Special considerations

- Do not use mouth props as the ability to keep the mouth open is an important indicator of consciousness.
- Have flumazenil available for reversal of midazolam.
- Allow at least 1hr for recovery following IV sedation.
- Following nitrous oxide sedation, 100% oxygen must be administered to prevent diffusion hypoxia.
- The patient can be discharged once they are able to stand and walk unaided.

### Further reading

- Blayney MR, Malins AF, Cooper GM (1999). Cardiac arrhythmias in children during outpatient general anaesthesia for dentistry. *Lancet*, **354**, 1864–1866.
- Coulard P (2006). Conscious sedation guidance. *Evidence Based Dentistry*, **7**(4), 90–91.
- Royal College of Anaesthetists (1999). *Standards and Guidelines for General Anaesthesia for Dentistry*. [www.rcoa.ac.uk](http://www.rcoa.ac.uk).
- Standing Dental Advisory Committee (1990). *Report of an Expert Working Party (Chairman: Professor D. Poswillo). General Anaesthesia, Sedation and Resuscitation in Dentistry*. London: Department of Health.

# Ophthalmic surgery

## Steve Gayer

- General principles 680
- Basic anatomy for ophthalmic anaesthesia 682
- Ophthalmic anaesthesia options 684
- Ocular block techniques 686
- General anaesthetic techniques 690
- Cataract extraction and IOL 693
- Strabismus surgery 694
- Vitreo-retinal surgery 695
- Other anterior segment procedures 696
- Dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR) 697
- Penetrating eye injury 698
- Other ophthalmic procedures 699



## General principles

### Intraocular pressure (IOP)

IOP normally ranges between 10 and 20mmHg, but transient changes occur with posture, coughing, vomiting, and Valsalva manoeuvres. These are normal and have no bearing on the intact eye. However, IOP approaches atmospheric when the globe is opened during surgery, so force generated from such changes may cause vitreous extrusion, haemorrhage, or lens prolapse. Anaesthesia should strive to ensure a smooth intraoperative course by preventing coughing, retching, and vomiting, lest harmful elevations of IOP occur.

Factors affecting IOP (analogous to factors affecting ICP) are as follows:

- Aqueous humour volume (balance of production and drainage).
- Choroidal blood volume (balance of arterial flow and venous drainage).
- Head-up position (via its effect on the above).
- Tone in extraocular muscles.
- Mannitol and acetazolamide: mannitol (0.5g/kg IV) reduces IOP by withdrawing fluid from the vitreous. Acetazolamide (500mg IV) reduces IOP by decreasing ciliary body aqueous production. Both can be used in the medical management of glaucoma, but the anaesthetist may be required to administer them intraoperatively to reduce IOP acutely. Both are mild diuretics; urinary catheterisation may be indicated.
- Anaesthetic factors:

Anaesthetic factors increasing IOP	Anaesthetic factors decreasing IOP
External compression of the globe by tightly applied facemask	Induction agents principally by reduction in arterial and venous pressure
Laryngoscopy—either pressor response or straining in an inadequately relaxed patient	Non-depolarising muscle relaxants by reduction in tone of extraocular muscles
Suxamethonium increases IOP transiently by contracting extraocular muscles	Head-up tilt at 15°, assists venous drainage
Large volumes of local anaesthetic solution placed in the orbit. This effect is transient (2–3min)	Moderate hypocapnia: 3.5–4.0kPa (26–30mmHg) reduces choroidal blood volume by vasoconstriction of choroidal vessels

### Oculomedullary reflexes

(Oculocardiac, oculo-respiratory, and oculoemetic reflexes)

- Incidence: 20–80%. Commonly seen in paediatric squint surgery.
- Triggers: traction on extraocular muscles, pressure on globe.
- Afferent arc: long and short ciliary nerve fibres, via ciliary ganglion to trigeminal ganglion near floor of 4th ventricle.
- Efferent arc: vagus, fibres to respiratory and vomiting centre.
- Effects: bradycardia, junctional rhythm, sinus arrest, ventricular tachycardia, respiratory arrest, nausea, and vomiting.

- Prevention: bradycardia, respiratory arrest, and nausea moderated to some extent by use of local anaesthesia (to abolish the afferent arc), avoiding hypercapnia (which appears to sensitise the reflex) and prophylactic glycopyrronium (200–400µg) or atropine (300µg).
- Atropine is fractionally absorbed by the eye, so it is not contraindicated for the glaucoma patient.

### Preoperative assessment

The majority of ophthalmic operations are day cases under local anaesthesia. Most patients are elderly and may have one or more serious systemic diseases. Patients scheduled for general anaesthesia should have routine investigations performed. Patients having cataract extraction under LA, however, do not warrant routine investigation. Many centres do not routinely fast such patients and a light meal, 2–3hr preoperatively, may be less disruptive for this elderly population and facilitate better diabetic control. Light sedation in these unfasted patients is not uncommon.

Preoperative assessment for local anaesthetic eye surgery includes:

- Axial length.
- INR/APPT if on warfarin or heparin.
- Blood glucose if diabetic.
- Ability to lie flat for 1hr (cough, sleep apnoea, heart failure, arthritis, etc.).
- Hearing/comprehension—will they be able to hear and understand instructions?
- Anxiety level—will sedation be required?
- Ability to tolerate supplemental oxygen—is there a risk of CO<sub>2</sub> retention, requiring delivery of a precise concentration of oxygen?

### General anaesthesia versus local anaesthesia

There are a number of advantages to avoiding general anaesthesia in this population. These include:

- Minimisation of physiological disturbance.
- Economic factors—increased patient throughput (ward admissions and theatre throughput), less demanding on nursing resources, portering, etc.

There are situations when general anaesthesia is preferable:

- Patients who refuse the operation under LA. Unless there are overwhelming risks, such patients should be offered general anaesthesia providing they are fully informed about the risks and accept them.
- Children and patients with learning disabilities/movement disorders.
- Major and lengthy operations (oculoplastics and vitreoretinal) are commonly performed under GA since it may be unrealistic to expect patients to tolerate them otherwise.
- Patients unable to lie flat and remain motionless for up to 1hr (although some surgeons can operate in a 'deck chair' position rather than true supine for LA).

## Basic anatomy for ophthalmic anaesthesia

- The **orbit** is 40–50mm deep and pyramidal in shape with its base at the orbital opening and its apex pointing to the optic foramen. Its volume is approximately 30ml, 7ml of which is occupied by the globe and its muscle cone, and the remainder loose connective tissue through which local anaesthetic solutions can spread. The lateral walls of both orbits form an angle of 90°—the angle between the medial and lateral wall of each orbit is 45°. The medial wall is parallel to the sagittal plane.
- The **globe** lies in the anterior part of the orbit and sits high and lateral (i.e. nearer the roof than the floor and nearer the lateral than the medial wall). This is important when considering needle access, which is usually achieved either medially or inferolaterally where the gap between the globe and orbital wall is greatest. The **sclera** forms the fibrous bulk of the globe. It is 1mm thick and, although tough, can be penetrated by a sharp needle. Deep to the sclera is the **uveal tract** which comprises the ciliary body, iris, and choroid layer. Superficial to and enclosing the sclera is the membranous **Tenon's capsule**, lying directly underneath the conjunctiva. It is easily recognised, being white and avascular. The **four recti and two oblique muscles** control eye movement and influence IOP. The lateral rectus is innervated by the abducent nerve (VIth), the superior oblique by the trochlear nerve (IVth), and the rest by the oculomotor nerve (IIIrd)  $[(LR_6SO_4)_3]$ . The recti form the **muscle 'cone'** which encloses the sensory nerves, ciliary ganglion, optic nerve, and retinal artery and vein. It is through this cone that peribulbar local anaesthetic drugs must diffuse to effect their action.
- The cranial nerves enter the cone and pierce the muscles on their intraconal surface. These are motor only. The sensory supply is via branches of the trigeminal (Vth) cranial nerve. The 1st division of the trigeminal (**ophthalmic nerve**,  $V_1$ ) enters the orbit via the superior orbital fissure and supplies branches intraconally to the sclera/cornea, and extraconally to the upper lid and conjunctiva after leaving the orbit via the superior orbital notch. The 2nd division (**maxillary nerve**,  $V_2$ ) enters the orbit via the inferior orbital fissure. Branches of this nerve are entirely extraconal and supply the lower lid and inferior conjunctiva after leaving the orbit via the inferior orbital foramen.
- The **ciliary ganglion**, lying within the cone, relays sensory fibres from the globe to  $V_1$  and receives a parasympathetic branch from the (motor) IIIrd cranial nerve and sympathetic fibres from the carotid plexus.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Ophthalmic anaesthesia options

Ophthalmic anaesthesia can be divided into two classes:

### *Akinetic anaesthesia*

- Needle injection of local anaesthetic
  - Into the extraocular muscle cone (retrobulbar or intraconal block)
  - External to the muscle cone (peribulbar or extraconal block).
- Cannula infusion of local anaesthetic beneath Tenon's capsule.
- General anaesthesia.

### *Kinetic analgesia*

- Topical local anaesthetic drops or lidocaine gel.
- Supplemental intracameral injection of preservative-free local anaesthetic.
- Subconjunctival injection.

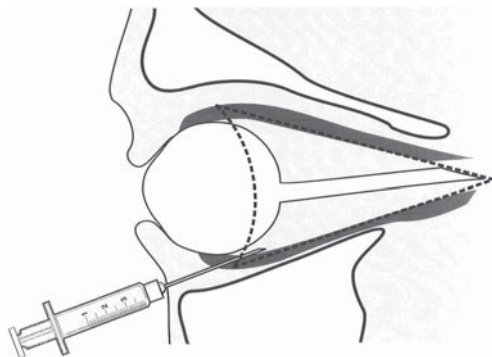
## Needle-based blocks

### **Retrobulbar (or intraconal) (see figure 27.1)**

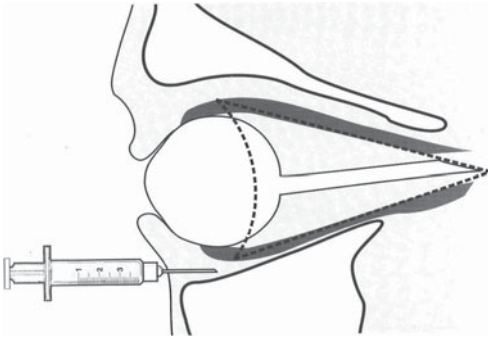
- Steeply angled and deeply placed.
- Low volume (1–3ml agent).
- Rapid akinesia and analgesia.
- May require separate facial nerve block for lid akinesia.
- Greater potential for complications:
  - Globe perforation—posterior or inferior pole of the eye
  - Optic nerve sheath injection—brainstem anaesthesia, trauma
  - Intravascular injection—convulsions, apnoea, loss of consciousness
  - Retrobulbar haemorrhage
- Not recommended without training and experience. Globe penetration or perforation may lead to permanent visual loss. Brainstem anaesthesia may cause apnoea, dysrhythmias, and cardiac arrest.

### **Peribulbar (or extraconal) (see figure 27.2)**

- Minimally angled, parallel to globe with shallow placement.
- High volume (4–10ml agent).



**Figure 27.1** Retrobulbar (Intraconal) Block



**Figure 27.2** Peribulbar (Extraconal) Block

- More gradual onset of akinesia and analgesia.
- Facial nerve block not required.
- Lesser potential for significant complications. Retrobulbar haemorrhage and globe penetration less likely if use single inferolateral injection technique and avoid superior aspect of orbit.
- May be supplemented with a medial canthus block.

***Cannula-based (sub-Tenon's) block (see figure 27.3)***

- Cannula may be rigid (usually metal) or flexible, long (32 mm), short (25mm), or ultrashort (10 mm), curved or straight (may be tapered or have stops).
- Lesser potential for serious complications:
  - Vortex vein haemorrhage
  - Globe perforation (extremely rare; myopes have thin sclera)
  - Central retinal artery occlusion
- Higher incidence of minor (mostly cosmetic) complications:
  - Conjunctival haemorrhage
  - Chemosis



**Figure 27.3** Sub-Tenon's Block

## Ocular block techniques

### Peribulbar (extraconal) block

- Establish IV access and monitoring.
- When indicated, midazolam 0.5–2.0mg provides effective anxiolysis and amnesia for most elderly patients. For deeper sedation use propofol 10–30mg  $\pm$  narcotic (alfentanil 250 $\mu$ g, fentanyl 50 $\mu$ g, or remifentanyl 20 $\mu$ g).
- Instill topical local anaesthetic drops to anaesthetise the conjunctiva (proxymetacaine 0.5%).
- Patient lies supine and is asked to look straight ahead (primary gaze).
- Palpate junction of the medial 2/3 and lateral 1/3 of the inferior orbital rim with the non-dominant hand where a groove is felt at the junction of the maxilla and zygoma. See figure 27.4.
- Slightly lateral to this point, and just above the rim (see figure 27.4) insert a 20–32mm 23–25 Gauge needle mounted on a 10ml syringe, and pass slowly backwards parallel to the globe and perpendicular to all planes. The insertion point is derived in this manner to prevent injection of local anaesthetic into the inferior rectus and inferior oblique muscles. Needle entry can be either transcutaneous or, by retraction of the lower lid, transconjunctival.
- If the needle tip contacts the bone, it is redirected slightly superiorly to follow the orbit floor.
- The needle does not need to be placed deeply. Trainees and those with little experience should not hesitate to keep the tip shallow in the orbit. The globe should be observed carefully for any sign of rotation during insertion, indicating scleral contact.
- Consider aspiration, and then slowly inject 4–10ml of local anaesthetic. Stop injecting if globe becomes tense/proptosed, or if the upper eyelid fills, as this is likely to indicate retrobulbar injection, requiring a smaller volume of agent.

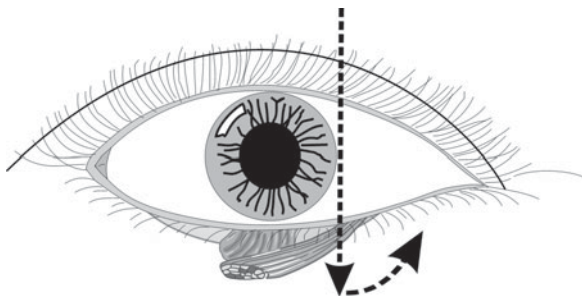


Figure 27.4 Needle insertion site

- Following injection, some employ digital massage or a compression device (Hogan balloon) to dissipate local anaesthetic and normalise intraocular pressure.
- If a further 'top-up' is needed use a medial canthus injection. This is an advanced technique. At a point just medial to the caruncle the needle is passed backward with the bevel facing the globe, at an angle of  $10^\circ$  to the sagittal plane, directed towards the medial wall of the orbit. If the medial wall is contacted, the needle is withdrawn slightly and redirected laterally. Inject 3–4ml of local anaesthetic.

The larger volumes of solution required for peribulbar block tend to cause proptosis and a temporary increase in IOP. In the intact globe this has no consequence but can be problematic when the globe is opened for surgery. Hyaluronidase mixed into the local anaesthetic is useful. The raised IOP usually disappears when the solution has dissipated; alternatively a compression device can be applied over the eye at a set pressure (25mmHg), which reduces the volume of blood and aqueous in the eye. Upon release the eye becomes hypotonic and remains so for about 5min until blood and aqueous volumes are re-established.

#### **Relative contraindications to peribulbar (extraconal) block**

- Axial length  $>26\text{mm}$ . In severely myopic patients the globe often has a long anteroposterior diameter or may have an abnormal hernial outpouched structure (**staphyloma**) which can increase the potential of globe perforation. Where axial length is greater than 26mm, consider a sub-Tenon approach, topical anaesthesia, or general anaesthesia.
- Perforated or infected eye.
- Inability to lie flat and still.

#### **Complications**

- **Globe perforation:**  $<0.01\%$ . Not always obvious. May be painless or associated with sudden pain on injection. It may be noted at the time of surgery if the eye becomes hypotonic, in which case there is a serious risk of retinal haemorrhage and detachment which may require laser retinopexy or vitrectomy.
- **Retrobulbar haemorrhage:** incidence 0.07%. Often innocuous. Rarely severe bleeding is recognised by rapid orbital swelling and proptosis. The surgeon should be informed immediately and the pulsation of the central retinal artery assessed. If this is compromised, a lateral canthotomy may be required to relieve IOP.
- **'Systemic complications'** (oculocardiac reflex, neurogenic syncope, epileptic seizure) are rare, but monitoring is key. Most are self-limiting.

#### **Sub-Tenon block**

- Apply topical proxymetacaine 0.5% to the conjunctiva and retract the lower lid either with the help of an assistant or using a lid speculum.
- In the inferonasal quadrant, the conjunctiva is lifted with Moorfield's forceps at a point 5–7mm from the limbus (co-operative patients are asked to look superotemporally).
- A small incision is made in the conjunctiva with blunt-tipped Westcott's scissors which are then used to dissect inferonasally in a plane between



the sclera and Tenon's capsule. Tenon's capsule is recognised as white and avascular which distinguishes it from the vascular sclera.

- Once in this plane, a blunt cannula (Stevens cannula or similar) is inserted and 3–8ml of local anaesthetic is deposited. Care must be taken to dissect in the correct plane. If the cannula is placed subconjunctivally LA solution will relax out or may cause considerable chemosis.
- Sub-Tenon's block can be used safely in patients with axial lengths >26mm, although there are rare reports of scleral penetration. It is the block of choice in anticoagulated patients, since any bleeding point can be cauterised directly, but be aware that vortex vein haemorrhage has been reported. This is more common with long rigid cannulae.

### Topical/infiltration anaesthesia

- Reserved for anterior segment surgery such as cataract extraction.
- Topical local anaesthetic drops can be used to provide up to 15min of anaesthesia. Proxymetacaine 0.5% (proparacaine in the US) is the agent of choice. Note that topical local anaesthetics are toxic to the corneal endothelium—prolonged administration may cause clouding/irritation.
- Topical local anaesthetic gels (lidocaine) have longer duration of action. Gels act as barriers to antiseptics, so the correct order of administration is: drops—antiseptic—gel.
- Note that anaesthesia is not as complete as with formal ophthalmic block. The iris and ciliary body retain their sensitivity and akinesia is not a feature. Proper patient selection is key, otherwise one may find oneself involved in a **'vocal local'** session. The surgeon and staff need to ensure that good communication is maintained with the patient at all times. Anxiolytic agents may be useful.
- Intracameral injection by the surgeon (0.1 ml isotonic preservative-free lidocaine) to the anterior chamber may be used to provide anaesthesia to the iris and ciliary body.

### Local anaesthetic solutions

- The commonest solution is a 1:1 mixture of lidocaine 2% and bupivacaine 0.5% (or levobupivacaine 0.75%). For routine cataract extraction lidocaine 2% alone gives sufficient duration, but for more prolonged vitreoretinal surgery levobupivacaine 0.75% is more suitable.
- Hyaluronidase can be added to promote spread and reduce IOP.<sup>1</sup> Concentrations between 1 and 30U/ml are used. The drug data sheet suggests 15U/ml.
- Adrenaline may produce an untoward tachycardia if absorbed systemically via the punctum and nasal mucosa. Unless vasoconstriction is needed, it should be avoided in elderly patients.
- Alkalinisation and warming of the LA (to 37°C) may reduce latency and decrease pain on injection.

<sup>1</sup> Schulenburg HE, Sri-Chandana C, Lyons G, Columb MO, McLure HA (2007). Hyaluronidase reduces local anaesthetic volumes for sub-Tenon's anaesthesia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **99**, 717–720.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## General anaesthetic techniques

The aim is to minimise increases in IOP whilst maintaining cardiovascular stability and avoiding overly deep anaesthesia in a population that is likely to be elderly and have several comorbidities.

### Indications

- Patient preference.
- Paediatric patients.
- Other patient factors (e.g. movement disorders, marked cough, dementia, claustrophobia).
- Long operations (e.g. vitreoretinal, corneal transplantation).
- Orbital involvement (e.g. blow-out fracture, optic nerve fenestration).
- Multiple operation sites (e.g. oculoplastics with distant graft site).

### Preoperative

In addition to routine consultation and investigations (see p8), the preoperative visit should identify patients with comorbidities such as diabetes and cardiovascular disease. Pacemakers and internal defibrillators should be evaluated in a suitable time frame prior to surgery. Consider temporarily disabling automated internal defibrillators. Insulin-dependent diabetics will often have reduced their morning dose of insulin and will be fasted. Such patients will require close monitoring of blood glucose, and the institution of a euglycaemic control regimen.

### ETT or LMA?

Unless contraindicated, the LMA is ideal. It obviates laryngoscopy and the possible adverse effects on IOP. It produces minimal stimulation once in place and permits lighter anaesthesia. The quality of emergence is also superior (see below).

### Ventilation or spontaneous respiration?

For extraocular and minor surgery (including cataract extraction) spontaneous ventilation is acceptable. Controlled ventilation has a number of advantages in intraocular and more major surgery. It allows control of CO<sub>2</sub> (reducing IOP and desensitising the oculomedullary reflex) and permits the other benefits of a balanced technique.

- Ventilating via an LMA is usually uneventful. Pressure control or pressure support allow avoidance of high airway pressures (>15cmH<sub>2</sub>O, with the risk of gastric insufflation). Volume-based positive pressure ventilation by adjusting the tidal volume to appropriate airway pressure and using a more symmetrical I:E ratio (1:1.5) is also acceptable.
- Always monitor CO<sub>2</sub> waveform. Any change usually heralds a change in ventilation before it is clinically apparent (malpositioned LMA, inadequate muscle relaxation).
- Use spirometry if available. An open flow–volume loop graphically demonstrates the presence of a leak and potential LMA displacement.
- Use a nerve stimulator routinely when electing to paralyse patients. Coughing and gagging are less well tolerated by ophthalmic surgeons than by their orthopaedic colleagues.

### Nitrous oxide?

Nitrous oxide should be avoided in vitreoretinal surgery if intraocular gas bubbles such as sulphur hexafluoride ( $\text{SF}_6$ ), octafluoropropane ( $\text{C}_3\text{F}_8$ ), air, or similar are planned. Discuss this with the surgeon in advance or simply make it routine habit to use an  $\text{O}_2$ /air combination.

### Supplementary local block?

A local block in addition to GA is a key strategy for postoperative pain management. It is particularly useful for vitreoretinal surgery, corneal transplantations, and paediatric and oculoplastic procedures. A sub-Tenon's block (with negligible risk) is the preferred technique and can be administered following induction.

### Emergence without coughing

With an LMA, emergence is usually smooth. If a tracheal tube is used, spray the cords with lidocaine at intubation; however, the effect is short-lived and may no longer be effective at extubation. Other techniques include extubating in a deep plane of anaesthesia or administering a bolus of IV lidocaine (1mg/kg) or propofol (30–40mg) just prior to extubation.

It is best not to lighten anaesthesia until surgery is complete and the 'sticky-drapes' removed (if a block has been used, drape removal may be the most stimulating part of the operation). Emergence hypertension (and the concomitant raised IOP), if it occurs, can be moderated by the use of IV lidocaine (up to 1mg/kg) a few minutes before emergence.

### A standard technique: summary

- IV induction: propofol bolus or TCI.
- Airway: reinforced or 'Proseal' LMA if appropriate.
- Consider controlled ventilation.
- Maintenance: propofol infusion (~5mg/kg/hr or 2.5µg/ml if TCI) or volatile agent.
- Use an oxygen/air mixture. Avoid  $\text{N}_2\text{O}$ .
- Analgesia provided ideally with a local anaesthetic block if indicated, or with short-acting narcotics (alfentanil/remifentanil) for stimulating procedures.

### General points

- Tape the non-operative eye. Participate in the 'time-out' to ensure the correct eye is exposed and not draped.
- Access to the airway may be limited—have a low threshold for moving everyone out of the way if you suspect difficulties.
- Glycopyrronium may reduce the incidence/severity of bradycardias.
- Do not allow the surgeon to extubate the patient. Be sure to have the LMA/ETT securely in hand prior to removal of the sticky drapes.

**Postoperative**

Analgesia requirements are usually modest, especially if supplemental local anaesthesia is administered intraoperatively. Nausea and vomiting is common in squint surgery, but less so in the majority of other cases. It is reasonable to use PONV prophylaxis (ondansetron 100µg/kg) in squint surgery, although it is only modestly effective.

## Cataract extraction and IOL

Procedure	Phacoemulsification of opacified lens, removal and replacement with artificial intraocular implant
Time	20–40min
Pain	Minimal
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	Local technique, sub-Tenon's or needle block, LMA (armoured), SV/IPPV ETT (RAE, armoured), IPPV

### Preoperative

- Check axial length (less than 26mm for peribulbar block).
- For operations under LA, patient must be able to lie flat and still. Active cough is a relative contraindication.
- Men with benign prostatic hypertrophy may take tamsulosin and have '**floppy iris**' syndrome. They may require increased surgical manipulation, warranting a solid block.
- Consider INR if excessive warfarin anticoagulation suspected.
- Most commonly day case.

### Perioperative

- Use supplemental oxygen (via nasal cannulae).
- Monitor BP, SpO<sub>2</sub>, and nasal-expired CO<sub>2</sub> if possible. The latter serves as an apnoea indicator and is useful if sedation is used. Be aware that sedation may serve to disinhibit rather than sedate some patients.
- If sedation is required use midazolam (0.25–1mg) with fentanyl (25–50µg), remifentanyl (20–50µg), or propofol (20mg). This is best employed during block insertion. The patient should then be allowed to awaken when in theatre to gain cooperation and avoid sleeping, snoring, and airway problems.
- Glaucoma patients' chronic miotic drop therapy may make surgical access difficult and require use of iris retractor. Ensure dense regional block to minimise discomfort from surgical manipulation.

### Postoperative

Simple oral analgesics only required.

## Strabismus surgery

Procedure	Extraocular surgery for correction of squint—may be unilateral or bilateral
Time	60–90min
Pain	+
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	LMA (armoured), IPPV/SV ETT (RAE, armoured), IPPV

### Preoperative

- Patient population mainly children (commonest ophthalmic operation in children).
- Higher incidence of malignant hyperthermia than in general population
- May be day-case.
- Preoperative analgesia (20mg/kg soluble paracetamol).

### Perioperative

- Higher incidence of oculocardiac reflex; have atropine prepared. Prophylaxis with glycopyrronium is not proven.
- Maintain normocarbida to reduce incidence and severity of the oculocardiac reflex. Consider controlled ventilation via LMA or tracheal tube.
- Suxamethonium should be avoided because tone in the ocular muscles remains abnormal for up to 20min, making surgical assessment and correction difficult.
- Suspect malignant hyperthermia if hypertension, tachycardia, hypercarbia, and increasing temperature.
- All anaesthetics affect eye movement and the position of neutral gaze (Guedel's signs). Propofol may affect this the least, and the rapid recovery it affords allows early assessment of the correction in recovery. Anaesthesia with volatile agents should be of sufficient depth to ensure neutral gaze.
- High incidence of PONV. Consider multimodal PONV prophylaxis with serotonin antagonist (ondansetron 100µg/kg), metoclopramide, or dexamethasone. Avoid opioids. Consider total IV technique with propofol.
- Consider paracetamol or rectal diclofenac (1mg/kg).

### Postoperative

- Postoperative pain is mild and can be treated with oral analgesics and topical proxymetacaine eye drops.
- PONV rescue with repeat dose of serotonin antagonist is minimally effective. Consider a different class of antiemetic.

## Vitreoretinal surgery

<b>Procedure</b>	Intraocular surgery. Vitrectomy, cryotherapy, laser, plom-bage, insertion of oil and/or gas, scleral banding ('explant')
<b>Time</b>	90–180min
<b>Pain</b>	++/+++
<b>Position</b>	Supine
<b>Blood loss</b>	Nil
<b>Practical techniques</b>	LMA (armoured), IPPV ETT (RAE, armoured), IPPV Sub-Tenon's or needle block $\pm$ GA

### Preoperative

- Patient population generally aged 60–70yr. May have coexisting morbidities, e.g. hypertension, ischaemic heart disease, and diabetes.
- Severe myopes, at risk for retinal detachment, are generally younger.
- Retinal detachments may be semi-urgent, particularly if 'macula-on'.
- Note if recent retinal surgery on the other eye (see below).

### Perioperative

- Often prolonged operations, performed largely in the dark.
- Surgery is characterised by alternating periods of intense and minimal stimulation. Achieving a depth of anaesthesia and analgesia to accommodate these extremes is not easy without concurrent local block. Use long-acting local anaesthetics.
- Retina detachment patients with myopia will be at increased risk of globe puncture (staphyloma, long axial length). Retro/peribulbar blocks are relatively contraindicated. Consider sub-Tenon's with light-handed dissection as even blunt scissors may cut the typically thinner sclera.
- Consider GA—LMA/propofol/remifentanyl/O<sub>2</sub>/air.
- Avoid N<sub>2</sub>O. Intraocular tamponade with gas (SF<sub>6</sub> or C<sub>3</sub>F<sub>8</sub>) may be used, usually towards the end of the case. It is recommended that nitrous oxide be discontinued 20min beforehand. It is probably better to omit altogether as surgeons seldom give notice. If a supplementary block is not used, remifentanyl or deeper plane of inhalational anaesthesia should be considered, since cryotherapy and scleral indentation can be very stimulating.
- Oculocardiac reflex may be encountered upon surgical rotation of the globe and traction on the extraocular muscles.
- Beware of premature emergence as the other eye is often examined, and possibly cryocauterised.
- Consider deep extubation and other manoeuvres to prevent bucking and associated increase in IOP with emergence from GA.

### Postoperative

- With block, postoperative analgesic requirement is minimal.
- Otherwise, simple oral analgesics.



## Other anterior segment procedures

Procedure	Penetrating keratoplasty (cornea transplantation), glaucoma drainage, intracapsular cataract extraction
Time	30–180min
Pain	+ / ++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	LMA (armoured), IPPV ETT (RAE, armoured), IPPV Sub-Tenon's or needle block $\pm$ GA

### Preoperative

- Glaucoma patient population varied, but generally geriatric. May have coexisting morbidities, e.g. hypertension, ischaemic heart disease, and diabetes.
- Check glaucoma patients' medication list. Non-selective  $\beta$ -blocker drops can cause bradycardic rhythms. Ecothiopate may prolong the effects of suxamethonium.
- Cornea transplant patients are all ages. Be wary of drug allergies particularly for Stevens–Johnson patients.

### Perioperative

- As with vitreoretinal surgery these are characterised by alternating periods of intense and minimal stimulation. Achieving a depth of anaesthesia and analgesia to accommodate these extremes is not easy without concurrent local block.
- Control of IOP is crucial. Scleral incision of a tense eye can result in sudden decompression and iris/lens prolapse, vitreous loss, or expulsive choroidal haemorrhage.
- Controlled ventilation and end-tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  monitoring to ensure avoiding hypercarbia and elevated IOP.
- Consider agents to lower pre-existent or persistent high IOP (mannitol, acetazolamide).
- Complete akinesia is indicated for cornea transplantation. Ensure a good solid block and/or deep level of GA.
- Oculocardiac reflex: IV atropine is not contraindicated for glaucoma patients as it is only fractionally absorbed by the eye.
- A supplementary sub-Tenon's block improves intraoperative stability, obviates the need for opiates, and reduces postoperative pain and nausea. Place after induction or ask the surgeon to perform.

### Postoperative

- With block, postoperative analgesic requirement is minimal.
- PONV may be due to elevated postoperative IOP. Consider re-evaluation by ophthalmologist.
- Otherwise, simple oral analgesics.

## Dacrocystorhinostomy (DCR)

Procedure	Probing of tear duct, insertion of drainage tube, formation of stoma between tear duct and nasopharynx
Time	30–45min
Pain	+
Position	Supine, slight head-up
Blood loss	Can be relatively bloody, with soiling of nasopharynx
Practical techniques	ETT (RAE, armoured), IPPV LMA (armoured), IPPV

### Perioperative

- Lacrimal surgery can range from simple probing of the tear ducts to insertion of tubes or formal DCR. The latter is usually done under GA although block and sedation is feasible.
- DCR may be bloody. Blood will pass into the nasopharynx/oropharynx. Topical vasoconstrictor solutions (cocaine/Moffett's soaked pledgets) placed intranasally after induction may reduce this. Infiltrate the surgical field with LA containing vasoconstrictor to further reduce bleeding. Beware of ensuing tachyarrhythmias.
- Slight head-up tilt and deliberate moderate hypotension (or avoidance of hypertension) further improves the operative field.
- Intubation (oral RAE or reinforced) protects the lower airway definitively, but a reinforced LMA may be used where topical vasoconstriction, moderate hypotension, and surgical co-operation are available. Consider placing a throat pack.
- Controlled ventilation, by facilitating moderate hypocapnia, may also contribute to mucosal vasoconstriction and improved operative field. If using an LMA, positive pressure ventilation may reduce the likelihood of blood soiling the lower airway.

### Postoperative

- Postoperative analgesia provided by oral NSAIDs and paracetamol/codeine.
- Ask the surgeon to irrigate the ducts with topical local anaesthetic.

### Special considerations

- DCR can be performed under local anaesthesia alone, with suitable surgical experience.

## Penetrating eye injury

Procedure	EUA, debridement, closure of punctum
Time	30–90 min
Pain	+ / +++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	—
Practical techniques	ETT (RAE, armoured), IPPV LMA (armoured), IPPV Needle block

### Preoperative

- Although relatively straightforward in adults, this can be difficult to manage in children (in whom it is a common injury, representing more than a third of paediatric trauma cases). The essential danger is that elevation of IOP, either pre- or perioperatively, risks extrusion of the vitreous, haemorrhage, and lens prolapse.
- Pain, eye rubbing, crying, breath holding, and screaming will elevate IOP. IV sedation may be required to control such a child.
- Give analgesia (oral/rectal paracetamol/NSAIDs). Opioids should be avoided if possible (or at least used cautiously and with an antiemetic) since vomiting will also affect IOP adversely.
- Patients may have a full stomach. Traumatized children may still have a full stomach several hours post injury.

### Perioperative

- Suxamethonium causes a transient increase in IOP. However, induction agents *reduce* IOP and so moderate its effects. The risks imposed by suxamethonium should be balanced against the risks (specific to each case) imposed by a full stomach. If in doubt, use suxamethonium following a large dose of induction agent.
- Practical alternatives to suxamethonium:
  - Wait. If immediate operative repair is not imperative (and it seldom is) the case can be deferred until the stomach is considered safe. Prokinetic agents may be of use.
  - If no airway problems are anticipated, use a rapid sequence technique with rocuronium (1mg/kg) or 'high' dose vecuronium (0.15mg/kg). Sugammadex, if available, can rapidly reverse these agents if airway difficulty is encountered.
- The pressor response to intubation can be moderated by IV lidocaine (1mg/kg), IV esmolol, or pre-priming with induction agent immediately prior to intubation.
- Opioids may be used as part of a balanced technique.
- A local anaesthetic technique can be considered in certain patients at marked risk from GA.

### Postoperative

Paracetamol/codeine preparations and oral/rectal diclofenac.

## Other ophthalmic procedures

Operation	Description	Time (min)	Pain (+ to +++++)	Position	Blood loss	Notes
Trabeculectomy	Surgical correction of glaucoma	50–80	+	Supine	Nil	Usually performed under LA block—peribulbar may be preferred to sub-Tenon's. Axial length may not have been checked
Moh's reconstruction	Plastics procedure on eyelids after excision of BCC	45–60	+	Supine	Nil	May be under local anaesthetic, but may require use of fat or fascia taken from the thigh, so GA may be preferred
Enucleation	Removal of globe for tumour or chronic infection	60–90	++	Supine	0–200ml	Anaesthetic technique as for vitreoretinal surgery. Local techniques not appropriate
Evisceration	Removal of globe contents for later replacement with prosthesis	60–90	+	Supine	Nil	Anaesthetic technique as for vitreoretinal surgery. Local techniques not appropriate
Syringing of tear ducts in babies		30	+	Supine		Straightforward technique. SV via LMA. Throat pack to absorb any 'wash'
EUA of eyes in babies		10–20	+	Supine		Beware oculocardiac reflex. Have atropine 10µg/kg prepared

### Further reading

- Gayer S (2006). Rethinking anesthesia strategies for patients with traumatic eye injuries: alternatives to general anesthesia. *Current Anesthesia and Critical Care*, **17**, 191.
- Gayer S, Kumar CM (2008). Ophthalmic regional anesthesia techniques. *Minerva Anesthesiologica*, **1–2**, 23–33.
- Guise P (2003). Sub-Tenon's anesthesia: a prospective study of 6000 blocks. *Anesthesiology*, **98**, 964–968.
- Kumar CM, Dodds C, McLure H, Chabria R (2004). A comparison of three sub-Tenon's cannulae. *Eye*, **18**, 873–876.
- Local Anaesthesia for Intraocular Surgery. The Royal College of Anaesthetists and the Royal College of Ophthalmologists (2001). <http://www.rcoa.ac.uk/docs/rcarcoguidelines.pdf>.
- Ruschen H, Bremner FD, Carr C (2003). Complications after sub-Tenon's eye block. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **96**, 273–277.
- Vohra SB, Good PA (2000). Altered globe dimensions of axial myopia as risk factors for penetrating ocular injury during peribulbar anesthesia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 242–243.

# Day surgery

**Ian Jackson**

Day surgery 702

Conduct of anaesthesia 704



## Day surgery

A surgical day case is a patient who is admitted for investigation or operation on a planned non-overnight stay basis.

- Organisation is the key to efficient good-quality day surgery and requires close cooperation between all agencies involved, including surgeons, anaesthetists, day unit staff, general practitioners, patients, and their carers.
- Facilities: an efficient organisation requires 'ring fenced' theatres and ward space. Day surgery can be managed successfully in a variety of hospital configurations; however, day cases on inpatient wards and theatres have a higher admission rate and will suffer cancellation when there are bed shortages and emergency operations. Self-contained units with their own facilities but within an acute hospital offer the best option.
- Staff: senior staff should perform day-case anaesthesia and surgery. Increasingly complex patients and procedures are being transferred to day surgery and anaesthesia must be performed to a high standard to minimise unplanned admissions.

### Patient selection

Patients should follow a sequential pathway and undergo preoperative assessment by trained nursing staff, according to set day-case criteria. The nursing staff should have the support of a consultant anaesthetist who they can approach with any problem patients.

- Ideal practice is where patients attend assessment at the hospital on the day of their surgical outpatient appointment. This approach ensures time to complete any investigations and to review difficult patients.
- Some patient groups can undergo telephone assessment; in particular those who are young, fit, on no medication, and undergoing a procedure that does not require specific tests.
- Successful day surgery requires anaesthetic departments to look at patients who fall outside the guidelines and consider if they can be made fit for day surgery. Many ASA 3 patients will do better in a day-case environment if they are managed appropriately, e.g. previous MI, severe COPD, patients on dialysis.
- Many paediatric anaesthetists will anaesthetise babies as young as 6wk on a day-case basis (excludes premature infants).
- Obesity in itself does not preclude day-stay surgery but can cause problems in terms of length of surgery and anaesthesia. BMI is not the ideal tool for assessing fitness for day surgery, but most units carefully review those with a BMI greater than 40. Consideration should be given to preoperative antireflux control and assessment should include questions about obstructive sleep apnoea. Remember that obesity may cause as many problems to the surgeon as to the anaesthetist.
- Patients must agree/understand that they should not drive, cycle, operate machinery, or consume alcohol for a minimum of 24hr after their anaesthetic.

### Day-case selection criteria

*Criteria need to be agreed with the local anaesthetic department and will vary according to the day surgery unit setting, e.g. more challenging patients and procedures can be undertaken where the unit is integrated into a hospital with all support services. Stand-alone units with no overnight beds will need more conservative criteria.*

**Health status:** generally fit and healthy (ASA 1 and 2). Patients with significant cardiovascular or respiratory disease or those with gross obesity should not be refused until reviewed by a consultant anaesthetist.

**Age:** there is no upper age limit; physiological fitness should be considered rather than chronological age.

**Complexity of surgery:** there is no time limit for duration of procedure. Procedures associated with significant postoperative pain (that cannot be controlled with oral analgesia), inability to eat and drink, or prolonged immobility should not be performed.

**Transport:** all patients must be escorted home by a responsible, informed adult and be adequately supervised during their recovery at home for a minimum of 24hr.

**Social support:** patients must have suitable home conditions with adequate toilet facilities, and a telephone should be readily available for advice in an emergency.

**Geography:** though it is procedure-dependent, as a rule the patient should live within 1hr travelling distance from the hospital.

### Common co-existing diseases

- Stable asthmatics are suitable for day surgery. Regular hospitalisation and poor control of symptoms would suggest unsuitability.
- Epileptics are suitable for day surgery. Consider avoiding propofol if they have a driving licence (see pp240–2).
- Well-motivated, well-controlled diabetics can be managed as day cases, with either general or local anaesthesia.

### Cancellations

Most cancellations on the day of surgery can be avoided by careful patient selection by experienced staff. Those due to an acute illness, e.g. a heavy cold, will occur; however, undiagnosed hypertensive disease or uncontrolled atrial fibrillation should not be discovered on the day of admission.

### Driving

Patients should not drive for at least 24hr postoperatively because of residual effects of the anaesthetic. Remember that some operations themselves will preclude driving for longer because of pain and limited movement, e.g. arthroscopy and inguinal hernia repair. This advice must be contained in the preoperative verbal and written instructions given to the patient and reinforced prior to discharge.



## Conduct of anaesthesia

Use local anaesthetic, or short-acting general anaesthetic drugs that have few residual psychomotor effects and a low incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV).

### Preoperative

- The surgeon and anaesthetist will need to review the preoperative assessment and undertake history and examination as indicated. Remember, a full medical clerking is not usually performed by junior medical staff.
- Avoid premedication if at all possible. If necessary use oral midazolam (up to 0.5mg/kg) in a little undiluted sweet fruit cordial (as it tastes awful) for children, or temazepam (10–20mg) in adults.
- There is no evidence for any increase in regurgitation/aspiration in day-case patients so the routine use of antacid drugs is unnecessary. However, in those with a history of regurgitation, ranitidine (300mg PO) or omeprazole (40mg PO) is appropriate.
- Oral analgesics—paracetamol 1g and NSAIDs, e.g. diclofenac 50–100mg, reach peak effect after 1–2hr and are a useful adjunct to anaesthesia, with very few side effects.

### Perioperative

- Total IV anaesthesia with propofol (without nitrous oxide) is widely used. Propofol induction with isoflurane/sevoflurane/desflurane maintenance is an alternative.
- For larger procedures incremental fentanyl, often 2–4µg/kg in divided doses.
- Consider NSAIDs if not already given and local anaesthetic for every suitable patient/operation.
- Give IV fluids in a dose of 15ml/kg. This reduces the incidence of dizziness and aids recovery.
- Whenever possible use a laryngeal mask airway, avoiding intubation, muscle relaxants, and reversal agents. Laryngeal masks for gynaecological laparoscopy and armoured laryngeal masks for wisdom tooth extraction can be used safely in most circumstances.
- Antiemetics are not indicated routinely but should be reserved for treatment of any PONV or prophylaxis in those with a history of PONV.

### Postoperative

- The inclusion of opioids, NSAIDs, and local anaesthetics should provide adequate analgesia. If more analgesia is needed it is imperative to treat it early—consider IV paracetamol and/or fentanyl 50–100µg.
- Give morphine if stronger analgesia is required. Remember that morphine in doses above 0.1mg/kg increases the admission rate.
- Simple oral analgesics may be of help, as may physical therapies such as hot water bottles, particularly for the cramping lower abdominal pain following gynaecological surgery.

### Postoperative nausea and vomiting (see also p1113)

- A multifactorial approach to the prevention of PONV should be used. The Steward Scoring System is more useful for day-surgery patients. Patients experiencing PONV must be actively managed before discharge home.
- For high-risk patients local anaesthetic techniques or general anaesthesia using TIVA, omitting nitrous oxide, multimodal analgesic therapy, good hydration (IV fluids), and minimal (2hr) fluid fast are appropriate. Dexamethasone 8mg in combination with cyclizine 50mg are effective prophylactic agents. This is an approach that works well and leaves a small number of patients requiring treatment, for which a 5-HT<sub>3</sub> antagonist such as granisetron is suitable.

### Regional anaesthesia

Regional anaesthesia is widely used in Europe and North America for day-case anaesthesia. PONV is reduced. Timing and planning are important as blocks take longer to set up or wear off compared with general anaesthesia. Perform spinals early on the list to allow timely recovery. Spinals must have worn off completely before discharge to allow safe ambulation. However, it is reasonable to discharge patients with working plexus blocks, thus allowing the benefit of prolonged postoperative analgesia. Remember that patients need special instructions on care of the anaesthetised part so as to avoid inadvertent damage. This would include a sling for patients with brachial plexus blocks.

### Local anaesthesia and sedation

With increased use of local anaesthetics, short-acting sedative drugs will inevitably be used to increase tolerability. It must be noted that sedation is a poor adjunct to an imperfect local anaesthetic block. However, judicious use of intermittent midazolam, propofol infusions (TCI 1–1.5µg/ml), or remifentanyl (0.05mg/kg/min) can provide good amnesia with few postoperative effects. If sedation is to be used it must be provided and monitored by someone other than the operating surgeon.

### Specific blocks

- **Field block:** excellent for LA hernia repair as provides postoperative analgesia and obviates the need for general anaesthesia.
- **Spinals:** use 25/26G *pencil-point* needles and consider using reduced dose spinals (5–7.5mg bupivacaine with 10–25µg fentanyl). This gives a similar onset of anaesthesia with less motor block and a shorter discharge time (4 versus 6hr).
- **Epidurals** are less suitable due to the time factor in achieving block.
- **Caudals:** use dilute solutions (0.125% bupivacaine). Preservative-free ketamine 0.5mg/kg or clonidine 1µg/kg can be added to prolong the block for up to 24hr. Warn patients about ambulation difficulties.

- **Brachial plexus blocks:** use ultrasound guidance or axillary approach if this is not available (low incidence of pneumothorax). If used as sole technique take onset time into account when planning the list.
- **Femoral nerve block** in adults is controversial as mobilisation is difficult.

### **Specific discharge criteria for regional techniques**

#### **Spinals**

- Full recovery of motor power and proprioception.
- Passed urine.

#### **Brachial plexus blocks**

- Some regression of motor block.
- Understanding of protection of partially blocked limb.

#### **Lower limb blocks**

- Some regression of motor block.
- Adequate mobility demonstrated on crutches.
- Understanding of protection of partially blocked limb.

### **Discharge drugs**

All patients should have a supply of suitable oral postoperative analgesics at home or be given them on discharge. Cases of inguinal hernia repair, laparoscopic surgery, wisdom tooth extraction, etc. should be given at least 5d supply of analgesics (e.g. diclofenac 50mg tds, co-codamol 30/500 two tablets qds). Some procedures require analgesia for a longer period, e.g. tonsillectomy has a secondary peak of pain at days 5–7.

### **Discharge criteria**

- Stable vital signs.
- Fully awake and orientated.
- Has at least taken oral fluids.
- Passed urine following urological surgery or spinal/caudal anaesthesia.
- Ambulant.
- Pain and nausea well controlled.
- Minimal bleeding or wound drainage.

### **Discharge organisation**

- IV cannula removed and wound checked.
- Written and verbal discharge information.
- Discharge drugs.
- Suture removal organised if required.
- GP letter.
- Contact telephone number.
- Collected by responsible adult.

## Postoperative admission

Reasons for overnight admission:

- Do not fulfil discharge criteria before unit closes.
- Observation after surgical or anaesthetic complications.
- Unexpected more extensive surgery.
- Uncontrolled pain or PONV.

Overall, unanticipated admission occurs in 0.5–2.0% of cases, depending on the mix of surgery. However, with increasingly complex procedures this becomes more challenging to achieve, and consideration to the development of a procedure-specific anaesthetic guideline is required. Examples of procedures where this has been found useful include laparoscopic cholecystectomy and tonsillectomy. Common anaesthetic reasons for hospital admission are inadequate recovery, nausea/vomiting, and pain. Anaesthesia-related complications are more frequent with general anaesthesia than with local or regional anaesthesia. Surgical reasons include bleeding, extensive surgery, perforated viscus, and need for further treatment.

## Further reading

Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2001). *Pre-operative Assessment – The Role of the Anaesthetist*. London: AAGBI.

Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2005). *Day Surgery*. London: AAGBI.

British Association of Day Surgery. [www.bads.co.uk](http://www.bads.co.uk) (for updates and new day surgery links).

Chung F, Mezei G (1999). Adverse outcomes in ambulatory anesthesia. *Canadian Journal of Anesthesia*, **46**, R18–R26.

US Society of Ambulatory Anesthesia. [www.sambahq.org](http://www.sambahq.org).

Watson B, Allen J, Smith I (2004). *Spinal Anaesthesia. A Practical Guide*. <http://www.daysurgeryuk.net/bads/joomla/files/handbooks/spinalanaesthesia.pdf>.

Watson B, Smith I, Jennings A, Wilson F. (2004). *Day Surgery and the Diabetic Patient*. <http://www.daysurgeryuk.net/bads/joomla/files/handbooks/daysurgerydiabetic.pdf>.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Laser surgery

**John Saddler**

General principles 710

Safety aspects 712



## General principles

- Laser is an acronym for Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation. Laser light is an intense beam of energy capable of vaporising tissues. Lasers have numerous medical and surgical applications, but also create unique hazards to patients and staff.
- Light is a form of radiant energy that spans the mid-range of the electromagnetic spectrum. It is released as photons and travels as a wave.
- In a laser tube, the application of an energy source on a lasing medium creates stimulated emissions of photons. These bounce back and forth between carefully aligned mirrors, and are focused into a high-intensity beam. The light produced is monochromatic (all the same wavelength) and coherent (all the wave peaks moving synchronously at the same amplitude).
- Lasers are defined by their wavelengths, which also determine their colour. Some lasers are outside the visible spectrum and require a light guide to direct the laser beam to the surgical site.
- Fibreoptic bundles can be used to transmit visible and near-infrared wavelength lasers. Wavelengths out of this range usually require an articulated arm.

### Laser wavelength and colour

Laser type	Wavelength (nm)	Colour
Dye laser	360–670	Blue to red
Argon	488–515	Blue/green
Helium–neon	633	Red
Ruby	694	Red
Nd–YAG	1064	Near-infrared
Carbon dioxide	10 600	Far-infrared

Laser light striking a tissue surface may be:

- **Reflected.** Reflection off shiny surfaces may damage the eyes of staff in the vicinity.
- **Transmitted** to deeper layers. Lasers pass through tissues to a variable depth, which is partially determined by the wavelength.
- **Scattered.** Shorter wavelengths induce greater scattering.
- **Absorbed.** This produces the clinical effect, when the absorbed light is converted to heat. Organic tissue contains various substances capable of absorbing light. These are termed chromophores, and include haemoglobin, collagen, and melanin. Each substance has a particular absorption spectrum, which is determined by its chemical structure. For example, oxyhaemoglobin, which is targeted in vascular lesions, has absorption peaks at 418, 542, and 577nm. Laser light at or close to these frequencies will be the most effective.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Safety aspects

- A designated laser safety officer should be present at all times when a laser machine is in use. An illuminated light should display outside the theatre when the laser is in operation.
- Laser light can be reflected off mirror-like surfaces. Medical instruments used with lasers should have matt rather than shiny surfaces.
- The eye is the most susceptible tissue to injury. Retinal and corneal damage can occur, depending on the frequency of the beam. All operating room personnel must wear safety glasses appropriate for the laser in use. These should have side shields to protect the lateral aspect of the eye. If an anaesthetised patient is receiving laser radiation near the eyes, protective matt metallic eye covers can be applied.
- Damage to skin can occur, depending on the type of laser in use. Anaesthetised patients must have all exposed skin covered with drapes. These should be made of absorbable material and not plastic, which is potentially combustible. Tissue adjacent to the lesion can be protected with moistened pads or swabs. In all cases, the eyes should be taped closed and covered with moist swabs. Plastic tape is combustible and should be avoided.
- Some skin preparation fluids are flammable and should not be used during laser surgery.
- Laser light can ignite plastic and rubber materials. Carefully consider the optimum method of airway maintenance if lasers are employed within the airway. The simplest approach is to use a Venturi system (Sanders injector). This uses a high-pressure oxygen source and entrainment of atmospheric air. The injector is placed in the lumen of a rigid laryngoscope or bronchoscope which is open at both ends, and permits entrainment of oxygen-enriched air during inspiration and escape of carbon dioxide and exhaust gases during expiration. This system of a 'tube within a tube' is safe, and reduces the chances of barotrauma-induced pneumothorax or pneumomediastinum. IV anaesthesia is usually employed to ensure an adequate depth of anaesthesia. It is also important to prevent the patient from moving or coughing, so a suitable muscle relaxant should be administered and neuromuscular transmission monitored with a nerve stimulator.
- If the use of an endotracheal tube is required, unmodified conventional tubes cannot be used because they support combustion and can potentially cause airway fires. Specifically prepared non-flammable laser tubes are available, e.g. Laser-Trach™ (Sheridan) and Laser-Shield™ (Medtronic Xomed). The cuffs of these tubes are vulnerable and should be protected by damp pledgets. The cuff should be filled with saline, which can be mixed with methylene blue so that cuff puncture is obvious.
- If laser surgery is needed to the oropharynx a standard nasal ETT can be employed but must be protected with saline-soaked gauze packing.
- Both nitrous oxide and oxygen support combustion. If using a circuit rather than an oxygen injector, 30% oxygen and air is a sensible choice.

If air is not available, oxygen and nitrous oxide can be used, but take special care to protect the tube cuff.

- A laser plume, composed of smoke and gas, accompanies the use of medical lasers. Efficient smoke evacuation must be maintained close to the operative site.
- If a fire occurs in an airway during laser surgery, the flow of anaesthetic gases (including oxygen) should be stopped and the tube removed. The area should be flooded with saline, followed by ventilation with 100% oxygen. Spontaneous breathing in a sitting position should be aimed for in recovery, but reintubation may be necessary if airway oedema is severe. A tracheostomy may also be necessary.

### Examples of medical lasers

#### **Pulsed dye laser**

This uses light at a wavelength that targets red blood cells within blood vessels. The energy is dissipated within the dermis and causes only minimal epidermal scarring. This is used mainly for treating port wine skin lesions. Children requiring laser therapy to these lesions will often be subjected to multiple treatments, usually under general anaesthesia. Postoperative pain may be a problem, particularly if large areas are treated. Combinations of paracetamol and NSAIDs may be effective, but occasionally opioid analgesics are required.

#### **Carbon dioxide laser**

These lasers have a long wavelength (10 600nm, outside the visible spectrum) and are preferentially absorbed by water. Target cells are heated to the point of vaporisation by the beam. They penetrate to only a very shallow depth, so tissue damage can be directly observed. They are used in aesthetic facial surgery, to reduce the wrinkling associated with ageing, and in ENT practice to vaporise vocal cord and airway lesions. Care must be taken to avoid eye and airway injury (see above).

#### **Nd-YAG laser**

This laser is also outside the visible range and, unlike the CO<sub>2</sub> laser, is transmitted through clear fluids and absorbed by dark matter. It can penetrate to a depth of 1cm. It has multiple applications, including airway neoplasms, vascular malformations, and ophthalmic surgery.

### Further reading

Kitching AJ, Edge CJ (2003). Lasers and surgery. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia and Critical Care Pain*, 3(5), 143–146.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Anaesthesia for CT, MRI and Interventional Radiology

## Pippa Dix

Anaesthesia for CT and MRI scanning 716

Anaesthesia for computerised tomography (CT) 718

Anaesthesia for magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) 720

## Darryl Johnston

Anaesthesia for interventional radiology (IR) 724

## Anaesthesia for CT and MRI scanning

The anaesthetist working in the medical imaging department may be expected to use unfamiliar equipment in a potentially hazardous environment. Ensure that trained assistance, monitoring, etc. are available and familiarise yourself with the surroundings. Locate the nearest resuscitation facilities (self-inflating bag/mask, portable oxygen, 'crash' trolley, and defibrillator)—confirm that your assistant and the radiographers also know where these are!

### Indications for anaesthesia

- Infants and uncooperative children. Small babies (under 2 months) will often sleep through a scan if given a feed and wrapped up well.
- Older children or adults with psychological, behavioural, or movement disorders.
- Intubated patients such as acute trauma victims and patients receiving intensive care.
- Analgesia, sedation, or anaesthesia may also be required for interventional procedures performed under CT or possibly MRI guidance.
- Patients for elective scans commonly have a range of problems. Check the indications for scan and nature of the underlying pathology—developmental delay, epilepsy, malignancy, and psychiatric and movement disorders. Significant cardiovascular and respiratory problems are uncommon, but beware of 'syndromes' with CVS manifestations.

### Anaesthesia—general points

- Choice of sedation or GA and type of GA depends upon the needs of the patient, the nature of the investigation, and the skills and experience of the anaesthetist (see later).
- Check whether the anaesthetic machines are using piped gases or cylinders. If using cylinders, confirm that a full spare oxygen cylinder is immediately available.
- Plan the location of the anaesthetic machine, suction and monitoring, and the configuration and routing of the breathing system in advance.
- Decide where to induce the patient—a dedicated induction area may not be available or may be very small. It is usual to induce on a tilting trolley, then transfer to the scanner when anaesthetised.
- Certain equipment configurations (e.g. anaesthetic machine in scan room and monitors in control room) may require two anaesthetists to manage the patient safely.
- Ensure satisfactory recovery facilities are available—i.e. appropriately equipped recovery bay and an experienced recovery nurse near the scanner, or arrangements for safe transfer of the patient to an operating department recovery room.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Anaesthesia for computerised tomography (CT)

- The CT scanning environment does not restrict the type of equipment used but space is often limited, so compact anaesthetic machines and monitors are more practical.
- Patient, anaesthetic machine, and monitors must all be visible from the control room.
- The patient's head is usually accessible during CT scanning so an LMA may be used if the patient does not require IPPV or airway protection.
- A variety of anaesthetic (and sedation) techniques can be used. The final choice should be determined by the equipment available and the patient's needs.
- Only 'light' anaesthesia to produce immobility and lack of awareness is required.

### Hazards

- CT scanning generates potentially harmful ionising radiation so it is preferable for the anaesthetist to monitor the patient from outside the scan room. If it is necessary to remain near the patient, wear appropriate radiation protection.
- Cannulae, catheters, drains, and endotracheal tubes can be pulled out during transfers and by movement of the patient through the scanner—ask the radiographer how far the table will move and check that lines and breathing system do not snag other equipment.

### Contrast media

- Modern intravascular contrast media for X-ray imaging utilise highly iodinated, non-ionic, water-soluble compounds.
- Common agents are iohexol (Omnipaque™), iopromide (Ultravist™) and iopamidol (Niopam™) which are monomeric, and the dimeric compound iodixanol (Visipaque™). Concentrations equivalent to 300–320mg iodine/ml are typically used.
- You may be asked to administer IV contrast to anaesthetised patients. The volume required varies with the preparation, investigation, age, and body weight but may be up to 150ml (see table).
- Check the timing of injection with the radiographer because some 'dynamic' investigations (e.g. aortography) require contrast to be administered as the scan is occurring.
- Contrast is viscous and can be difficult to inject through small cannulae or injection ports (take the bung off and inject via the hub of the cannula).
- Automated contrast injectors should not be connected to central venous lines. The high pressure developed by the rapid injection of viscous medium down a long narrow lumen can burst the line.

Investigation	Adult Volume (ml)	Child Volume (ml)
CT head	50–100	10 + 2ml/kg
CT body	100–150	(up to adult dose)
Aortography	100	–
Urography	2–3ml/kg	2–3ml/kg

- IV iodine-containing contrast media occasionally trigger allergic reactions (ask about iodine sensitivity).
- These agents may cause renal failure in patients who are dehydrated or who have impaired renal function so ensure adequate hydration in patients who have been starved for GA. Lactic acidosis can be precipitated in patients taking biguanides (metformin) and these should ideally be avoided for 48hr before and after the scan.

### Practical considerations

- Metal-containing objects (such as ECG leads, pressure transducer cables, and clips) lying in the X-ray beam can cause artefacts so route them away from the area to be scanned.
- Thoracic or abdominal scans may require 'breath-holds' to reduce respiratory movement artefacts. Both paralysed and spontaneously breathing patients can be ventilated manually and their lungs held in inspiration for the few seconds needed to perform each individual scan.
- The patient's arms usually need to be positioned above the head during thoracic or abdominal scans. Wide adhesive tape is useful for securing the limbs (keep a roll on the anaesthetic machine).
- Intensive care patients requiring CT scans should be managed like any inter-ICU transfer with full transport monitoring and ventilatory support. Ideally the ICU resident or consultant should supervise the patient and review the scan with the reporting radiologist. Getting such patients into and out of the scanner can be a slow process.



## Anaesthesia for magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

MRI is a versatile imaging tool free from the dangers of ionising radiation. A computer creates cross-sectional or three-dimensional images from minute radio-frequency signals generated as hydrogen nuclei are flipped in and out of alignment with a powerful magnetic field by high-frequency magnetic pulses.

- Non-invasive but can be unpleasant—subject has to lie motionless in a narrow noisy tunnel with the part of body to be imaged closely surrounded by an ‘aerial coil’ (a very claustrophobic environment).
- Typical sequence of scans lasts 15–25min but complex scans may take much longer.
- Up to 3% of adults cannot tolerate scanning without sedation or anaesthesia.
- Provision of safe anaesthesia for MRI requires specialised equipment and careful organisation—unlike CT you cannot simply take a standard machine and monitor to the MRI scanner.

### Hazards

- Most scanners use a super-conducting magnet to generate a high-density static magnetic field, which is always present. Field strength is measured in Tesla (T)—most scanners use 0.5–1.5T magnets (about 10 000 times the Earth’s magnetic field).
- Near the scanner (>5mT) the static field exerts a powerful attraction on ferromagnetic materials (e.g. scissors, gas cylinders, laryngoscopes) which can become projectiles. Electric motors (e.g. in syringe drivers) may run erratically and any information stored on magnetic media (credit cards, cassette tapes, or floppy disks) will be erased. The magnetic field decreases as distance from the scanner increases—beyond the 0.5mT boundary or outside the scan room can be considered safe.
- Devices (e.g. hypodermic needles) made from non-ferromagnetic stainless steel can be taken into the scan room. If you are unsure about an object don’t risk it!
- Oscillating magnetic fields induce eddy currents in electrical conductors (e.g. ECG leads, metallic implants). These currents may disrupt or damage electronic equipment (including pacemakers) and cause heating effects that can result in burns.
- Large masses of metal (e.g. anaesthetic machines, gas cylinders) near the scanner or small amounts of non-ferrous metals within the three-dimensional volume being scanned can distort the magnetic fields, causing poor quality images.
- The scan room is usually shielded to prevent external electrical interference from swamping the MR signals. All electrical equipment within the scan room must also be fully shielded and electrical conductors entering the room (e.g. monitoring cables) require special radio-frequency filters.
- Rapidly changing magnetic fields cause mechanical vibrations and extremely loud ‘knocking’ noises, which can potentially damage hearing.

## Equipment

Two alternative approaches are feasible:

- Specialised 'MRI compatible' equipment within the scan room, or
- Conventional equipment outside the scanner's magnetic field in the control room.

Standardising on one option keeps the anaesthetist, anaesthetic machine, and monitors together. Choice depends upon space, funds, frequency of general anaesthesia, and individual preference. Using conventional equipment at a distance avoids crowding the scanner, is less expensive, and allows faulty monitors to be substituted. The anaesthetist can regulate the anaesthetic and monitor the patient without being in the scan room and hazards can be reduced by applying the simple rule that 'nothing enters the scan room except the patient and the trolley'.

A typical set-up is as follows:

- Induction area adjacent to but outside the scan room (beyond the 0.5mT boundary) equipped with a compact conventional anaesthetic machine and monitoring.
- Piped gases, scavenging, and suction in both the induction area and the control room.
- Non-magnetic tipping trolley for patient transfer into scanner.
- Compact (e.g. wall-mounted) anaesthetic machine and ventilator in the control room with a 10m co-axial (Bain) breathing system.
- Respiratory gas/agent side-stream analyser with capnograph display fitted with an extended sampling tube (increases the response time by 5–10s).
- MRI-compatible pulse oximeter (fibreoptic patient probe and shielded cable).
- ECG with MRI-compatible (carbon fibre) patient leads and electrodes.
- NIBP machine with an extended hose, non-metallic connectors, and a range of cuffs.
- Recent technology allows a monitor unit within the scan room, with a slave unit in the control room, improving patient monitoring during transfers.

## Practical considerations and techniques

- Physically and 'magnetically' restricted access makes patient observation and treatment difficult so a secure airway is a priority.
- Neonates and young babies (<2 months)—will often sleep through a short scan if fed, wrapped up, and placed on their side in scanner.
- Babies and small children (<15kg), and any patient with an intracranial space-occupying lesion, suspicion of raised ICP, or needing a protected airway—use intubation and IPPV.
- Larger children and adults (if no risk of raised ICP)—use spontaneous ventilation and a standard LMA (*not* a flexible one with a wire spiral).
- If intubating a patient for a head scan use an RAE tube—it keeps the connectors and breathing system clear of the head coil.
- Tape the valve on the pilot tube of a cuffed ETT or LMA outside the aerial coil or the metal of the spring will distort the images.

- Sedation with oral or IV benzodiazepines may be used by radiologists for healthy but claustrophobic adults. Patients with severe back or root compression pain may also require strong analgesia to tolerate positioning for a scan.
- The role of sedation for MRI scanning in children is unclear. Some children's centres have reported successes with structured sedation programmes run by dedicated sedationists. However, the safety of having heavily sedated children in the medical imaging department without direct anaesthetic supervision has been questioned.

Tips for IPPV through a 10m breathing system<sup>1</sup>:

- Use a system that functions as a 'T-piece' (Mapleson D or E) so dead space is unaffected by length. Ayre's T-piece and co-axial Bain systems work well and are both suitable for ventilating babies and small children.
- Airway pressures measured near the ventilator may not accurately represent distal pressures at the endotracheal tube.
- Tidal volume delivered to the lungs will be reduced by 'compression losses' of the gas within the system and by expansion of the tubing during inspiration, making it difficult to compensate for significant leaks round uncuffed tracheal tubes—change to a slightly larger tube so the leak is minimal.
- As a result of these effects IPPV using a simple pressure generator (e.g. Penlon Nuffield 200 with a Newton valve) may not be effective in children weighing more than 15kg.
- Increased expiratory resistance of some long systems (e.g. Ayres T-piece) generates a positive expiratory pressure which increases with the fresh gas flow.

Intensive care patients:

- Same considerations apply as for CT scanning (see p718) but potential hazards are greater so risk/benefit balance should be assessed carefully.
- Do not scan patients who are haemodynamically or otherwise unstable.
- Electronic pressure transducers, metal-containing ICP 'bolts', temporary pacing wires, and conventional ECG leads must be removed before the patient enters the scan room.
- Full checks (and if necessary plain radiographs) must be performed to confirm there are no hazardous metallic implants or foreign bodies present.
- Patients who are stable on inotrope infusions can be scanned, but infusion pumps must remain at a safe distance from the magnet—ideally outside the scan room. Prepare duplicate pumps in the control room with extended infusion lines threaded with breathing system into the scan room. Connect patient to running infusions while outside the room, check they are stable, then move into the scanner.

### Patient and staff safety

- To avoid accidental injury all patients having an MRI scan must complete a screening/consent form. In case of children or sedated ICU patients these must be completed on their behalf by relatives or staff.

- To prevent injury and property damage all staff must similarly complete a screening questionnaire and leave metallic objects, pagers, credit cards, etc. outside the room.
- Greatest dangers arise from ferromagnetic implants and foreign bodies—certain types of artificial heart valves, old cerebral aneurysm clips, steel splinters in the eye, where movement could disrupt valve function or precipitate intracranial or vitreous haemorrhage, respectively.
- Patients and staff with cardiac pacemakers must remain outside the 0.5mT boundary.
- Anaesthetised and sedated patients should have their ears protected to prevent noise-induced auditory damage.
- IV MRI contrast media are paramagnetic but do not contain iodine and have a high therapeutic ratio. Side effects include headache, nausea and vomiting, local burning, and wheals (2.4%). Severe hypotension/anaphylactoid reactions are rare (approximately 1:100 000).
- Commonly used agents are gadopentetate (Magnevist™) at a dose of 0.2–0.4ml/kg and gadodiamide (Omniscan™) at 0.2ml/kg. More recently gadobutrol (Gadovist™) at 0.1ml/kg and Gadoteric acid (Dotarem™) at 0.2ml/kg have been used in patients with a reduced GFR or an unknown GFR (most children). These agents are associated with a lower risk of nephrogenic systemic fibrosis.

### Cardiac arrest

- Do not attempt advanced life support in the scan room.
- Do not allow the cardiac arrest team into the scan room.
- Start basic life support with non-metallic self-inflating bag and chest compressions.
- Remove patient from scan room on non-magnetic trolley and continue resuscitation outside 0.5mT boundary.

### Further reading

Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain & Ireland (2002). *Provision of Anaesthetic Services in Magnetic Resonance Units*. London: AAGBI.

Hatch DJ, Sury MRJ (2000). Sedation of children by non-anaesthetists. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **84**, 713–714.

Menon DK, Peden, CJ, Hall, AS, Sargentoni J, Whitwam, JG (1992). Magnetic resonance for the anaesthetist. Part I: physical principles, applications, safety aspects. *Anaesthesia*, **47**, 240–255.

Peden, CJ, Menon DK, Hall, AS, Sargentoni J, Whitwam, JG (1992). Magnetic resonance for the anaesthetist. Part II: anaesthesia and monitoring in MR units. *Anaesthesia*, **47**, 508–517.

Shellock FG (2001). Pocket guide to MR procedures and metallic objects: update 2001. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

## Anaesthesia for interventional radiology (IR)

In this subspeciality minimally invasive procedures are performed under image guidance, usually in the X-ray department. Procedures are often performed to avoid open surgical procedures to reduce post-procedure pain and recovery time. They may be diagnostic or therapeutic. The imaging utilised may involve radiation exposure, e.g. fluoroscopy and computerised tomography (CT), or may be ultrasound or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).

### Common interventional procedures

- Angioplasty/stenting/coiling: vascular, neuro and cardiac.
- Embolisations: blocking vessels to reduce bleeding in a planned surgical operation, to stop bleeding post surgically, following trauma, or stopping tumour growth.
- Chemo-embolisation: combination of delivering cancer treatment directly to a tumour and then blocking its blood supply.
- Radiofrequency ablation: local destruction of tissue by heating.
- Cryoablation: local destruction of tissue by freezing.
- Thrombolysis.
- Biopsies.
- Vertebroplasty/cementoplasty: injection of cement into bone to reduce pain in tumours and fractures.

### Indications for anaesthesia

- Patient may be required to be very still for long periods of time.
- Procedure may be very painful.
- Paediatric patients.

### Anaesthesia for IR: general points

- As previously described for CT and MRI it is vital for the anaesthetist and their assistant to familiarise themselves with the equipment available in this 'isolated' environment (see p718 and p720). Monitoring and anaesthetic machine must be fully checked and the location of resuscitation equipment checked. Scavenging is often not possible so TIVA may be useful or an Aldosorber may be used. Depending on the patient and procedure, you may be in or outside the scan room. Induction generally occurs within the radiology suite. Before starting check you have all the drugs drawn up that you anticipate using for anaesthesia, and those you may want in an emergency (metaraminol, ephedrine, atropine). After the procedure the patient is woken up in radiology and then generally transferred to main theatre recovery.

### Angioplasty/stenting/coiling

- A balloon-tipped catheter is inserted into a narrow or blocked vessel and the balloon inflated. A stent may be placed to keep it open. Vascular and cardiac procedures often do not require a general anaesthetic.

- Endovascular repair of AAA (see p449) is associated with a lower mortality and is favoured in those patients with poor left ventricular function. This may be done under regional (epidural and sedation) or general anaesthesia.
- Intracranial angioplasty and stenting are used for the treatment of intracranial aneurysms. A general anaesthetic is required because the patient must be completely still. A similar anaesthetic technique should be used as for craniotomy (p408 and p430). Induction should be cardiovascularly stable, avoiding any drop in cerebral perfusion pressure, and the airway secured with an endotracheal tube. Invasive monitoring should be used. Care should be taken to ensure normocapnia and normothermia.

### Embolisations

- Procedures that are superficial, involve an arteriovenous malformation, or involve the use of alcohol for the embolisation are very painful and require sedation, or a general anaesthetic.
- Depending on the position of the patient choose ETT or LMA.
- In obstetrics uterine artery embolisation is now included in the NICE guidelines for massive obstetric haemorrhage. Balloon catheters can be placed in the uterine artery and inflated to stop the pelvic bleeding. This can be done in an emergency, or can be inserted before a Caesarean section in a case that is anticipated to bleed.

### Radiofrequency ablations (RFA)

- In this procedure the tumour is destroyed by heating. Depending on the size of tumour it may take as long as 40min, is painful, and requires a general anaesthetic.
- RFA is commonly used to treat hepatic and renal tumours—either metastases, difficult to reach tumours, or tumours in those patients who are too frail for an open procedure.
- Depending on the position of the tumour the patient may need to be prone and so requires an ETT; otherwise a laryngeal mask is often sufficient.

### Cryoablation

- These procedures tend not to be painful and often sedation is all that is required.

### Thrombolysis

- Minimally invasive treatment that dissolves blood clots and improves blood supply. This can be used to treat arteries in diseased vascular beds, deep vein thrombosis, coronary emboli, pulmonary emboli, and thrombosis in fistulae.
- Contrast media help define the clot. This is then dissolved by either medication delivered directly to it or a mechanical device.
- General anaesthesia is rarely required.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Anaesthesia for the elderly

Jeffrey Handel





There is no standard definition of elderly, but it is often arbitrarily taken as >65yr. Such patients have an increased risk of morbidity and mortality associated with anaesthesia and surgery.

Aging is associated with progressive deterioration of function in all systems.

### **Cardiovascular**

- Significant cardiovascular disease is present in 50–65% patients.
- Myocardial fibrosis and ventricular wall thickening occur. This reduces ventricular compliance such that small changes in filling may have major effects upon cardiac output and blood pressure.
- Atrial fibrillation is common. Stroke volume is reduced by loss of the atrial boost contribution to ventricular filling.
- Maximal cardiac output with exercise decreases by ~1% per year from the 5th decade.
- Reduced arterial compliance causes systolic hypertension and widened pulse pressure.
- Autonomic responsiveness declines progressively resulting in impairment of cardiovascular responses to hypotension. The hypotensive effect of anaesthetic agents is likely to be more pronounced.
- Capillary permeability is increased leading to a greater risk of pulmonary oedema.

### **Respiratory**

- Ventilatory response to hypoxia and hypercapnia declines and postoperative apnoea is more common. Ventilatory reserve declines.
- O<sub>2</sub> consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> production fall by 10–15% by the 7th decade. Patients are able to tolerate a longer period of apnoea following preoxygenation and minute volume requirement is reduced.
- Loss of elastic recoil increases pulmonary compliance but chest wall compliance falls due to degenerative changes in joints. Therefore total thoracic compliance may fall.
- Loss of septa increases alveolar dead space. Closing volume increases to exceed functional residual capacity in the upright posture at 66yr resulting in venous admixture. Thus normal PaO<sub>2</sub> falls steadily [(13.3–age/30)kPa, or (100–age/4)mmHg].
- Airway protective reflexes decline increasing the risk of postoperative pulmonary aspiration.
- In edentulous patients maintenance of a patent airway and facemask seal may be difficult. Leaving false teeth in situ may help.

### **Renal**

- Renal mass and number of glomeruli fall progressively (by 30% in the 8th decade) resulting in reduced GFR. Creatinine clearance falls comparably although serum creatinine may not rise because of decreased production from a reduced muscle mass (see p128).
- Tubular function deteriorates leading to reduced renin-aldosterone response, ADH sensitivity, and concentrating ability. As a result, all renal homeostatic functions deteriorate so that elderly patients are more susceptible to fluid overload and hypovolaemia. Hypo- and hypernatraemia are more likely to occur.

- Clearance of renally excreted drugs is reduced necessitating dose adjustment. Particular care must be taken with potentially nephrotoxic drugs such as aminoglycosides.

## Hepatic

- Hepatic mass and blood flow fall by up to 40% by the 9th decade. Although cellular function is relatively well preserved in healthy patients, the reduction in size reduces clearance and prolongs the effect of drugs that are metabolised and excreted by the liver. These include opioids, propofol, benzodiazepines, and non-depolarising muscle relaxants.

## CNS

- Brain size and neuronal mass decrease. Average brain weight falls by 18% between the ages of 30 and 80yr. Dementia affects 10% of patients over 65yr of age and 20% over 80yr. However, it is important to distinguish between dementia and reversible confusional states due to hypoxia, sepsis, pain, metabolic derangement, and depression. The hospital environment may precipitate anxiety and confusion.
- The elderly have lower requirements for opioid analgesics and sedatives and are more susceptible to depression of conscious level and respiration. This is likely to be due to a pharmacodynamic as well as a pharmacokinetic effect. Pain threshold may be increased.
- **Postoperative cognitive dysfunction** is common in the elderly (25% at 1wk, 10% at 2yr post major surgery). It is a complex condition with features of dementia and confusional states which continue after the immediate postoperative period. Disturbance of cerebral perfusion and cellular oxygenation is likely to be a contributory factor. Alterations of central acetylcholine and catecholamine levels as well as central steroid effects from the stress response are thought to play a role (see p732).
- The thirst response to reduced ECF volume and increased plasma osmolality is reduced in the elderly, increasing susceptibility to fluid depletion.

## Pharmacology

- Total body water is reduced while fat is increased. Volume of distribution of water-soluble drugs is reduced, reducing dose requirements, while that of lipid-soluble drugs is increased which may prolong clearance. Initial volume of distribution falls because of reduced cardiac output. This reduces dose requirement and is particularly relevant for induction agents. Arm–brain circulation time is prolonged, increasing the time taken for induction agents to take effect.
- Reduced plasma albumin concentration decreases dose requirement of drugs such as barbiturate induction agents, which are bound to albumin.
- MAC of inhaled agents decreases steadily with age (6% reduction per decade) and is reduced by around 40% by the age of 80yr (see pp1251–2). This may be related to a reduction in neuronal mass. Reductions in blood/gas partition coefficient and cardiac output in the elderly result in shorter onset time.

- The risk of gastrointestinal bleeding due to NSAIDs is increased. These agents may also contribute to the development of acute renal failure in the presence of impaired renal perfusion. Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors exacerbate this risk. Fluid retention due to NSAIDs may precipitate heart failure in susceptible patients.

### **Thermoregulation**

- Temperature regulation is impaired, increasing the risk of hypothermia.
- Postoperative shivering increases skeletal muscle oxygen consumption while vasoconstriction increases myocardial work and oxygen demand.

### **Endocrine**

Glucose loading is increasingly poorly tolerated in elderly patients. The incidence of diabetes rises and may reach 25% in patients above 80yr of age.

### **Nutrition**

Nutritional status is frequently poor in the elderly. Perioperative complications and length of hospital stay may be reduced by nutritional supplementation prior to major surgery.

### **Haematology and the immune system**

- Hypercoagulability and deep venous thrombosis become more common with advancing age.
- Disorders causing anaemia are more common and the response of the marrow to anaemia is impaired.
- Immune responses are reduced in the elderly, putting them at increased risk of infection. This is due to reduced bone marrow and splenic mass with loss of the thymus.

### **Anaesthetic management**

- Perioperative mortality increases with age. It is influenced by medical fitness, the nature of the surgery, and whether surgery is elective or emergency. Hospital mortality for hip fracture surgery in patients over 70yr of age varies between 5% and 24% (see also p508). For patients over 80yr undergoing elective bowel surgery for malignancy, hospital mortality is between 0 and 15% for ASA1 patients, increasing to 20–30% for ASA3. Mortality is increased if resection is incomplete. Outcome is optimised by thorough preoperative assessment, choice of an anaesthetic technique appropriate to the patient's condition, and meticulous perioperative care to minimise physiological disturbance.

### **Preoperative assessment and management**

- A systematic review is vital. In patients who have sustained a fracture, an underlying medical cause for a fall should be sought.
- Day surgery is particularly appropriate for fit patients undergoing minor surgery as the disorientation associated with a change of environment is minimised.
- The level of physical activity that can be sustained is a useful indicator of cardiovascular and respiratory fitness, but is often limited by joint disease.

- Mental state should be evaluated. The abbreviated mental test or mini mental state examination may be useful in differentiating dementia from acute confusional states.
- Consideration should be given to preoptimisation of medical conditions. This may require cross-specialty involvement and high-dependency care. The benefits from delaying surgery while this takes place should be balanced against the risks, particularly in non-elective surgery. In patients with lower limb fractures delay in mobilisation may increase the risk of pressure sores, deep venous thrombosis, and pneumonia.
- Regular medications with the exception of oral hypoglycaemics should be continued until the time of surgery. Alcohol should not be withheld the day before surgery and nicotine patches may be helpful in smokers. Sedative premedications should generally be avoided, particularly benzodiazepines, centrally acting anticholinergics, and pethidine. Antacid prophylaxis should be considered. Maintaining  $\beta$ -blockade may reduce the risk of myocardial infarction.

### Perioperative management

- There is no conclusive evidence that regional or general anaesthetic techniques are superior. Regional anaesthesia may reduce bleeding, risk of DVT, respiratory infection, and cognitive dysfunction. For fractured neck of femur it may reduce mortality at 1 month but has no effect on longer-term survival compared with general anaesthesia. The chosen technique should be appropriate for the patient's physiological condition, as with younger patients.
- Careful monitoring is necessary for induction of general anaesthesia and for regional techniques as the hypotensive response to induction agents and to spinal/epidural anaesthesia is likely to be greater in the elderly. Consideration should be given to central venous pressure or cardiac output monitoring as elderly patients are more susceptible to adverse consequences of fluid overload and hypovolaemia. It should be remembered that prolonged arm-brain circulation time delays the onset of IV induction agents—flush drugs with saline. Impatience will lead to inadvertent overdose.
- Temperature should be measured and hypothermia prevented using fluid warmers, active body warming devices, and elevation of ambient temperature.
- Prolonged surgery and periods of hypotension increase the risk of pressure sores. Care should be taken to reduce pressure with soft padding. During long procedures it is advisable to relieve pressure and massage vulnerable areas intermittently.

### Postoperative management

- Unless patients are undergoing minor surgery, oxygen should be prescribed for at least 24hr. High-dependency facilities are ideal after major surgery.
- Fluid balance, vital signs, serum electrolytes, and haematology must be carefully monitored and treated appropriately. Patients with CVS disease may need to have an Hb of  $>9$ – $10$ g/dl.

- In postoperative confusion a careful search must be made for reversible organic causes.
- Pain is often poorly managed in patients with confusion and dementia. It is important to realise that these patients also feel pain and poor control may worsen confusion. NSAIDs should be used with caution. IV and SC opioids may be unreliably absorbed and elderly patients may have difficulty using a PCA. Regional techniques or an IV opioid infusion (with appropriate supervision) may be the most appropriate technique of pain relief.
- Early establishment of enteral nutrition by nasogastric tube, if necessary, may improve outcome.
- Early physiotherapy, mobilisation, and thromboprophylaxis are extremely important.

### **Key points**

- Avoid sedative premedications and use regional analgesic techniques where possible to minimise the requirement for opioids.
- Monitor temperature and use active warming devices to prevent hypothermia.
- Maintain a low threshold for invasive monitoring (CVP, art line).
- In edentulous patients, leaving false teeth in place may help to maintain airway patency and facemask seal.
- Drug/MAC requirements are reduced. Use NSAIDs with caution. Consider a COX-2 selective agent or co-administration of a gastroprotective drug.
- Take care with positioning and intermittently relieve pressure during long procedures to reduce the risk of pressure sores.
- In postoperative confusion, search for reversible organic causes in all systems, e.g. pain, hypoxaemia, distended bladder, myocardial/cerebral ischaemia, electrolyte disorder, drugs.
- Encourage early mobilisation and consider thromboprophylaxis if mobilisation will not be rapid.

### **Postoperative cognitive dysfunction (POCD)**

POCD is persistent impairment of cognitive functions such as memory and concentration in the absence of a clear precipitating event or central nervous system pathology. It is distinct from postoperative delirium which is associated with altered level of consciousness and is transient. The cause is unclear. It is likely to be multifactorial and may have an inflammatory component. It is more common after cardiac than non-cardiac surgery. The incidence of POCD in patients over 70yr of age following major non-cardiac surgery may be as high as 29% 1wk following surgery and 14% at 3 months. It is lower following minor surgery. The severity is variable, but it may have a significant impact upon quality of life and independence. Although the incidence of early POCD may be lower following regional anaesthesia the incidence of prolonged POCD is the same following regional or general anaesthesia. Other than maintenance of oxygenation and stable haemodynamic parameters it is not possible to recommend any anaesthetic technique to reduce the incidence of POCD.

### When not to operate

- Heroic curative surgery may not be appropriate if the chance of benefiting the patient is felt to be very low. Decisions regarding futility of surgery are difficult and should be taken at consultant level, with involvement of the patient and family. Palliative procedures to improve quality of life should be considered if the patient is adequately prepared. These decisions must be carefully documented.

### Further reading

- Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2001). *Anaesthesia and Perioperative Care of the Elderly*. London: AAGBI.
- Dodds C, Murray D (2001). Pre-operative assessment of the elderly. *BJA CEPD Reviews*, **1**, 181–184.
- Jandziol AK, Griffiths R (2001). The anaesthetic management of hip fractures. *BJA CEPD Reviews*, **1**, 52–55.
- Mantz J, Hemmings HC Jr, Boddaert J (2010). Case scenario: postoperative delirium in elderly surgical patients. *Anesthesiology*, **112**, 189–195.
- Murray D, Dodds C (2004). Perioperative care of the elderly. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care and Pain*, **4**, 193–196.
- Ramaiah R, Lann AM (2009). Postoperative cognitive dysfunction in the elderly. *Anesthesiology Clinics*, **27**(3), 485–496.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Obstetric anaesthesia and analgesia

## James Eldridge

- Physiology and pharmacology 736
- Analgesia for labour 738
- Regional labour analgesia 739
- Epidural analgesia for labour 740
- The poorly functioning epidural 744
- Complications of epidural analgesia 746
- Dural puncture 748
- Remifentanyl for labour analgesia 752
- Caesarean section 754
- Caesarean section: epidural 756
- Caesarean section: spinal 758
- Caesarean section: combined spinal/epidural (CSE) 760
- Inadequate anaesthesia 762
- Hypotension 763
- Caesarean section: general anaesthesia 764
- Antacid prophylaxis 766
- Postoperative analgesia 767
- Retained placenta 768
- Breast feeding and drug transfer 770
- Placenta praevia and accreta 772
- Massive obstetric haemorrhage 774
- Amniotic fluid embolism 777
- Cardiac disease and pregnancy 778
- Maternal resuscitation 780
- Pregnancy-induced hypertension, pre-eclampsia, and eclampsia 782
- Eclampsia 787
- HELLP syndrome 788
- Surgery during pregnancy 790
- Cervical cerclage 794
- Controversies 796

See also:

- Obstetric anaesthesia in the patient with a spinal cord injury 254



## Physiology and pharmacology

From early in the first trimester of pregnancy, a woman's physiology changes rapidly, predominantly under the influence of increasing progesterone production by the placenta. The effects are widespread.

- **Cardiac output** increases by ~50%. Diastolic blood pressure falls in early to mid-trimester and returns to prepregnant levels by term. Systolic pressure, although following the same pattern, is less affected. Central venous and pulmonary arterial wedge pressures are not altered.
- **Cardiac output** increases further in labour, even with effective epidural analgesia, peaking immediately after delivery. It is in this period, when the preload and afterload of the heart are changing rapidly, that women with impaired myocardial function are at greatest risk.
- **Uteroplacental blood flow** is not autoregulated and so is dependent on uterine blood pressure.
- **Aortocaval occlusion** occurs when the gravid uterus rests on the aorta or the inferior vena cava. Even in the absence of maternal hypotension, placental blood supply may be compromised in the supine position. After the 20th week of gestation, a left lateral tilt should always be employed. If either mother or fetus is symptomatic, the degree of tilt should be increased.
- **Plasma volume** increases 50% by term while the red cell mass only increases by 30%, resulting in the *physiological anaemia of pregnancy*.
- Pregnant women become **hypercoagulable** early in the first trimester. *Antepartum maternal deaths from pulmonary embolism occur most commonly in the first trimester.* Plasma concentrations of Factors I, VII, VIII, IX, X, and XII are all increased. Antithrombin III levels are depressed.
- **PaCO<sub>2</sub>** falls to ~4.0kPa (30mmHg). Functional residual capacity is reduced by 20% resulting in airway closure in 50% of supine women at term. This, in combination with a 60% increase in oxygen consumption, renders pregnant women at term vulnerable to hypoxia when supine.
- In labour painful contractions and excessive breathing of Entonox can result in further hyperventilation and marked alkalosis may occur. Arterial pH in excess of 7.5 is common.
- **Gastric emptying** and acidity are little changed by pregnancy. However, gastric emptying is slowed in established labour and almost halted if systemic opioids are administered for analgesia. Barrier pressure (the difference in pressure between the stomach and lower oesophageal 'sphincter') is reduced, but the incidence of regurgitation into the upper oesophagus during anaesthesia, in otherwise asymptomatic individuals, is not significantly different in the first and second trimesters.
- By 48hr postpartum, intra-abdominal pressure, gastric emptying, volume, and acidity are all similar to non-pregnant controls. Although lower oesophageal sphincter tone may take longer to recover, mask anaesthesia is acceptable 48hr after delivery in the absence of other specific indications for intubation.<sup>1</sup>
- **Renal blood flow** increases by 75% at term and glomerular filtration rate by 50%. Both urea and creatinine plasma concentrations fall.

- Neurological tissue has a greater susceptibility to the action of local anaesthetics during pregnancy—‘MAC’ is also reduced.
- The **volume of distribution** increases by 5 litres, affecting predominantly polar (water-soluble) agents. Lipid-soluble drugs are more affected by changes in protein binding. The fall in albumin concentration increases the free active portion of acidic agents, while basic drugs are more dominantly bound to  $\alpha_1$  glycoprotein. Some specific binding proteins such as thyroxin binding protein increase in pregnancy.
- Although **plasma cholinesterase** concentration falls by about 25% in pregnancy, this is counteracted by an increase in volume of distribution, so the actual duration of action of agents such as suxamethonium is little changed.

## Analgesia for labour

- The analgesic agents commonly employed in labour are inhaled nitrous oxide, opioids, and regional techniques.
- Randomised studies show only weak evidence of analgesia for transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS). Opioids in labour act predominantly as sedatives and amnesics—pain scores are minimally changed. Entonox is more efficacious than pethidine, but complete analgesia is never attained. When regional analgesia is contraindicated, a fentanyl or remifentanyl PCA may be beneficial. Diamorphine has also been advocated.
- **Regional analgesia** provides the most effective pain relief. If hypotension is avoided, fetal condition in the first stage of labour may be improved as maternal sympathetic stimulation and hyperventilation are reduced. However, a degree of maternal motor block is almost universal, and most randomised studies comparing regional and parenteral analgesia demonstrate an association between epidural analgesia and prolonged labour, together with a higher incidence of instrumental deliveries. Careful obstetric management of labour and appropriate anaesthetic management of analgesia may negate this effect.<sup>1</sup>
- **Uterine pain** is transmitted in sensory fibres which accompany sympathetic nerves and end in the dorsal horns of T10–L1. Vaginal pain is transmitted via the S2–S4 nerve roots (the pudendal nerve). Spinal, combined spinal/epidural (CSE), and epidural analgesia have largely replaced other regional techniques (paracervical, pudendal, caudal block). Neuraxial techniques can be expected to provide effective analgesia in over 85% of women.
- Acceptable analgesia must be provided, but minimising the incidence of hypotension and motor blockade is important. Reducing the degree of motor block increases maternal satisfaction and may decrease the incidence of assisted delivery. Motor block can be reduced by:
  - Using synergistic agents such as opioids to reduce the dose of local anaesthetic administered.
  - Establishing regional analgesia with low-dose epidural local anaesthetic and opioid or low-dose intrathecal local anaesthetic and opioid.
  - Using patient-controlled epidural analgesia (PCEA) or intermittent top-ups to maintain analgesia. In general, infusions deliver a greater total dose of local anaesthetic than intermittent top-ups, while PCEA delivers the smallest total dose.

The choice of local anaesthetic may also affect motor block. At equimolar doses, ropivacaine produces less motor block than bupivacaine, but it is not as potent as bupivacaine and the relative motor block at equipotent doses remains controversial.

<sup>1</sup> Anim-Somuah M, Smyth RMD, Howell CJ (2005). Epidural versus non-epidural or no analgesia in labour. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2005, Issue 4. Art. No.: CDXXX331. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CDXXX331.pub2.

# Regional labour analgesia

## Indications

- Maternal request.
- Expectation of operative delivery (e.g. multiple pregnancy, malpresentation).
- Maternal disease—in particular, conditions in which sympathetic stimulation may cause deterioration in maternal or fetal condition.
- Specific cardiovascular disease (e.g. regurgitant valvular lesions).
- Severe respiratory disease (e.g. cystic fibrosis).
- Specific neurological disease (intracranial A–V malformations, etc.).
- Obstetric disease (e.g. pre-eclampsia).
- Conditions in which GA may be life threatening (e.g. morbid obesity).

## Contraindications

- Maternal refusal.
- Allergy (true allergy to amide local anaesthetics is rare).
- Local infection.
- Uncorrected hypovolaemia.
- Coagulopathy. (Although guidelines suggest that with platelet count  $>80 \times 10^9/l$  and INR  $<1.4$  neuraxial procedures are safe, clinical judgement for each individual patient remains of paramount importance. The cause of the clotting abnormality and the indication for the procedure have to be considered.)

## Relative contraindications

- Expectation of significant haemorrhage.
- Untreated systemic infection (providing systemic infection has been treated with antibiotics, the risk of 'seeding' infection into the epidural space with neuraxial procedures is minimal).
- Specific cardiac disease (e.g. severe valvular stenosis, Eisenmenger's syndrome, peripartum cardiomyopathy). Although regional analgesia has been used for many of these conditions, extreme care must be taken to avoid any rapid changes in blood pressure, and preload and afterload of the heart. Intrathecal opioid without local anaesthetic may be advantageous for these patients.
- 'Bad backs' and previous back surgery do not contraindicate regional analgesia/anaesthesia, but scarring of the epidural space may limit the effectiveness of epidural analgesia and increase the risk of inadvertent dural puncture. Intrathecal techniques can be expected to work normally.

## Consent

Most UK anaesthetists do not take written consent before inserting an epidural for labour analgesia, but 'appropriate' explanation must be given. The information offered varies according to local guidelines and with the degree of distress of each individual woman. The explanation and, in particular, the possible hazards discussed must be documented, as many women do not accurately recall information given in labour. Information about labour analgesia should always be available antenatally.

## Epidural analgesia for labour

- Scrupulous attention to sterile technique is required. Mask, gown, and gloves should be worn.<sup>1</sup>
- Establish IV access. In the absence of previous haemorrhage or dehydration, when low-dose local anaesthetic techniques are used, large fluid preloads are unnecessary.
- Position in either a full lateral or sitting position. Finding the midline in the obese may be easier in the sitting position. Accidental dural puncture may be slightly lower in the lateral position.
- Fetal heart rate should be recorded before and during the establishment of analgesia. Whether regional analgesic technique requires routine continuous fetal heart rate monitoring after analgesia has been established is controversial.
- Skin sterilisation with chlorhexidine is more effective than with iodine.
- Locate the epidural space (loss of resistance to saline may have slight advantages in both reduced incidence of accidental dural puncture and reduced incidence of 'missed segments' compared with loss of resistance to air).
- Introduce 4–5cm of catheter into the epidural space. (Longer has an increased incidence of unilateral block and shorter increases the chance that the catheter pulls out of the space.) Multihole catheters have a lower incidence of unsatisfactory blocks.
- Check for blood/CSF.
- Give appropriate test dose. An 'appropriate' test remains controversial. Using 0.5% bupivacaine significantly increases motor block. Using 1:200 000 adrenaline to detect IV placement of a catheter has both high false-positive and false-negative rates. Many anaesthetists will use 10–15ml 0.1% bupivacaine with a dilute opioid (2µg/ml fentanyl) as both the test and main dose. This will exclude intrathecal placement but may give false negatives if the catheter is sited intravascularly. The complete absence of a detectable block after a normal epidural loading dose for labour analgesia should therefore warn of possible IV cannulation. *Remember every dose is a 'test dose'!* If required give further local anaesthetic to establish analgesia. There should be no need to use concentrations >0.25% bupivacaine.
- If required give further local anaesthetic to establish analgesia. There should be no need to use concentrations >0.25% bupivacaine.
- Measure maternal blood pressure every 5min for at least 20min after every bolus dose of local anaesthetic.

Once the epidural is functioning it can be maintained by one of three methods:

- Intermittent top-ups of local anaesthetic administered by midwives (5–10ml 0.25% bupivacaine or 10–15ml 0.1% bupivacaine with 2µg/ml fentanyl).
- A continuous infusion of local anaesthetic (5–12ml/hr of 0.0625–0.1% bupivacaine with 2µg/ml fentanyl).

- Intermittent top-ups of local anaesthetic administered by a PCEA (5ml boluses of 0.0625–0.1% bupivacaine with 2µg/ml fentanyl and a 10–15min lockout period).

### Combined spinal epidural analgesia for labour (CSE)

A combination of low-dose subarachnoid local anaesthetic and/or opioid together with subsequent top-ups of weak epidural local anaesthetic produces a rapid onset with minimal motor block and effective analgesia. An epidural technique alone can produce a similar degree of analgesia and motor block, but may take 10–15min longer to establish. CSE can be performed as a needle-through-needle technique or as separate injections in the same or in different intervertebral spaces:

- Locate epidural space at the L3/4 interspace with a Tuohy needle. Pass a 25–27G pencil-point needle through the Tuohy needle to locate the subarachnoid space.
- Inject subarachnoid solution (e.g. 0.5–1.0ml 0.25% bupivacaine with 5–25µg fentanyl). *Do not rotate epidural needle.* Insert epidural catheter or
- Perform spinal at L3/4 with a 25–27G pencil-point needle.
- Inject subarachnoid solution.
- Perform epidural once analgesia has been established.

Caution: the epidural catheter cannot be effectively tested until the subarachnoid analgesia has receded.

- When the first top-up is required (usually 60–90min after the spinal injection), give the epidural test dose (e.g. 10–15ml 0.1% bupivacaine with 2µg/ml fentanyl).

Further management of the epidural is the same as for epidural analgesia alone.

### ‘Walking’ epidurals<sup>2</sup>

Effective analgesia with minimal motor block of the lower limbs can be readily produced with low doses of epidural or intrathecal local anaesthetic, usually in combination with an opioid (e.g. subarachnoid injection of 1ml 0.25% bupivacaine with 10–25µg fentanyl or an epidural bolus of 15–20ml 0.1% bupivacaine with 2µg/ml fentanyl. Subsequent epidural top-ups of 15ml of the same solution as required).

In some centres women with minimal motor blockade are encouraged to mobilise. The possible advantages of these techniques include:

- The vertical position, without epidural anaesthesia, is associated with shorter labour, possibly less fetal distress, and greater maternal preference. However, the vertical position and mobility do not reduce the need for forceps delivery and the advantages have not been substantiated when walking *with* epidural analgesia.
- Minimal motor block associated with these techniques increases maternal satisfaction scores. Intrathecal, as opposed to epidural, techniques produce a more rapid onset of analgesia, possibly a more rapid cervical dilation, and a marginal reduction in assisted delivery.

Mobilisation has been criticised because:

- Women usually have adequate leg strength, but it is rarely complete and is likely to become increasingly compromised with repeat doses of epidural local anaesthetic.
- Impaired proprioception may make walking dangerous even when leg strength has been maintained. Whilst dynamic posturography suggests that following an initial intrathecal dose of 2.5mg bupivacaine and 10µg fentanyl, proprioception is adequate for safe walking, this may no longer be true after repeated epidural top-ups.
- Intrathecal opioid may cause temporary fetal bradycardia, probably by altering uterine blood flow through a change in maternal spinal reflexes.
- Assessing fetal condition is difficult when the mother is mobile.

In practice, when a technique that is likely to permit walking is used, only approximately 50% of women who could walk actually choose to do so. Despite this most women prefer the added sense of control that is engendered by retaining leg strength. If women are to be allowed to walk, always wait at least 30min from the initiation of the block before attempting mobilisation. Then:

- Check strength of straight leg raising in bed.
- Ask the woman if she feels able to stand.
- When the woman first stands, have two assistants ready to offer support if required.
- Perform a knee bend.
- Ask the woman if she feels safe.
- Allow full mobilisation.
- After each top-up the same sequence must be repeated.

1 McLure HA Talboys CA et al. (1998). Surgical face masks and downward dispersal of bacteria. *Anaesthesia*, **53**, 624–626.

2 Morgan BM (1995). "Walking" epidurals in labour. *Anaesthesia*, **50**, 839–840.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## The poorly functioning epidural

Look for the pattern of failure. Remember that a full bladder may cause breakthrough pain. Ask the midwife if a full bladder is likely. Carefully assess the spread of the block. It is important to be confident that the epidural could be topped up for a Caesarean section if required. Therefore, if in doubt, resite the epidural.

Pattern of failure	Remedy
<b>Global failure</b> No detectable block despite at least 10ml 0.25% bupivacaine (or equivalent)	Resite epidural
<b>Partial failure</b> Unilateral block: feel both feet to assess whether they are symmetrically warm and dry. See if the pattern matches the distribution of pain	Top-up epidural with painful side in a dependent position (Use local anaesthetic and 50–100µg fentanyl) Withdraw catheter 2–3cm and give a further top-up Resite epidural
Missed segment: true missed segments are rare. Commonly a 'missed segment' felt in the groin is a partial unilateral block	Top-up with opioid (i.e. 50–100µg fentanyl). The intrathecal mode of action will minimise segmental effects Continue as per 'unilateral block'
Back pain: severe back pain is associated with an occipito-posterior position of the fetus and may require a dense block to establish analgesia	Top-up with more local anaesthetic and opioid
Perineal pain	Check sacral block and that the bladder is empty Top-up with more local anaesthetic in sitting position Continue as per unilateral block

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Complications of epidural analgesia

### Hypotension

In the absence of fetal distress, a fall in systolic blood pressure of 20% or to 100mmHg (whichever is higher) is acceptable. However, uterine blood flow is not autoregulated and prolonged or severe hypotension will cause fetal compromise. Preload is not routinely required when using low doses of local anaesthetic, but patients should not be hypovolaemic before instituting regional analgesia. When hypotension is detected it should be treated quickly:

- Avoid aortocaval occlusion—make sure that the patient is in the full lateral position.
- Measure the blood pressure on the dependent arm.
- Give an IV fluid bolus of crystalloid solution.
- Give 6mg IV ephedrine and repeat as necessary.

Remember that brachial artery pressure may not reflect uterine artery blood flow. If fetal distress is detected, and is chronologically related to a regional anaesthetic procedure, treat as above even in the absence of overt hypotension.

### Subdural block<sup>1</sup>

Subdural block occurs when the epidural catheter is misplaced between the dura mater and arachnoid mater. In obstetric practice, the incidence of clinically recognised subdural block is less than 1:1000 epidurals. However, subdural blocks may be clinically indistinguishable from epidural blocks. Definitive diagnosis is radiological. The characteristics of a subdural block are:

- A slow onset (20–30min) of a block that is inappropriately extensive for the volume of local anaesthetic injected. The block may extend to the cervical dermatomes and Horner's syndrome may develop.
- Block is often patchy and asymmetrical. Sparing of motor fibres to the lower limbs may occur.
- A total spinal may occur following a top-up dose. This is likely to be a consequence of the increased volume rupturing the arachnoid mater.
- If a subdural is suspected resite the epidural catheter.

### Total spinal

The incidence of total spinal is variously reported to be 1:5000 to 1:50 000 epidurals. Usually the onset is rapid, although delays of 30min or more have been reported. Delayed onset may be related to a change in maternal position, or a subdural catheter placement. Symptoms are of a rapidly rising block. Initially difficulty in coughing may be noted (commonly seen in regional anaesthesia for Caesarean section), then loss of hand and arm strength, followed by difficulty with talking, breathing, and swallowing. Respiratory paralysis, cardiovascular depression, unconsciousness, and finally fixed dilated pupils ensue. Unsurprisingly total spinals are reported more often after epidural anaesthesia than epidural analgesia, as larger doses of local anaesthetic are employed.

Management of total spinal is as follows:

- Maintain airway and ventilation, avoid aortocaval compression, and provide cardiovascular support.
- Even if consciousness is not lost, intubation may be required to protect the airway.
- Careful maternal and fetal monitoring is essential and, if appropriate, delivery of the fetus. In the absence of fetal distress, Caesarean section is not an immediate requirement. Ventilation is usually necessary for 1–2hr.

### Accidental IV injection of local anaesthetic<sup>2</sup>

‘Every dose is a test dose.’ The maxim is to avoid injecting any single large bolus of local anaesthetic IV. Remember that IV or partial IV positioning of epidural catheters occurs in at least 5% of epidurals. The risk can be minimised by:

- Meticulous attention to technique during placement. Always check for blood in the catheter.
- Always being alert to symptoms of IV injection with every dose of local anaesthetic, even when previous doses have been uncomplicated.
- Divide all large doses of local anaesthetic into aliquots.
- Use appropriate local anaesthetics.
- See treatment of local anaesthetic toxicity (p1182).

### Neurological damage

Neurological damage does occur after childbirth, but establishing cause and effect is difficult. Neurological sequelae following delivery under general anaesthesia is as common as delivery under regional anaesthesia, suggesting that obstetric causes of neurological problems are probably more common than any effects from the regional technique. Prolonged neurological deficit after epidural anaesthesia occurs in approximately 1:10 000 to 1:15 000. Major neurological damage probably occurs in less than 1:80 000 neuraxial procedures in the obstetric population, and this group of patients probably has the lowest risk of any patient population.<sup>2</sup>

### Dural puncture See p748.

1 Reynolds F, Speedy H (1990). The subdural space: the third place to go astray. *Anaesthesia*, **45**, 120–123.

2 Cook TM, Counsell D, Wildsmith JAW (2009). Major complications of central neuraxial block: report on the third national audit project of the Royal College of Anaesthetists. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **102**, 179–190.

## Dural puncture

When loss of CSF is greater than production, as might occur through a dural tear, CSF pressure falls and the brain sinks, stretching the meninges. This stretching is thought to cause headache. Compensatory vasodilation of intracranial vessels may further worsen symptoms.

The incidence of dural puncture should be less than 1% of epidurals. All midwives, as well as obstetric and anaesthetic staff, should be alert to the signs of post dural puncture headache, as symptoms may not develop for several days. If untreated, headaches are not only unpleasant but also very rarely can be life threatening, usually as a result of intracranial haemorrhage or coning of the brainstem.

Management of accidental dural puncture can be divided into immediate and late.

### Immediate management

The initial aim is to achieve effective analgesia without causing further complication.

#### *Either:*

- If a dural puncture occurs, pass the 'epidural' catheter into the subarachnoid space.
- Label the catheter clearly as an intrathecal catheter and only allow the anaesthetist to perform top-ups.
- Give intermittent top-ups through the catheter. (1ml 0.25% bupivacaine  $\pm$  5–25  $\mu$ g fentanyl. Tachyphylaxis may occur with prolonged labour.)
- Advantages:
  - The analgesia produced is likely to be excellent.
  - There is no possibility of performing another dural puncture on reinsertion of the epidural.
  - The unpredictable spread of epidural solution through the dural tear is eliminated.
  - The incidence of post dural puncture headache may be reduced (but only if the catheter is left in for more than 24hr).
- Disadvantages:
  - The catheter cannot be used to perform an early blood patch.
  - There is a theoretical risk of introducing infection.
  - The catheter may be mistaken for an epidural catheter.

#### *Or:*

- Remove the epidural catheter.
- Reinsert the epidural at a different interspace—usually one interspace higher. If the reason for tap was difficult anatomy, a senior colleague should take over.
- Run the epidural as normal, but beware of intrathecal spread of local anaesthetic. All top-ups should be given by an anaesthetist.

With either technique the patient should be informed at the earliest opportunity that a dural puncture has occurred and of the likely sequelae. Labour itself may be allowed to continue normally. Arrange daily postnatal follow-up.

### Late management

Following a dural puncture with a 16–18G Tuohy needle, the incidence of post dural puncture headache is approximately 70%. Not all dural punctures are recognised in labour so be alert to the possibility, even in women who had uncomplicated epidural analgesia. Headaches in the postnatal period are common. The key differentiating factor between a 'normal' postnatal headache and a post dural puncture headache is the positional nature of the latter.

Common features of post dural puncture headache include:

- Typically onset is 24–48hr post dural puncture. Untreated they are said to last 7–10d, but the evidence is poor.
- Characteristically worse on standing. Headache is often absent after overnight bed rest but returns after mobilising.
- Usually in the fronto-occipital regions and may be associated with neck stiffness.
- Photophobia and difficulty in accommodation are common. Hearing loss, tinnitus, and VIth nerve palsy with diplopia are possible.
- Nausea occurs in up to 60% of cases.

Treatment is either to alleviate symptoms while waiting for the dural tear to heal itself or to seal the puncture. Epidural blood patching is the only commonly used method of sealing dural tears, although neurosurgical closure has been reported.

### Prophylactic treatment<sup>1</sup>

- The most effective prophylactic treatment is blood patching. At the end of labour, 20ml of blood can be injected through the epidural catheter (having removed the epidural filter). All residual block must have worn off before performing a prophylactic patch as radicular pain is an indication to stop injecting. However, early blood patching has a lower success rate and bacteraemia is common immediately after delivery (7% rising to 80% with uterine manipulation). Blood patching is not without sequelae and the Cochrane database review discourages the use of prophylactic blood patches.
- Bed rest alleviates symptoms, but the incidence of post dural puncture headache after 48hr is the same for those cases that mobilised throughout. Because of the risk of thromboembolism, bed rest should not be routinely encouraged in asymptomatic women.
- Epidural infusion of saline (1 litre/24hr) will compress the dural sac and can alleviate symptoms. It may also reduce the flow of CSF through a dural tear. After 24hr of continuous infusion the incidence of post dural puncture headache is marginally reduced. However, radicular pain in the lower limbs may occur and patients are immobilised.

### Symptomatic treatment

- Simple analgesics (paracetamol, NSAIDs, codeine) are the mainstays of symptomatic treatment. They should always be offered, even though they are unlikely to completely relieve severe post dural puncture headache.

- Adequate fluid intake should be encouraged although there is no evidence that hydration reduces the incidence of post dural puncture headache.
- Caffeine/theophyllines have become controversial. Concern has been expressed that the incidence of seizures following dural puncture may be increased in the presence of caffeine. These drugs act by reducing intracranial vasodilation, which is partially responsible for the headache. However, while symptoms may be improved, they are not cured. Therefore it is probably sensible to avoid using these agents.
- Sumatriptan. Although this cerebral vasoconstrictor is of benefit, it is expensive, is given subcutaneously (6mg), and may cause coronary artery spasm. Its use is best reserved for those in whom blood patching is contraindicated.
- Epidural blood patch—see below.

### **Epidural blood patch<sup>2,3</sup>**

Epidural blood patch performed around 48hr post partum has a 60–90% cure rate at the first attempt (recent studies that have followed women for more than 48hr have found lower success rates). The proposed mechanism of action is twofold:

- Blood injected into the epidural space compresses the dural sac and raises the intracranial pressure. This produces an almost instantaneous improvement in pain.
- The injected blood forms a clot over the site of the dural tear and this seals the CSF leak.

Blood injected into the epidural space predominantly spreads cephalad, so blood patches should be performed at the same or lower interspace as the dural puncture. Suggestions that labour epidurals after blood patching may be less effective have not been confirmed.

- Consent must be obtained. The patient should be afebrile and not have a raised white cell count.
- Two operators are required. One should be an experienced 'epiduralist', the other is required to take blood in a sterile manner.
- The patient should have a period of bed rest before performing the patch to reduce the CSF volume in the epidural space.
- Aseptic technique must be meticulous both at the epidural site and the site of blood letting (usually the antecubital fossa).
- An epidural should be performed at the same or a lower vertebral interspace as the dural puncture with the woman in the lateral position to minimise CSF pressure in the lumbar dural sac.
- Once the epidural space has been identified, 20ml of blood is obtained.
- Inject the blood slowly through the epidural needle until either a maximum of 20ml has been given or pain develops (commonly in the back or legs). If pain occurs, pause and if the pain resolves, try continuing with slow injection. If the pain does not resolve or recurs, then stop.
- To allow the clot to form, maintain bed rest for at least 2hr and then allow slow mobilisation.

- As far as possible the patient should avoid straining, lifting, or excessive bending for 48hr, although there are obvious limitations when a woman has a newborn infant to care for.
- Follow-up is still required. Every woman should have clear instructions to contact the anaesthetists again if symptoms recur even after discharge home.
- Serious complications of blood patching are rare. However, backache is common, with 35% of women experiencing some discomfort 48hr post epidural blood patch and 16% of women having prolonged backache (mean duration 27d). Other reported complications include repeated dural puncture, neurological deficits, epileptiform fits, and cranial nerve damage.

- 1 Sudlow C, Warlow C (2001). Epidural blood patching for preventing and treating postdural puncture headache. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2001, Issue 2. Art. No.: CD001791.
- 2 Reynolds F (1993). Dural puncture and headache. Avoid the first but treat the second. *British Medical Journal*, **306**, 874–875.
- 3 Carrie LE (1993). Post dural puncture headache and extradural blood patch. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **71**, 179–180.



## Remifentanyl for labour analgesia

Remifentanyl is an ultrashort-acting  $\mu$  agonist opioid, which is broken down by tissue and plasma esterases. It has an analgesia half life of about 6min and a rapid onset time of 30–60s. Although remifentanyl readily crosses the placenta, it is rapidly metabolised in the fetus. These features make remifentanyl a potentially useful analgesic agent in labour. Like all opioids, it does not produce complete analgesia, but when compared with pethidine, remifentanyl PCA is associated with better pain relief and greater patient satisfaction.<sup>1</sup> However, remifentanyl has the potential to cause significant respiratory depression/maternal sedation and so should only be used with careful supervision. The ideal PCA regimen has not been established. Many proposed techniques are based on body weight, but the technique below is based on a fixed dose which has the advantage of simplicity. The addition of nitrous oxide may improve analgesia further but may increase the risk of hypoxaemia.<sup>1</sup>

### Technique

- Establish one-to-one care with a trained individual (midwife).
- No opioid should have been used in the previous 4hr.
- Establish dedicated IV access.
- PCA with bolus dose of 40 $\mu$ g and lockout of 2min.
- Monitor with continuous pulse-oximetry.
- Give O<sub>2</sub> if SpO<sub>2</sub> <94% on air.
- 30min observations of respiratory rate, sedation score, and pain scores.
- Always flush the cannula when PCA is discontinued.

Call the anaesthetist if:

- The patient is not rousable to voice.
- Respiratory rate <8 breaths/min.
- SpO<sub>2</sub> <94% despite O<sub>2</sub> supplementation.

<sup>1</sup> Hinova A. Fernando R (2009). Systemic remifentanyl for labor analgesia. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **109**, 1925–1929.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Caesarean section

With all Caesarean sections, it is vital that the obstetrician clearly communicates the degree of urgency to all staff. A recommended classification is:<sup>1</sup>

<b>Emergency</b>	There is immediate threat to the life of mother or fetus.
<b>Urgent</b>	Maternal or fetal compromise that is not immediately life threatening.
<b>Scheduled</b>	No maternal or fetal compromise, but needs early delivery.
<b>Elective</b>	Delivery timed to suit mother and staff.

For all emergency Caesarean sections, the patient must be transferred to theatre as rapidly as possible. Fetal monitoring should be continued until abdominal skin preparation starts. In most centres, general anaesthesia is used when an 'immediate' Caesarean section is required, but 'urgent' Caesarean sections are usually performed under regional anaesthesia.

There is an expectation that the decision to delivery time should be less than 30min when the indication for Caesarean section is fetal distress. However, delivery before this time limit is no guarantee of a successful outcome and delivery after this limit does not necessarily mean disaster. Each case must be individually assessed and the classification of urgency continuously reviewed.

### Regional anaesthesia for Caesarean section

Regional anaesthesia for Caesarean section was initially driven by maternal preference. However, regional anaesthesia is also safer than general anaesthesia.<sup>2</sup>

Advantages of regional anaesthesia include:

- Improved safety for mother with minimal risk of aspiration and lower risk of anaphylaxis.
- The neonate is more alert, promoting early bonding and breastfeeding.
- Fewer drugs are administered, with less 'hangover' than after general anaesthesia.
- Better postoperative analgesia and earlier mobilisation.
- Both mother and partner can be present at the delivery.

Although regional anaesthesia is safer, maternal refusal remains a contraindication. Although it is reasonable to give nervous mothers a clear explanation of the advantages and disadvantages, mothers should not be forced into accepting regional anaesthesia.

Three techniques are available—epidural, spinal, and combined spinal epidural. Epidural is most commonly used for women who already have epidural analgesia in labour. Spinal is the most popular technique for elective Caesarean section, although in some centres combined spinal epidurals are preferred. Whatever technique is chosen, a careful history and appropriate examination should be performed. This should include checking:

- Blood group and antibody screen. Routine crossmatching of blood is not required unless haemorrhage is expected or if antibodies that interfere with crossmatching are present.
- Ultrasound reports to establish the position of the placenta. A low-lying anterior placenta puts a woman at risk of major haemorrhage, particularly if associated with a scar from a previous Caesarean section.

An explanation of the technique must be offered. Although Caesarean section under regional anaesthesia becomes routine for the anaesthetist, it is rarely routine for the mother. Reassurance and support are important. The possibility of complications must also be mentioned—in particular, the possibility of intraoperative discomfort and its management. Pain during regional anaesthesia is now a leading obstetric anaesthetic cause of maternal litigation. Document all complications that are discussed. Neonates are usually more alert after regional than general anaesthesia. However, the speed of onset of sympathectomy that occurs with spinal anaesthesia (as opposed to epidural) results in a greater fall in maternal cardiac output and blood pressure and may be associated with a more acidotic neonate at delivery. In conditions where sudden changes in afterload may be dangerous (i.e. stenotic valvular heart disease) the speed of onset of a spinal block can be slowed by:

- Careful positioning during the onset of the block.
- Using an intrathecal catheter and incrementally topping up the block.
- Using a combined spinal epidural approach and injecting a small dose of intrathecal local anaesthetic. The block can be subsequently extended using the epidural catheter.

While a slow onset of block may be preferable in elective Caesarean section, a rapid onset is necessary for emergency cases. Spinal anaesthesia provides a better quality of analgesia and is quicker in onset than epidural anaesthesia.<sup>1</sup>

1 Lucas DN, Yentis SM, et al. (2000). Urgency of Caesarean section: a new classification. *Journal of the Royal Society of Medicine*, **93**, 346–350.

2 Hawkins JL, Koonin LM, et al. (1997). Anesthesia-related deaths during obstetric delivery in the United States, 1979–1990. *Anesthesiology*, **86**, 277–284.

## Caesarean section: epidural

Advantages	Disadvantages
Easy to top-up labour epidural	Slow onset
Stable BP	Large doses of LA
Intraoperative top-up possible	Poorer quality of block than spinal anaesthesia
Epidural can be used for postop analgesia	

Indications for Caesarean section under epidural anaesthesia are as follows:

- Women who already have epidural analgesia established for labour.
- Specific maternal disease (e.g. cardiac disease) where rapid changes in systemic vascular resistance might be problematic.

### Technique

- History/examination/explanation and consent.
- Ensure that antacid prophylaxis has been given.
- Establish 16G or larger IV access. Start 10–15ml/kg crystalloid co-load.
- Insert epidural catheter at the L2/3 or L3/4 vertebral interspace.
- Test dose, then incrementally top-up the epidural with local anaesthetic and opioid:
  - 5–8ml boluses of 2% lidocaine with 1:200 000 adrenaline every 2–3min up to a maximum of 20ml (mix 19ml 2% lidocaine with 1ml 1:10 000 adrenaline rather than using preparatory mixture which contains preservative and has a lower pH).

or:

- 5ml 0.5% bupivacaine/levobupivacaine/ropivacaine every 4–5min up to a maximum of 2mg/kg in any 4hr period. (The single enantiomer local anaesthetics may offer some safety advantage; however, lidocaine is still safer than both ropivacaine and levobupivacaine.)
- Opioid (e.g. 100µg fentanyl or 2.5mg diamorphine) improves the quality of the analgesia and a lower level of block may be effective if opioid has been given.
- Establish an S4–T4 block (nipple level) measured by *loss of light touch* sensation. Always check the sacral dermatomes, as epidural local anaesthetic occasionally does not spread caudally. Anaesthesia to light touch is more reliable at predicting adequacy of block than loss of cold sensation.<sup>1</sup> Document the level of block obtained and the adequacy of perioperative analgesia.
- Position patient in the supine position with a left lateral tilt or wedge. Give supplemental oxygen by facemask if SpO<sub>2</sub> <96% on air. (This is very important in obese patients who may become hypoxic when supine, and may have benefit for a compromised fetus.)

- Treat hypotension with (see also p763):
  - Fluid (colloid more effective than crystalloid).
  - 50–100µg phenylephrine IV bolus (expect a reflex bradycardia) or 6mg ephedrine IV.  $\alpha$ -agonists may be more effective and be associated with less fetal acidosis than ephedrine.
  - Increasing the left uterine displacement.
- At delivery give 5IU oxytocin IV bolus. If tachycardia must be avoided then an IV infusion of 30–50IU oxytocin in 500ml crystalloid given over 4hr is an acceptable alternative.
- At the end of the procedure give NSAID unless contraindicated (100mg diclofenac PR).<sup>1</sup>
- Epidural diamorphine given at the time of surgery improves postoperative analgesia, while epidural fentanyl has little postoperative analgesic benefit.

1 Russell IF (1995). Levels of anaesthesia and intraoperative pain at Caesarean section under regional block. *International Journal of Obstetric Anesthesia*, 4, 71–77.

## Caesarean section: spinal

Advantages	Disadvantages
Quick onset	Single shot
Good quality analgesia	Limited duration
Easy to perform	Inadequate analgesia is difficult to correct
	Rapid changes in BP and cardiac output

Spinal anaesthesia is the most commonly used technique for elective Caesarean sections. It is rapid in onset, produces a dense block, and with intrathecal opioids can produce long-acting postoperative analgesia. However, hypotension is much more common than with epidural anaesthesia.

### Technique

- History/examination/explanation and consent.
- Ensure that antacid prophylaxis has been given.
- Establish 16G or larger IV access. Start 10–15ml/kg crystalloid co-load.
- Perform spinal anaesthetic at L3/4 interspace using a 25G or smaller pencil-point needle. With the orifice pointing cephalad, inject the anaesthetic solution, e.g. 2.5ml 0.5% hyperbaric bupivacaine with 300µg diamorphine or 15µg fentanyl. Intrathecal diamorphine improves postoperative analgesia, while intrathecal fentanyl has little postoperative analgesic benefit. (Preservative-free morphine 100µg is also used but has little intraoperative benefit. Morphine provides prolonged postoperative analgesia but with a higher incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting, plus an increased risk of late respiratory depression.)
- During the insertion of a spinal anaesthetic, some anaesthetists place patients in a sitting position, while others lie patients on their side. The sitting position usually makes the midline easier to find (important in obese patients), and may be associated with a faster onset, although the height of block is less predictable. A lateral position is associated with a slower onset of block, particularly if a full lateral position is maintained until the block has fully developed. This position also avoids aortocaval compression. With both positions, when hyperbaric local anaesthetic solutions are used, it is important that the cervical spine is kept elevated (pillow) to prevent local anaesthetic spreading to the cervical dermatomes.
- Hypotension is more common with spinal anaesthesia than epidural anaesthesia. Patients may benefit from a continuous infusion of pressor agent initiated at the time of insertion of spinal block—see prevention and treatment of hypotension, p763.
- Continue as for epidural anaesthesia for Caesarean section (p756).

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Caesarean section: combined spinal/epidural (CSE)

Advantages	Disadvantages
Quick onset	Rapid change in BP and cardiac output
Good quality analgesia	Technically more difficult, with higher failure rate of spinal injection
Intraoperative top-up possible	Untested epidural catheter
Epidural can be used for postop analgesia	

In some centres CSE has become the technique of choice—indications include:

- Prolonged surgery.
- Using the epidural catheter for postoperative analgesia.
- Limiting the speed of onset of a block. A small initial intrathecal dose of local anaesthetic can be supplemented through the epidural catheter as required.

### Technique

- History/examination/explanation and consent.
- Ensure that antacid prophylaxis has been given.
- Establish 16G or larger IV access. Give 10–15ml/kg crystalloid co-load.

The intrathecal injection may be performed by passing the spinal needle through the epidural needle (needle-through-needle technique) or by performing the intrathecal injection completely separately from the epidural placement in either the same or a different interspace. The needle-through-needle technique is associated with an increased incidence of failure to locate CSF with the spinal needle but only involves one injection. If a two-injection technique is used, the epidural is usually sited first because of the time delay that may occur in trying to locate the epidural space with a Tuohy needle after the spinal injection. The risk of damaging the epidural catheter with the spinal needle is theoretical.

With either technique, beware of performing the spinal injection above L3/4, as spinal cord damage has been reported.

### Needle-through-needle technique

- Either use a dedicated CSE set or locate the epidural space with a Tuohy needle and then pass a long 25G or smaller pencil-point needle through the Tuohy needle into the intrathecal space. Inject anaesthetic solution with the needle orifice pointing cephalad (e.g. 2.5ml 0.5% hyperbaric bupivacaine with 300µg diamorphine or 15µg fentanyl).

- Insert epidural catheter. Aspirate the catheter carefully for CSF. Testing the catheter with local anaesthetic before the intrathecal dose has receded may be unreliable. However, using the catheter intraoperatively is reasonable, as the anaesthetist is continuously present to deal with the consequences of an intrathecal injection. This may not be true if opioids are given through the catheter for postoperative analgesia at the end of the procedure before the block has receded.

### **Two needle technique**

- Position patient and perform an epidural. After catheter is in position perform a spinal injection at L3/4 or below with a 25G or smaller pencil-point needle.
- If the spinal block is inadequate, inject local anaesthetic or 10ml 0.9% sodium chloride through the epidural catheter; 0.9% sodium chloride works by compressing the dural sac, causing cephalad spread of intrathecal local anaesthetic.
- Continue as for epidural anaesthesia for Caesarean section (p756).

### **Special considerations**

- Although the incidence of major complications of central neuraxial block, as identified by the national audit project of the Royal College of Anaesthetists, was higher when a combined spinal epidural technique was used, the numbers were very small (2 or 4 patients depending on whether an optimistic or pessimistic analysis was used) and the study cautions against overinterpretation of these results.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cook TM, Counsell D, Wildsmith JAW (2009). Major complications of central neuraxial block: report on the third national audit project of the Royal College of Anaesthetists. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **102**, 179–190.

## Inadequate anaesthesia

Every patient should be warned of the possibility of intraoperative discomfort and this should be documented. Between 1 and 5% of attempted regional anaesthetics for Caesarean section are inadequate for surgery. The majority should be identified before operation commences.

### Preoperative inadequate block

#### *Epidural*

- If no block develops then the catheter is incorrectly positioned. It may be reinserted or a spinal performed.
- If a partial but inadequate block has developed, the epidural may be resited or withdrawn slightly. Should the toxic limit for the local anaesthetic agent have been reached, elective procedures can be abandoned, but for urgent procedures a general anaesthetic or a spinal anaesthetic will be required. If a spinal is chosen, exceptional care with positioning and observation of the block level is required, as high or total spinal can occur. Use a normal spinal dose of hyperbaric local anaesthetic, as this should ensure adequate anaesthesia, but control the spread with careful positioning.

#### *Spinal*

- If no block develops, a repeat spinal may be performed.
- If a partial but inadequate block develops, an epidural may be inserted and slowly topped up.
- Use a GA if required.

### Intraoperative inadequate block

In this situation good communication with the mother and surgeon is essential. If possible, stop surgery. Identify the likely cause of pain (e.g. inadequately blocked sacral nerve roots, peritoneal pain). Try to give the mother a realistic expectation of continued duration and severity of pain. If the pain has occurred before the delivery of the fetus, it is very likely that a GA is required.

If patient requests GA, in all but exceptional circumstances, comply. If the anaesthetist feels that severity of pain is not acceptable, persuade the patient that GA is required.

#### *Spinal*

- Reassure and treat with:
  - Inhaled nitrous oxide.
  - IV opioid (e.g. 25–50µg fentanyl repeated as necessary). Inform the paediatrician that opioid has been given.
  - Surgical infiltration of local anaesthetic (care with total dose).
  - GA.

#### *Epidural/CSE*

- Treat as per spinal anaesthesia, but in addition epidural opioid (e.g. 100µg fentanyl) and/or more epidural local anaesthetic can be used.

# Hypotension

## Preload

A fluid preload is a traditional part of the anaesthetic technique for regional anaesthesia. It has two functions:

- To maintain intravascular volume in a patient who is likely to lose 500–1000ml blood.
- To reduce the incidence of hypotension associated with regional anaesthesia.

However, it is questionable how effectively it prevents hypotension. Volumes as large as 30ml/kg or more of crystalloid solution do not reliably prevent hypotension. In some women, particularly those with severe pre-eclampsia, large preloads are harmful as the rise in filling pressures and the reduced colloid osmotic pressure will predispose to pulmonary oedema. The ineffectiveness of preload may in part be due to the rapid redistribution of fluid into the extravascular space. There is evidence that colloids, such as hetastarch, are more effective.

Preload should be:

- Timely (given immediately before or during the onset of the regional technique to minimise redistribution).
- Limited to 10–15ml/kg crystalloid. Larger volumes should be avoided as they offer little advantage and may be harmful.
- More fluid should only be given as clinically indicated.
- Colloids are preferred by some anaesthetists if excessive fluid load is likely to be harmful.
- Emergency Caesarean section should not be delayed to allow a preload to be administered.

## Pressor agents

Ephedrine has been used to treat hypotension in obstetric neuroaxial anaesthesia for many years. However, in the last decade it has been established that treatment to normotension with phenylephrine is associated with marginally better fetal blood gases. However, the difference is marginal. If phenylephrine is used (bolus doses of 50–100 µg) beware of reflex bradycardia which may be profound.

In contrast to fluid preload there is good evidence that using prophylactic pressor agents is beneficial for both mother and fetus. Various agents have been used, but prophylactic phenylephrine infusion currently appears to be optimal. (A simple regime is to use a syringe driver with a solution of 100µg/ml of phenylephrine (i.e. 10mg in 100ml saline) and start infusing at 30ml/hr as the spinal solution is injected. Titrate to response with increments of 10 ml/hr. Reduce and stop infusing post delivery. Expect heart rate to gradually slow and give anticholinergic agents as required. Avoid this technique in hypertensive individuals.)

## Caesarean section: general anaesthesia

Elective general anaesthesia is now uncommon in the UK, limiting opportunities for training. The majority of complications relate to the airway. Failed intubation is much more common in obstetric than non-obstetric anaesthesia (1:250 v. 1:2000 respectively, although more recent reports suggest that this is perhaps an overestimate). All obstetric theatres should have equipment to help with the difficult airway and all obstetric anaesthetists should be familiar with a failed intubation drill.

Indications for general anaesthesia include:

- Maternal request.
- Urgent surgery. (In experienced hands and with a team that is familiar with rapid regional anaesthesia, a spinal or epidural top-up can be performed as rapidly as a general anaesthetic.)
- Regional anaesthesia contraindicated (e.g. coagulopathy, maternal hypovolaemia).
- Failed regional anaesthesia.
- Additional surgery planned at the same time as Caesarean section.

### Technique

- History and examination. In particular assess the maternal airway—mouth opening, Mallampati score, thyromental distance, neck mobility (see pp970–4).
- Antacid prophylaxis (see p766).
- Start appropriate monitoring (see below).
- Position supine with left lateral tilt or wedge.
- Preoxygenate for 3–5min or, in an emergency, with 4–8 vital capacity breaths with a high flow through the circuit. Ensure a seal with the facemask. At term, women have a reduced FRC and a higher respiratory rate and oxygen consumption. This reduces the time required for denitrogenation, but also reduces the time from apnoea to arterial oxygen desaturation.
- Perform rapid sequence induction with an adequate dose of induction agent (e.g. 5–7mg/kg thiopental). Isolated forearm techniques suggest that awareness without recall may be common when the dose of induction agent is reduced. A 7.0mm endotracheal tube is adequate for ventilation and may make intubation easier.
- Propofol has also been used for Caesarean section without any major reported complications, although at present thiopental probably is still the most commonly used agent in the UK.
- Ventilate with 50% oxygen in nitrous oxide. If severe fetal distress is suspected then 75% oxygen or higher may be appropriate. Maintain  $\text{ETCO}_2$  at 4.0–4.5kPa (30–34 mmHg).
- Use 'overpressure' of inhalational agent to rapidly increase the end tidal concentration of anaesthetic agent to at least 0.75 of MAC (e.g. 2% isoflurane for 5min, then reduce to 1.5% for a further 5min).

- At delivery:
  - Give 5IU oxytocin IV bolus. If tachycardia must be avoided then an IV infusion of 30–50IU syntocinon in 500ml crystalloid, infused over 4hr, is effective.
  - Administer opioid (e.g. 10–15mg morphine).
  - Ventilate with 35% inspired oxygen concentration in nitrous oxide. Inhalational agent can be reduced to 0.75 MAC to reduce uterine relaxation.
- At end of procedure give an NSAID (e.g. 100mg diclofenac PR). Bilateral ilioinguinal nerve blocks or TAP blocks (see p1153 and p1155) are also effective for postoperative analgesia.
- Extubate awake in the head-down left lateral position.
- Give additional IV analgesia as required.

### Effect of general anaesthesia on the fetus

Most anaesthetic agents, except for the muscle relaxants, rapidly cross the placenta. Thiopental can be detected in the fetus within 30s of administration, with peak umbilical vein concentration occurring around 1min. Umbilical artery to umbilical vein concentrations approach unity at 8min. Opioids administered before delivery may cause fetal depression. Although rarely required, neonatal respiratory depression can be rapidly reversed with naloxone (e.g. 200µg IM or 10µg/kg IV). If there is a specific indication for opioids before delivery they should be given and the paediatrician informed. Hypotension, hypoxia, hypocapnia, and excessive maternal catecholamine secretion may all be harmful to the fetus.

### Failed intubation

(For failed intubation drill see p942 and p980.)

When intubation fails but mask ventilation succeeds, a decision on whether to continue with the Caesarean section must be made. A suggested grading system is<sup>1</sup>:

- Grade 1: Mother's life dependent on surgery.
- Grade 2: Regional anaesthetic unsuitable (e.g. coagulopathy/ haemorrhage).
- Grade 3: Severe fetal distress (e.g. prolapsed cord).
- Grade 4: Varying severity of fetal distress with recovery.
- Grade 5: Elective procedure.

For Grade 1 cases surgery should continue, and for Grade 5 the mother should be woken. The action between these extremes must take account of additional factors including the ease of maintaining the airway, the likely difficulty of performing a regional anaesthetic, and the experience of the anaesthetist. Once a failed intubation has occurred and an airway has been established, reapply fetal monitoring as this may give useful additional information to guide management.

1 Harmer M (1997). Difficult and failed intubation in obstetrics. *International Journal of Obstetric Anaesthesia*, 6, 25–31.

## Antacid prophylaxis

Aspiration of particulate matter or bile is associated with worse outcome than aspiration of gastric fluid. Fluid aspiration is commonly associated with a chemical pneumonitis and the severity of this is in turn dependent on the volume and acidity of the aspirated fluid. Use of antacids and prokinetic agents can elevate the gastric pH and reduce the intragastric volume. A suggested regime is:

### Elective surgery

- 150mg ranitidine orally 2hr and 12hr before surgery.
- 10mg metoclopramide orally 2hr before surgery.
- 30ml 0.3M sodium citrate immediately before surgery. (Gastric pH >2.5 is maintained for only 30min after 30ml 0.3M sodium citrate. If a GA is required after this, a further dose of citrate is required.)

### Emergency surgery (if prophylaxis has not already been given)

- 50mg ranitidine by slow IV injection immediately before surgery. (Proton pump inhibitors are an alternative.)
- 10mg metoclopramide IV injection immediately before surgery.
- 30ml 0.3M sodium citrate orally immediately before surgery.

## Postoperative analgesia

Most post partum women are very well motivated and mobilise quickly. However, effective analgesia does allow earlier mobilisation. The mainstays of postoperative analgesia are opioids, NSAIDs, and paracetamol. The route that these are given is dependent on the intraoperative anaesthetic technique.

### Opioids

- IV patient-controlled analgesia or oral opioid can be used, although these are not as effective as neuraxial analgesia. A small quantity of opioid may be transferred to the neonate through breast milk, but with negligible effect.
- Intrathecal/epidural opioid:
  - When given as a bolus at the beginning of surgery, fentanyl lasts little longer than the local anaesthetic and provides almost no postoperative analgesia. Epidural fentanyl may be given as an infusion or as intermittent postoperative boluses (50–100µg up to 2-hourly for 2 or 3 doses) if the epidural catheter is left in situ.
  - Intrathecal diamorphine (300µg) can be expected to provide 6–18hr of analgesia. More than 40% of women will require no other postoperative opioid. Higher doses have been recommended but are associated with an increased incidence of side effects. Pruritus is very common (60–80% of cases), although only 1–2% have severe pruritus. This can be treated with 20–200µg naloxone IM.
  - Epidural diamorphine (2.5mg in 10ml saline) provides 6–10hr of analgesia after a single dose. Intermittent doses may be given if the epidural catheter is left in situ.
  - Intrathecal preservative-free morphine (100µg) provides long-lasting analgesia (12–18hr). Doses above 150µg are associated with increased side effects without improved analgesia. However, pruritus and nausea are common. The low lipophilicity of morphine may increase risk of late respiratory depression. Epidural morphine (2–3mg) provides analgesia for 6–24 hr, but pruritus is again common and nausea occurs in 20–40% of cases. Diamorphine is used much more commonly in the UK than morphine. Preservative-free pethidine may also be used (10–50mg epidurally).

### NSAIDs

NSAIDs are very effective postoperative analgesics, reducing opioid requirements. They should be administered regularly whenever possible, but beware renal impairment in severe pre-eclampsia.



## Retained placenta

- Check IV access with 16G or larger cannula has been obtained.
- Assess total amount and rate of blood loss and cardiovascular stability. Blood loss may be difficult to accurately assess. If rapid blood loss is continuing then urgent crossmatch and evacuation of placenta under general anaesthetic is required.
- Regional anaesthesia is safe provided estimated blood loss is less than 1000ml, but if there are any signs suggesting hypovolaemia, a general anaesthetic may be required.
- Remember antacid prophylaxis.
- For general anaesthesia use a rapid sequence induction technique with cuffed ETT.
- Regional anaesthesia can be obtained either by topping up an existing epidural or by performing a spinal (e.g. 2ml 0.5% hyperbaric bupivacaine intrathecally). A T7 block reliably ensures analgesia.<sup>1</sup>
- Occasionally uterine relaxation is required. Under general anaesthesia this can be produced by increasing the halogenated vapour concentration. Under regional anaesthesia SL GTN spray or IV aliquots of 100µg glyceryl trinitrate are effective (dilute 1mg in 10ml 0.9% sodium chloride and give 1ml bolus repeated as required). With either technique expect transient hypotension.
- On delivery of the placenta give 5IU oxytocin ± an infusion of oxytocin (e.g. 30–50IU in 500ml crystalloid over 4hr).
- At the end of the procedure give an NSAID unless contraindicated.

## Summary of dosing regimes

Procedure	Technique	Suggested dose
Labour	Epidural loading dose	20ml 0.1% bupivacaine with 2µg/ml fentanyl
	Epidural infusion	10ml/hr 0.1% bupivacaine with 2µg/ml fentanyl
	Top-ups	10–20ml 0.1% bupivacaine with 2µg/ml fentanyl
	CSE	Intrathecal: 1ml 0.25% bupivacaine with 5–25µg/ml fentanyl Epidural: top-up and infusion as above
	PCEA	5ml boluses of 0.1% bupivacaine with 2µg/ml fentanyl with a 10–15min lockout
LSCS	Spinal	2.5ml 0.5% bupivacaine in 8% glucose ('heavy') + 300µg diamorphine
	Epidural	15–20ml 2% lidocaine with 1:200 000 adrenaline (1ml of 1:10 000 added to 19ml solution)
	CSE	Normal spinal dose (reduce if slow onset of block is required) If needed, top-up the epidural with 5ml aliquots of 2% lidocaine with 1:200 000 adrenaline
Post LSCS analgesia	GA	Bilateral ilioinguinal nerve blocks or TAP blocks at end of surgery IV aliquots of morphine until comfortable Parenteral opioid (oral or PCA as available)
	GA and regional	100mg diclofenac PR at end of surgery, followed by 75mg diclofenac PO 12-hourly Simple analgesics as required (i.e. co-codamol, co-dydramol, etc.)
	Regional	Epidural diamorphine (2.5mg) in 10ml 0.9% sodium chloride 4-hourly prn

LSCS = lower segment Caesarean section

- 1 Broadbent CR, Russell R (1999). What height of block is needed for manual removal of placenta under spinal anaesthesia? *International Journal of Obstetric Anesthesia*, **8**, 161–164.

## Breast feeding and drug transfer

If a drug is to be transferred from mother to neonate through breast feeding, it must be secreted in the milk, absorbed in the neonatal gastrointestinal tract and not undergo extensive first pass metabolism in the neonatal liver. In general, for breast-fed infants, the neonatal serum concentration of a drug is less than 2% of maternal serum concentration, resulting in a sub-therapeutic dose. Most drugs are therefore safe. However, there are some exceptions to this rule—either because transfer is much higher or because transfer of even minute quantities of a drug is unacceptable. Drugs with high protein binding may displace bilirubin and precipitate kernicterus in a jaundiced neonate.

Factors that make significant transfer more likely include:

- Low maternal protein binding.
- Lipophilicity or, with hydrophilic drugs, a molecular weight of  $<200\text{Da}$ .
- Weak bases (which increase the proportion of ionised drug in the weakly acidic breast milk, leading to 'trapping').

Transfer to the neonate can be minimised by breast feeding before administering the drug, and if the neonate has a consistent sleep period, administering the drug to mother at the beginning of this.

Although many drugs are excreted in minimal quantities in breast milk with no reports of ill effects, manufacturers will often recommend avoiding agents during breast feeding.

### Co-codamol and breast feeding

In breast-fed neonates, regular maternal co-codamol use has been associated with neonatal respiratory depression. Co-codamol should only be used in supervised surroundings and discontinued if mother or neonate becomes drowsy.

Remember, breast feeding constitutes a metabolic and fluid load for the mother, so if surgery is contemplated then keep the mother well hydrated, and if the surgery is elective, have the patient first on the list. Try to minimise nausea and vomiting.

The following table gives information on some agents; a full list of drug compatibility with breast feeding is beyond the scope of this book.

Drug	Comment
Opioids	Minimal amount delivered to neonatal serum. Minor concern about the long duration of action of pethidine's metabolite, nor-pethidine. Care with <b>co-codamol</b>
NSAIDs	Most NSAIDs are considered safe in breast feeding. Some would advise caution with aspirin because of unsubstantiated concerns about causing Reye's syndrome in the neonate
Antibiotics	Penicillins and cephalosporins are safe, although trace amounts may be passed to the neonate
	<b>Tetracycline</b> should be avoided (although absorption is probably minimal because of chelation with calcium in the milk)
	<b>Chloramphenicol</b> may cause bone-marrow suppression in the neonate and should be avoided
	<b>Ciprofloxacin</b> is present in high concentrations in breast milk and should be avoided
Antipsychotics	Generally suggested that these should be avoided although the amount excreted in milk is probably too small to be harmful. Chlorpromazine and clozapine cause neonate drowsiness
Cardiac drugs	<b>Amiodarone</b> is present in milk in significant amounts and breast feeding should be discontinued
	Most $\beta$ -blockers are secreted in minimal amounts. Sotalol is present in larger amounts. Avoid <b>celiprolol</b>
Anticonvulsants	While carbamazepine does not accumulate in the neonate, phenobarbital and diazepam may. Neonates should be observed for evidence of sedation

## Placenta praevia and accreta

### Placenta praevia

Placenta praevia occurs when the placenta implants between the fetus and the cervical os. The incidence is about 1 in 200 pregnancies but is higher with previous uterine scars and multiparity.

Three questions can be used to evaluate the anaesthetic implications of a placenta praevia:

- Is a vaginal delivery possible? (Unlikely if the placenta extends to within 2cm of the os.)
- If not, does the placenta cover the *anterior* lower segment of the uterus. (If it does, the obstetrician will have to divide the placenta to deliver the fetus and blood loss can be expected to be large.)
- Is there a uterine scar from previous surgery? (Placenta accreta is more common if the placenta overlies a uterine scar.)

Diagnosis is usually made by ultrasound. Obstetric management is aimed at preserving the pregnancy until the 37th gestational week. Premature labour, excessive bleeding, or fetal distress may necessitate delivery. If at 37wk gestation a vaginal delivery is not possible, a Caesarean section is performed.

### Placenta accreta

Placenta accreta occurs with abnormal implantation of the placenta. Usually the endometrium produces a cleavage plane between the placenta and the myometrium. In **placenta accreta vera** the placenta grows through the endometrium to the myometrium. In **placenta increta** the placenta grows into the myometrium, and in **placenta percreta** the placenta grows through the myometrium to the uterine serosa and on into surrounding structures. Because the normal cleavage plane is absent, following delivery the placenta fails to separate from the uterus, which can result in life-threatening haemorrhage.

Incidence is rising, possibly as a result of the increasing numbers of Caesarean sections performed. Placenta accreta is much more common when the placenta implants over a previous scar. A woman who has had two previous sections and a placenta that has implanted over the uterine scar has a 50% chance of developing a placenta accreta and two-thirds of these cases will require Caesarean hysterectomy. Diagnosis of percreta can be made with ultrasound  $\pm$  MRI scan or the presence of haematuria. However, placenta accreta and increta are often diagnosed at surgery.

### Anaesthetic management

Anaesthetic management is dictated by the likelihood of major haemorrhage, maternal preference, and the obstetric/anaesthetic experience levels. Patients with placenta praevia are at risk of haemorrhage because:

- Placenta may have to be divided to facilitate delivery.
- Lower uterine segment does not contract as effectively as the body of the uterus so the placental bed may continue to bleed following delivery.

Further increase in risk occurs sequentially with placenta accreta, increta, and percreta. Caesarean hysterectomy is required in 95% of women with placenta percreta with a 7% overall mortality rate.

Although the sympathectomy that occurs with regional anaesthesia may make control of blood pressure more difficult, practical experience shows that regional anaesthesia can be safely used for placenta praevia, providing the patient is normovolaemic before the neuraxial technique is performed. Even in Caesarean hysterectomy, the degree of hypotension and blood loss is the same with regional and general anaesthetic techniques. However, if significant haemorrhage does occur, hypotensive and bleeding patients will require reassurance and this may divert the anaesthetist from providing volume resuscitation. Regional anaesthesia should therefore only be undertaken by experienced anaesthetists with additional help available.

### Technique

- Experienced obstetricians and anaesthetists are essential.
- All patients admitted with placenta praevia should be seen and assessed by an anaesthetist.
- Interventional radiology should be considered (see p724 and p775).
- When Caesarean section is to be performed 2–8U of blood should be crossmatched, depending on the anticipated risk of haemorrhage.
- Cell salvage should be used if available. In obstetric practice, to reduce the fetal tissue that is reinfused, efforts should be made to minimise the amount of amniotic fluid that is collected and, after processing, the red cells should be reinfused through a leucocyte depletion filter.
- Obstetric staff experienced in Caesarean hysterectomy should be immediately available.
- Two 14G cannulae should be inserted and equipment for massive haemorrhage must be present.
- If regional anaesthesia is used, a CSE may offer advantages as the surgery may be prolonged.
- For bleeding patients a general anaesthetic is the preferred choice.
- Have a selection of uterotonics to hand (see p776). Even if massive haemorrhage is not encountered, an infusion is advantageous (e.g. oxytocin 30–50IU in 500ml crystalloid over 1–2hr).
- If massive bleeding does occur, hysterectomy may be the only method of controlling bleeding. Excessive delay in making this decision may jeopardise maternal life (see also p774).
- Do not forget surgical methods of controlling haemorrhage—bimanual compression of the uterus, ligation of internal iliac arteries, temporary compression of the aorta.
- Even if no significant bleeding occurred intraoperatively, continue to observe closely in the postnatal period as haemorrhage may still occur.

## Massive obstetric haemorrhage

The gravid uterus receives 12% of the cardiac output and when haemorrhage occurs it can be extremely rapid. In the developing world, haemorrhage is the leading cause of maternal death. Placental abruption, postpartum haemorrhage, and placenta praevia are the principal causes of massive haemorrhage.

The fetus is at greater risk from maternal haemorrhage than the mother. Hypotension reduces uteroplacental blood flow and severe anaemia will further reduce oxygen delivery. In addition abruption may directly compromise blood supply. Fetal mortality may be as high as 35%. Standard protocols for major haemorrhage should be available in every delivery suite.

### Aetiology of obstetric haemorrhage

#### Antenatal

- **Placental abruption.** Bleeding is often associated with pain. Blood loss may be concealed with retroplacental bleed. Fetal compromise is common. Small bleeds may be treated conservatively.
- **Placenta praevia/accreta.** Usually a small painless bleed. May be catastrophic.
- **Uterine rupture.** Fetal distress is almost universal. Classically uterine rupture is said to be painful, but painless dehiscence of a previous uterine scar is not uncommon.

#### Postnatal

Defined as blood loss of greater than 500ml post delivery. Estimates of 'normal' blood loss after vaginal delivery are of the order of 250–400ml and after Caesarean section around 500–1000ml. Blood loss is usually underestimated.

- **Uterine atony.** Associated with chorioamnionitis, prolonged labour, and an abnormally distended uterus (e.g. polyhydramnios, macrosomia, multiple gestation).
- **Retained placenta.** Haemorrhage may be massive but is usually less than 1 litre and occasionally minimal.
- **Retained products of conception.** This is the leading cause of late haemorrhage but is rarely massive.
- **Genital tract trauma.** Vaginal and vulval haematomas are usually self-limiting, but retroperitoneal haematomas may be extensive and life threatening.
- **Uterine inversion.** This is a rare complication in the Western world. It is associated with uterine atony and further relaxation may be required to enable replacement. After replacement uterotonics should be administered.

### Diagnosis

Diagnosis of haemorrhage is usually self-evident, although be aware that concealed bleeding may occur, especially with placental abruptions. In addition signs of cardiovascular decompensation may be delayed, as women are usually young and fit and start with a pregnancy-induced expansion of their intravascular volume. Beware of the woman with cold

peripheries—this is abnormal in pregnancy. Hypotension is a late and worrying sign.

### Management

In the event of a major haemorrhage requiring surgery, do not delay operation until crossmatched blood is available.

- Call for help.
- Give supplemental oxygen. If laryngeal reflexes are obtunded, intubate and ventilate. In antenatal patients avoid aortocaval compression.
- Insert two 14G cannulae and take blood for crossmatching. Request type-specific blood (this can be retrospectively crossmatched).
- Fluid resuscitate with crystalloid and/or colloid.
- If required give Group O Rhesus negative blood (i.e. blood loss of 2–3 litres and ongoing without the imminent prospect of crossmatched blood being available and/or the presence of ECG abnormalities).
- Start appropriate monitoring of mother and fetus. Urine output and invasive monitoring of central venous and arterial pressures may be indicated depending on rate of blood loss and maternal condition. However, early monitoring of CVP is not essential as hypotension is almost always due to hypovolaemia.
- Treat the cause of haemorrhage. If surgery is required:
  - Do not perform a regional technique if the patient is hypovolaemic.
  - Beware of coagulopathies in the presence of concealed abruption.
- With continuing haemorrhage further equipment including warming devices and rapid transfusion devices should be available.
- Correct coagulopathy with platelets, fresh frozen plasma, and cryoprecipitate as indicated.
- Once blood loss has been controlled, continue care on HDU or ICU.

### Specific treatment for haemorrhage

Treatment may be with uterotonics or surgery or both, depending on the cause:

- Uterotonics can only be used in the postnatal period.
- Most postnatal haemorrhage is due to uterine atony and can be temporarily controlled with firm bimanual pressure while waiting for definitive treatment.
- Interventional radiology is especially useful when major haemorrhage is anticipated. It may not reduce the incidence of Caesarean hysterectomy but probably reduces blood loss. Balloon catheters can be prophylactically placed in the internal iliac vessels before delivery (but only inflated at the moment of delivery!). However, interventional radiology can also be used in response to a major bleed, but be very cautious of moving a patient to a radiology suite if they are cardiovascularly unstable. Intrauterine tamponade with Bakri or Sengstaken catheters left in situ for 24hr can also be useful.



## Commonly used uterotonics and doses

Drug	Dose	Comment
Oxytocin (Syntocinon®)	5IU bolus 30–50IU in 500ml crystalloid and titrated as indicated	Synthetically produced hormone causing uterine contraction and peripheral vasodilation and has very mild antidiuretic hormone actions. Early preparations made from animal extracts had significant ADH activity
Ergometrine	0.5mg IM or 0.125mg by slow IV injection and repeat to a total of 0.5mg	An ergot alkaloid derivative. Produces effective uterine constriction, but nausea and vomiting are very common. Systemic vasoconstriction may produce dangerous hypertension in at-risk groups (e.g. pre-eclampsia, specific cardiac disease)
Carboprost (Hemabate®) (15-methyl prostaglandin F <sub>2α</sub> )	0.25mg intramyometrially or IM every 10–15min to a max of 2mg	Effective uterine constrictor. Also causes nausea, vomiting, and diarrhoea. May produce severe bronchospasm, alter pulmonary shunt fraction, and induce hypoxia (caution in asthmatics)
Misoprostol	1mg PR	Effective uterine constrictor. As with carboprost can also cause nausea, vomiting, and diarrhoea. May also cause bronchospasm and alter shunt fraction, but not usually as severe as with carboprost

## Amniotic fluid embolism

- Amniotic fluid embolism (AFE) is the fourth most common direct cause of maternal death in the UK (CEMACH 2003–05<sup>1</sup>).
- Incidence: ~1:12 000 live births.<sup>2</sup>
- Effects are probably due to an anaphylactic response to fetal tissue.
- Within the first 30min after amniotic fluid embolism, intense pulmonary vasoconstriction occurs and is associated with right heart failure, hypoxia, hypercarbia, and acidosis.
- This is followed by left heart failure and pulmonary oedema.
- Expect a coagulopathy.
- Incidence of AFE is increased with:
  - Age >25yr.
  - Multiparous women.
  - Obstructed labour, particularly in association with uterine stimulants.
  - Multiple pregnancy.
  - Short labours.
- AFE is often a diagnosis of exclusion, but clinical features include:
  - Sudden collapse with acute hypotension and fetal distress.
  - Pulmonary oedema (>90% of cases) and cyanosis (80%).
  - Coagulopathy (80%). Haemorrhage may be concealed.
  - Fits (50%).
  - Cardiac arrest (occurs in nearly 90% of women).

Little advance has been made in treating this devastating condition, although care with the use of uterine stimulants and timely diagnosis of obstructed labour may help to reduce the incidence.

Once AFE has occurred, treatment is purely supportive:

- Airway, breathing, and circulation.
- Senior staff should be present (obstetric, anaesthetic, paediatric, and midwifery).
- Haematology services should be alerted, as large quantities of blood products may be required.
- Early delivery of the fetus is vital for both maternal and fetal survival.
- Measure coagulation profile regularly. Platelets fresh frozen plasma, and cryoprecipitate may all be required.
- Intensive care will be required for those who survive the initial insult.

Early mortality is high (50% within the first hour). Even in those who survive, long-term neurological problems are common.

1 Lewis G (2008). The Confidential Enquiry into Maternal and Child Health (CEMACH 2003–2005) [www.cemach.org](http://www.cemach.org)

2 Abenheim HA, Azoulay L, Kramer MS, Leduc L (2008). Incidence and risk factors of amniotic fluid embolism: a population-based study on 3 million births in the United States. *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, **199**(49).e1–8

## Cardiac disease and pregnancy

Cardiac disease is the leading cause of indirect maternal death in pregnancy. Ischaemic heart disease remains the most common cause of maternal cardiac death in the UK, but with the increased survival into child-bearing years of the previous generation of patients with complex congenital cardiac malformations, and the movement of populations across the world, the incidence of complex structural cardiac lesions is increasing. Obesity and increasing maternal age are also significantly associated with an increased incidence of cardiac disease.

Pregnancy and labour often present a severe stress test to these women. As a generality, if a woman was symptomatic with minimal activity before pregnancy, particularly if symptomatic at rest (New York Heart Association Classification III and IV), the course of pregnancy is likely to be stormy and mortality of the order of 20–30% is to be expected. The period of greatest stress is in the immediate post partum period.

It is beyond the scope of this book to give anything but the broadest plans of how to manage women with cardiac disease during pregnancy:

- It is vital to have an early assessment and involve a multidisciplinary team consisting of a combination of obstetricians, anaesthetists, cardiologists, midwives, and neonatologists.
- Plan the delivery. There is little evidence that vaginal delivery is associated with a worse outcome for many cardiac patients. However, on occasions, an elective Caesarean section may offer advantage as appropriate personnel can be guaranteed to be present.
- Investigations should be performed as indicated. The risk to the fetus from procedures such as chest radiographs is minimal.
- Make sure that the woman is in an appropriate place for delivery (this may be the normal delivery suite or it may be the cardiac theatres in a tertiary centre).
- With each condition, in consultation with the cardiologists, consider the effects of vasodilation, vasoconstriction, and positive and negative inotropic and chronotropic agents. This will help with the planning of the delivery, and can allow written guidance on the likely acceptability of regional analgesia and regional or general anaesthesia, as well as the use of oxytocin (potent vasodilator) and ergometrine. It can also allow planning of the appropriate agent to use in the event of hypotension.
- Some centres use a form where all these elements of the anaesthetic management of complex patients are specified. The form remains with the mother throughout her pregnancy.
- In most situations rapid changes in pre- or afterload should be avoided, so always use oxytocin with extreme caution and preferably only as an infusion.
- Expect the period of highest risk to be in the 1–2hr post delivery (cardiac output peaks and autotransfusion plus blood loss leads to a variable effect on pre- and afterload).
- Continue management on ICU if appropriate.

### General principles

- Conditions associated with pulmonary hypertension have a very high maternal mortality in pregnancy (>70%).
- Extreme caution is required to avoid sudden changes in afterload for patients with fixed cardiac output.
- Cyanotic heart lesions (i.e. right-to-left shunts) will not tolerate reductions in systemic vascular resistance. Nevertheless epidural analgesia is sometimes used to minimise the stress of labour, but onset of analgesia must be slow, and use phenylephrine to maintain afterload. General anaesthesia is probably the technique of choice for Caesarean section.
- Aortic stenosis may become symptomatic during pregnancy. Serial echocardiography is often used. Tachycardia and reduction in afterload should be avoided. Loss of sinus rhythm should be treated promptly. General or slow-onset regional anaesthesia have both been advocated for Caesarean section. The technique is probably less important than the skill with which it is applied.
- Valvular insufficiencies are usually well tolerated during pregnancy.
- Women with symptomatic Marfan's disease (see p64 and p317), particularly if the aortic root is dilated, have a high risk of aortic dissection. They are usually maintained on  $\beta$ -blockers. Unexplained severe chest pain is an indication for a chest X-ray and an echocardiogram.
- Myocardial infarction during pregnancy has a 20% mortality. Infarction occurs most commonly in the third trimester. If possible, delivery should be delayed at least 3wk after infarction. Both elective Caesarean section and vaginal delivery have been advocated. In either case, cardiac stress should be minimised with effective analgesia.

## Maternal resuscitation

Maternal cardiac arrest is fortunately rare. The basic algorithms for adult resuscitation (pp910–14) are appropriate for maternal resuscitation with several important differences:

- After 20wk gestation, the mother must be tilted to minimise aortocaval compression. The tilt is ideally provided by a wooden wedge, but if this is not available an assistant can kneel beside the arrested individual and the hips wedged on to the knees of the assistant.
- After 20wk gestation the fetus should be delivered as soon as possible. This improves the chance of maternal survival (and that of a term fetus) as aortocaval compression severely limits the effectiveness of chest compressions. The fetus is likely to be severely acidotic and hypoxic at delivery.
- Remember that pregnant women have reduced oesophageal sphincter tone and that cricoid pressure and intubation should both be performed as rapidly as possible.
- Normal resuscitation drugs should be used. Adrenaline is the drug of choice despite its effect on uterine circulation.
- Adrenaline is also the drug of choice in major anaphylactic and anaphylactoid reactions. Severe hypotension associated with anaphylaxis results in very poor fetal outcome. Early delivery is vital for the fetus.
- Consideration should be given to the diagnosis and treatment of obstetric causes of maternal arrest.

Common causes of maternal arrest include:

- Haemorrhage.
- Pulmonary embolism.
- Amniotic fluid embolus.
- Intracranial haemorrhage.
- Myocardial infarction.
- Iatrogenic events:
  - Hypermagnesaemia—treat with 10ml of 10% calcium chloride.
  - High or total spinal—supportive treatment.
  - Local anaesthetic-induced arrhythmia—treat with Intralipid® (see p1182).

*This page intentionally left blank*

## **Pregnancy-induced hypertension, pre-eclampsia, and eclampsia<sup>1,2</sup>**

Pre-eclampsia remains a leading cause of maternal death. It is a systemic disorder and the precise aetiology is complex and incompletely understood. Immunological factors, genetic factors, endothelial dysfunction, as well as abnormalities in placental implantation, fatty acid metabolism, coagulation, and platelet factors have all been implicated. The earlier in gestation that pre-eclampsia manifests itself, the more severe the disease.

### **Definitions**

- **Hypertension:** a sustained systolic BP >140mmHg or diastolic BP >90mmHg.
- **Chronic hypertension:** hypertension that existed before pregnancy.
- **Pregnancy-induced hypertension:** hypertension that develops in pregnancy. In the absence of other signs of pre-eclampsia, this has minimal effect on pregnancy but may be indicative of a tendency to hypertension in later life.
- **Pre-eclampsia:** pregnancy-induced hypertension in association with renal involvement causing proteinuria (>300mg/24hr or 2+ on urine dipstick). Incidence 6–8% of all gestations.
- **Severe pre-eclampsia:** pre-eclampsia in association with any of the following: a sustained BP >160/110; proteinuria >5g/24hr or 3+ on urine dipstick; urine output <400ml/24hr; pulmonary oedema or evidence of respiratory compromise; epigastric or right upper quadrant pain; hepatic rupture, platelet count <100 × 10<sup>9</sup>/l; evidence of cerebral complications. Incidence is 0.25–0.5% of all gestations.
- **Eclampsia:** convulsions occurring in pregnancy or puerperium in the absence of other causes. Almost always occurs in the presence of pre-eclampsia, although signs of pre-eclampsia may not be manifest until after a fit.

### **Pathophysiology**

#### **Cardiorespiratory**

- Hypertension and increased sensitivity to catecholamine and exogenous vasopressors.
- Reduced circulating volume but increased total body water.
- In severe pre-eclampsia systemic vascular resistance is increased and cardiac output reduced. However, some women have elevated cardiac output with normal or only marginally increased systemic vascular resistance. Fetal prognosis is improved in this group.
- Poor correlation between central venous and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure.
- Increased capillary permeability which may result in:
  - Pulmonary oedema. Be very careful to avoid fluid overload.
  - Laryngeal and pharyngeal oedema. Stridor may result.

**Haematological**

- Reduced platelet count with increased platelet consumption and hypercoagulability with increased fibrin activation and breakdown. Disseminated intravascular coagulation may result.
- Increased haematocrit resulting from decreased circulating volume.

**Renal function**

- A reduced glomerular filtration rate.
- Increased permeability to large molecules resulting in proteinuria.
- Decreased urate clearance with rising serum uric acid level.
- Oliguria in severe disease.

**Cerebral function**

- Headache, visual disturbance, and generalised hyperreflexia.
- Cerebrovascular haemorrhage.
- Eclampsia (resulting from cerebral oedema or cerebrovascular vasoconstriction).

**Fetoplacental unit**

- Reduced fetal growth with associated oligohydramnios.
- Poor placental perfusion and increased sensitivity to changes in maternal BP.
- Reduction of umbilical arterial diastolic blood flow and particularly reverse diastolic flow are indicative of poor fetal outcome without early intervention.

**Management of pre-eclampsia**

- There is no effective prophylactic treatment to prevent pre-eclampsia. Some obstetricians may use low-dose aspirin in selected high-risk pregnancies, but benefit is marginal.
- In established pre-eclampsia the only definitive treatment is the delivery of the placenta. Symptoms will usually start to resolve within 24–48hr.
- When pre-eclampsia develops at term there is no advantage to delaying delivery. However, if pre-eclampsia develops before term, a compromise has to be made between maternal and fetal health. Maternal blood pressure is controlled for as long as possible to allow fetal growth to be optimised. If fetal or maternal condition deteriorates, delivery must be expedited.
- Antihypertensive therapy. Blood pressure should be controlled to below 160/110 to prevent maternal morbidity particularly from intracranial haemorrhage, encephalopathy, and myocardial ischaemia/failure.
  - Established oral antihypertensive drugs include oral methyl dopa/nifedipine preparations and  $\beta$ -blockers (particularly the combined  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -blocker labetalol). Prolonged use of  $\beta$ -blockers may reduce fetal growth.
  - ACE inhibitors are associated with oligohydramnios, still birth, and neonatal renal failure. They should be avoided.

Rapid control of severe hypertension can be achieved with:

- Hydralazine (5mg IV aliquots to a maximum of 20mg).
- Labetalol (5–10mg IV every 10min).



- Oral nifedipine. (10mg). SL nifedipine should be avoided because of associated rapid changes in placental circulation which may compromise fetal condition.
- In very rare cases infusions of glyceryl trinitrate may be needed. If used, invasive arterial pressure monitoring is required.
- Magnesium prophylaxis in pre-eclampsia effectively reduces the incidence of eclampsia, but increases the frequency with which the side effects of magnesium therapy are seen. Severe pre-eclamptic patients are usually treated with magnesium.
- Fluid management in severe pre-eclampsia is critical. Intravascular volume is depleted, but total body water is increased. Excessive fluid load may result in pulmonary oedema, but underfilling may compromise fetal circulation and renal function. General principles are:
  - Individual units are encouraged to develop and follow a fluid management protocol.
  - A named individual should have overall responsibility for fluid therapy in a patient with severe pre-eclampsia.
  - Measure hourly urine output.
  - Beware of excessive fluid loads being delivered with drug therapy (i.e. oxytocin or magnesium). Increased concentrations may be required.
  - Be cautious with preload before Caesarean section and avoid preload before regional analgesia.
  - A common approach is to use a small background infusion of crystalloid, and to treat persistent oliguria with 250–500ml of colloid. If oliguria continues, further fluid management is usually guided by central venous pressure.
- Invasive arterial pressure monitoring is indicated in severe pre-eclampsia for:
  - Monitoring the response to laryngoscopy and surgery during general anaesthesia.
  - Taking repeated arterial blood gases.
  - Monitoring rapidly acting hypotensive agents.
- Central venous pressure monitoring is rarely indicated even in severe pre-eclampsia as central venous pressure may not correlate well with pulmonary arterial wedge pressure. It should be considered:
  - For persistent oliguria ( $<0.5\text{ml/kg/hr}$ ) unresponsive to small fluid challenges.
  - If pulmonary oedema develops.

### **Analgesia for vaginal delivery**

- Effective epidural analgesia controls excessive surges in blood pressure during labour and is recommended.
- Check platelet count before performing an epidural. If maternal condition is rapidly deteriorating or if the platelet numbers are falling then a count must be performed immediately before placement. The 'acceptable' level of platelet count is debatable and based on little evidence. However, common general guidelines are:
  - If the platelet count is  $<100 \times 10^9/\text{l}$ , a clotting screen is required.

- If the platelet count is  $>80 \times 10^9/l$  and the clotting screen is normal then regional techniques are acceptable.
- With a platelet count of  $<80 \times 10^9/l$ , a very careful assessment from a senior individual is required and the potential risks and benefits should be discussed with the patient.
- Thromboelastography may offer a better method of assessing bleeding potential, but as yet its place is unproven.
- Preload before regional analgesia is not required, but monitor BP and fetus carefully and treat changes in BP promptly with cautious doses of ephedrine or phenylephrine (IV infusions may be preferable).

### Anaesthesia for Caesarean section

General anaesthesia or regional anaesthesia may be used. General anaesthesia is indicated if significant thrombocytopenia (see above) or coagulopathy has developed.

#### General anaesthesia

- Assess the airway carefully. Sometimes partners may be better able to assess onset of facial oedema. A history of stridor is of major concern. A selection of small tube sizes must be available. Consider awake fibreoptic intubation in severe cases.
- Obtund the hypertensive response to laryngoscopy, e.g. alfentanil 1–2mg (inform paediatrician that opioids have been used) or labetalol 10–20mg before induction. A remifentanyl infusion may be useful if the anaesthetist is familiar with its use. In very severe pre-eclampsia, intra-arterial pressure monitoring is required before induction.
- If magnesium has been used, expect prolongation of action of non-depolarising muscle relaxants. Use a reduced dose and assess muscle function with a nerve stimulator.
- Ensure adequate analgesia before extubation. The hypertensive response to extubation may also need to be controlled with antihypertensive agents (e.g. labetalol 10–20mg).
- Effective postoperative analgesia is required, but avoid NSAIDs as these patients are prone to renal impairment and may have impaired platelet count or function. When the proteinuria has resolved, which is often within 48hr, NSAIDs may be introduced.
- Continue care in HDU or ICU.

#### Regional anaesthesia

Despite the depleted intravascular volume that occurs with severe pre-eclampsia, pre-eclamptic patients are actually less prone to the hypotensive consequences of regional anaesthesia than normal individuals. Spinal anaesthesia consistently produces better analgesia than epidural anaesthesia and should not be avoided.

- As with regional analgesia, platelet count and if necessary clotting screen needs to be assessed (see above).
- A reduced volume of preload should be used (possibly with colloid).
- Expect ephedrine to have an increased effect. The role of phenylephrine in pre-eclamptic patients has still to be established.
- A slow-onset block may be beneficial.

- Effective postoperative analgesia is required, but avoid NSAIDs as these patients are prone to renal impairment and may have impaired platelet count or function.
- Care should be continued on HDU or ICU.

- 1 Duley L, Meher S Abalos E (2006). Management of pre-eclampsia. *British Medical Journal*, **332**, 463–468.
- 2 Steegers AP et al. (2010). Pre-eclampsia. *Lancet*, **376**, 631–44.

## Eclampsia

- Incidence 1:3500 pregnancies in the UK,<sup>1</sup> but there are wide international variations.
- Most fits occur in the third trimester, and nearly one-third occur postpartum, usually within 24hr of delivery.
- Eclampsia is a life-threatening event.
- Management is aimed at immediate control of the fit and secondary prevention of further fits.

### Immediate management

- Airway (left lateral position with jaw thrust), breathing (bag and mask ventilation and measure oxygen saturation), circulation (obtain IV access and measure BP when possible, avoid aortocaval compression).
- Control of fits with 4g magnesium given IV over 5–10min.

### Prevention of further fits<sup>2</sup>

- Magnesium infusion at 1g/hr for 24hr. Therapeutic level—2–4mmol/l. Magnesium levels may be monitored clinically [loss of reflexes (>5.0mmol/l), reduced respiratory rate (6.0–7.0mmol/l)] or with laboratory monitoring. Reduce infusion rate with oliguria. (Cardiac arrest may occur at >12.0mmol/l.)
- Patients on calcium channel antagonists are at particular risk of toxicity.
- Toxicity can be treated with IV calcium (e.g. 10ml 10% calcium chloride).

After the initial fit has been controlled, if eclampsia has developed antenatally a decision has to be made as to when delivery is to be performed. In general the patient should be stabilised on a magnesium infusion and then consideration given to vaginal or operative delivery. Eclampsia is not an indication for emergency Caesarean section. If general anaesthesia is required, expect prolongation of action of non-depolarising muscle relaxants. After delivery patients should be observed on HDU or ICU.

<sup>1</sup> Knight M, on behalf of UKOSS (2007). Eclampsia in the United Kingdom 2005. *British Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, **114**, 1072–1078.

<sup>2</sup> The Eclampsia Trial Collaborative Group (1995). Which anticonvulsant for women with eclampsia? Evidence from the Collaborative Eclampsia Trial. *Lancet*, **345**, 1455–1463.

## HELLP syndrome

Haemolysis, Elevated Liver enzymes and Low Platelets comprises the HELLP syndrome. It is usually associated with pre-eclampsia or eclampsia, but these are not a prerequisite for diagnosis. Severe HELLP syndrome has a 5% maternal mortality. HELLP rarely presents before the 20th week of gestation, but one-sixth of cases present before the third trimester and a further third present postnatally (usually within 48hr of delivery). Symptoms are sometimes of a vague flu-like illness, which may delay diagnosis. Maintain a high index of suspicion.

### Features of HELLP

- **Evidence of haemolysis** (a falling Hb concentration without evidence of overt bleeding, haemoglobinuria, elevated bilirubin in serum and urine, elevated LDH).
- **Elevated liver function tests**—AST (serum aspartate transaminase), ALT (serum alanine aminotransferase), alkaline phosphatase, and  $\gamma$ -glutamyl transferase. Epigastric or right upper quadrant abdominal pain are present in 90% of women with HELLP. Liver failure and hepatic rupture may occur. Extreme elevation in AST is associated with poor maternal prognosis. Most women with right upper quadrant pain and a platelet count of  $<20 \times 10^9/l$  will have an intrahepatic or subcapsular bleed.
- **A falling platelet count.** Counts of less than  $100 \times 10^9/l$  are of concern, while a count of less than  $50 \times 10^9/l$  is indicative of severe disease.
- **Hypertension and proteinuria** are present in 80% of women with HELLP and 50% suffer nausea and vomiting. Convulsions and gastrointestinal haemorrhage are occasional presenting features.

The only definitive treatment is delivery of the placenta, although high-dose steroids may delay progress of the disease. If maternal condition is not deteriorating rapidly and the fetus is profoundly premature, delivery may be delayed by 48hr to allow steroids to be administered to promote fetal lung maturity.

- The method of delivery depends on maternal condition and the likelihood of successfully inducing labour. Severe HELLP syndrome will require an urgent Caesarean section.
- The risk of epidural haematoma may preclude the use of regional analgesia/anaesthesia. Consideration must be given to both the absolute platelet number as well as rate of fall in platelet count. All patients require a clotting screen.
- Be prepared for major haemorrhage.
- Further management is supportive, with appropriate replacement of blood products as required.
- Invasive monitoring is dictated entirely by the clinical condition of the patient.
- ARDS, renal failure, and disseminated intravascular coagulation may develop.
- After delivery of the placenta, recovery can be expected to start within 24–48hr. These patients should all be on an HDU or ICU.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## **Surgery during pregnancy**

One to two percent of women require incidental surgery during pregnancy.<sup>1</sup> Surgery is associated with increased fetal loss and premature delivery, although this probably reflects the underlying condition that necessitated the surgery rather than the anaesthetic or the surgery itself. The risk of teratogenicity is very small.

### **General considerations**

- When possible delay surgery until the postnatal period or alternatively into the second trimester, when teratogenic risks to the fetus are reduced (the fetus is at greatest risk from teratogenicity in the period of organogenesis, which continues to the 12th gestational week).
- Make sure that the obstetric team are aware that surgery is planned.
- Remember gastric acid prophylaxis.
- Remember DVT prophylaxis. Pregnant women are hypercoagulable.
- Consider regional anaesthesia. The combination of a mother maintaining her own airway together with a minimal fetal drug exposure is desirable. However, data demonstrating that regional anaesthesia is safer than general anaesthesia are lacking.
- Airway management in the first and early second trimester is controversial. In asymptomatic women with no other indication for intubation, it is acceptable not to perform a rapid sequence induction up to 18wk of gestation. However, be aware that lower oesophageal sphincter tone is reduced within the first few weeks of pregnancy and intra-abdominal pressure rises in the second trimester. If patients have additional risk factors for regurgitation (e.g. symptomatic reflux, obesity), use a rapid sequence induction.<sup>2</sup>
- Every effort must be made to maintain normal maternal physiological parameters for the gestational age of the fetus throughout the perioperative period.
- Treat haemorrhage aggressively. Avoid hypovolaemia and anaemia as both impact on fetal oxygenation.
- From the 20th week of gestation use left lateral tilt to reduce aortocaval compression. Remember that although upper limb BP may be normal, uterine blood flow may still be compromised in the supine position.
- If general anaesthesia is employed, use adequate doses of inhalational agents. Light anaesthesia is associated with increased catecholamine release, which reduces placental blood flow. The tocolytic effect of inhalational agents is advantageous.
- Fetal monitoring may be beneficial although its value remains unproven. If fetal distress is detected, maternal physiology can be manipulated to optimise uterine blood flow.
- The primary risk to the fetus is premature labour in the postoperative period. Detection and suppression of premature labour is vital. Women should be told to report sensations of uterine contractions so that appropriate tocolytic therapy can be instituted.
- Effective postoperative analgesia is required to reduce maternal catecholamine secretion. Although opioids can be used, they may

result in maternal hypercarbia. Regional analgesia with local anaesthetic agents may be preferential. If this would prevent the mother from detecting uterine contractions, consider external uterine pressure transduction—‘tocodynamometry’. For minor surgery local anaesthesia and simple analgesics such as paracetamol and codeine may be used. Chronic dosage with NSAIDs should be avoided—in the first trimester because of increased fetal loss and in the third trimester because of the possibility of premature closure of the fetal ductus arteriosus.

### Teratogenicity

The fetus is at greatest risk of teratogenesis in the period of major organogenesis. This is predominantly in the first 12wk of gestation, although minor abnormalities may still occur after this. Causes of teratogenicity are diverse and include infection, pyrexia, hypoxia, and acidosis as well as the better-recognised hazards of drugs and radiation. The association of drugs with teratogenicity is often difficult. Epidemiological studies have to be large to establish associations, while animal experiments may not reflect either human dose exposure or human physiology. Although none of the commonly used anaesthetic agents is a proven teratogen, specific concerns are addressed below.

### Premedication

- Benzodiazepines. Case reports have associated benzodiazepines with cleft lip formation, but this has not been substantiated by more recent studies. A single dose has never been associated with teratogenicity. Long-term administration may lead to neonatal withdrawal symptoms following delivery, and exposure just before delivery may cause neonatal drowsiness and hypotonia.
- Ranitidine and cimetidine are not known to be harmful, but caution is advised with chronic exposure to cimetidine because of known androgenic effects in adults.

### Induction agents

- Thiopental. Clinical experience with thiopental suggests that this is a very safe drug to use, although formal studies have not been conducted.
- Propofol is not teratogenic in animal studies. Its use in early human pregnancy has not been formally investigated. Propofol is safe to use during Caesarean section at term.
- Etomidate is also not teratogenic in animal studies. It is a potent inhibitor of cortisol synthesis, and when used for Caesarean section, neonates have reduced cortisol concentrations.
- Ketamine should be avoided in early pregnancy as it increases intrauterine pressure, resulting in fetal asphyxia. This increase in intrauterine pressure is not apparent in the third trimester.<sup>1</sup>



**Inhalational agents**

- Halothane and isoflurane have been used extensively in pregnancy and are safe. At high concentrations, maternal blood pressure and cardiac output fall, resulting in a significant reduction in uterine blood flow. The halogenated vapours also cause uterine relaxation, which may be beneficial for surgery during pregnancy.
- Despite early concerns, recent epidemiological studies suggest that nitrous oxide is safe. However, nitrous oxide is consistently teratogenic in Sprague Dawley rats if they are exposed to 50–75% concentrations for 24hr during their peak organogenic period. Given that anaesthesia can be safely delivered without nitrous oxide it is sensible to avoid this agent.
- Muscle relaxants: because these agents are not lipophilic, only very small quantities cross the placenta and so fetal exposure is limited. These agents are safe to use.
- Anticholinesterase inhibitors: these agents are highly ionised and so, like muscle relaxants, do not readily cross the placenta and are safe to use. Chronic use of pyridostigmine to treat myasthenia gravis may cause premature labour.

**Analgesics**

- Opioids readily cross the placenta, but brief exposure is safe. Long-term exposure will cause symptoms of withdrawal when the fetus is delivered. Animal studies suggest possible fetal teratogenicity if prolonged hypercapnia or impaired feeding develop as side effects of opioid exposure.
- Chronic exposure to NSAIDs in early pregnancy may be associated with increased fetal loss and in the third trimester may cause premature closure of the ductus arteriosus and persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn. Single doses are unlikely to be harmful. These agents are also used to suppress labour, particularly in the second trimester.
- Bupivacaine and lidocaine are safe. When used near delivery, bupivacaine has no significant neonatal neurobehavioural effects, while lidocaine may have a mild effect. Cocaine abuse during pregnancy increases fetal loss and may increase the incidence of abnormalities in the genitourinary tract.

1 Mazze RI, Kallen B (1989). Reproductive outcome after anesthesia and operation during pregnancy: A registry study of 5405 cases. *American Journal of Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 161, 1178–85.

2 Vanner RG (1992). Gastro-oesophageal reflux and regurgitation during general anaesthesia for termination of pregnancy. *International Journal of Obstetric Anaesthesia*, 1, 123–128.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Cervical cerclage

Procedure	Surgical treatment of incompetent cervical os
Time	20min
Pain	+
Position	Lithotomy
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	Spinal/epidural. GA with RSI/cuffed ETT if >18wk gestation or reflux

An incompetent cervix may be caused by congenital abnormalities, cervical scarring, or hormonal imbalance. Premature dilation of the cervix and fetal loss may result, usually in the second trimester. Cervical cerclage is performed to prevent this premature dilation and is one of the commonest surgical procedures undertaken in pregnancy. Although occasionally inserted before conception, it is usually performed between the 14th and 26th week. Emergency cerclage may be required in the face of a dilating cervix and bulging membranes. Not surprisingly emergency treatment is less successful in maintaining a pregnancy than prophylactic cerclage.

### Preoperative

- The risks of cerclage include membrane rupture (more common if the membranes are already bulging), infection, haemorrhage, and inducing premature labour.
- Careful assessment of airway, gestation, symptoms of reflux, and supine hypotension.
- Remember antacid prophylaxis.
- Explain risks of teratogenicity/spontaneous miscarriage (see p791).

### Perioperative

- Both regional and general anaesthesia may be used.
- If general anaesthesia is used and uterine relaxation is required to allow bulging membranes to be reduced, the halogenated vapour concentration can be increased.
- For regional anaesthesia, a T8–T10 level is required for intraoperative comfort. If uterine relaxation is required, 2–3 puffs of sublingual glyceryl trinitrate spray may be used and repeated as necessary, although transient hypotension is to be expected.

### Postoperative

- In the postoperative period women should be observed closely for premature labour.
- Vaginal cervical cerclage sutures are usually removed at the 38th week of gestation.

### Special considerations

- Various permutations on cervical cerclage are available. These are broadly divided into transvaginal procedures and transabdominal procedures.
- The transabdominal procedure requires two operations—one for insertion and another for a Caesarean section for delivery and removal of the suture. It also carries greater risk of ureteric involvement.
- Transvaginal procedures are much more common. Shirodkar and McDonald procedures are the two commonest methods. They both require anaesthesia for insertion but can be removed without anaesthetic.

## Controversies

### Feeding in labour

In the 1950s the Confidential Enquiries into maternal deaths highlighted aspiration as a major cause of maternal death. As a result a policy of fasting during labour became widespread. Although airway problems continue to be implicated in maternal deaths, aspiration is now rare.

Fasting may adversely affect the progress of labour. Ketosis and hypoglycaemia are common when fasting is combined with the physical effort of labour. This may reduce the likelihood of a spontaneous vaginal delivery.

Scrutton randomised women to feeding or fasting in labour and found that ketosis and hypoglycaemia were less common when women were fed. However, gastric volume was greater in the fed group, and there was no difference in the duration of first or second stages of labour, oxytocic requirements, or mode of delivery.<sup>1</sup>

Most women do not want to eat when in established labour. However, if feeding is to be instituted, suggested recommendations are:

- Only 'low-risk' women should be permitted to eat. However, identification of 'low-risk' women in early labour is notoriously inaccurate.
- Stop all intake of solids if any opioid, epidural, or oxytocic is used.
- Allow only 'low residue' foods that rapidly empty from the stomach (cereals, toast, low fat cheese, and semi-sweet biscuits). Very cold foods such as ice creams are known to delay gastric emptying.
- As particulate matter is known to be especially problematic in the event of aspiration, isotonic sports drinks may offer the ideal solution. These effectively prevent ketosis without increasing gastric volume.

### Epidurals, dystocia, and Caesarean section<sup>2</sup>

It has been recognised for many years that epidurals are associated with Caesarean section. However, argument continues as to whether this is a *causative* association. Various possible mechanisms have been proposed. These include:

- Reduced maternal expulsive effort resulting from abdominal muscle weakness.
- Change in the way the force of contraction is transferred to the pelvic floor when relaxed by an epidural.
- Change in uterine force of contraction (this is not substantiated by recent studies).
- Interference with the Ferguson reflex (increased oxytocic production between pressure on the pelvic floor in the second stage of labour). This is controversial, as the Ferguson reflex has not been clearly demonstrated in humans.

'Impact studies' (studies of changes in Caesarean section rates when there is a dramatic change in epidural rates) have not found a causative association.

Approximately 50% of randomised studies did find an association between assisted vaginal deliveries and regional analgesia. This may be minimised by reducing the total dose of local anaesthetic administered.

- 1 Scrutton MJL, Metcalfe GA, et al. (1999). Eating in labour. A randomised controlled trial assessing the risks and benefits. *Anaesthesia*, **54**, 329–334.
- 2 Chestnut DH (1997). Epidural analgesia and the incidence of cesarean section. Time for another close look. *Anesthesiology*, **87**, 472–475.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Paediatric and neonatal anaesthesia

## Simon Berg

Neonatal/infant physiology 800  
Fluid resuscitation 808  
Anaesthetic equipment 810  
Conduct of anaesthesia 815  
Postoperative pain relief 828  
Caudal block 830  
Epidural/subarachnoid block 832  
Regional nerve blocks 834  
Diaphragmatic hernia 836  
Gastroschisis/exomphalos 838  
Tracheo-oesophageal fistula 840  
Patent ductus arteriosus 841  
Pyloric stenosis 842  
Intussusception 843  
Herniotomy 844  
Circumcision 846  
Orchidopexy 847  
Hypospadias 848  
Cleft lip and palate 850  
Congenital talipes equinovarus 852  
Femoral osteotomy 853  
Inhaled foreign body 854  
Medical problems 856  
Sedation 858

See also:

Correction of prominent ears 521  
Tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy 642  
Resuscitation of the newborn 958  
Paediatric emergencies 954–968



## Neonatal/infant physiology

Paediatric anaesthesia embraces patients from the premature neonate to the adolescent. Major differences exist between the anatomy, physiology, and pharmacological response of children and adults. In anaesthetic terms special considerations apply to the neonate.

### Definitions

Neonate:	first 44wk of post-conceptual age (PCA)
Premature infant:	<37wk gestational age
Infant:	from 1–12 months of age
SGA:	small for gestational age
Low birth weight (LBW):	≤2.5kg

### Respiratory considerations

- At birth, each terminal bronchiole opens into a single alveolus instead of fully developed alveolar clustering. The alveoli are thick-walled and constitute only 10% of the adult total. Alveolar growth continues by multiplication until 6–8yr.
- Cartilaginous ribs are horizontally aligned so that the 'bucket handle' action of the adult thorax is not possible. Intercostal muscles are poorly developed with a lower proportion of type 1 muscle fibres and fatigue more easily. The diaphragm has a more horizontal attachment reducing mechanical advantage.
- Ventilation is essentially diaphragmatic and rate dependent. Abdominal distension may cause splinting of the diaphragm leading to respiratory failure.
- Closing volume occurs within tidal breathing in the neonate. Minor decreases in functional residual capacity (FRC) increase the pulmonary shunt and lead to lung collapse. The application of continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) improves oxygenation and reduces the work of breathing.
- Narrow airways result in increased resistance up to the age of 8yr. Nasal resistance represents almost 50% of total airway resistance, accentuating the problem of children with nasal congestion who are obligate nasal breathers.
- Apnoea is a common postoperative problem in preterm neonates. It is significant if the episode exceeds 15s or induces cyanosis or bradycardia. CPAP may be helpful with the distending pressure triggering stretch receptors on the chest wall.
- Due to the higher metabolic rate and alveolar minute volume, volatile agents achieve a more rapid induction and emergence than with adults. They are profound respiratory depressants; most anaesthetised neonates require intubation and controlled ventilation.

Parameter	Neonate	Adult
Tidal volume (spontaneous) (ml/kg)	7	7–10
Tidal volume (IPPV) (ml/kg)	7–10	10
Dead space (ml/kg)	2.2	2.2
VD:VT ratio	0.3	0.3
Respiratory rate	30–40	15
Compliance (ml/cmH <sub>2</sub> O)	5	100
Resistance (cmH <sub>2</sub> O/l/s)	25	5
Time constant (s)	0.5	1.1
Oxygen consumption (ml/kg/min)	7	3

Parameters for children over 2yr approximate to adult values.  
 Estimate respiratory rate from the formula:  $24 - \text{age}/2$ .

### Cardiovascular considerations

- Pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) falls at birth in response to rises in PaO<sub>2</sub>/pH and a fall in PaCO<sub>2</sub>. Subsequent closure of the foramen ovale and ductus arteriosus may reverse with hypoxia and acidosis leading to pulmonary hypertension and right to left shunt (transitional circulation).
- The neonate has small ventricles with reduced contractile mass and poor ventricular compliance. Cardiac output is higher than adults (200ml/kg/min) and rate dependent. Normal systolic pressure is 70–90mmHg with low SVR.
- Heart rates up to 200 bpm can be tolerated. Bradycardia occurs in response to hypoxia and should be treated with oxygen rather than atropine. Neonatal and infant heart rates less than 60 bpm require external cardiac compression.
- Autonomic and baroreceptor control is fully functional at term, but vagally mediated parasympathetic tone predominates.
- Incidence of congenital heart disease (CHD) is 7–8 per 1000 live births—10–15% have associated non-cardiac pathology. All neonates with midline defects should be assessed for related cardiac lesions.

Age (yr)	Heart rate (bpm)	Mean systolic blood pressure (mmHg)	Mean diastolic blood pressure (mmHg)
Neonate	80–200	50–90	25–60
1	80–160	85–105	50–65
2	80–130	95–105	50–65
4	80–120	95–110	55–70
6	75–115	95–110	55–70
8	70–110	95–110	55–70
10	70–110	100–120	60–75
12	60–110	110–130	65–80

Mean systolic BP over 1yr =  $80 + (\text{age in yr} \times 2)$

### Gastrointestinal considerations

- The liver is immature. Enzyme systems have matured by 12wk, but some drugs are metabolised more slowly and others by different enzyme pathways from adults. The action of barbiturates and opioids in the neonate is prolonged and enhanced.
- Bilirubin metabolism is affected by a poorly developed glucuronyl transferase system. Rises in unconjugated bilirubin may lead to neonatal jaundice and kernicterus by crossing the blood–brain barrier. Some drugs (e.g. sulphonamides, diazepam, vitamin K) displace bilirubin from plasma proteins and exacerbate jaundice.
- Carbohydrate reserves are low in neonates. The premature baby and stressed neonate are vulnerable to hypoglycaemia.
- Vitamin K-dependent factors are low at term. The routine administration of vitamin K 1mg/kg IV may prevent haemorrhagic disease of the newborn and is mandatory before surgery in the first week of life.

### Renal considerations

- Nephron formation is complete at term, but renal function is immature. Renal blood flow is reduced due to high renal vascular resistance. The glomerular filtration rate achieves adult values by 2yr and tubular function by 6–8 months.
- Neonates cannot excrete a large solvent or sodium load. Reduced drug dosages or prolonged frequency intervals may apply.

## Haematological considerations

Circulating blood volume is calculated as follows:

Neonate	90ml/kg
Infant	85ml/kg
Child	80ml/kg

- Post delivery haemoglobin concentrations range from 13–20g/dl (average 18g/dl) depending on degree of placental transfusion. Subsequently haemoglobin concentration falls as the increase in circulating volume exceeds growth in bone marrow activity, the '*physiological anaemia of infancy*' which varies from 10–12g/dl.
- Predominant haemoglobin type at term is HbF (80–90%). By 4 months this has fallen to 10–15% and been replaced by HbA. HbF has a higher oxygen affinity due to reduced 2,3-diphosphoglycerate levels.
- Preoperative haemoglobin less than 10g/dl is abnormal and should be investigated.

## Central nervous system

- Neurons are complete at term, but total number of brain cells is reduced. Dendritic proliferation, myelination, and synaptic connections develop in the third trimester and first 2yr of life.
- The blood–brain barrier is more permeable in neonates—barbiturates, opioids, antibiotics, and bilirubin all cross more readily.
- Autoregulation of the cerebral circulation is present from birth.
- The brain contains a higher proportion of fat, which may allow volatile agents to reach higher concentrations more rapidly.
- All neonates, however immature, feel pain. The premature neonate may even be hypersensitive due to a relative increase of transmitters mediating nociception with the later development of descending inhibitory pathways.
- Dose requirements of volatile agents vary with age. The neonatal MAC is comparable to adult values and decreases with prematurity. MAC peaks at 1yr (approximately 50% greater than adult values), then declines to reach adult levels by the onset of puberty (see pp1251–2).

## Weight

Approximate weights can be determined from the following formula:

Birth	3–3.5kg
3–12 months	$\text{weight (kg)} = [\text{age (month)} + 9]/2$
1–6yr	$\text{weight (kg)} = [\text{age (yr)} + 4] \times 2$

All paediatric patients should be weighed preoperatively.

## Thermoregulation

- Poorly developed thermoregulatory mechanism. High surface area to volume ratio with minimal SC fat and poor insulation. Vasoconstrictor response is limited and the neonate is unable to shiver.

- *Non-shivering thermogenesis* is achieved by metabolism in brown fat found in the back, shoulders, legs, and around major thoracic vessels. This considerably increases oxygen consumption and may worsen pre-existing hypoxia. Brown fat is deficient in premature infants.
- Neonates lose heat during surgery by conduction, convection, and evaporation but predominantly by radiation. A *neutral thermal environment* is one in which oxygen demand, heat loss, and energy expenditure are minimal. This optimal ambient temperature depends on age, maturity, and weight. Average temperatures are 34°C for the premature baby, 32°C for the neonate, and 28°C in the adult.
- General anaesthesia depresses the thermoregulatory response. Heat is lost from the core to the cooler peripheral tissues. Prolonged hypothermia can lead to a profound acidosis with impaired perfusion. Platelet function is impaired, but clotting factors are unaffected above 32°C. Duration of opioids and muscle relaxants is prolonged.

### Measures to conserve heat loss

- Theatres should be heated before surgery to warm the walls and raise the ambient temperature (21°C is adequate for larger children, but infants and neonates may require 26°C). In practice this is too hot; a theatre temperature of 21°C is an adequate compromise if active measures are taken to reduce heat loss and maintain the 'microclimate' around the patient. Doors should stay closed to avoid draughts.
- Avoid exposure of the child; this applies particularly in the anaesthetic room. The head is relatively large in infants and should be covered with a bonnet, Gamgee, or even polythene. The rest of the body can also be insulated with warm Gamgee.
- Use an active warming device. These include a warming mattress or convective warm air blanket. Overhead radiant heaters may be suitable for neonates.
- Humidify and warm anaesthetic gases. Heated water vapour humidifiers are available, but disposable heat and moisture exchangers are usually satisfactory. Use of a circle breathing system also provides a means of warming and humidifying anaesthetic gases.
- All perioperative fluids, especially blood, should be warmed.
- Cleaning fluids should be kept warm.
- Temperature measurement is essential in neonatal surgery, paediatric surgery of intermediate to long duration, and where major fluid and blood loss is expected.

### Fluid balance

- 80% of neonatal total body weight is water; the value is higher in the preterm infant and reaches an adult level of 60% by 2yr. Extracellular water constitutes 45% of total body water at term (over 50% in the preterm) but attains an adult value of 35% by early childhood. Plasma volume tends to stay constant at 5% of total body weight independent of age.
- Turnover of water is over double that of the adult; 40% of extracellular water is lost daily in infants as urine, faeces, sweat, and insensible losses. A small increase in loss or reduction in intake can rapidly lead to dehydration.

- Daily fluid maintenance is calculated from calorie requirement; 100kcal/kg for the infant, with older children requiring 75kcal/kg, and adults 35kcal/kg. Each kilocalorie requires 1ml of water for metabolism.

First 5d neonatal fluid requirement (ml/kg/d)

	Term	Preterm
Day 1	60	60
Day 2	90	90
Day 3	120	120
Day 4	150	150
Day 5	150	180

### Neonatal fluid requirements

- Fluid is initially given cautiously as the kidneys cannot easily excrete a water or sodium load. If under a radiant heater or undergoing phototherapy, 30ml/kg/day is added to the regime.
- Fluid of choice is 10% glucose. This is adjusted in increments of 2.5% to achieve normoglycaemia. A blood sugar below 2.6mmol/l is treated with 2ml/kg 10% dextrose.
- Routinely added electrolytes are sodium 3mmol/kg/d and potassium 2mmol/kg/d. Other electrolytes including calcium are added as indicated.

### Paediatric fluid requirements

- Maintenance is calculated using the '4-2-1' regime.
- The fluid of choice is 0.45% saline/5% dextrose:
  - 4ml/kg/hr (100ml/kg/day) for each of the first 10kg
  - 2ml/kg/hr (50ml/kg/day) for each of the second 10kg
  - 1ml/kg/hr (25ml/kg/day) for each subsequent kilogram
- Maintenance requirement makes no allowance for extra losses from gastroenteritis, intestinal obstruction, and insensible loss from pyrexia. Additional sodium and potassium may also be required.
- Perioperative fluids comprise basic maintenance requirement plus replacement of other observed fluid losses. These are replaced by isotonic crystalloid, i.e. 0.9% sodium chloride, Hartmann's solution, colloid, or blood according to clinical need. 1% or 2.5% glucose/Hartmann's solution (add 10ml or 25ml 50% glucose to 500ml Hartmann's solution) is a useful perioperative fluid for infants. Regular blood glucose measurement is essential in neonatal surgery.
- Colloid solutions including albumin, hydroxyethyl starches, and gelatine solutions are all routinely used.
- Transfusion is required after 15% blood loss. Blood volume should be calculated prior to surgery (see p803). Swabs should be carefully weighed and suction recorded.

- Postoperatively use 0.45% sodium chloride/5% glucose (or Hartmann's solution for children > 8–10 years) at 2/3 maintenance.
- 4% glucose/0.18% sodium chloride is no longer recommended due to the risk of hyponatraemia.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Fluid resuscitation

- Assessment of dehydration and hypovolaemia is made predominantly on clinical grounds. Increased capillary refill time (CRT)  $\geq 2$ s, cold, blue peripheries, and an increasing core–peripheral temperature gap with a thready pulse are early signs of hypovolaemia. Rising heart rate is not always helpful and may reflect pain, anxiety, or fever. Oliguria and a reduced level of consciousness are late signs. Hypotension does not occur until over 35% of the blood volume is lost.
- Administer fluid boluses of 20ml/kg crystalloid or 10ml/kg colloid and then reassess.
- Give blood when 15% of circulating volume is lost (p803) and aim for haemoglobin of 8g/dl or PCV of 25%. Transfused blood should be fresh if possible, warm, filtered, and cytomegalovirus (CMV) negative. It can be rapidly transfused using a syringe and three-way tap.
- ‘Swing’ of the arterial or pulse oximeter trace is a valuable aid in assessing intravascular loss. CVP may be less sensitive in smaller children because of the greater venous capacitance.

## Resuscitation

### Clinical assessment of dehydration

Sign	5% dehydration	10% dehydration
Skin	Loss of turgor	Mottled, poor capillary return
Fontanelle	Depressed	Deeply depressed
Eyes	Sunken	Deeply sunken
Peripheral pulses	Normal	Tachycardia, weak pulse
Mental State	Lethargic	Unresponsive

Replacement volume (ml) = wt (kg)  $\times$  percentage loss  
 e.g. 10% loss in 5kg infant requires replacement volume of 50ml

### Clinical assessment of hypovolaemia

- Shock is the clinical state in which delivery of oxygen and metabolic substrates is inadequate for cellular demand.
- In **compensated shock**, oxygenation of the vital structures (brain and heart) is maintained by sympathetic reflexes at the expense of non-essential tissues. BP remains normal with an increase in SVR.
- In **decompensated shock**, hypotension develops and vital organ perfusion is compromised.
- With **irreversible shock**, there is cyanosis, bradycardia, and gasping respiration. This is a preterminal event.
- Shock may result from loss of fluid (hypovolaemia), pump failure (cardiogenic), and abnormal vessel distribution (distributive).
- The immediate treatment is administration of 100% oxygen and transfusion of 20ml/kg crystalloid or colloid as often as required. Give blood if no improvement after 40ml/kg.

Sign	Compensated	Uncompensated	Irreversible
Heart rate	↑	↑↑	↑↓
Systolic BP	Normal/↑	Normal/↓	↑↓
Pulse volume	Normal/↓	↓	↓↓
Capillary refill	Normal/↑	↑	↑↑
Skin colour	Pale	Mottled	White/grey
Skin temperature	Cool	Cold	Cold
Mental status	Agitated	Lethargic	Unresponsive
Respiratory rate	Normal/↑	↑↑	Sighing
Fluid loss	<25%	25–40%	>40%

### Postoperative hyponatraemia

- Postoperative hyponatraemia (serum sodium <135mmol/l) is uncommon. It can follow any fluid regime but is more likely with administration of hypotonic fluids.
- Symptoms are often non-specific including nausea, vomiting, and headache (a common early sign). It may also present as seizure or respiratory arrest.
- Hyponatraemic seizures respond poorly to anticonvulsants and initial management should be to administer an infusion of 3% sodium chloride. Plan to increase serum sodium to >125mmol/l or until symptoms improve (1ml/kg 3% sodium chloride should raise serum sodium by 1mmol/l).
- Asymptomatic hyponatraemia can be managed with 0.9% sodium chloride. If hypervolaemic, restrict fluids to 50% of maintenance.

### Further reading

Association of Paediatric Anaesthetists (APA) (2007). *Consensus Guideline on Perioperative Fluid Management in Children v1.1*. [www.apagbi.org.uk/docs/perioperative\\_fluid\\_management\\_2007.pdf](http://www.apagbi.org.uk/docs/perioperative_fluid_management_2007.pdf).

## Anaesthetic equipment

### Oropharyngeal airway

- Range in size from 000 to 4 (4–10cm in length).
- Rarely useful in neonates who are obligate nasal breathers, but may be advantageous in older children or in mask ventilation to prevent gastric distension.
- Estimating the size of the airway is crucial. Incorrect size will worsen airway obstruction. Correct length is equal to the distance from incisors to the angle of the jaw.
- The airway should not be inverted during insertion in infants as this may damage the palate.

### Nasopharyngeal airway

- Limited application in paediatric practice. Tolerated at lighter levels of anaesthesia than an oropharyngeal airway and may be of use during induction/recovery of some congenital airway problems or obstructive sleep apnoea.
- Well lubricated prior to insertion; bleeding is possible from mucosal or adenoidal trauma, especially in younger children.
- Appropriate length is equal to the distance from the tip of the nostril to the tragus of the ear.
- If an ET tube is used as a modified nasopharyngeal airway, then the size is calculated by:  $\text{age}/4 + 3.5$ .

### Facemasks

- Clear plastic masks with an inflatable rim provide an excellent seal for spontaneous and assisted ventilation.
- Greater dead space than the traditional black rubber Rendell–Baker masks, but less threatening and easier to position.
- Manufactured in a round or tear-drop shape; the round shape is suitable only for neonates and infants. Also available as ‘flavoured’ masks.
- Transparent design allows for observation of cyanosis/regurgitation and the presence of breathing.
- Size is estimated to fit an area from the bridge of the nose to the cleft of the chin.

### Laryngeal mask airway (LMA)<sup>1</sup>

- Indications and insertion techniques are similar to adult use. An alternative method of insertion is to advance the LMA upside down and partially inflated behind the tongue before rotating through 180°.
- Smaller LMA sizes have increased complication rates inversely proportional to the age of the child. The effectiveness of these smaller masks is not established for resuscitation.
- Intubating laryngeal mask airway (ILMA) available in size 3 which is potentially useful for older children.
- ProSeal LMA unavailable in small sizes.

<sup>1</sup> Bagshaw O (2002). The size 1.5 laryngeal mask (LMA) in paediatric anaesthetic practise. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*, **12**, 420–423.

Size of LMA	Weight (kg)	Cuff volume (ml)
1	0–5	2–5
1.5	5–10	5–7
2	10–20	7–10
2.5	20–30	12–14
3	>30	15–20

## Laryngoscopes

- Laryngoscope blades available in different lengths from size 0–3.
- Curved Macintosh blade or straight-bladed Magill for infants (especially  $\leq 6$  months—high anterior larynx).
- Polio and McCoy blades are also available.

## Tracheal tubes

- Paediatric tracheal tubes are commonly uncuffed until  $\sim 8$ yr of age.
- Uncuffed tubes are available from 2–7mm. Standard cuffed tubes start from 5.0mm. New microcuff tubes have been trialled successfully from birth to 5yr, reducing tube exchange rate without increasing the incidence of post extubation stridor.<sup>1</sup>
- Paediatric versions of the RAE, armoured, and laser tubes all exist. A north-facing uncuffed preformed tube has been developed for routine paediatric surgery.
- The paediatric trachea is conical. The narrowest part is at the level of the cricoid ring, the only part of the airway completely surrounded by cartilage. If the tracheal tube is too large, it will compress the tracheal epithelium at this level, leading to ischaemia with consequent scarring and the risk of subglottic stenosis.
- A correctly sized tube is one in which ventilation is adequate but a small audible leak of air is present when positive pressure is applied at 20cmH<sub>2</sub>O.
- Paediatric 8.5mm connectors can be used as an alternative to the standard 15mm connector. Catheter mounts should be avoided because of the large dead space involved.
- **Tube length** in centimetres can be calculated as:
  - Age/2 + 12 (or tube size  $\times 3$ )—oral tube
  - Age/2 + 15—nasal tube.
- Tube size may also approximate to the size of the little finger or diameter of the nostril.
- Tube placement needs to be meticulous to avoid endobronchial intubation or inadvertent extubation.
- To assess the length of tube to be passed below the vocal cords, use the black guide line at the distal end of the tube or the tube size in centimetres. Ultimately the position must be confirmed clinically.

1 Weiss M, Dullenkopf A, Fisher JE, Keller C, Gerber AC (2009). Prospective randomised controlled multi-centre trial of cuffed or uncuffed tracheal tubes in small children. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **103**, 867–873.

**Infant tube sizes**

Weight or age	Tube size (mm)
>2kg	2.5
2–4kg	3.0
Term neonate	3.5
3 months–1yr	4.0
Over 2yr	Tube size = age/4 + 4

**Anaesthetic breathing systems****Ayre's T-piece with Jackson–Rees modification**

- Jackson–Rees modification of the Ayre's T-piece (Mapleson F) is the most commonly used circuit in paediatric anaesthetic practice. Suitable for all children up to 20kg, beyond which it becomes inefficient. Low-resistance, valveless, lightweight circuit. The expiratory limb exceeds tidal volume to prevent entrainment of room air during spontaneous ventilation. The open-ended 500ml reservoir bag or Jackson–Rees modification allows:
  - Assessment of tidal volume
  - Ability to partially occlude bag for CPAP or PEEP
  - Potential for assisted or controlled ventilation
  - Qualitative appreciation of lung compliance
  - Reduction in dead space during spontaneous ventilation (FGF washes out expired gas during expiratory pause).
- Scavenging is limited. However, newer versions of the T-piece incorporate a closed bag with an expiratory valve and scavenging attachment. Requirements for fresh gas flow (FGF) are higher in spontaneous than controlled ventilation. Recommendations are 2–3 times alveolar minute volume for spontaneous breathing or 1000ml + 200ml/kg in controlled ventilation. FGF is dependent on the respiratory pattern. A rapid respiratory rate requires a higher FGF. Conversely, an end expiratory pause during controlled ventilation will help reduce FGF.
- Most children require a minimum FGF of 3 litres, which can then be adjusted to achieve normocapnia and an inspired CO<sub>2</sub> concentration of less than 0.6kPa (4.5mmHg). Partial rebreathing allows conservation of heat and humidification.
- End tidal CO<sub>2</sub> concentration may be underestimated in children below 10kg from dilution of expired gases. Sampling should be distal in the circuit.
- A Bain system (co-axial Mapleson D) can be used above 20kg.

### Humphrey ADE system

- This hybrid system incorporates the Mapleson A, D, and E circuits in one breathing system.
- Studies indicate that the E mode behaves similarly to the T-piece and that the A mode is efficient in children over 10kg.<sup>1</sup> Both the D and E modes are suitable for controlled ventilation.
- The expiratory valves are of low resistance and do not add appreciably to the work of breathing.

### Circle absorption systems

- Low-flow anaesthesia is cost-efficient, reduces atmospheric pollution, and conserves warmth and moisture. The reaction of CO<sub>2</sub> with soda lime is exothermic, producing heat and water.
- Monitoring of inspiratory and expiratory levels of oxygen, nitrous oxide, CO<sub>2</sub>, and volatile agent is mandatory.
- Paediatric circle systems using 15mm lightweight hose are suitable for children over 5kg. The unidirectional valves may increase resistance to breathing and should not be allowed to become damp.
- During controlled ventilation, the leak around the tracheal tube may require gas flows to be increased.

### Bain system

The coaxial Mapleson D system is unsuitable for children under 20kg due to the resistance of the expiratory valve.

### Mechanical ventilation

- Standard adult ventilators are suitable down to 20kg.
- Below 20kg, a paediatric ventilator should be able to deliver small tidal volumes, rapid respiratory rates, variable inspiratory flow rates, and different I:E ratios.
- Calculation of small tidal volumes is meaningless because of compression of gases in the ventilator tubing and a variable leak around the tracheal tube. More sophisticated ventilators may, however, be capable of measuring expired tidal volume, which is of more practical value.
- Some ventilators are designed to work with specific breathing systems. The Newton valve converts the Nuffield Penlon 200 ventilator from time-cycled flow generator to time-cycled pressure generator and can be attached directly to the expiratory limb of the Ayre's T-piece. It is suitable for neonates and children up to 20kg. Many new anaesthetic workstations incorporate integral ventilators attached to circle systems suitable for paediatric practice.
- Pressure-controlled ventilation is commonly used and reduces the risk of barotrauma/pneumothorax. This mode will compensate for a leak around the tracheal tube but not for changes in lung compliance, partial or complete tube obstruction, or bronchospasm.
- Volume control can make an allowance for changes in lung compliance but at a potential cost of high peak airway pressures.

- Ultimately, setting ventilator parameters is based on clinical observation. Inspiratory flow, pressure, or volume is gradually increased until adequate chest movement is observed. Measurement of capnography and pulse oximetry confirm normocapnia and adequate oxygenation. The peak airway pressure is kept to a minimum. A ventilator alarm is mandatory.
- Most children can be ventilated adequately with inspiratory pressures of 16–20cmH<sub>2</sub>O and a respiratory rate between 16 and 24 breaths per minute. Normally inspiratory pressure should not exceed 30cmH<sub>2</sub>O. The rate can be adjusted accordingly to achieve normocapnia. A minimum PEEP of 4cmH<sub>2</sub>O is advisable for infants and neonates to maintain FRC.
- The ability to hand ventilate using the Ayre's T-piece is essential. It should always be available in the event of ventilator failure or unexpected desaturation. Mechanical ventilation may be unsuitable for the small premature neonate. With gastroschisis and exomphalos, hand ventilation can assess changes in lung compliance and determine how much of the abdominal contents should be reduced back into the abdominal cavity. Hand ventilation during repair of a tracheo-oesophageal fistula can allow the surgeon maximum exposure and time to effect the repair.

1 Orlikowski, CEP, Ewart MC, Bingham RM (1991). The Humphrey ADE system: evaluation in paediatric use. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **66**, 253–257.

## Conduct of anaesthesia

### Preoperative assessment

The preoperative visit is essential in establishing a rapport with both parents and children and in helping to dissipate anxiety. Communication should be simple, informative, and truthful.

- Avoid wearing a white coat. Involve the parents, try to question the child directly when appropriate, and stay at eye level if possible.
- A preadmission visit reduces parental anxiety and is beneficial to children over 6yr. Play therapists can help provide an informal setting and informatively prepare the child by describing the course of events from the ward to induction of anaesthesia. A collection of photographs or a video may be helpful.

### Preoperative investigations

Routine preoperative haemoglobin is indicated for:

- Neonates and ex-premature infants under 1yr.
- Children at risk of sickle-cell disease (see pp206–8).
- Children for whom intraoperative transfusion may be necessary.
- Children with systemic disease.
- A preoperative Hb of less than 10g/dl is abnormal and needs to be investigated. It does not necessarily entail cancellation if the child is haemodynamically stable and otherwise well.

Routine biochemistry is required for:

- Children with metabolic, endocrine, or renal disease.
- Children receiving IV fluids.

### The child with a URTI

- The preschool child develops 6–8 upper respiratory tract infections (URTI) per year. Almost 25% of children have a chronic runny nose due to seasonal rhinitis or adenoidal infection.
- Anaesthesia in the presence of an intercurrent URTI is associated with a higher risk of complications in younger children. There is an increased incidence of excess secretions, airway obstruction, laryngospasm, and bronchoconstriction. This risk is increased five-fold using an LMA and by a factor of ten if the child is intubated.
- Children with moderate to severe chest infections should be postponed. This will include those with productive cough, purulent chest or nasal secretions, pyrexia, and signs of viraemia or constitutional illness, including diarrhoea and vomiting.
- The child with a mild URTI is a difficult problem. The history in these cases is crucial. It is important to decide whether the child is at the beginning or end of the URTI. Other members of the family or children at school may have already experienced the same infection, and this can provide useful information.
- A child deemed to be post viral, afebrile, with no chest signs, and constitutionally well is probably fit for surgery even if they have a runny nose.



- Significant URTI requires postponement for 2wk, but this should be 4wk if lower respiratory tract involvement is suspected. Bronchiolitis warrants a delay of at least 6wk.

### **The child with a murmur**

- The majority of pathological murmurs are diagnosed perinatally and these children will already be under the care of a paediatric cardiologist.
- Previously unreported murmurs are commonly heard at 2–4yr. The majority are functional.
- A pansystolic murmur with normal heart sounds and palpable peripheral pulses in a child with normal oxygen saturation and no limitation in exercise tolerance can be assumed to be innocent. If there are any doubts, surgery should be deferred until a formal assessment has been made.
- UK-revised NICE guidelines no longer recommend routine antibiotic prophylaxis for surgery in patients at risk of infectious endocarditis.<sup>1</sup> However, if a child requires prophylactic antibiotics for a gastrointestinal or genitourinary procedure, these should also include sensitivities to organisms that cause infectious endocarditis.

### **The uncooperative child**

- It is not uncommon for children to refuse anaesthesia and surgery. This may be due to fear of pain, e.g. cannulation, or general anxiety about the operation itself.<sup>2</sup>
- If this problem can be anticipated, a multidisciplinary approach should be adopted and a plan instituted for the anaesthetic room.
- Some general tips:
  - Agree a plan with the parents beforehand.
  - Medical equipment can be frightening. Keep to a minimum the amount on display.
  - Minimise the number of people in the anaesthetic room. Maintain a calm, quiet atmosphere.
  - Only one person at a time should speak to the child, at eye level if possible.
  - Adapt technique to the child's personality and developmental level.
  - Involve parents as much as possible.
  - Premedication can be useful and older children may choose this option. Oral midazolam is a useful first option, ketamine an increasingly used alternative (see p818).
- A decision on whether to proceed should centre on the best interests of the child.
- There should be a Clinical Holding Policy in place as a guideline to facilitate clinical procedures.
- A Gillick competent child can consent to treatment against parental wishes but cannot refuse it (see below).

### **Child protection**

- Child protection training should be available to all hospital staff who work with children.<sup>3</sup>

- Anaesthetists may become suspicious of child abuse during resuscitation, on PICU, in the anaesthetic room, during the course of a surgical procedure, or rarely by direct disclosure.
- In these situations it is essential to act in the best interests of the child.
- If there is concern about suspected abuse, the first point of contact should be the named clinical lead for safeguarding children or the consultant paediatrician on call.

## Consent

- Allow time at the end of preoperative assessment for parents to ask questions. Discuss the options of IV or inhalational induction and obtain consent for a suppository and regional/peripheral nerve block, if indicated, including attendant risks. Discuss the risks associated with general anaesthesia.
- A young person is deemed competent to consent from 16yr. Children under 16yr may have the capacity to decide depending on their ability to understand what is involved (Gillick competence).<sup>4</sup>
- Signed written consent is the preferred option.

## Preoperative fasting (see also pp10–11)

- Fasting instructions are designed to minimise the risk of regurgitation of gastric contents and consequent pulmonary aspiration.
- Fasting reduces gastric volume but does not guarantee an empty stomach. Prolonged fasting does not further reduce the risk of aspiration and in infants can lead to dehydration and hypoglycaemia.
- Infants may be at greater risk of regurgitation. There is reduced lower oesophageal sphincter tone and an increased tendency to distend the stomach during mask ventilation. However, the incidence of pneumonitis following aspiration in children is much less common than in adults.
- Clear fluids can be given safely up to 2hr preoperatively and the intake of fluids (either water or a fruit squash drink) should be encouraged. Children are less irritable at induction and there may be a reduction in postoperative nausea and vomiting.
- The data for milk and solid food are less clear. Breast milk is cleared from the stomach more rapidly than formula milk in infants.
- Every unit should have fasting guidelines. Close liaison with the ward staff ensures that children receive adequate clear fluid preoperatively and that milk feeds for neonates and infants are appropriately timed.

Ingested material	Minimum fast
Clear liquids	2hr
Breast milk	4hr
Light meal, infant formula, and other milk	6hr

### Topical anaesthetics

- Topical local anaesthetic preparations reduce the pain of venepuncture and facilitate IV induction.
- **EMLA®** cream is a eutectic mixture of 5% lidocaine and 5% prilocaine in a 1:1 ratio. It should be applied for at least 45min and can produce vasoconstriction. The duration of action is 30–60min. EMLA® should be avoided in children <1yr because of the risk of methaemoglobinaemia.
- **Ametop®** is a 4% gel formulation of tetracaine. There is a shorter onset time (30min) and prolonged duration of action (4hr) after the cream has been removed, compared with EMLA®. It is licensed from 4wk of age and has vasodilating properties. There may be a higher incidence of allergic reactions. The gel should not be applied for longer than 90min and removed earlier if a rash or itchiness develops.
- It is important to identify the veins to be anaesthetised and not blindly apply the cream to the dorsum of each hand. Keep the area bandaged to prevent removal or licking of cream!
- **Ethyl chloride** is a cryoanalgesic. It is useful when topical creams are either contraindicated or forgotten.

### Premedication

- Routine sedative premedication is unnecessary. ('Parents are often the best premedication.')
- Some children will require preoperative sedation. They include the excessively upset child, children with previous unpleasant experiences of anaesthesia and surgery, and certain children with developmental delay. Older children or adolescents may request premedication.
- Infants have not yet developed a fear of strangers and appear relatively undisturbed when separated from their mothers. The preschool child is most at risk. They are vulnerable to separation anxiety in a strange environment but without the ability to reason.
- Even when anaesthesia and surgery are uneventful, there may be a disturbingly high incidence of postoperative psychological problems. Sleep disturbance, nightmares, bed-wetting, eating disorders, and behavioural changes have all been reported. Some authors suggest that sedative premedication especially in the preschool age group may reduce parental anxiety, improve patient compliance, and reduce the incidence of some of these postoperative behavioural changes.
- **Oral midazolam** (0.5mg/kg) is an ideal premedicant.<sup>5</sup> It acts within 15–30min to reduce anxiety, leading to a more cooperative child but with minimal delay in recovery. The IV formulation is used but is extremely bitter and should be diluted in fruit juice or paracetamol syrup. Midazolam (0.2mg/kg) can also be given intranasally where it has a rapid onset of action within 5–15min but is poorly tolerated because of the burning sensation in the nasal mucosa.
- **Ketamine** can be given orally (2 mg/kg) as a sole drug or in combination with midazolam. Its action starts within 15min, but it may be associated with excess salivation and emergence delirium. Ketamine 2mg/kg IM may assist in anaesthesia of the uncooperative child who refuses to accept oral premedication.

- **Clonidine** given orally (4µg/kg) produces good conditions for induction and may reduce postoperative analgesic requirements but is associated with hypotension and a delayed recovery.
- Alternative premedicants include **temazepam** (0.5–1 mg/kg), **trimeprazine** (2mg/kg), and **promethazine** (1mg/kg). They tend to be less predictable and longer lasting.
- Modern anaesthetic agents do not require the routine use of anticholinergic agents. Antisialagogues are reserved for patients with excessive secretions, e.g. Down's syndrome and cerebral palsy, the suspected difficult airway, and co-administration with ketamine. Some anaesthetists still routinely give drying agents for neonates and the smaller child.
- Absorption of orally administered **atropine** (40µg/kg) is variable. To be certain of efficacy, administer 20µg/kg IM 30min preoperatively or 10µg/kg IV at induction. **Glycopyrronium** (5µg/kg IM or IV) is a suitable alternative. Atropine should also precede the administration of suxamethonium to protect against possible bradycardia which in children can occur following the first dose.
- Children undergoing cardiac surgery are traditionally heavily premedicated. Choices include morphine, which may prevent right ventricular infundibular spasm in uncorrected Fallot's tetralogy, or a combination of drugs, e.g. PethCo<sup>®</sup>, which comprises a mixture of pethidine, promethazine, and chlorpromazine.

### Parents in the anaesthetic room

- In the UK a parent is routinely allowed into the anaesthetic room while their child is anaesthetised. It is now accepted that enforced separation disempowers the parent and is an emotionally traumatic experience for both parent and child.
- Parents are naturally anxious over loss of control, a strange environment, and the possibility of adverse events. Unfortunately this parental anxiety may communicate itself to the child.
- Parental presence should not be compulsory. It is not always beneficial and may even be counterproductive with a very anxious parent. Evidence of benefit has only been demonstrated for children older than 4yr with a calm parent attending the induction.
- Preschool children are especially at risk of behavioural disturbance, probably because of difficulties in reasoning. In contrast some adolescents may not wish their parents to accompany them.
- Anaesthetic induction appears to be the most distressing event experienced by parents. Separation from the child after induction, watching the child become unconscious, and the degree of stress experienced by the child before induction are all important factors.
- The parent should always be accompanied by a nurse who can comfort them and escort them out of the anaesthetic room once the child is asleep. It is extremely unusual to allow more than one parent into the anaesthetic room. There may rarely be extenuating circumstances, but these should be discussed beforehand with the anaesthetist.

### Induction of anaesthesia

- Induction should occur in a child-friendly environment.
- A dedicated paediatric theatre is not always an option. An alternative is a customised paediatric anaesthetic trolley incorporating a comprehensive range of airway and vascular equipment.
- Prepare drugs and equipment before the child arrives. Recheck the weight:

$$\text{Weight (kg)} = (\text{age} + 4) \times 2$$

Precalculate the dose of atropine and suxamethonium in prepared syringes (see p860).

- Pulse oximetry is the minimum monitoring acceptable in the anaesthetic room, although it will not read accurately on the agitated child. Many children will tolerate an ECG and BP cuff prior to induction.

### Inhalational induction

- It is important to learn more than one method. Not all children are susceptible to the same technique.
- **Sevoflurane** is the volatile agent of choice. It is rapidly acting, giving a smooth induction with less cardiovascular depression than halothane. It is not odourless but is relatively non-irritant. For the suspected difficult airway use sevoflurane in 100% oxygen, otherwise 50% nitrous oxide/oxygen is satisfactory and anecdotally nitrous oxide may obtund the patient's sense of smell, facilitating induction. Emergence delirium is more common with sevoflurane than halothane. There is a strong association with rapid awakening, particularly in the preschool age group, increased preoperative anxiety, and inadequate analgesia.
- **Halothane** is an alternative but is becoming less available. Induction should proceed through incremental increases in concentration. Start with 100% oxygen and add in nitrous oxide once the airway is secure. Involve the parent as much as possible. This may involve holding the child or even participating in the induction.
- Position the child either supine on the trolley or across the lap of the parent, so that the parent or anaesthetic assistant can gently restrain the arms if necessary. Warn the parent that the child's head will become floppy and need support.
- For smaller children, a cupped hand method is useful. Occlude the end of the bag to direct all the fresh gas flow towards the patient's mouth and nose.
- A facemask is often tolerated by older children. This can be held by the parent, child, or anaesthetist and the child can be encouraged to blow up the bag 'like a balloon'. A flavoured facemask may be useful initially, but the volatile agent rapidly becomes the dominant smell.
- The parent should be warned of abnormal movements when the child is nearly anaesthetised.
- Once anaesthesia is achieved and the eyelash reflex is absent, anaesthesia can be maintained with another volatile agent if desired.

## IV induction

- The smaller child sits across the parent's lap and the arm is placed under the parent's axilla, thereby obstructing the child's view. The older child will usually lie on the trolley with the parent on one side holding the child's hand, while the other is cannulated.
- The induction agent of choice is **propofol** 3–5mg/kg with 1% lidocaine (1ml/10ml propofol) added to reduce pain on injection. It is licensed for children over 1 month but not for infusion below 3yr. The 'paedfusor' TCI system is approved for >1 yr or >5kg.<sup>6</sup> The dose is age dependent and greater than the adult dose due to the higher volume of distribution and clearance in children.
- The dilution of propofol with an equal volume of saline significantly reduces pain on injection.
- **Thiopental** 4–6mg/kg is a suitable alternative and is licensed for neonates (2mg/kg).
- **Ketamine** 2mg/kg is reserved for haemodynamically compromised patients or those with severe cardiovascular disease, usually in conjunction with fentanyl 1–2µg/kg. Emergence phenomena are less common in children, especially in combination with midazolam, but the incidence of PONV and salivation is higher.

## Comparison of IV and inhalational induction

- IV induction is simple and safer but is associated with more hypoxia—possibly because children are rarely preoxygenated.
- Inhalational induction produces more coughing and laryngospasm.
- Psychological studies suggest that inhalational induction may be more traumatic to the child.<sup>7</sup>
- In practice it seems prudent to opt for IV induction if possible, unless the child actively chooses an inhalational method.

## Tips for cannulation

- Securing IV access can be difficult even for paediatric anaesthetists! It is important to realise this, relax, and send for help if necessary. Good lighting, competent anaesthetic assistance, and a selection of cannulae with prepared saline-flush syringes are all essential.
- Neonates often have surprisingly good superficial veins on the hand and wrist. Conversely, healthy children between 3 months and 2yr can be notoriously difficult because of the fat pads over hands and feet.
- Compression of a limb by the assistant should be gentle to act as a venous rather than arterial tourniquet. The skin is often mobile and should be gently stretched. In neonates it may be easier for the anaesthetist to flex and squeeze the wrist with the non-cannulating hand.
- Examine the wrists and dorsum of feet for superficial veins. Scalp veins are possible in neonates. Long saphenous and cephalic veins may be palpated.
- In some children, most commonly in the feet, the skin is surprisingly tough and a small nick in the skin with a 21G needle may be necessary. Loosening the cap of the cannula or priming with saline will permit flashback of blood in small veins.

- Transfixion is possible in smaller children. It is potentially useful for all veins but especially in 'blind' long saphenous and femoral vein cannulation. Slowly pull back cannula until in the vein and then gently advance.
- If all else fails, **intraosseous access** can be an invaluable alternative. Observing aseptic precautions, prepare an area of skin over the antero-medial aspect of the tibia 1cm below and medial to the tibial tuberosity. The intraosseous needle is inserted perpendicularly to the skin and advanced in a twisting pushing movement against the bone until there is a sudden loss of resistance. The position is confirmed if the needle remains upright without support, marrow can be aspirated, and fluid can be administered without SC swelling around the entry site. Children can be successfully anaesthetised via this route although thiopental should be avoided because of its irritant properties. The intraosseous route is particularly useful in fluid resuscitation of the shocked child before definitive IV access can be gained. Routine blood samples including crossmatch can be taken from this site before induction.
- Surgical cut-down is rarely needed, often technically difficult, and should be reserved as a last resort.

### Airway management

- Airway complications including coughing, laryngospasm, and upper airways obstruction are more common in children.<sup>8</sup>
- Key to airway management is the triple manoeuvre of *head tilt, chin lift, and jaw thrust*.
- Hyperextension of the neck in the neonate often occludes the airway and a neutral position is usually more successful. For older children, the adult 'sniffing the morning air' position should be adopted.
- Smaller children do not require a pillow; this may lead to unwanted head flexion.
- The paediatric facemask should be accurately sized and held gently but firmly on the face with the thumb and forefinger. The other fingers should curl around and grip the mandible. It is important to avoid pressing on the floor of the mouth, which will push the tongue forward and obstruct the airway.
- Early use of an oropharyngeal airway may be useful in older children.
- A nasopharyngeal airway may be attempted. This should be well lubricated. It is indicated in cases of micrognathia and can be inserted at lighter levels of anaesthesia.
- The most important technique in management of the airway is judicious use of CPAP. Ensure a good seal with the facemask, and then partially occlude the bag of the Ayre's T-piece.

### Laryngospasm (see also p930)

- Laryngospasm is more common in children than adults. Additional risk factors include inhalational induction, asthma, URTI, and chronic lung disease. Children become cyanosed more rapidly than adults because of increased metabolic rate/oxygen consumption and reduced FRC.

- Contrary to the old adage, children do not 'always take a final breath'. Bradycardia is a premorbid event indicating inadequate cardiac output and a significant risk of cerebral hypoxia.

- Partial laryngospasm management
  - 100% oxygen
  - CPAP
  - Gentle assisted ventilation
  - Propofol 1–2mg/kg bolus
- Complete laryngospasm management
  - 100% oxygen
  - CPAP
  - Assisted ventilation may exacerbate the condition by inflating the stomach and forcing the arytenoids and false cords against the true vocal cords
  - Early administration of suxamethonium (1–2mg/kg) and atropine (10µg/kg) may be necessary

### **Intubation (for tube sizes see p812)**

- Neonatal intubation is not difficult, only different. The neonate has:
  - Proportionately larger head, shorter neck, larger tongue, smaller mandible.
  - Larynx is more anterior/superior (C3–C4 compared with C5–C6).
  - Epiglottis is large, floppy, V-shaped, with obliquely angled vocal cords.
- Awake intubation for neonates is rarely practised. In the absence of recognised medical conditions with associated airway complications, paediatric intubation is usually straightforward. Below 6 months of age, use a straight-bladed laryngoscope. The head should be in a neutral position and the shoulders supported if necessary. Advance the laryngoscope blade past the larynx, then withdraw slowly until the larynx becomes visible, i.e. the blade is posterior to the epiglottis. Gentle cricoid pressure is often helpful. If nasal intubation is required use a laryngoscope blade with minimal guttering to allow more room for instrumentation in the oropharynx. Over 6 months of age a curved blade is usually easier. Intubation can be performed in the conventional adult position with the blade resting in the vallecula.
- Most intubated neonates will also require a nasogastric tube (8–10FG).
- Always have a range of tracheal tubes available including a half size above and below the original estimation.
- Complications are common in children. Oesophageal and endobronchial intubation, extubation, kinking of the tube, and disconnection should all be anticipated. Secretions are far more likely to cause obstruction because of the smaller tube sizes involved, and periodic suction may be necessary.



- Intubation increases the work of breathing. The reduction in cross-sectional area of the neonatal trachea with a size 3.5 tube in situ increases airway resistance by a factor of 16. Most intubated infants should undergo controlled ventilation as part of the anaesthetic technique.

### Tube fixation

- Tube fixation is crucial. The neonatal trachea is only 4cm in length. Inadvertent extubation and endobronchial intubation is common.
- Secure with a 'three-point fixation' to prevent movement of the tube in all three planes.
- Two pieces of trouser-shaped Elastoplast® may be used with one 'leg' across the upper lip while the other 'leg' is wrapped around the tube. An oropharyngeal airway helps splint the tube.
- There are numerous other methods of fixation, all equally valid. The tube should be secured to the maxilla rather than the more mobile mandible.
- The Portex Polar preformed tracheal tube is a north-facing uncuffed tube which is easy to use, facilitates tube fixation, and reduces the incidence of endobronchial intubation.

### Difficult intubation

- The key to difficult intubation is to identify the at-risk patient and plan accordingly with appropriate help, assistance, and equipment. Some conditions are well known to be associated with airway problems (e.g. Pierre–Robin, Treacher–Collins, and Goldenhar syndromes). Other patients can be identified by assessment of the airway preoperatively, specifically the presence of micrognathia and retrognathia.
- Premedicate with atropine 20µg/kg IM or glycopyrronium 5µg/kg IM 30min preoperatively to dry secretions. Give pseudoephedrine or oxymetazoline nose drops. Sedative premedication should be avoided.
- Airway management may be difficult. The traditional method is deep inhalational anaesthesia with CPAP and an IV in situ. Laryngoscopy and intubation are attempted with the patient breathing spontaneously. Halothane is more suitable than sevoflurane at this stage, allowing more time for intubation. The McCoy version of both Seward and Macintosh blades is available in paediatric sizes.
- A blind nasal approach to intubation is possible, but experience in the technique is declining and there is a risk of trauma.
- LMA will often secure the airway adequately without the need for intubation. Other supraglottic airway devices, Proseal LMA, cuffed oropharyngeal airway (COPRA), and the i-Gel (unavailable below size 3) may be potentially useful.
- If intubation is still necessary, it may be possible to pass a bougie through the LMA into the trachea and then railroad a tracheal tube. A size 3 ILMA is available and may be suitable for a larger child. A fiberoptic bronchoscope can also be used via the LMA.
- Fiberoptic intubation is rarely necessary. Children need to be anaesthetised, but a propofol infusion is an alternative method to volatile anaesthesia. Smaller size neonatal and paediatric

bronchoscopes do not all have a suction channel and should be checked to confirm that the selected tracheal tube will fit over them.

- Conventional tubes may present problems in railroading and armoured tubes should be used. Alternatively a guide wire can be inserted into the trachea using the suction channel. An exchange catheter is passed over the wire and then the tube railroaded over the exchange catheter.
- Newer airway devices such as the Glidescope video laryngoscope and Airtraq optical laryngoscope are currently being validated. The Bullard laryngoscope and paediatric Bonfils fiberscope are also potential alternatives.<sup>9</sup>
- A tracheostomy is rarely required. It is exceedingly difficult as an emergency procedure. Paediatric cricothyroidotomy cannulae are available at 18G and 16G sizes and should be present in the anaesthetic room.

### **Rapid sequence induction (see also p994)**

- Ranitidine and metoclopramide are not routinely prescribed.
- Preoxygenation does not usually present problems with infants and older children but may be more difficult in preschool children.
- Inhalational induction may be necessary after which cricoid pressure can be applied whilst breathing spontaneously.
- Suxamethonium should be preceded by atropine to prevent bradycardia. There is little experience as yet with rocuronium.
- Cricoid pressure often facilitates intubation. If intubation cannot be achieved initially, mask ventilation should gently recommence while cricoid pressure is maintained.
- There should be a low threshold for using a nasogastric tube in neonates and small infants. If already in situ in the neonate it should remain in place rather than being removed. There is no consensus for older children.
- Since the tracheal tube is uncuffed, a throat pack may help prevent intraoperative aspiration but has no application in the higher-risk periods of induction and reversal.
- The child should be extubated awake in the left lateral position.

### **Maintenance**

- Position the infant and smaller child with both arms raised at the level of the head. Exposure of the hand allows assessment of the pulse, peripheral temperature, colour, and capillary refill. A blocked IV may be more easily cleared and a new cannula may be easier to site.
- The pulse oximeter probe should be sited on the same arm as the IV infusion and contralateral arm to the BP cuff. Avoid oximeter probes on the feet as the trace is usually lost once abdominal surgery commences.
- Check that the tracheal tube is still in situ, securely fixed, and the lungs are ventilating adequately and equally. The connections should all be secure and the tube and breathing circuit supported if necessary.
- Confirm that cannulae are secure, working, and accessible; extension tubing may be necessary. Three-way taps allow administration of drugs and fluid volume when necessary. Neonatal surgery requires

a minimum of two cannulae (maintenance and volume). Blood sugar should be checked regularly.

- Even small air bubbles in IV fluids can be potentially harmful to infants, especially in the presence of an ASD or VSD. A bubble trap should be routinely included in the tubing for these patients.
- Theatre temperature should be 21°C and preheated. The child's head should be covered and body exposure reduced to a minimum. It is easier to prevent hypothermia than to treat it. Both IV and cleaning fluid should be warmed.
- Routine monitoring should include ECG, BP (with appropriate size cuff), pulse oximeter, capnography, and full gas monitoring with a ventilator alarm when indicated. Temperature measurement is important and the neonate requires routine use of a precordial or oesophageal stethoscope. The width of the BP cuff should be 20% greater than the diameter of the arm to avoid artefactually raised BP.
- Electronic monitoring is often unreliable with the sick or shocked neonate. It should support but not replace clinical observation. The oesophageal or precordial stethoscope permits a continuous qualitative assessment of heart sounds and ventilation. More importantly, it 'ties' the anaesthetist to the patient.
- Do not let the surgeon start operating until you are ready.
- Anaesthetic complications in paediatric practice are as common during maintenance as at induction or in the postoperative period.

### Reversal

- Following surgery, the child should be warm, well saturated, normocarbic, and pain free. A cold acidotic neonate will not breathe postoperatively.
- LMA can be removed either deep or awake. If an armoured LMA is in situ a bite block will be needed. There is often a stage shortly before waking when the mouth opens slightly to resemble a small yawn; this is an ideal opportunity to deftly remove the LMA.
- Most children should be extubated awake. If warm and with adequate analgesia, this is tolerated well. Exceptions include tonsillectomy and other procedures when coughing is to be avoided. In these cases, deep extubation is preferable.
- Neonates should be extubated awake preceded by an assisted ventilation to preoxygenate the lungs.

## Postoperative nausea and vomiting

- Postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV) is uncommon under the age of 2yr. Predictors of risk include high-risk procedures (adenotonsillectomy, squint surgery), travel sickness, and previous PONV. Morphine increases the risk of PONV by 30%. There is some evidence of reduced PONV with TIVA in children. Nitrous oxide does not appear to be associated with an increased risk of PONV in children.<sup>10</sup>
- Combinations of antiemetics and the use of 5-HT<sub>3</sub> antagonists with dexamethasone 0.1mg/kg may be more efficacious than simple monotherapy.
- Children considered high risk should receive 0.15mg/kg ondansetron at induction.

- 1 NICE Guidelines (2008). *Prophylaxis Against Infectious Endocarditis* (CG64). [www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/cg64niceguidance.pdf](http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/cg64niceguidance.pdf).
- 2 Hearst D (2009). The runaway child: managing anticipatory fear, resistance and distress in children undergoing surgery. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*, **19**, 1014.
- 3 APA, RCPCH, RCoA (2007). *Child Protection and the Anaesthetist: Safeguarding Children in the Operating Theatre*. Joint Intercollegiate document by APA, RCPCH and RCoA. [www.apagbi.org.uk/guidelines\\_and\\_standards](http://www.apagbi.org.uk/guidelines_and_standards).
- 4 Gillick v West Norfolk and Wisbech AHA (1985). 3 ALL ER 402.
- 5 McCluskey A, Martin GH (1994). Oral administration of midazolam as a premedicant for paediatric day case anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*, **49**, 782–785.
- 6 Mani V, Morton N (2010). Overview of total intravenous anaesthesia in children. *Pediatric Anaesthesia*, **20**, 211–222.
- 7 Kotineimi LH, Ryhanen PT (1996). Behavioural changes and children's memories after intravenous, inhalation and rectal induction of anaesthesia. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*, **6**, 201–207.
- 8 Motoyama EK (1992). Anaesthesia and the upper airway. *International Anaesthesiology Clinics*, **30**, 17–19.
- 9 Walker RWM, Ellwood J (2009). The management of difficult intubation in children. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*, **19**(Suppl 1), 77–87.
- 10 Carr AS et al. (2008). *Association of Paediatric Anaesthetists (APA) Guidelines on the Prevention of Post-operative Vomiting in Children*. [www.apagbi.org.uk/docs/apa\\_guidelines\\_on\\_the\\_prevention\\_of\\_postoperative\\_vomiting\\_in\\_children.pdf](http://www.apagbi.org.uk/docs/apa_guidelines_on_the_prevention_of_postoperative_vomiting_in_children.pdf).

## Postoperative pain relief

Similar principles to adult practice (pp1090–107) including the application of multimodal analgesia and specialised pain charts. Assessment can be difficult with infants and neonates.

- **Paracetamol and NSAIDs** are widely prescribed for minor cases/day surgery and for their morphine-sparing effects. Loading dose of rectal paracetamol is 30–40mg/kg or 20mg/kg for neonates. Drugs are best given regularly. Single doses of IV perioperative analgesics should be documented on the front of the drug chart to avoid multiple doses being given postoperatively.
- **Caudal analgesia** and peripheral nerve blocks are useful for day cases. Epidural blockade is of proven benefit in abdominal surgery. Below 6 months it is technically easier and possibly safer to insert the catheter via the caudal route (see p830).
- **Morphine infusions** can be administered cautiously to neonates and as nurse-controlled analgesia (NCA) for smaller children. Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) can be used effectively in children as young as 6yr, although most regimes include a background infusion.
- Liaison with the ward staff is crucial and a standardised pain management approach, preferably with an acute pain service, is the ideal (see below).

### Mild to moderate postoperative pain

Codeine phosphate	1mg/kg	IM, PO, PR	6-hourly
Diclofenac	1mg/kg (over 1yr/10kg)	IV, PO, PR	8-hourly
Ibuprofen	10mg/kg (over 6 month/7kg)	PO	8-hourly
Paracetamol	15 mg/kg	IV	6-hourly
	20mg/kg	PO, PR	6-hourly
	Rectal loading dose	PR	
	Neonate: 20mg/kg Child: 30–40mg/kg		
Morphine sulphate solution	300–500µg/kg	PO	4-hourly

### Severe postoperative pain

Morphine	50–100µg/kg IV incremental boluses
Morphine infusion	1mg/kg morphine in 50ml saline, i.e. 20µg/kg/ml Rate: 1–2ml/hr (20–40µg/kg/hr)
Morphine NCA	1mg/kg morphine in 50ml saline, i.e. 20µg/kg/ml Rate: 1ml/hr. Bolus: 1ml. Lockout: 20min
Morphine PCA	1mg/kg morphine in 50ml saline, i.e. 20µg/kg/ml Rate: 0.2ml/hr. Bolus: 1ml. Lockout: 5min

### Regional anaesthesia

Successful regional blockade provides conditions for light and haemodynamically stable general anaesthesia. The stress response is attenuated and early pain-free emergence is possible leading to a smooth postoperative recovery. Unlike adults, few children tolerate these techniques awake and the majority of regional blocks are performed on anaesthetised patients. Motor blockade is unnecessary and low concentrations of local anaesthetic can be used. The most widely used solutions are 0.25% bupivacaine/levobupivacaine and 0.2% ropivacaine.

## Caudal block

Caudal extradural analgesia (CEA) has a wide application in children. The technique is easier than with adults, with a higher success rate of ~95%. CEA can achieve a higher dermatomal block than adults. Epidural fat is less dense and less tightly packed with the result that local anaesthetic can spread more easily. CEA is used for a range of surgical and orthopaedic procedures below the umbilicus.

### Technique

- Position the patient in the left lateral position with the legs flexed at the hip. Aseptic technique is a prerequisite.
- Identify the **sacral hiatus** as the apex of an equilateral triangle with the base formed by a line joining the posterior superior iliac spines '(see figure 33.1)'.
- Alternatively with the hips flexed at 90° a line extended from the midline of the femur will intersect with the sacral hiatus. The natal cleft does not always correspond to bony midline structures.
- Define the boundaries of the sacral hiatus. This is again a triangle with the base formed by a line joining the sacral cornua and the apex representing the lower part of the fourth sacral vertebra. The sacral hiatus is covered by the sacrococcygeal membrane.
- Make a small nick in the skin with a needle to reduce the possibility of a dermoid. Direct a blunt, short-bevel (regional block) needle at 60° to the skin from the midpoint of the line joining the sacral cornua. Alternatively use a 22G or 20G cannula depending on the size of the child. A small 'give' indicates penetration of the sacrococcygeal membrane. Flatten the cannula or needle slightly, then advance. If using a cannula, withdraw the stylet to just behind the cannula before advancing the cannula into the caudal space. Do not advance the needle or cannula any more than is necessary. Advancement of a cannula rather than a needle may reduce the incidence of inadvertent dural or vascular puncture. Easy progression of the cannula is a good prognostic indicator of success.
- Test aspiration should be gentle; vessel walls can collapse, producing a false negative result. Aspiration should be repeated during injection of the local anaesthetic. The 'whoosh' test using air should be avoided because of the risk of air embolism, but the '**swoosh**' test with saline may be helpful. The commonest reason for a failed attempt is positioning the needle too caudally.
- 0.25% bupivacaine is commonly administered—if the planned volume of local anaesthetic is greater than 1ml/kg, use 0.19% bupivacaine (three parts 0.25% bupivacaine to one part saline). Duration of the block averages 4–8hr. Dose—see p833.

- Caudal blockade can be extended with:
  - Clonidine  $1\mu\text{g/kg}$ .
  - Diamorphine  $30\mu\text{g/kg}$ .
  - Ketamine  $0.5\text{mg/kg}$  (preservative-free).
  - Morphine  $50\mu\text{g/kg}$  (preservative-free).
  - Neostigmine  $2\mu\text{g/kg}$  (increased incidence of PONV).
  - Adrenaline has been implicated in cases of spinal ischaemia and should be avoided.
  - Clonidine produces postoperative sedation. Morphine and diamorphine increase the incidence of urinary retention and should be reserved for surgery in which catheterisation is required.

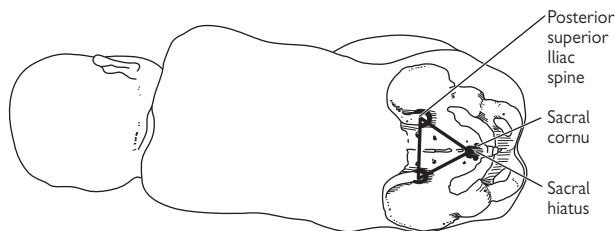
### Advantages/complications of caudal analgesia

- Simple, safe, successful, with a wide range of indications.
- Motor block, paraesthesia, hypotension, urinary retention, inadvertent dural puncture, and intravascular injection can all occur. All these complications are rare using a single-shot caudal technique.

### Continuous caudal epidural analgesia

Caudal injection is restricted in its duration of action. A catheter can be introduced into the epidural space via the caudal route. It is a safe and effective method of administering epidural analgesia in infants. The single curve of the back allows the catheter to thread predictably into the epidural space; the tip of the catheter should be close to the level of the dermatomes that need to be blocked.

- Over 2yr of age, the development of a lumbosacral curvature tends to lead to a higher failure rate. However, some authors claim comparable success rates.
- Because of the proximity of the perineum, a caudal catheter should not be left in situ for longer than 36hr.



**Fig. 33.1** Anatomy for caudal block.



## Epidural/subarachnoid block

### Epidural block (see also p540 and p740)

Epidural blockade is technically more difficult in children and requires experience. The ligamentum flavum is less well developed and the intervertebral spaces are narrower. In infants, the epidural space is rarely located at a depth >15mm and often as superficially as 10mm from the skin. The technique is similar to that used in adults. Either a midline or paramedian approach is acceptable. The NAP3 study demonstrated that paediatric epidurals resulted in fewer complications than adults.<sup>1</sup> Severe neurological complications including fatalities have been reported in association with using air to find the epidural space in neonates. The caudal route may represent a safer alternative with this group.<sup>2</sup>

- Epidural needle: 18G for infants/children, 19G for neonates/infants (catheter 'end-hole' only).

### Subarachnoid block

Spinal anaesthesia is rarely performed in children. One of the few indications is for herniotomy in the high-risk neonate, e.g. the oxygen-dependent premature or ex-premature infant with chronic lung disease.

- Expert assistance is crucial. The infant needs to be firmly gripped in the lateral or sitting position. The technique needs to be precise. The needle should be directed at right angles to the skin in the midline below L3 with L5–S1 reported as the safest approach. Prior infiltration of local anaesthetic into the skin will help prevent patient movement.
- The block has a rapid onset but duration rarely greater than 40min. If sedation is required during the surgery, the incidence of postoperative apnoea is comparable with a general anaesthetic technique.
- Spinal needle: 5cm 21G.

1 Royal College of Anaesthetists (2009). *National Audit Project Project 3 (NAP 3). National Audit of Major Complications of Central Neuraxial Blockade in the United Kingdom.* [www.rcoa.ac.uk/index.asp?pageid=717](http://www.rcoa.ac.uk/index.asp?pageid=717).

2 Lonnqvist PA, Moton NS (2005). Postoperative analgesia in infants and children. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **95**, 59–68.

## Regional analgesia doses

Caudal extradural blockade	Sacral: 0.5ml/kg 0.25% bupivacaine Lumbar: 1ml/kg 0.25% bupivacaine Thoracolumbar: 1.25ml/kg 0.19% bupivacaine
Supplements to extend duration of caudal	Ketamine 0.5mg/kg (preservative-free) Clonidine 1µg/kg Diamorphine 30µg/kg Morphine 50µg/kg (preservative-free)
Lumbar epidural (intraoperative)	0.75ml/kg of 0.25% bupivacaine
Thoracic epidural (intraoperative)	0.5ml/kg of 0.25% bupivacaine
Epidural infusion	60ml 0.125% bupivacaine + 1mg morphine or diamorphine 50ml 0.1% bupivacaine + fentanyl 2µg/ml (sterile premixed bag) Rate: 0.1–0.4ml/kg/hr
Spinal block	0.1ml/kg 0.5% 'heavy' bupivacaine + 0.06ml for needle dead space
Wound infiltration	1ml/kg 0.25% bupivacaine

## Regional nerve blocks

- Ultrasound guidance (USG) is gaining popularity.<sup>1</sup> Associated with shorter procedure time, higher success rates, longer duration, and less volume of local anaesthetic. Increased safety only demonstrated for ilioinguinal block.
- If not skilled at a particular block, infiltration by the surgeon is often very effective. Advice about maximum doses is often useful!

### Ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerve block (see also p1153)

Useful alternative to caudal blockade in herniotomy, hydrocoele, and orchidopexy. It should be avoided for neonatal herniotomy as the local anaesthetic may obscure the operating field. The block can easily be performed under direct vision by the surgeon.

- At a point 1cm medial to the anterior superior iliac spine, direct a regional block needle or blunted 21G needle at right angles to the skin. There is resistance at the aponeurosis of external oblique. At this point 'bounce' the needle until a loss of resistance is encountered.
- Dosage: 0.75ml/kg 0.25% bupivacaine. Retain 1–2ml for an SC fan injection laterally, medially, and inferiorly.
- Advantages: it is an easy block to perform. It decreases the level of anaesthesia and reduces postoperative analgesic requirement.
- Disadvantages: it does not block visceral pain from traction of the spermatic cord or peritoneum and is unsuitable for a high undescended testis. There is a 10% incidence of femoral nerve block.

### Dorsal nerve block of penis (see also p1154)

This block is indicated for distal surgery to the penis, including circumcision, meatoplasty, and simple hypospadias repair.

- Raise two SC swellings of local anaesthetic either side of the midline, each 5mm from the pubic symphysis at the dorsal base of the penis. Use a 23G or 21G needle.
- Alternatively a simple ring block at the base of the penis can be performed using a 25G needle.
- Dosage: 2–6ml 0.25% bupivacaine. Avoid adrenaline.
- Advantages: these techniques are safe, simple, and predictable. They avoid the need for injection deep to Buck's fascia close to the corpora cavernosa and penile vessels.
- Disadvantages: does not always block the ventral surface of the penis. Theoretical complications including haematoma and ischaemia are unlikely using the superficial technique.

### TAP block (see also p1155)

- Indicated for lower abdominal surgery including herniotomy, appendectomy, and some laparoscopic surgery.
- Identify the triangle of Petit in the mid-axillary line at the midpoint between the costal margin and the iliac crest.
- Direct a blunt 21G needle or regional block needle perpendicular to the skin to elicit 'double pop'.
- For ultrasound-guided approach see REF.<sup>2</sup> (see also 1155)
- Dosage: 1 ml/kg 0.25% bupivacaine.

- Advantages: safe, simple, and effective.
- Disadvantages: potential for intraperitoneal injection, bowel perforation, and LA toxicity.

### **Axillary block (see also p1142)**

This block is indicated for hand and lower arm surgery—ultrasound is useful.

- Position the patient supine with the arm abducted to 90° and the elbow flexed.
- Direct a 23G or 25G needle with attached extension tubing just above and parallel to the axillary artery. The needle is advanced until it pulsates or the position can be confirmed with a nerve stimulator. A click or loss of resistance is not always elicited in children.
- Dosage: 0.5ml/kg 0.25% bupivacaine.
- Advantages: safe and effective.
- Disadvantages: upper arm and shoulder surgery cannot be performed. The axillary artery may be difficult to palpate.

- 1 Rubin K, Sullivan D, Senthilkumar S (2009). Are peripheral and neuraxial blocks with ultrasound guidance more effective and safe in children? *Paediatric Anaesthesia*, **19**, 92–96.
- 2 Suresh S, Chan W S (2009). Ultrasound guided transversus abdominis plane block in infants, children and adolescents: a simple procedural guidance for their performance. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*, **19**, 296–299.

## Diaphragmatic hernia

Procedure	Repair of defect in diaphragm either by suturing to abdominal wall or with a synthetic graft
Time	1–2hr
Pain	+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Usually minimal to moderate
Practical techniques	GA + IPPV, art line

### Preoperative

- Incidence of 1:3000–4000 deliveries, affecting left side in 85% of cases. Associated with other anomalies.
- Characteristically present in respiratory distress with tachypnoea, cyanosis, and a scaphoid abdomen. The chest radiograph is diagnostic. The diagnosis is usually made antenatally on ultrasound.
- Overall mortality of 50% from lung hypoplasia, abnormal pulmonary vasculature, and pulmonary hypertension.
- Never an emergency. Gas exchange should be optimised preferably with  $\text{FiO}_2 < 0.5$  before surgery. This is not always possible.
- Usually already intubated and ventilated. Ventilatory support can include high-frequency oscillation (HFO) and nitric oxide.
- NG tube essential preoperatively to prevent stomach and small bowel in the chest cavity compressing lung.

### Perioperative

- Cautious ventilation via a facemask and avoid nitrous oxide to prevent distension of air in bowel and stomach causing mediastinal displacement.
- Nasogastric tube, two IV cannulae, arterial line, preferably in the right radial artery for preductal sampling. Oesophageal stethoscope with temperature probe.
- Avoid excessive airway pressures (preferably  $< 25\text{cmH}_2\text{O}$ ) because of pulmonary hypoplasia and consequent risk of pneumothorax. Use rate in first instance to improve gas exchange.
- High-dose fentanyl ( $25\mu\text{g/kg}$ ) to reduce pulmonary vasoconstriction response to surgical stress.
- High-risk babies will need the operation on special care baby unit if conventional ventilation not possible.

### Postoperative

- Postoperative ventilation for at least 24hr, then attempt to wean.
- Infant may deteriorate within 12hr due to pulmonary hypertensive crises. Pulmonary vasculature is reduced and abnormal. Smooth muscle in the media fails to regress, therefore there is an exaggerated vasoconstrictive response to hypoxaemia and acidosis.
- Rarely, if minimal defect, extubate immediately.

### Special considerations

- Pulmonary hypertension is treated by assisted hyperventilation with 100% oxygen and fluid boluses if necessary. Epoprostenol or inhaled nitric oxide can be used for surgery. Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) is a last resort but has been used.
- To assist weaning a thoracic epidural may be of benefit, inserted either conventionally or via the caudal route.

## Gastroschisis/exomphalos

Procedure	Replacement of abdominal contents into the abdominal cavity
Time	2hr
Pain	++/+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Moderate
Practical techniques	GA + IPPV

### Preoperative

- Obvious neonatal diagnosis from birth, but usually diagnosed in utero. Overall incidence is 1:3000–4000.
- Gastroschisis is a defect in the anterior abdominal wall usually on the right, causing herniation of abdominal contents without a covering sac. Repair is an urgent procedure.
- In exomphalos, there is a failure of the gut to return to the abdominal cavity during fetal development, resulting in persistent herniation through the extra embryonal part of the umbilical cord, which covers it. This may include other abdominal organs.
- There is an increased incidence of associated anomalies including cardiac disease in exomphalos. A full cardiology assessment should be performed.
- Gastroschisis is associated with low birth weight and thickened bowel wall due to exposure to amniotic fluid.
- Exposed abdominal contents result in large evaporative heat and water losses and predispose to infection. It should initially be covered with cling film or equivalent.

### Perioperative

- May already be intubated and ventilated. Otherwise intubate conventionally.
- Nasogastric tube and oesophageal temperature/stethoscope.
- Two IV cannulae for maintenance and volume.
- Arterial monitoring is useful.
- Heat conservation is important. Warm the theatre and use a warming mattress, hot air mattress, or radiant heater. Keep the patient's head covered. Use warmed fluids.
- Fluid losses may be considerable.
- Intraoperative analgesia: fentanyl 5–10µg/kg or epidural if extubation within 48hr is contemplated.

### Postoperative

- Postoperative ventilation, especially if the abdomen is tense, should be in the head-up position.
- Assiduous attention to fluid balance. There may be large abdominal losses of crystalloid and protein.

### Special considerations

- Lines should be sited in the arms as abdominal distension may impair venous return from the lower body.
- Simpler to insert a percutaneous long line or central line at this stage for parenteral feeding. Postoperatively, progressive oedema makes cannulation more difficult.
- Manual ventilation is useful to assess the effect of replacement of abdominal contents on lung compliance to determine the correct degree of abdominal reduction.
- Complete reduction is not always possible. A silo is then created around the extra-abdominal contents to be gradually reduced on the ICU. Fluid loss and infection are major issues.



## Tracheo-oesophageal fistula

Procedure	Ligation of fistula + anastomotic repair of oesophageal atresia
Time	2hr
Pain	+++
Position	Left lateral for right thoracotomy
Blood loss	Moderate
Practical techniques	GA + IPPV $\pm$ manual ventilation

### Preoperative

- Incidence 1:3500. Commonest type (85%) is oesophageal atresia with a distal fistula. The majority of cases are now diagnosed in utero. It should always be excluded in cases of hydramnios.
- High incidence of prematurity (30%) and cardiac disease (25%).
- Presents clinically with choking and cyanotic episodes on feeding with an inability to pass a nasogastric tube.
- Constant risk of pulmonary aspiration. A double-lumen 'Replogle' tube in the oesophagus allows irrigation and suction.

### Perioperative

- Inhalational or IV induction. Gentle mask ventilation to minimise gastric distension via fistula.
- Careful ETT placement. Confirm symmetrical ventilation with the tube distal to the fistula.
- Two IV cannulae for maintenance and volume. Arterial line is useful.
- Intraoperative access will be needed to pass the transanastomotic tube nasally to facilitate oesophageal repair.
- Manual ventilation may be necessary to assess lung compliance after ligation of fistula, to assist in repair of oesophagus, and to periodically reinflate left lung. Surgical retraction may impede ventilation.
- Intraoperative analgesia: fentanyl (5–10  $\mu\text{g/kg}$ ) or epidural either by the thoracic or caudal route, if early weaning is anticipated.
- The operation is usually performed via a right thoracotomy using an extrapleural approach. Thoracoscopic repair is becoming popular.

### Postoperative

- The majority of cases are ventilated postoperatively, especially if the oesophageal repair is under tension. It is critical to secure the nasogastric or transanastomotic tube.

### Special considerations

- Attention to positioning of the ETT to avoid ventilating the stomach via the fistula. Preoperative bronchoscopy may be useful. The fistula is normally situated on the posterior aspect of the trachea just proximal to the carina. The tube may need to be advanced, withdrawn, or the bevel rotated.

## Patent ductus arteriosus

Procedure	Ligation or clipping of ductus arteriosus
Time	1hr
Pain	+
Position	Left thoracotomy
Blood loss	Usually minimal. Occasionally massive if the vessel is torn
Practical techniques	IPPV, fentanyl

### Preoperative

- Small premature babies: 25% of premature infants <1.5kg recovering from hyaline membrane disease have a PDA. Associated with other cardiac anomalies.
- Indications are for failure of medical treatment, ventilator dependence, and risk of developing bronchopulmonary dysplasia.

### Perioperative

- High-risk group. Operation may be undertaken on the special care baby unit.
- Patient is usually already ventilated with full monitoring.
- Adequate IV access for transfusion. Arterial monitoring.
- IPPV with oxygen, nitrous oxide, and fentanyl up to 10µg/kg with a low dose of volatile agent. Replace nitrous oxide with air if frail.
- Active heat conservation.
- Avoid saturations >96% because of retinopathy of prematurity.
- Local infiltration for analgesia, interpleural block by surgeon, or thoracic epidural if early weaning considered.

### Postoperative

Postoperative ventilation until stable, then attempt to wean.

### Special considerations

- Sudden ligation of the ductus may precipitate an acute rise in systemic BP and increase the risk of intraventricular haemorrhage. The duct should be clamped gently or alternatively the concentration of the volatile agent can be temporarily increased.
- Older children requiring PDA occlusion tend to be fit, although some present with cardiac failure. Increasingly these procedures are being performed non-invasively as day cases by interventional cardiologists.
- Operation can be performed radiologically using a coil device.

## Pyloric stenosis

Procedure	Splitting the pylorus muscle longitudinally down to the mucosa
Time	30min
Pain	+
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	GA + IPPV,? RSI

### Preoperative

- Incidence of 1:350 births, more common in first-born males. 80% are male, 10% are premature.
- Present with biochemical abnormalities, notably hypochloraemic alkalosis. Operation is never urgent and full resuscitation should occur.
- Electrolytes, particularly chloride, bicarbonate, and pH should be within normal limits, with chloride  $\geq 100\text{mmol/l}$ .

### Perioperative

- No complete agreement, but there is a risk of pulmonary aspiration from gastric outflow obstruction.
- A nasogastric tube is mandatory and will be in situ. Aspirate, and do not remove. It does not reduce the effect of cricoid pressure and may act as an escape valve if mask ventilation increases intragastric pressure.
- IV is usually in place. Induction may be rapid sequence or non-depolarising relaxant for which some anaesthetists use cricoid pressure. Consider rapid sequence if there is excessive nasogastric loss ( $>2\text{ml/kg/hr}$ ).
- Fentanyl ( $1\mu\text{g/kg}$ ) + paracetamol IV/PR. Local infiltration (up to  $1\text{ml/kg}$  0.25% bupivacaine  $\pm$  adrenaline). If local given preincision, fentanyl can be omitted.
- Extubate awake in the left lateral position.

### Postoperative

- Remove the nasogastric tube at the end of the procedure.
- Give paracetamol PO/PR as required.
- Feed within 6hr but maintain IV fluids until feeding is established.
- Apnoea alarm overnight.

### Special considerations

- Resuscitate with 5% glucose/0.45% sodium chloride +  $20\text{mmol/l}$  KCl (bicarbonate  $<32\text{mmol/l}$ ). More severe cases will require 0.9% sodium chloride. Use colloid initially if hypovolaemia is present. Replace nasogastric loss with 0.9% sodium chloride.
- May be performed laparoscopically.

# Intussusception

Procedure	Reduction of invaginated bowel
Time	1–2hr
Pain	+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Moderate, may be large
Practical techniques	RSI + IPPV

## Preoperative

- Intussusception is the commonest cause of obstruction in infants over 2 months of age; incidence is 2:1000 births.
- Invagination of the bowel into an adjacent lower segment, usually at the terminal ileum or ileocaecal valve. Rarely caused by polyp or Meckel's diverticulum (5% of cases).
- Presents with paroxysmal pain, blood, and mucus in stool (redcurrant jelly stool) and sausage-shaped mass in right abdomen.
- 70% of cases are reduced by air or barium enema.
- Child may be profoundly shocked. Urgent fluid resuscitation with gastric decompression and electrolyte correction will be needed. Colloid and blood may be required. Delay can result in perforated or necrotic bowel. Fluid loss may be greater than expected.

## Perioperative

- Rapid sequence induction. Retain the nasogastric tube in situ.
- Fentanyl 2–5µg/kg + volatile agent. Consider an epidural if stable.
- Two cannulae of adequate size. CVP line in severe cases.
- Routine monitoring, temperature measurement, and urinary catheter.
- Prolonged intussusception with ischaemic gut requiring resection often leads to metabolic acidosis and septic shock. Admission to a paediatric ICU will be required.

## Postoperative

Epidural or local wound infiltration and morphine NCA.

## Special considerations

No consensus as to whether the child should receive surgery at the base hospital or be transferred to a regional centre. If transferred, this should not delay resuscitation or blood crossmatch, which can be sent with the patient.

## Herniotomy

Procedure	Excision of patent processus vaginalis
Time	20min
Pain	++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	SV + LMA, caudal or regional block IPPV, caudal or local infiltration Spinal or caudal block

### Preoperative

- Otherwise fit ASA 1 child. More common in boys.
- 20% of preterm babies present for surgery at ~40wk PCA or when ready to leave the special care baby unit.

### Perioperative

- If >5kg inhalational or IV induction with laryngeal mask, then caudal or ilioinguinal block and intraoperative opioids if necessary.
- If <5kg, intubate with controlled ventilation. With neonates, avoid ilioinguinal block as spread of local anaesthetic may obscure the surgical field. Use either caudal or postoperative infiltration.
- Diclofenac suppository (1mg/kg) >1yr or paracetamol suppository (30–40mg/kg) if under 1yr. Alternatively paracetamol IV (15mg/kg >10kg or 7.5mg/kg <10kg). For neonates, paracetamol suppository (20mg/kg).

### Postoperative

- Day case: PRN paracetamol and diclofenac.
- Neonate: PRN paracetamol. Admit overnight.

### Special considerations

- The majority of herniotomy repairs are in healthy children and suitable as day cases.
- There is no consensus as to the most appropriate regional block. Caudal blockade is indicated for bilateral herniotomy repair and children up to 20kg. Ilioinguinal block is effective in children over 5kg (see p830).
- The ex-premature baby may be small for dates and oxygen-dependent with chronic lung disease. Postoperative apnoea and bradycardia are documented risks associated with general anaesthesia for this group. Hypocarbia and hypothermia should be avoided and oxygen saturation between 90% and 95% is acceptable. Caffeine (10mg/kg IV) given at induction reduces the risk of apnoea by 70%.
- To avoid general anaesthesia a spinal technique may be used (see p832). This may be technically difficult and complicated by a bloody or dry tap. It is too short acting for bilateral repair. A single-shot caudal is an alternative method. Supplementary sedation results in the same risk of postoperative apnoea as with general anaesthesia.

- Term babies in the first 6wk of life and ex-premature infants up to 60wk post-conceptual age should be admitted overnight for pulse oximetry and apnoea alarm monitoring.
- A strangulated hernia that does not reduce is an emergency and requires fluid resuscitation and a nasogastric tube. Precautions should be taken against regurgitation and aspiration.

## Circumcision

Procedure	Removal of prepuce (foreskin)
Time	20min
Pain	++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	SV, LMA, caudal/penile block/ring block

### Preoperative

- Common day-case procedure, but move towards more conservative management including simple stretch or preputioplasty.
- Obtain consent for suppository and regional block.

### Perioperative

- Inhalational or IV induction. Laryngeal mask.
- Regional block: caudal, penile block, or ring block (see p830, p834 and p1154).
- Diclofenac suppository (1mg/kg) >1yr or paracetamol suppository (30–40mg/kg) if under 1yr. Alternatively paracetamol IV (15mg/kg >10kg or 7.5mg/kg <10kg).

### Postoperative

- PRN paracetamol 20mg/kg.
- Topical lidocaine gel can be applied frequently without exceeding the toxic dose.

### Special considerations

- A regional block must be performed prior to the surgery.
- There is no consensus as to the optimal strategy for pain relief. Caudal is technically easier in infants and penile block may be more suitable in children over 10kg. Ring block is easier in boys greater than 5kg, producing excellent and consistent analgesia. All methods are effective.
- Circumcision is one of the most painful day-case procedures; parents should be warned and advised to apply topical gel regularly and continue paracetamol for several days.

# Orchidopexy

Procedure	Release of undescended testis into scrotum
Time	30min
Pain	++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	SV, LMA + regional block

## Preoperative

- Boys, usually over 2yr (2% of population).
- Common day-case procedure.
- Obtain consent for suppository and regional block.

## Perioperative

- Inhalational or IV induction. Laryngeal mask.
- Regional technique: caudal, ilioinguinal block, or local infiltration.
- Diclofenac suppository (1mg/kg) >1yr or paracetamol suppository (30–40mg/kg) if under 1yr. Alternatively paracetamol IV (15mg/kg >10kg or 7.5mg/kg <10kg).
- Give supplementary opioids if indicated.

## Postoperative

- PRN diclofenac, paracetamol, codeine phosphate, and antiemetic.

## Special considerations

- Adequate analgesia is difficult if the testis is high. Caudal block should be high volume, low concentration (bupivacaine 0.19%, see p830 and p833). A mid-thoracic level is obtained from 1.25ml/kg.
- If ilioinguinal block is used, only the anterior of the scrotum is anaesthetised; use local infiltration for the scrotal incision (see p834 and p1153).
- Testicular traction even with seemingly adequate blockade may lead to intraoperative bradycardia or laryngospasm, especially with an ilioinguinal block. Surgery should be stopped and anaesthesia deepened; supplementary opioids may be required.
- Suspected torsion of the testis is a surgical emergency and the need for a rapid sequence induction will have to be considered. Analgesic techniques are as before.
- A high testis may need surgery in two stages. The first procedure is to identify the testis, and if possible bring it down to the inguinal ring. This is usually performed laparoscopically and will require intubation, controlled ventilation with intraoperative opioids, and rectal diclofenac or paracetamol.



## Hypospadias

Procedure	Restoration of urethral opening to the tip of the penis
Time	1–3hr
Pain	++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	SV/IPPV + regional block

### Preoperative

- Usually an isolated problem, but there may be an association with certain rare dysmorphic syndromes.
- Obtain consent for suppository and regional block.

### Perioperative

- Inhalational or IV induction.
- If procedure <1hr use LMA + SV.
- If procedure >1hr use LMA or ETT + IPPV.
- Extended caudal: 1ml/kg 0.25% bupivacaine with ketamine/clonidine/morphine/diamorphine.
- Diclofenac suppository (1mg/kg) >1yr or paracetamol suppository (30–40mg/kg) <1yr. Alternatively paracetamol IV (15mg/kg >10kg or 7.5mg/kg <10kg).
- Employ heat conservation measures.

### Postoperative

- Regular NSAIDs/paracetamol. Consider morphine NCA (not always necessary).
- Opioids can be used in the caudal block because the patient will be catheterised, but they must be admitted overnight (see p830 and p833).

### Special considerations

- May be simple procedure, e.g. meatal advancement and glanduloplasty (MAGPI), or extensive involving buccal mucosa graft. The anaesthetic technique can be adjusted accordingly.
- Avoid erection with regional block plus an adequate depth of anaesthesia.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Cleft lip and palate

Procedure	Repair of defect in upper lip and palate
Time	1–2hr
Pain	++
Position	Supine, head ring, shoulder support
Blood loss	Minimal for cleft lip. Moderate for cleft palate
Practical techniques	IPPV. Armoured or RAE tube

### Preoperative

- Incidence of 1:300–600 births but can be 1:25 where there is a family history.
- Both lip and palate are involved together in 50% of cases.
- Isolated cleft palate incidence is 1:2000 live births. Increased incidence of congenital abnormalities.
- Associated syndromes often involve a difficult airway, e.g. Pierre–Robin, Treacher–Collins, and Goldenhar syndromes. Therefore make a careful assessment of the airway.
- Discuss risks and complications. Obtain consent for suppository.
- Administer IM atropine 20µg/kg 30min preoperatively if a difficult airway is suspected.

### Perioperative

- Inhalational or IV induction. When there is a suspected airway problem, perform inhalational induction with sevoflurane and then maintain with halothane. CPAP will be useful (see p820 and p824). Intubate deep with child breathing spontaneously or following muscle relaxant once a safe airway has been established. Bullard laryngoscope may be useful.
- A preformed RAE tube may be obstructed or kinked by the gag, especially the smaller sizes. A reinforced tube will resist compression but needs to be carefully secured at correct length.
- IPPV preferable.
- Use a throat pack and make sure the eyes are protected.
- The surgeon usually places the gag. Encourage local anaesthetic infiltration to improve analgesia and reduce blood loss.
- Fentanyl (2–4µg/kg) and paracetamol (PR 30–40mg/kg <1yr; or IV 15mg/kg >10kg or 7.5mg/kg <10kg) or diclofenac (1mg/kg >1yr) plus local infiltration. Clonidine or ketamine can be used as part of an opioid sparing technique.
- Dexamethasone 0.1mg/kg may prevent postoperative swelling.
- Consider infraorbital nerve block for cleft lip repair<sup>1</sup> and nasopalatine plus palatine block for palatal surgery.
- Codeine phosphate 1mg/kg IM prior to reversal or ketamine 0.5mg/kg IM if infant is floppy or hypotonic.

### Postoperative

- Extubate awake. Suction the pharynx early and carefully to prevent damage to the repair.
- Nasal stents may be inserted to maintain patency of the airway. A tongue stitch is rarely used.
- Routine postoperative analgesia to include regular paracetamol, diclofenac, or ibuprofen and codeine phosphate. IV morphine may be required initially.

### Special considerations

- Intubation is usually uncomplicated.
- The laryngoscope blade rarely lodges in the cleft. If there is a problem, a roll of gauze can fill the gap.
- Prolonged surgery may cause a swollen tongue from pressure of the mouth gag.
- Cleft palate repair can produce upper airways obstruction, and extreme care is needed for extubation.
- With airway problems, opioids should be given cautiously. Postoperative monitoring should include pulse oximetry and apnoea alarm.
- Cleft lip is usually repaired at 3 months, cleft palate at 6–9 months. The lip may be repaired at the neonatal stage to improve the scar and assist maternal bonding. There is little evidence to support this.

1 Bosenberg AT, Kimble FW (1995). Infraorbital nerve block in neonates for cleft palate repair: anatomical study and clinical application. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **74**, 506–508.

## Congenital talipes equinovarus

Procedure	Correction of club foot abnormality
Time	45min–1hr
Pain	++
Position	Supine, sometimes prone for posterior release
Blood loss	Minimal
Practical techniques	SV, LMA, caudal If prone then ETT + IPPV, caudal

### Preoperative

- Occurs in 1:1000 births.
- Usually an isolated anomaly but may occur in association with some myopathic diseases, hence increased theoretical risk of malignant hyperthermia.
- Obtain consent for suppository and regional block.

### Perioperative

- Inhalational or IV induction with LMA. If prone, intubate and ventilate. Give additional opioids if indicated.
- Extended caudal blockade: 1ml/kg 0.25% bupivacaine (see p830 and p833).
- Rectal diclofenac (1mg/kg) >1yr or paracetamol PR (30–40mg/kg) if <1yr or IV (15mg/kg >10kg or 7.5mg/kg <10kg).

### Postoperative

Give regular diclofenac, paracetamol, plus PRN codeine phosphate and antiemetic if required for the first day. Morphine sulphate solution is a useful alternative.

### Special considerations

For prolonged pain relief either top-up the caudal at the end of the procedure by using an indwelling 22G or 20G cannula or extend the duration of the block by adding preservative-free ketamine (0.5mg/kg) to the initial dose of bupivacaine. Diamorphine and clonidine will also extend the block. However, the former may lead to urinary retention and the latter increased levels of drowsiness.

## Femoral osteotomy

Procedure	Stabilising the hip in congenital dislocation by realigning the proximal femur
Time	2hr
Pain	+++
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Moderate/potentially large
Practical techniques	SV + LMA or ETT + IPPV + caudal/epidural

### Preoperative

- Usually an isolated defect. More common in girls or where there is a family history.
- Obtain consent for a suppository and regional block.

### Perioperative

- Inhalational or IV induction. SV + LMA or ETT + IPPV.
- Adequate IV access.
- Caudal block + preservative-free ketamine or clonidine (see p830 and p833). Avoid caudal opioids because of risk of urinary retention. Alternatively lumbar epidural or intraoperative opioids (see p832 and p828).
- Employ heat conservation measures.
- Attention to blood loss.

### Postoperative

- Epidural infusion (see p832).
- Extended caudal or morphine NCA with regular NSAIDs and paracetamol (see p828).
- A hip spica provides support and helps with pain relief.

### Special considerations

- Blood loss may be extensive if revision surgery.
- A hip spica complicates urinary retention in girls.

## Inhaled foreign body

Procedure	Removal of foreign body from bronchial tree
Time	30min
Pain	+
Position	Supine
Blood loss	Nil
Practical techniques	SV or IPPV

### Preoperative

- Commonest reason for bronchoscopy in the 1–3yr age group.
- A foreign body in the upper airways may present as an emergency acute airway obstruction.
- Obstruction of lower airways may follow history of coughing after several days. Peanut oil is an irritant and leads to mucosal oedema and chemical pneumonitis. Chest radiograph shows characteristic hyperinflation during expiration, but foreign body is often not visible.
- Treat symptoms as indicated, e.g. dehydration, pneumonia, wheeze.

### Perioperative

- Inhalational induction is usual to avoid displacing the object further. Use 100% oxygen with sevoflurane or halothane.
- Deep inhalational maintenance with halothane (sevoflurane—too rapid awakening). Increasingly halothane is becoming less available and sevoflurane is becoming the usual agent. TIVA may be possible, but there is little current experience in this technique for children.
- Apply topical anaesthesia to vocal cords (10% lidocaine, up to 3mg/kg) and consider a drying agent (atropine 20µg/kg IM 30min preoperatively or 10µg/kg IV at induction, or glycopyrronium 5µg/kg IM or IV).
- Rigid bronchoscopy: the Storz bronchoscope has an attachment for a T-piece.
- If the foreign body is in the lower airway, then use IPPV with a muscle relaxant since the object will be pushed distally by the bronchoscope until it can be grasped by forceps. Give assisted ventilation via a T-piece or high-frequency jet ventilation.
- This may be a difficult procedure.

### Postoperative

- If bronchoscopy is traumatic, give dexamethasone 0.25mg/kg IV, then two doses 8-hourly of 0.125mg/kg.
- Consider physiotherapy, bronchodilators, and antibiotics as indicated.

### Special considerations

- If tracheal or ball-valve obstruction is suspected, IPPV is contraindicated.
- Intubation may assist lung ventilation and sizing of the bronchoscope if a tracheal foreign body is excluded.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Medical problems

### Acute laryngotracheobronchitis (croup)

- Croup occurs predominantly in epidemics in the autumn and early spring. The peak age of incidence is 6 months to 2yr. It is viral in aetiology. The majority of cases are due to parainfluenza, but influenza and respiratory syncytial virus are possible.
- Symptoms are coryzal for the first few days but then progress to a characteristic barking cough/hoarseness with profuse secretions and occasional dysphagia. Pyrexia is mild or absent.
- The larynx, trachea, and bronchi are all involved and become more oedematous, leading to the onset of stridor. An anxious child will exacerbate the condition, as the trachea will tend to collapse on inspiration.
- The majority of children respond to conservative measures and reassurance. There is no evidence to support the use of humidified steam tents. In severe cases, steroids (dexamethasone 0.25mg/kg IV followed by two further doses 8-hourly of 0.125mg/kg) and nebulised adrenaline (0.5mg/kg up to a max of 5mg) are required.
- 10% of children are admitted and 1% will require intubation.
- The majority of children have a single isolated episode.

### Acute epiglottitis

- This is an acute life-threatening infection caused by *Haemophilus influenzae* type B (Hib). It most commonly presents at 2–3yr.
- There is a rapid onset of oedema of the epiglottis and aryepiglottic folds. The child has a high temperature, usually greater than 39.5°C, and presents sitting or leaning forwards, drooling saliva, unable to swallow, with the tongue pushed forwards. Inspiratory and expiratory stridor is rapidly progressive and a late sign.
- Acute epiglottitis is a medical emergency. The antibiotic of choice is cefotaxime (50mg/kg IV twice daily). Intubation is indicated in 60% of cases; in some centres all children are routinely intubated.
- Following the introduction of the Hib vaccine, this condition is now rare.

### Anaesthetic management

- The differential diagnosis between croup and epiglottitis is not always obvious. If epiglottitis is even remotely suspected, there must be liaison with an ENT surgeon at consultant level.
- Induction occurs in the anaesthetic room or operating theatre with the full range of appropriate equipment and monitoring available.
- During anaesthesia, the ENT surgeon should be scrubbed in theatre with the tracheostomy set open.
- Traditionally, IV access has been contraindicated prior to induction because of the risk of acute glottic closure. However, the use of topical cream facilitates atraumatic venepuncture. Unless access is obviously difficult, cannulation should proceed before anaesthesia.
- Inhalational induction is performed in the sitting position with sevoflurane or halothane in 100% oxygen; the choice depends solely on

the operator. Once anaesthetised, the child can be moved to a supine position and maintained with halothane up to concentrations of 5% if needed. Halothane permits a more prolonged attempt at laryngoscopy. CPAP should be routinely applied, but the airway is not usually difficult to maintain.

- In croup, laryngoscopy is usually straightforward, but the tracheal tube required may be surprisingly narrow. Start with one size smaller than normal. Older children may require a tube that has been cut to a longer length. If possible, once the airway is secure, the child should be reintubated nasally since this is better tolerated. Profuse secretions are always a problem and frequent suction is necessary. Intubation is usually required for at least 2–3d and bronchoscopy is indicated if an air leak around the tube fails to develop.
- With epiglottitis, intubation may be exceedingly difficult. Laryngoscopy often reveals abnormal anatomy with no obvious glottic opening. Careful inspection may reveal movement of small amounts of mucus indicating tidal flow. The child should be intubated using a stylet so that the tracheal tube can be immediately railroaded if necessary. The tube size will be smaller than predicted.
- Once intubation has been achieved, oedema rapidly settles. Following demonstration of a leak around the tube, extubation is normally possible within 36hr. Dexamethasone is often given prior to extubation to reduce laryngeal oedema.

## Sedation

- The expansion of imaging techniques together with new diagnostic and therapeutic interventions has led to a rise in demand for sedation services.
- Compared with general anaesthesia, sedation is neither cheaper nor safer. Safety is paramount and the requirements in terms of personnel and resuscitation equipment are the same.
- With current staff shortages, anaesthetists are not always available to administer sedation and other medical or nursing personnel may be involved.
- Facilities must include sufficient space for a trolley, monitoring, and resuscitation equipment together with all personnel necessary to sedate the child and carry out the specific procedure. All standard anaesthetic equipment should be available for resuscitation.
- Each sedated child must be supervised by an appropriate nurse or doctor trained in paediatric resuscitation. Experienced medical staff must be immediately available to assist with sedation problems or resuscitation. There must be a contingency for overnight admission if recovery is prolonged.
- The adult concept of sedation with verbal contact maintained is not practical in children. There may be little difference between deep sedation as defined by the American Academy of Pediatrics and uncontrolled anaesthesia. Ideal conditions achieve depression of the nervous system, allowing the relevant procedures to occur, with preservation of the airway reflexes. In practice this is difficult to achieve.
- It is important not to confuse sedation with analgesia. Painful procedures may require topical anaesthetic cream, infiltration with local anaesthetics, and occasionally systemic opioids.
- Contraindications include children with airway problems, apnoeic episodes, respiratory disease, raised intracranial pressure, risk of pulmonary aspiration, and epilepsy.
- The most frequently used oral sedative drugs are **chloral hydrate** (50–100mg/kg), **triclofos** (50–75mg/kg), and to a lesser extent benzodiazepines, **trimeprazine**, and **ketamine**. Opioids are also used in combination with other sedatives.
- **Midazolam** (0.5mg/kg PO) or in incremental bolus doses of 0.05mg/kg IV up to a maximum dose of 0.2mg/kg can produce good conditions for sedation and has the additional property of amnesia. **Ketamine** (6mg/kg PO or 1–2mg/kg IV) is indicated for short, painful procedures and may be used in combination with midazolam. Emergence delirium is less of a problem with children, but a drying agent is often required.
- **Propofol** can be used alone or in combination with remifentanyl for endoscopy sedation, but the use of propofol should be reserved for anaesthetists.<sup>1</sup>
- Emergency physicians are increasingly using IV ketamine for ‘sedation’ of short painful procedures. This is controversial practice in the UK. Anyone using anaesthetic agents must have the full range of skills required for their safe use.

- With appropriate planning, organisation, and safety, nurse-led sedation services have been developed at several centres following strict protocols. The children are fasted conventionally but allowed unrestricted clear fluids. A pulse oximeter is mandatory. Surprisingly young children can tolerate scans awake with encouragement, careful explanation, and parental presence.

### Further reading

Association of Paediatric Anaesthetists. [www.apagbi.org.uk](http://www.apagbi.org.uk).

Baum VC, O'Flaherty JE (1999). *Anaesthesia for Genetic, Metabolic and Dysmorphic Syndromes of Childhood*. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.

BNF for Children 2010. [www.bnfc.org](http://www.bnfc.org).

Craven PD, Badawi N, Henderson-Smart DJ, O'Brien M (2003). Regional (spinal, epidural, caudal) versus general anaesthesia in preterm infants undergoing inguinal herniorrhaphy in early infancy. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, (3), CD003669.

Hammer G, Holzki J, Morton N (2009). The paediatric airway. *Pediatric Anaesthesia*, **19** (Suppl 1).

Bingham R, Lloyd Thomas A, Sury M (eds) (2007). *Hatch and Sumner's Textbook of Paediatric Anaesthesia*. Hodder Arnold.

NCEPOD (1999). *National Confidential Enquiry Into Perioperative Deaths (1999). Extremes of Age*. London: NCEPOD.

Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man. Database of human genes and genetic disorders from Johns Hopkins University with links to Medline and Entrez Pubmed. <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/omim>.

1 Berkenbosch JW, Graft GR, Stort JM, Tobias J (2004). Use of a remifentanyl propofol mixture for paediatric flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopy sedation. *Paediatric Anaesthesia*, **14**, 941–946.

## Paediatric quick reference guide

Age	Approx. weight (kg)	Body surface area (m <sup>2</sup> )	Percentage of adult drug dose (approx.)	ETT size (mm)	ETT length (cm)	LMA size	Suxamethonium dose (mg) IV	Atropine dose (µg) IV
Term	3.5	0.23	12.5 (1/8 <sup>th</sup> )	3.5	9	1	7	35
1 month	4.2	0.26	14.5	3.5	10	1	8	40
3 months	6	0.33	15	3.5	10	1.5	12	60
6 months	7.5	0.38	22	3.5/4.0	11	1.5	15	75
1yr	10	0.47	25 (1/4)	4.0	12	1.5/2	20	100
2yr	12	0.53	30	4.5	13	2	24	120
3yr	14	0.61	33	4.5/5	13/14	2	28	140
5yr	18	0.73	40	5.0/5.5	14.5	2.5	36	180
7yr	22	0.86	50 (1/2)	6.0	15.5	2.5	44	220
10yr	30	1.10	60	6.5 cuffed	17	3	60	300
12yr	38	1.30	75 (3/4)	7.0 cuffed	18	3 or 4	75	380

Note: weights are approximations only. Patients should be weighed accurately.

# The critically ill patient

## **Jerry Nolan**

- Immediate trauma care 862
- Primary survey and resuscitation 864
- The secondary survey 870
- Head injuries 872
- Chest injuries 876
- Abdominal injuries 879
- Pelvic fractures 880
- Spinal injuries 882
- Limb injuries 883
- Burns: early management 884
- Analgesia for the injured patient 890
- Anaesthesia for major trauma 891
- The multiply injured patient: common dilemmas 892
- Post cardiac arrest resuscitation care 894
- Septic shock 896
- The ICU patient going to theatre 900
- Transferring the critically ill 902

## Immediate trauma care

### Preparation

Advance warning before the arrival of a severely injured patient in the emergency department enables emergency department staff to alert the trauma team and prepare essential resuscitation drugs, fluid, and equipment before the patient's arrival.

### The trauma team

Trauma patient resuscitation is most efficient if undertaken by a team of doctors and nurses; in this way several tasks can be undertaken simultaneously.

### Immediate care—ATLS®

The advanced trauma life support (ATLS®)<sup>1</sup> programme provides a framework on which the immediate management of the trauma patient is based. The initial management is considered in four phases:

- Primary survey.
- Resuscitation.
- Secondary survey.
- Definitive care.

The first two phases are undertaken simultaneously. The secondary survey, or head-to-toe examination of the patient, is not started until the patient has been resuscitated adequately.

<sup>1</sup> American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma (2008). *Advanced Trauma Life Support® for Doctors. Student Course Manual*, 8th edn. Chicago: American College of Surgeons.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Primary survey and resuscitation

The primary survey ('ABC principles') comprises a sequential search for immediately life-threatening injuries:

- Airway with cervical spine control.
- Breathing.
- Circulation and haemorrhage control.
- Disability—a rapid assessment of neurological function.
- Exposure—while considering the environment, and preventing hypothermia.

### Airway and cervical spine

The priority during resuscitation of any severely injured patient is to ensure a clear airway and maintain oxygenation. Use basic airway manoeuvres with or without adjuncts such as a Guedel and nasopharyngeal airway. Give the patient high-concentration oxygen; in the unintubated, spontaneously breathing patient this is delivered with a mask and reservoir (non-rebreathing) bag -  $\text{FiO}_2 = 0.85$ .

Assume the presence of a spinal injury in any patient who has sustained significant blunt trauma until clearance procedures have been completed. This implies that the patient has been examined by an experienced clinician and radiological procedures have been completed. A reliable clinical examination cannot be obtained if the patient:

- Has sustained a significant closed head injury.
- Is intoxicated.
- Has a reduced conscious level from any other cause.
- Has significant pain from an injury, which 'distracts' attention from the neck.

### Tracheal intubation

Indications for immediate intubation of the severely injured patient include:

- Airway obstruction unrelieved by basic airway manoeuvres.
- Impending airway obstruction, e.g. from facial burns and inhalation injury
- GCS <9 (see p873).
- Haemorrhage from maxillofacial injuries compromising the airway.
- Respiratory failure secondary to chest or neurological injury.
- The need for resuscitative surgery.
- Uncooperative patients requiring further investigations.

The best technique for emergency intubation of a severely injured patient with a potential cervical spine injury is:

- Manual in-line stabilisation of the cervical spine by an assistant whose hands grasp the mastoid processes and hold the head down firmly on to the trolley; this reduces neck movement during intubation. Do not apply traction to the neck.
- Preoxygenation.
- IV induction of anaesthesia. All induction drugs have the potential to produce or worsen hypotension and the choice of drug is less important than the way it is used. Extreme caution is essential in patients who may be hypovolaemic; whenever possible give fluid before anaesthetic induction. In the hypovolaemic patient, ketamine is less likely than other induction drugs to cause profound hypotension.

- Paralysis with suxamethonium 1.5mg/kg (though in experienced hands rocuronium 1mg/kg is acceptable, especially if sugammadex is immediately available).
- Application of cricoid pressure—using one or two hands (there is no strong evidence supporting one technique over the other).
- Direct laryngoscopy and oral intubation.

Placing the patient's head and neck in neutral alignment will tend to make the view at laryngoscopy difficult—expect 20% of patients to have a grade 3 view of the larynx; use of a gum-elastic bougie and McCoy levering laryngoscope is recommended. If intubation is impossible, a supraglottic airway (e.g. LMA Classic, LMA Supreme, I-gel) will provide a temporary airway but may not prevent aspiration. Needle cricothyroidotomy with a 14G cannula followed by jet inflation of oxygen from a high-pressure source (400kPa) will provide satisfactory oxygenation, but the airway is not protected and the cannula is subject to kinking and displacement. Surgical cricothyroidotomy, using a scalpel and a 6.0mm ID tracheostomy or tracheal tube, is a more reliable procedure if the patient cannot be intubated by conventional methods. See also p942 and p 986.

### Breathing—immediately life-threatening chest injuries

- **Tension pneumothorax.** Reduced chest movement, reduced breath sounds, and a resonant percussion note on the affected side, along with respiratory distress, hypotension, and tachycardia indicate a tension pneumothorax. Deviation of the trachea to the opposite side is a late sign, and neck veins may not be distended in the presence of hypovolaemia. Treatment is immediate decompression with a large cannula placed in the second intercostal space (mid-clavicular line) on the affected side. Occasionally, the cannula is too short to reach the pleural space or immediately falls out or kinks; in this case, decompression is achieved with an immediate thoracostomy. Once IV access has been obtained, insert a large chest drain (32 FG) in the fifth intercostal space (anterior axillary) line and connect to an underwater seal drain.
- **Open pneumothorax.** Any open pneumothorax should be covered with an occlusive dressing and sealed on three sides.
- **Massive haemothorax** (defined as >1500ml blood in a hemithorax) will cause reduced chest movement and a dull percussion note, in the presence of hypoxaemia and hypovolaemia. Start fluid resuscitation and insert a chest drain.

### Cardiac tamponade

- Consider cardiac tamponade while examining the chest, particularly if the patient has sustained a penetrating injury to the chest or upper abdomen.
- Distended neck veins in the presence of hypotension are suggestive of cardiac tamponade, although after rapid volume resuscitation myocardial contusion may also present in this way. Tension pneumothorax may also mimic tamponade.
- Muffled heart sounds are meaningless in the midst of a busy resuscitation room.
- Most emergency departments now have immediate access to ultrasound, which is the most reliable method for diagnosis. In the hands of an

experienced operator, a focused assessment sonogram for trauma (FAST) will enable detection of pericardial collections.

- If cardiac tamponade is diagnosed or suspected after penetrating injury and the patient is deteriorating despite all resuscitative efforts, an urgent thoracotomy and pericardiectomy will be required. This is best undertaken in an operating theatre; however, in extremis, resuscitative thoracotomy should be undertaken in the emergency room.
- In the absence of a suitably experienced surgeon, pericardiocentesis may provide temporary relief from the tamponade while awaiting definitive treatment.

### Circulation—management of hypovolaemia

Control external haemorrhage with direct pressure. Hypovolaemic shock is divided into four classes according to the percentage of total blood volume lost and the associated symptoms and signs. The table below provides rough guidance only.

Haemorrhage alone, in the absence of significant tissue injury, causes relatively less tachycardia and may be easily overlooked, particularly in young, fit people who are able to compensate to a remarkable degree. A fall in systolic pressure suggests a loss of >30% of total blood volume (~1500ml in a 70kg adult). A deteriorating conscious level due to hypovolaemia implies at least 40–50% loss of blood volume.

Classification of hypovolaemic shock according to blood loss (adult)

	Class I	Class II	Class III	Class IV
Blood loss (%)	<15	15–30	30–40	>40
Blood loss (ml)	750	800–1500	1500–2000	>2000
Systolic blood pressure	Unchanged	Normal	Reduced	Very low
Diastolic blood pressure	Unchanged	Raised	Reduced	Unrecordable
Pulse (bpm)	Slight tachycardia	100–120	120 (thready)	>120 (very thready)
Capillary refill	Normal	Slow (>2s)	Slow (>2s)	Undetectable
Respiratory rate	Normal	Tachypnoea	Tachypnoea (>20/min)	Tachypnoea (>20/min)
Urine output (ml/hr)	>30	20–30	10–20	0–10
Extremities	Normal	Pale	Pale	Pale, cold, clammy
Complexion	Normal	Pale	Pale	Ashen
Mental state	Alert	Anxious or aggressive	Anxious, aggressive, or drowsy	Drowsy, confused, or unconscious

- Insert two short, large-bore IV cannulae (14G or larger); take blood samples for FBC and electrolytes, and crossmatch from the first cannula.
- If peripheral access is difficult, use external jugular vein, femoral vein (avoid in abdominal/pelvic/leg injury), or cut-down on a peripheral vein (long saphenous at the ankle), or cannulate a central vein. If the central route is to be used for rapid fluid resuscitation a relatively short, large-bore catheter (e.g. 8.5Fr) is essential.
- Insert an arterial cannula for blood gas sampling and invasive pressure monitoring. Severely injured patients will have a marked base deficit and its correction by the infusion of appropriate fluid (not bicarbonate) will help to confirm adequate resuscitation.

### **Fluids (see also p1080)**

Crystalloid is suitable for the initial fluid resuscitation. Large volumes of 0.9% sodium chloride will induce a hyperchloraemic acidosis; however, Hartmann's solution is slightly hypotonic and may increase cerebral oedema in patients with severe brain injury—thus, neither fluid is perfect. The volume status of the patient is best determined by observing the change in vital signs after a reasonably large fluid challenge (e.g. 1 litre of Hartmann's solution). Failure to improve the vital signs implies ongoing haemorrhage and the need for immediate surgical intervention and blood transfusion. A full crossmatch will take 45min; group-confirmed blood can be issued in 10min and group O blood can be obtained immediately. It is nearly always possible to wait for at least group-confirmed blood; major incompatibility reactions when using group-confirmed blood are extremely rare. The haemoglobin concentration of the severely injured patient should be targeted at greater than 7–8g/dl.

Warm all IV fluids: a high-capacity fluid warmer is necessary to cope with the rapid infusion rates used during resuscitation of trauma patients.

**Hypothermia** (core temperature less than 35°C) is a serious complication and is an independent predictor of mortality. Hypothermia has several adverse effects:

- It causes a gradual decline in heart rate and cardiac output while increasing the propensity for myocardial dysrhythmias and other morbid myocardial events.
- The oxyhaemoglobin dissociation curve is shifted to the left by a decrease in temperature, thus impairing peripheral oxygen delivery in the hypovolaemic patient at a time when it is most needed.
- Shivering may increase oxygen consumption and compound the lactic acidosis that typically accompanies hypovolaemia.
- Even mild hypothermia inhibits coagulation significantly and increases the incidence of wound infection.

In the presence of uncontrolled haemorrhage:

- Aggressive fluid resuscitation may simply accelerate bleeding and increase mortality; however, inadequate fluid resuscitation will cause hypoperfusion of vital organs and may induce life-threatening ischaemia.
- Until surgical control of haemorrhage has been achieved, target fluid resuscitation to a blood pressure that will almost produce adequate vital organ perfusion (**permissive hypotension or controlled fluid resuscitation**). This target will depend on age and coexisting morbidities: in the normally healthy patient aim for a pressure around

80mmHg systolic; in the elderly or those with significant comorbidity a systolic pressure of around 100mmHg may be more appropriate.

- Hypotension increases morbidity and mortality following severe head injury and attempts must be made to maintain an adequate cerebral perfusion as soon as possible. In a patient with even slightly raised intracranial pressure, this implies the need for a mean arterial pressure of at least 90mmHg.
- In the bleeding trauma patient there is evidence (from military settings) that early and increased use of blood products may improve outcome. If bleeding continues after 4 units of blood have been transfused, give blood, fresh frozen plasma, and platelets in a ratio of 1:1:1.
- Once haemorrhage control has been achieved, the goals of fluid resuscitation are to optimise oxygen delivery, improve microcirculatory perfusion, and reverse tissue acidosis. Fluid infusion should be targeted at a blood pressure and cardiac output that results in an acceptable urine output and a falling lactate and base deficit.

**Goals for resuscitation of the trauma patient before haemorrhage has been controlled**

Parameter	Goal
Blood pressure	Systolic 80mmHg. Mean 50–60mmHg
Heart rate	<120bpm
Oxygenation	SaO <sub>2</sub> >95% (peripheral perfusion allowing oximeter to work)
Urine output	>0.5ml/kg/hr
Mental state	Following commands accurately
Lactate level	<1.6mmol/l
Base deficit	>–5
Haemoglobin	>8.0g/dl

### **Disability—rapid neurological assessment**

Check the pupils for size and reaction to light and assess the GCS score rapidly (see p873).

If the patient requires urgent induction of anaesthesia and intubation, remember to perform a quick neurological assessment first.

### **Exposure/environmental control**

Undress the patient completely and protect from hypothermia with warm blankets.

### **Tubes**

Insert a urinary catheter; urine output is an excellent indicator of the adequacy of resuscitation. Place a gastric tube; this will enable stomach contents to be drained and reduce the risk of aspiration. If there is any suspicion of a basal skull fracture, use the orogastric route.

### Imaging

Imaging of the chest and pelvis is required for all patients sustaining significant blunt trauma. This is normally achieved with plain radiographs, but in severely injured patients a 'whole body' (head, cervical spine, chest, abdomen, and pelvis) CT scan is frequently undertaken en route to the operating room. Under these circumstances, obtaining a radiograph of the pelvis is unnecessary.

### Relatives in the resuscitation room

It is increasingly common for a relative to remain in the resuscitation room while the patient is being resuscitated. Make the trauma team aware of the presence of the relative and assign a member of the emergency department nursing staff to accompany them. Warn relatives before any particularly invasive procedures are undertaken so that they have the option to leave if they wish.

## **The secondary survey**

Do not undertake a detailed head-to-toe survey of the trauma patient until the vital signs are relatively stable. Re-evaluate the patient repeatedly so that ongoing bleeding is detected early. Patients with exsanguinating haemorrhage may need a laparotomy as part of the resuscitation phase.





## Head injuries

Most potentially preventable head injury morbidity is caused by a delay in diagnosing and evacuating an intracranial haematoma or the failure to correct hypoxia and hypotension.

- Inspect and palpate the scalp for lacerations, haematomas, and depressed fractures.
- Check for signs of a basal skull fracture: 'raccoon' eyes (Battle's sign), bruising over the mastoid process, subhyaloid haemorrhage, scleral haemorrhage without a posterior margin, haemotympanum, cerebrospinal fluid rhinorrhoea, and otorrhoea.
- Brain injury can be divided into primary injury (concussion, contusion, and laceration) and secondary brain injury (hypoxia, hypercarbia, and hypotension). Resuscitation goals include:
  - MAP at least 90mmHg—allows for CPP of 70mmHg in the presence of slightly raised intracranial pressure (e.g. 20mmHg).
  - $\text{SpO}_2 > 95\%$ .
  - $\text{PaCO}_2$  4.5–5.0kPa (34–38mmHg) (if mechanically ventilated).
  - Haemoglobin  $> 10\text{g/dl}$ .
- The conscious level is assessed using the GCS. The trend of change in conscious level is more important than one static reading. Record the pupillary response and the presence of any localising signs.

### Indications for intubation and ventilation after head injury

- GCS  $< 9$ .
- Loss of protective laryngeal reflexes.
- Ventilatory insufficiency ( $\text{PaO}_2 < 13\text{kPa}$  (100mmHg) on oxygen,  $\text{PaCO}_2 > 6\text{kPa}$  (45mmHg)).
- Spontaneous hyperventilation causing  $\text{PaCO}_2 < 4\text{kPa}$  (30 mmHg).
- Respiratory arrhythmia.
- To enable CT scanning.
- Before transfer to a regional neurosurgical unit:
  - Significantly deteriorating conscious level, even if not in coma.
  - Unstable fractures of the facial skeleton.
  - Copious bleeding into the mouth (e.g. skull base fracture).
  - Seizures.

## Glasgow Coma Scale score

	Response	Score
Best motor response	Obeys commands	6
	Localises pain	5
	Normal flexion withdrawal (stimulus to supraorbital notch)	4
	Abnormal flexion to pain	3
	Extension to pain	2
	Nothing	1
Best verbal response	Orientated	5
	Confused	4
	Inappropriate words	3
	Inarticulate sounds	2
	Nothing	1
Eye opening	Eyes open	4
	Eyes open to speech	3
	Eyes open to pain	2
	No eye opening	1

## Modification of GCS for children under 5

	Response	Score
Best motor response	Obeys commands (>2yr)	6
	Localises to pain (<2yr)	5
	Normal flexion to pain (>6 months)	4
	Abnormal flexion to pain	3
	Extension to pain	2
	Nothing	1
Best verbal response	Orientated (>5yr)	5
	Words (>1yr)	4
	Vocal sounds (>6 months)	3
	Cries (<6 months)	2
	None	1
Eye opening	Eyes open	4
	Eyes open to speech	3
	Eyes open to pain	2
	No eye opening	1

Using this scoring system the maximum GCS is 9 at 0–6 months, 11 at 6–12 months, 13 at 1–2yr, and 14 at 2–5yr.

### Management of intubation in the head-injured patient

- A rapid sequence induction is required with cricoid pressure and manual in-line stabilisation of the head and neck.
- Give thiopental 3–5mg/kg or propofol 1–3mg/kg with suxamethonium 1–2mg/kg and fentanyl 2–5µg/kg or alfentanil 15–30µg/kg.
- Ventilate to a PaCO<sub>2</sub> of 4.5–5.0kPa (34–38mmHg).
- Maintain oxygenation (SpO<sub>2</sub> >95%).
- Maintain sedation with a propofol infusion (1–3mg/kg/hr).
- Insert an orogastric tube—nasogastric tubes are contraindicated until a fractured base of the skull has been excluded.
- Restore normovolaemia (0.9% sodium chloride) and give vasopressors to maintain a mean arterial blood pressure of 90mmHg.

### Criteria for immediate request for CT scan of the head (adults)

- GCS less than 13 on initial assessment in the emergency department.
- GCS less than 15 at 2hr after the injury on assessment in the emergency department.
- Suspected open or depressed skull fracture.
- Any sign of basal skull fracture (haemotympanum, 'panda' eyes, cerebrospinal fluid leakage from the ear or nose, Battle's sign).
- Post-traumatic seizure.
- Focal neurological deficit.
- More than one episode of vomiting.
- Amnesia for events more than 30min before impact.

### Criteria for immediate request for CT scan of the head provided patient has experienced some loss of consciousness or amnesia since the injury (adults)

- Age 65yr or older.
- Coagulopathy (history of bleeding, clotting disorder, current treatment with warfarin).
- Dangerous mechanism of injury (a pedestrian or cyclist struck by a motor vehicle, an occupant ejected from a motor vehicle, or a fall from a height of greater than 1m or five stairs).

### Indications for referral to a regional neurosurgical unit

- All patients with an intracranial mass.
- Primary brain injury requiring ventilation.
- Compound or depressed skull fracture.
- Persistent CSF leak.
- Penetrating skull injury.
- A seizure without full recovery.
- Patients deteriorating rapidly with signs of an intracranial mass lesion.

### Management of seizures

- Lorazepam 25–30µg/kg IV.
- Phenytoin 15mg/kg over 15min.
- Thiopental 3mg/kg if required.
- Recheck ABC.

### Management of increased ICP

- Give mannitol 0.5g/kg [wt (kg)  $\times$  2.5 = ml of 20% mannitol] or 100 ml 5% hypertonic saline and furosemide 10–20 mg.
- Manually hyperventilate the patient's lungs for 30s and reassess pupillary response.

### Transfer to a regional neurosurgical unit<sup>1,2</sup>

Critically ill patients with acute brain injuries must be accompanied by a doctor with suitable training, skills, competencies, and experience of brain injury transfer. A dedicated trained assistant must be provided for the escorting doctor. This might be an appropriately trained operating department practitioner, nurse, or paramedic. The patient should receive the same standard of physiological monitoring during transfer as they would receive in an ICU. All notes (or photocopies), radiographs, blood results, and crossmatched blood should accompany the patient. The transfer team should carry a mobile phone. Head-injured patients must be resuscitated adequately before transfer. Cervical spine protection should be continued and pupillary responses reassessed every 15 min (see also p902).

### Essential equipment for patient transfer

- Portable mechanical ventilator, with supply of oxygen.
- Portable, battery-powered monitors—ECG, IABP, CVP, SpO<sub>2</sub>, ETCO<sub>2</sub>, Temp.
- Suction, defibrillator, battery-powered syringe pumps.
- Airway and intubation equipment.
- Venous access equipment.

### Essential drugs for patient transfer

- Hypnotics—a propofol infusion is ideal for sedating intubated patients.
- Muscle relaxants and analgesics, e.g. fentanyl.
- Mannitol 20%: mannitol (0.5g/kg) may be given after discussion with the neurosurgeon. This may reduce intracranial pressure and will buy time before surgery.
- Vasoactive drugs, e.g. metaraminol, noradrenaline.
- Additional resuscitation drugs.

1 Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2006). *Recommendations for the Safe Transfer of Patients with Brain Injury*. London: AAGBI.

2 Intensive Care Society (2002). *Guidelines for the Transport of the Critically Ill Adult*. London: Intensive Care Society.

## Chest injuries

There are six potentially life-threatening injuries (two contusions and four 'ruptures'):

- Pulmonary contusion.
- Cardiac contusion.
- Aortic rupture—blunt aortic injury.
- Ruptured diaphragm.
- Oesophageal rupture.
- Rupture of the tracheobronchial tree.

### Pulmonary contusion

- Inspection of the chest may reveal signs indicating considerable decelerating forces, such as seat-belt bruising.
- Pulmonary contusion is the commonest potentially lethal chest injury.
- Young adults and children have particularly compliant ribs and considerable energy can be transmitted to the lungs in the absence of rib fractures.
- The earliest indication of pulmonary contusion is hypoxaemia (reduced  $\text{PaO}_2/\text{FiO}_2$  ratio).
- The chest radiograph shows patchy infiltrates over the affected area, but may be normal initially.
- Increasing the  $\text{FiO}_2$  may provide sufficient oxygenation; if not, the patient may require mask CPAP or tracheal intubation and positive pressure ventilation.
- Use small tidal volumes (6–8ml/kg—based on ideal body weight) to minimise volutrauma. Try to keep the peak inspiratory pressure <30cmH<sub>2</sub>O.
- The patient with chest trauma requires appropriate fluid resuscitation, but fluid overload will compound the lung contusion.

### Myocardial contusion

- Cardiac contusion must be considered in any patient with severe blunt chest trauma, particularly those with sternal fractures.
- Cardiac arrhythmias, ST changes on the ECG, and elevated serum concentrations of cardiac troponin suggest cardiac contusion.
- Elevated CVP in the presence of hypotension is the earliest indication of myocardial dysfunction secondary to severe cardiac contusion, but cardiac tamponade must be excluded.
- Echocardiography is the best method of confirming a cardiac contusion.
- Patients with severe cardiac contusion tend to have other serious injuries that will mandate their admission to an ICU—the decision to admit a patient to ICU rarely depends on the diagnosis of cardiac contusion alone.
- The severely contused myocardium will require inotropic support (e.g. dobutamine).

### Blunt aortic injury

- The thoracic aorta is at risk in any patient sustaining a significant decelerating force (e.g. fall from a height or high-speed road traffic accident). Only 10–15% of these patients will reach hospital alive; without surgery, two thirds of these survivors will die of delayed rupture within 2wk.
- The commonest site for aortic injury is at the aortic isthmus, just distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery at the level of the ligamentum arteriosum. Deceleration produces large shear forces at this site because the relatively mobile aortic arch travels forward relative to the fixed descending aorta.
- The tear in the intima and media may involve either part of or the whole circumference of the aorta, and in survivors the haematoma is contained by an intact aortic adventitia and mediastinal pleura.
- Patients sustaining blunt aortic injury usually have multiple injuries and may be hypotensive at presentation. However, upper extremity hypertension is present in 40% of cases as the haematoma compresses the true lumen, causing a '**pseudocoarctation**'.
- The supine chest radiograph will show a widened mediastinum in the vast majority of cases. Although this is a sensitive sign of blunt aortic injury, it is not very specific—90% of cases of widened mediastinum are due to venous bleeding.
- Signs on the chest radiograph suggesting possible blunt aortic injury are: *wide mediastinum, pleural capping, left haemothorax, deviation of the trachea to the right, depression of the left mainstem bronchus, loss of the aortic knob, deviation of the nasogastric tube to the right, fractures of the upper three ribs, and fracture of the thoracic spine.*
- If the chest radiograph is suspicious, further investigation will be required. **Contrast-enhanced CT** is the standard investigation for the diagnosis of blunt aortic injury.
- If blunt aortic injury is suspected, the patient's blood pressure should be maintained at 80–100mmHg systolic (using a  $\beta$ -blocker such as esmolol), in an effort to reduce the risk of further dissection or rupture. The use of pure vasodilators increases the pulse pressure and will not reduce the shear forces on the aortic wall. Once stable, the patient must be transferred immediately to the nearest cardiothoracic unit (see p902).

### Rupture of the diaphragm

- Rupture of the diaphragm occurs in about 5% of patients sustaining severe blunt trauma to the trunk.
- It can be difficult to diagnose initially—the diagnosis is often made late.
- Approximately 75% of ruptures occur on the left side. The stomach or colon commonly herniates into the chest and strangulation of these organs is a significant complication.
- Signs and symptoms may include diminished breath sounds, chest and abdominal pain, and respiratory distress.

- Diagnosis can be made on a plain radiograph (*elevated hemidiaphragm, gas bubbles above the diaphragm, shift of the mediastinum to the opposite side, nasogastric tube in the chest*). The definitive diagnosis may be made by instilling contrast media through the nasogastric tube and repeating the radiograph or, increasingly nowadays, by CT scan.
- Once the patient has been stabilised, the diaphragm will require surgical repair (see p396).

### Oesophageal rupture

- A severe blow to the upper abdomen may tear the lower oesophagus as gastric contents are forcefully ejected.
- The conscious patient will complain of *severe chest and abdominal pain, and mediastinal air may be visible on the chest radiograph*.
- Gastric contents may appear in the chest drain.
- The diagnosis is confirmed by contrast study of the oesophagus or endoscopy.
- Urgent surgery is essential—mediastinitis carries a high mortality (see p396).

### Tracheobronchial injury

- Laryngeal fractures are rare.
- Signs of laryngeal injury include *hoarseness, SC emphysema, and palpable fracture crepitus*.
- Total airway obstruction and severe respiratory distress are managed by intubation or a surgical airway—tracheostomy is indicated rather than cricothyroidotomy.
- Less severe laryngeal injuries may be assessed by CT before any appropriate surgery.
- Transections of the trachea or bronchi proximal to the pleural reflection cause massive mediastinal and cervical emphysema.
- Injuries distal to the pleural sheath lead to pneumothoraces—these will not resolve after chest drainage, since the bronchopleural fistula allows a large air leak.
- Most bronchial injuries occur within 2.5cm of the carina and the diagnosis is confirmed by bronchoscopy.
- Tracheobronchial injuries require urgent repair through a thoracotomy (see p397).

## Abdominal injuries

The priority is to determine quickly the need for laparotomy and not to waste time trying to define precisely which viscus is injured. Inspect the abdomen for bruising, lacerations, and distension. Careful palpation may reveal tenderness. Undertake a rectal examination to assess sphincter tone and to exclude the presence of pelvic fracture or a high prostate (indicative of a ruptured urethra). Abdominal ultrasound, CT, or, more rarely nowadays, diagnostic peritoneal lavage are indicated whenever clinical examination is unreliable:

- In patients with decreased consciousness (head injury, drugs, alcohol).
- In the presence of lower rib or pelvic fractures.
- When prolonged general anaesthesia for other injuries will make reassessment impossible.

Relative merits of diagnostic peritoneal lavage, ultrasound, and CT in blunt abdominal trauma

	<b>Diagnostic peritoneal lavage</b>	<b>Ultrasound</b>	<b>CT scan</b>
Indication	Diagnosis of haemoperitoneum in presence of haemodynamic instability	Screening for free fluid or solid organ injury in all blunt trauma patients	Diagnosis of organ injury in haemodynamically stable patients
Advantages	Fast, 85–98% sensitivity for intra-abdominal bleeding	Fast, sensitivity 83–87%, can detect free fluid and solid organ injury	Most specific for injury (92–98%)
Disadvantages	Invasive, falsely indicates need for laparotomy in some patients who could be managed conservatively, misses injury to diaphragm and retroperitoneum	Operator dependent, misses diaphragm, bowel, and some pancreatic injuries	Takes time to transfer to scanner, misses diaphragm, bowel, and some pancreatic injuries



## Pelvic fractures

- Pelvic fractures can cause life-threatening haemorrhage. *In the hypovolaemic, shocked patient the blood is either on the floor, in the chest, in the abdomen, or in the pelvis.*
- Bleeding associated with pelvic fractures arises mainly from the shearing and tearing of large veins lining the posterior pelvis. Bleeding can also arise from the raw, cancellous bony surfaces. Arterial bleeding accounts for major bleeding in less than 10% of cases.
- The two main fracture types responsible for severe haemorrhage are the open book type (or AP-compression) and the vertical shear pattern.
- Suspect pelvic fracture after motor vehicle accidents, especially where the victim has been ejected from the vehicle, pedestrian-vehicle contact, motorcycle accidents, and falls from more than 3m.
- Clinical signs are variable and unpredictable and the diagnosis is made with an AP pelvic radiograph at the end of the primary survey. Widening of the symphysis greater than 2cm or vertical displacement of one side of the pelvis indicates severe disruption and a high likelihood of major haemorrhage.

### Treatment

- A widening or diastasis of the symphysis of more than 2cm doubles the pelvic volume. Emergency treatment aims to reduce this volume and tamponade the bleeding vessels. In the emergency room, 'closing the book' using a folded sheet or purpose-made binder wrapped around the pelvis, and tying the legs together can reduce bleeding significantly.
- After stabilisation of the airway and breathing, the next step is rapid, emergency surgical stabilisation of the pelvis with an external fixator. Threaded self-drilling pins are inserted into the wings of the pelvis enabling the 'book' to be closed by clamping both halves of the pelvis together, tamponading the underlying venous bleeding.
- Application of an external fixator takes precedence over laparotomy in the presence of an open book or vertical shear pelvic fracture, otherwise the loss of tamponade associated with the laparotomy incision can lead to catastrophic retroperitoneal bleeding. Once the external fixator is applied, diagnostic peritoneal lavage can be performed (above the umbilicus to avoid pelvic haematoma). Alternatively, emergency focused ultrasound may exclude associated intraperitoneal bleeding. Laparotomy can be undertaken easily with the external fixator in place.
- The external fixator can be applied in the resuscitation room or the operating theatre depending on local policy.

### Associated injuries

Bladder injury 20%, urethral injury 14%, liver and splenic injury, spinal fracture, other limb injuries.

### Pitfalls

- Open fractures of the pelvis involving perforation of the vagina or rectum may be difficult to diagnose and are associated with a mortality of 30–50%.
- Beware urethral injury; do not attempt to catheterise if there is marked pelvic disruption on the radiograph or marked perineal bruising and urethral bleeding. Call a surgeon to undertake an emergency urethrogram.
- If there is no improvement in vital signs after external fixation, look for other causes of the bleeding, i.e. intraperitoneal (laparotomy) or arterial (angiography). Discuss with a radiologist the possibility of embolising bleeding pelvic vessels.

### Anaesthetic considerations

- These patients are usually in Class III shock and need early blood transfusion. Fixators may be applied under LA or GA.
- Patients with a fractured pelvis need analgesia: opioids are the easiest early treatment, but an epidural is effective if not contraindicated.

## Spinal injuries (see also pp250–4)

- If a spinal board has been used to transfer the patient to hospital, remove it as soon as possible: spinal boards are designed for extrication, not transport—they are very uncomfortable to lie on and will cause pressure sores quickly. Log roll the patient to enable a thorough inspection and palpation of the whole spine. A safe log roll requires five people: three to control and turn the patient's body, one to maintain the cervical spine in neutral alignment with the rest of the body, and one to palpate the spinous processes for tenderness/deformities.

The person controlling the cervical spine should command the team. Thorough clearance of the patient's spine can be complex:

- In the patient who is awake, alert, sober, neurologically normal, and without distracting injuries, the spine may be cleared if there is no pain at rest and, subsequently, on flexion and extension.
- All other patients will require some form of radiological imaging: lateral, AP, and open-mouth radiographs can be used to clear the cervical spine; CT scans may be used to image C1–C2 and/or C7–T1 if these areas are not seen clearly on the radiographs. In the unconscious patient, and those with multiple injuries, it is now common practice to image the entire cervical spine with CT and use 3D reconstruction to rule out significant injury. Some centres require a lateral radiograph as well as the CT scan—this can detect prevertebral soft tissue swelling, which may not be seen on a CT scan and which may indicate significant ligamentous injury. Many experts now accept the small possibility of missing a ligamentous injury on the CT scan in unconscious patients and 'clear' the cervical spine to enable optimal treatment and positioning on the ITU.
- The thoracolumbar spine is cleared with lateral and AP radiographs; alternatively, if the patient needs a CT scan of the abdomen and chest, the sagittal images obtained can be used to confirm spinal alignment—these images are often better than can be obtained with radiographs.
- If the patient is expected to regain consciousness within 24–48hr, many clinicians will wait until a clinical examination has been undertaken before clearing the spine formally.

In the conscious patient, a detailed neurological examination should detect any motor or sensory deficits.

Spinal cord injury can be categorised as:

- Incomplete or complete paraplegia.
- Incomplete or complete quadriplegia.

Any motor or sensory function below the level of injury indicates an incomplete injury. A cervical or high thoracic injury may cause loss of vasomotor tone, with hypotension and bradycardia; this requires fluid and vasopressor therapy. The principles of resuscitation for the spinal-injured patient are much the same as for the head-injured patient; the cord perfusion pressure should be maintained and hypoxia avoided. High-dose methylprednisolone therapy is used only rarely in the UK.

## Limb injuries (see also p504)

Limb injuries are rarely immediately life threatening, but should be examined to ensure an adequate circulation and absence of neurological deficit. The priority is to detect injuries that may be limb threatening. Align fractures carefully and splint appropriately, checking for pulses after each intervention. Tibial and forearm fractures are at particularly high risk of causing a **compartment syndrome**. The signs and symptoms of compartment syndrome are:

- Pain greater than expected and increased by passive stretching of the muscles.
- Paraesthesiae.
- Decreased sensation or functional loss of the nerves traversing the compartment.
- Tense swelling of the involved compartment.
- Loss of pulses is a very late sign—a distal pulse is usually present in a compartment syndrome.

Definitive diagnosis of a compartment syndrome is made by measurement of compartment pressures using a cannula connected to a transducer. In patients with normal blood pressure, compartment pressures in excess of 30–35mmHg are indicative of a compartment syndrome requiring urgent surgical decompression. (See also p506.)

## Burns: early management

(see also p531)

### General considerations

- Treat immediately life-threatening injuries first.
- Fire is the most common cause of burns in adults; scalding is the most common cause in children. Most injuries occur at home.
- Burns may be associated with alcohol intoxication, epilepsy, or a psychiatric illness. Consider the possibility of non-accidental injury in children.
- Mortality is related to age, total body surface area (TBSA) burnt, and burn depth.

### Airway (with cervical spine control)

- Burns to the head and neck may rapidly cause airway obstruction from massive oedema. Inhalation of hot gases usually causes airway injury above the larynx. Signs of potential airway compromise include singed nasal hairs, hoarse voice, productive 'brassy' cough, and soot in the sputum.
- Clinical judgement will determine the need for immediate intubation, particularly if the patient is to be transferred. Maximum wound oedema occurs 12–36hr after injury, although the airway may be compromised much earlier. *If in doubt, intubate early using an uncut tracheal tube: the subsequent oedema can be considerable.*

### Breathing

- Give oxygen 15l/min using a facemask with a reservoir bag.
- Intubation and mechanical ventilation may be required in patients who are:
  - Unconscious from coexisting trauma or from the inhalation of toxic substances such as carbon monoxide (CO).
  - Developing acute respiratory failure due to smoke inhalation or blast injury.
  - In need of extensive resuscitation, sedation, and analgesia following a major burn.

### Circulation (with haemorrhage control)

- Burns >25% TBSA produce a marked systemic inflammatory response accompanied by increase in capillary permeability and generalised oedema.
- Insert cannulae through intact skin wherever possible. Start IV fluids for burns:
  - >15% TBSA in adults.
  - >10% TBSA in children.
- Hartmann's solution is the preferred resuscitation fluid for burns.
  - The **fluid requirement** in the first 24hr in adults is 2ml/kg/% TBSA burn and in children 3ml/kg/% TBSA. *Give half the calculated fluid in the first 8hr from the time of injury and give the remainder in the next 16hr.*
  - Maintenance fluids are required in addition to the calculated resuscitation fluid.

- These calculated values are merely an estimate—the precise volumes required will be guided by urine output ( $>0.5$ – $1.0$  ml/kg) and cardiovascular response.
- Test the urine for haemochromogens (myoglobin/haemoglobin) arising from muscle damage and red cell breakdown. If positive:
  - Increase urine output to  $1$ – $2$  ml/kg/hr.
  - Alkalinise urine: add  $25$ mmol bicarbonate to each litre of Hartmann's solution.
  - Promote diuresis: add  $12.5$ g mannitol to each litre of Hartmann's solution.

### Neurological deficit

- Head injury is common in burns associated with road traffic crashes, falls, blasts, and explosions.
- Carbon monoxide (CO) poisoning and alcohol intoxication are common causes of altered consciousness.

### Exposure (with temperature control)

- Remove all clothing to assess the extent of burn injury. If clothing is stuck to the skin, cut around the area, leaving the adherent fabric in place. Keep the patient warm.
- Assess percentage TBSA burnt by reference to an adult or paediatric burn chart. The '**rule of nines**' conveniently divides the adult body surface into multiples of  $9\%$ ; this is inaccurate for small children. The palmar surface of a patient's hand and fingers is  $\sim 1\%$  TBSA. Detailed assessment of burn area is made by referring to a Lund and Browder chart (see p887).
- Assess burn depth: burn wounds may be superficial or deep; in practice, most injuries are a mixture of both.
  - Superficial—consist of burns to the epidermis only (sunburn, flashburns) or involving the superficial part of the dermis (producing a blister); these burns are painful and pinprick sensation is preserved. Healing will occur without the need for grafting.
  - Deep—consist of deep dermal burns (no capillary refill beneath the blister since blood vessels are destroyed) or full thickness (involving entire epidermis and dermis, possibly including underlying structures). Burns may have a white, waxy appearance. Pinprick sensation is lost.

### Immediate wound care

- Cool the burn wound with cold running water—this helps reduce production of inflammatory mediators and reduces tissue damage. Continue cooling for at least  $20$ min, taking care to prevent hypothermia, especially in the young child. Cooling the burn is an effective analgesic.
- Burn wounds are initially sterile. Cover with 'Clingfilm' to limit evaporation and heat loss and reduce pain.

### Monitoring

- Monitor  $SpO_2$ , ECG, urine output, core temperature, and NIBP. The pulse oximeter cannot detect carboxyhaemoglobin (COHb) and will over-read the oxygen saturation of haemoglobin: use a co-oximeter to obtain an accurate estimation of the percentage of oxyhaemoglobin.

- Insert an arterial line for unconscious patients and those with major burns and/or inhalational injury.
- Insert a nasogastric tube for large burns (>20% TBSA adult, >10% TBSA child): gastroparesis is common.
- Check the FBC (including haematocrit), urea/creatinine, electrolytes, glucose, and COHb, and crossmatch some blood.

### **Analgesia**

- All burns are painful; although skin sensation is lost over deep burns, the surrounding area is very painful.
- Give morphine IV, titrated to effect, and continue with a morphine infusion or PCA.

### **Escharotomy**

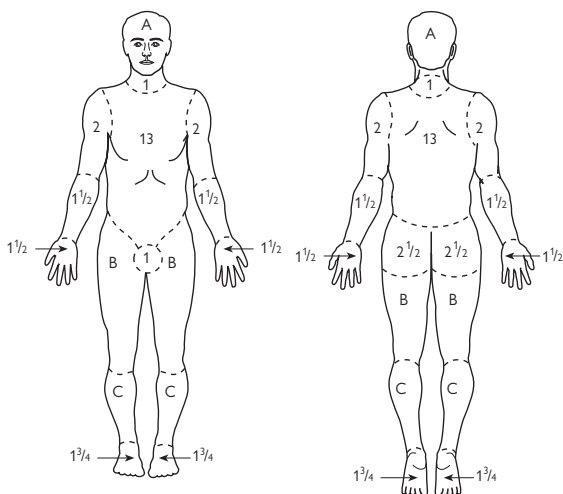
- Eschar is the coagulated dead skin of a full-thickness burn; it cannot expand as tissue oedema progresses. Circumferential burns to limbs may result in limb ischaemia; circumferential burns to the trunk may reduce chest wall compliance and impede ventilation.
- Escharotomy, the release of the burn wound by incision down to SC fat, is performed in the operating room. Incisions are made longitudinally along the medial and lateral sides of limbs; on the trunk, incisions are made along the anterior axillary line down to the upper abdomen. Ensure blood is available; bleeding can be extreme.
- Patients are often already sedated and ventilated. Conscious patients will need additional sedation and analgesia. Full thickness burns are painless, but incisions will extend onto normal skin for a short distance.

### **Special circumstances**

#### ***Inhalation of toxic substances***

Carbon monoxide poisoning is common: check COHb. The severity of symptoms may not correlate well with the COHb level. Poisoning may mimic alcohol intoxication.

- **Carbon monoxide** reduces the capacity of blood to carry  $O_2$  and causes tissue hypoxia. The  $PaO_2$  is normal. Carbon monoxide also binds avidly to other haem-containing compounds, especially the cytochrome system. The half-life of COHb is 250min when breathing room air; this is reduced to 40min when breathing 100%  $O_2$ . Oxygen therapy should be continued since a secondary peak of COHb occurs after 24hr and is attributed to washout of CO from cytochromes.
- Hyperbaric oxygen therapy reduces the half-life of COHb to just 15–30min; however, the precise role of hyperbaric oxygen is controversial and is highly subject to availability of hyperbaric facilities. Indications for discussion with the nearest hyperbaric facility include:
  - Any neurological abnormality or cognitive impairment.
  - Chest pain, abnormal ECG, and cardiac enzymes.
  - Pregnancy.
  - History of loss of consciousness.
  - Inability to assess adequately.



**Fig. 34.1** Lund and Browder chart

Relative percentage of area affected by growth (age in years)

	0	1	5	10	15	Adult
A: half of head	$9\frac{1}{2}$	$8\frac{1}{2}$	$6\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$
B: half of thigh	$2\frac{3}{4}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$	4	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{3}{4}$
C: half of leg	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$	3	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$

COHb (%)	Symptoms
0–15	None (smokers)
15–20	Headache, mild confusion
20–40	Nausea and vomiting, disorientation, fatigue
40–60	Hallucinations, ataxia, fits, coma
>60	Death

- Symptoms of COHb poisoning are shown in the table above.
- Other toxic products of combustion may include cyanide, ammonia, phosgene, hydrogen chloride, fluoride, bromide, and complex organic compounds. These toxic substances may produce:
  - A chemical burn to the respiratory tract.
  - Interstitial lung oedema, impaired gas exchange, and ARDS.



- Systemic acid/base disturbances.
- Hydrofluoric acid binds serum  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and causes hypocalcaemia.

### Chemical burns

- Hands and upper limbs are the most frequently affected areas.
- Staff must protect themselves with gloves, apron, and facemask.
- Remove contaminated clothing as early as possible—store in a secure container for disposal.
- Industrial or household alkalis and acids are commonly used chemicals, e.g. bleach, washing powder, disinfectants, drain cleaner, paint stripper. Immersion in complex hydrocarbons (petrol, diesel) without ignition may cause systemic toxicity. Phosphorus burns may result from fireworks or military applications.
- Tissue damage continues until the chemical is neutralised or diluted by washing with water. Early, continuous, and prolonged (1hr) irrigation with cold water is vital for all burns (except elemental Na, K, and Li).
- Specific treatments include:
  - **Hydrofluoric acid**, used in the glass industry, is highly toxic. Burns of 2% TBSA can be fatal. Tissue penetration by fluoride ions causes deep chemical burns. Inactivate toxic  $\text{F}^-$  ions by application of topical calcium gluconate burn gel, 10% gluconate local injections into the burn wound (0.5ml of a 10% solution/ $\text{cm}^2$  of surface burn extending 0.5cm beyond the margin of involved tissue; do not use the chloride salt because it is an irritant and may cause tissue damage) and consider intra-arterial (infuse a solution of 10ml 10% calcium gluconate in 40ml 5% glucose over 4hr) or IV (Bier's block—10–15ml 10% calcium gluconate plus 5000U heparin diluted up to 40ml in 5% glucose).
  - **Phosphorus**: white phosphorus ignites spontaneously when exposed to air; it can be extinguished by water. Apply copper sulphate solution which converts phosphorus to black cupric phosphide.
  - **Bitumen**: common injury in the UK from road maintenance. It is liquid at  $150^\circ\text{C}$  and causes thermal burns. Cool with water; remove the bitumen with vegetable or paraffin oil.

### Electrical burns

- **Low voltage** (<1000V) causes a local contact burn. The 50Hz A.C. domestic supply is particularly likely to cause cardiac arrest. Muscle spasm may prevent release of the electrical source. There is no associated deep tissue damage.
- **High voltage** (>1000V) causes flash burn or deep tissue damage due to current transmission. High-voltage cables carry 11 000 or 33 000V: electrocution produces an entrance and exit wound, which may require fasciotomy under GA. Haemochromogens released from muscle and damaged red cells may cause renal failure.
- A direct strike by **lightning** (ultra high voltage, high current) has a very high mortality. Side flash is more common: a nearby lightning strike produces current that flows over the surface of the victim causing superficial burns. Current may flow up one leg and down the other producing an entry and exit wound. Respiratory arrest is common.

**British Burn Association criteria for transfer to a burns centre**

- Burn >10% TBSA adult or >5% TBSA child, and any patient with full thickness burn >5% TBSA.
- Burn to: face, hands, feet, genitalia, perineum, or major joints.
- Electrical and chemical burns.
- Inhalational injury.
- Circumferential burn to the limbs or chest.
- Patients at the extremes of age.
- Patients with poor medical condition, which may complicate treatment.

## **Analgesia for the injured patient**

- Give effective analgesia to the injured patient as soon as practically possible.
- If the patient needs surgery imminently, then immediate induction of general anaesthesia is a logical and very effective solution to the patient's pain; if not, titrate IV opioid (e.g. fentanyl or morphine) to the desired effect.
- Head-injured patients require adequate pain relief for any other injuries; careful titration of IV morphine or fentanyl will provide effective pain relief without significant respiratory depression.
- Regular intravenous paracetamol will reduce the dose of opioid required.
- NSAIDs provide moderate analgesia but are relatively contraindicated in patients with hypovolaemia; these patients depend on renal prostaglandins to maintain renal blood flow.
- Entonox is useful for short procedures such as fracture splintage.
- Local anaesthetic blocks are ideal for the acute trauma patient; unfortunately, relatively few blocks are both simple and effective. Femoral nerve blockade will provide analgesia for a fracture of the femoral shaft. Intercostal nerve blocks will provide analgesia for rib fractures, but the duration is relatively short. Continuous thoracic epidural analgesia will provide excellent pain relief for patients with multiple rib fractures.

## Anaesthesia for major trauma

### General considerations

The following considerations are of relevance to the anaesthetist during surgery for the severely injured patient:

- **Prolonged surgery**—the patient will be at risk from pressure areas and from heat loss. Anaesthetists (and surgeons) should rotate to avoid exhaustion. Avoid nitrous oxide in those cases expected to last more than 6h.
- **Fluid loss**—be prepared for heavy blood and ‘third space’ losses. The combination of hypothermia and massive transfusion will result in profound coagulopathy. Expect to see a significant metabolic acidosis in patients with major injuries. This needs frequent monitoring (arterial blood gases) and correction with fluids and inotropes, as appropriate. Massive haemorrhage is treated with blood, FFP, and platelets in a ratio of 1:1:1. Cryoprecipitate is given if the fibrinogen concentration is  $<1\text{g/l}$ . Give 10ml calcium chloride if ionised calcium  $<0.9\text{mmol/l}$ . Consider giving recombinant factor VIIa if coagulopathy persists despite adequate treatment with other blood products (usually 10 units of RBCs, 8 units of FFP, two adult therapeutic doses of platelets, and two packs of cryoprecipitate will have been given). Give rFVIIa  $100\text{ }\mu\text{g/kg}$ . To avoid any wastage, round the dose up or down to the nearest 1.2mg vial. Clinical response is usually obvious within 20min. If no response within 20min, consider a second dose of rFVIIa  $100\text{ }\mu\text{g/kg}$ .
- **Multiple surgical teams**—it is more efficient if surgical teams from different specialties are able to work simultaneously. However, this may severely restrict the amount of space available to the anaesthetist.
- **Acute lung injury**—trauma patients are at significant risk of hypoxia resulting from acute lung injury. This may be secondary to direct pulmonary contusion or due to fat embolism from orthopaedic injuries. Advanced ventilatory modes may be required to maintain appropriate oxygenation.

### Regional anaesthesia

Regional anaesthesia may be considered as an adjunct, although preoperative urgency, haemodynamic instability, coagulopathy, and the possibility of compartment syndrome often make it impractical.

### Problems

- **Unexplained hypotension** and tachycardia: consider hypovolaemia, pneumothorax, or pericardial tamponade.
- **Unexplained hypoxia** is often associated with a rise in inflation pressure: consider tension pneumothorax.
- **Unexplained hypertension**: consider pain, raised ICP (search for associated neurological signs, obtain brain CT scan), or rarely traumatic disruption of thoracic aorta (causing a pseudo-coarctation effect).

## **The multiply injured patient: common dilemmas**

- **The head-injured patient with an abdominal injury**—which of a laparotomy and brain CT should be undertaken first? If the patient is haemodynamically unstable the laparotomy has priority. Hypotension will compound any brain injury and bleeding must be controlled rapidly. If the patient is haemodynamically stable, a CT scan of both the brain and the abdomen may be appropriate.
- **The head-injured patient with lower limb fractures**—in general, in the haemodynamically stable patient, limb fractures should be stabilised as soon as possible. In the presence of a significant brain injury, intracranial pressure should be monitored before intramedullary nailing of limb fractures.
- **The patient with pulmonary contusion and lower limb fractures.** Intramedullary reaming will cause some degree of fat embolism. Whether this results in significant risk to the patient is contentious. In the presence of severe pulmonary contusion, some orthopaedic surgeons would elect to stabilise lower limb fractures temporarily with an external fixator before undertaking definitive nailing later.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Post cardiac arrest resuscitation care

Following cardiac arrest, restoration of a spontaneous circulation (ROSC) is just the first step in what may be a prolonged period of treatment. Unless the duration of cardiac arrest is very short, the patient is likely to develop the post cardiac arrest syndrome, which is associated with a marked systemic inflammatory response. The anaesthetist may be expected to initiate treatment in the emergency department, the operating room, the critical care unit, or on the general ward. The aims of post resuscitation care are to:

- Prevent a further cardiac arrest.
- Define the underlying pathology.
- Limit organ damage.
- Predict non-survivors.

### Prevention of further cardiac arrest

- Optimise oxygenation—after an immediate return to full consciousness following a short-duration cardiac arrest, give oxygen via a facemask.
- Other patients may require assisted ventilation via a tracheal tube. Maintain adequate sedation with a propofol infusion, combined with opioid as required.
- Provide ventilation to maintain normocarbida—excessive ventilation will cause hypocarbida and cerebral ischaemia from cerebral vasoconstriction.
- Correct electrolyte disturbances, particularly  $K^+$ ,  $Mg^{2+}$ , and  $Ca^{2+}$ .
- Control the blood glucose: treat the blood glucose with insulin if it exceeds 10mmol/l; maintain in the range 4–10mmol/l.

### Define the underlying pathology

- Establish the patient's pre-arrest medical condition.
- Confirm correct placement of tracheal tube and exclude pneumothorax.
- Listen to the heart for evidence of murmurs and seek evidence of ventricular failure.
- Record the GCS (see p873).

### Limit organ damage

- If there is evidence of ST elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI), coronary artery reperfusion therapy must be started rapidly. This is achieved either with thrombolytics or, preferably (if immediately available), by percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI).
- Patients remaining comatose after ROSC, particularly after out-of-hospital cardiac arrest, should be cooled to 32–34°C for 12–24hr and then rewarmed slowly. Cooling is started with ice-cold IV saline 20–30ml/kg, application of wet towels to the torso, and ice to the groins, axillae, and neck. Cooling is continued either externally or internally (intravascular).

### Prediction of non-survivors

- Approximately 5% of those sustaining an out-of-hospital cardiac arrest will survive to hospital discharge; the figure for in-hospital cardiac arrest is about 15%.
- Short duration of cardiac arrest/CPR correlates with more rapid ROSC and better neurological outcomes.
- Prognostication in unconscious patients after more protracted CPR remains unreliable for up to 72h after ROSC. If therapeutic hypothermia is used this time may need to be extended to 72h after normothermia has been restored.
- Myocardial, neurological, and other organ function may all improve slowly, given appropriate support over a period of time: at least 72h of intensive care should be considered in the comatose patient with ROSC following cardiac arrest.<sup>1</sup>

1 Nolan JP, Neumar RW, Adrie C, et al. (2008). Post-cardiac arrest syndrome. Epidemiology, pathophysiology, treatment, and prognostication. A consensus statement from the International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation; the American Heart Association Emergency Cardiovascular Care Committee; the Council on Cardiovascular Surgery and Anesthesia; the Council on Cardiopulmonary, Perioperative, and Critical Care; the Council on Clinical Cardiology; and the Stroke Council. *Resuscitation*, **79**, 350–379.



## Septic shock

### Definitions

- **Infection:** the inflammatory response to the presence of micro-organisms or the invasion of normally sterile host tissue by those organisms.
- **Bacteraemia:** the presence of viable bacteria in the blood.
- **The Systemic Inflammatory Response Syndrome (SIRS):** the patient exhibits two of the following four abnormalities:
  - Temperature  $>38^{\circ}\text{C}$  or  $<36^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
  - Heart rate  $>90\text{bpm}$ .
  - Respiratory rate  $>20$  breaths/min or  $\text{PaCO}_2 <4.3\text{kPa}$  ( $32\text{mmHg}$ ).
  - White blood cell count  $>12\,000$  cells/ $\text{mm}^3$  or  $<4000$  cells/ $\text{mm}^3$  or  $>10\%$  immature cells (band forms).
- **Sepsis:** SIRS resulting from infection.
- **Severe sepsis:** sepsis associated with organ dysfunction, hypoperfusion, or hypotension. Hypoperfusion and perfusion abnormalities include lactic acidosis, oliguria, and an acute alteration in mental status.
- **Septic shock:** sepsis with hypotension (systolic blood pressure  $<90\text{mmHg}$  or a reduction of  $>40\text{mmHg}$  from baseline) and perfusion abnormalities or the requirement for vasoactive drugs despite adequate fluid resuscitation in the absence of other causes for hypotension.

### Pathology

- The response to sepsis is complex and involves many pro- and anti-inflammatory mediators; the severity of illness is determined more by the nature of the inflammatory response than by the infection.
- Most abdominal sepsis is caused by Gram-negative bacteria which contain endotoxin in their outer membrane. **Endotoxin** is a lipopolysaccharide implicated in macrophage and monocyte activation and the release of numerous mediators including tumour necrosis factor (TNF), interleukin 1 (IL-1), and other cytokines, plus prostaglandins, leukotrienes, the complement and fibrinolytic systems, platelet-activating factor, and nitric oxide (NO).
- Pathological effects caused by these mediators include vasodilatation, increased capillary permeability, impaired tissue oxygen utilisation, and myocardial depression.
- Tissues may become hypoxic for several reasons, including hypotension (vasodilatation, hypovolaemia, myocardial depression); microvascular thrombosis (activation of coagulation); tissue oedema acting as a barrier to oxygen diffusion; and shunting past some capillary beds. This results in anaerobic metabolism and lactic acidosis. In sepsis, despite adequate oxygen delivery, lactic acidosis may also be caused by mitochondrial dysfunction. Reperfusion of previously hypoxic tissues can cause further release of damaging reactive oxygen species.

## Resuscitation

The resuscitation of a septic patient should be started as soon as the condition is recognised; it should not be delayed pending admission to ICU or transfer to the operating room. Induction of anaesthesia in the septic patient is hazardous and every effort should be made to resuscitate the patient adequately preoperatively; whether or not this is achievable will depend on the urgency of the surgery. International guidelines for the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock have been updated recently.<sup>1</sup>

- Anaesthetic induction drugs and volatile agents will compound the vasodilatory and negative inotropic effects of sepsis. Surgery may initially worsen the septic state by further releasing bacteria, endotoxins, and cytokines, and causing haemorrhage and fluid loss.
- Establish vascular access and monitoring as soon as possible and before induction of anaesthesia:
  - Two functioning, large-bore IV cannulae
  - CVP line
  - Arterial line
  - Urinary catheter
  - In the presence of advanced sepsis consider non-invasive cardiac output monitoring using the method preferred locally. Measurement of central venous oxygen saturation may be valuable.
- While establishing monitoring, give oxygen and fluid. Use crystalloids and/or colloids but avoid high or medium molecular weight starch which, in the presence of sepsis, increases the risk of renal failure.
- **Resuscitation goals** during the first 6hr of resuscitation include:
  - CVP 8–12mmHg (use a higher target CVP of 12–15mmHg in the presence of mechanical ventilation)
  - Mean arterial pressure (MAP)  $\geq 65$ mmHg
  - Urine output  $\geq 0.5$ ml/kg/hr
  - Central venous (superior vena cava) oxygen saturation ( $ScvO_2$ )  $\geq 70\%$ .
- Once adequate fluid has been given, start a **noradrenaline** infusion to maintain MAP  $\geq 65$ mmHg.
- Give intravenous **hydrocortisone** (50mg 6-hourly) if hypotension remains poorly responsive to adequate fluid resuscitation and vasopressors.
- Ensure blood is available—haemoglobin concentration will decrease due to haemodilution, and coagulopathy may cause excessive blood loss. Maintain Hb  $>7.0$ g/dl—a higher target value will be appropriate in the presence of coronary artery disease, acute haemorrhage, and persistent lactic acidosis.
- Begin intravenous antibiotics as early as possible and always within the first hour of recognising severe sepsis and septic shock.
- Obtain appropriate cultures before starting antibiotics provided this does not significantly delay the antibiotics. The choice of antibiotics is guided by local microbiology policies.
- If the patient requires surgery, discuss with critical care staff so plans can be made for admission to an appropriate unit for Level 2 or 3 care.

### Interpretation of investigations in the septic patient

- FBC: expect a high WBC with a neutrophilia (a low WBC is evidence of overwhelming sepsis); a low platelet count is common.
- U&E: urea and sodium raised proportionately more than creatinine indicates dehydration; high creatinine indicates renal impairment.
- Coagulation screen: increased INR indicates septic coagulopathy (unless on warfarin).
- Blood glucose: usually raised; low glucose indicates advanced sepsis or hepatic dysfunction.
- Arterial blood gases: metabolic acidosis is common; there may be compensatory hyperventilation unless the patient is obtunded. Hypoxia is common in severe sepsis.
- Blood lactate: a high blood lactate indicates tissue hypoxia. If there is acidaemia with a normal lactate, check the creatinine and urine output (renal failure is the most likely cause of non-lactic acidosis in the septic patient; another cause is diabetic ketoacidosis).
- The chest radiograph may show evidence of non-cardiogenic pulmonary oedema indicating the development of acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS).

### Induction and maintenance of anaesthesia

- Rapid sequence induction is normally used in any patient with severe sepsis; however, some experienced intensive care clinicians prefer to titrate the induction drugs slowly in an attempt to avoid causing cardiovascular collapse.
- All induction drugs will cause hypotension—use reduced doses. Use of a short-acting opioid, such as alfentanil, will enable a significant reduction in the dose of induction drug. Avoid etomidate in critically ill patients—a single dose suppresses the adrenocortical axis for at least 24h. The use of **ketamine** 1–2mg/kg is increasingly popular as an induction drug in the critically ill.
- Ensure vasopressor drugs are available before inducing anaesthesia: **adrenaline** drawn up in two concentrations (10ml of 1:10 000 and 1:100 000) provides the flexibility to reverse the cardiovascular effects of induction drugs.
- Insert a nasogastric tube if not already in place.
- The use of epidural blockade for analgesia is controversial in sepsis, although, depending on the precise circumstances, some experienced clinicians still consider the benefits outweigh the risks.
  - A potential bacteraemia may be considered to be a contraindication.
  - Coagulopathy may preclude insertion.
  - Hypotensive effects are likely to be exaggerated.
  - If insertion of an epidural is not contraindicated by other factors, consider inserting a catheter but waiting until the patient is stable before establishing the block.
- Maintain anaesthesia with volatile anaesthetic or propofol. **Noradrenaline** infusion counteracts hypotension and maintains MAP  $\geq 65$ mmHg.

- The effects and duration of action of opioids other than remifentanyl will be increased by impaired hepatic and renal perfusion.
- Avoid NSAIDs in patients who are persistently hypotensive or septic.

## Maintaining tissue oxygenation in the operating room

### Fluids

- Continue to give fluids, aiming for CVP 12–15mmHg (assuming mechanical ventilation).
- Colloid stays in the circulation longer than crystalloid, but this difference is not as great as was commonly believed.
- Monitor ABGs regularly, and give blood to maintain a haemoglobin concentration of 7–9g/dl.

### Inotropes/vasoconstrictors

Having ensured adequate fluid resuscitation, use noradrenaline to maintain the MAP  $\geq 65$ mmHg—this will counteract the vasodilatation associated with sepsis and also provides some inotropic effect. If cardiac output is thought to be inadequate despite fluid and noradrenaline, consider adding dobutamine or adrenaline.

### Oxygen and PEEP

- Critically ill patients should be anaesthetised with equipment that can provide positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP) and variable I:E ratios.
- Oxygenation may be impaired by non-cardiogenic pulmonary oedema, which is caused by the increased capillary permeability in sepsis.
- Increase the  $\text{FiO}_2$  until  $\text{SaO}_2$  is at least 90% and use 5cmH<sub>2</sub>O PEEP.
- Increase the PEEP to 10cmH<sub>2</sub>O if the patient is still hypoxic despite  $\text{FiO}_2$  0.5. Consider an alveolar recruitment manoeuvre (hold lungs in inspiration at 40cmH<sub>2</sub>O for up to 40s).

### Ventilation

- Increased capillary permeability in sepsis may reduce lung compliance and produce high airway pressures.
- Shear forces caused by ventilation with high tidal volumes or high inspiratory pressures will exacerbate lung injury. In patients with early ARDS, every effort should be made to limit peak airway pressure to 30cmH<sub>2</sub>O and tidal volume to 6–8ml/kg ideal body weight. These target values can be reconsidered if the resultant minute ventilation fails to achieve a pH  $>7.15$ .
- Monitor ABGs regularly: a base deficit or raised lactate indicates inadequate resuscitation, although both of these abnormalities can be associated with an adrenaline infusion.
- A  $\text{ScvO}_2 < 70\%$  implies inadequate oxygen delivery. Fluids and inotropic treatment may be indicated. Non-invasive measurement of cardiac output will assist treatment.
- The trends indicated by these monitors are valuable; single readings taken in isolation are difficult to interpret.

1 Dellinger RP, Levy MM, Carlet JM, et al. (2008). Surviving Sepsis Campaign: international guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock. *Intensive Care Medicine*, **34**, 17–60.

## The ICU patient going to theatre

The planning, transfer, and monitoring of a critically ill patient on the ICU needing surgery can be challenging. Physiological instability should be anticipated, detected, and acted upon promptly and effectively. Senior anaesthetists and surgeons must be involved.

### Consent

Informed consent is often impossible as the patient may be sedated or comatose. Whilst the family is not able to give consent in law, the reasons for surgery and risks should be discussed with them whenever possible.

### Preoperative assessment

- Routine aspects of the preoperative assessment (e.g. history of previous anaesthetics, chronic medical conditions, allergies) are just as relevant to the critically ill patient as they are to the elective case.
- Assess the patient's current condition from discussion with critical care team and from information on the observation and drug charts.
- Note the current fluid requirements and rate/concentration of inotrope infusions; ensure that there is an adequate supply of inotrope prepared for theatre; consider which vasopressors may be required.
- Note the patient's oxygen requirement, lung compliance, minute volume, PEEP, etc., to enable prediction of the ventilator settings that will be necessary in theatre. In the absence of a suitable ventilator in the operating room, it will be necessary to use a ventilator from the ICU.
- Check IV access and consider if any additional cannulae may be required. Many ICU patients have had all peripheral access removed.
- Check which antibiotics the patient is receiving and whether any doses will be due in theatre.
- Check the most recent FBC, U&E, and ABG, and ensure that blood is available.
- If the patient is being transferred to a more remote facility, such as the X-ray department, ensure adequate anaesthetic assistance. If the patient has very poor lung compliance and is requiring high levels of PEEP, it may be necessary to use an ICU ventilator.
- On rare occasions it may be necessary to undertake an MRI scan on a critically ill patient—the inability to take ferrometallic objects into the scan room is problematic (see pp716–23).

### Transfer to the operating room

- Familiarise yourself with the transport equipment and ensure it is functioning before leaving the ICU.
- If the patient is already ventilated, establish on the transfer ventilator before leaving the ICU to ensure adequate ventilation can be maintained. Modern transfer ventilators have a PEEP facility and the more sophisticated machines can provide pressure control ventilation with variable I:E ratios.
- Consider increasing the patient's sedation for the transfer.

- If the patient is not already sedated and ventilated decide whether to induce in ICU, the anaesthetic room, or theatre: factors influencing the decision will be safety, available assistance, haemodynamic instability, and patient comfort.
- Monitor the patient fully en-route.
- Disentangle all lines, re-establish full monitoring, and check IV access before the start of surgery.

### Transfer back to ICU

- Inform the ICU staff when surgery is about to finish; this enables them to prepare to receive the patient and possibly to assist in the transfer.
- Ensure that a full verbal and written handover is given to the ICU medical and nursing staff and communicate the postoperative requirements.

### Further reading

Dellinger RP, Levy MM, Carlet JM, et al. (2008). Surviving Sepsis Campaign: international guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock. *Intensive Care Medicine*, **34**, 17–60. Also at [www.survivingsepsis.org](http://www.survivingsepsis.org).

## Transferring the critically ill

Safe transfer demands experienced staff and careful preparation. Several studies have demonstrated that patients are often inadequately resuscitated and monitored during transfer. Specialised transport teams improve outcome but are not always available or appropriate. Before transferring any critically ill patient the risks of transfer should be weighed against the potential benefits of treatment at the receiving unit.

### Dangers of transfer

- Deranged physiology worsened by movement (acceleration/deceleration leads to cardiovascular instability)—15% of patients develop avoidable hypoxia and hypotension.
- Cramped conditions, isolation, and temperature and pressure changes.
- Vehicular crashes.

### Principles of safe transfer

- Staff experienced in intensive care and transfer—specialist transport teams may improve outcome, but may cause delay.
- Use of appropriate equipment and vehicle, extensive monitoring, careful stabilisation, continuing reassessment, direct handover, documentation, and audit.

### The transfer vehicle

- Adequate space, light, gases, electricity, and communications.
- Mode: consider urgency, mobilisation time, geography, weather, traffic, and costs.
- Consider air if over 150 miles (remember decreasing  $\text{PaO}_2$  at altitude, expanding air spaces requiring naso-/orogastric tube, temperature, noise, and vibration).

### Aeromedical transfer

- Hazards depend on whether the craft is rotary (helicopter) or fixed wing (aeroplane).
- Helicopters fly at relatively low altitude and therefore avoid some of the problems of aeroplanes.
- High altitude decreases the partial pressure of oxygen—at 1500m arterial  $\text{PaO}_2$  is about 10kPa (75mmHg). Most aircraft are pressurised to 1500–2000m.
- Decreased barometric pressure leads to expansion of gas-filled cavities (patients should have nasogastric tubes and may need chest drains).
- Pressurising the cabin pressure to sea level can decrease these problems but increases fuel costs!
- Air in the tracheal tube cuff should be replaced by saline.

### Problems during transfer

- Vibration leads to failure and inaccuracy of non-invasive BP. Invasive monitoring should be used if at all possible.
- Access to the patient may be limited.
- Acceleration/deceleration may lead to cardiovascular instability.
- Hypothermia, particularly during transfer between vehicles.

### Specific considerations for children

- Hypothermia is a greater risk, particularly in the infant. Monitor central temperature and use warming mats, 'bubble wrap', hats, etc. to maintain temperature.
- Secure IV access is paramount before departure.

### Calculating oxygen reserves

Operation time (in minutes) for different minute volumes at  $\text{FiO}_2$  1.0

Size of oxygen cylinder [volume (litres)]	Minute volume 5l/min	Minute volume 7l/min	Minute volume 10l/min
D (340)	56	42	30
E (680)	113	85	61
F (1360)	226	170	123

### Battery life

- This can vary greatly, depending on manufacturer, but must be known.
- The charge time is usually considerable.
- Battery life will vary depending on the rate of infusion.

Examples of battery lives for pumps running at 5–10ml/hr

Type	Battery life (estimated) (hr)	Charge time (estimated) (hr)
Graseby 3100	3	14
Alaris IVAC	6	24
Graseby Omnifuse	8	18

### Preparation

- Ensure meticulous stabilisation prior to transfer.
- Take a full history and make a thorough examination.
- Full monitoring including invasive BP and CVP where indicated.
- Blood tests, radiographs, and CT prior to transfer.
- Explain procedure to patient and family.



**Checklist for preparation**

<b>A: airway</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Is the airway safe? If in doubt, intubate.</li><li>• Cervical spine control.</li></ul>
<b>B: breathing</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Portable ventilator settings. Check ABG before departure after 15min on the portable ventilator.</li><li>• Self-inflating bag-valve-device in the event of a ventilator/oxygen failure.</li><li>• Suction.</li><li>• Adequate sedation, analgesia, and relaxation.</li><li>• Adequate O<sub>2</sub> reserves.</li><li>• Insert a chest drain if there is a possibility of a pneumothorax (e.g. fractured ribs).</li></ul>
<b>C: circulation</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Stable circulation with good access.</li><li>• Controlled external bleeding.</li><li>• Invasive BP and CVP, when indicated.</li><li>• Inotropes—if in doubt have them prepared and ready to run.</li><li>• Pumps and batteries.</li><li>• Insert a urinary catheter and monitor output.</li></ul>
<b>D: disability</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• GCS (mannitol, IPPV), pupillary signs.</li><li>• Naso-/orogastric tube.</li></ul>
<b>E: exposure</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Temperature loss.</li><li>• Splint long bones.</li></ul>
<b>F: forgotten?</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• All notes, referral letter, results, radiographs (including CT scans), and blood products.</li><li>• Inform the receiving unit that you are leaving the base hospital.</li><li>• Inform relatives.</li><li>• Take contact numbers.</li><li>• Take warm clothing, mobile phone, food, and credit card/money for the team!</li><li>• Plan for the return journey.</li><li>• Medical indemnity and insurance for death or disability of transfer staff.</li></ul>

## Equipment and drug box guidelines

### Airway and breathing

Suction equipment	Tracheal tubes, connectors, ties
Stethoscope	Tracheostomy tubes (if appropriate)
Facemasks, airways, self-inflating bag with reservoir	Laryngoscopes, spare batteries
Gum elastic bougie	

### Circulation

Cannulae + IV dressings and tape	IV fluids and giving set
Syringes and needles	Mini sharps receptacle

### Resuscitation drugs

Adenosine	Noradrenaline
Hydrocortisone	Lorazepam
Adrenaline	Salbutamol nebulisers
Lidocaine	Glucose
Amiodarone	Sodium bicarbonate
Metoprolol	Furosemide
Atropine	Saline ampoules
Naloxone	GTN spray
Calcium chloride	Plain drug labels

### Sedation/muscle relaxants

Propofol	Midazolam
Atracurium, vecuronium, or rocuronium	Suxamethonium

### Paediatric equipment—extras

Paediatric oxygen mask with reservoir bag	Tracheal tubes
Small cannulae	Paediatric drug doses
Appropriate self-inflating bag with reservoir	Laryngoscope and styles
Intraosseous needle	Magill forceps and suction catheters
Masks and airways	10% glucose for infusion

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Anaesthetic emergencies

## Andrew McIndoe

- Introduction 908
  - Adult Basic Life Support (BLS) 910
  - Adult Advanced Life Support (ALS) 912
  - Severe bradycardia 916
  - Narrow complex tachycardia 918
  - Broad complex tachycardia 920
  - Severe hypotension in theatre 922
  - Severe hypertension in theatre 924
  - Severe hypoxia in theatre 926
  - Severe laryngospasm 930
  - Air/gas embolism 932
  - Aspiration 934
  - Status asthmaticus 936
  - Pulmonary oedema 938
  - Failed intubation 940
  - Can't intubate, can't ventilate 942
  - Malignant hyperthermia 946
  - Anaphylaxis 948
  - Intra-arterial injection 950
  - Unsuccessful reversal of neuromuscular blockade 952
  - Paediatric emergencies: Advanced Life Support 954
  - Paediatric emergencies: ventricular fibrillation or pulseless VT 956
  - Paediatric emergencies: neonatal resuscitation 958
  - Paediatric emergencies: collapsed septic child 960
  - Paediatric emergencies: major trauma 962
  - Paediatric emergencies: acute severe asthma 964
  - Paediatric emergencies: anaphylaxis 966
  - Paediatric doses and equipment 968
- See also:
- Maternal resuscitation 780
  - Amniotic fluid embolism 777
  - Massive obstetric haemorrhage 774

## Introduction

Anaesthetic emergencies may develop rapidly into life-threatening conditions that cannot be managed effectively by an individual and require a team response. Although critical incidents frequently occur in the presence of a theatre team, the anaesthetist is likely to be the person present with the specialist knowledge and skills to deal with the problem. This can give rise to intense pressure. Always send for help early. An extra pair of hands and an independent pair of eyes and ears are invaluable assistance, even if only to reassure you that you are already dealing with the situation appropriately. Critical incident protocols and drills have been designed to aid in the management of the more complex or common emergencies, and some are detailed below. However, a protocol-driven approach is heavily reliant upon recognition that a serious problem exists.

### General considerations to help deal with any unanticipated anaesthetic crisis

#### *Communication*

- Declare problems early to the rest of the theatre team before you lose control of the situation. Basic resuscitation measures should be ongoing whilst you figure out the diagnosis.
- No matter whatever or whoever ‘caused’ the crisis, use objective and non-judgmental comments. Insults tend to provoke an aggressive or withdrawal response from the recipient and inhibit team function.
- To communicate effectively, your messages or commands must be: **ADDRESSED**—ask specifically named individuals to perform tasks. **HEARD**—reduce background noise and distractions by turning off the radio, etc. **UNDERSTOOD**—if you make a complex request, ask the recipient to repeat it back to you.
- If the cause of the problem is unknown, say so. Say what you don’t know as well as what you do know. Encourage others to contribute.
- Reappraise the situation regularly. Update the rest of the team with new information. If you are still unsure about what to do, send for help—a second person with a fresh approach may pick up on missed clues.

#### *Invoke a team approach*

- A team should have one clearly identified leader, who should make effective use of the mixture of skills and resources available.
- A good team leader is able to step back from the situation to consider the whole picture. This can only be achieved by delegation of responsibility for tasks to other members of the team.
- A repeated and systematic ABC approach helps render the patient ‘safe’, buys thinking time, and increases the likelihood of detecting signs that may lead to a definitive diagnosis.
- Most members of an impromptu emergency team will need to adopt the role of ‘team players’. A good team player is adaptable, assumes complete responsibility for delegated problems, and feels comfortable enough to advocate an opinion or feed back information to the rest of the team.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Adult Basic Life Support (BLS)

### Aims when managing a 'collapsed' patient in a hospital

- Immediate recognition of cardiorespiratory arrest.
- Help summoned quickly by telephone.
- CPR to be started immediately using airway adjuncts.
- If indicated, defibrillation attempted rapidly (within 3min at most).

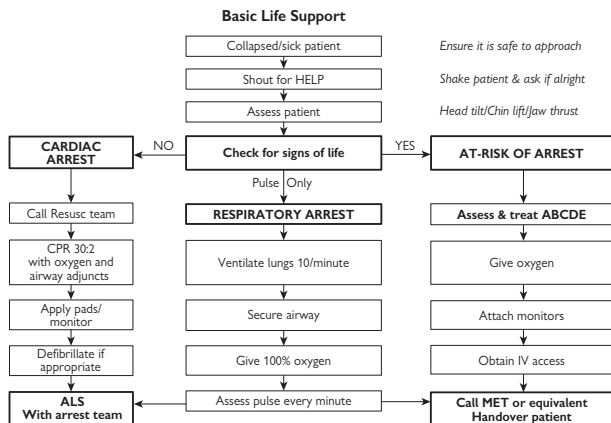


Fig. 35.1 Adult Basic Life Support algorithm.

### Patient assessment

- Turn the patient onto their back.
- Optimise the airway and remove any visible obstruction.
- Look, listen, and feel for signs of life. Put your ear by the patient's mouth whilst observing for chest/abdominal movements and feeling for a carotid pulse. Take no more than 10s.
- Occasional gasps or slow laboured breathing are indicative of actual or impending cardiac arrest.

### Chest compressions

- Give cycles of 30 compressions followed by two ventilations.
- Rate of delivery = 100/min.
- Finding the right place: don't waste time. Ideally, locate the middle of the lower half of the sternum. Place the heel of one hand there, with the other hand on top of the first. Interlock the fingers of both hands and lift them to ensure that pressure is not applied over the patient's ribs. Do not apply any pressure over the upper abdomen or bottom tip of the sternum.

- Aim to depress the sternum approximately 4–5cm (or one-third of the chest depth) and apply only enough pressure to achieve this.
- The pressure should be firm, controlled, and applied vertically. Erratic or violent action is dangerous.
- About the same time should be spent in the compression phase as in the released phase.

### Breathing

- Give 30 chest compressions before giving TWO ventilations.
- Use an inspiratory time of 1s and sufficient volume to make the chest rise.
- Add supplemental oxygen as soon as it is available.
- Once the airway is secured give uninterrupted compressions at 100/min and simultaneously ventilate the lungs at a rate of 10 breaths/min.

### Application of defibrillation pads

- Analyse the rhythm using 'quick-look' paddles or self-adhesive pads as soon as is possible.
- Apply self-adhesive defibrillation pads over the sternum and vertically in the mid-axillary line.
- Don't interrupt chest compressions until you are ready to assess the rhythm.
- Defibrillation is indicated for VF/VT.

### Suspected cervical spine injury

- Despite the risk of spinal cord damage, untreated cardiorespiratory arrest will kill the patient.
- Potential secondary damage will be minimised by in-line immobilisation of the C-spine.
- Try to use a jaw thrust and/or a Guedel airway to open the airway rather than tilting the neck.
- Avoid placing the patient in the recovery position.

### Witnessed monitored VT/VF arrest

- Check the carotid pulse.
- Consider a single precordial thump.
- If a defibrillator is immediately available, give a single 360J shock.
- Start CPR immediately after delivery of the shock without pausing to assess pulse or heart rhythm.

### At-risk patients

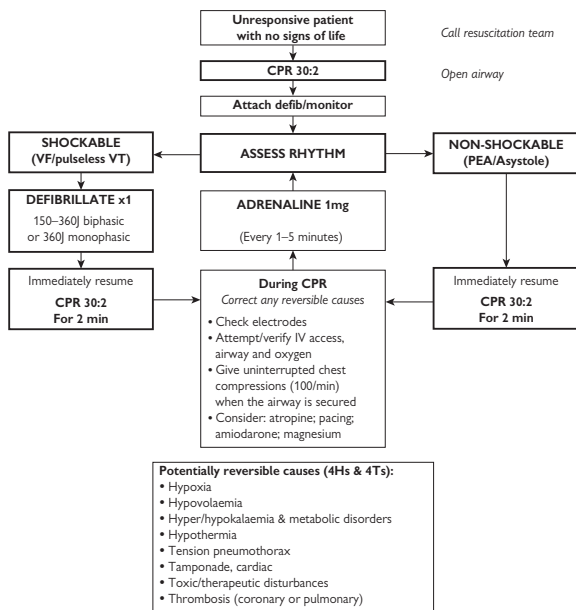
- Collapsed patients with signs of life (breathing and a pulse) often require urgent medical assessment and intervention to prevent a cardiorespiratory arrest.
- Give 100% oxygen, obtain IV access, and establish ECG, SpO<sub>2</sub>, BP, RR, and temperature monitoring.
- Look for correctable pathophysiology/biochemistry and establish higher dependency care.

### Further reading

Resuscitation Council (UK) Guidelines 2005. <http://www.resus.org.uk>.



## Adult Advanced Life Support (ALS)



**Fig. 35.2** Adult Advanced Life Support algorithm.

### Defibrillation

- For monophasic defibrillators, all shocks should be delivered at 360J.
- For biphasic defibrillators, follow the manufacturer's recommendations. If in any doubt, use 200J initially.
- Electrode polarity is unimportant. Use defibrillation pads to improve electrical contact. One pad is placed to the right of the sternum below the clavicle, the other over the lower left ribs in the mid-axillary line (level with the V6 ECG electrode), avoiding placement over the breast tissue in females. Put the long axis of this pad vertical and make sure it is lateral to the cardiac apex.
- Don't attempt to reposition pads that have already been stuck on the chest—it is more important to deliver the shock quickly.
- Remove transdermal patches to prevent arcing, and place defibrillator pads/paddles 12–15cm away from implanted pacemakers.

- For safety reasons, charge the defibrillator only when the paddles are in contact with the patient. Hold the oxygen mask away from the patient during actual defibrillation, but leave bag connected to ETT.
- Recheck rhythm trace on monitor immediately prior to shock delivery.
- It is the responsibility of the defib operator to visually check that everyone is clear and to state STAND CLEAR prior to delivery of each shock.
- VT and pulseless VT are the commonest causes of reversible cardiac arrest in adults. These are the most 'recoverable' rhythms and it is therefore always worthwhile persisting with CPR whilst they are present. However, successful resuscitation does depend on *early defibrillation*. BLS, IV access, and airway control should not delay delivery of shocks.
- Resume CPR IMMEDIATELY after delivering a shock. Delay pulse/rhythm checks for 2min.

### Ventilations

- Once the trachea is intubated, chest compressions should continue uninterrupted (except for pulse checks and defibrillation) at a rate of 100/min whilst ventilations are administered simultaneously at a rate of 10/min.
- A pause in chest compressions allows coronary perfusion pressure to fall substantially and is followed with a delay before the original perfusion pressure is restored after ECM is recommenced.

### Adrenaline

- Give adrenaline as soon as IV access is secured for PEA/asystole or after a second shock for VF/VT. Give 1mg every 1–5min during an arrest.

### Atropine

- Give atropine 3mg IV ONCE for slow PEA (rate <60/min)/asystole.
- Consider calcium chloride 10ml 10% slow IV if PEA is thought to be caused by hyperkalaemia, hypocalcaemia, overdose of Ca channel blockers, or magnesium.

### Antiarrhythmics

- Amiodarone should be considered just prior to a 4th shock (300 mg IV bolus followed by 5% glucose 20ml flush if given peripherally). A further dose of 150mg may be given for recurrent or refractory VF/pulseless VT, followed by an infusion of 900mg over 24h.
- Consider lidocaine 1mg/kg as an ALTERNATIVE treatment.
- Give magnesium sulphate 8mmol (4ml 50% solution) for refractory VF if patient has hypomagnesaemia (e.g. diuretic induced), or torsade de pointes, or digoxin toxicity.
- Bretylium is no longer recommended.

**Bicarbonate**

- Consider bicarbonate 50mmol in the presence of hyperkalaemia or tricyclic antidepressant overdose.
- Remember that  $\text{HCO}_3^- + \text{H}^+ \leftrightarrow \text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{CO}_2$ , therefore bicarbonate administration requires an increase in minute ventilation. Check ABGs before repeating the dose.

**Subsequent management (see also p894)**

- CXR, 12-lead ECG, ABG, U&E.
- Reverse any biochemical abnormalities.
- Unless the period of arrest has been very brief (less than 3min), the patient should remain intubated and be transferred to ICU.
- Consider inducing mild hypothermia (32–34°C).

**Further reading**

Resuscitation Council (UK) Guidelines 2005. <http://www.resus.org.uk>.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Severe bradycardia (see also pp90–2)

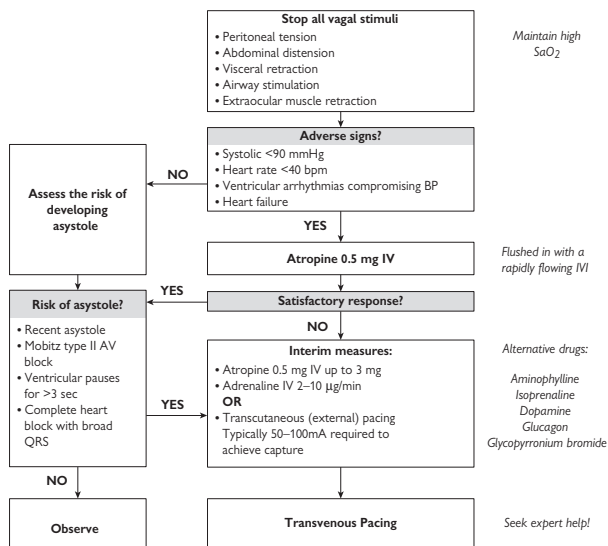


Fig. 35.3 Severe bradycardia.

### Notes

- A transvenous pacing wire can be passed via a Swan Introducer.
- Third-degree atrioventricular block and second-degree Möbitz type II AV block will result in significant bradycardia, haemodynamic instability, and the possibility of asystole. Other significant risk factors for asystole include a recent episode of asystole and ventricular pauses of >3s.
- Indications for referral for preoperative pacing:
  - Second-degree AV block—Möbitz type II or 2:1 block
  - Complete heart block
  - Symptomatic sinus node disease
  - Asymptomatic bundle branch block, bifascicular, trifascicular, and first-degree heart block are not indications for preoperative pacing. Pacing is not usually required for Möbitz type I second-degree AV block (Wenckebach) unless the patient is symptomatic.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Narrow complex tachycardia (see also pp84–7)

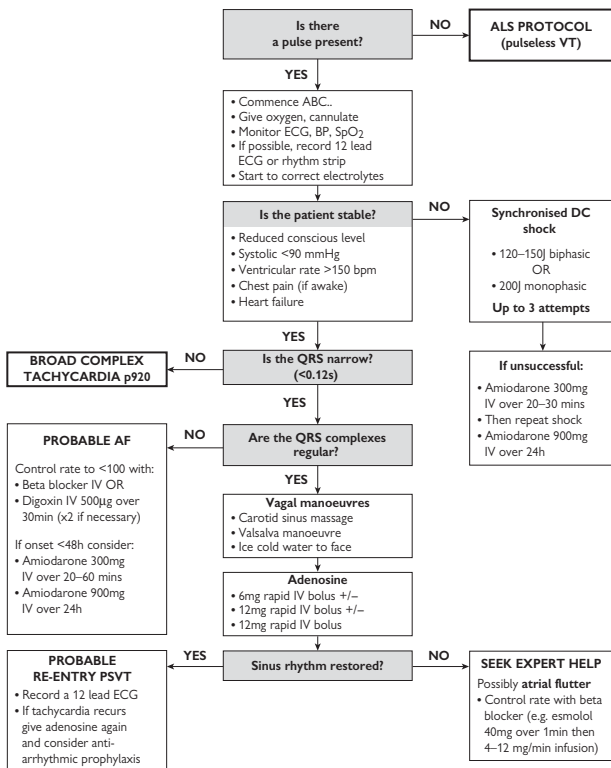


Fig. 35.4 Narrow complex tachycardia.

### Notes

- Exclude light anaesthesia/inadequate analgesia.
- Narrow complex tachycardia in an unstable patient [reduced conscious level, and/or chest pain (if awake), LVF, systolic BP <90mmHg; VR >150bpm; ischaemia] requires urgent synchronised DC shock.
- Differentiating narrow from broad complex tachycardia can be difficult, especially at high ventricular rates. Vagal manoeuvres or adenosine should slow A-V conduction of an SVT but not a VT.
- Theophylline interacts with adenosine and tends to block its effect.

- Dipyridamole and carbimazole potentiate the effects of adenosine.
- **Adenosine** should be used with caution in WPW syndrome and should be avoided in asthmatics.
- Atrial fibrillation may require anticoagulation of the patient prior to cardioversion.
- Verapamil should not be administered in the presence of  $\beta$ -blockade.
- Serum therapeutic range for digoxin = 0.8–2.0 $\mu$ g/l.



## Broad complex tachycardia (see also pp88–9)

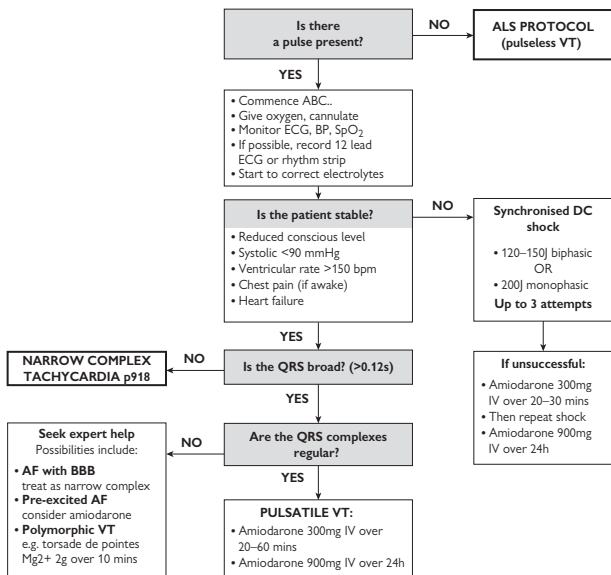


Fig. 35.5 Broad complex tachycardia.

### Notes

- Broad complex tachycardia in an unstable patient [reduced conscious level, and/or chest pain (if awake), LVF, systolic BP <90mmHg; VR >150bpm; ischaemia] requires urgent synchronised DC shock.
- Secondary treatment is aimed at stabilising sinus rhythm and preventing recurrence (antiarrhythmics and electrolyte correction).
- Torsade de pointes is a polymorphic form of VT characterised by beat-to-beat variation, a constantly changing axis, and a prolonged QT interval. Treat with magnesium 2g IV and correct any electrolyte abnormalities such as hypokalaemia.
- If the patient is not adversely affected by the tachyarrhythmia, correct electrolytes whilst giving antiarrhythmics.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Severe hypotension in theatre

Consider	<b>Patient:</b> Hypovolaemia Obstructed venous return Raised intrathoracic pressure including tension pneumothorax Anaphylaxis Embolus (gas/air/thrombus/cement/fat/amniotic fluid) Primary pump failure/tachyarrhythmia Systemic sepsis  <b>Technique:</b> Measurement error Excessive depth of anaesthesia High regional block (including unexpected central spread from peribulbar/interscalene, etc.) Iatrogenic drug error including LA toxicity, barbiturates + porphyria
Action	100% oxygen; check surgery/blood loss; check ventilation; reduce volatile; lift legs (if feasible); IV fluid challenge; vasoconstrictors/inotropes
Investigations	ECG, CXR, ABGs, cardiac enzymes

### Risk factors

- Preoperative fluid deficit (dehydration, D&V, blood loss).
- Mediastinal/hepatic/renal surgery (blood loss and caval compression).
- Pre-existing myocardial disease/dysrhythmia.
- Multiple trauma.
- Sepsis.
- Carcinoid syndrome (bradykinin).

### Differential diagnosis

- Measurement error: palpate the distal pulse manually whilst repeating non-invasive BP; check when pulsation returns against the monitor deflation figure. Invasive BP—check the transducer height.
- Check peripheral perfusion: warm peripheries suggest excessive anaesthesia (GA/regional) or sepsis.
- Suspect tension pneumothorax (particularly following central line insertion) if IPPV and trachea shifted away from a hyper-resonant lung field with diminished breath sounds. Neck veins may be engorged. Treat immediately by decompressing the pleural cavity with an open cannula placed in the 2nd intercostal space in the mid-clavicular line.
- Suspect hypovolaemia if the patient has HR >100bpm, RR >20bpm, capillary return >2s, cool peripheries, collapsed veins, a narrow and peaked arterial line trace, or marked respiratory swing to either CVP or arterial line trace. Dehydration if the patient is thirsty, has a dry

tongue, is producing dark concentrated urine, and has globally elevated blood cell, urea, creatinine, and electrolyte values.

- Suspect cardiac failure if the patient has HR >100bpm, RR >20bpm, engorged central veins, capillary return >2s, cool peripheries, pulmonary oedema, or worsening SpO<sub>2</sub> with fluid challenge.
- Suspect air or gas embolus if the patient had a pre-existing low CVP and open venous bed. Signs are variable but may include sudden ↓ETCO<sub>2</sub>, ↓SpO<sub>2</sub>, loss of palpable pulse, PEA, and rise in CVP.
- Suspect fat embolus or cement reaction in the presence of multiple bony injuries or long bone intramedullary surgery.
- Iatrogenic drug response: histamine release or wrong dilution.
- High central neural blockade may be heralded by Horner's syndrome (small pupil, ptosis, stuffy nose, anhydrosis).
- Anaphylaxis—cardiovascular collapse 88%, erythema 45%, bronchospasm 36%, angio-oedema 24%, rash 13%, urticaria 8.5%.

### Immediate management

- **ABC**—check what the surgeons are doing (caval compression/ blood loss/high pneumoperitoneal pressure); prevent further losses by clamp or direct pressure. Administer high FiO<sub>2</sub>. Maintenance of organ perfusion and oxygenation is more important than achieving blood pressure alone. BP = SVR × CO, therefore improvement in cardiac output may help ameliorate low perfusion pressure.
- **'Optimise preload'** (check initial CVP if already sited, change in CVP is more informative than actual CVP). Lifting the legs returns blood into the central venous compartment and also increases afterload. Fluid challenge of 10ml/kg crystalloid/colloid using a pressure infusor. Assess response (BP/HR/CVP) and repeat if appropriate.
- **Increase contractility:** ephedrine 6mg IV (mixed direct and indirect action); adrenaline 10µg IV (β<sub>1,2</sub> and α activity); consider calcium slowly IV (up to 10ml 10% calcium chloride).
- **Systemic vasoconstriction** (NB α-agonists increase perfusion pressure but may reduce cardiac output). Metaraminol 1–2mg IV; phenylephrine 0.25–0.5mg IV; adrenaline 10µg IV.

### Subsequent management

- Correct acidosis to improve myocardial response to inotropes. Check ABGs and correct respiratory acidosis first. If a severe metabolic acidosis exists (art pH <7.1, base excess <−10) consider using bicarbonate 50mmol (50ml 8.4% sodium bicarbonate).
- Maintenance infusion of vasoconstrictor (e.g. adrenaline or noradrenaline) or inotrope (e.g. dobutamine) if required.

### Other considerations

- **Adrenaline** 1:10 000 = 100µg/ml. 1 in 10 dilution results in a 1:100 000 solution (10µg/ml).
- Patients taking β-blockers may not demonstrate a tachycardia despite significant hypovolaemia.

## Severe hypertension in theatre

<b>Consider</b>	Inadequate depth of anaesthesia/analgesia Measurement error Hypoxia/hypercapnia Iatrogenic drug error Pre-eclampsia Raised intracranial pressure Thyroid storm Pheochromocytoma
<b>Action</b>	Stop surgery until controlled; confirm readings; increase depth of anaesthesia; analgesia; vasodilators; $\beta$ -blockade; $\alpha$ -blockade
<b>Investigations</b>	ECG, cardiac enzymes, TFTs, 24hr urinary catecholamine excretion

### Risk factors

- Untreated or 'white coat' hypertension preoperatively (increased lability).
- Aortic surgery (cross-clamp may  $\uparrow\uparrow$ SVR).
- Drugs: MAOIs (+pethidine); ketamine; ergometrine.
- Family history of multiple endocrine neoplasia (type 2) syndrome, medullary thyroid carcinoma, Conn's syndrome.
- Acute head injury.

### Differential diagnosis

- Hypoxia/hypercapnia: go through ABC and check for patient colour and  $\text{SpO}_2$ .
- Inadequate depth of anaesthesia: check volatile agent concentration; sniff test (smell gases); check TIVA pump, line, and IV cannula.
- Inadequate analgesia: if in doubt administer alfentanil 10–20  $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}$  and observe effect.
- Measurement error: palpate the distal pulse manually whilst repeating an NIBP; check when pulsation returns against the monitor deflation figure. Invasive BP—check the transducer height.
- Iatrogenic drug response: cocaine, wrong drug such as ephedrine, adrenaline, or wrong dilution (remember surgical drugs, e.g. adrenaline with LA, Moffet's solution, phenylephrine).
- Pre-eclampsia: if over 20wk pregnant, check for proteinuria, platelet count  $\pm$  clotting studies, and LFTs.
- Thyroid storm causing elevated  $T_4$  and  $T_3$  levels.
- Pheochromocytoma causing elevated plasma noradrenaline levels. Adrenaline will also cause tachydysrhythmias.
- Cushing response = hypertension and reflex bradycardia (baroreceptor mediated). This intracranially mediated response maintains cerebral perfusion in the presence of  $\uparrow$ IICP (see below).

### Immediate management

- **ABC**—assuming this is not a physiological response to a correctable cause, the overall aim of symptomatic management is to prevent hypertensive stroke or subendocardial ischaemia/infarct. Apart from increasing the depth of anaesthesia and analgesia (systemic or regional), treatment options at cardiovascular effector/receptor level include:
- **Vasodilators** (may cause tachycardia): ↑ isoflurane concentration—this is most rapidly achieved by simultaneously increasing fresh gas flow. Hydralazine 5mg slow IV every 15min. GTN (50mg/50ml, start at 3ml/hr and titrate to BP) or SNP. Magnesium sulphate 2–4g slow IV (8–16mmol) over 10min, followed by infusion of 1g/hr.
- **β-blockade** (particularly in the presence of ↑HR or dysrhythmias): Esmolol 25–100mg, then 50–200µg/kg/min. (Note that esmolol is supplied as 10mg/ml and 250mg/ml solutions.) Labetalol 5–10mg IV prn (1–2ml increments from a 100mg/20ml ampoule). β:α block ratio = 7:1.
- **α-blockade** (particularly in the presence of normal or ↓HR): phentolamine 1mg IV prn (10mg ampoule made up to 10ml, in 1ml increments).

### Subsequent management

- For intense analgesia try remifentanyl 0.25–0.5µg/kg/min titrated to BP.
- Check for myocardial damage with an ECG, serial cardiac enzymes including CKMB, and/or troponins.
- Thyroid function tests, 24hr urine collection for noradrenaline, adrenaline, and dopamine excretion.

### Other considerations

- Hypertension in the presence of raised intracranial pressure requires CT head and urgent neurosurgical intervention. Maintain MAP >80mmHg, normocarbida, head-up tilt, unobstructed SVC drainage, low airway pressures, and good oxygenation. Consider mannitol 0.5g/kg. Bradycardia can be treated with anticholinergics.

## Severe hypoxia in theatre

### Consider

#### **Hypoxic gas mixture:**

- Incorrect flowmeter settings
- Second gas effect (especially on extubation)
- Oxygen failure
- Anaesthetic machine error

#### **Failure to ventilate:**

- Ventilatory depression or narcosis (NB regional block after opioids)
- Inadequate IPPV
- Disconnection
- Misplaced ETT (oesophagus/endobronchial)
- Obstruction to airway, ETT, filter, mount, circuit, etc.
- ↑ Airway resistance (laryngospasm, bronchospasm, anaphylaxis)
- ↓ FRC (pneumothorax, ↑ intra-abdominal pressure, morbid obesity)

#### **Shunt:**

- Atelectasis
- Airway secretions
- ↓ Hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction (vasodilators or  $\beta_2$  agonists)
- CCF with pulmonary oedema
- Aspiration of gastric contents
- Pre-existing pathology (e.g. VSD, ASD + ↓ SVR with reversal of flow)

#### **Poor oxygen delivery:**

- Systemic hypoperfusion (hypovolaemia, sepsis)
- Embolus gas/air/thrombus/cement/fat/amniotic fluid)
- Local problems (cold limb, Raynaud's, sickle)

#### **Increased oxygen demand:**

- Sepsis
- Malignant hyperthermia

### Action

100% oxygen; check  $\text{FiO}_2$ ; expose patient and check for central cyanosis; check ventilation bilaterally; hand ventilate on a simple system giving 3–4 large breaths initially to recruit alveoli; secure airway; endotracheal suction; initially remove any PEEP; give adrenaline if accompanied by poorly palpable pulses

### Investigations

$\text{SpO}_2$ ; capnography; CXR; ABGs; CVP  $\pm$  PCWP; echocardiography

### Risk factors

- Reduced FRC (obesity, intestinal obstruction, pregnancy) reduces oxygen reserves.
- Failure to preoxygenate exacerbates any airway difficulties at induction.
- Laryngospasm can result in negative pressure pulmonary oedema.
- Head and neck surgery (shared access to the airway) increases the risk of undetected disconnection.
- History of congenital heart disease or detection of a heart murmur (left to right communication).
- Chronic lung disease.
- Sickle cell disease.
- Methaemoglobinaemia (interpreted as deoxyhaemoglobin by pulse oximeters).

### Differential diagnosis

- $\text{FiO}_2$ : use an oxygen analyser at all times.
- Ventilation: cross-check rise and fall of chest with auscultation over stomach and in both axillae, capnograph trace, measured expired tidal volume, and airway pressure.
- Measurement error: does patient appear cyanosed? Beware in anaemia when 5g/dl deoxyhaemoglobin may not be visible.
- Aspiration/airway secretions: auscultate and aspirate using tracheal suction catheter  $\pm$  litmus paper.
- Suspect tension pneumothorax (particularly following central line insertion) if IPPV and trachea shifted away from a hyperresonant lung field with diminished breath sounds. Neck veins may be engorged. Treat immediately by decompressing the pleural cavity with an *open* cannula placed in the 2nd intercostal space in the mid-clavicular line.
- Suspect hypovolaemia if patient has HR  $>100$ bpm, RR  $>20$ bpm, capillary return  $>2$ s, cool peripheries, collapsed veins, a narrow and peaked arterial line trace, or marked respiratory swing to either CVP or arterial line trace.
- Suspect cardiac failure if patient has HR  $>100$ bpm, RR  $>20$ bpm, engorged central veins, capillary return  $>2$ s, cool peripheries, pulmonary oedema, or worsening  $\text{SpO}_2$  with fluid challenge.
- Suspect air or gas embolus if patient had a pre-existing low CVP and open venous bed. Signs are variable but may include sudden  $\downarrow$   $\text{ETCO}_2$ ,  $\downarrow$   $\text{SpO}_2$ , loss of palpable pulse, PEA/EMD, and subsequent rise in CVP.
- Suspect fat embolus or cement reaction in the presence of multiple bony injuries or long bone intramedullary surgery.
- Malignant hyperthermia: especially if accompanied by  $\uparrow$   $\text{ETCO}_2$ ,  $\uparrow$  RR,  $\uparrow$  HR,  $\uparrow$  ectopics.
- Anaphylaxis—cardiovascular collapse 88%, erythema 45%, bronchospasm 36%, angio-oedema 24%, rash 13%, urticaria 8.5%.



### Immediate management

- **ABC**—expose the chest, all the breathing circuit, and all airway connections. Administer 100% O<sub>2</sub> by manual ventilation—at least 3–4 large breaths initially will help to recruit collapsed alveoli (and gives continuous tactile feedback about the state of the airway). If no improvement:
- **Confirm FiO<sub>2</sub>**: if there is any doubt about inspired oxygen concentration from the anaesthetic machine, use a separate cylinder supply (as a last resort use room air via a self-inflating bag = 21% O<sub>2</sub>).
- **Misplaced ETT**—cross-check rise and fall of chest with auscultation over stomach and in both axillae and the capnograph trace.
- **Ventilation problem**: simplify the breathing system until the problem is removed, i.e. switch to bag rather than the ventilator, use a Bain circuit instead of the circle system, try a self-inflating bag, + mask rather than ETT, etc.
- **Diagnosis** of the source of a leak or obstruction: is not as important initially as oxygenation of the patient. Make the patient safe first then use a systematic approach. The fastest way to isolate the problem is probably by division. For instance, does breaking the circuit at the ETT connector leave the problem on the patient side or the anaesthetic machine side?
- **Severe right to left shunt**: severe hypoxia occurs when blood starts flowing through a congenital heart defect in the presence of low SVR, thus bypassing the pulmonary circulation. The resultant hypoxaemia then exacerbates the problem by causing hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction which increases PVR and increases the tendency for blood to shunt across the cardiac defect. Treatment is therefore twofold: 1) Increase SVR—by lifting the legs and giving adrenaline and IV fluid, especially in sepsis. 2) Minimise PVR—by removing PEEP, avoid high intrathoracic pressure, and maximise FiO<sub>2</sub>.
- **Bronchospasm**: eliminate ETT obstruction by sounding ETT with a gum elastic bougie. Treat by increasing volatile agent concentration, IV salbutamol (250µg)—see Status asthmaticus (p936).

### Other considerations

- In chronic bronchitis the bronchial circulation can shunt up to 10% of cardiac output.
- The foramen ovale remains patent in 20–30% of patients but is normally kept closed because left atrial pressure is usually higher than right atrial pressure. IPPV, PEEP, breath holding, CCF, thoracic surgery, and PE can reverse the pressure gradient and result in shunt.
- Always check SpO<sub>2</sub> probe is well positioned and has a good trace.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Severe laryngospasm

Condition	Acute glottic closure by the vocal cords
Presentation	Crowing or absent inspiratory sounds and marked tracheal tug
Immediate action	Avoid painful stimuli; 100% oxygen; CPAP; jaw thrust; remove irritants from the airway; deepen anaesthesia; Larsen's manoeuvre
Follow-up action	Muscle relaxation if intractable
Also consider	Bronchospasm Laryngeal trauma/airway oedema (especially if no leak with paediatric ETT) Recurrent laryngeal nerve damage Tracheomalacia Inhaled foreign body Epiglottitis; croup

### Risk factors

- Barbiturate induction or light anaesthesia especially in anxious patients.
- Intense surgical stimulation: anal stretch; cervical dilatation; incision and drainage of abscesses.
- Extubation of a soiled airway.
- Thyroid surgery.
- Hypocalcaemia (neuromuscular irritability).
- Multiple crowns (inhaled foreign body).

### Immediate management

- Remove the stimulus that precipitated the laryngospasm.
- Check that the airway is clear of obstruction or potential irritants.
- Give high concentration oxygen with the expiratory valve of the circuit closed and maintain a close seal by mask with two hands if necessary to maintain CPAP. The degree of CPAP can be controlled by intermittently relaxing the airway seal at the level of the mask.
- If the laryngospasm has occurred at induction, it may be relieved by deepening anaesthesia using further increments of propofol (disadvantage = potential ventilatory depression) or by increasing the volatile agent concentration (disadvantage = irritation of the airway, less so with sevoflurane, more with isoflurane). Don't use nitrous oxide, as it will decrease oxygen reserves.
- If the laryngospasm fails to improve, remove any airways that may be stimulating the pharynx.
- Suxamethonium 0.25–0.5mg/kg will relieve laryngospasm. If IV access is impossible, consider giving 2–4mg/kg IM or SL.

### Subsequent management

- Monitor for evidence of pulmonary oedema.
- CPAP may have inflated the stomach with gas so decompress it with an orogastric tube and recover the patient in the lateral position.

### Other considerations

- Risk of laryngospasm may be reduced by co-induction with IV opioids, IV lidocaine, or by topical lidocaine spray prior to laryngoscopy (don't use more than 4mg/kg).
- Unilateral recurrent laryngeal nerve trauma results in paralysis of one vocal cord and causes hoarseness, ineffective cough, and potential to aspirate. Bilateral vocal cord paralysis is more serious, leading to stridor on extubation—this may mimic laryngospasm but doesn't get better with standard airway manoeuvres. The patient will require reintubation and possibly tracheostomy.
- Tracheomalacia is likely to cause more stridor with marked negative inspiratory pressure so treat initially with CPAP. Reconstructive surgery may be necessary.

## Air/gas embolism

Condition	Venous gas produces airlock in RV and obstructs pulmonary capillaries
Presentation	↓ ETCO <sub>2</sub> , ↓ SpO <sub>2</sub> , loss of palpable pulse, PEA/EMD, ↑ CVP then ↓ CVP
Immediate action	Remove source of embolus; flood wound; compress drainage veins
Follow-up action	↑ Venous pressure; turn off N <sub>2</sub> O; left lateral head-down tilt; CVS support
Investigations	Auscultation; Doppler; ECG; CXR
Also consider	Breathing circuit disconnection (loss of ETCO <sub>2</sub> trace and ↓ SpO <sub>2</sub> ) Pulseless cardiac arrest—other causes of PEA/EMD (4Ts and 4Hs) Cement reaction Pulmonary embolism of thrombus Amniotic fluid embolus

### Risk factors

- Patient: spontaneous ventilation (negative central venous pressure); patent foramen ovale (risk of paradoxical emboli).
- Anaesthesia: hypovolaemia; any open vascular access point; operation site higher than heart; pressurised infusions.
- Orthopaedic surgery: multiple trauma; long bone surgery—especially intramedullary nailing; hip surgery.
- General surgery: laparoscopic procedures; hysterectomy; neck surgery; vascular surgery.
- ENT surgery: middle ear procedures.
- Neurosurgery: posterior fossa operations in the sitting position (almost historical).

### Diagnosis

- 'At risk' patient, dramatic fall/loss of the ETCO<sub>2</sub> trace, and fall in SpO<sub>2</sub>.
- Awake patients complain of severe chest pain.
- Heart rate may rise.
- Sudden rise in CVP due to a fall in cardiac output and rise in PVR.
- Classically a 'millwheel' murmur can supposedly be heard.
- Doppler ultrasound is an extremely sensitive (0.25ml air!) but possibly unavailable diagnostic tool.
- PEA/EMD arrest may occur. ECG may show signs of acute ischaemia, e.g. ST segment depression >1mm.
- It is claimed that symptoms/signs of air embolus appear following 0.5ml/kg/min of intravascular gas.

### Immediate management

- **ABC**—eliminate breathing circuit disconnection; give 100% oxygen; check ECG trace and pulse.
- **Prevent further gas/air** from entering the circulation. Get the surgeon to apply compression to major drainage vessels and flood the wound with irrigation fluid or cover with damp pack, stop reaming, etc.
- **Decompress** any gas-pressurised system/cavity, e.g. abdomen during laparoscopy.
- **Lower** the operation site to below heart level.
- **Turn off N<sub>2</sub>O** (because it will expand any intravascular gas volume).
- **Increase venous pressure** with rapid IV infusion of fluids  $\pm$  vasopressors.
- **If PEA/EMD** arrest occurs, start chest compressions and adopt ALS protocol for non-VF/VT cardiac arrest.
- **Aspirate CV line.** Classic teaching is to tip patient head down in left lateral position to keep the bubble in the right atrium or apex of the right ventricle until it dissolves or can be aspirated via a central line advanced into the right atrium. In practice, if there is not already a CVP line in situ aspiration is likely to be difficult.
- **Moderate CPAP** has been advocated as a means of rapidly increasing intrathoracic and therefore CVP in the event of gas embolus. Whilst this manoeuvre may limit the extent and progress of an air embolus, it must be borne in mind that 10% of patients may have a patent foramen ovale. Sustained rise in right atrial pressure may then lead to a right-to-left shunt and paradoxical air embolism to the cerebral circulation.

### Subsequent management

- Ask surgeon to apply bone wax to exposed bone edges.
- Correct any pre-existing hypovolaemia.
- Avoid nitrous oxide for the remainder of the anaesthetic, and maintain a high FiO<sub>2</sub>.
- Perform a 12-lead ECG to look for ischaemia. Air in coronary arteries is suggestive of paradoxical air embolism.
- Consider hyperbaric therapy if available.  $\uparrow$  Ambient pressure (3–6 bar) will  $\downarrow$  volume of gas emboli.

### Other considerations

Carbon dioxide is the safest gas to use for laparoscopic insufflation. It is non-flammable and more soluble than other agents. Should a gas embolus occur, it will dissolve over time. The priority of management should therefore be to limit the extent and central progress of the gas 'bubble', thereby minimising its systemic cardiovascular effect.

## Aspiration

Condition	Chemical pneumonitis; foreign body obstruction and atelectasis
Presentation	Tachypnoea; tachycardia; ↓ lung compliance; ↓ SpO <sub>2</sub>
Immediate action	Minimise further aspiration; secure the airway; suction
Follow-up action	100% oxygen; consider CPAP; empty the stomach
Investigations	CXR; bronchoscopy
Also consider	Pulmonary oedema Embolus ARDS

### Risk factors

- Full stomach/delayed emptying (many causes).
- Known reflux.
- Raised intragastric pressure (intestinal obstruction, pregnancy, laparoscopic surgery).
- Recent trauma.
- Perioperative opioids.
- Diabetes mellitus.
- Topically anaesthetised airway.

### Diagnosis

- Clinical: auscultation may reveal wheeze and crepitations; tracheal aspirate may be acidic (but a negative finding does not exclude aspiration).
- CXR: diffuse infiltrative pattern especially in right lower lobe distribution (but often not acutely).

### Immediate management

- Avoidance of general anaesthesia in high-risk situations. Use of a rapid sequence technique when appropriate.
- Administer 100% oxygen and minimise the risk of further aspirate contaminating the airway.
- If the patient is awake or nearly awake, suction the oro-/nasopharynx and place in the recovery position.
- If the patient is unconscious but breathing spontaneously, apply cricoid pressure. Avoid cricoid pressure if the patient is actively vomiting (risk of oesophageal rupture) and place patient in a left lateral head-down position. Intubate if tracheal suction and ventilation indicated.
- If the patient is unconscious and apnoeic, intubate immediately and commence ventilation.
- Treat as an inhaled foreign body: minimise positive pressure ventilation until the ETT and airway have been suctioned and all aspirates are clear.

### Subsequent management

- Empty the stomach with a large-bore nasogastric tube prior to attempting extubation.
- Monitor respiratory function and arrange a CXR. Look for evidence of oedema, collapse, or consolidation.
- If  $\text{SpO}_2$  remains 90–95%, atelectasis can be improved with CPAP (10cmH<sub>2</sub>O) and chest physiotherapy.
- If  $\text{SpO}_2$  remains <90% despite 100% oxygen, there may be solid food material obstructing part of the bronchial tree. If the patient is intubated, consider using fiberoptic/rigid bronchoscopy or bronchial lavage using saline to remove any large foreign bodies or semi-solid material from the airway. Refer to ICU postoperatively.

### Other considerations

- Corticosteroids may modify the inflammatory response early after aspiration, but do not alter the outcome, except by potentially interfering with the normal immune response.
- Prophylactic antibiotics are not generally given routinely (unless infected material aspirated) but may be required to treat subsequent secondary infections.
- If gastric aspirate has been buffered to pH =7, the resulting aspiration pneumonitis is less severe, volume for volume, than if it is highly acidic. However, solid food material can produce prolonged inflammation, even if the overall pH is neutral.
- Blood, although undesirable, is generally well tolerated in the airway.



## Status asthmaticus<sup>1</sup>

Condition	Intractable bronchospasm
Presentation	↑ Airway pressure; sloping expiratory capnograph trace
Immediate action	100% oxygen; salbutamol 250µg IV/2.5mg neb; aminophylline 250mg slow IV Magnesium sulphate 2g IV has been shown to be effective
Follow-up action	Hydrocortisone 200mg
Investigations	CXR; ABGs
Also consider	Breathing circuit obstruction Kinked ETT/cuff herniation Endobronchial intubation/tube migration Foreign body in airway Anaphylaxis Pneumothorax

### Risk factors

- Asthma particularly with previous acute admissions, especially to ICU, and/or systemic steroid dependence.
- Intercurrent respiratory tract infection.
- Carinal irritation by ETT.

### Diagnosis

- Increased airway pressure, prolonged expiratory phase to capnograph trace.
- Central trachea with bilaterally hyperexpanded and resonant lung fields ± expiratory wheeze (absent if severe).
- Severe bronchospasm is a diagnosis of exclusion. The quickest method of ascertaining the source of increased airway resistance is to break the breathing circuit distal to all connectors/filters and to try ventilating directly with a self-inflating bag. If the inflation pressure still feels too high the problem is due to airway/ETT obstruction or reduced compliance.
- Eliminate ETT obstruction by 'sounding' the ETT with a graduated gum elastic bougie (note the distance it can be inserted down the ETT and compare it with the external tube markings).

### Immediate management

- **ABC**—100% oxygen.
- **Increase volatile agent concentration**—sevoflurane is the least irritant and is less likely to precipitate dysrhythmias in the presence of hypercapnia (halothane is most likely).
- **Salbutamol** 250µg IV or 2.5mg by nebuliser up to 5mg every 15min. Alternatively (as an immediate measure) administer 2–6 puffs of β-agonist inhaler into the airway by placing the device in the barrel

of a 50ml syringe. Attach the syringe by Luer lock to a 15cm length of fine-bore infusion/capnograph tubing, which can then be fed directly down the ETT. The inhaler can be discharged by pressure applied via the syringe plunger. Use of the fine-bore tubing decreases deposition of the drug on the ETT.

- **Aminophylline** 250mg by slow IV injection (up to 5mg/kg).

### Subsequent management

- If immediate treatment fails or is unavailable, consider ipratropium bromide (0.25mg neb up to 0.5mg 4–6-hourly), adrenaline IV boluses ( $10\mu\text{g} = 0.1\text{ml}$  of 1:10 000), ketamine (2mg/kg IV), magnesium (2g slow IV).
- Hydrocortisone 200mg IV.
- Check the drug chart and notes for possible drug allergies to agents already administered.
- Arrange CXR—check for pneumothorax and ETT tip position (withdraw if carinal).
- Check ABGs and electrolytes (prolonged use of  $\beta_2$  agonists causes hypokalaemia).
- Refer to ICU.

### Other considerations

- Pulsus paradoxus is a systemic blood pressure deficit measured during the spontaneous ventilatory cycle. A paradox of greater than 10mmHg (1.3kPa) indicates severe asthma.
- **Gas trapping:** raised mean intrathoracic pressure may result from IPPV in the presence of severe bronchospasm. If pulse pressure falls and neck veins appear distended, consider obstructed venous return and a dependent fall in cardiac output. Intermittently disconnect the ETT from the circuit and observe the (connected) capnograph trace for evidence of prolonged expiration and return of pulse pressure.
- Ventilator setting advice during this phase: 100% oxygen, initially by hand, may need high pressures, slow rate, prolonged expiration, do not worry about  $\text{CO}_2$  levels providing  $\text{SpO}_2$  is adequate. May be necessary to accept reduced ventilatory rate to allow adequate expiration to occur (**permissive hypercapnia**).<sup>1</sup>

1 British Thoracic Society (2009). *British Guideline on the Management of Asthma*. A National Clinical Guideline. Revised Edition. [www.brit-thoracic.org.uk](http://www.brit-thoracic.org.uk).

## Pulmonary oedema

Condition	↑ Hydrostatic pressure; ↑ vascular permeability; ↓ plasma colloid osmotic pressure; negative interstitial pressure; obstructed lymphatic drainage
Presentation	Pink frothy sputum; ↑ HR; ↑ RR; ↓ SpO <sub>2</sub> ; ↑ CVP; ↑ PCWP
Immediate action	100% oxygen; ↓ PCWP by posture
Follow-up action	Opioids; diuretics; vasodilators
Investigations	CXR; ECG; ABG; consider PA catheter studies
Also consider	Asthma MI ARDS Drug reaction Aspiration

### Risk factors

- MI or pre-existing myocardial disease (pump failure).
- Drugs/toxins (fluid overload—especially in renal failure and the elderly, drug reaction, myocardial depression).
- Aspiration (chemical pneumonitis).
- Pre-existing lung disease or infection (increased capillary permeability).
- Malnutrition (low oncotic pressure)—rare.
- Acute head injury or intracranial pathology (neurogenic).
- Severe laryngospasm or airway obstruction (negative intrathoracic pressure).
- Severe hypertension; LVF; mitral stenosis (high pulmonary vascular hydrostatic pressure).
- Lateral decubitus position (unilateral).
- Impairment of lymphatic drainage (e.g. malignancy).
- Rapid lung expansion (e.g. re-expansion of a pneumothorax).
- Following pneumonectomy.

### Diagnosis

- Clinical: wheeze; pink frothy sputum; fine crackles; quiet bases; gallop rhythm; ↑ JVP; liver engorgement.
- Monitors: ↑ HR; ↑ RR; ↓ SpO<sub>2</sub>; ↑ airway pressure; ↑ CVP; ↓ PCWP (greater than 25–30mmHg).
- CXR: basal shadowing; upper lobe diversion; ‘bat’s wing’ or ‘stag horn’ appearance; hilar haze; bronchial cuffing; Kerley B lines; pleural effusions; septal/interlobar fluid lines.
- ECG: evidence of right heart strain; evidence of MI.

### Immediate management

- ABC—then management depends upon the current state of the patient.
- If awake and breathing spontaneously: sit up to offload the pulmonary vasculature and improve FRC; high-flow 100% oxygen via mask with reservoir bag; furosemide 50mg IV; diamorphine 5mg IV; consider using CPAP 5–10mmHg, and a vasodilator if hypertensive (e.g. GTN 0.5–1.5mg SL, or 10mg transcutaneous patch. Beware of IV GTN administration in the absence of invasive BP monitoring).
- If anaesthetised and intubated: commence IPPV with PEEP (5–10cmH<sub>2</sub>O) in a 15° head-up position to reduce atelectasis and improve FRC; aspirate free fluid from the trachea intermittently; drug therapy as above.

### Subsequent management

- Optimise fluid therapy and maintain plasma colloid oncotic pressure on the basis of serial CVP measurements. If in doubt, measure PCWP via a PA catheter.
- Consider inotropic support with a  $\beta$ -agonist (e.g. dobutamine) or venesection (500ml) if filling pressures remain high or signs of inadequate circulation persist.

## Failed intubation

See also p980.

Condition	Patients die from failure to oxygenate NOT failure to intubate
Presentation	1 in 65 patients is likely to present difficulties with intubation
Immediate action	Establish a patent airway with 100% oxygen
Follow-up action	Do you need to intubate? Should you continue or wake the patient up?
Investigations	ETT confirmation—capnograph; negative pressure ETT aspiration (bladder syringe); fiberoptic scope
Also consider	Regional anaesthesia or awake fiberoptic intubation

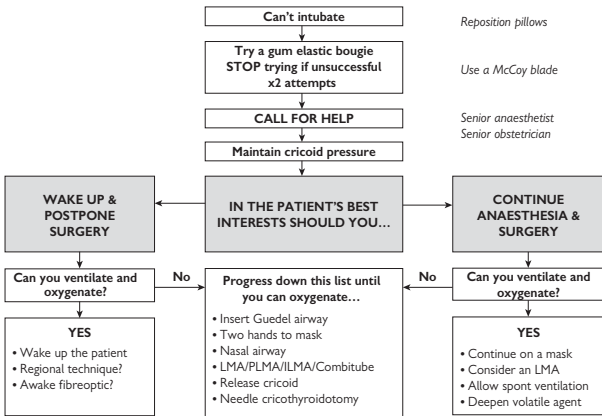
### Diagnosis of misplacement

- Retain a high index of suspicion after difficult intubation.
- Suspect oesophageal placement if you cannot confirm: normal breath sounds in both axillae and absent sounds over the stomach; rise AND fall of chest; normal ETCO<sub>2</sub> trace; normal airway pressure cycle.
- The trachea is a rigid structure, the oesophagus is not. If negative pressure is applied to the ETT, failure to aspirate air (e.g. with a bladder syringe directly attached to the ETT) suggests oesophageal placement.
- Confirm ETT placement with fibrescope.
- Remember—if in doubt, pull it out and apply bag and mask ventilation.

### Other considerations

- Head down left lateral position used to be advocated as a part of the failed intubation drill. However, for the majority of anaesthetists, the ability to manipulate an obstructed airway will be greater with the patient left in the more familiar supine position. In a spontaneously breathing patient who is waking up, the airway is often better in the lateral position. Use whichever is most effective, but keep help available to turn the patient if needed.

## Immediate management



**Fig. 35.6** Failed intubation.

## Can't intubate, can't ventilate

See also pp986–8.

Condition	Failure to oxygenate by ETT/facemask/LMA/PLMA/ILMA/Combitube
Presentation	1 in 10 000 anaesthetics
Immediate action	Summon help; 100% oxygen; CPAP; wake patient up if possible
Follow-up action	Needle or surgical cricothyroidotomy
Also consider	Emergency tracheostomy; fiberoptic intubation; blind nasal approach

### Immediate management

- Call for help, but retain your trained assistant.
- Attempt oxygenation even if it appears futile. Insert both an oral AND a nasopharyngeal airway. Emergency oxygen flush. Apply a close-fitting facemask with two hands and lift/dislocate the mandible firmly forwards (jaw thrust). Although an assistant may help by bag squeezing, it may be easiest to attempt ventilation by allowing an intermittent leak around the mask.
- Consider using a conventional LMA, intubating LMA, ProSeal LMA, or Combitube. No single airway adjunct has clear advantages over others. This is not a time to experiment with unfamiliar devices so stick to whatever you feel comfortable with and abandon them early if they prove to be of no benefit.
- If the patient is making spontaneous effort and respiratory noise, maintain CPAP and 100% oxygen until they awake.

### Subsequent management

- **Cricothyroidotomy:** the decision to attempt transtracheal oxygenation is not an easy one to make. However, remember that it is likely to take over a minute to achieve access and, even then, ability to oxygenate will be severely limited. Speed is essential in order to prevent hypoxic cardiac arrest and brain damage.
- Options are surgical cricothyroidotomy and needle cricothyroidotomy.
- **Needle cricothyroidotomy:** Extend the neck. You may find access easier if someone else does this for you and simultaneously fixes the skin by applying slight traction bilaterally to the soft tissues of the neck.
- Find the cricothyroid membrane (lies between the superiorly notched thyroid cartilage and the cricoid cartilage) —see figure 35.7.
- Attach a 20ml syringe containing 10ml saline to a large-bore needle or cannula (14–16G). Advance through the cricothyroid membrane in a slightly caudally inclined direction aspirating until air bubbles freely into the syringe.
- If you have used a needle, hold it firmly in place. If you have used a cannula guard against kinking.

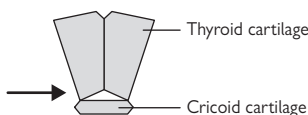


Fig. 35.7

- There are several ways of connecting a needle/cannula to a standard breathing circuit:
  - Connect a 10ml syringe, remove the plunger, and intubate the barrel with a cuffed ETT.
  - Insert an ETT connector from a neonatal 3.5mm ETT to the hub of the needle/cannula.
  - Unscrew the capnograph tubing from the monitor, attach the Luer lock end to the hub of the needle/cannula. Take the other end and attach the sampling end (T-piece) to the common gas outlet. Use your thumb to intermittently occlude the other end of the T-piece.
  - Use a Sanders injector or similar jetting device attached by Luer lock. Beware—high pressure oxygen can cause catastrophic surgical emphysema via a misplaced cannula. Check for rise and fall of the chest wall.
- Transtracheal oxygenation by needle/cannula is a temporary emergency measure. Fully effective ventilation will not be possible, but there should be flow of oxygen down the bronchial tree to the alveoli.
- If there is significant oxygen leakage upwards, occlude the mouth and nose during the inspiratory phase of ventilation.
- Call urgently for an ENT surgeon to perform an emergency tracheostomy. If possible, improve transtracheal access with a 'Minitrach' or similar device. There are several easy-to-use commercial kits that exist based around a Seldinger method of insertion. If the patient remains paralysed, attempt fiberoptic/blind nasal intubation.
- Consider transtracheal jet ventilation but stop ventilating immediately if surgical emphysema forms in the neck.
- **Surgical cricothyroidotomy** requires a scalpel, tracheal hook/forceps/clamp, and a small tube (6–7mm).
  - Make a stab incision through the cricothyroid membrane.
  - Enlarge the incision with blunt dissection using forceps/clamp.
  - Keep hook/clamp/forceps in the wound to avoid losing access.
  - Apply caudal traction on cricoid cartilage whilst inserting tube.

### Other considerations

- The best treatment is prevention, or at least anticipation of potential airway difficulties. Avoidance of muscle relaxants is prudent until one has determined that ventilation can be achieved manually. Thorough preoxygenation will ensure that the FRC contains approximately 1 litre of oxygen rather than 0.5 litre at induction. Have the kit and personnel required for the creation of a surgical airway close at hand if you anticipate difficulties intubating.



- If the problem is an inability to achieve a seal due to the presence of a beard, quickly apply a large transparent self-adhesive dressing over the whole of the lower face. Make a large hole in it for the mouth and nostrils, and re-apply the mask  $\pm$  an airway.
- If the problem is an inability to pass a small enough ETT tube down a narrowed trachea (either ETT too short or size unavailable) consider passing an airway exchange catheter. This is a robust guide that resembles a yellow but hollow gum elastic bougie. It comes with either a Luer lock or 15mm connector allowing oxygen to be passed through it into the distal airway whilst a more definitive airway is established either by railroading a larger tube over it or by surgical tracheostomy.
- Commercially available trans-tracheal needles and injectors are now widely available.
- Check that your theatres have a well-stocked difficult/failed intubation trolley available at all times.
- [www.youtube.com](http://www.youtube.com) has some good examples of different techniques of cricothyroidotomy.

### **Further reading**

Cook TM, Nolan JP, Cranshaw J, Magee P (2007). Needle cricothyroidotomy. *Anaesthesia*, **62**, 289–290.

Difficult Airway Society UK Guidelines. [www.das.uk.com](http://www.das.uk.com).

Gerig HJ, Schnider T, Heidegger T (2005). Prophylactic percutaneous transtracheal catheterisation in the management of patients with anticipated difficult airways: a case series. *Anaesthesia*, **60**, 801–802.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Malignant hyperthermia

See also pp270–5.

Condition	Hypermetabolism due to increased skeletal muscle intracellular $\text{Ca}^{2+}$
Presentation	$\uparrow \text{ETCO}_2$ ; $\downarrow \text{SpO}_2$ ; $\uparrow \text{HR}$ ; CVS instability; dysrhythmias; $\uparrow$ core temp
Immediate action	Stop triggers (volatile agents + suxamethonium); hyperventilate with high-flow 100% oxygen; dantrolene 1–10mg/kg
Follow-up action	Cool; correct DIC, acidosis/ $\uparrow \text{K}^+$ ; promote diuresis (ARF risk)
Investigations	Clotting studies, ABGs, $\text{K}^+$ ; urine myoglobin; CK
Also consider	Rebreathing Sepsis Awareness Neuroleptic malignant syndrome Ecstasy Thyroid storm

### Risk factors

- Family history.
- Exposure to suxamethonium or volatile agents (even if previous exposures were uneventful).
- Exertional heat stroke. Exercise-induced rhabdomyolysis, central core disease, scoliosis, hernias, strabismus surgery.

### Diagnosis

- Sustained jaw rigidity after suxamethonium (masseter spasm).
- Unexplained tachycardia together with an unexpected rise in end-tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  (IPPV) or minute volume (SV).
- Falling  $\text{SpO}_2$  despite increased  $\text{FiO}_2$ .
- Cardiovascular instability, dysrhythmias especially multiple ventricular ectopics, peaked T waves on ECG.
- Generalised rigidity.
- Core temperature rise of  $2^\circ\text{C}$  per hour.

### Immediate management

- **Check ABC**—turn off all volatile agents, do not administer any further doses of suxamethonium.
- **Hyperventilate** with 100% oxygen using a high fresh gas flow to flush out volatile agent and expired  $\text{CO}_2$ .
- Tell the rest of the theatre team what the problem is. Ask for more help and obtain dantrolene immediately.
- **Use a fresh breathing circuit** +/- a 'vapour-free' machine if it is easy to do so, but not if it results in rebreathing of expired  $\text{CO}_2$ , a low  $\text{FiO}_2$ , or delays administration of dantrolene.

- When available, give **dantrolene** 2–3mg/kg IV (it comes in 20mg ampoules so about four are required). Usually about 2.5mg/kg is required in total, but up to 10mg/kg may be given.
- **Stop surgery** if feasible, otherwise maintain anaesthesia with TIVA (propofol).
- **Reduce core temperature by:** evaporation; ice to groin and axillae; cold fluids into IV lines, the bladder via urinary catheter, stomach via NGT, or peritoneal cavity if open.
- **Check ABGs and K<sup>+</sup>**, especially if dysrhythmias occur, and correct acidosis/ hyperkalaemia where appropriate.
- Surgical team—call for senior help to conclude the operation as quickly as is safely possible.

### Subsequent management

- Place invasive BP and CVP monitoring lines.
- Send a clotting screen for DIC, and serum CK assay (up to 1000 times normal).
- Send a urine sample for myoglobin estimation secondary to muscle breakdown.
- Monitor for acute renal failure and promote a diuresis with fluids and mannitol.
- Refer to the MH Investigation Unit for *in vitro* muscle contracture tests (IVCTs).

### Other considerations

- Dantrolene is formulated with 3g mannitol per ampoule.
- Emptying several ampoules into a sterile dish and adding a large volume of sterile water may help mix dantrolene more rapidly.
- Follow up involves muscle biopsy under LA and *in vitro* halothane, caffeine, ryanodine, and chlorocresol contracture tests.
- Beware of using bicarbonate to correct acidosis since the reaction with hydrogen ions produces an increased CO<sub>2</sub> load.

### Further reading

AAGBI Guidelines (2007). *Management of a Malignant Hyperthermia Crisis*. [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).  
British Malignant Hyperthermia Association. [www.bmha.co.uk](http://www.bmha.co.uk)

### Useful contact (see also pp270–5)

UK MH Investigation Unit, Academic Unit of Anaesthesia, Clinical Sciences Building, St James' University Hospital Trust, Leeds LS9 7TF. Emergency telephone number 07947 609601.

## Anaphylaxis

Condition	IgE-mediated type B hypersensitivity reaction to an antigen resulting in histamine and serotonin release from mast cells and basophils
Presentation	Cardiovascular collapse; erythema; bronchospasm; oedema; rash
Immediate action	Remove trigger; 100% oxygen; elevate legs; adrenaline 50µg; fluids
Follow-up action	Chlorphenamine 10–20mg; hydrocortisone 100–300mg; ABGs
Investigations	Plasma tryptase; urinary methylhistamine
Also consider	Primary myocardial/cardiovascular problem Latex sensitivity Airway obstruction Asthma Tension pneumothorax

### Risk factors

- IV administration of the antigen.
- Note that cross-sensitivities with NSAIDs and muscle relaxants mean that previous exposure is not always necessary.
- True penicillin allergy is a reaction to the basic common structure present in most penicillins ( $\beta$ -lactam ring).

### Diagnosis

- |                           |      |
|---------------------------|------|
| • Cardiovascular collapse | 88%  |
| • Erythema                | 45%  |
| • Bronchospasm            | 36%  |
| • Angio-oedema            | 24%  |
| • Rash                    | 13%  |
| • Urticaria               | 8.5% |

### Immediate management

- Check ABC—stop the administration of any potential triggers, particularly IV agents. Muscle relaxants, antibiotics, and NSAIDs are the most frequent triggers.
- Call for help.
- Maintain the airway and give 100% oxygen.
- Lay the patient flat with the legs elevated.
- Give adrenaline in 50µg IV increments (0.5ml 1:10 000 solution) at a rate of 100µg/min until pulse pressure or bronchospasm improves. Alternatively give adrenaline 0.5–1mg IM (repeated after 10min if necessary).
- Give IV fluid (colloid or suitable crystalloid).

### Subsequent management

- Antihistamines: give chlorphenamine (Piriton®) 10–20mg slow IV.
- Corticosteroids: give hydrocortisone 100–300mg IV.
- Catecholamine infusion as CVS instability may last several hours: Adrenaline 0.05–0.1µg/kg/min (= 4ml/hr of 1:10 000 or 5mg/50ml saline—70kg adult). Noradrenaline 0.05–0.1µg/kg/min (= 4ml/hr of 4mg/40ml 5% glucose—70kg adult).
- Check ABGs for acidosis and consider bicarbonate 0.5–1.0mmol/kg (8.4% solution = 1mmol/ml).
- Check for the presence of airway oedema by letting down the ETT cuff and confirming a leak prior to extubating.
- Consider bronchodilators (see ‘Status asthmaticus’ p936) for persistent bronchospasm.

### Other considerations

- Investigations can wait until the patient has been stabilised. Take a 10ml clotted blood sample 1hr after the start of the reaction to perform a tryptase assay. The specimen needs to be spun down and the serum stored at –20°C.
- The anaesthetist should follow up the investigation, report reactions to the CSM, and arrange testing with an immunologist (see p1006).

### Further reading

Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2009). Suspected anaphylactic reactions associated with anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 199–211. Also available at [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).  
UK Resuscitation Council Guidelines. [www.resus.org.uk](http://www.resus.org.uk).

## Intra-arterial injection

Condition	Chemical endarteritis characterised by: arterial vasospasm and local release of noradrenaline; crystal deposition within the distal arteries (thiopental); subsequent thrombosis and distal ischaemic necrosis
Presentation	Intense burning pain on injection; distal blanching; blistering
Immediate action	Stop injection but leave the cannula <i>in situ</i> and administer 1% lidocaine 5ml, papaverine 40mg, and flush with heparinised saline
Follow-up action	Regional sympathetic blockade; anticoagulation
Investigations	Monitor anticoagulation
Also consider	Extravasation Dilution error of drug administered

### Risk factors

- Antecubital lines: inadvertent cannulation of brachial artery or aberrant ulnar artery.
- Radial aspect of wrist: inadvertent cannulation of superficial branch of radial artery.
- Arterial injection is more likely to cause damage with stronger drug concentration (e.g. 5% thiopental).
- A cannula that has been inserted previously and only been flushed with saline (not painful) may present later.

### Diagnosis

- Awake patients complain of intense burning pain on injection that may last for several hours.
- Blanching of the skin.
- Blistering.
- Within 2hr: oedema; hyperaesthesia; motor weakness.
- Later: signs of arterial thrombosis ± gangrene.

### Immediate management

- Stop injecting!
- Principles of treatment are to dilute the irritant, reverse vasospasm, and prevent thrombosis.
- Keep the cannula in situ—you will need access to reverse local vasoconstriction within the distal arteriolar tree.
- If the drug administered was highly irritant, flush the vessel with isotonic saline or Hepsal®.
- Administer LA via the cannula to reduce vasospasm and reduce pain (e.g. 5ml 1% lidocaine).
- Administer a vasodilator (e.g. papaverine 40mg).

- Once the immediate reaction has subsided, if the hand is well perfused and pink, remove the cannula and apply sufficient pressure to the puncture site to minimise local haematoma formation.

### Subsequent management

- Sympathetic blockade and anticoagulation to reduce the risk of thrombosis:
  - **Sympathectomy** via stellate ganglion or brachial plexus block—probably most easily achieved via the axillary approach, or
  - **Guanethidine block:** performed like a Bier's block (guanethidine 10–20mg IV + heparin 500U in 25–40ml saline, cuff left inflated for 20min). Guanethidine blocks  $\alpha$ -adrenergic neurones and depletes noradrenaline stores. The effects can last for several weeks. Ask for assistance from consultant with a special interest in chronic pain since this block is also used to treat reflex sympathetic dystrophy.
  - **Heparinise** after achieving sympathetic blockade to minimise the risk of late arterial thrombosis.

### Other considerations

Nerve supply to the arm = C<sub>5</sub>–T<sub>1</sub>. Sympathetic nerve supply to the arm comes from T<sub>1</sub> via the sympathetic chain and the stellate ganglion (fusion of the inferior cervical ganglion and the first thoracic ganglion).



## Unsuccessful reversal of neuromuscular blockade

Condition	Competitive antagonism at nicotinic acetylcholine receptor of NMJ
Presentation	Uncoordinated, jerky movements during the recovery phase. Inability to maintain an airway OR inadequate spontaneous ventilation
Immediate action	Maintain and protect airway and provide adequate ventilation
Follow-up action	Maintain anaesthesia if appropriate; correct the cause Consider reversal of aminosteroids (rocuronium, vecuronium, pacuronium) with sugammadex
Investigations	Nerve stimulator train-of-four, post-tetanic count; double burst stimulation
Also consider	Non-functional peripheral nerve stimulator (check the battery charge) Volatile agent concentration (maintained by hypoventilation) Hyperventilation ( $\text{ETCO}_2 < 4\text{kPa}$ (30mmHg) or $\text{CO}_2$ narcosis [over about 9kPa (68mmHg)]) Undiagnosed head injury (examine pupils) Cerebrovascular accident

### Risk factors

- Recent dose of relaxant/backflow in IVI/drug error.
- Renal and hepatic impairment causing delayed elimination of relaxant in long cases (except atracurium).
- Perioperative administration of magnesium (especially above the therapeutic range 1.25–2.5mmol/l).
- Hypothermia.
- Acidosis and electrolyte imbalance.
- Co-administration of aminoglycoside antibiotics.
- Myasthenia gravis (reduced number of receptors).
- Low levels of plasma cholinesterase (pregnancy, renal and liver disorders, hypothyroidism) or competition with drugs also metabolised by plasma cholinesterase (etomidate, ester LAs, and methotrexate).
- Abnormal plasma cholinesterase (suxamethonium apnoea).
- Ecothiopate eyedrops for glaucoma (historical—now not available on general prescription).

## Diagnosis

- Uncoordinated, jerky patient movements are suggestive of inadequate reversal of neuromuscular blockade. Sustained head lift off the pillow for 5s is a good clinical indicator of adequate reversal.
- Train of four is classically measured as adductor pollicis twitches in response to supramaximal stimulation via two electrodes placed over the ulnar nerve—see pp1057–9.
- Double burst stimulation is said to be more accurate as a means of quantifying train of four ratio—see pp1057–9.
- Post-tetanic count is used to monitor deep relaxation, when the train of four will not show any twitches. Firstly establish that the peripheral nerve stimulator is actually working and has adequate battery charge. A 50Hz tetanic stimulus is applied for 5s followed by single stimuli at 1Hz. Post tetanic facilitation in the presence of non-depolarising blockade allows a number of twitches to be seen. Reversal with an anticholinesterase should be possible with a count of >10.

## Immediate management

- ABC—then check for signs of awareness, assess anaesthetic depth, and check ETCO<sub>2</sub>.
- If you have already given a dose of neostigmine ensure it was adequate (0.05mg/kg) and that it did actually enter the circulation (check the IV line for backflow and the site of cannulation for swelling).
- If you have used an aminosteroid muscle relaxant (rocuronium, vecuronium, or pancuronium) consider administering sugammadex (a selective relaxant binding agent) at a dose of 2–4 mg/kg.
- Hypothermia, electrolyte imbalance, and acidosis will impair reversal and should be corrected.
- Aminoglycoside or Mg<sup>2+</sup>-induced poor reversal may improve with calcium gluconate (10ml 10%) titrated IV.

## Subsequent management

- Wait patiently—this is not an emergency!
- Suspected myasthenia gravis should be confirmed postoperatively with a Tensilon<sup>®</sup> test.
- If the patient has suffered a period of awareness whilst paralysed, admit it, explain it, apologise, and ensure that the patient has access to professional counselling if required.

## Other considerations

- A dual (phase II) blockade occurs when large amounts of suxamethonium are used and the depolarising block is gradually replaced by one with non-depolarising characteristics (fade, etc.).

## Further reading

Lenz A, Hill G, White PF (2007). Emergency use of sugammadex after failure of standard reversal drugs. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **104**, 585–586.

Naguib M (2007). Sugammadex: another milestone in clinical neuromuscular pharmacology. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **104**, 575–581.

## Paediatric emergencies: Advanced Life Support

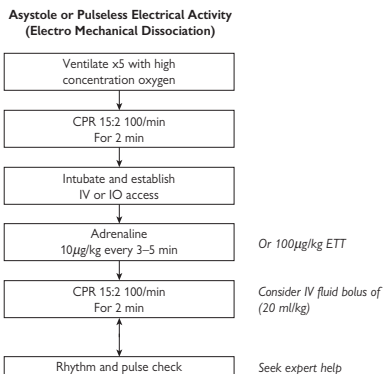
### Adopt a SAFE approach

- Shout for help.
- Approach with care.
- Free the patient from immediate danger.
- Evaluate the patient's ABC.

Assess the airway and breathing first. Give FIVE RESCUE BREATHS (chest seen to rise and fall) before assessing the circulation. Each breath should take about 1–1.5s. Check the carotid pulse in a child, but use the brachial pulse in an infant. Feel for no more than 10s.

The most common arrest scenario in children is bradycardia proceeding to asystole—a response to severe hypoxia and acidosis. Basic life support aimed at restoring early oxygenation should therefore be a priority of management. VF is relatively uncommon but may complicate hypothermia, tricyclic poisoning, and children with pre-existing cardiac disease.

- All children over 1yr should be given basic life support at a ratio of 15:2 (compressions: ventilations), aiming for 100 compressions/min (five cycles).
- Chest compressions should be started if a central pulse cannot be palpated or the child has a pulse rate  $<60$ bpm with poor perfusion.
- Where no vascular access is present, immediate intraosseous access is recommended.
- Once the airway has been secured, chest compressions should be continued at 100/min uninterrupted, with breaths administered at a rate of 10/min.
- When circulation has been restored, ventilate the child at 12–20 breaths/min to normalise  $PCO_2$ .



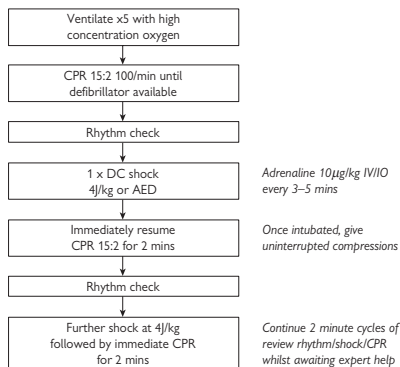
**Fig. 35.8** Asystole or pulseless electrical activity (electromechanical dissociation).

## Notes

Consider the following:

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| • Hypoxia              | • Cardiac tamponade      |
| • Hypovolaemia         | • Toxin/drug overdose    |
| • Hyper-/hypokalaemia  | • Thromboemboli          |
| • Hypothermia          | • Metabolic disturbances |
| • Tension pneumothorax |                          |

## Paediatric emergencies: ventricular fibrillation or pulseless VT



**Fig. 35.9** Ventricular fibrillation or pulseless VT.

### Notes

- Standard AEDs may be used in children over 8yr.
- Purpose-made paediatric pads are recommended for children aged between 1 and 8yr, but an unmodified adult AED may be used for children older than 1yr.
- Adrenaline 10 µg/kg = 0.1ml/kg of 1:10 000 solution.
- Consider hypokalaemia, hypothermia, and poisoning.
- Antiarrhythmic agents:
  - 1st line = amiodarone 5mg/kg IV after a third shock.
  - 2nd line = lidocaine 1mg/kg IV if amiodarone is not available.
  - Torsade de pointes: magnesium sulphate 25–50mg/kg.
  - Atropine 20µg/kg (minimum dose 100µg) for bradycardia.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Paediatric emergencies: neonatal resuscitation

Condition	Acute neonatal asphyxia during the birth process
Presentation	Floppy, blue or pale, heart rate <60bpm, diminished respiratory effort
Immediate action	Dry, wrap, and warm the baby Open and clear airway, 5 inflation breaths (2–3s at 30cmH <sub>2</sub> O)
Follow-up action	Cardiac compressions (3:1) at 120/min if <60bpm, review ventilation
Investigations	Record Apgar scores
Also consider	Hypovolaemia, diaphragmatic hernia, pneumothorax

### Risk factors

- Known fetal distress; class 1 emergency Caesarean section; meconium-stained liquor.
- Prolonged delivery; instrumental delivery; shoulder dystocia; multiple births.
- Maternal drugs: opioids, general anaesthesia for Caesarean section.
- Preterm delivery (survival is very poor if gestation <23wk and resuscitation is not recommended).

### Diagnosis

- A normal newly delivered baby is pink, breathes spontaneously within 15s, has a heart rate >100bpm, has good muscle tone, and is vocal.
- A baby requiring resuscitation is floppy, silent, blue or pale, has a heart rate <100bpm, and gasping, diminished, or absent respiratory effort.

#### Apgar scores

	0	1	2
Colour	Pale/blue	Blue extremities	Pink
Heart rate (bpm)	Absent	<100	>100
Response to stimulation	Nil	Movement	Cry
Muscle tone	Limp	Some flexion	Well flexed
Respiratory effort	Absent	Poor effort/weak cry	Good

### Immediate management

- Dry and wrap baby. Keep warm under a radiant heater. Use food-grade plastic wrapping for preterm babies (30wk and below).
- Open and clear airway but keep the neck in a neutral position.
- Give FIVE effective inflation breaths (2–3s at 30cmH<sub>2</sub>O) of air or oxygen.
- Heart rate should increase; if so, continue ventilating until spontaneous effort is adequate.
- If heart rate remains <60bpm commence chest compressions with thumbs around chest at a compression rate of 120/min and a ratio of 3:1 breaths.
- Reassess heart rate every 30s.

### Subsequent management

- In the neonate that remains unresponsive despite oxygenation, consider intubation and drugs:

Neonate			
	40/40 gestation	35/40 gestation	30/40 gestation
<b>Weight</b>	3.5kg	2.5kg	1.5kg
<b>ETT internal diameter</b>	3.5mm	3.0mm	2.5mm
<b>ETT length</b>	9.5cm	8.5cm	7.5cm
<b>Adrenaline 1/10 000 (IO/IV)</b>	0.35–1.0ml	0.25–0.75ml	0.15–0.45ml
<b>Sodium bicarbonate 4.2% IV</b>	3.5–7ml	2.5–5ml	1.5–3ml
<b>Glucose 10% IV</b>	17–35ml	12–25ml	7–15ml
<b>Volume IV (O-Neg/0.9% NaCl)</b>	35–70ml	25–50ml	15–30ml

### Other considerations

- If response to resuscitation is prompt (requiring only support breaths) return baby to the parents.
- For ventilatory depression thought to be due to maternal opioids, give naloxone 200µg IM.
- Reasons to transfer to SCBU: ongoing ventilation; major congenital abnormality; prematurity.

### Further reading

Resuscitation Council (UK) Guidelines 2005. Newborn Life Support.



## Paediatric emergencies: collapsed septic child

Condition	Sepsis with multiorgan failure, capillary leak, and hypoperfusion.
Presentation	Fever $>38^{\circ}\text{C}$ , $\downarrow$ BP, $\uparrow$ HR, $\uparrow$ RR, oliguria, altered conscious level
Immediate action	100% oxygen, fluid resuscitation, inotropes, antibiotics
Follow-up action	Referral to a specialist paediatric critical care unit
Investigations	FBC, clotting, U&Es, glucose, blood cultures
Also consider	Hypovolaemia/blood loss, anaphylaxis, poisoning, cardiac abnormality

### Risk factors

- Immune deficiency, chronic illness.
- Exposure to Gram-positive/negative bacteria, *Listeria*, *Rickettsia*, herpes virus.

### Diagnosis

- 'Warm shock' presents early as vasodilatation and often responds to volume resuscitation.
- 'Cold shock' is more serious with lower BP, particularly diastolic hypotension, cold peripheries, capillary refill  $>2\text{s}$ , and oliguria requiring significant circulatory support.
- Fever  $>38^{\circ}\text{C}$ , altered level of consciousness, high white cell count.

### Immediate management

- **ABC**—100% oxygen via a non-rebreathing mask  $\pm$  ventilatory support/intubation.
- **Fluid boluses** of 20ml/kg crystalloid/colloid up to 100ml/kg to restore normovolaemia.
- **Inotropic support** with dobutamine (up to  $20\mu\text{g/kg/min}$ ) if fluids ineffective.
- **Correct hypoglycaemia** with 10–20% glucose.
- If IV fluid and dobutamine is ineffective at maintaining BP, consider:
  - Dopamine (up to  $20\mu\text{g/kg/min}$ )
  - Adrenaline ( $0.1\text{--}1.0\mu\text{g/kg/min}$ )
  - Noradrenaline ( $0.1\mu\text{g/kg/min}$ )
- If pH  $<7.1$  on ABGs and ventilation is adequate, correct acidosis with 8.4% sodium bicarbonate (4.2% in neonates) according to the following formula:  $\text{Sodium bicarbonate required for full correction (mmol)} = (\text{weight in kg} \times 0.3 \times \text{base deficit})$  Give 50% correction first, then repeat ABGs and reassess.

- Antibiotics: cefotaxime 50mg/kg IV 6-hourly for older children or ampicillin + gentamicin for neonates (seek microbiologist's or PICU advice for up-to-date guidelines about doses for different ages).

### Subsequent management

- Obtain specialist help early. Contact the nearest regional centre/PICU department for advice.
- Consider the possibility of raised intracranial pressure (bulging fontanelle, papilloedema, altered pupils). If suspected catheterise the patient, ventilate to normocapnia, and give mannitol 0.5–1.0g/kg or furosemide 1mg/kg. Avoid LP. CT head.
- Consider the possibility of meningitis/encephalitis. Look for fever, lethargy, irritability, vomiting, headache, photophobia, convulsions, neck stiffness, raised ICP. Look carefully for purpuric non-blanching spots.
- Consider DIC if mucosal surfaces are bleeding.
- Stabilise for transfer. A retrieval service may be provided by the receiving unit—prepare a handover.

### Other considerations

- Significant capillary leakage in severe sepsis may result in pulmonary oedema secondary to fluid resuscitation. This may be reduced by using 4.5% human albumin solution.
- If drugs are required to intubate the child, anticipate an exaggerated fall in blood pressure and adjust the dose accordingly. It is wise to start inotropes and fluid resuscitation before induction.

## Paediatric emergencies: major trauma

Condition	Serious injury to chest/abdomen/pelvis/spine/head
Presentation	↑ HR, ↓ capillary refill, ↑ RR, ↓ conscious level, bony/visceral injuries
Immediate action	ABCDE, 100% oxygen, 2 × IVs or intraosseous access, 20ml/kg IV fluids
Follow-up action	Secondary survey, stabilise for transfer to theatre or critical care
Investigations	CXR, C-spine, ABG, ECG, G&S, blood glucose, CT head, ultrasound abdomen
Also consider	Non-accidental injury, poisoning, fitting

### Risk factors

- Pedestrian/cyclist struck by vehicle, unrestrained passenger in RTA.
- Head injuries account for 40% of trauma deaths in children.
- At-risk register.

### Diagnosis

- Dependent upon cause and primary mode of injury. Usually involves blood loss with resultant tachycardia and peripheral vasoconstriction. Respiratory rate increased.
- Diminished level of consciousness, respiratory/ventilatory compromise if chest injured.
- Immediately life-threatening conditions include airway obstruction, tension pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade, PEA cardiac arrest.

### Immediate management

- **Airway**—100% O<sub>2</sub> (15l/min via non-rebreathing mask). In-line C-spine stabilisation and RSI.
- **Breathing**—assess for bilateral expansion, breath sounds, and evidence of pneumothorax.
- **Circulation**—assess for tachycardia, capillary refill >2s, two IV cannulae, 20ml/kg crystalloid.
- **Disability**—pupils and AVPU (Alert/Responds to Voice/Responds to Pain/Unresponsive).
- **Exposure**—remove clothes to assess but keep warm. Look for evidence of visceral injuries (CSF leak, blood-stained sputum, blood-stained urine).

### Subsequent management

- If repeated fluid boluses of 20ml/kg are required, blood should be given for the third and subsequent bolus. Surgical intervention is likely if an external bleeding point has not been identified and controlled. Likely sites for internal bleeding are the abdomen, thorax, and pelvis. There may be large blood loss from scalp wounds or into the subdural space in children with head injuries, particularly infants.

- Place a urinary catheter and oro-/nasogastric tube.
- Unconscious patients should be ventilated to normocarbida with muscle relaxants, but beware of masking seizures.
- Perform a more detailed secondary survey after initial stabilisation.
- Assess the need for surgical intervention.
- Stabilise before transferring out of the department.

### Other considerations

- If IV cannulation proves difficult at conventional sites, attempt femoral venous access.
- **Intraosseous cannulation:** useful in all children if IV access is difficult. The most suitable site is the proximal tibia 1–3cm (children) or 0.5–1cm (babies) below and just medial to the tibial tuberosity on the flat, medial aspect of the tibia where the bone lies subcutaneously. The anterior distal femur or humerus is an alternative if the tibia is fractured. Insert an 18–22G smooth or threaded needle at right angles with the needle directed slightly caudally (away from the growth plate) until loss of resistance is felt and fluid can be injected easily without evidence of extravasation.

## Paediatric emergencies: acute severe asthma

Condition	Severe bronchospasm
Presentation	Respiratory exhaustion; wheezy/silent chest; ↑ RR, ↑ HR
Immediate action	100% oxygen, nebulised salbutamol 2.5mg, and ipratropium 250µg
Follow-up action	Hydrocortisone 4mg/kg, consider adrenaline/aminophylline/MgSO <sub>4</sub>
Investigations	ABG, CXR, serum theophylline (if already taking this)
Also consider	Anaphylaxis, inhaled FB, pneumonia, epiglottitis, pneumothorax

### Risk factors

- History of asthma especially with acute respiratory tract infection.
- Exposure to known triggers (e.g. cold, smoke, allergen, exercise).
- Prematurity and low birth weight.

### Diagnosis

- Confused or drowsy from exhaustion, maximal use of accessory muscles, unable to talk.
- Respiratory rate >30 breaths/min (>5yr) or >50 breaths/min (2–5yr) especially with a silent chest.
- PEFR <33% predicted. [Predicted PEFR in litres/min = 5 × (height in cm—80).]
- SpO<sub>2</sub> <92% or PaO<sub>2</sub> <8kPa (60mmHg) in air.
- PaCO<sub>2</sub> often normal initially but rises peri-arrest.
- Heart rate >140bpm.

### Immediate management

- Check ABC—100% oxygen.
- Nebulised salbutamol 2.5–5mg (10 puffs via inhaler and spacer).
- Nebulised ipratropium bromide 250µg.
- IV hydrocortisone 4mg/kg.
- Review ABC—consider intubation and ventilation. (NB gas trapping, so slow respiratory rate preferable.)
- If still unresponsive:
  - IM adrenaline 10µg/kg ± IV adrenaline infused at 0.02–0.1µg/kg/min [or consider nebulised adrenaline (2.5–5mg) or IV adrenaline 1µg/kg with ECG monitoring].
  - IV salbutamol titrated to effect up to 15µg/kg IV over 10min, then infused at 1–5µg/kg/min.
  - IV aminophylline 5mg/kg loading dose, then infused at 1mg/kg/hr.
  - IV magnesium sulphate 40mg/kg (max 2g).

### Subsequent management

- Rehydrate with 10–20ml/kg crystalloid.
- Oral prednisolone 20mg (2–5yr), 30–40mg (>5yr) for 3d.
- Repeat nebulisers every 20–30min if necessary, otherwise 3–4-hourly.
- CXR to exclude pneumothorax.

### Other considerations

- IPPV in severe bronchospasm is difficult and may result in gas trapping and cardiovascular compromise secondary to raised intrathoracic pressure. Consider extending expiratory phase and allowing hypercarbia to occur.
- Volatile agents and ketamine have been used to relieve intractable bronchospasm.
- Avoid the use of known histamine-releasing drugs (e.g. thiopental) and NSAIDs.

### Further reading

British Guideline on the Management of Asthma (2008). [www.sign.ac.uk](http://www.sign.ac.uk).

**Paediatric emergencies: anaphylaxis**

Condition	IgE-mediated type B hypersensitivity reaction
Presentation	Stridor, wheeze, cough, ↓ SpO <sub>2</sub> , CVS collapse, respiratory distress
Immediate action	100% oxygen, remove trigger, adrenaline IM, 20ml/kg IV fluid
Follow-up action	Chlorphenamine IM/slow IV; hydrocortisone IM/slow IV
Investigations	ABGs, CXR, plasma tryptase, urinary methylhistamine
Also consider	Tension pneumothorax, latex allergy, sepsis, acute severe asthma

**Risk factors**

- Previous allergic reaction.
- History of asthma or atopy.
- Absence of an airway/circuit filter (latex allergy via aerosolised particles).
- Cross sensitivities (e.g. latex and kiwi fruit/bananas; NSAIDs).
- Use of known allergens (nut extracts in ENT, radiographic contrast media, penicillins).

**Diagnosis**

- Common signs: stridor; wheeze; cough; arterial desaturation; respiratory distress; CVS collapse.
- Less commonly: rash; urticaria; oedema.

**Immediate management**

- ABC—100% oxygen. (NB beware of sudden loss of airway control due to oedema.)
- Remove direct contact with all potential triggers (most commonly muscle relaxants/NSAIDs).
- Give IM adrenaline 1:1000 solution: (10µg/kg = 0.01ml/kg 1:1000) <6 months 50µg (0.05ml) 6 months–6yr 120µg (0.12ml) 6–12yr 250µg (0.25ml) >12yr 500µg (0.5ml).
- Give IV fluid volume resuscitation with 20ml/kg crystalloid or colloid and secure more IV access sites.

Age range	Adrenaline (IM) 1:1000	Chlorphenamine (IV)	Hydrocortisone (IV)
<6 months	50µg (0.05ml)	—	—
6 months–6yr	120µg (0.12ml)	2.5–5mg (>12 months)	50mg (>12 months)
6–12yr	250µg (0.25ml)	5–10mg	100mg
>12yr	500µg (0.5ml)	10–20mg	100–500mg

### Subsequent management

- Antihistamine: chlorphenamine IM/slow IV (1–6yr = 2.5–5mg; 6–12yr = 5–10mg; >12yr = 10–20mg).
- Steroids: hydrocortisone IM/slow IV (1–6yr = 50mg; 6–12yr = 100mg; >12yr = 100–500mg).
- Frequent and careful review of the unsecured airway.

### Other considerations

- Chlorphenamine should not be given to neonates.
- IV adrenaline 1µg/kg (0.01ml/kg of 1:10 000) can be given incrementally titrated to response as an alternative to the IM route, but it must be done with ECG monitoring due to the risk of provoking dysrhythmias.
- Complete a yellow CSM notification and refer to a clinical immunologist for skin-prick testing.

### Further reading

Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2009). Suspected anaphylactic reactions associated with anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 199–211. Also available at [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org). Resuscitation Council (UK) Guidelines. [www.resus.org.uk](http://www.resus.org.uk).



## Paediatric doses and equipment<sup>1,2</sup>

### Weight/BP estimation (1–10yr)

- Child's weight in kg =  $2 \times (\text{Age in yr} + 4)$
- Normal systolic BP in mmHg =  $(\text{Age in yr} \times 2) + 80$

### Airway

- ETT internal diameter in mm =  $(\text{Age in yr} \div 4) + 4$
- ETT length (oral) to lips in cm =  $(\text{Age in yr} \div 2) + 12$
- ETT length (nose) to lips in cm =  $(\text{Age in yr} \div 2) + 15$
- LMA#1 (cuff volume 4ml) <6.5kg
- LMA#2 (cuff volume 10ml) 6.5–20kg
- LMA#2.5 (cuff volume 14ml) 20–30kg
- LMA#3 (cuff volume 20ml) >30kg

### Estimated drug doses (see also p860)

- Adrenaline 10µg/kg
- Aminophylline 5mg/kg
- Amiodarone 5mg/kg
- Atropine 10–20µg/kg
- Bicarbonate 1mmol/kg
- Calcium chloride 0.2ml/kg of 10% solution slowly
- Calcium gluconate 0.6ml/kg of 10% solution
- Cefotaxime 50mg/kg
- Diazepam 0.1mg/kg IV  
0.5mg/kg PR
- Glucose (10%) 5ml/kg
- Ketamine 2mg/kg
- Lidocaine 1mg/kg
- Lorazepam 0.1mg/kg recommended for status epilepticus  
(repeatable after 10min)
- Magnesium 25–50mg/kg
- Naloxone 0.1mg/kg
- Neostigmine 50µg/kg
- Paraldehyde 0.1mg/kg
- Phenytoin 20mg/kg
- Salbutamol 2.5mg nebuliser

### Circulation

- Blood volume 75ml/kg (1–10yr)  
70ml/kg (>10yr)
- Fluid bolus 20ml/kg

These estimations are not valid for premature infants and are intended as rough guides only.

<sup>1</sup> UK Resuscitation Council Guidelines (2005). [www.resus.org.uk](http://www.resus.org.uk).

<sup>2</sup> European Resuscitation Council Guidelines (2005). [www.erc.edu](http://www.erc.edu).

# **Airway assessment and management**

**Jules Cranshaw and Tim Cook**

Airway assessment 970

Unanticipated difficult airway 976

Failed intubation 980

Techniques for management of elective difficult intubation 982

Can't intubate, can't ventilate 986

Management of the obstructed airway 990

Rapid sequence induction 994

Inhalational induction 998

Awake fiberoptic intubation 1000

Extubation after difficult intubation 1004

## Airway assessment

The difficult airway is the single most important cause of anaesthesia-related morbidity and mortality—up to 30% of deaths attributable to anaesthesia are associated with inadequate airway management.

- Most catastrophes are due to unexpected difficulty or poor planning in patients with known difficulty.
- Airway assessment has traditionally focused on detecting difficult direct laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation.
- Predicting difficult mask ventilation, LMA placement, and other rescue techniques is equally important.
- **Intubation** is:
  - Difficult in ~1:50 cases.
  - Impossible in ~1:2000 cases (increasing to ~1:300 for emergencies).
- **Facemask ventilation** is difficult in ~1:20 cases and impossible in ~1:1500.
- Rescue techniques fail in ~1:20 cases.
- Patients with multiple predictors of difficulty or risk factors for rapid hypoxaemia (e.g. pregnancy, obesity, children) need great care.

### History

- Congenital airway difficulties (e.g. Down's, Pierre Robin, Klippel–Feil syndromes).
- Acquired airway difficulties (e.g. pregnancy, diabetes, rheumatoid arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, acromegaly, Still's disease).
- Iatrogenic problems (e.g. cervical fusion, oral/pharyngeal radiotherapy, laryngeal/tracheal surgery, TMJ surgery).
- Reported previous anaesthetic problems, e.g. dental damage or severe sore throat. Check anaesthetic notes, med-alerts, and possibly databases.

### Examination

- Adverse anatomical features, e.g. small mouth, receding chin, high arched palate, large tongue, bull neck, morbid obesity, large breasts.
- Acquired problems (e.g. head/neck burns, tumours, abscesses, radiotherapy injury, restrictive scars).
- Mechanical limitation—reduced mouth opening and anterior temporomandibular movement (e.g. TMJ damage, quinsy, post-radiotherapy), poor cervical spine movement.
- Poor dentition, e.g. anterior gaps, rotten/sharp/loose/protruding or awkwardly placed teeth.
- Orthopaedic/neurosurgical/orthodontic equipment (e.g. surgical collar, halo traction, external fixator, stereotactic locator, dental wiring).
- If using the nasal route check the patency of the nasal passages.
- NB: facial hair may hide adverse anatomical features.

### Radiology

- A recent CT or MRI may define potentially difficult anatomy and guide management.
- On plain neck X-ray occipito-atlanto-axial disease is more predictive of difficult laryngoscopy than disease below C2.

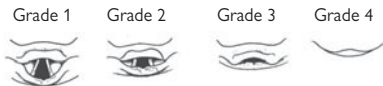
- Radiographic measures of mandibular length and depth can predict difficult laryngoscopy but are rarely used.
- Vertebral 'settling' (e.g. rheumatoid) is predictive of difficult intubation and raises the possibility of instability.
- Overall, plain films are poor predictors of cervical stability even in rheumatoid arthritis.
- Flexion/extension views are only indicated to identify dangerous ligamentous (usually atlanto-axial) disruption.

### Predictive tests

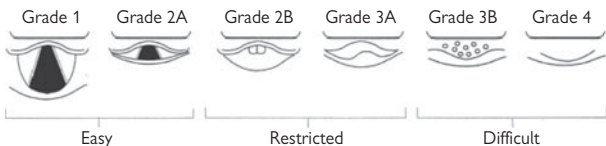
Laryngoscopy requires a clear line of sight from the upper teeth to the glottis. It entails mouth opening, extension of the upper c-spine, and moving the tissue within the arch of the mandible out of the way. Most tests of difficult laryngoscopy check one or more of these capacities.

Problems with predictive tests:

- Low specificity and positive predictive value. Large numbers of false positives. Generally <5% of patients with features 'predicting' difficult laryngoscopy prove difficult.
- Sensitivity is often <50%, i.e. >50% of difficulties are not predicted. Studies that have developed predictive tests often quote higher sensitivity and specificity than found in routine practice.
- Combining tests increases the specificity (i.e. reduces false positives) but decreases sensitivity (i.e. misses more of the difficult cases).
- Definitions of 'difficulty' vary widely. Although the laryngeal view described by Cormack and Lehane is frequently used (see figure 36.1), it correlates only moderately with measures of difficulty with intubation. Modifications have therefore been proposed (see figure 36.2).



**Fig. 36.1** Cormack and Lehane classification of glottic visualisation.



**Fig. 36.2** Cook's modified classification of laryngeal view. 1–4 refer to Cormack and Lehane classification. In Cook's classification 'easy' views require no adjuncts, 'restricted' views require a gum elastic bougie, 'difficult' views require advanced techniques to intubate.

**Interincisor gap (II gap)**

- The distance between the incisors (or alveolar margins) with the mouth open maximally.
- Affected by TMJ and upper c-spine mobility.
- <3cm makes intubation difficulty more likely.
- <2.5cm—LMA insertion will be difficult.

**Protrusion of the mandible**

- Class A—able to protrude the lower incisors anterior to the upper incisors.
- Class B—lower incisors can protrude to, but not beyond, the upper incisors.
- Class C—lower incisors cannot protrude to the upper incisors.

Classes B and C are associated with increased risk of difficult laryngoscopy.

**Mallampati test (with Samsoon and Young's modification)**

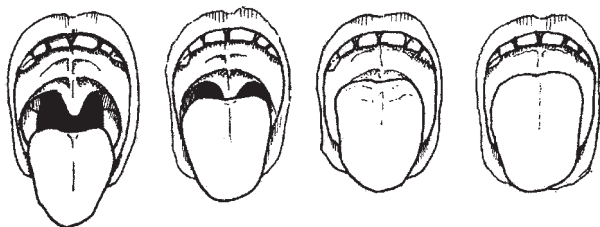
(See figure 36.3.) Examine the patient's oropharynx from opposite the patient's face while the patient opens their mouth maximally and protrudes their tongue without phonating.

- Faucial pillars, soft palate, and uvula visible. (Class 1)
- Faucial pillars and soft palate visible—uvula tip masked by base of tongue. (Class 2)
- Only soft palate visible. (Class 3)
- Soft palate not visible. (Class 4)

Class 3 and 4 views (i.e. when there is no view of the posterior pharyngeal wall) are associated with an increased risk of difficult laryngoscopy. This test is prone to interobserver variation. Used alone it correctly predicts about 50% of difficult laryngoscopies and has a false positive rate of >90%.

**Extension of the upper cervical spine**

- When limited (<90°) the risk of difficult laryngoscopy is increased.
- Movement may be assessed by:
  - Flexing the head on the neck, immobilising the lower c-spine with one hand on the neck, then fully extending the head. Placing a pointer on the vertex or forehead allows the angle of movement to be estimated.
  - Placing one finger on the patient's chin and one finger on the occipital protuberance and extending the head maximally.



**Fig. 36.3** Mallampati class 1, 2, 3, and 4.

- With normal c-spine mobility the finger on the chin is higher than the one on the occiput. Level fingers indicate moderate limitation. If the finger on the chin remains lower than the one on the occiput there is severe limitation.

### **Thyromental distance (Patil test)**

The distance from the tip of the thyroid cartilage to the tip of the mandible, neck fully extended:

- Normal >7cm; <6cm predicts ~75% of difficult laryngoscopies.
- Combined Patil and Mallampati tests (<7cm and Class 3–4) increases specificity (97%) but reduces sensitivity (81%).

### **Sternomental distance (Savva test)**

The distance from the sternal notch to the tip of the mandible, neck fully extended and mouth closed.

- <12.5cm associated with difficulty (positive predictive value 82%).

### **Wilson score**

Five factors—weight; upper c-spine mobility; jaw movement; receding mandible; protruding upper teeth. Each scored from 0–2 (subjectively normal to abnormal).

- A total score of  $\geq 2$  predicts 75% of difficult intubations; 12% false positives.

## **Predictors of difficult mask ventilation**

Mask ventilation requires the ability to cover the mouth and nose with a facemask and produce a seal while maintaining an open airway.

Predictors of difficulty:

- Age >55yr
- Body mass index >26kg/m<sup>2</sup>
- History of snoring
- Beard
- Absence of teeth

(The presence of two of the above factors has a >70% sensitivity and specificity.)

- Facial abnormalities
- Receding or markedly prognathic jaw
- Obstructive sleep apnoea
- Mallampati Class 3–4.

## **Predictors of problems with back-up techniques**

### **LMA insertion**

LMA insertion is likely to form part of a rescue plan when routine management fails. Factors associated with difficult LMA placement are inability to open the mouth more than 2.5cm (impossible if <2.0cm) and intraoral/pharyngeal masses (e.g. tumours including lingual tonsils).

### **Direct tracheal access**

If emergency tracheal access is contemplated check:

- The position of the larynx and trachea if necessary with ultrasound.
- The accessibility of the cricothyroid membrane and trachea.

Check for morbid obesity, goitre, or other anterior neck mass, deviated trachea, fixed neck flexion, previous radiotherapy, surgical collar, or external

fixator preventing access. Inspect relevant CT or MRI whenever possible (e.g. in obesity will your equipment reach the trachea?).

### **Awake techniques including fiberoptic intubation (AFOI)**

The most important predictors of difficult AFOI are lack of patient cooperation and operator inexperience. Blood or unmanageable secretions in the airway may also predict failure. Use of AFOI for cases of airway obstruction is controversial.

### **Further reading**

- Calder I et al. (2003). Mouth opening. A new angle. *Anesthesiology*, **99**, 799–801.
- Cook TM (2000). A new practical classification of laryngeal view. *Anaesthesia*, **55**, 274–279.
- Cormack RS, Lehane J (1984). Difficult tracheal intubation in obstetrics. *Anaesthesia*, **39**, 1105–1111.
- Kheterpal S, Han R, Tremper KK, Shanks A, Tait AR, O'Reilly M, Ludwig TA (2006). Incidence and predictors of difficult and impossible mask ventilation. *Anesthesiology*, **105**, 885–891.
- Langeron O et al. (2000). Prediction of difficult mask ventilation. *Anesthesiology*, **92**, 1229–1236.
- Mallampati SR, Gugino LD, Desai S, Waraksa B, Freiburger D, Lui PL (1983). Clinical sign to predict difficult tracheal intubation. *Canadian Anaesthetists Society Journal*, **30**, 316–317.
- Patil VU, Stehling LC, Zauder HL (1983). Predicting the difficulty of intubation using an intubation gauge. *Anesthesiology Review*, **10**, 32–33.
- Samsoon G, Young JR (1987). Difficult tracheal intubation: a retrospective study. *Anaesthesia*, **42**, 487–490.
- Savva D (1994). Prediction of difficult intubation. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **73**, 149–153.
- Shiga T, Wajima Z, Inoue T, Sakamoto A (2005). Predicting difficult intubation in apparently normal patients: a meta-analysis of bedside screening test performance. *Anesthesiology*, **103**, 429–437.
- Wilson ME (1993). Predicting difficult intubation. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **71**, 333–334.
- Wilson ME, Spiegelhalter D, Robertson JA, Lesser P (1988). Predicting difficult intubation. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **61**, 211–216.
- Yentis S (2002). Predicting difficult intubation—worthwhile exercise or pointless ritual? *Anaesthesia*, **57**, 105–109.

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Unanticipated difficult airway

Despite careful assessment, ~50% of airway difficulties arise unexpectedly from:

- Difficult/failed intubation.
- Difficult/failed mask ventilation.
- Both.
- Unexpected difficulty is more likely in emergencies, obstetric cases, and with inexperience. *When difficulties occur patients do not die from failure to intubate but from failure to oxygenate.* Preoxygenation of all cases prolongs the period before desaturation and reduces risk. Switch to 100% oxygen whenever an airway problem develops. Ensure anaesthesia and muscle relaxation are effective.

### Difficult intubation

Management of unpredicted intubation difficulties can be considered as a four-step process:

- A. **Primary intubation attempt** (includes optimal anaesthesia, optimal position, optimal blade or laryngoscope\*, optimal laryngeal manipulation, use of gum elastic bougie or stylet).
- B. **Secondary intubation attempt** (includes intubation via an LMA or ILMA, use of flexible or rigid fiberoptic system, lightwand or retrograde intubation). Omit in RSI.
- C. **Abandoning intubation attempt.** Oxygenation/ventilation via face-mask ventilation (but includes use of supraglottic adjuncts). Wake patient if indicated and feasible.
- D. **Rescue.** Invasive tracheal techniques (needle or cannula cricothyroidotomy, surgical airway).

The decision to proceed from A–B–C–D depends on failure of each technique. In most cases senior help should be called when plan A fails. Plan D should be reserved for situations of ‘can’t intubate, can’t ventilate’ (CICV) (and failed LMA) with progressive desaturation despite optimal attempts to oxygenate.

### *Difficult intubation with easy ventilation (no aspiration risk)*

- A calm stepwise approach can be used. If plan A fails plan B will usually succeed. When plans A and B fail, plan C is usually successful. See ‘Failed intubation’ (p980).

### *Difficult intubation with difficult/impossible ventilation (can’t intubate, can’t ventilate) (CICV)*

- This situation is an emergency and will become life-threatening if not managed correctly. If mask ventilation is difficult, insertion of an LMA (LMA, ILMA, or PLMA), i-gel, or other supraglottic airway (choice depends on experience and situation) will rescue the airway in >90%

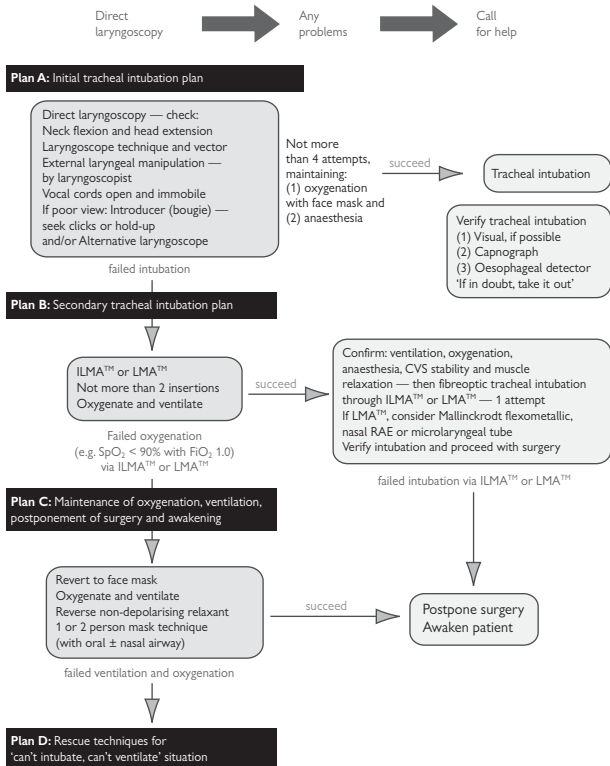
\* In experienced hands the primary attempt may include rigid fiberoptic laryngoscopes (e.g. Airtraq, Storz C-Mac).

of cases. Where ventilation remains impossible and oxygenation cannot be maintained, invasive techniques (plan D) are life-saving. All anaesthetists should be equipped and prepared to perform such techniques when the need arises (p986).

### **Difficult intubation during rapid sequence intubation.**

- After two attempts at intubation, proceed directly to plan C (omit plan B) and wake the patient up. See 'Rapid sequence induction' (pp994–7).

### **Unanticipated difficult tracheal intubation (figure 36.4)**



**Fig. 36.4** Unanticipated difficult tracheal intubation. With permission of the Difficult Airway Society.

**Failed mask ventilation**

This may arise as a result of:

- Anaesthetic circuit problems (e.g. blockage, disconnection).
- Failure to maintain a seal between mask and face.
- Failure to maintain upper airway patency (most common problem).
- Laryngospasm (see p930).
- Laryngeal pathology. (Rare. Cricothyroidotomy may be lifesaving.)
- Bronchospasm. (May occur in smokers or asthmatics (see p110 and p936) or may be part of anaphylaxis—see p948.)
- Lower airway pathology.

This is always an emergency—an extra pair of hands is helpful. Call for help early, but do not let your assistant leave.

**Circuit problems and mask seal problems.**

- Prior checking of entire circuit (including mask and catheter mount) should avoid problems. If suspected change to self-inflating bag and new mask. Seal problems require good technique, experience, and often assistance.

**Failure to maintain airway patency (this is plan C above)**

- Place the head and neck in the optimal position (lower neck flexed on shoulders and upper neck extended—‘sniffing the morning air’). Obese patients may be better in the ‘ramped up’ position.
- Use two-person mask ventilation (one to provide jaw thrust and facemask seal and one to squeeze the reservoir bag). When they arrive an additional helper may take over jaw thrust (three person mask ventilation).
- Insert an oral and/or nasal airway (but use care to avoid nasal bleeding).
- If still unable to ventilate by facemask insert an LMA or attempt intubation. If cricoid pressure has been applied reduce or release it, but be ready with a sucker.
- If not already done, and immediate waking not feasible, the patient should be paralysed at this stage.
- If still obstructed with progressive severe desaturation and unable to intubate or awaken the patient, proceed to plan D.

**Laryngospasm**

May be preceded by stridor or characteristic ‘crowing’ noise followed by complete airway obstruction. May occur without these signs. Consider in all cases of airway obstruction without obvious supraglottic causes. Can be fatal.

- Apply 100% oxygen with the mask held tightly and the expiratory valve closed.
- Use suction to remove secretions and blood from the airway.
- Apply CPAP and attempt manual ventilation. Needs two people.
- Forcible jaw thrust or anterior pressure on the body of the mandible just anterior to the mastoid process (Larson’s point) may ‘break’ laryngospasm by a combination of stimulation and airway clearance.

- Deepening anaesthesia with a small dose of propofol (20–50mg) may reduce spasm.
- If oxygenation is falling consider a small dose of suxamethonium (0.1–0.5mg/kg). If laryngospasm is severe a full dose of suxamethonium (1.0mg/kg) should be administered and the trachea intubated. If there is no venous access suxamethonium may be administered IM or into the tongue (3mg/kg).
- As laryngospasm starts to ‘break’ anaesthesia may be deepened with further doses of IV agent as appropriate.
- Consider a change in airway management (e.g. exchange a tracheal tube for an LMA), prior to further attempts to wake the patient, to prevent recurrence.

### **Laryngeal pathology**

Unexpected laryngeal pathology causing problems with mask ventilation is a very rare scenario. Cricothyroidotomy may be life-saving.

### **Lower airway pathology**

Acute severe bronchospasm may present as difficulty in mask ventilation. This may be present in smokers and severe asthmatics or may be part of an adverse drug reaction—see p110, p936 and p948. Very rarely lower airway pathology due to diagnosed or undiagnosed mediastinal masses may present as difficulty with ventilation at induction of anaesthesia. Tracheal intubation or use of a rigid bronchoscope to maintain airway patency may be life-saving. Differential diagnosis includes a foreign body (inhaled object from anaesthetic circuit, inhaled teeth, blood clot, mucus plug, etc.) which may mimic severe bronchospasm. This should be considered and if necessary excluded by fiberoptic inspection.

### **Paediatric implications**

- Difficulty with tracheal intubation in the absence of structural abnormalities is uncommon.
- Laryngospasm is more common in children.
- Foreign body is also more common.
- Hypoxia occurs rapidly in children if ventilation is inadequate.
- Airway manipulation or use of suxamethonium in the presence of hypoxia may lead to bradycardia and cardiac arrest.

### **Special considerations**

All patients who have airway difficulties should be informed after they have recovered. Inform patient and general practitioner and document fully in notes and databases as appropriate. Complete ‘airway alert’ if in use. The Read code for difficult intubation is SP2y3 and should be included where relevant.

## Failed intubation

(See also pp940–4.)

The commonest cause is difficult laryngoscopy. *Patients do not die from failure to intubate but failure to oxygenate.*

### Optimising primary intubation attempts

Following a few simple rules will eliminate the majority of difficulties.

- Optimise the position of the head and neck (flexion of the lower c-spine with extension at the upper c-spine—‘sniffing the morning air’). One pillow. ‘Ramping’ for obese patients.
- Optimal anaesthesia: an unconscious patient with working relaxant.
- Optimal laryngeal position. If difficulty is encountered use optimal external laryngeal manipulation (OELM) by an assistant, or backwards upwards and rightwards pressure (BURP) during cricoid pressure.
- Use of an effective laryngoscope *that the user is trained to use*. There are increasing choices: a long blade, a McCoy blade, a straight blade, and an appropriate rigid fiberoptic blade are high amongst the options.
- Use a gum elastic bougie (or stylet in paediatrics).

### Diagnosis of misplacement of the tracheal tube (oesophageal intubation)

- Retain a high index of suspicion after a difficult intubation.
- Capnography is the gold standard for confirmation of tracheal intubation.
- In the absence of capnography (which should be rare) suspect oesophageal placement if you cannot confirm the following: normal breath sounds in both axillae with absent sounds over the stomach; rise and fall of chest; normal airway pressure cycle and patient stability.
- Use an ‘oesophageal detector’. If negative pressure is applied to the ET the trachea (a rigid structure) does not collapse, while the oesophagus (not rigid) does. Failure to aspirate air with a bladder syringe directly attached to the ET suggests oesophageal placement.
- Confirm ET placement with a fiberoptic scope.
- Where there is doubt, pull it out and apply bag and mask ventilation.
- NB: delay in diagnosis of oesophageal intubation leads to cardiovascular collapse and the diagnosis is then easy to overlook.

### Failed elective intubation with easy ventilation (see p982)

In these cases when the patient has received a full dose of a non-depolarising muscle relaxant and mask ventilation is easy, it may be appropriate to try a full range of secondary intubation techniques (plan B above).

### Failed intubation during rapid sequence induction

(see RSI p994)

Proceed directly to plan C.

### Failed elective intubation with difficult ventilation

(see CICV, p986)

The options here are only wake the patient (i.e. continue with plan C) or move rapidly to plan D.

### Further reading

Henderson JJ, Papat MT, Latto IP, Pearce AC, Difficult Airway Society (2004). Difficult Airway Society guidelines for management of the unanticipated difficult intubation. *Anaesthesia*, **59**, 675–694.

## Techniques for management of elective difficult intubation

### Strategies for the 'Can't intubate, can ventilate' scenario

#### Gum elastic bougie

[‘Eschmann tracheal tube introducer (reusable)’], Sims Portex Ltd, New Portex House, Military Road, Hythe, Kent CT21 5BN, UK. Tel +44 1303 260551.] The gum elastic bougie (GEB) should enable intubation where the laryngeal inlet is partially visible and some where it is not (laryngoscopy grade 2a–3a, p971) and is probably the single most useful piece of difficult intubation equipment. Keep the bougie anterior and in the midline to ensure it does not enter the oesophagus or either piriform fossa. Signs of correct placement are bumps as it passes along the tracheal rings, rotation as it enters the main bronchi, and ‘hold-up’ at approx 40cm. When ‘railroading’ the ET keep the laryngoscope in the mouth and rotate the tube 90° counter-clockwise to ensure the bevel is correctly orientated to avoid ‘hold-up’ during passage through the larynx. A small ET will railroad better than a large one. Single-use bougies may perform less well.

#### Frova intubating stylet

(Cook Critical Care, Monroe House, Letchworth, SG6 1LN, UK. Tel +44 1462 44 3100.) This is used similarly to the gum elastic bougie but is more rigid. It is hollow and has two connectors to enable oxygen insufflation or jet ventilation when required.

#### Intubation via the classic, ProSeal, or intubating LMA

These techniques use an LMA as a ‘dedicated airway’. This allows oxygenation and ventilation during intubation and provides a channel through which intubation attempts are made. Intubation via the classic LMA is rarely successful when performed blindly with tracheal tube or bougie. Use of a fibroscope increases success. A suggested technique involves fibreoptic-guided placement of a hollow Aintree Intubation catheter (AIC, ID 4.7mm, ED 7.0mm, Cook Critical Care) to the carina, then removal of the LMA and the fibroscope. The AIC remains in place and has connectors that enable ventilation at this point. A tracheal tube (ID 7.0mm or larger) is then railroaded over the catheter. The same technique is suitable for the ProSeal LMA (and some other supraglottics such as the i-gel).

The ILMA (Intavent Direct, Maidenhead, UK. Tel +44 1628 594500) is a modification of the classic LMA designed to facilitate blind or fibreoptic oral intubation, in asleep or very cooperative awake patients. It comprises a rigid anatomically curved airway tube terminating in a standard 15mm connector. It is fitted with a rigid metal handle. The mask has a single epiglottic elevating bar replacing the two bars of a classic LMA. As the ET exits the airway a funnel centralises it and this bar lifts the epiglottis from the route of passage of the ET. Sizes 3–5 enable intubation in large children and adults. Specific ILMA ETs (silicone-tipped wire-reinforced size 6.0–8.0mm) are designed for use with all LMAs and decrease intubation failure/trauma. Standard PVC ETs should not be used because of the risk

of trauma. Similarly fibreoptic guidance improves success and is advocated for all but considerable emergencies.

Endotracheal tube size fitting through Intavent LMAs (if cuffed ET take off 0.5mm)

	Size	ID (mm)	Distance to bars (mm)
LMA	1	3.5 <sup>1</sup>	108
	1.5	4.5	135
	2	5.0	140
	2½	6.0	170
	3	6.5	200
	4	6.5	205
	5	7.0	230
fLMA (flexible LMA)	2	3.5 <sup>1</sup>	140 <sup>2</sup>
	2½	3.5 <sup>1</sup>	205 <sup>2</sup>
	3	5.5	237
	4	5.5	237
	5	6.0	284
PLMA	3	6.0	190
	4	6.5	190
	5	6.5	195
ILMA	6.0–8.0mm ILMA tubes, distance to epiglottic elevator 160mm		

<sup>1</sup> A tube larger than this cannot pass the proximal end of the LMA, at the site of the 15mm connector.

<sup>2</sup> This is longer than an uncuffed ET of this size, so not suitable for this technique; fLMA cannot be recommended for this technique!

### Other supraglottic airway devices

A variety of other supraglottic airway devices (SADs) may be useful for use as conduits for intubation with an AIC.

- i-gel: increasing experience. Design characteristics make success likely.
- Laryngeal tube and variants: narrow, long tube and rather narrow airway orifices that may not sit over the larynx make it suboptimal.

### Novel rigid fibreoptic laryngoscopes

Numerous new and older devices are available: too many to describe. Many are poorly evaluated and their clinical value for difficult intubation



is promoted but largely unproven. Most use fibreoptics to 'see round corners' obviating the need for a 'line of sight' and enabling use of lower forces or even awake use. There are three main groups:

### ***Bladed rigid fibreoptic laryngoscopes***

Generally curved bladed devices: curvature varies and blade may be metal/plastic and reusable/single-use. A fibreoptic bundle takes light to a lens and transmits a picture to an integral or remote viewer. Blade allows manipulation of tissues. May be used in standard, midline, or paramedian approaches. May require stylets and specialised techniques to convert easy laryngoscopy to easy intubation. Include Bullard, WuScope, McGrath5, Coopscope, Glidescope, Storz CMac.

### ***Conduited rigid fibreoptic laryngoscopes***

Rigid fibreoptic devices with parallel channel inline with the camera: designed to ensure that a good laryngeal view leads to easy intubation. Included in this group are Aitraq (single-use and uses prisms and mirrors, not fibreoptics) and LMA-CTrach (a modification of the ILMA enabling a view from the bowl of the mask). Choice of tube size and type relative to conduit may affect intubation success. Includes Upsherscope, PentaxAWS, Aitraq, CTrach.

### ***Optical stylets***

Preformed rigid or malleable metal guides containing an optic bundle. They enable the view from the tip of the device to be transmitted proximally for viewing directly, on an integrated screen or by attachment of a camera and screen. An ET is preloaded, manipulated to the glottis, and then advanced into the trachea. Minimal mouth opening required, but limited ability to manipulate tissues. May be used awake and as lightwand. Oxygen can be administered during use (via the ET) in most. Include the Bonfils, Shikani, Levitan, and Trachway devices.

NB: all these devices have learning curves and are 'tricks of the trade'. Use of these without adequate training in the circumstances of intubation difficulty is poor practice.

## **Retrograde intubation**

Different methods have been described, all based on the technique of Waters. The airway is anaesthetised (as for awake intubation, see p1000). A needle (e.g. a Tuohy needle) is passed through the cricothyroid membrane with the bevel directed cephalad. Correct positioning is confirmed by the aspiration of air. A guidewire (either a wire designed for this purpose or a stiff radiology Amplatz guidewire: NOT a central line guidewire as this is too short and too floppy) is passed via the needle and retrieved from the nose or mouth. An introducer is then passed over the guidewire (e.g. a Cook retrograde catheter, a 16G ureteric dilator, or similar). The ET is passed over the guidewire and introducer into the trachea. The guidewire and introducer are withdrawn from above whilst applying forward pressure on the tube. Various techniques are described to avoid the pitfall of the tracheal tube flipping out as it reaches the larynx. An alternative technique involves threading the inserted guidewire

through the suction port of the fibroscope and using it to guide the scope into the trachea.

Cook (Cook Ltd, Letchworth, UK) makes a retrograde intubation kit for use with ETs of internal diameter 5mm or larger.

### Further reading

Dhara SS (2009). Retrograde tracheal intubation. *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 1094–1104.

Henderson JJ, Popat MT, Latto IP, Pearce AC, Difficult Airway Society (2004). Difficult Airway Society guidelines for management of the unanticipated difficult intubation. *Anaesthesia*, **59**, 675–694.

Mihai R, Blair E, Kay H, Cook TM (2008). A quantitative review and meta-analysis of performance of non standard laryngoscopes and rigid fiberoptic intubation aids. *Anaesthesia*, **63**, 745–760.

Waters DJ (1963). Guided blind endotracheal intubation. *Anaesthesia*, **18**, 158–162.

## Can't intubate, can't ventilate

(See figure 36.5 and also p942.)

Inability to intubate the trachea and ventilate the lungs is *always a life-threatening situation*. Managed badly it will lead to morbidity or death. It occurs in less than 1:5000 routine anaesthetics. It is more common during emergency anaesthesia, intubation in the emergency department, after multiple attempts at intubation, and with inexperienced anaesthetists. This is plan D of the DAS guidelines (see p977).

### Rescue techniques for 'can't intubate, can't ventilate' scenario

Remember insertion of an appropriate LMA (or similar) will rescue the airway in >90% of cases. It would be rare to attempt any of these procedures without first attempting airway rescue with LMA insertion. Once inserted the LMA should be left in place during tracheal access: it may allow some oxygenation and provides a route of exhalation which is needed if high pressure source (jet) ventilation is used. This takes time to set up and should be done simultaneously by an assistant.

### Needle and cannula cricothyroidotomy<sup>1</sup>

- All invasive techniques rely on visible or palpable anatomy. In obesity, ultrasound may help. The cricothyroid membrane appears as a bright white line and the larynx moves with phonation.
- In the 'can't intubate, can't ventilate' scenario with progressive desaturation, emergency tracheal access is required. Needle cricothyroidotomy is quicker and easier than formal tracheostomy. It is performed at the level of the cricothyroid membrane.
- Appropriate techniques include a cannula over needle technique (e.g. less than 2mm ID, non-kinking cannula such as the Ravussin cannula, VBM GmbH, Sulz, Germany) or larger catheters placed with a Seldinger technique (e.g. Cook Melker Cricothyroidotomy Catheter, 5.0mm cuffed or 4.0/6.0mm uncuffed, Cook, Letchworth, UK).
- Cannulae of less than 4.0mm ID require a high-pressure source for adequate ventilation and rely on exhalation via the native upper airway. It is essential to ensure there is no obstruction to expiration, otherwise barotrauma may result.
- With small cannulae, if exhalation is not possible by the native airway, oxygen flow *must be reduced* to basal rate (<0.5 l/min). This may provide some passive oxygenation and will avoid barotrauma.
- Catheters of greater than 4.0mm ID permit conventional ventilation and will only provide adequate ventilation if they are cuffed or the upper airway is obstructed.
- Length is important. Some cannulae are <5cm long and may not reach the airway in oedematous obese patients: perhaps typical of those needing these techniques.

- Complications of all techniques include complications of placement (pneumothorax, collateral structure damage, and bleeding) and of ventilation (barotrauma when using high-pressure source ventilation: surgical emphysema, pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, or hypoventilation with larger uncuffed devices).
- The complications of *failure* to perform these techniques when indicated is likely hypoxic brain damage and death.

## IV cannula

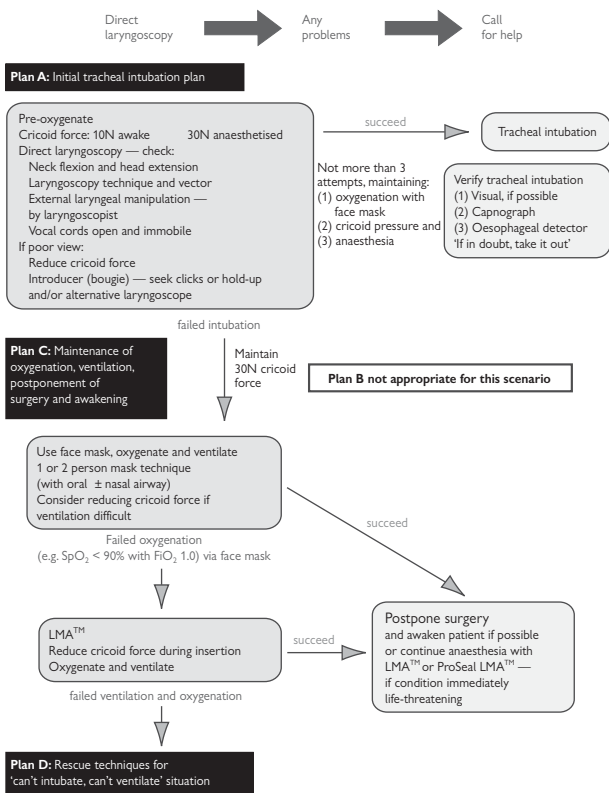
- In a critical situation a 14G IV cannula may be used for cricothyroidotomy.
- Position must be confirmed by aspiration of air before ventilating, with the use of a high-pressure source injector or wall oxygen. Use of an anaesthetic machine flush or a self-inflating bag is not effective and should not be used. If using wall oxygen, tubing must run from the flowmeter to the patient and there must be a mechanism (e.g. 3-way tap or hole in the tubing) to allow on/off flow to the patient.
- As with all small cannulae exhalation relies on a patent upper airway.
- Complications include misplacement, surgical emphysema, and problems with ventilation and exhalation. There is a high risk of kinking.
- Use of an IV cannula with hastily assembled equipment is a decidedly suboptimal technique when compared to the use of dedicated equipment. Its use should be unnecessary in adequately prepared theatres and emergency departments.

## Surgical airway (surgical cricothyroidotomy)

- This technique allows introduction of a size 6.0mm ID ET.
- As with needle and cannula techniques, it is performed through the cricothyroid membrane.
- A scalpel (ideally size 20) is used to make a vertical incision in the skin and cricothyroid membrane. The hole in the cricothyroid membrane may be enlarged with forceps or with tracheal dilators. Alternatively a cricoid hook allows stabilisation of position while an ET is passed into the trachea. It is important that the incision is kept patent to avoid closure of the hole, loss of definition of tissue planes, and creation of a false track.
- A bougie may be inserted before the ET to ease passage.
- In expert hands this technique establishes a secure airway in 30s (after arrival of the equipment). An advantage, over cricothyroidotomy, is the absence of problems with ventilation once the ET is inserted.
- Complications include bleeding, misplacement, and airway trauma.

## Special considerations

- Multiple intubation attempts lead to airway trauma and increase the likelihood of a CICV situation. If one technique has failed twice it is unlikely to work on further attempts. Try something new!
- Difficult and failed intubation is associated with an increased incidence of aspiration.
- After rescuing the airway it is necessary to establish a definitive airway as a matter of urgency. ENT assistance is recommended.
- After prolonged obstruction pulmonary oedema may develop.



**Fig. 36.5** Can't intubate, can't ventilate. With permission of the Difficult Airway Society.

### Further reading

Henderson JJ, Popat MT, Latto IP, Pearce AC, Difficult Airway Society (2004). Difficult Airway Society guidelines for management of the unanticipated difficult intubation. *Anaesthesia*, **59**, 675–694.

**1** Cook TM, Nolan JP, Cranshaw J, Magee P (2007). Needle cricothyroidotomy. *Anaesthesia*, **62**, 289–290.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Management of the obstructed airway

(see also p636)

The approach to the patient with an obstructed airway differs according to:

- Urgency of intervention.
- Level of obstruction.
- General condition of the patient.

These cases are always difficult. If planned or managed poorly life-threatening problems will develop. Management is controversial—airway obstruction is likely to get worse during anaesthesia due to loss of airway tone and reflexes. All approaches have potentially life-threatening complications (complete obstruction on induction, intra-airway haemorrhage, swelling). Experienced anaesthetic and surgical involvement are essential. *Have a back-up plan and ensure that all those involved understand it.*

- If time, obtain appropriate investigations to define the site, extent, and severity of obstruction and involvement of related structures.
- Where previous investigations and records are available interpret them intelligently as lesions may progress over a short period of time, leading previously successful techniques to fail. Useful investigations may include:

- Nasendoscopy.
- CT/MRI.
- Lung function tests with flow-volume loops.
- Echocardiography if pulmonary vessel involvement suspected.

Assess the:

- Level—oral; supraglottic; laryngeal; mid-tracheal; lower tracheal. Several levels may be affected. Inspiratory stridor and voice changes indicate laryngeal obstruction; intrathoracic obstruction may cause expiratory stridor.
- Severity—respiratory distress; accessory muscle use; stridor; hypoxaemia; silent chest; dysphagia; nocturnal panic.
- Lesion—mobility and friability.
- Neck—examine ease of invasive tracheal access.
- Effect of patient position—find the patient's 'best breathing position'. Ask about any tendency to obstruction when lying flat.

### Oral, supraglottic, and laryngeal obstruction

Most commonly due to trauma, burns, tumour, and infective causes.

- In semielective cases nasendoscopy may help in predicting difficulties but must be performed with great care.
- If emergency access to the trachea is needed (e.g. cricothyroidotomy) this should be unimpeded by the lesion.
- Consider:
  - Awake fiberoptic intubation.
  - Spontaneous ventilation induction (which may be inhalational or with slow incremental TCI propofol), then direct or fiberoptic laryngoscopy.

- Prophylactic cricothyroid cannula (even if planning alternative technique) for use if situation deteriorates.
- Elective awake (with local anaesthetic) formal cricothyroidotomy or tracheostomy.
- An experienced surgeon who is scrubbed, equipped, assisted, and ready to perform a cricothyroidotomy (preferably) or very rapid tracheostomy must be available in case irreversible life-threatening obstruction occurs during either awake fiberoptic intubation or inhalational induction. Inserting a rigid bronchoscope may also provide an emergency airway in some cases.
- If unexpected airway obstruction occurs an LMA may assist ventilation during emergency airway access.
- IV induction and attempted laryngoscopy (with or without paralysis) without a clear back-up plan cannot be recommended for upper airway obstruction. IV induction has been recommended for laryngeal lesions but requires skill, specific experience, and very clear back-up plans.

### Mid-tracheal

Commonly tumour or retrosternal goitre—often present semiselectively but may expand suddenly with haemorrhage. Knowing the site of obstruction is vital. Laryngoscopy is usually not impeded (though the trachea may be displaced), but difficulties may develop when the tube is inserted into the trachea.

- The site of the lesion may preclude cricothyroidotomy or tracheostomy—attempts risk bleeding and complete obstruction.
- Inhalational induction may be very slow, difficult, and complicated by worsening airway obstruction.
- Awake fiberoptic intubation may be indicated if inability to ventilate is a significant possibility. However, coughing and distress may lead to increased obstruction. Passage of the fiberoptic scope and/or the ET through the narrowing may also hinder spontaneous ventilation and be unpleasant for the patient ('cork in a bottle' phenomenon). An Aintree Intubation Catheter is narrow and can be useful.
- An ET, endobronchial tube, or hollow intubation bougie that also allows high-pressure source ventilation (e.g. Cook airway exchange catheter) may pass the narrowing. A route of exhalation must be ensured.
- The obstruction must be high enough in the trachea to allow the bevel of the device to sit safely below it and above the carina.
- IV induction, rapid neuromuscular blockade, and early passage of a rigid bronchoscope are used for marked tracheal obstruction requiring thoracic surgery (e.g. resection, laser or stent insertion). The rigid bronchoscope establishes airway patency and is then used as a dedicated airway for further assessment, oxygenation, ventilation, and surgery.
- Anaesthesia may need to be maintained with an IV technique.

### Lower tracheal lesions and bronchial obstruction

Commonly due to tumours, trauma, and large mediastinal masses.

- Best managed by experienced specialists in thoracic centres.



- Cardiopulmonary bypass is sometimes necessary (e.g. pulmonary artery compression).
- IV induction, rapid neuromuscular blockade, and passage of a rigid bronchoscope may be life-saving.
- Use of laser resection and/or stents may then be deployed to maintain a patent airway.

### **Further considerations**

- A specific tissue diagnosis may allow shrinking of a lesion with antibiotics, steroids, chemotherapy, or radiotherapy where time allows.
- Have a management plan for extubation which may need to be delayed. Prolonged instrumentation may cause upper airway oedema.
- Heliox (premixed helium/oxygen containing 21–30% oxygen) may improve flow through narrowed airways but reduces the  $\text{FiO}_2$ . Use of a 'Y' connector and oxygen cylinder may increase the  $\text{FiO}_2$  but reduce the effect of the helium. New delivery systems for helium (including ventilators) have recently been marketed (BOC). Heliox may be useful for obstruction at any level but is usually only effective as a temporary measure while organising definitive management.

### **Further reading**

- Gerig HJ, Schnider T, Heidegger T (2005). Prophylactic percutaneous transtracheal catheterisation in the management of patients with anticipated difficult airways: a case series. *Anaesthesia*, **60**, 801–805.
- Mason RA, Fielder CP (1999). The obstructed airway in head and neck surgery. *Anaesthesia*, **54**, 625–668.
- Nouraei SA, Giussani DA, Howard DJ, Sandhu GS, Ferguson C, Patel A (2008). Physiological comparison of spontaneous and positive-pressure ventilation in laryngotracheal stenosis. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **101**, 419–423.
- Ovassapian A, Yelich SJ, Dykes MHM, Brunner EE (1983). Fibre-optic nasotracheal intubation—incidence and causes of failure. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **63**, 692–695.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Rapid sequence induction

Rapid sequence induction (see figure 36.6) involves IV induction immediately followed by muscle relaxation to aid tracheal intubation, combined with cricoid pressure to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration in those considered to be at increased risk.

If airway assessment indicates intubation may be difficult, consider a local/regional technique or awake fibreoptic intubation.

### Checks

- Anaesthetic machine, vaporisers, breathing system, ventilator, suction, intubation aids, and rescue equipment.
- Two functioning laryngoscopes and ET cuff.
- Patient on a tipping trolley or bed.
- Routine monitoring applied.
- Head in the 'sniffing' position—extended on neck, cervical spine flexed on the thorax—with a pillow. Ramped position for obese patients.
- Reliable wide-bore IV cannula with fluid running.
- Drawn-up predefined dose of induction agent (propofol 1–2.5mg/kg, ketamine 1–2mg/kg; thiopental 2–5mg/kg) and suxamethonium (1–1.5mg/kg). Ketamine is increasingly favoured in unstable patients.
- Emergency drugs (anticholinergics and vasopressors).
- Plans for failed intubation and failed ventilation. Difficult intubation may occur in 1 in 20 cases—failure in 1 in 200.

### Procedure

- Switch on suction and place in easy reach.
- Preoxygenate through a tight-fitting mask with high-flow oxygen for 3min, until  $ETO_2$  is  $>90\%$  or, in extreme emergency, four vital capacity breaths. This delays onset of hypoxaemia and buys time for muscle relaxation and intubation. Patients who are pregnant, obese, septic, anaemic, paediatric, and those with respiratory disease desaturate faster. Any entrainment of air partially undoes the process. Do not remove the mask until laryngoscopy.
- Cricoid force 10N (1kg) is applied by a trained assistant.
- Administer induction agent immediately followed by suxamethonium.
- Cricoid force is increased to 30N (3kg) at loss of consciousness.
- Intubate after fasciculations, 45–60 s after suxamethonium.
- Inflate cuff, hand ventilate, and confirm correct ET placement by capnography and bilateral auscultation of the chest and stomach.
- Once the ET is correctly placed, ask the assistant to remove cricoid pressure.

### Problems

- Haemodynamic instability. Excessive induction agent produces circulatory collapse especially in the presence of hypovolaemia. Insufficient dosing results in tachycardia and hypertension and risks awareness. Alfentanil (10–30µg/kg) 1min before induction may reduce undesirable haemodynamic responses. In the event of intubation failure this may be reversed with naloxone (400–800µg).

- Increased risk of airway difficulty due to lack of time and cricoid pressure.

### ***Cricoid force (pressure)***

- This is a trained, practised skill.
- The cricoid cartilage is held between the thumb and middle finger and pressure is exerted mainly with the index finger posteriorly.
- Bimanual force (other hand behind the neck) has not been shown to be of any benefit in supine patients and uses up one of the assistant's hands. It is necessary in the lateral position.
- Some patients may only tolerate cricoid pressure after induction, e.g. distressed children.
- Correct application of cricoid force improves the view at laryngoscopy and does not occlude the airway.
- Backwards upwards rightwards pressure (BURP) may improve the laryngeal view but increases the likelihood of airway obstruction. Therefore if intubation fails and ventilation is required remove BURP.
- Excessive force ( $>50\text{N}$ ,  $>5\text{kg}$ ) produces airway obstruction and makes intubation more difficult.
- Cricoid force is often poorly applied: this is an issue of training, not of the technique.
- If intubation is difficult cricoid force is often the cause: it should be reduced and then removed to see if it leads to an improved view that enables intubation. The sucker should be immediately available.
- If a patient vomits after application of cricoid force but before induction, it should be released. Vomiting does not occur after loss of consciousness.
- A tiring assistant may not be able to maintain cricoid force for  $>5\text{min}$ .

### ***Controversies***

- RSI with cricoid force is not proven to reduce aspiration and is known to increase risk of failed intubation.
- Many add opioids to smooth anaesthesia: there is no evidence of harm from this technique. Alfentanil is a logical choice.
- Classic RSI involved avoidance of mask ventilation before intubation. However, cricoid force does prevent gastric inflation with facemask ventilation so this is illogical, particularly if the patient is becoming hypoxic.
- If suxamethonium is to be avoided rocuronium is an alternative. A dose of  $0.9\text{--}1.0\text{ mg/kg}$  is required and co-administration of propofol and a rapid-onset opioid are required to achieve optimal laryngoscopy conditions in  $<1\text{min}$ . Duration of muscular blockade will exceed  $30\text{min}$  with this technique, though suggamadex may now be used to reverse this in  $<3\text{min}$ .

### **Failed intubation (plan C in DAS guidelines)**

- It is a fallacy that 'RSI is safe because the patient will awake if there are airway complications'. In the event of failed intubation, whatever drug combination is used, induction agents/neuromuscular blockade are very unlikely to wear off before the onset of life-threatening hypoxia.

Airway rescue will be required—a supraglottic airway with a drain tube is the logical choice, e.g. ProSeal LMA, LMA Supreme™, or i-gel. The cLMA is an adequate alternative.

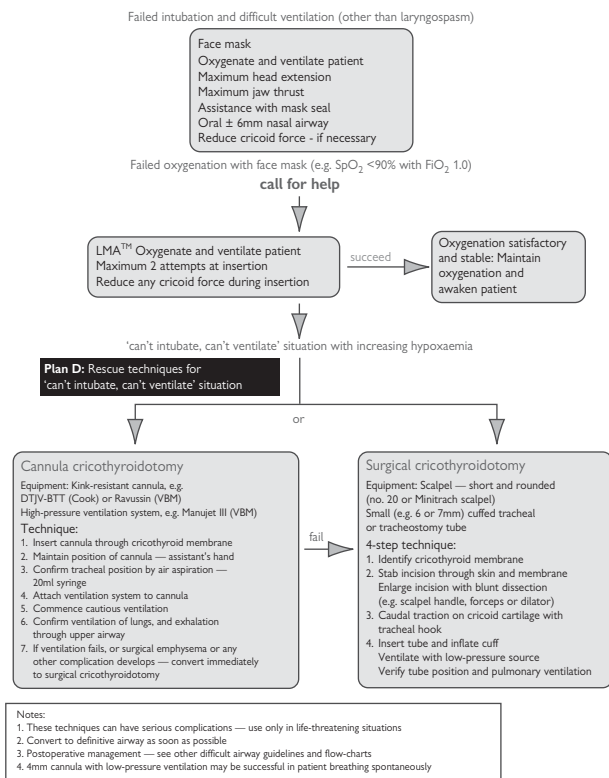
- Oxygenation is essential. Gentle manual ventilation should be part of any failed intubation protocol.
- If ventilation is difficult cricoid force should be reduced or released and a 'can't intubate, can't ventilate' protocol adopted (p986).

### **Paediatric considerations**

- Effective cricoid force has not been established.
- Young children are unlikely to cooperate with preoxygenation and cricoid force. Children desaturate more quickly than adults. RSI may therefore need to be modified with gentle mask ventilation after induction to prevent hypoxaemia before or during laryngoscopy.
- Difficult laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation is fortunately much less common in children.

### **Further reading**

- Benumof JL, Dagg R, Benumof R (1997). Critical hemoglobin desaturation will occur before return to an unparalyzed state following 1 mg/kg intravenous succinylcholine. *Anesthesiology*, **87**, 979–982.
- Heier T, Feiner JR, Lin J, Brown R, Caldwell JE (2001). Hemoglobin desaturation after succinylcholine-induced apnea: a study of the recovery of spontaneous ventilation in healthy volunteers. *Anesthesiology*, **94**, 754–759.
- Li CW, Xue FS, Xu YC, et al. (2007). Cricoid pressure impedes insertion of, and ventilation through, the ProSeal laryngeal mask airway in anesthetized, paralyzed patients. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **104**, 1195–1198.
- McLelland CH, Bogod DG, Hardman JG (2009). Pre-oxygenation and apnoea in pregnancy: changes during labour and with obstetric morbidity in a computational simulation. *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 371–377.
- Morris J, Cook TM (2001). National survey of rapid sequence induction. *Anaesthesia*, **56**, 1090–1097.
- Neilipovitz DT, Crosby ET (2007). No evidence for decreased incidence of aspiration after rapid sequence induction. *Canadian Journal of Anaesthesia*, **54**, 748–764.
- Sellick BA (1961). Cricoid pressure to control regurgitation of stomach contents during induction of anaesthesia. *Lancet*, **2**, 404–406.
- Vanner R, Asai T (1999). Safe use of cricoid pressure. *Anaesthesia*, **54**, 1–3.



**Fig. 36.6** Unanticipated difficult tracheal intubation (rapid sequence induction).  
With permission of the Difficult Airway Society.

## Inhalational induction

### Indications

- To avoid IV induction—children, needle phobia, difficult IV access.
- To maintain airway patency and spontaneous ventilation during induction.
  - Anticipated difficult intubation and/or difficult manual ventilation, e.g. acute epiglottitis, perilaryngeal tumours.
  - Inhaled foreign body.
  - Bronchopleural fistula.

### Preparation and practice

Explain the process to the patient/parents on the ward. Warn parents about excitation phase. Some anaesthetists prescribe an antisialogogue. Apply routine monitoring whenever possible. A close-fitting facemask speeds induction, but in young children a cupped hand to deliver the fresh gas supply is preferred by some. When inhalational induction is used, for reasons of anticipated airway difficulty, have a back-up plan.

- Inhalational induction is frequently used prior to IV access. In complicated cases have a skilled assistant/second anaesthetist present to secure cannulation.
- Sevoflurane and halothane are the best tolerated agents. Sevoflurane is faster in onset and less arrhythmogenic. Use of a 50:50 nitrous oxide:oxygen mix may improve tolerance and speeds onset of anaesthesia. However, with actual or anticipated airway obstruction 100% oxygen is sensible.
- Halothane may be introduced at 0.5–1% and increased every 4 breaths or as tolerated. Sevoflurane can be introduced at 8%.
- Single vital capacity breath induction from a 4 litre reservoir bag containing 4–5% halothane or 8% sevoflurane in oxygen is suitable for some patients. The patient typically loses consciousness in under a minute.

### Difficulties with inhalational induction

- A leak around the mask, low alveolar ventilation (partial/intermittent obstruction; stridor; breath-holding), and high cardiac output slow induction.
- The correct stage of anaesthesia to cannulate veins, instrument the airway, apply cricoid pressure, or intubate is a matter of experience and may be misjudged.
- Rapid offset with sevoflurane may cause lightening of anaesthesia during airway intervention. Halothane or sevoflurane induction followed by halothane maintenance may avoid this problem.
- The excitement stage may be long and associated with complications. Induction will only progress past this phase if the airway is patent.
- Application of CPAP may be useful, as may gentle assisted ventilation.
- The traditional view that inhalation induction is safe because if the patient obstructs they will automatically lighten, unobstruct, and start ventilating again is not always reliable: persistent obstruction,

laryngospasm, hypoxia, and arrhythmias are also possible. Following airway obstruction the patient may not 'lighten', as traditionally described.

- In safe circumstances additional judicious IV induction while maintaining spontaneous breathing may sometimes be appropriate.
- Although inhalational induction may permit direct laryngoscopy and assessment of ease of intubation past an upper airway obstruction, have a back-up plan prepared (e.g. equipment for cricothyroidotomy or experienced surgical assistance if an emergency surgical airway may be necessary).

### Slow spontaneous breathing induction of anaesthesia with incremental TCI propofol

Advantages over gaseous induction:

- Low-dose propofol provides excellent anxiolysis, assisting the progress of anaesthesia.
- Increasing depth of anaesthesia is independent of the patient's ventilation.
- Allows rate of increase of depth of anaesthesia to be titrated carefully, by the anaesthetist (not dictated by the patient).
- If difficulty is encountered, stopping the infusion rapidly enables anaesthesia to lighten, without requiring a patent airway.
- Airway reflexes are rapidly obtunded.
- Secretions are not increased.
- Coughing is very rare as is bucking, laryngospasm or worsening obstruction.
- Assisted ventilation may be attempted at a much earlier stage: in many cases patients will tolerate gentle manual ventilation even when still responsive to verbal stimulus.
- Airway adjuncts (e.g. Guedel airway) are tolerated considerably earlier.
- The technique does demand scrupulous attention to detail to detect problems with the airway early.

### Paediatric considerations

- Parental explanation and support is essential as their assistance is often useful during induction.
- Optimal positioning will depend on child size. Between the ages of 2 and 5yr sitting the child on the parent's lap and encouraging them to cuddle/gently restrain them during induction is a useful technique. For older and younger children the trolley may be more appropriate.



## Awake fiberoptic intubation

### Indications

- Known or anticipated difficult airway.
- Known or suspected cervical cord trauma or unstable neck (e.g. rheumatoid arthritis).
- After failed intubation.
- Consider in cases of obesity, obstructive sleep apnoea, and risk of aspiration.

### Contraindications

- Patient refusal or patient so uncooperative as to render the procedure unsafe.
- Severe coagulopathy: bleeding danger particularly via the nasal route.
- Periglottic masses causing partial airway obstruction: risk of complete airway obstruction or laryngospasm.

### Checklist

Decongestant	Xylometazoline 0.1% or phenylephrine 1% nasal spray—administered in advance if possible
Anticholinergic	Glycopyrronium 400µg IM 30min before or 100–200µg IV in theatre
Local anaesthetic	Lidocaine 10% throat spray, 2–4% for nose, larynx, trachea
Oxygen	Continuously by mask, nasal cannula, or via fibroscope
Monitoring	Minimum SpO <sub>2</sub> , BP, ECG, capnography, conscious level
Conscious sedation	Choose from short-acting opioid (remifentanyl, alfentanil, fentanyl), propofol, or midazolam
Airway adjuncts	Bite blocks (Berman, Breathesafe) for oral route
Assistance	Trained assistant, familiar with technique, able to assist with monitoring, and briefed
Tracheal tube	Small: nasal 6–6.5mm ID, oral 6–7mm ID. ILMA ET optimal
Fibroscope	Appropriate size, sterilised, leak tested
Suction	Attached to fibroscope
Light source	Light box recommended if using remote screen
Monitor	Remote screen with image capture/download facility. White balanced

### Patient

- Give explanation and obtain consent.
- Consider premed and anticholinergic.
- Equipment: as per checklist.

### Tracheal tube

- Unless there is a specific indication, a small tube that fits snugly over the fibrescope will reduce 'hold-up' during passage and minimise airway trauma. Small tubes are particularly indicated in airway difficulty.
- Recommended: ILMA size 6–7mm ID. Lubricated.
- Alternatives: reinforced ET softened with warm water, or Blue Ivory (Portex).

### Topical anaesthesia

#### Nose

- Assess nasal passages for patency (on history and unilateral occlusion) and history of epistaxis. Vasoconstriction: co-phenylcaine. Topical 4% lidocaine with gauze or 'cotton buds'.
- Alternative is serial dilation: gynae dilators coated in lidocaine gel (or nasopharyngeal airways). Risks bleeding.

#### Oropharynx

- Lidocaine 10% spray (10 sprays) or gargle.

#### Larynx

- Spray lidocaine under direct vision (e.g. dropwise via epidural catheter). Nebulised lidocaine may reach larynx.

#### Trachea

- 2% lidocaine via cricothyroid injection (2ml via a 20G cannula) very effectively anaesthetises trachea and larynx. Although invasive it is well tolerated and ensures the anaesthetist has carefully examined the front of the neck.

**NB: total dose of lidocaine should not exceed 7mg/kg.**

### Sedation

- Critical airway: may need to avoid sedation.
- Non-critical airway: target is a relaxed, cooperative patient, comfortable but able to communicate. Include hypnosis and analgesia. TCI technique suitable if familiar.

### Position

- Patient sitting up at 45°. Operator facing patient.

**Oxygen**

- Always give and always monitor. Oxygen via nasal catheter or Hudson mask with a 'window' cut out to allow access for intubation. 2 l/min oxygen via fibroscope suction channel will oxygenate, clear secretions from the tip, and aid atomisation of injected local anaesthetic.

**Monitoring**

- Minimum SpO<sub>2</sub>, BP, ECG, capnography, conscious level.

**Technique**

- The nasal technique is most frequently used: it allows easy access to the glottis and topical anaesthesia is easier. General aspects of technique are described below.
- Check ET is mounted on fibroscope, lubricated, and fixed. Pass fibroscope under direct vision via nasal route, identifying all structures en route to pharynx. With fibroscope above cords, spray with lidocaine, prior to entering with fibroscope. Advance fibroscope to sit just above carina, then railroad ET gently. Use gentle rotation if 'hold-up' (ILMA ET avoids this). Visually confirm position of ET during withdrawal of fibroscope. Connect circuit and reconfirm position with capnography. Leave cuff inflation as late as possible.

**Post technique care**

- If airway remains at risk postoperatively, plan extubation (and potential reintubation) carefully. Extubation may need to be delayed.
- Patient to remain starved until airway anaesthesia has worn off. If to remain intubated, change ILMA ET to conventional (with exchange catheter). Fibroscope to be cleaned and sucked through with 1 litre sterile water before transfer for formal decontamination.

**Hints for difficulty**

- Black is a cavity—aim for black! 'Red out' indicates the fibroscope is not in an air space—withdraw until recognisable structures are seen, then advance more slowly, staying away from mucosa. Ask patient for deep breaths as tube approaches glottis. Ask patient to protrude tongue if negotiating oropharynx is difficult. Alternatively assistant may use jaw thrust, pull tongue with gauze, or insert laryngoscope. A small ILMA ET will avoid most 'railroading' problems. Lubrication really helps! Other railroading problems may be overcome by increasing degrees of gentle tube rotation.

**Complications**

- Poor compliance/coughing, bleeding in airway (from nasal dilatation), excess secretions, laryngospasm, vomiting, aspiration, airway obstruction. All should be rare in a well-prepared patient.

**Oral route**

- This route is less frequently used, it is less easy to topically anaesthetise, and entering the glottis requires more advanced control of the fibroscope. Topicalisation may include lidocaine nebuliser (5–10ml 2%), tetracaine (amethocaine) lozenges, or gargle of lidocaine.

Use of a conduit (e.g. Berman Airway: holds tongue forward and keeps scope in midline) or mouth prop (Breathsafe: keeps molar teeth open and mouth free) will protect fibroscope and facilitate intubation.

### Further reading

- Ovassapian A, Yelich SJ, Dykes MHM, Brunner EE (1983). Fibre-optic nasotracheal intubation—incidence and causes of failure. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **63**, 692–695.
- Ovassapian A, Krejcie TC, Yelich SJ, Dykes MHM (1989). Awake fibreoptic intubation in the presence of a full stomach. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **62**, 13–16.
- Popat M (2001). *Practical Fibre-optic Intubation*. Butterworth-Heinemann.
- Walker A, Smith A (2007). Promoting awake fibreoptic intubation. *RCoA Bulletin*, **46**, 2329–2333.
- Woodall NM, Harwood RJ, Barker GL (2008). Complications of awake fibreoptic intubation without sedation in 200 healthy anaesthetists attending a training course. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **100**, 850–855.

## Extubation after difficult intubation

Following difficult intubation the airway may occlude when the tracheal tube is removed. Reintubation may then be much more difficult than before due to:

- Airway bruising and swelling.
- Airway contamination with clot, pus, or regurgitated material.
- New impairments to airway access (e.g. cervical fusion, external fixators, dental wiring).
- Laryngospasm and laryngeal or recurrent laryngeal nerve injury may also worsen the airway, but paralysis will overcome these.

### Extubation must be planned

Risk at extubation can be estimated by assessing both the likelihood of a need for reintubation and likelihood of difficulty of reintubation.

Prepare and check the same equipment and personnel as for a difficult intubation. Have a plan and a back-up plan. If an emergency surgical airway could still be required, consider:

- Delaying extubation, ventilating on ICU, and reassessing later.
- Corticosteroid therapy (dexamethasone) for 24–48hr before extubation to reduce oedema.
- An elective tracheostomy.
- Positioning a Cook airway exchange catheter (Cook Critical Care Ltd, Letchworth, UK) in the trachea before extubation. An ET may then be railroaded into the trachea if required later. These hollow devices also allow apnoeic oxygenation and high-pressure source ventilation if needed. Local anaesthetic gel on the catheter improves tolerance.

### Before extubating

- Clear the entire upper airway carefully and suction the trachea.
- Ensure good haemostasis. Can the airway be improved surgically—evacuation of haematoma, relocation of arytenoids, stitches to bring the tongue forward?
- Consider adjuncts the patient will tolerate after extubation, e.g. nasopharyngeal airway, a transtracheal oxygen catheter.
- Empty the stomach if necessary.
- Remove any surgical pack(s).
- Perform a leak test. Deflate the cuff (if present) and ventilate to check there is a low pressure leak around the tube. If no leak is present, re-evaluate. This test is unreliable, but no leak at all should lead to consideration of delaying extubation.
- Place the patient in their most advantageous position for spontaneous ventilation and airway maintenance. This is often sitting up.
- Preoxygenate, fully reverse any muscle relaxant, wake patient, and extubate when obeying commands. Use of drugs with rapid offset is advantageous.
- Provide high-flow oxygen after extubation.
- Monitor closely in the recovery period for as long as necessary.

Consider extended monitoring in a high dependency area.

# **Practical anaesthesia**

## **Paul Harvey**

Anaphylaxis follow-up 1006

## **Andrew Foo**

Latex allergy 1010

Herbal medicines and anaesthesia 1014

## **Anne Rossiter**

Blood exposure incidents 1016

## **Anne Troy**

Target-controlled infusions 1020

## **Babinder Sandhar**

Death on the table 1024

Dealing with a complaint 1026

## **Rhys Thomas, Rob Dawes, Simon Mercer, and S. Jagdish**

Military anaesthesia 1029

Damage control resuscitation (DCR) 1030

Medical Emergency Response Team (MERT) 1032

Drawover anaesthesia: the triservice anaesthetic  
apparatus (TSAA) 1034

Total intravenous anaesthesia: military uses 1036

## **Andrew Bodenham**

Long-term venous access 1040

## **Alex Grice**

Oesophageal Doppler monitoring 1046

## **Robert Sneyd**

Depth of anaesthesia monitoring 1050

## **John Carlisle**

Cardiopulmonary exercise testing (CPET) 1053

## **John Saddler**

Neuromuscular blockers: reversal and monitoring 1054

## **Pete Ford**

Thromboelastography 1060

## Anaphylaxis follow-up

- For immediate management of acute anaphylaxis see p948.
- Report UK suspected anaphylactic reactions at <http://www.aagbi.org/anaphylaxisdatabase.htm>.

Drugs given IV bypass the body's primary defence systems. Potentially noxious chemicals are presented rapidly to sensitive cells such as polymorphs, platelets, and mast cells. Degranulation, whether immune or non-immune, releases inflammatory mediators—histamine, prostaglandins, and leukotrienes.

Apparent '**anaesthetic adverse drug reactions**' (AADR) may be due to non-drug mechanisms:

- Underlying pathology, e.g. asthma, systemic mastocytosis, malignant hyperthermia.
- Adverse pharmacological effect related to genetic status, e.g. angio-oedema.
- Machine or operator error.
- Vasovagal episode.

Drug-involved reactions may be either:

- True allergic reactions: type 1 anaphylaxis (IgE mediated) or type 3 immune complex (IgG mediated).
- Pseudoallergic or anaphylactoid reactions—direct histamine release by active agent or indirect release by complement activation.

Clinically, anaphylactic reactions may be indistinguishable from anaphylactoid responses—the end point in both is mast cell degranulation. Life-threatening reactions are more likely to be immune mediated, implying past exposure.

- Neuromuscular blocking drugs (NMBD) are responsible for 60–70% of serious AADR, frequently on first contact.
- The quaternary ammonium group found in NMBD is widely present in other drugs, foods, cosmetics, and hair care products. Previous sensitisation is possible, predominantly in females.

### Antibiotic sensitivity

- Penicillin reactions may be IgE mediated but are seldom as severe as AADR.
- If previous penicillin anaphylaxis, neither cephalosporins nor imipenem should be used.
- Incidence of cross-reactivity to newer cephalosporins in patients with penicillin allergy is uncertain as cross-reactivity is often incomplete. Cephalosporins can be given to most patients who declare themselves as 'penicillin allergic'—give slowly and incrementally in case of anaphylactoid (dose-related) response.

### Incidence

The incidence of AADR is unknown in the UK. In France, anaphylactic reactions to NMBD have been reported as 1:6500 anaesthetics.

### Presentation of anaphylactoid or anaphylactic reactions

- Isolated cutaneous erythema is commonly seen following IV thiopental or atracurium. If there are no further histaminoid manifestations investigation is unwarranted. However, this may be the first clinical feature in severe reactions.
- Timing is important. Onset is usually rapid following IV drug bolus. Slower onset is expected if, for example, gelatin infusion, latex sensitivity, or diclofenac suppository responsible.
- Cardiovascular collapse has been reported in 88% of cases, bronchospasm in 36%, and angio-oedema in 24% of AADR, with cutaneous signs in ~50%.

### Investigation of reactions

#### Serum tryptase evaluation

Tryptase is a neutral protease released from secretory granules of mast cells during degranulation. *In vivo* half-life is 3hr (compared with 3min for histamine) and it is stable in isolated plasma or serum. Level is unaffected by haemolysis, as it is not present in red and white cells.

- Three venous blood samples preferable—immediately after resuscitation, at 3hr, and at 24hr. Serum separated and stored at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  for onward transmission to an appropriate laboratory.
- Basal plasma tryptase concentration is usually  $<1\text{ng/ml}$ . Levels up to  $15\text{ng/ml}$  are seen in pseudoallergy, i.e. non-specific, anaphylactoid reactions, and non-life-threatening anaphylaxis. Higher values are more likely to indicate IgE mediation.

#### RAST/CAP tests

- Radioallergosorbent tests (RAST) for antigen-specific IgE antibodies have now been largely superseded by the CAP system (Pharmacia). An antigen-coated CAPsule is exposed to the patient's serum under laboratory conditions. If the serum contains antigen-specific IgE a measurable colour change is produced.
- Currently only helpful in confirming penicillin, suxamethonium, and latex allergy. Sensitivity low—negative result still requires skin testing.

#### Skin testing

- Diagnosing AADR depends on skin-prick testing (SPT) or intradermal testing (IDT). In proven NMBD anaphylaxis, no laboratory test has been shown to compare for specificity and sensitivity. Skin testing is probably diagnostic in anaphylaxis, but not in anaphylactoid reactions. Refer patient to a centre experienced in investigating AADR—see below.
- Tests should take place at 4–6wk post-event to allow regeneration of IgE.
- Antihistamines should not have been given within the last 5d.
- SPT are used initially. Some drugs, e.g. atracurium and suxamethonium, can produce a false positive result with IDT.
- Testing is required to all drugs given before the event. Remember antibiotics, latex, chlorhexidine, and lidocaine, if mixed with propofol.
- Suspected local anaesthetic allergy is best tested by challenge as recommended by Fisher.<sup>1</sup>



- Negative control is with saline (to exclude dermographia). Positive control is with commercially available histamine solution. The latter demonstrates normal skin response. Weal and flare gives a reference for reactions to test drugs.
- Weal >2mm wider than saline control is interpreted as positive. Positive test with undiluted drug is repeated with 1:10 dilution to reduce chance of false positive.
- Following a positive result, other drugs in the same pharmacological group are tested. In NMBD allergy, up to 60% of people may be sensitive to other relaxants.
- If there is a strong history but negative SPT, diluted drugs can be tested by IDT.

### After testing

- Patient must know the importance and implications of the diagnosis. MedicAlert (12 Bridge Wharf, 156 Caledonian Road, London N1 9UU, UK) can provide a warning bracelet at patient's own expense.
- In the absence of positive skin testing, best advice is given based on the clinical history.
- Ensure hospital notes are marked. Inform general practitioner.
- Report reaction to the Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency ('yellow card system'). AADR is currently underreported.

### Future anaesthesia

- Avoid all untested drugs related to the original culprit.
- Do not use IV 'test' doses—unsafe if true allergy exists.
- If any doubt about induction agents use inhalational induction. There are no reports of anaphylaxis to inhalational anaesthetics.
- If NMBD reaction give relaxant-free anaesthetic if possible. In a long-term follow-up of patients with severe reactions to NMBD 3 of 40 subsequent anaesthetics using muscle relaxants produced probable anaphylactic reactions.<sup>2</sup>
- If NMBD must be used, ideally test to your chosen drug by SPT preoperatively.
- In proven NMBD allergy, give chlorphenamine (10mg IV) and hydrocortisone (100mg IV) 1hr preinduction.

### Further reading

Fisher MM, Bowey CJ (1997). Intradermal compared with prick testing in the diagnosis of anaesthetic allergy. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **79**, 59–63.

Fisher MM, Merefield D, Baldo B (1999). Failure to prevent an anaphylactic reaction to a second neuromuscular blocking drug during anaesthesia. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **82**, 770–773.

<http://www.aagbi.org/anaphylaxisdatabase.htm>.

1 Fisher MM, Bowey CJ (1997). Alleged allergy to local anaesthetics. *Anaesthesia and Intensive Care*, **25**, 611–614.

2 Thacker MA, Davis FM (1999). Subsequent anaesthesia in patients with a history of previous anaphylactoid/anaphylactic reaction to muscle relaxant. *Anaesthesia and Intensive Care*, **27**, 190–193.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Latex allergy

Latex is derived from the sap of *Hevea brasiliensis* (rubber tree). Hev b proteins within latex act as the major allergens (there are 11 Hev b types).<sup>1</sup> Studies have suggested that latex hypersensitivity is the second most common cause for anaesthetic-related anaphylaxis.<sup>2</sup>

Latex may be found in the following anaesthetic equipment: urinary catheters, gloves, syringes, drug vial stoppers, IV giving sets, IV cannulae, injection ports, masks, airways, endotracheal tubes, rebreathing bags, BP cuffs, bellows, and circuits. Many surgical pieces of equipment may also contain latex: drains, bulb irrigation syringes, vascular tags, rubber-covered clamps, and certain elastic that may be found in hats/TEDS/underpants.

### Classification of reaction

- **Irritant contact dermatitis:** non-allergic irritant contact dermatitis presenting over minutes to hours with damage of skin due to the exogenous substance causing irritation.
- **Contact dermatitis:** a type IV (delayed) hypersensitivity reaction based on allergic sensitisation mediated by T lymphocytes. Presents over 48–72hr with an eczematous eruption. This can progress to lichenification and scaling on chronic exposure.
- **Type I hypersensitivity:** development of latex sensitivity is dependent on previous exposure. IgE-mediated type I hypersensitivity has been attributed to the Hev b proteins in latex. The three main presentations are:
  - Contact urticaria: particularly of healthcare workers, typically 10–15min following, and usually at the site of, exposure. This may develop into a more severe reaction.
  - Asthma and rhinitis: characterised with bronchospasm and secretions. Inhalations of airborne latex particles from powdered gloves have been implicated.
  - Anaphylaxis: this is more commonly encountered intraoperatively. IV and membrane inoculation are the most common triggers; however, donning of gloves and indirect contact have also been described.

### High-risk individuals

Eight percent of the population is sensitised to latex; however, 1.4% of the population exhibit a latex allergy. Latex anaphylaxis appears to be more common in females.<sup>2</sup> There are certain groups at particular risk of developing latex sensitivity:

- **Multiple surgical procedures:** patients with repeated exposure to latex have an increased risk. This is more pronounced in children, especially at a very young age. Therefore latex-free precautions need to be taken to avoid sensitisation.
- **Neural tube defects** (including spina bifida): incidence of latex sensitivity due to recurrent bladder catheterisation is 20–65%.
- **Associated medical conditions:** patients with atopy, asthma, rhinitis, and severe dermatitis have an increased incidence of sensitivity.<sup>3</sup>
- **Healthcare workers:** prevalence of sensitivity can be between 3 and 12%.<sup>1</sup>

- **Occupation:** rubber industry workers, occupations involving the use of protective equipment (policemen, hairdressers, service food workers).
- **Fruit allergens:** patients allergic to fruit have an 11% risk of a latex reaction. Cross-reactivity has been demonstrated with certain fruit allergens (banana, chestnut, avocado, passion fruit, tomato, grape, celery, peach, water melon, cherry, and kiwi fruit).<sup>1</sup>

## Prevention of latex anaphylaxis

### *Preoperative assessment*

- A quarter of patients who developed intraoperative latex anaphylaxis had a history suggestive of a latex allergy.<sup>2</sup> It is important to determine whether contact with balloons, condoms, or latex gloves causes itching, rash, or swelling. Ask about occupational history.
- Patients with a positive clinical history may be referred for testing before surgery. This may not be possible in an emergency. Current tests have a sensitivity of 75–90%. This includes a blood test specifically for latex-specific IgE or a skin prick test (performed by trained staff).<sup>4</sup> If these tests are unclear or negative despite a clear history, consider other tests such as provocation testing and patch testing to be performed by a specialist.

### *Perioperative precautions*

- All team members need to be alerted when a patient has a latex allergy.
- The operating theatre should be prepared the night before and the patient should be scheduled first on the list. This reduces the number of latex particles in the air.
- ‘Latex allergy’ notices should be placed on the anaesthetic and theatre doors.
- Only use latex-free equipment within the anaesthetic and surgical areas. Each theatre suit should have a list detailing which equipment is guaranteed latex free. LMA (Intravent), most ETT, and airways are latex-free.
- Remove non-essential equipment from the vicinity of the patient.
- Limit staff traffic during surgery.
- Resuscitation equipment must be latex free.
- Prophylactic use of antihistamines and corticosteroids has not been established.

## Clinical features of latex anaphylaxis

Onset is normally 20–60min following exposure and progressively worsens over 5–10min. Patients present with hypotension, bronchospasm, and commonly rash. It may be difficult to exclude anaphylaxis from anaesthetic drugs as this presents in a similar manner. It is important to recognise anaphylaxis and remove any latex-containing objects from the patient. Treat as for anaphylaxis—see p948. Subsequent analysis of serum mast cell tryptase confirms anaphylaxis.

**Hospital latex allergy policy**

- There should be a lead clinician for latex allergy and available instructions for access to latex allergy testing.
- Follow latex allergy precautions on the ward and in theatre. This should include a latex-free trolley containing the following latex-free equipment: gloves (synthetic rubber), masks and airways (plastics), endotracheal tubes (PVC), reservoir bags (neoprene), valves (silicone), IV tubing, IV cannulae (Teflon), syringes, bellows, circuits. There should also be barrier protectors for placement between latex-containing items and the patient's skin (e.g. Webril).
- Measures should be in place to avoid latex sensitisation with hospital staff.

1 Hepner DL, Castells MC (2003). Latex allergy: an update. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **96**, 1219–1229.

2 Harper NJ, Dixon T, Dugué P, et al. (2009). Suspected anaphylactic reactions associated with anaesthesia. *Anaesthesia*, **64**, 199–211.

3 Bousquet J, Flahault A, Vandenplas O, et al. (2006). Natural rubber latex allergy among health care workers: a systematic review of the evidence. *Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology*, **118**, 447–454.

4 Suli C, Lorini M, Mistrello G, Tedeschi A (2006). Diagnosis of latex hypersensitivity: comparison of different methods. *European Annals of Allergy and Clinical Immunology*, **38**, 24–30.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Herbal medicines and anaesthesia

- Approximately 5–14% of patients take perioperative herbal medication.
- Of these, 70% do not disclose this fact to their doctor.
- Content and concentrations of herbal remedies may vary dramatically.
- Most herbal remedies are harmless, but some may have important consequences for anaesthesia.

Drug (common name)	Potential uses	Perioperative concerns
Echinacea (purple coneflower root)	Boosts immune system (Stimulates cell-mediated immunity)	Immunosuppression in long-term use. Avoid in transplant surgery. May cause hepatotoxicity <sup>1</sup>
Ephedra (Ma huang)	Promotes weight loss. Used for asthma and bronchitis (Direct and indirect sympathomimetic)	Increased risk of cardiac arrhythmias, hypertension, strokes, and myocardial infarctions. <sup>2</sup> May cause ventricular arrhythmias with halothane. Life-threatening interaction with MAOIs <sup>1</sup>
Ginkgo (Duck foot tree, Maidenhair tree, Silver apricot)	Used to improve mental alertness (Antiplatelet activity)	Increased risk of bleeding when combined with anticoagulant and antithrombotic medication <sup>3</sup>
Ginseng (American, Asian, Chinese, Korean ginseng)	Aimed at increasing physical and mental stamina	May lower blood concentration of warfarin. May cause hypoglycaemia. <sup>1</sup> May see tachycardia and hypertension
Kava-kava (intoxicating pepper, kava)	Anxiolytic and muscle relaxant	Can increase sedative effect of anaesthetic <sup>1</sup>
St John's wort (Amber, goat weed, hardhay, Hypericum, klamathweed)	Antidepressant, anxiolytic, and used in sleep disorders (Inhibits neurotransmitter reuptake)	Induction of cytochrome P450 liver enzymes. Decreases serum digoxin levels. <sup>1</sup> Avoid in transplant surgery. <sup>4</sup> Associated with hypertensive crisis <sup>5</sup>
Valerian (All heal, garden heliotrope, vandal root)	Sleeping aid	Potentiates anaesthetic agents <sup>1</sup>

1 Ang-Lee MK, Moss J, Yuan CS (2001). Herbal medicines and perioperative care. *JAMA*, **286**, 208–216.

2 Haller CA, Benowitz NL (2000). Adverse cardiovascular and central nervous system events associated with dietary supplements containing ephedra alkaloids. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **343**, 1833–1838.

3 Bebbington A, Kulkarni R, Roberts P (2005). Ginkgo biloba: persistent bleeding after total hip arthroplasty caused by herbal self-medication. *Journal of Arthroplasty*, **20**, 125–126.

4 Ernst E (2002). St John's wort supplements endanger the success of organ transplantation. *Archives of Surgery*, **137**, 316–319.

5 Patel S, Robinson R, Burk M (2002). Hypertensive crisis associated with St. John's wort. *American Journal of Medicine*, **112**, 507–508.

### Further reading

American Society of Anaesthesiologists (2003). *What You Should Know About Your Patients' Use of Herbal Medicines and Other Dietary Supplements*. [www.asahq.org/patienteducation/herbphysician.pdf](http://www.asahq.org/patienteducation/herbphysician.pdf).

Skinner CM, Rangasami J (2002). Preoperative use of herbal medicines: a patient survey. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **89**, 792–795.



## Blood exposure incidents

Blood exposure incidents, sometimes referred to as inoculation or needle-stick injuries, are common in healthcare settings. These incidents can lead to exposure to blood-borne viruses (BBVs), such as hepatitis B (HBV) and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), but the commonest encountered in the UK is hepatitis C (HCV). Other micro-organisms can also be transmitted, leading to local or systemic infection.

Since 1997 there have been 15 documented cases of UK healthcare workers (HCWs) contracting hepatitis C and 5 have contracted HIV.

### Routes of exposure

- Percutaneous injury usually involving a needle (the commonest) or sharp instrument.
- Contact with broken or damaged skin, e.g. cuts, abrasions, and eczema.
- Splashes to mucous membranes such as the mouth or eye.

A significant number of these exposures are avoidable by adherence to universal precautions and safe disposal of clinical waste.

### Risk of infection following exposure

The risk of infection will depend upon several factors associated with the injury and volume of inoculum. An increased risk is associated with:

- Deep penetrating injury.
- Large-bore hollow needles.
- High viral load of the source patient (donor).
- Injury from a needle that has been in an artery or vein.

#### Risk of seroconversion following needlestick

HIV	0.3%
HCV	3%
HBV	30%

### Prevention (is better than cure)

- Ensure you are immunised against HBV.
- Follow universal precautions but, particularly, do not resheath needles and do dispose of your own clinical waste.

### First aid

If you are exposed:

- Immediately wash area with soap and water without scrubbing.
- Encourage bleeding of puncture wound.
- If splash to eye or mouth irrigate with water/saline.
- Follow your hospital's policy and procedure for blood exposure incidents.
- Complete incident form—important to record the event in case of health problems developing later.

- Consider whether your injury has led to the patient involved or anyone else being exposed to your blood. This is more likely if your injury has occurred during an interventional procedure.

### Post exposure management

- The injury requires rapid assessment. In most hospital settings the **Occupational Health Service (OHS)** is responsible for this, but different arrangements may be in place out of hours.
- The assessment will consider:
  - The nature of the exposure.
  - The likelihood of the source patient being infected with a BBV (see below).
  - The likelihood that the source patient or a third party has been exposed to your blood.
- The OHS will liaise with the source patient's clinical team to obtain consent for testing for BBVs. Most units test routinely for all three BBVs providing consent is given to do so.
- This should be done as a matter of urgency if the source patient is suspected of having HIV infection.
- If consent cannot be obtained a risk assessment of the source patient's status will be required to determine the need for post exposure prophylaxis.
- If consent is withheld or delays are likely post exposure prophylaxis may be commenced based on the risk assessment.

### Post exposure prophylaxis (PEP)

- PEP is used following exposure to HBV and HIV. (Antibiotics or antiviral therapy may also be considered after exposures to blood or body fluids of patients suffering from other infectious illnesses.)
- Follow-up serology at 6, 12, and 24wk identifies early disease and allows active management. No practice restrictions are required during this period unless seroconversion occurs.
- **HBV**—depending on immunisation status, victims will receive HBV vaccine alone or in combination with HBV immunoglobulin. Treatment should begin within 48hr of injury.
- **HIV**—ideally PEP should commence within 1hr but may be given up to 1wk following injury. Currently a combination of antiretroviral agents is recommended for 4wk. Up-to-date advice on drug selection can be obtained from the UK's Department of Health or Health Protection Agency websites ([www.dh.gov.uk](http://www.dh.gov.uk) or [www.hpa.org.uk](http://www.hpa.org.uk)) The protocol may require alteration if the source patient is not treatment naïve. PEP can produce unpleasant side effects as it is toxic to the liver, kidneys, and bone marrow, and their function is monitored during treatment. A significant proportion of injured HCWs discontinue treatment because of side effects.
- **HCV**—no PEP is recommended. Early treatment of acute disease with alpha interferon  $\pm$  ribavirin has been shown to be successful in reducing the risk of long-term chronic liver disease.

**If occupational health help is not available**

Assess the significance of the injury (see previous page). If exposure has been significant:

- Get colleague to assess the source patient.
- Check to see if testing has been carried out as part of clinical assessment.
- Obtain informed consent for testing for BBVs.
- If consent unavailable obtain clinical/social history to assess risk factors for possible infection (see below).
- If exposure to BBV is likely contact on-call microbiologist, consultant in communicable disease control, or genito-urinary medicine specialist.

**Source patient**

- Be aware that the injured HCW's blood may have contaminated the source patient as well. Alert senior colleagues if this may have occurred.
- Co-operate with obtaining consent from source patient for testing for BBVs. This will usually mean ensuring the patient has recovered sufficiently from an anaesthetic to give informed consent.
- In the UK there are GMC guidelines concerning testing without informed consent in situations where the patient is anaesthetised, unconscious, or has died. Testing can only be supported if the test is likely to be in the immediate clinical interests of the patient.
- PEP may be started as a result of a risk assessment of the injury whilst awaiting recovery from anaesthesia/sedation, etc.
- Consent discussion should cover:
  - Reason for test—injured HCW, possible need for prophylaxis.
  - Routine to test for all three BBVs.
  - Advantages for source patient—early diagnosis with early treatment and protection for sexual partners.
  - Potential disadvantages—distress at serious diagnosis, impact on relationships, and difficulty obtaining insurance (but not if negative result).
  - Confidentiality and who will need to know result if positive.
- If consent is not available participate in risk assessment of source patient status.
- History consistent with increased risk of infection with BBVs includes:
  - Domicile in a country of high prevalence.
  - IV drug abuse.
  - Blood/blood product transfusion, especially abroad.
  - Male/male sex, sex with prostitutes, casual sex, especially abroad (HBV, HIV).
  - History of jaundice.

**The infected doctor**

- Doctors infected with BBVs may represent a risk of infection to patients particularly if they participate in exposure prone procedures (EPPs).
- Occupational health advice must be sought on the range of activities that can be undertaken by infected doctors.

- Currently participation in EPPs is barred for doctors in the UK who are:
  - HBV infected (e-antigen positive or s-antigen positive with a viral load  $\geq 1000$  genome copies/ml).
  - HCV infected and HCV polymerase chain reaction (PCR) positive.
  - HIV infected.
- Most clinical procedures carried out by anaesthetists do not fall within the definition of EPP. Procedures that may be exposure prone, depending on the technique used, include the placement of portacaths and insertion of chest drains in trauma cases where there may be multiple rib fractures.
- Mouth to mouth resuscitation can be undertaken by an EPP-restricted worker if no competent non-restricted colleague is available as the benefit to the patient greatly outweighs the small risk of BBV transmission in these circumstances.

### Further reading

Department of Health 2007. Health Clearance for Tuberculosis, Hepatitis B, Hepatitis C and HIV: New Healthcare Workers. [http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/publicationsandstatistics/publications/publicationspolicyandguidance/dh\\_073132](http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/publicationsandstatistics/publications/publicationspolicyandguidance/dh_073132).

Department of Health 2008. HIV post exposure prophylaxis. Guidance from the Chief Medical Officer's Expert Advisory Group on AIDS. [http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/publicationsandstatistics/publications/publicationspolicyandguidance/dh\\_088185](http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/publicationsandstatistics/publications/publicationspolicyandguidance/dh_088185).

Serious Communicable Diseases. [www.gmc-uk.org/guidance/s\\_c\\_d/index.asp](http://www.gmc-uk.org/guidance/s_c_d/index.asp).

## Target-controlled infusions

(See also p1036.)

Target-controlled infusion (TCI) allows the anaesthetist to achieve a target plasma concentration of drug for a given patient. The system delivers the required amount of drug (optimised by weight, age,  $\pm$  gender,  $\pm$  height) and maintains this calculated target value until changed by the anaesthetist. Propofol has been studied extensively and population pharmacokinetics was incorporated into the *Diprifusor* TCI system. 'Open' TCI systems are now available offering the advantage of using generic propofol, as well as other drugs such as remifentanyl, e.g. Alaris (Asena PK) and Fresenius (Base Primea).

### Basic pharmacokinetics

A three-compartment model is used to describe the redistribution and elimination of drugs such as propofol:

- Drug is delivered to the central compartment,  $V_1$ , and then distributed throughout the body. The initial bolus is calculated according to the estimated volume of  $V_1$ .
- Drug is then distributed to compartments  $V_2$  and  $V_3$ . The movement of drug between the compartments is governed by intercompartmental rate constants (e.g.  $K_{eo}$  for brain/effect site concentration).

### Accuracy

- During infusion, measured plasma concentrations tend to be higher than predicted.
- Once infusion is stopped this bias is close to zero.
- Because pharmacodynamic variation is much greater than pharmacokinetic variation the target concentration must be titrated to achieve the required effect in any individual patient.

### Which numbers to use

With inhalational agents the vaporiser is adjusted to the clinical situation guided by MAC. For propofol, the  $EC_{50}$  (effective concentration required to prevent 50% of patients moving in response to a painful stimulus) is 6–7  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  with oxygen-enriched air and 4–5  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  with 67% nitrous oxide in ASA 1–2 patients.

- Interindividual variations in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, as well as the interaction between drugs, account for the different responses between patients. The target should be titrated according to the clinical situation. Patients with liver and renal dysfunction show greater pharmacokinetic variability as the drug has altered distribution/elimination.
- Elderly patients have a small volume of distribution with increased sensitivity to drugs. Doses, therefore, should be titrated in small steps.
- Children require a different set of pharmacokinetic variables for propofol, which have been incorporated into the *Paedfusor* and Alaris Asena PK system.
- Benzodiazepine premedication, nitrous oxide, and opioids all reduce propofol requirements.

### Induction of anaesthesia

- Select a target concentration less than anticipated (4–6 µg/ml is the requirement in the majority of patients).
- Allow time for the effect-site concentration to increase towards the target blood concentration. Oxygen should be administered during the induction phase to ensure an adequate SpO<sub>2</sub>.
- Increase the target concentration to achieve the desired level of anaesthesia for the procedure, the individual patient, and the balance of other agents such as analgesics.

### Rapid induction of anaesthesia using TCI

- Choose a high target such as 6–8 µg/ml, but only in young, fit patients.
- Wait to allow for the effect-site concentration to rise towards the target concentration.
- Reduce the target value as propofol continues to be redistributed.

### TCI for high-risk patients

- Select a low target such as 1 µg/ml.
- Wait to allow for the effect-site concentration to rise.
- Increase the target in small steps (0.5–1 µg/ml) until the desired effect is achieved.

### Maintenance of anaesthesia

- 3–6 µg/ml is required in the majority of patients, but the exact value will depend on the patient, premedication, analgesia, and degree of surgical stimulation.
- Titrate to effect.
- The majority of patients will wake at 1–2 µg/ml.
- When patients are breathing spontaneously, respiratory rate and ETCO<sub>2</sub> are good indicators as to adequacy of anaesthesia.
- The use of moderate doses of opioid analgesics, for example, remifentanyl or nitrous oxide, will allow a lower target concentration of propofol to be used—up to one third.

### Sedation only

Target concentrations of 0.5–2.5 µg/ml are usually required to produce good quality sedation during surgery performed under local/regional anaesthesia. Adding lidocaine to the infusion reduces pain on infusion in the lightly sedated patient.

### Open TCI systems

Open TCI systems offer the possibility of targeting the estimated effect-site concentration rather than plasma concentration.

- The different pharmacokinetic models available, in the different systems, result in different drug doses delivered for any given effect concentration. Therefore, one should always titrate to the clinical response.
- As open TCI systems allow the use of different drugs and drug concentrations, vigilance is needed to ensure that the correct drug and concentration are used.

- The models used in the available TCI systems calculate dose requirements in obese patients differently. This may result in over-/under estimating the amount of drug required. There is little available evidence regarding the use of TCI in morbidly obese patients, and many anaesthetists input values between ideal body weight and total body weight and then titrate to response.<sup>1</sup>

### **IV access**

- Requires secure IV access of adequate size to allow the infusion pump to run at its maximum rate of 1200ml/hr (20G or larger). Ideally this access should be visible at all times to ensure the infusion is not disrupted.
- If drug and IV fluids are connected to the same cannula by means of a T-piece or three-way tap:
  - Ensure that the fluids are running.
  - Prevent reflux by using a one-way valve fitted to the fluid infusion line.
  - Minimise the use of extensions to reduce the dead-space.
- Coadministration of drugs by the same giving set is not ideal as a change in the rate of one infusion can affect the other, especially if there is a significant dead-space after the common connection or T-piece.
- The most reliable method is to use a separate, dedicated access site.
- 1–2ml 1% lidocaine can be injected through the cannula prior to induction to avoid discomfort from propofol at the start of the infusion.

### **Benefits of total IV anaesthesia**

- Decreases the incidence of PONV (unless using nitrous oxide).
- Beneficial in laryngoscopy/bronchoscopy where delivery of an inhaled agent may be difficult, and in thoracic surgery, where it does not appear to inhibit the hypoxic vasoconstrictor reflex.
- Safe to use in patients with a history of malignant hyperthermia.
- Recovery with minimal 'hangover'.

### **Disadvantages**

- Increased cost compared with volatile agents.
- Inability to monitor drug concentration.
- Slow recovery following long operations unless the dose of propofol is decreased by combination with remifentanyl.
- Interruption to the delivery of propofol may take longer to recognise.

### **TCI remifentanyl**

Remifentanyl has a rapid onset of action, a short elimination half-life, and a context-sensitive half-time of ~3min, which does not change as the infusion time increases. The pharmacokinetics of remifentanyl allows the drug to be easily titrated against patient response using the TCI system. It is often used in combination with propofol TCI and target values of 3–8ng/ml

can provide adequate analgesia. Higher values may be required depending on the type of surgery and should be titrated to patient response and dose of hypnotic agent used. Adequate postoperative analgesia needs to be instituted prior to the end of surgery. TCI remifentanyl can also be used to provide analgesia for labour and awake fiberoptic intubation.

1 Absalom AR, Mani V, De Smet T, Struys MMR (2009). Pharmacokinetic models for propofol—defining and illuminating the devil in the detail. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **103**, 26–37.



## Death on the table

All anaesthetists experience a patient dying on the operating table at some time. In most cases death is anticipated and the cause is understood. Usually, the patient's relatives and theatre staff will have been informed about the high risk of mortality and are prepared for the event. However, when death is unexpected, the experience can be shattering for all concerned. Added to this is the stress of potential litigation.

Guidelines help to ensure that the legal requirements following a death on the table are fulfilled and may reduce the trauma of the situation. The coroner or equivalent (Procurator Fiscal in Scotland) must be notified of all deaths that occur during anaesthesia, or within 30d of an operation.

- **Dealing with the patient**—all lines and tubes must be left in place and the patient should be transferred to a quiet area where the relatives can attend.
- **Dealing with the relatives**—break the news to the relatives in a sympathetic and considerate way. This should be done by a team of senior staff (surgeon, anaesthetist, and nurse). Interpreters, chaplain, or social workers may be indicated in specific circumstances. It is highly inadvisable to let the surgeon or any single consultant see the relatives alone, as misunderstandings can occur. The initial interview should convey brief facts about the case to allow the relatives to take in the bad news. A nurse or carer should stay with the family to comfort them and offer practical help as required. After a suitable interval, the team should return and provide further details as appropriate and answer the family's questions. Any queries should be answered as fully and accurately as possible.
- **Notifications**—the supervising consultant must be contacted, if not already present. The patient's family doctor and the coroner should be informed by telephone at the earliest opportunity.

### Unexpected death

When death is unexpected, the cause of death may not be known at the time. The event needs to be accurately documented and, in addition to the procedures outlined above, the following must be addressed:

- **Equipment**—the anaesthetic machine and drug ampoules used should be isolated and checked by a senior colleague, preferably someone unconnected with the original incident. An accurate record of these checks must be kept for future reference. Drug checks should include the identity, doses used, expiry dates, and batch numbers. The drug ampoules and syringes should be kept in case further analysis is required.
- **The anaesthetist**—the rest of the operating list should be delayed until another anaesthetist and surgeon can take over.
- **Documentation**—ensure that the medical record is complete and accurate. All entries in the patient's notes should be dated and signed. Details of the case should be clearly documented on an incident form (or equivalent) and copies delivered to the medical director and Clinical Director. A copy should also be retained by the anaesthetist.

for the medical defence organisation. These should not be filed in the case notes.

- **The mentor**—a senior colleague should be allocated to act as mentor for the anaesthetist to provide guidance and support. The mentor should help with the notifications, assist in the compilation of reports, liaise with the anaesthetist's family, and offer support as necessary.
- **The theatre team**—a debriefing session should be arranged to help the staff understand the event and come to terms with it. Group counselling may help to reduce post event psychological trauma.

### Preparing for legal proceedings

If legal proceedings do ensue, it may be a long time after the event. The medical records will assume utmost importance and form the basis of the case. Anything not recorded in the notes may be assumed not to have been done. The records should be completed within a few hours of the event and must not be altered in any way. An electronically recorded printout alone is insufficient. The record needs to show the reasoning behind the action taken and some indication of the working diagnosis.

The anaesthetist may find it helpful to record a detailed account of the case within a few days of the death, including all the preoperative discussions with the patient and the perioperative events, noting the personnel and times involved. This can be kept in a personal file and used as an aide-mémoire. The anaesthetist's medical defence organisation should be consulted for help and further advice. Other healthcare staff should also make statements about the case—normally this is coordinated by the Trust.

### Further reading

Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2005). *Catastrophes in Anaesthetic Practice*. [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).

Bacon AK (1989). Death on the table. *Anaesthesia*, **44**, 245–248.

Bacon AK, Morris RW, Runciman WB, Currie M (2005). Crisis management during anaesthesia: recovering from a crisis. *Quality and Safety in Health Care*, **14**(3), e25.

## Dealing with a complaint

Most doctors receive complaints, the majority of which can be resolved without legal proceedings. Seventy five percent of complaints are due to a failure in communication and only 25% due to a failure to investigate or treat. Patients are more likely to proceed to a legal claim if there is inadequate information or concern initially. The average acute hospital will investigate 120–160 formal complaints per 1000 doctors annually, but very few are followed by a legal claim and fewer still by a trial. In any service it is recognised that mishaps will occur and mechanisms need to be in place to identify and rectify the causes. There is increasing awareness of the role of 'systems failure' in these cases. Usually a series of mistakes is involved resulting in the adverse incident. The adoption of a 'no blame' culture enables open, honest reporting of failures, which allows appropriate changes to be made, thereby improving patient safety.

### Background

In the UK, Crown Indemnity was introduced in 1990 and it is the Trust or Health Authority that is sued and is liable, not the individual doctor. The actions of the doctor are considered separately, if required, by the Clinical Director or Medical Director. Crown Indemnity does not cover work performed outside the NHS contract (e.g. private practice, 'Good Samaritan' deeds) and separate medical defence insurance should be arranged to cover this work. The defence organisation will also provide support for doctors who become the subject of disciplinary proceedings.

### Local resolution

Complaints can often be resolved quickly and to the satisfaction of all involved. The aim is to answer the complaint, offer an apology if that is appropriate, amend faulty procedures or practices (for the benefit of others), and clarify if the complaint is groundless.

### Verbal complaints

- **Speak to the patient** as soon as you hear of any problem. Give the patient a full, clear explanation of the facts and try to resolve any difficulty.
- **Speak to a senior colleague** for guidance and support. Consider asking a senior consultant or the Clinical Director to see the patient with you as the patient may value their advice and you may value their reassurance.
- **Apologise**—saying sorry is not an admission of liability. Patients will appreciate your concern. However, do not apologise for the actions of others, or blame anyone without allowing them to comment.
- **Documentation**—always make a detailed entry in the patient's notes of any dissatisfaction expressed and the action taken in response. Discuss with the Trust complaints manager.

### Formal written complaints

Trusts must comply with national guidelines and acknowledge formal complaints within 3 working days. The complainant must be informed of the procedure to be followed and contacted to discuss the matter with the Trust's complaints manager so that a time frame for investigating the problem can be agreed. This will involve copying the correspondence to all the relevant clinical staff and Clinical Directors for their explanation. The information provided is used to produce a report explaining the course of events and any necessary action taken. When replying:

- Speak to a Senior Consultant/Clinical Director. They may have experience of similar events and can help to clarify the issues with you.
- The Trust will have an experienced manager who has responsibility for complaints who should be contacted.
- Inform your medical defence organisation who will provide advice and support.
- Record keeping—keep a full account of the details of the incident.
- Leave a forwarding address if you move. A legal claim may be made many months after the event.

### Independent review

Any patient not satisfied with the Trust's response should be reminded that they can refer the case to the Health Service Ombudsman (Public Services Ombudsman in Wales; N.I. Commissioner of Complaints; Scottish Public Services Ombudsman).

### Legal proceedings

A legal claim may be made several months after the incident or whenever the post event problem becomes manifest. Initially, you will be asked for a statement of your involvement in the patient's care. The Trust's legal team will need to work with you and your Clinical Director to produce this.

### Preparing a statement

This should include the following:

- Full name and qualifications.
- Grade and position held (including duration).
- Full names and positions of others involved (patients, relatives, staff).
- Date(s) and time(s) of all the relevant matters.
- Brief summary of the background details (e.g. patient's medical history).
- Full and detailed description of the matters involved.
- Date and time that your statement was made, and your signature on every page.
- Copies of any supporting documents referred to in the statement (initialled by you).

The statement should accord with the following points:

- **Accuracy.** There should be no exaggeration, understatement, or inconsistencies. Check the details with the patient's notes.
- **Facts.** Keep to the facts, particularly those that determined your decision-making, and avoid value judgments.
- **Avoid hearsay.** Try to avoid including details that you have not witnessed yourself. If reference has to be made to such information,

record the name and position of the person providing it to you, when it was provided, and how.

- **Be concise.** State the essential details in a logical sequence and avoid generalisations.
- **Relevance.** Include only the details required to understand the situation fully.
- **Avoid jargon.** Give layman's explanations of any clinical terms used and avoid abbreviations.

Discuss the statement with your Clinical Director and Trust legal department to ensure a clear factual account. Only sign the statement when you are completely happy with the text and keep a copy for your own reference. The Trust's legal team should provide advice on the subsequent legal process and discuss the management of the claim with you. Remember good record keeping will help to support your case. Poor records give the impression of poor care. The medical records are the only proof of what occurred and anything not written down may be assumed to have not happened. Any later additions to the notes should be signed and dated with an explanation of the reasons why the entry was not made earlier.

## **Awareness**

Complaints of awareness must be pursued promptly. It is important to confirm what the patient may have heard or felt and document this accurately. If possible, an explanation of the events and causes, if any, should be given. The patient needs reassurance that steps can be taken to reduce the risk of awareness during subsequent anaesthetics. Post-traumatic stress disorder can develop and it is important that these patients are offered counselling and given details of support groups that may be helpful.

## **Further reading**

- Department of Health (2009). *Listening, responding, improving—a guide to better customer care*. London: DH.
- Health Rights Information for Scotland (2006). *Making a Complaint About the NHS*. Glasgow: Health Rights Information for Scotland.
- NHS Wales (2006). *Complaints About NHS Treatment and Care. A Guide to Making a Complaint About the NHS in Wales*. [http://wales.gov.uk/docrepos/40382/dhss/guidance/complaints\\_leaflet\\_october\\_1.pdf?lang=en](http://wales.gov.uk/docrepos/40382/dhss/guidance/complaints_leaflet_october_1.pdf?lang=en).
- Northern Ireland Department of Health, Social Services and Public Safety (2009). *Complaints in Health and Social Care. Standards & Guidelines for Resolution & Learning*. [http://www.dhsspsni.gov.uk/hsc\\_complaints\\_\\_complaints\\_in\\_hsc\\_standards\\_and\\_guidelines\\_for\\_resolution\\_\\_learning\\_\\_26\\_july\\_2010.pdf](http://www.dhsspsni.gov.uk/hsc_complaints__complaints_in_hsc_standards_and_guidelines_for_resolution__learning__26_july_2010.pdf).

## Military anaesthesia

- Techniques of resuscitation, anaesthesia, and transportation of critically injured soldiers and civilians are continuously being developed and improved during conflict.
- Injuries may be the result of ballistic injuries from improvised explosive devices (IEDs), penetrating injuries from gun shot wounds, or other events such as road traffic accidents.
- Military medical care starts immediately with soldiers trained to apply tourniquets, stop bleeding, and administer analgesia. More advanced first aid is given by the Combat Medical Technician (CMT). Uncontrolled haemorrhage is a common cause of death in conflict.
- Early intervention in the battlefield area and moving the patient rapidly by air to an emergency medical facility is making a major impact on survival.
- Simultaneous damage control resuscitation (DCR) and damage control surgery (DCS) followed by a short period of stabilisation in intensive care is the norm prior to onward transportation to Role 4 base hospital at Birmingham. This all occurs within 24hr of injury.
- Anaesthetists are expected to work in a wide range of roles, including being deployed via land, sea, or air, parachute and helicopter insertion, life-threatening exposure to conflict in our Pre-Hospital Care role, and extremes of cold/heat.
- Facilities for military anaesthesia are designed to be highly capable but mobile, allowing setting up of full trauma resuscitation/surgery facilities within 45min.
- Anaesthesia includes intravenous, drawover, and regional/local anaesthesia techniques.

## Damage control resuscitation (DCR)

(see also p1075)

- Haemorrhage remains the leading cause of combat casualty death. Damage control resuscitation (DCR) and damage control surgery (DCS) are now well recognised in military and civilian trauma practice. **Haemostatic resuscitation** is defined as the rapid proactive treatment of the coagulopathy associated with major trauma. Hypoperfusion, hyperfibrinolysis, activation of protein C, and upregulation of thrombomodulin pathways all contribute to an **acute coagulopathy of trauma shock (ACoTS)**. Aggressive treatment of the lethal triad of *hypothermia, acidosis, and coagulopathy* is essential to countering ACoTS. The combination of all treatment strategies has now been termed 'damage control resuscitation (DCR)'.
- DCR relies on excellent, effective, and current communication between personnel: medical emergency response team, emergency department, anaesthesia, surgery, nursing, and laboratory teams. Ensure everyone in the resuscitation area or theatre is aware of their role, including a 'blood runner', rapid infusor operator, and blood product scribe. Be clear who is the resuscitation team leader.

### Rapid sequence induction of anaesthesia

- Excellent teamwork is key.
- Optimal preoxygenation.
- Ketamine at a dose of 0.5–2mg/kg (racemic) or thiopental 10–50% normal dose.
- Rocuronium 1.2mg/kg or suxamethonium 1.5mg/kg.

### Intubation

- Aiming for 'first time, every time'.
- 8mm cuffed oral ETT for adults.
- Introducer preprimed in ETT with 10ml syringe attached.
- Size 4 Macintosh blade and/or Glidescope/Airtraq.

### IV access

- At least one large-bore central line 8.5Fr (Swan introducer) into the right/left subclavian vein (avoid going below the diaphragm).

### Resuscitation

- Initial resuscitation is empiric and fast.
- **'Shock Packs'** [4 units each of thawed FFP and packed RBCs (PRBC)] are made available for each severely injured patient.
- Give 1:1 ratio of warmed FFP:PRBCs.
- Ensure one platelet apheresis pool is made available and give early if anticipated blood product demand is high. Giving 1 platelet pool every 4–5 FFP:PRBCs equals a 1:1:1 optimum ratio.
- Give 15mg/kg **tranexamic acid** ASAP and repeat every 10 transfused units until bleeding stops.
- Give 10ml 10% calcium chloride every 5 units or if ionised calcium <1.0mmol/l.

- Aim for a systolic blood pressure of no more than 90mmHg until haemorrhage control is gained (clot preservation).
- Avoid vasoconstrictors in the early period and administer blood products until a systolic blood pressure of 90mmHg is achieved.
- Change from 'Shock Packs' to type-specific blood ASAP.
- Further resuscitation should be guided by base deficit/lactate clearance and RoTEM thromboelastography (initial sample taken on admission). Repeating blood samples intelligently guides evolving resuscitation.
- Use 50ml 50% glucose and 15IU insulin infusion to maintain potassium between 3.5 and 4.5mmol/l (especially important in blast injury and rapid restoration of blood loss).
- Consider administering 1 pool of cryoprecipitate to maintain a fibrinogen level >1.0g/l (contains 10 donor units).

### Hypothermia management

- Essential to keep temperature >36°C.
- Use oesophageal temperature probe.
- Fluid warming is the first priority.
- Mattress heater.
- Forced warm air blankets.
- Head warmer.
- Warm humidified breathing circuit.

### Clinical tips

- Give recently donated blood (<14d old) to patients requiring >5 units.
- For anaesthesia maintenance isoflurane at 0.4–0.6MAC with increasing boluses of fentanyl (2–3mg total dose for case) provides simple, cardiovascular stable anaesthesia with a degree of vasodilatation to aid replacement of lost circulating fluid and lactate clearance.
- If pH <7.1 consider tris-hydroxymethyl aminomethane (THAM) (dose in ml of 0.3M solution = base deficit × lean mass in kg) or sodium bicarbonate.
- For resistant coagulopathy consider recombinant activated factor VII (rFVIIa) combined with 1 unit cryoprecipitate, 1 unit FFP, and 1 unit platelets administered simultaneously with 100µg/kg rFVIIa ('Bastion Glue') as recommended in the Surgeons General Policy on Massive Transfusion.
- Additional platelets may be required in heavy platelet consumers—warn laboratory early.
- Consider use of fresh whole blood for resistant coagulopathy.
- Although patients initially may be hypocoagulable, they often become progressively hypercoagulable. Venothromboprophylaxis should be instigated early when warranted.
- Avoid crystalloids/colloids. If systolic BP <90mmHg give blood products.
- Do not attempt arterial line insertion until systolic BP >90mmHg.
- Resuscitation should not be delayed for tests or line insertion.
- Constantly re-evaluate: when bleeding is controlled slow down the rate of blood and product infusion to avoid fluid-overloading the casualty—an important consideration in the presence of blast lung.



## Medical Emergency Response Team (MERT)

Critical care is a process, not a place. The MERT aims to provide physician-led prehospital care<sup>1</sup> close to the site of injury.

### Team composition

- Senior anaesthetist /emergency physician—clinical lead
- Emergency nurse
- Two paramedics

### Role of MERT

The MERT aims to improve outcome by making appropriate life-/limb-saving interventions following injury using BATLS principles. Delivery of the team is usually by combat helicopter CH-47. The team delivers advanced airway care (rapid sequence induction/surgical airway), thoracostomy, thorocotomy, large-bore IV access<sup>2</sup> (e.g. subclavian Swan introducer), administration of warmed blood products<sup>3</sup> (plasma and red blood cells), and other agents in line with a prehospital transfusion algorithm aiming to avoid ACoTS. Triage of soldiers to the most appropriate facility is undertaken depending on the injuries sustained. While resuscitation follows the paradigm of <C> ABC, key points for the MERT are:

- Appropriate triage and positioning of patients onto airframe.
- <C> = control of life-threatening haemorrhage. Pneumatic/manual tourniquets. Pressure into wounds /haemostatic ribbon gauze.
- **A:** Airway—rapid sequence induction if indicated.
- **B:** Breathing—thoracostomy post RSI with IPPV/PEEP.
- **C:** Circulation—large-bore IV/IO/central access. Used for PRBC/FFP administration. All fluids warmed with inline prehospital fluid warmers. Clam-shell thoracotomy if required (non-blast single penetrating chest trauma).
- Hypothermia mitigation: this is achieved with the use of proprietary warming systems, e.g. 'Blizzard Heat'.

1 Bøtker MT, Bakke SA, Christensen EF (2009). A systematic review of controlled studies: do physicians increase survival with prehospital treatment? *Scandinavian Journal of Trauma, Resuscitation and Emergency Medicine*, **17**, 12.

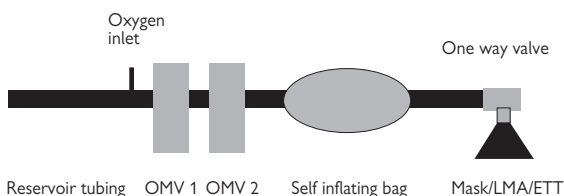
2 Fyntanidou B, Fortounis K, Amaniti K, et al. (2009). The use of central venous catheters during emergency prehospital care: a 2-year experience. *European Journal of Emergency Medicine*, **16**, 194–198.

3 Dawes RJ, Thomas GOR (2009). Battlefield resuscitation: *Current Opinion in Critical Care*, **5**, 527–535.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Drawover anaesthesia: the triservice anaesthetic apparatus (TSAA)

Drawover anaesthesia uses atmospheric air as the carrier gas for volatile anaesthetic agents supplemented by oxygen (cylinder or concentrator). The military version of drawover is the Triservice Anaesthesia Apparatus (TSAA) (see figure 37.1). It consists of 2×50ml Oxford miniature vaporisers (OMV) in series connected to the patient via a self-inflating bag. A valve at the patient end ensures no rebreathing. Oxygen is added before the vaporiser into an open-ended reservoir tube of at least 500ml. When a ventilator is used, it replaces the inflating bag in the circuit.



**Fig. 37.1** Triservice anaesthetic apparatus. [Adapted from Kocan M (1987). The Triservice anaesthetic apparatus. Trial of isoflurane and enflurane as alternatives to halothane. *Anaesthesia*, **42**, 1101–1104.]

### Advantages of TSAA

- Robust, modular and easy to transport.
- Does not rely on electricity.
- Low oxygen requirement—typically 1l/min during maintenance, reducing the need to transport oxygen cylinders.
- Hypoxic gas mixture risk eliminated.
- Simple to use.<sup>1</sup>
- OMV can use different volatile agents.
- Use of end-tidal gas monitoring overcomes lack of temperature compensation.
- Can be used for spontaneous or manual ventilation.
- Suitable for patients >10kg.<sup>2</sup>

### Disadvantages

- The valve at the patient end is bulky, especially when connected to attachments allowing scavenging, spirometry, and end-tidal monitoring.
- Not suitable for gaseous induction with sevoflurane.<sup>3</sup>

- Inefficient.
- Vaporisers can be knocked over and spill contents.

### Developing countries

- Drawover anaesthesia is commonly practised in resource-poor parts of the world where difficulties with compressed gas supplies and maintenance occur. In general the apparatus used in drawover is relatively simple to maintain offering advantages in rural settings.
- Drawover anaesthesia equipment may be combined with an oxygen concentrator allowing low-cost oxygen to be reliably produced (assuming electricity is available).
- Conditions of anaesthesia in developing countries differ from military circumstances (well equipped and highly trained specialists treating severe trauma in well-run units).

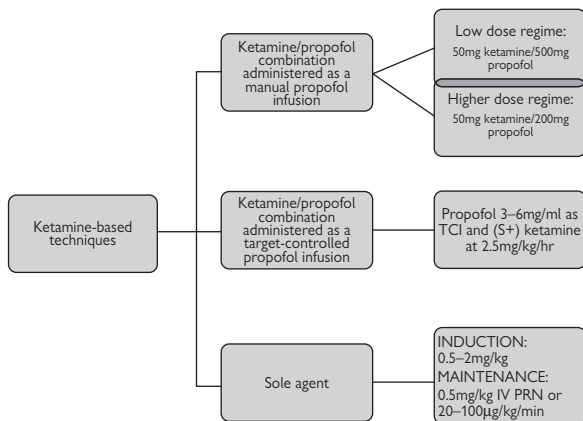
- 1 Thompson MC, Restall J (1982). The Triservice anaesthetic apparatus. *Anaesthesia*, **37**, 778–779.
- 2 Bell GT, McEwen JPJ, Beaton SJ, Young D (2007). Comparison of work of breathing using drawover and continuous flow anaesthetic breathing systems in children. *Anaesthesia*, **62**, 359–363.
- 3 Mellor A, Hicks I (2005). Sevoflurane delivery via the Triservice apparatus. *Anaesthesia*, **60**, 1151.

## Total intravenous anaesthesia: military uses

Total intravenous anaesthesia (TIVA) techniques depend on the overall clinical context of the patient and the type of infusion device available (e.g. TCI pumps or conventional syringe drivers). Secure, dedicated, visible IV access with suitable antireflux valves is recommended at all times.

### Ketamine

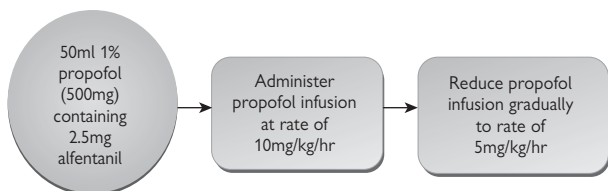
Ketamine-based techniques in trauma, especially in hypovolaemia, are well proven. Concomitant use with propofol may reduce side effects, though emergence phenomena may still occur. Suggested regimes are shown below in figure 37.2.



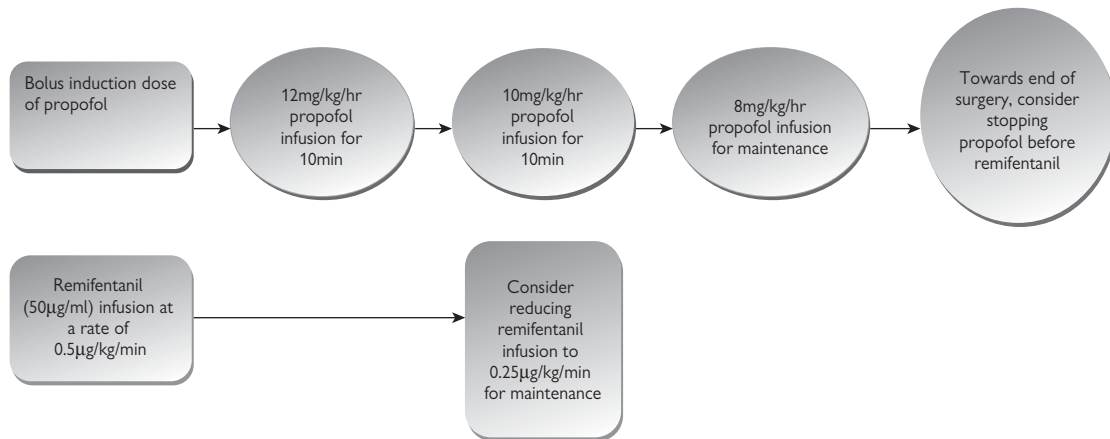
**Fig. 37.2** Suggested ketamine regimes.

## Propofol

Propofol-opioid techniques have been reported both in manual and TCI modes. However, haemodynamic compromise will determine the choice of such techniques, and their usefulness in the context of major battle-field trauma is yet to be determined. Manual infusion strategies employing propofol are shown below in figures 37.3 and 37.4.



**Fig. 37.3** A manual infusion strategy employing propofol and alfentanil.



**Fig. 37.4** A manual infusion strategy employing propofol and remifentanyl concurrently.

### Further reading

Absalom AR, Struys MMRF (2007). An overview of TCI & TIVA, 2nd edn. Ghent: Academia Press.  
Cantelo R, Mahoney P (2003). An introduction to field anaesthesia. *Current Anaesthesia & Critical Care*, **14**, 126–130.



## Long-term venous access

Cannulae in peripheral veins last for only a few days. For longer-term access several alternatives exist. Before deciding which to choose, the following should be considered:

- Indication and duration of proposed therapy requiring venous access.
- Proposed location for administration of therapy (hospital, GP/clinic, home).
- Risk of contamination of catheter.
- Patient's clinical status (coagulation status, sepsis, CVS stability).
- Risk of sclerosant drugs.

The definition of long-term central venous access is not standardised, e.g. predicted use greater than 6wk or presence of internal anchoring devices.

### Indications

- Cancer chemotherapy.
- Long-term antibiotics.
- Home TPN.
- Haemodialysis.
- Repeated blood transfusions or repeated venesection.

### Venous access devices (in ascending duration, costs, and complexity)

#### Short term

- Peripheral cannulae.
- Midlines (10–20cm soft catheter) are inserted via the antecubital fossa, with the tip of the device situated in the upper third of the basilic or cephalic vein and short of the great vessels.
- Non-cuffed, non-tunnelled central venous catheters (CVC) are used for resuscitation/central venous monitoring. Non-tunnelled CVCs are rarely used for >10–14d, due to the risk of sepsis. Antimicrobial-coated catheters are available. Use a single lumen catheter when possible.
- Tunnelled non-cuffed catheters are used less frequently, as similar cuffed devices offer a more secure fixation and a potential antimicrobial barrier.

#### Long term

- Peripherally inserted central catheters (PICCs) are long and advanced centrally from the antecubital fossa/upper arm. A PICC can last for several months if managed correctly.
- Tunnelled, cuffed, central venous catheters ('Hickman type lines') are tunnelled from the insertion site on either the chest or abdominal wall. They can be open ended or contain a two-way valve ('Groshong catheter'). These are used for prolonged therapies and have a Dacron cuff which allows fibrotic tissue ingrowth to provide anchorage and a possible barrier to infection. It takes 3–4wk for fibrous adhesions to develop and hence should not be inserted for shorter use. Similar devices exist for dialysis (e.g. Tesio).
- Subcutaneous (SC) ports made from either titanium or plastic offer a single or double injection port attached to a central catheter. A SC pocket is formed on the chest or abdominal wall to house the port. They are surgically placed and used for prolonged periods of intermittent therapy, e.g. antibiotics for cystic fibrosis. Popular for children. Enable bathing and immersion.

Device	Normal duration
Peripheral cannulae	48–72hr
Midlines	14–21d
Non-cuffed, non-tunnelled central venous catheters (CVCs)	5–14d
Tunnelled non-cuffed central venous catheters	5–21d
Peripherally inserted central catheters (PICCs)	Several months
Tunnelled, cuffed, central venous catheters (Hickman line)	Months/years
SC ports	Months/years

### Site of access

- Anecdotal evidence suggests that catheters placed from the right side of the body have lesser risk of thrombosis due to a shorter, straighter route to the SVC. Easiest tip positioning is via the right internal jugular vein.
- Choose site dependent on patient factors, previous access, and clinician experience.
- Look for evidence of thrombosis or stenosis, previous scars from long-term access, and venous collaterals (suggest great vein stenosis). If doubt exists concerning vessel patency use ultrasound to assess access site. Formal venography is helpful in difficult cases.
- Choose puncture sites and tunnel tract to avoid tight bends; if necessary use multiple puncture sites to avoid  $>90^\circ$  bends and catheter kinks.

Site	Advantages	Disadvantages
Arm (cephalic/basilic veins)	Simple to access—veins usually visible and palpable. No vital structures close. Patient comfort. Use upper arm (ultrasound veins)	Failure to achieve central position. Higher incidence of thrombosis. Low infusion rates. Avoid elbow flexure
Right internal jugular	Simple to insert. Direct route to central veins. High flow rate—low risk of thrombosis. Lower risk of pneumothorax. Ideal for larger stiff catheters, e.g. dialysis	Patient discomfort. Possible higher risk of infection. Tunnelling more difficult to chest wall. Cosmetic considerations
Subclavian/axillary	Less patient discomfort. Possibly lower risk of infection. Easy tunnelling	Curved insertion route. Thrombosis risk (swollen arm). Acute complications—pneumothorax, haemothorax, nerve damage. Catheter may be damaged between clavicle and first rib
Femoral	Tunnel to mid abdomen	High rate of infection/risk of thrombosis. More discomfort

**Ultrasound guidance**

See NICE guidelines.

- Appropriate training required.
- Particularly recommended for internal jugular but useful for all sites and ages.
- Useful in context of difficult/repeated long-term venous access.
- For subclavian access move lateral to junction of axillary/subclavian vein to allow visualisation with ultrasound.
- Note patent vein at access site does not guarantee central vein patency.
- Respiratory variation in vein size suggests patent central vein.

**Practical tips for insertion**

- Ask patient to take a deep breath on insertion of guidewire/catheter to facilitate central passage.
- Measure catheter length required with correctly positioned guidewire (using fluoroscopy). Or lay on chest wall with tip over right side of sternal angle.
- Take care with rigid sheaths and dilators to avoid central vessel damage. Do not insert too deeply (generally longer than required).
- Pinch sheath on removal of obturator to avoid bleeding and air embolism (some are valved).
- Sheaths readily kink—draw back until catheter passes.
- Pass long, thin guidewire (70cm+, Terumo-coated type) through soft catheters to increase torque if difficulties passing centrally.
- Screen guidewire, obturator sheath, and catheter insertion if any difficulty encountered. Use venography through needle, sheath, or catheter if uncertain as to position. 10ml diluted contrast (check allergy), e.g. Ultravist 120<sup>®</sup>.
- For fixed-length catheters (e.g. Groshong, dialysis) take care to choose correct length for site of access and adequate length of tunnel tract to ensure correct tip position in SVC.
- Move catheter and cuff along tunnel tract to adjust catheter tip position.
- Flush with saline/heparinised saline before and after use.
- Image tunnelled section of line to look for kinks.

**Ports**

- Ports can be inserted percutaneously under LA  $\pm$  sedation or under GA. Smaller low-profile versions can be sited in the arm.
- Minimise incision and pocket size by placing port anchor sutures within the pocket first and then slide port in over them and tie off (same principle as cardiac valve replacement).
- Access is gained by a specific 'non-coring' needle and advancement through the silicone membrane to the reservoir below. Initial access to a port causes discomfort and EMLA<sup>®</sup> cream can be applied 30min before. There is a distinct clunk as the needle hits the back wall of the port after penetrating the membrane.
- Leave access needle in situ if access required soon after insertion to avoid painful wound site (settles after a few days).

### Catheter tip position

This is important to reduce risks of thrombosis (with link to infection), catheter perforation into pericardium, pleura, or mediastinum, and migration with risk of extravasation injury. Optimal positioning is most consistently achieved with real-time fluoroscopy or serial X-rays.

- Tip should ideally lie in SVC, in long axis of vein, i.e. not abutting vein at an acute angle.
- It is generally recommended that the tip should lie above the pericardial reflection (to avoid perforation and tamponade). The carina (or right main bronchus) can be used as a radiological landmark to define the approximate upper border of the pericardium.
- It may not be possible to get an adequate catheter tip position above the carina in catheters from the left side (left internal jugular or subclavian) or the right subclavian due to the angulation of the distal catheter segment. Aim to have the last 3–6cm of catheter tip in the long axis of the SVC (this will approximate to the junction of SVC/RA or upper RA in such cases).
- ECG guidance may be used to confirm central position but does not ensure good tip position in SVC (may be angled against vein wall), particularly with left-sided catheters.
- Catheter tip may move between lying and sitting/standing. Assess on inspiration and expiration with the patient table flat. It will generally appear much further centrally on supine/head down imaging than on an erect PA film with deep inspiration.

### Aftercare

It is essential that staff using such catheters have adequate training in use and use maximum sterile precautions at all times.

- Do not remove anchoring sutures for at least 3wk to allow Dacron cuff to become adherent. Many centres use 'statlock'-type adhesive anchors.
- When used in patients at high risk of thromboembolism, therapeutic doses of warfarin or low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) may reduce the frequency of catheter-related thrombosis.
- Beware: some units still lock catheters with strong heparin (e.g. dialysis catheters)—always aspirate catheter and discard before use.
- Thrombosed catheters can be unblocked with urokinase (5000U). Suction all air through three-way tap to collapse catheter and create vacuum. Then inject urokinase diluted in 2ml saline, and repeat sequence to get fluid into catheter. Avoid excess pressure that can rupture catheter.

**Removing a Hickman line**

- Cuffed catheters usually pull out if in situ <3wk—before fibrous adhesions have anchored the cuff. Note: some operators insert internal anchoring sutures.
- Heavily infected catheters usually pull out as the infection breaks down adhesions.
- Push and pull catheter to palpate and visualise cuff shape and tethering. It is difficult to feel cuff if it is just inside the exit site.
- Inject generous LA around cuff site and tunnel tract.
- Cut down (1–2cm incision sufficient) just to the vein side of the cuff. Use forceps to feel catheter as solid structure that rolls under the forceps (incision too small for finger). Free up and remove venous section first; a thin fibrin sheath/capsule will need to be incised to free the catheter. Pull catheter out of vein.
- Then dissect around cuff to free adhesions.
- Try to avoid sharp dissection until the venous section of catheter is removed to reduce risk of embolisation from cut catheter (catheters can pass to RV/PA).
- Similar considerations apply to port removals where the port and catheter are encased in a tough fibrous sheath.

**Complications of long-term access**

- *Catheter-related infection.* This is common and may be at exit site, tunnel tract, or hidden internally. Some external infections can be managed with antibiotics—seek advice. Many such catheters are managed without dressings in the longer term. There is little evidence for the use of antiseptic dressing or devices for long-term catheters.
- *Catheter blockage.* Catheters can rupture between clavicle and first rib (pinch off) or become thrombosed (see above).
- *Fibrin sleeve formation* commonly obstructs aspiration of blood but still allows injection of fluids.
- *Venous thrombosis* usually requires catheter removal and anticoagulation.
- *Vein stenosis* and venous collateral formation are often asymptomatic due to gradual obstruction. Can be reopened by radiological stenting.

**Critical care**

- Long-term venous access devices can be used in the critical care setting if appropriate asepsis is maintained. Balance the risk/benefits of siting new short-term CVC (e.g. coagulopathy).
- Valved catheters (Groschong) or those with fibrin sleeve covering the tip may not give CVP waveform and may cause intermittent drug bolusing during infusion (avoid for vasoactive drugs).
- Ports and other catheters are good options for a child requiring repeated IV anaesthetic induction.

### Further reading

- Bishop L, Dougherty L, Bodenham A, et al. (2007). Guidelines on the insertion and management of central venous access devices in adults. *International Journal of Laboratory Hematology*, **29**, 261–278. <http://www.bcsghguidelines.com/>.
- Department of Health (2001). Guidelines for preventing infections associated with the insertion and maintenance of central venous catheters. *Journal of Hospital Infection*, **47** (Suppl), 47–67.
- Galloway S, Bodenham A (2003). Safe removal of long term cuffed Hickman type catheters. *Hospital Medicine*, **64**, 20–23.
- Galloway S, Bodenham A (2004). Long-term central venous access. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **92**, 722–734.
- Hind D, et al. (2003). Ultrasonic devices for central venous cannulation. *British Medical Journal*, **327**, 361–367. Number 49. [www.nice.org.uk](http://www.nice.org.uk).

## Oesophageal Doppler monitoring

The oesophageal Doppler monitor (ODM) is commonly used in theatre to measure cardiac output. Pulsed wave Doppler is used to measure the velocity of blood in the descending aorta and this trace is integrated with respect to time to produce a velocity time integral (VTI). The monitor employs a nomogram based on the patient's age, weight, and height to estimate aortic cross-sectional area and this value is multiplied by the VTI to calculate the stroke volume.

Most stiff probes are placed in anaesthetised patients, but flexible probes are now available to allow continued monitoring in the recovery period. The cost of each probe is comparable with other technologies for cardiac output monitoring, and is potentially offset by savings arising from the patient's reduced length of stay.

### Method

- Appropriate entries are made for the age, weight, and height of the patient into the computer.
- The probe is inserted into the oesophagus via the nose (preferable) or mouth.
- When the tip of the probe is lying 35–40cm from the teeth a characteristic Doppler signal can be located by rotating the probe and moving it up or down the oesophagus.
- When the probe is correctly focused the signal should be a well-defined triangle with a black centre surrounded by red and then some white in the trailing edge of the waveform (see figure 37.5).

### Measurements

- **Peak velocity (PV)** is predominantly influenced by contractility and afterload characteristics. However, hypovolaemia will also influence PV and this limits its value in theatre. It is age dependent and normal values are detailed in the table below.
- **Stroke volume (SV)**. Change in SV following a fluid challenge provides the best indicator of fluid responsiveness in an anaesthetised patient. A 10% increase after a 3ml/kg fluid challenge implies responsiveness and should prompt a further fluid challenge.
- **Corrected flow time (FTc)**. The duration of forward blood flow during systole is measured as the flow time and is dependent on the heart rate. To mitigate this the flow time is divided by the square root of the heart rate to produce the corrected flow time (FTc) which then becomes a useful marker of preload and afterload. A low FTc implies that the filling or emptying of the left ventricle is impaired and this is most commonly seen with hypovolaemia, although obstruction from mitral stenosis or pulmonary embolism will give similar results.

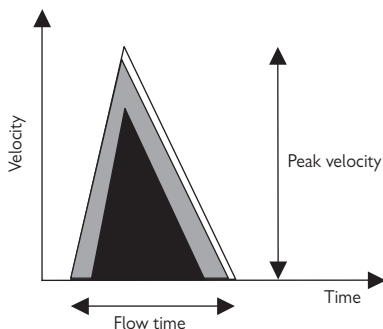
### Practical tips

- Lubricate the probe well prior to insertion, as air attenuates ultrasound signals.
- Turn the volume up to focus the probe initially. The sharpest sound with the best pitch is invariably the optimum waveform.

- Adjust the following:
  - **Cycles.** This value determines how many beats are measured and then averaged to produce SV and FTc. A cycle count of 5 is a good starting point. If considerable SV variation is present (atrial fibrillation) cycles should be increased to 20. Interference from surgical diathermy may force a reduction in cycles to 1.
  - **Gain.** This adjusts the contrast between background noise and the Doppler waveform. Aim for a black background to sharply focused signal. A gain of 5 is again a good starting point.
- Always visually check that each waveform is being counted, i.e. it has a small white triangle in each corner.
- Patients having general anaesthesia and/or epidural may have an FTc approaching 400ms if dilated and well filled.
- It is a dynamic monitor and as such must be refocused prior to each reading.
- Sudden reduction in FTc can occur under anaesthesia due to factors other than fluid balance. Surgical compression of the aorta (packs/retractors) and alteration in muscle tone (insufficient muscle relaxant) can cause a sudden change that should not mandate a fluid challenge.

#### Normal values

	Age (yr)	Velocity (cm/s)
Peak velocity	20	90–120
	50	70–100
	70	50–80
FTc	330–360ms	



**Fig. 37.5** Schematics of a characteristic signal.



**Action from readings**

A single reading may be diagnostic but most commonly is just a starting point from which to dynamically challenge/optimize the cardiovascular system.

- **SV:** a single SV value is unhelpful. It is much more important to look for a relative change in SV following fluid challenge. Fluid is best given in boluses (e.g. 200ml of colloid) to construct a Starling curve. A 10% improvement with each bolus implies the patient is fluid responsive. If SV remains constant, fluid challenges should be withheld until a 10% reduction is seen. Fluid challenges will augment SV but will not restore mean arterial pressure under anaesthesia, especially if epidural is present. If vasoconstrictors are used SV may decrease if the patient is well filled. This should not prompt a further fluid challenge but should make the anaesthetist adjust target SV.
- **Low FTc:** this most commonly represents hypovolaemia and the circulation should be challenged to achieve an FTc of 330–360ms. This is not always possible to achieve, especially in beta-blocked patients, and caution needs to be employed to avoid excessive fluid administration. For this reason the manufacturers recommend that fluid therapy in theatre be guided predominantly by SV changes.
- **Low PV:** consider use of a positive inotrope.
- **Low PV and low FTc:** consider agents/manoeuvres to decrease afterload, e.g. GTN, peripheral warming, or reduction of vasoconstrictors.

**Indications for use**

- Moderate—major surgery
  - >2hr + 500ml of blood loss
  - Colorectal surgery, bowel anastomosis
- High-risk patients
  - Extremes of age
  - Severe comorbidities including poor cardiac function
- Haemodynamic instability
  - Rapid fluid shifts (bleeding, insensible/ third space losses)
  - Inotrope dependence (sepsis, cardiogenic shock)
  - Critical care patient

**Cautions and contraindications for use**

- Concurrent intra-aortic balloon pump.
- Severe aortic coarctation.
- Surgery requiring aortic cross-clamp.
- Known pharyngo-oesophageal pathology.
- Severe bleeding diatheses.

### Further reading

- Abbas SM, Hill AG (2008). Systematic review of the literature for the use of oesophageal Doppler monitor for fluid replacement in major abdominal surgery. *Anaesthesia*, **63**, 44–51.
- Cholley BP, Singer M (2003). Esophageal Doppler: Noninvasive cardiac output monitor. *Echocardiography*, **20**, 763–769.
- McKendry M, McGloin H, Saberi D, Caudwell L, Brady AR, Singer M (2004). Randomised controlled trial assessing the impact of a nurse delivered, flow monitored protocol for optimisation of circulatory status after cardiac surgery. *British Medical Journal*, **329**, 258.
- Wakeling HG, McFall MR, Jenkins CS, et al. (2005). Intraoperative oesophageal Doppler guided fluid management shortens postoperative hospital stay after major colorectal surgery. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **95**, 634–642.

## Depth of anaesthesia monitoring

Awareness is a serious consequence of anaesthesia with an incidence of around 1:600. Many incidents are due to errors in anaesthetic administration and can be prevented by careful technique. In an ideal situation anaesthetists could monitor conscious level. Technology to do this reliably has proved difficult to develop and at present depth of anaesthesia is determined in the following ways:

### Clinical parameters

Heart rate, BP, pupil size, sweating, etc. rely on the sympathetic nervous system and can be profoundly affected by factors such as hypovolaemia, arrhythmias, preoperative drug therapy (beta-blockers, antihypertensive agents), and epidural/subarachnoid block.

### Monitoring anaesthetic gas concentrations

End-tidal anaesthetic agent monitoring provides the most precise estimate of brain anaesthetic agent concentration currently available, provided time is allowed for alveolar/blood/brain equilibration. Minimum alveolar concentration (MAC)<sup>1</sup> is the minimum alveolar concentration of anaesthetic at equilibrium producing immobility in 50% of subjects exposed to a standard painful stimulus (skin incision)—the ED<sub>50</sub>. MAC is normally distributed and has low biological variability. MAC<sub>awake</sub> refers to the end-tidal concentration producing unconsciousness in 50% of subjects (around 0.5 MAC) and MAC<sub>bar</sub>, the end-tidal concentration inhibiting autonomic reflexes to pain in 50% of subjects (1.3 MAC for isoflurane).

### Variants of MAC

MAC: the minimum alveolar concentration of anaesthetic at 1 atmosphere pressure producing immobility in 50% of subjects exposed to a standard noxious stimulus.

MAC<sub>awake</sub>: the minimum alveolar concentration of anaesthetic producing unconsciousness in 50% of subjects.

MAC<sub>bar</sub>: the minimum alveolar concentration of anaesthetic blocking the sympathetic nervous system response to a painful stimulus in 50% of subjects.

MAC is decreased by hypothermia, hypoxia, acidosis, and CNS depressant drugs and declines by 6% per decade after 1yr of age. Age-related MAC can be represented by iso-MAC charts, which calculate age-appropriate end-tidal volatile concentrations in various nitrous oxide concentrations—see pp1251–1252. They may be useful in preventing awareness and also excessive administration of volatile agent in the elderly. Opioids reduce MAC, particularly MAC<sub>bar</sub>; however, they are not anaesthetics themselves. It is therefore essential to administer enough volatile agent to prevent awareness (>MAC<sub>awake</sub>), even when painful surgical stimuli are blocked by high doses of opioids or regional anaesthesia. Using an alarm and aiming to maintaining 0.7 MAC of an inhaled anaesthetic prevents awareness as effectively as the use of a BIS monitor.<sup>2</sup>

Factors increasing MAC	Factors decreasing MAC
Hyperthermia	Increasing age
Hyperthyroidism	Hypothermia
Alcoholism	Hypoxia
	CNS depressants
	N <sub>2</sub> O and other volatile agents
	Alpha <sub>2</sub> agonists

### Predicting anaesthetic drug concentrations by pharmacokinetic, PK modelling

TIVA/TCI systems using pharmacokinetic models to estimate arterial propofol concentration are widely used. There is moderate correlation between estimated and measured propofol concentrations for individual patients and some interpatient variability in pharmacodynamic response. There is no equivalent of continuous end-tidal anaesthetic concentration measurement. Secure IV infusion is essential when intravenous agents are used to maintain hypnosis.

### Electronic brain monitoring

Several devices attempt to demonstrate the effect of anaesthetic agents on the brain. A standard electroencephalogram (EEG) is impractical—time-consuming, electrical interference (mains, diathermy), poor electrode contacts. Commercial depth of anaesthesia monitors use frontal electrodes and near real-time display of computer processed EEG derivatives. Processing techniques include: fast-Fourier analysis identifying component waveforms, frequencies, and corresponding amplitudes, polyspectral analysis to quantify EEG synchronisation, and other advanced mathematical methods which summarise information contained in the EEG waveform.

- **Bispectral Index (BIS).** Combines frequency information with phase relationships of the EEG's component sine waves and pattern recognition of profound drug effect (burst suppression). BIS is a value between 0 (electrical silence) and 100 (awake) using bifrontal electrodes; 65–85 corresponds to sedation and 40–65 to general anaesthesia. BIS corresponds linearly to the hypnotic state and is agent independent. However, the effects of nitrous oxide, ketamine, and xenon are not well characterised by BIS. When using BIS to titrate IV and volatile anaesthesia there is a modest reduction in anaesthetic usage and slightly faster emergence; however, this may encourage 'lighter' anaesthesia. Evidence that BIS monitoring reduces awareness is limited. The B-Aware study of 'high-risk' patients<sup>3</sup> had two reports of awareness in the BIS-guided group and 11 reports in the routine care group ( $p=0.022$ ) of 2463 high-risk patients.

**Bispectral index values**

100	Awake
65–85	Sedation
45–65	General anaesthesia
<40	Burst suppression
0	No electrical activity

- **Auditory Evoked Responses (AEP).** Early cortical EEG responses to auditory stimuli administered at 6–10Hz via headphones. Latency of the characteristic AEP waveform increases with anaesthesia, with decreasing amplitude as anaesthesia deepens. Correlates with awake to asleep transition but predicts movement poorly. A monitor calculating an AEP index of 0–100 is available.
- **Patient State Index.** Developed by computer analysis of large numbers of EEGs throughout the anaesthetic process to establish the electrophysiological variability of anaesthetic depth related EEG changes. Calculates an index of hypnosis from patient's EEG.

Depth of anaesthesia (DoA) monitors are credible adjuncts to patient care. Their uptake is primarily constrained by cost. Current research questions include the impact of DoA monitoring on patient outcome and the unresolved issue of whether they are any more effective in preventing awareness than standard anaesthetic techniques when effectively applied, especially with highly protocolised care.

**Isolated forearm technique (IFT)**

A tourniquet on the upper arm is inflated above systolic BP before muscle relaxation. Spontaneous movements or hand squeezing on command indicate impending or actual awareness. Not all patients who respond have explicit recall postoperatively, i.e. it is possible to have intra-operative awareness without recall. IFT is mainly used as a research tool.

**Muscle relaxants**

If muscle relaxants are not used, patients are free to move if aware. By avoiding total paralysis, a degree of protection may be afforded. Restricting muscle relaxant use to a single bolus to facilitate tracheal intubation might allow awareness to be detected by movement in mid or late surgery.

- 1 White D (2003). Editorial Uses of MAC. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **91**, 167–169.
- 2 Avidan MS, et al. (2008). Anaesthesia Awareness and the Bispectral Index. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **358**, 1097–108.
- 3 Myles PS, et al. (2004). Bispectral index monitoring to prevent awareness during anaesthesia: the B-Aware randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*, **363**, 1757–63.

## Cardiopulmonary exercise testing (CPET)

Survival depends upon age, sex, and physical fitness. Brain, heart, kidney, and peripheral arterial diseases further reduce life expectancy. Fitness is measured physically and is the only prognostic variable not routinely recorded in medical notes. Respiratory and cardiac variables during and on completion of CPET define fitness.

For CPET you need:

- An exercise machine (static bicycle, treadmill, arm crank).
- A computer-controlled ramped increase in workload.
- A calibrated pneumotachograph to measure gas flow and composition.
- Continuous 12-lead ECG recording.
- Someone trained to conduct and interpret the test.

The UK's preoperative CPET protocol is available at [www.pre-op.org](http://www.pre-op.org).

Survival correlates with peak values of oxygen consumption, power, and heart rate, as well as measurements during CPET including the anaerobic threshold, ventilatory equivalents for oxygen and carbon dioxide, oxygen uptake slope, oxygen pulse, and heart rate recovery.

CPET can contribute to:

- Individual estimation of perioperative survival.
- Informed decision making.
- Perioperative management, including ICU/HDU requirement.
- Diagnosis and quantification of respiratory and cardiac disease.
- Risk reduction by guiding interventions before, during, and after surgery.

Early work popularised the use of the anaerobic threshold (AT) to describe risk following major surgery.

Anaerobic threshold	Mortality rate		
	Test ECG: no ischaemia	Test ECG: ischaemia	Total
>11ml O <sub>2</sub> /kg/min	0/107 (0%)	1/25 (4%)	1/132 (0.8%)
<11ml O <sub>2</sub> /kg/min	2/36 (5.5%)	8/19 (43%)	10/55 (18%)
All	2/143 (1.4%)	9/44 (20%)	11/187 (6%)

Subsequent work has used variables in addition to the AT, keeping preoperative CPET aligned with survival research in general and in heart failure populations.

Approximately three UK hospitals used preoperative CPET 10yr ago. Now (2010) more than 30 hospitals in the UK run regular preoperative CPET clinics. Detailed assessment incorporating CPET is standard before AAA surgery and heart transplantation. Investment in preoperative assessment is likely to continue as time spent detailing and discussing risks averts unwanted surgery, morbidity, and mortality.

## Neuromuscular blockers: reversal and monitoring

### Suxamethonium

- The only depolarising relaxant in clinical use.
- Has the most rapid onset of action of all relaxants.
- Used when fast onset and brief duration of paralysis are required.
- A dose of 1–1.5mg/kg is recommended.
- Metabolised by plasma cholinesterase (see below).

Unwanted effects of suxamethonium include:

- Postoperative muscle pains: more common in young muscular adults and most effectively reduced by precurarization—the prior use of a small dose of non-depolarising relaxant, e.g. atracurium (5mg). A larger dose of suxamethonium (1.5mg/kg) is then required.
- Raised intraocular pressure: this is of no clinical significance in most patients but may be important in poorly controlled glaucoma or penetrating eye injuries (p698).
- Hyperkalaemia: serum potassium increases by 0.5mmol/l in normal individuals. This may be significant with pre-existing elevated serum potassium. Patients with burns or certain neurological conditions, e.g. paraplegia, muscular dystrophy, and dystrophia myotonica, may develop severe hyperkalaemia following administration. Patients who have sustained significant burns or spinal cord injuries can be given suxamethonium, if necessary, within the first 48hr following injury. Thereafter there is an increasing risk of life-threatening hyperkalaemia, which reduces over the ensuing months. Avoid suxamethonium until 12 months have elapsed following a burns injury. There may be a permanent risk of hyperkalaemia with upper motor neuron lesions.
- Bradycardias, particularly in children, or if repeated doses of the drug are given. Can be prevented or treated with antimuscarinic agents, e.g. atropine and glycopyrronium.
- Malignant hyperthermia (see pp270–5): suxamethonium is a potent trigger for this condition in predisposed individuals.
- High or repeated doses (probably >8mg/kg) may create dual block which will prolong paralysis.

### Cholinesterase

This enzyme occurs in two forms:

- Acetylcholinesterase (true cholinesterase): highly specific for acetylcholine.
- Plasma cholinesterase (pseudocholinesterase or butyrylcholinesterase): capable of hydrolysing a variety of esters. A physiological function for this enzyme has yet to be discovered, but many drugs either interfere with its action or are metabolised by it. Plasma cholinesterase is synthesised in the liver, has a half-life of 5–12d, and metabolises 70% of a 100mg bolus of suxamethonium within 1min. Genetically, it is encoded on the long arm of chromosome 3. Several variant genes can occur which result in reduced enzyme activity:
  - *The atypical gene.* Heterozygotes will not be sensitive to suxamethonium unless other contributing factors (e.g. concurrent

illness, anticholinesterase administration) are present. Homozygotes have a prevalence of ~1:3000 and may remain paralysed for 2–3hr.

- *The fluoride-resistant gene.* Homozygotes are much rarer (1:150 000) and are moderately sensitive to suxamethonium.
- *The silent gene.* Heterozygotes would exhibit a prolongation of the action of suxamethonium, but homozygotes (1:10 000) are very sensitive and develop prolonged apnoea—usually 3–4hr but may last as long as 24hr.
- Other variants (e.g. H-, J-, and K-type) also exist. Variant genes thus produce a spectrum of reduced activity of the enzyme, causing mild prolongation of the action of suxamethonium right through to several hours of paralysis.
- The activity of plasma cholinesterase can be measured by adding plasma to benzoylcholine and following the reaction spectrophotometrically. Abnormally low values can be further investigated for phenotype by carrying out the reaction in the presence of certain inhibitors, such as cinchocaine (dibucaine), sodium fluoride, and a specific inhibitor known as Ro2-0683.

Reduced plasma cholinesterase activity can also occur for acquired reasons. This can occur in the following situations:

- Hepatic disease, renal disease, burns, malignancy, and malnutrition.
- Administration of drugs that share the same metabolic pathway, and therefore compete with suxamethonium for the enzyme, e.g. esmolol, monoamine oxidase inhibitors, methotrexate.
- Presence of anticholinesterases (e.g. edrophonium, neostigmine, ecothiopate eye drops), which inhibit plasma cholinesterase as well as acetylcholinesterase.
- Pregnancy, where the enzyme activity is reduced by 25%.
- Plasmapheresis and cardiopulmonary bypass.

Many other drugs are metabolised by plasma cholinesterase. Individuals deficient in the enzyme may develop complications with:

- **Mivacurium:** muscle paralysis will be prolonged.
- **Cocaine:** toxicity is more likely.
- Plasma cholinesterase also partially metabolises **diamorphine**, **esmolol**, and **remifentanyl**. Low enzyme activity does not currently appear to complicate their use.

### Further reading

Davis L, Britten JJ, Morgan M (1997). Cholinesterase: its significance in anaesthetic practice. *Anaesthesia*, **52**, 244–260.



### Non-depolarising agents

Non-depolarising muscle relaxants (NDMRs) are highly ionised with a relatively small volume of distribution. Structurally, they are either benzylisoquinoliniums (e.g. atracurium and mivacurium) or aminosteroids (e.g. vecuronium and rocuronium). They can also be classified according to their duration of action:

- Short-acting compounds with a duration of action of up to 15min (mivacurium).
- Medium-acting compounds which are effective for ~40min (atracurium, vecuronium, rocuronium, cisatracurium).
- Long-acting compounds which have a clinical effect for 60min (pancuronium, d-tubocurarine).

Most volatile agents prolong the duration of action of NDMRs. Other drugs may do the same, including aminoglycoside antibiotics, calcium channel blockers, lithium, and magnesium. Neuromuscular block may also be prolonged by acidosis, hypokalaemia, hypocalcaemia, and hypothermia.

### Choice of relaxant

Choice is based on individual preference, the length of procedure, and certain patient characteristics:

- **Suxamethonium** is the drug of choice for rapid sequence induction.
- Many of the benzylisoquinoliniums release histamine, the amount of histamine released being related to the speed of injection. Avoid these drugs in severely atopic or asthmatic individuals. **Cisatracurium**, however, does not cause histamine release.
- Like suxamethonium, **mivacurium** is metabolised by plasma cholinesterase. Patients with reduced levels of this enzyme will exhibit prolonged paralysis.
- **Cisatracurium** and **atracurium** are mainly broken down by Hoffman degradation, a process that is pH and temperature dependent. This metabolism is not affected by the presence of renal failure, so these relaxants are ideal in those with renal impairment.
- **Rocuronium**, at doses of 0.6mg/kg or greater, gives satisfactory intubating conditions within 60s. Its speed of onset is significantly faster than all other non-depolarising relaxants.
- **Mivacurium** is useful for short procedures. It does not need to be reversed routinely, providing sufficient time has elapsed (>20min) after a bolus and neuromuscular monitoring is used.

### Practical tips when using relaxants

- Calculate dose requirements on lean body mass. NDMRs are highly ionised and do not penetrate well into vessel-poor fat areas.
- Monitor relaxants routinely. This will help you decide when to top-up, when to reverse, and when muscle function has returned.
- Maintenance doses of NDMRs should be approximately a fifth to a quarter of the initial dose.
- Anticipate relaxant drugs wearing off, rather than waiting for patient to cough or move.
- Do not attempt to reverse intermediate-duration NDMRs within 15min of administration.

- Do not wait for suxamethonium to wear off before giving an NDMR. On the very rare occasion that a patient has reduced cholinesterase levels, administering an NDMR will make little difference to the outcome.

### Neuromuscular monitoring

Peripheral nerve stimulators allow the degree of neuromuscular block to be assessed. They should apply a supramaximal stimulus (strong enough to depolarise all axons) to a peripheral nerve using a current of 30–80mA. Several peripheral nerves are suitable:

- Ulnar nerve. Electrodes are placed on the medial aspect of the wrist proximal to the hypothenar eminence. Adductor pollicis muscle contraction is assessed.
- Common peroneal nerve. Stimulated immediately below the head of the fibula. Foot dorsiflexion is assessed.
- Facial nerve. Stimulated with electrodes placed in front of the hairline on the temple.

### Modes of stimulation (see figure 37.6)

- *Train-of-four* (TOF). Four supramaximal stimuli are applied over 2s. If NDMR block is profound, no response will be elicited. As neuromuscular function starts to return, the first twitch reappears, followed by the second, third, and finally fourth. Fade is characteristic of partial non-depolarising block. The train-of-four ratio (TOFR) is the ratio of amplitude of the fourth to the first response. Fully reversed patients have no fade and TOFRs of 1. Fade is difficult to assess clinically (visually or by tactile means) once the TOFR has reached 0.4.
- *Double-burst stimulation* (DBS) is a stronger stimulus, where two short bursts of 50Hz tetanus are separated by 750ms. DBS and TOF ratios correlate well, but fade is more accurately assessed with DBS, and an absence of fade is usually good evidence of reversal.
- *Post-tetanic count* can be used to assess deep relaxation when the TOF is zero. A 50Hz tetanic stimulation is applied for 5s followed by 1Hz single twitches. Reversal should be possible at a post-tetanic count of 10 or greater.

These patterns of stimulation are usually assessed by visual or tactile means, but can be assessed more objectively using mechanomyography, electromyography, or accelerometry.

It is sensible to apply the electrodes for nerve stimulation before the induction of anaesthesia, and to assess the effect of stimulation before muscle relaxants are administered, preferably after the patient is unconscious. This enables the anaesthetist to place the electrodes in an optimal position, apply the minimum supramaximal stimulus required, and assess the onset of neuromuscular block once a relaxant has been given.

Muscle groups have differing sensitivities to NDMRs. In general, muscles that are bulkier and closer to the central circulation, e.g. respiratory and anterior abdominal wall muscles, exhibit a block that is less profound and wears off more rapidly. Smaller muscles at a greater distance from the heart, e.g. the muscles of the hand, are more sensitive and remain blocked for longer. Thus, if no residual block is apparent at peripheral muscles, more central muscle will be fully functional. The corollary of this is that patients may start to breathe or cough when there is minimal or no response to peripheral nerve stimulation.

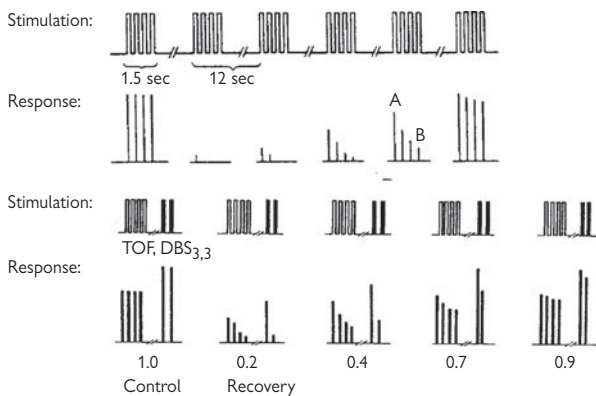
The depth of neuromuscular block required depends on the type of surgery. Certain operations may need profound paralysis, e.g. laparotomies and microsurgery. An adequate non-depolarising block can be maintained at two TOF twitches or one DBS twitch. At this degree of relaxation, patients will be adequately relaxed but also reversible.

### **Neuromuscular reversal**

- Clinical signs of reversal: the ability to breathe is not a good indicator of adequate reversal, as a substantial degree of paralysis may be present with virtually normal tidal volumes. Assessment of sustained muscle contraction is better, e.g. hand grip or head lift for 5s.
- Nerve stimulator: an acceptable recovery from block occurs when the TOFR has reached 0.9 or greater. The absence of any detectable fade with double-burst stimulation indicates that the patient has reasonable recovery.
- At the completion of surgery, normal neuromuscular transmission can be facilitated by the use of anticholinesterase drugs.
- Reversal agents should not be given until there is evidence of return of neuromuscular transmission, e.g. at least 2 TOF twitches, 1 DBS twitch, or a post-tetanic count greater than 10. Clinically, this might include evidence of breathing or spontaneous muscle movement. Intense neuromuscular block may not be reversible.
- Patients who are inadequately reversed exhibit jerky and uncoordinated muscle movements. If awake, they may appear dyspnoeic and anxious. If residual block is confirmed by TOF or DBS, one further dose of reversal agent may be administered. Agitated patients with reasonable respiratory function and otherwise normal vital signs may be given a small dose of a sedative (e.g. midazolam 1–5mg) whilst awaiting the return of full muscle function. If the block persists, or if the patient is very distressed, anaesthesia, intubation, and artificial ventilation should be undertaken and the cause sought.

### **Reversal drugs**

- Conventional reversal drugs work by blocking acetylcholinesterase, thereby promoting accumulation of acetylcholine. They include:
  - **Neostigmine.** A dose of 0.04mg/kg works within 2min and has a clinical effect for about 30min.
  - **Edrophonium.** Onset time is faster, but it has a duration of action of only a few minutes. It is only used for the Tensilon<sup>®</sup> test.
- Anticholinesterase drugs act at both nicotinic and muscarinic sites, thus producing unwanted side effects which include salivation, bradycardia, bronchospasm, and increased gut motility. They are therefore usually administered with antimuscarinic agents (atropine 10–20µg/kg, glycopyrronium 10–15µg/kg).
- A novel reversal drug (**sugammadex**) has been released which rapidly immobilises and inactivates certain aminosteroid NDMRs, particularly rocuronium (and vecuronium). Larger doses (4mg/kg) can reverse deep rocuronium blockade, where there is no response to TOF or DBS. In doses of 16mg/kg, immediate reversal of an intubating bolus of rocuronium is possible. Conventional reversal drugs cannot do this. Its use is currently limited by expense.



**Fig. 37.6** Responses to TOF and DBS.

### Further reading

Caldwell JE, Miller RD (2009). Clinical implications of sugammadex. *Anaesthesia*, **64**(1), 66–72.

## Thromboelastography

- Thromboelastography measures the viscoelastic properties of blood. The traditional technique involves blood being placed in a rotating cup into which a pin was inserted. As a clot formed rotational forces from the cup were transmitted to the pin and recorded by an electrical transducer.
- In 1996 Thrombelastograph and TEG became registered trademarks of Haemoscope Corporation and these terms are now used to describe the assay performed on their machine. Pentapharm makes another machine using slightly different technology and uses the terms thromboelastometry and ROTEM.
- The TEG uses whole blood and kaolin to activate the test. Once the sample is taken from the patient it must be tested within about 5min.
- The ROTEM uses a citrated sample and a number of different activating reagents (INTEM, EXTEM, HEPTM, FIBTEM, and APTEM). Once the sample is taken from the patient and placed in a citrated bottle it must be tested within 4hr.

### Advantages compared with routine coagulation tests

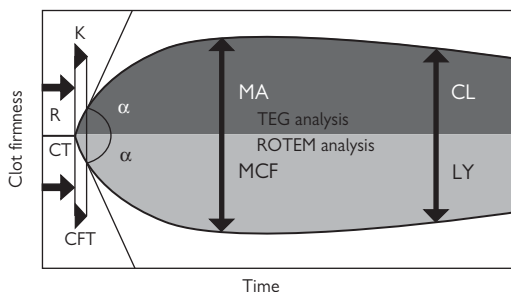
- Routine coagulation tests Prothrombin Time (PT) and Activated Partial Thromboplastin Time (aPTT) poorly represent the cell-based model of haemostasis. The PT and aPTT are based on the time taken for the initiation of clot formation to occur. Viscoelastic tests such as TEG are a better representation of the cell-based model. TEG gives information on the time taken for clot formation to begin but also on the speed of clot formation, the strength of clot formation, and whether excessive clot lysis is occurring.
- Routine coagulation tests are performed in the laboratory and therefore may take up to 45min to be completed and reported. TEG machines are usually placed in a clinical location, allowing the evolving trace to be viewed and consequentially results obtained rapidly.

### Limitations of thromboelastography

- Standard thromboelastography is unable to measure the effects of antiplatelet drugs. The thrombin produced during the test is such a potent platelet activator that it overwhelms the effects of other weaker platelet activators (arachidonic acid and ADP) on which the antiplatelet drugs aspirin and clopidogrel work.

### Nomenclature and normal values

- Parameters differ between the two machines by name and by their normal values (due to the different reagents used) (see figure 37.7 and table below).



**Fig. 37.7** A TEG and ROTEM trace.

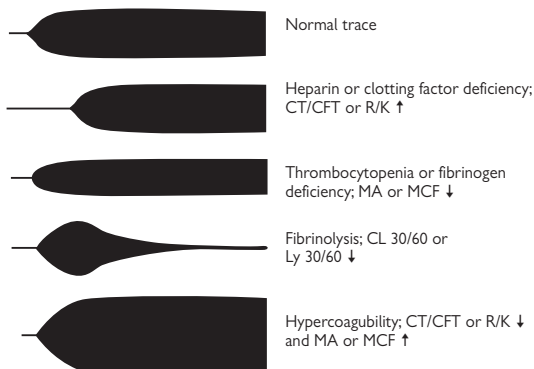
#### Nomenclature and normal values for the TEG and the ROTEM

	TEG	ROTEM
Clotting time (time to 2mm amplitude)	R (reaction time) (kaolin-activated) 4–8min	CT (clotting time) (citrated, INTEM) 137–246s (citrated, exTEM) 42–74s
Clot kinetics (2–20mm amplitude)	K (kinetics) (kaolin- activated) 1–4min	CFT (clot formation time) (citrated, INTEM) 40–100s (citrated, EXTEM) 46–148s
Clot strengthening ( $\alpha$ angle)	(kaolin-activated) 47–74°	(citrated, INTEM) 71–82° (citrated, EXTEM) 63–81°
Maximum strength	MA (maximum amplitude) (kaolin- activated) 55–73mm	MCF (maximum clot firmness) (citrated, INTEM) 52–72mm (citrated, EXTEM) 49–71mm
Lysis (at fixed time)	CL30, CL60	LY30, LY60

### Interpretation of results

- Similar to learning how to interpret an ECG. A stepwise approach is used initially.
- **Prolongation of the CT/CFT or R/K times.** Could there be a heparin effect? If YES, do CT/CFT or R/K times, correct with heparinase (hepTEM assay using the ROTEM)? If YES, consider protamine. If NO, results are due to clotting deficiencies—consider fresh frozen plasma.
- **Reduced MA or MCF.** Perform a FIBTEM (ROTEM) or a functional fibrinogen test (TEG) (both reagents contain strong platelet inhibitors). Is MA or MCF reduced using these tests? If YES, the result is due to fibrinogen deficiency—consider using cryoprecipitate. If NO, the result is due to platelet deficiency—consider giving a platelet transfusion.
- **Increased CL30/CL60 (TEG) or Ly30/Ly60 (ROTEM).** If YES, the result is due to excessive fibrinolysis—consider an antifibrinolytic. An APTEM (ROTEM) test will inhibit fibrinolysis, bringing Ly30 and Ly60 back to normal limits, confirming the result.

Eventually the traces can be interpreted by pattern recognition (see figure 37.8). Alternatively a decision tree can be used (see table below).



**Fig. 37.8** Characteristic TEG traces.

Decision tree for the TEG<sup>1</sup>

TEG parameter	Treatment
R 11–14min	2 × FFP or 10ml/kg
R >14min	4 × FFP or 20ml/kg
MA 46–50mm	1 platelet concentrate
MA <46mm	2 platelet concentrates
Angle <52°	2 × FFP or cryoprecipitate
Ly 30 >8%	Antifibrinolytics

1 Johansson PI, Stensballe J (2009). Effect of haemostatic control resuscitation on mortality in massively bleeding patients: a before and after study. *Vox Sanguinis*, **96**,111–118.



*This page intentionally left blank*

# Blood products and fluid therapy

## Richard Telford

Blood products 1066

Blood conservation techniques 1072

Massive transfusion 1075

Jehovah's Witnesses 1076

Fluid and electrolyte therapy 1080



## Blood products<sup>1</sup>

In 2008, 2.8 million units of blood and blood products were issued by the blood transfusion services of England, Scotland, Ireland and Wales. There has been a steady fall in the number of units of packed red cells issued since 1999 which probably reflects the adoption of restrictive blood transfusion practices by clinicians. All donated blood is tested for HIV-1, HIV-2, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, and syphilis. Cytomegalovirus (CMV) antibody-negative blood components are available for immunosuppressed patients and neonates. In the UK, white cells are routinely removed from blood components as a precaution against new variant Creutzfeldt–Jacob disease (vCJD), leaving a residual leucocyte count of  $<5 \times 10^6/\text{U}$ . This also reduces the risk of CMV transmission.

### Whole blood

Blood is processed into blood components as follows:

- **Packed red cells:** most of the plasma is removed, then packed red cells are resuspended in an optimal additive solution—saline, adenine, glucose, and mannitol (SAG-M). Total volume is 80–350ml and haematocrit is 50–70%. 4ml/kg (280 ml for a 70kg man) typically raises the haemoglobin by 1g/dl.
- **Platelets:** one adult therapeutic dose (ATD) may be prepared from four to six donations of whole blood, by centrifugation, or from a single donor by plateletpheresis. One ATD contains  $2.5\text{--}3 \times 10^{11}$  platelets and typically increases the platelet count by  $20\text{--}40 \times 10^9/\text{l}$ .
- **Fresh frozen plasma and cryoprecipitate:** fresh frozen plasma (FFP) is produced either by centrifugation of whole blood or by apheresis. Plasma is rapidly frozen to maintain activity of labile clotting factors; this produces an average ‘unit’ of FFP of about 275ml. The Department of Health has recommended that to minimise the risk of CJD transmission, children born after 1996 and patients likely to be exposed to many doses of FFP should receive pathogen-reduced plasma (PRP). This is produced from non-UK sourced plasma by two methods: methylene blue treatment and solvent detergent treatment. Cryoprecipitate is obtained from controlled thawing of a single donation of FFP which precipitates high molecular weight proteins including factor VIII, von Willebrand factor (VWF), factor XIII, and fibrinogen. It is supplied as pooled units—each pooled unit contains cryoprecipitate from five donors. Two pooled units will typically raise the fibrinogen level by 1g/dl.
- **Plasma derivatives:** albumin, immunoglobulin, and clotting factor concentrates. These products are derived from fractionation of plasma (non-UK sourced).

### Other products

- **Recombinant factor VIIa (rVIIa):**<sup>2</sup> licensed to treat bleeding in patients with haemophilia A or B with inhibitors of factors VIII or IX. Recombinant factor VIIa has also been used in patients experiencing life-threatening haemorrhage unresponsive to blood product therapy, e.g. trauma, postpartum haemorrhage. An initial dose of 200µg/kg followed by two doses of 100µg/kg administered at 1 and 3hr following the first dose has been recommended.

	Red cells	Platelet concentrate	Fresh frozen plasma	Cryoprecipitate
Storage temperature	2–6°C	20–24°C on an agitator rack	–30°C	–30°C
Shelf life	35d	5d	1yr (frozen)	1yr (frozen)
Longest time from leaving controlled storage to completing infusion	Transfuse within 30min of removal from blood fridge. Transfuse unit over maximum of 4hr	Start transfusion as soon as received from blood bank. Transfuse unit within 30min	Once thawed, should be transfused within 4hr	4hr
Unit cost (UK)	£133	£230	£36	£230
Compatibility testing requirement	Must be compatible with recipient ABO and Rh D type	Preferably ABO identical with patient. Rhesus negative females under the age of 45yr should be given Rh D negative platelets	FFP and cryoprecipitate should be ABO compatible to avoid risk of haemolysis caused by donor anti-A or anti-B	
Administration	Infuse through a blood administration set—platelet concentrates should not be infused through giving sets that have been used for blood. Record details of each blood component infusion in the patient's case record			

## Practical uses

### Red cells<sup>3</sup>

Transfusion of red cells raises the haemoglobin concentration and thus the oxygen-carrying capacity of blood. For indications for transfusion see p1069.

### Platelets<sup>4</sup>

- **Prophylaxis for surgery:** a platelet count  $>100 \times 10^9/l$  is recommended before operations in critical sites, e.g. brain/eyes. Similar considerations apply to procedures such as epidural anaesthesia (see also p739, p784 and pp1174–7). For other procedures, a platelet count  $>50 \times 10^9/l$  is acceptable.

- **Massive transfusion:** maintain count  $>50 \times 10^9/l$  (expected after transfusion of two blood volumes). A higher target of  $100 \times 10^9/l$  is recommended in multiple trauma or central nervous system injury.
- **Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC):** administration of platelets should be guided by frequent platelet counts or thromboelastography. In the absence of bleeding, transfusion should not be given to correct a low platelet count.
- **Cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB):** platelets should be readily available, but transfusion reserved for patients experiencing excessive postoperative bleeding in whom a surgical cause has been excluded. The decision to transfuse platelets is clinical, based on evidence of microvascular bleeding and excessive blood loss. Near-patient testing (thromboelastography) may lead to more rational blood product support.
- **Liver transplantation:** abnormalities may include reduced coagulation, thrombocytopenia, hyperfibrinolysis, and massive transfusion. Platelet and blood component therapy is guided by thromboelastography.
- **Contraindications** to platelet transfusion: thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) and heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT).

#### *Fresh frozen plasma and cryoprecipitate<sup>5</sup>*

- **Vitamin K deficiency in the ICU:** prolonged prothrombin time (PT) in ICU patients may be caused by inadequate vitamin K intake. Vitamin K (10mg, 3 times per week) is the treatment of choice.
- **Reversal of warfarin:** FFP should only be used if there is evidence of life-threatening bleeding. Human prothrombin complex concentrate (Beriplex<sup>®</sup>, Octaplex<sup>®</sup>) is an alternative to FFP in life-threatening bleeding.
- **Surgical bleeding and massive transfusion:** the decision to use FFP should be guided by laboratory-based tests of coagulation and near-patient testing where available. See section on 'Massive transfusion' on p1075.
- FFP should not be used as a simple volume replacement, in plasma exchange (except for thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura), or to reverse a prolonged prothrombin time in the absence of bleeding.

#### **Risks of transfusion<sup>3,4,5</sup>**

The commonest adverse event associated with blood transfusion is incorrect blood component transfused (IBCT). The majority of these events are associated with clerical and administrative errors, e.g. administration of the wrong blood component, phlebotomy, and laboratory error. In 2008 this contributed to over 200 wrong transfusions. As a consequence the National Patient Safety Agency in the UK has recommended that by 2010 all staff involved in the administration of blood products must undergo a competency based training and assessment.

- **Acute haemolytic transfusion reaction:** ABO incompatibility usually due to clerical error. Recipient antibodies bind to the transfused red cells causing haemolysis and complement pathway activation. Inflammation, increased vascular permeability, and hypotension occur, which may cause shock and acute renal failure.

- **Bacterial contamination:** signs and symptoms very similar to acute haemolytic transfusion reaction or severe acute allergic reaction with a rapid onset of hypo- or hypertension, rigors, and collapse. Bacterial contamination is rare but most frequently reported with platelets that are stored at room temperature.
- **Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI):** caused by antibodies in plasma of a single donor unit reacting with leucocyte antigens in the recipient. Incidence is 1:5–10 000U of products containing plasma transfused—most commonly FFP or whole blood. The risk is greatest with plasma-rich components—more cases are being attributed to FFP and platelets now that leucodepleted packed red cells are used instead of whole blood. TRALI is probably underdiagnosed and should be considered if a patient develops acute onset pulmonary oedema within 6hr of transfusion. Management is the same as for ARDS/ALI of any cause. Donors of blood products implicated in TRALI tend to be women immunised against fetal leucocyte antigens in pregnancy. The blood bank should be notified so that the donor may be contacted and if necessary taken off the donor panel.
- **Acute transfusion reactions (ATR):** defined as occurring up to 24hr following transfusion of blood or components. May range from full-blown anaphylaxis manifesting as hypotension, bronchospasm, and oedema to febrile non-haemolytic transfusion reactions.
- **Delayed haemolytic transfusion reactions (DHTR):** occurring more than 24hr after transfusion. Usually a delayed haemolytic reaction related to development of red cell alloantibodies.
- **Transfusion-associated graft versus host disease (TA GvHD):** this condition, usually occurring in immunocompromised individuals, is caused by engraftment and proliferation of transfused lymphocytes. They damage cells that carry HLA antigens in the skin, liver, spleen, and bone marrow. Fever, skin rash, diarrhoea, and dermatitis are seen. It is usually fatal. There has been a negligible incidence of this complication since the introduction of universal leucodepletion in 1999.
- **Infections transmissible by transfusion:** every donation is tested for hepatitis B surface antigen, hepatitis C antibody and RNA, HIV antibody, HTLV antibody, and syphilis antibody. It has been estimated that one donation over 2yr could transmit HIV, seven donations per year could transmit hepatitis B, and one donation per 7yr could transmit hepatitis C. Three cases of probable transmission of vCJD by transfusion have been reported.

## Indications and triggers for transfusion<sup>6</sup>

### *Clinical guidelines for red cell transfusion*

- Patients should be given information about the risks and benefits wherever possible, and also be informed about possible alternatives, e.g. autologous transfusion. Patients have the right to refuse blood transfusion.
- Establish the cause of any anaemia. Red cell transfusions should not be given where effective alternatives exist, e.g. treatment of iron deficiency, megaloblastic and autoimmune haemolytic anaemia.

- There is no absolute level of haemoglobin at which transfusion of red cells is appropriate for all patients (transfusion trigger). Clinical judgement plays a vital role in the decision whether to transfuse or not (see below).
- In acute blood loss, crystalloids or colloids should be used for rapid acute volume replacement. The effects of anaemia need to be considered separately from those of hypovolaemia.
- Local arrangements should provide compatible blood urgently for patients with major bleeding, including emergency O Rh D-negative blood.
- The reason for blood transfusion should be documented in the patient's records.

### **Indications for blood transfusion**

#### **Acute blood loss**

First, attempt to quantify the amount of circulating volume lost (see p774, p866 and p1030).

- Class I: <15% of circulating blood volume. Do not transfuse unless blood loss is superimposed on a pre-existing anaemia or if the patient is unable to compensate for this level of blood loss because of reduced cardiorespiratory reserve.
- Class II: <30% of circulating blood volume. Will need resuscitation with crystalloids or colloids. Requirement for blood transfusion unlikely unless patient has pre-existing anaemia, reduced cardiorespiratory reserve, or if blood loss continues.
- Class III: <40% of circulating blood volume. Rapid volume replacement is required with crystalloids or colloids; blood transfusion will almost certainly be required.
- Class IV: >40% of circulating blood volume. Rapid volume replacement including blood transfusion.

Next consider the haemoglobin. Plan a target level at which to maintain the patient's haemoglobin:

- Blood transfusion is not indicated when the haemoglobin level is >10g/dl.
- Transfusion is almost always indicated if the haemoglobin level is <7g/dl.
- In patients who may tolerate anaemia poorly, e.g. patients over 65yr and those with cardiovascular or respiratory disease, transfusion is indicated if the haemoglobin is <8g/dl.
- It is debateable whether patients whose haemoglobin levels are between 8 and 10g/dl should be transfused. Some will require a transfusion if symptomatic of acute anaemia (fatigue, dizziness, shortness of breath, new or worsening angina).
- Finally consider the risk of further bleeding from disordered haemostasis. Check the platelet count and perform a coagulation screen.

### ‘Group and save’ or crossmatch?

- ‘Group and save’: patient’s blood sample is tested to determine ABO and Rh D type and to detect red cell antibodies (in addition to anti-A or anti-B) that could haemolyse transfused red cells. The sample is held in the laboratory for 7d.
- Provided the group and save sample shows no atypical antibodies, fully compatible blood can be electronically issued in 5min.
- If atypical antibodies are present in the group and save sample then the issue of fully compatible blood will be delayed (up to 2hr) whilst a fully tested crossmatch is performed.
- There should be a maximum surgical blood ordering schedule (MSBOS) that stipulates which operations require blood to be crossmatched.

### Process for red cell or blood product transfusion

Procedures to ensure safe transfusion should include:

- Confirm patient’s identity verbally (if possible) and by identification band (christian name, surname, DOB, and hospital number).
- Check blood compatibility label with the blood bag label to ensure the blood is correct for the patient.
- Check expiry date and unit number.
- Inspect bag to ensure integrity of plastic casing. Look for discoloration or evidence of red cell clumping.
- Blood left out of blood fridge for >30min should be transfused within 4hr or discarded.
- Be meticulous with your documentation. Sign the transfusion documentation and record the details of the blood unit transfused on the anaesthetic chart or clinical notes.
- Document the reasons for transfusion.
- 100% traceability of all allogeneic blood transfused is a legal requirement.

- 1 McClelland DBL (2007) *Handbook of Transfusion Medicine, Edition 4*. [www.transfusionguidelines.org.uk](http://www.transfusionguidelines.org.uk).
- 2 Goodnough LT, Lublin DM, Zhang L et al. (2004). Transfusion medicine service policies for recombinant factor VIIa administration. *Transfusion*, **44**, 1325–1331.
- 3 Murphy MF, Wallington TB, et al. (2001). British Committee for Standards in Haematology, Blood Transfusion Task Force. Guidelines for the clinical use of red cell transfusions. *British Journal of Haematology*, **113**, 24–31.
- 4 British Committee for Standards in Haematology (BCSH), Blood Transfusion Task Force (2003). Guidelines for use of platelet transfusions. *British Journal of Haematology*, **122**, 10–23.
- 5 O’Shaughnessy DF, Atterbury C, et al. (2004) British Committee for Standards in Haematology (BCSH), Blood Transfusion Task Force. Guidelines for the use of fresh-frozen plasma, cryoprecipitate and cryosupernatant. *British Journal of Haematology*, **126**, 11–28.
- 6 Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2008). *Blood Transfusion and the Anaesthetist. Red Cell Transfusion 2*. [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).



## Blood conservation techniques

Blood conservation techniques rely upon:

- Increasing the patient's red blood cell mass.
- Decreasing perioperative blood loss.
- Optimising blood transfusion practices, including both **allogeneic** (from another human) and **autologous** (reinfusion of the patient's own blood) transfusion.

### Preoperative management

- Optimise preoperative haemoglobin.
- Investigate and treat anaemia. Restrict diagnostic phlebotomy. If possible, stop antiplatelet and anticoagulant medication—this must be balanced against risk of thrombosis.
- Erythropoietin: recombinant human erythropoietin (EPO) stimulates erythropoiesis and permits more aggressive preoperative autologous donation. EPO therapy should be started 3–4wk before surgery for maximum effect. It is an expensive method of increasing preoperative donation.
- Preoperative autologous donation (PAD): patients donate a unit of blood per week in the month prior to their operation. Blood transfusion may be more common in patients undergoing PAD, possibly due to more liberal use of autologous blood. Disadvantages of PAD include: transfusion of the wrong blood due to clerical and laboratory errors, wastage of collected blood, and circulatory overload due to transfusion of whole blood. PAD is not widely used in the UK, mainly due to organisational difficulties.

### Intraoperative management

- **Surgical:** techniques to minimise blood loss include: meticulous surgical technique, minimally invasive surgery (e.g. endoluminal grafts for abdominal aortic aneurysms), local vasoconstriction with adrenaline, topical haemostatic agents (fibrin glues), tourniquets, and surgical devices, e.g. ultrasonic/laser scalpels.
- **Anaesthetic techniques:** measures to reduce venous oozing include: avoidance of venous congestion (patient positioning), high intrathoracic pressures, hypercapnia, and hypothermia. Epidural and spinal anaesthesia minimise blood loss by reducing both arterial and venous pressures. Hypotensive anaesthesia has been used in selected patients; however, there is a risk of ischaemic cerebral and cardiac complications, especially in the elderly.
- **Pharmacological:** antifibrinolytic agents—aprotinin, a serine protease inhibitor, reduces the need for blood transfusion in cardiac and hepatic surgery, but has been implicated with an increased risk of stroke, MI, and renal failure. Other pharmacological agents that may reduce blood loss include: lysine analogue antifibrinolytics (tranexamic acid and epsilon aminocaproic acid), desmopressin, and recombinant factor VIIa. However, further work is needed to examine the efficacy and safety of these agents.

## Autologous transfusion<sup>1</sup>

### *Acute normovolaemic haemodilution (ANH)*

This involves perioperative collection of whole blood from the patient, with simultaneous infusion of crystalloid or colloid to maintain normovolaemia. Blood may be collected from a large-bore IV cannula or arterial line into citrated blood bags (available from the blood transfusion department). Once collected, bags should be labelled and stored at room temperature for reinfusion once surgical blood loss has ceased. They must be reinfused to the patient within 6hr. Mathematical models have suggested that significant haemodilution (haematocrit <20%) is required before ANH is efficacious in reducing allogeneic blood transfusion. Risks of significant haemodilution, especially myocardial ischaemia, must be carefully considered.

- **Indications:** current UK guidelines state that ANH should be considered when the potential surgical blood loss is likely to exceed 20% of the blood volume with a preoperative haemoglobin of >10g/dl.
- **Advantages:** no testing required, and minimal risk of an ABO-incompatible blood transfusion as the units are not removed from the operating theatre.
- **Contraindications:** severe myocardial disease, e.g. moderate to severe left ventricular impairment, unstable angina, severe aortic stenosis, and critical left main stem coronary artery disease.

### *Intraoperative cell salvage<sup>2</sup>*

This involves collection and reinfusion of autologous red cells lost during surgery. Most machines depend on a centrifugal principle using a collection bowl that spins and separates the red cells from plasma, white cells, and platelets. Shed blood is aspirated into a collection reservoir via heparinised or citrated tubing. The salvaged red cells are separated by centrifugation and finally washed in 1–2 litres of saline. This removes circulating fibrin, debris, plasma, leucocytes, microaggregates, complement, platelets, free haemoglobin, circulating procoagulants, and heparin. Cell salvage produces packed red cells suspended in saline with an haematocrit of 50–60%.

- **Indications:** cell washing devices can provide the equivalent of 10U of bank blood per hour in cases of massive bleeding. The technique is applicable to open heart surgery, vascular surgery, total joint replacements, spinal surgery, liver transplantation, ruptured ectopic pregnancy, some neurosurgical procedures, and massive obstetric haemorrhage (provided a leucocyte depletion filter is used).
- **Contraindications:** bacterial contamination of the operative field, malignant disease, and presence of fat or amniotic fluid in salvaged blood (risk of embolism and DIC). Topical clotting agents such as collagen, cellulose, and thrombin and topical antibiotics or cleansing agents used in the operative field should not be aspirated into a cell salvage machine. Complications have been reported in patients with sickle cell disease. However, there are scarce data to support some of these contraindications, and most contraindications are relative rather than absolute.<sup>3</sup> Cell salvage has been used in obstetric haemorrhage, despite contamination of blood with amniotic fluid. In cancer surgery,

allogeneic blood transfusion may worsen outcome, possibly by immunomodulation. Therefore, some centres *advocate* cell salvage techniques in cancer surgery. The high cost of the machinery and the need for trained operators are drawbacks. Once set up the disposable kits can process limitless units of packed red cells. Current disposable costs are very similar to the cost of one unit of leucodepleted red cells (£136).

### ***Postoperative recovery of blood***

This involves collection of blood from surgical drains followed by reinfusion, with or without processing. The blood recovered is dilute, partially haemolysed/defibrinated, and may contain high concentrations of cytokines. Most experience has been gained in cardiac and orthopaedic surgery, especially total knee replacements. The safety and benefit of the use of unwashed blood remains questionable. Some groups have reported considerable savings in the use of bank blood.

- 1 Kovesi T, Royston D (2003). Pharmacological approaches to reducing allogeneic blood exposure. *Vox Sanguinis*, **84**, 2–10.
- 2 Napier JA, Bruce M, Chapman J, et al. (1997). Guidelines for autologous transfusion II. Perioperative haemodilution and cell salvage. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **78**, 768–771.
- 3 Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2009). *AAGBI Safety Guideline: Blood Transfusion and the Anaesthetist. Intra-operative Salvage*. [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).
- 3 Waters JH (2004). Indications and contraindications of cell salvage. *Transfusion*, **44**, 40S–44S.

## Massive transfusion<sup>1,2</sup> (see also p774, p866 and p1030)

Defined as loss of one blood volume in <24hr, 50% blood loss within 3hr, or blood loss of >150ml/min.

### Resuscitation from major haemorrhage

Goal	Procedure
Restore circulating volume	Two 14G IV cannulae. Resuscitation with warmed crystalloid/colloid. Warm patient. Consider arterial line/central venous access
Contact key personnel	Senior anaesthetist/surgeon/obstetrician. Blood bank/haematologist
Arrest bleeding	Early surgical/obstetric intervention. Interventional radiology
Request laboratory investigations	FBC, PT, APTT, fibrinogen, crossmatch— <i>check patient identity</i> , biochemistry, arterial blood gas. Repeat clotting, FBC, fibrinogen after products/every 4hr. <i>May need to give blood products before results available</i>
Request suitable red cells	Uncrossmatched group O Rh negative in extreme emergency, no more than 2U (Rh positive acceptable if male patient or postmenopausal female). Uncrossmatched ABO group-specific when blood group known (lab will complete X-match after issue). Fully crossmatch (if time permits or irregular antibodies)  Use blood warmer/rapid infusion device.  Consider cell salvage if available
Request platelets	Allow for delivery time from blood centre. Anticipate platelet count $<50 \times 10^9/l$ after twice blood volume replacement.  Target platelet count: $100 \times 10^9/l$ for multiple/CNS trauma, for other situations $>50 \times 10^9/l$
Request FFP (12–15ml/kg body weight)	Aim for PT and APTT $<1.5 \times$ control. Allow for 30min thawing time
Request cryoprecipitate 2 packs (1 pack represents pooled donations from 5 donors)	Replaces fibrinogen and factor VIII  Fibrinogen $<0.5g/l$ associated with microvascular bleeding. Deficiency develops early when plasma-poor red blood cells used for replacement. Aim for fibrinogen $>1.0g/l$  Allow for delivery time plus 30min thawing time
Suspect DIC	Treat underlying cause if possible

1 Stainsby D, MacLennan S, Hamilton PJ (2000). Management of massive blood loss: a template guideline. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **85**, 487–491.

2 Stainsby D, MacLennan S, Thomas D, et al. (2006). Guidelines on the management of massive blood loss. *British Journal of Haematology Guideline*, [www.bcsghguidelines.com](http://www.bcsghguidelines.com).

## Jehovah's Witnesses

The Jehovah's Witness religious movement is 120 years old, with an estimated 6 million members worldwide. Most Jehovah's Witnesses will not accept a transfusion of blood or its primary components, although absolute rules regarding specific blood products do not exist.

### Acceptability of blood products and transfusion-related procedures in Jehovah's Witnesses<sup>1</sup> (with permission)

Unacceptable	Whole blood, Packed red cells, Plasma, Autologous pre-donation
Acceptable	Cardiopulmonary bypass, Renal dialysis, Acute hypervolaemic haemodilution, Human recombinant erythropoietin, Recombinant factor VIIa
May be acceptable ('matters of conscience')	Platelets, Clotting factors, Albumin, Immunoglobulins, Epidural blood patch, Cell salvage

### Ethical and legal issues

- Administration of blood or blood products to a competent patient who has refused blood transfusion against their wishes is unlawful and may lead to criminal and/or civil proceedings for assault against the doctor.
- Many Jehovah's Witnesses carry 'Advance Directives', which outline treatments accepted by the individual; the family and GP may hold copies.
- Anaesthetists have the right to refuse to anaesthetise Jehovah's Witnesses for elective surgery. However, the anaesthetist is obliged to provide care in emergency cases, and must respect the patient's wishes.<sup>2</sup>
- **Emergencies:** if the patient's Jehovah's Witness status is unknown (e.g. unconscious), the doctor is expected to act in the best interests of the patient—this may include blood transfusion. Opinions of relatives or associates that the patient would not accept a blood transfusion must be verified; evidence of an advance directive should be sought.
- **Children:** the care of children of Jehovah's Witnesses (aged <16yr) may present particular difficulty. For elective procedures, preoperative discussion involving the surgeon, anaesthetist, parents, and child should occur. If the parents refuse permission for blood transfusion it may be necessary to apply for a legal 'Specific Issue Order' via the High Court in order to administer a blood transfusion. Two consultants should document that blood transfusion is essential before this serious step is taken.
- In an emergency situation, when a child of Jehovah's Witnesses is likely to die without blood transfusion, blood should be given. Courts are likely to uphold this medical decision.

## Preoperative management

- Early communication with the anaesthetic department is essential. Apart from minor surgery a consultant anaesthetist should be available who is prepared to manage the patient.
- Meet the patient as early as possible preoperatively with the results of relevant investigations to ascertain the degree of limitation of normal routine management.
- Involve other specialists, e.g. haematology, intensive care.
- There is a specific NHS consent form for Jehovah's Witnesses. At the preoperative visit establish which treatments are acceptable, including 'Advance Directive' if signed. Make the patient aware of the risks of non-acceptance of blood and blood products.
- Specifically discuss and document whether strategies such as acute normovolaemic haemodilution and perioperative cell salvage may be used.
- Involve the local Jehovah's Witness hospital liaison committee in the discussions. Representatives can help avoid confrontation and assist the understanding of both parties. The address of the local committee may be obtained by contacting hospital information services (Britain): Tel: 0208 906 2211; Fax: 0208 343 0201; Email: his@wbts.org.uk.
- Investigate and treat preoperative anaemia. Oral iron supplements can be used to improve iron stores (ferrous sulphate 200mg twice daily). Use of intravenous iron has been described. Human recombinant erythropoietin (rEPO) may be used presurgery, although the clinical response takes up to a month. Iron supplementation is usually required with rEPO therapy. Discussion of an individual case with a haematologist may be useful.
- Review the indications for anticoagulant and antiplatelet drugs and consider stopping.
- Major operations can sometimes be staged to limit acute blood loss.

## Intraoperative management

Preoperative assessment must determine which of these techniques are acceptable to the individual patient:

- **Surgical:** consider staged or laparoscopic surgery. Meticulous surgical technique, use of ultrasonic/laser scalpels, biological haemostats, e.g. Kaltostat<sup>®</sup>, and fibrin glues and sealants.
- **Anaesthetic:** reduce venous oozing—avoid venous congestion (patient positioning), high intrathoracic pressures, and hypercarbia. Prevent hypothermia—leads to coagulopathy. Consider the use of invasive monitoring, even when the medical condition of the patient or the nature of the operation would not usually warrant it. The potential benefits and risks of hypotensive anaesthesia and regional anaesthesia should be considered.
- **Drug therapy:** antifibrinolytics, e.g. tranexamic acid and epsilon aminocaproic acid (EACA). Desmopressin increases platelet adherence. Use of these drugs during major surgery may be considered.

- **Acute hypervolaemic haemodilution:** acute normovolaemic haemodilution (ANH) may be acceptable to Jehovah's Witnesses, even though it involves removal and storage of blood from the circulation, as long as the blood 'does not break contact'.
- **Intraoperative cell salvage:** acceptable to most Jehovah's Witnesses.
- **Red cell substitutes:** perfluorocarbons and haemoglobin solutions may be acceptable to some Jehovah's Witnesses as an alternative to transfusion. These products are not available in the UK, although there are case reports of 'off licence' use.
- **Alternatives to clotting factors:** there are case reports of the successful use of recombinant factor VIIa in Jehovah's Witnesses undergoing major surgery.

### **Postoperative management**

- Intensive care: low threshold for admission. Treat postoperative oozing aggressively. Remember simple measures such as direct compression. Early re-exploration is mandatory.
- Hyperbaric oxygen therapy: in severe blood loss or anaemia this may swiftly reverse hypoxaemia. However, hyperbaric facilities are not readily available and the technique has practical difficulties.

### **Further reading**

- Hebert PC, Wells G, et al. (1999). A multicenter randomised controlled trial of transfusion requirements in critical care. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **340**, 409–417.
- McGill N, O'Shaughnessy D, Pickering R, et al. (2002). Mechanical methods of reducing blood transfusion in cardiac surgery: randomised controlled trial. *British Medical Journal*, **324**, 1299–1236.
- Wallis JP (2003). Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI)—under-diagnosed and under-reported. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **90**, 573–576.
- Mahdy AM, Webster NR (2004). Perioperative systemic haemostatic agents. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **93**, 842–858.
- Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2005). *Blood Component Therapy*. [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).
- Shander A (2003). Surgery without blood. *Critical Care Medicine*, **31**, S708–S714.

- 1 Milligan LJ, Bellamy MC (2004). Anaesthesia and critical care of Jehovah's Witnesses. *Continuing Education in Anaesthesia, Critical Care & Pain*, **4**, 35–39.
- 2 Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2005). *Management of anaesthesia for Jehovah's Witnesses*. [www.aagbi.org](http://www.aagbi.org).

*This page intentionally left blank*



## Fluid and electrolyte therapy

Fluid equilibrium may be disrupted by illness, anaesthesia, and surgery. This may elicit a combined metabolic, neuroendocrine, immunological, and inflammatory ‘stress’ response. This response is proportional to the degree of insult and is intended to be protective. It normally subsides within several days of surgery but may be exaggerated/inappropriate.

A short period of fasting in patients undergoing elective minor surgery is well tolerated and does not require fluid replacement. Small volumes of fluid given at the time of minor surgery may be associated with faster recovery and less postoperative nausea and vomiting. Very small children and the elderly tolerate dehydration less well and replacement should be considered.

### Fluid and electrolyte balance in a 70kg man

Water balance	
Intake (2500ml)	Output (2500ml)
1500ml oral	1500ml urine
750ml food	100ml faeces
250ml metabolism	900ml insensible loss

Daily requirements of common electrolytes		
	Plasma concentration	Daily requirement
Na <sup>+</sup>	135–145mmol/l	1–1.5mmol/kg/d
K <sup>+</sup>	3.5–5.0mmol/l	1–1.5mmol/kg/d
Mg <sup>2+</sup>	0.75–1.05mmol/l	0.1–0.2mmol/kg/d
Ca <sup>2+</sup>	2.12–2.65mmol/l (total), 1.0mmol/l (ionised)	0.1–0.2mmol/kg/d
Cl <sup>-</sup>	95–105mmol/l	0.07–0.22mmol/kg/d
Phosphate	0.8–1.45mmol/l	20–40mmol/kg/d

Fluid compartments (70kg adult)		
Total body water 55–60% (of weight) = 45 litres	Intracellular 30 litres	
	Extracellular 15 litres	Interstitial 12 litres Intravascular 3 litres

## Physiological changes during the stress response

↑ Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	Thirst, water retention, potassium loss
↑ Cortisol (mineralocorticoid effect)	Sodium/water retention, potassium excretion
↑ Renin–angiotensin–aldosterone axis	Sodium reabsorption
↑ Organ osmo-/chemoreceptor activity	Endocrine/sympathetic catabolic state
↑ Systemic inflammatory response	Cytokine-induced capillary leak

## Assessment of dehydration

- This is notoriously inaccurate—most patients are more dehydrated than they look, in spite of ‘adequate’ fluid maintenance therapy.
- Every effort should be made to identify and correct perioperative dehydration and hypovolaemia, as it is associated with considerable morbidity.
- This should begin with detailed clinical examination to identify signs and symptoms of dehydration (see table).
- Classical signs and symptoms may be absent, especially in chronic dehydration. Careful examination of fluid balance charts and assessment of periods of fluid restriction, gastrointestinal losses, blood loss, drugs, bowel preparation, or specific disease states that impact on hydration status is essential.
- In particular, ‘third space’ losses may account for a significant fluid volume loss, the electrolyte content of which may be large.
- Charting of vital signs over time is useful. Scrutinise trends in BP, pulse, temperature, urine output, and respiratory rate.
- Laboratory indices may be useful. Elevated plasma creatinine/urea/haematocrit/albumin and low urine acidity/sodium concentration indicate significant dehydration. Plasma lactate/acid–base status may highlight metabolic derangement associated with hypovolaemia and tissue hypoperfusion.
- CXR may help identify cardiomegaly/pulmonary oedema due to fluid overload.
- Creatinine clearance is a robust measure of renal function and can be estimated at the bedside (see below).
- More invasive monitoring (e.g. CVP, oesophageal Doppler), especially with dynamic fluid challenges, is probably the most reliable method of measuring (and replacing) lost fluid. See p1046.

## Signs and symptoms of dehydration

Percentage body weight loss	Signs and symptoms
5	Thirst, dry mouth
5–10	↓ peripheral perfusion, ↓ skin turgor, postural dizziness, oliguria, ↓ CVP, lassitude, tachycardia
10–15	↑ respiratory rate, hypotension, anuria, delirium, coma
>15	Life threatening

**Estimation of creatinine clearance** (Cockcroft and Gault formula)

Approx. creatinine clearance =  $1.23 \times (140 - \text{age}) \times \text{weight (kg)} / \text{serum creatinine } (\mu\text{mol/l})$

(replace 1.23 with 1.04 for female calculation)

**Replacing fluid**

- In the fluid-replete adult undergoing a significant period of nil by mouth, replace total daily water requirements of 30–40ml/kg/d, plus total daily electrolyte requirements for  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , and  $\text{K}^+$  (see p1080). In pyrexial patients increase fluid by 15% for every 1°C rise in body temperature above normal.
- The perioperative period often proves difficult for assessment of fluid losses. In theatre increased evaporative and 3rd space losses from an open abdomen will not be apparent and may require 10–15ml/kg/hr of crystalloid in addition to calculated basal requirements.
- Most fluids lost are salt-containing and should be replaced with fluids of similar content. Isotonic formulations of crystalloid equilibrate with ECF and are the replacement fluid of choice.
- In the perioperative period  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , and  $\text{K}^+$  are often replaced routinely. In illness  $\text{Na}^+$  stores may be well conserved, whilst obligatory  $\text{K}^+$  losses occur and occult total body  $\text{K}^+$  deficiency is common. This will not be reflected by plasma concentration.

Daily volume and composition of GI secretions

	Flow (ml/d)	H <sup>+</sup> (nmol/l)	Na <sup>+</sup> (mmol/l)	Cl <sup>-</sup> (mmol/l)	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup> (mmol/l)	K <sup>+</sup> (mmol/l)
Saliva	500–1000	0	30	10–35	0–15	20
Gastric	1500–2000	0–120	60	100–120	0	10
Bile	500	0	140	100	40–70	5–10
Pancreas	750	0	140	70	40–70	5–10
Small/large intestine	2000–4000	0	110	100	25	5–10

### Dynamic fluid challenge

- Use boluses of 100–200ml crystalloid.
- Assess clinical and intravascular endpoints, e.g. UOP, HR, SV, BP, and CVP.
- A sustained rise in CVP of >3mmHg suggests patient is well filled.
- An inadequate response is a failure to sustain clinical/CVS endpoint improvement.
- Repeat boluses with frequent reassessment.
- This should not be considered as treatment for acute blood loss from the vascular compartment.

### Crystalloids

Cheap and effective with relatively few adverse effects.

#### Balanced salt solutions (BSS)

e.g. Hartmann's (Ringer's lactate) solution

- Physiological solutions.
- Osmolality is similar to ECF and thus BSS are useful for restoring extracellular volume.
- First-line replacement therapy in the perioperative period.
- May reduce iatrogenic hyperchloraemic metabolic acidosis, associated with use of higher chloride-containing solutions.
- The addition of K<sup>+</sup> and Ca<sup>2+</sup> to BSS may limit usefulness in hyperkalaemic states or with citrated blood transfusions.

#### 'Normal' sodium chloride 0.9%

- Commonly used for electrolyte replacement.
- Contains high sodium and chloride concentrations and may be responsible for hyperchloraemic metabolic acidosis, which is of unknown significance.
- Remains the preferred fluid for hypovolaemic resuscitation in many countries, but intravascular half-life may be limited to 15min. Useful for replacing electrolyte-rich GI losses.

**Glucose solutions** (dextrose is preferred name in the US)

e.g. glucose 5%, glucose 4%–sodium chloride 0.18%

- Glucose 5% is a convenient way of giving free water, used to restore dehydration associated with water loss. Perioperatively hyponatraemia may occur with excessive use.
- Glucose in 10%, 20%, and 50% solutions are available to promote normoglycaemia but have little role in routine daily fluid management in adults.
- Sugar-containing solutions provide 4kcal/g glucose (glucose 5% contains 5g/100ml), a considerable energy source, but their potential deleterious osmotic effects limit use, and they have no role as plasma expanders.

**Colloids**

Colloids are homogenous, non-crystalline substances consisting of large molecules or ultramicroscopic particles, which persist in the vascular compartment to expand the functional plasma volume (lasting several hours to several days). Duration of action is determined by physiochemical properties, integrity of capillary membrane, and metabolic and clearance pharmacokinetics.

**Human albumin solution (HAS)**

- Molecular weight (MW) 69 000.
- Available as a 4.5% solution for the treatment of hypovolaemia, and as a salt-poor 20% solution for the treatment of hypoalbuminaemia.
- Like other blood products, HAS is manufactured from fractionation of whole blood. Concern of theoretical transmission of vCJD has resulted in this product currently being imported from the US and it is thus expensive in the UK.

**Gelatins**

- Succinylated gelatins (MW 30 000), e.g. Gelofusine® 4% is presented in NaCl solution.
- Manufactured from bovine collagen from BSE-free herds—there have been no reports of vCJD. Succinylated gelatins undergo thermal degradation during manufacture. Succinic anhydride then replaces free amino acid groups with carboxyl groups, resulting in a conformational change in the molecule size. They have an initially powerful osmotic effect. Administration may rarely lead to histamine release causing bronchospasm, urticarial rash, hypotension, and tachycardia (see below). There is no limit on total volume that may be administered.

**Hydroxyethyl starches (HES)**

- MW 70 000–450 000.
- Manufactured from hydrolysed amylase-resistant maize or sorghum. HES products differ widely and may be characterised by concentration, molar substitution, molecular weight, and degree of substitution (DS), which confers solubility and degree of degradation. Thus there are hetastarches (DS 0.6–0.7), pentastarches (DS 0.5), and tetrastarches (DS 0.4). The greater the DS the greater is the resistance to degradation, which means that plasma-expanding activity is prolonged.
- First-generation starches were associated with considerable side effects, including renal impairment, accumulation, pruritus, and clotting

derangements and bleeding. Manufacturers recommend a maximum dose which varies with formulation—newly formulated second/third generation HES solutions, with lower molecular weight, may reduce the incidence of unwanted side effects and may be given in volumes of 30 and 50ml/kg/d respectively.

### **Dextrans**

- Branched polysaccharides derived from bacterial action on sucrose.
- Dextran 70 (MW 70 000), supplied in 0.9% sodium chloride solution. Its use in the UK is less common than other products.
  - It interferes with blood crossmatching techniques, reduces factor VIII activity, and increases plasminogen activation. Fibrinolysis may also occur, resulting in reduced clot strength and impairment of platelet activity causing prolonged bleeding time.
  - Initial administration should be limited to 20ml/kg for the first 24hr and 10ml/kg thereafter for 5d use only.

### **Adverse effects of colloid solutions**

There are clinically important differences in safety among colloids. A 2004 systematic review of 113 publications showed that approximately 1.3 cases per million transfusions of albumin result in anaphylactoid reactions. Two-fold and four-fold increases are seen with dextran and HES solutions respectively, while 12 times the anaphylactoid rate was seen with gelatin products.

An increased incidence of bleeding and coagulopathy is widely reported with artificial colloids, particularly HES solutions. Significant pruritus has also been associated with HES solutions—often occurring some time after administration.

## **Special considerations in fluid therapy**

### **Colloid vs crystalloid in fluid resuscitation**

- No single study has yet been powered for mortality outcome. In rapid major blood loss either type of fluid is suitable to maintain organ perfusion in the short term. For ongoing losses colloids offer faster, longer lasting resuscitation with less volume of infusate. No single colloid solution has been proven to be safest. The aim is to restore adequate organ perfusion, avoiding haemodilution, coagulopathy, and hypothermia. A recent Cochrane review concluded that as resuscitation with colloids does not reduce mortality when compared with crystalloids it is difficult to justify their use, particularly in the light of their increased cost.

### **Safety of albumin as a plasma expander**

- A recent large RCT comparing albumin and saline for intravascular volume expansion in critical illness concluded a similar outcome using either treatment regime at 28d (see Further reading). This refutes the findings of the 1998 Cochrane Injuries Group which reported adverse outcomes with albumin.

**Hypertonic saline in patients undergoing surgery**

- Small volume hypertonic saline has theoretical advantages for emergency plasma expansion, but a recent Cochrane review suggests that there are insufficient data available to recommend its use in the perioperative setting.

**Fluid and goal-directed therapy**

- In emergency surgery there is good evidence that optimal fluid filling, as judged by cardiac stroke volume and cardiac index, reduces perioperative renal failure and reduces length of hospital stay. See p1046. Only after fluid optimisation and the persistence of organ hypoperfusion (elevated lactate, reduced mixed venous oxygen saturation, persisting base deficit) should the delivery of oxygen be increased by inotropic support.

**Further reading**

Conway-D-H, Mayall-R, Abdul-Latif-M-S, Gilligan-S, Tackaberry-C (2002). Randomised controlled trial investigating the influence of intravenous fluid titration using oesophageal Doppler monitoring during bowel surgery. *Anaesthesia*, **57**, 845–9.

Davies SJ, Wilson RJT (2004). Preoptimisation of the high-risk surgical patient. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **93**, 121–128.

Gan-Tong-J, Maroof-Mohamed, Moalem-Habib et al. (2002). Goal-directed intraoperative fluid administration reduces length of hospital stay after major surgery. *Anesthesiology*, **97**, 820–826.

Sinclair S, James S, Singer M (1997). Intraoperative intravascular volume optimisation and length of hospital stay after repair of proximal femoral fracture: randomised control trial. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **315**, 909–912.

The SAFE Study Investigators (2004). A comparison of albumin and saline for fluid resuscitation in the intensive care unit. *New England Journal of Medicine*, **350**, 2247–2256.

## Composition of common intravenous fluids

	Na <sup>+</sup> (mmol/l)	K <sup>+</sup> (mmol/l)	Ca <sup>2+</sup> (mmol/l)	Cl <sup>-</sup> (mmol/l)	Other	pH	mOsmol/l	Cost (£/litre)
Normal sodium chloride 0.9%	154			154		5	308	1
Glucose 4% sodium chloride 0.18%	30			30	Glucose 40g	4	263	1
Glucose 5%					Glucose 50g	4	278	1
Hartmann's solution	131	5	2	111	Lactate 29mmol/l	6.5	278	2
Gelofusine®	154	<0.4	<0.4	125	Gelatin 40g	7.4		10
Hydroxyethyl starches (in NaCl)	154			154	Starch 60–100g	5–5.5		25
Albumin 4.5%	<160	<2		136	Albumin 40–50g	7.4		95
Dextran 70 in saline	154			154		4.5		12
Dextran 70 in glucose					Glucose 50g	5		12
Dextran 40 in saline	15			154		4.5		12
Dextran 40 in glucose					Glucose 50g	5		12



*This page intentionally left blank*

# Acute pain

## Adrian Dashfield

Introduction 1090

Analgesic drugs 1092

Patient-controlled analgesia 1100

Epidural analgesia 1102

Continuous peripheral nerve blockade 1106

Stimulation-produced analgesia: TENS and acupuncture 1107

The opioid-dependent patient 1108

The patient with a substance abuse disorder 1110

Acute neuropathic pain following surgery 1111

## Introduction

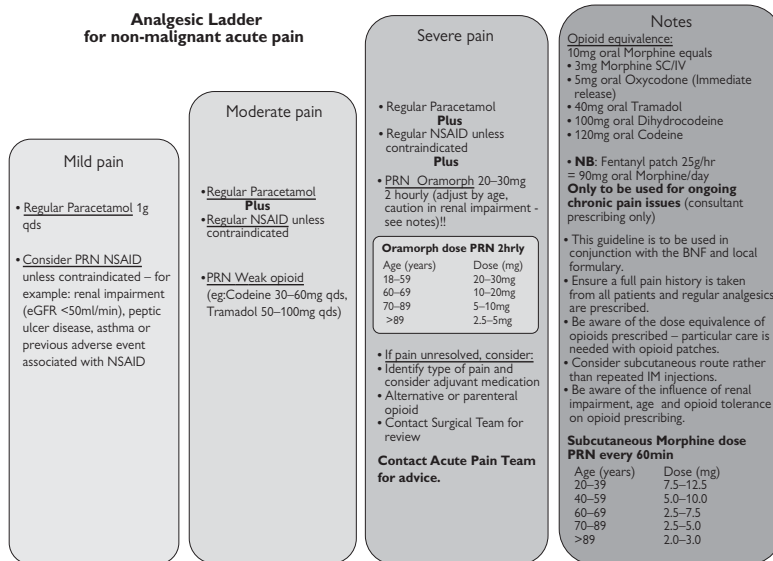
### Benefits of acute pain management

Severe postoperative pain and the stress response to surgery cause increased morbidity and mortality.

- **CVS**—tachycardia, hypertension, and increased peripheral vascular resistance cause increased myocardial oxygen consumption/demand and myocardial ischaemia. Altered regional blood flow (sympathetic stimulation), reduced mobility, venous stasis, and increased clotting cause venous thrombosis.
- **RS**—abdominal/thoracic pain results in diaphragmatic splinting and weakened cough. Reduction in lung volumes, atelectasis, and sputum retention cause chest infections and hypoxaemia.
- **GI**—delayed gastric emptying and reduced intestinal motility. This can be a direct effect of pain or as a side effect of opioids and surgery.
- **GU**—urinary retention.
- **Metabolic/endocrine**—release of vasopressin, aldosterone, renin, angiotensin, cortisol, glucagon, growth hormone, and catecholamines, and reduction in insulin and testosterone lead to increased protein breakdown, impairment of wound healing/immune function, sodium and water retention, increased fibrinogen and platelet activation, and increased metabolic rate.
- **Chronic pain**—there is some evidence that patients who suffer acute pain are more likely to develop chronic pain.
- **Psychological**—poor acute pain management can lead to patient anxiety, sleeplessness, fatigue, and distress well into the postoperative period.

### Measurement of pain

- **Verbal rating scales**—stratify pain intensity according to commonly used adjectives such as ‘mild’, ‘moderate’, and ‘severe’. They are widely applied and easy for patients to use. The semiquantitative nature makes them less suitable for research purposes.
- **Numerical rating scales**—take the two extremes of the pain experience and have a numerical scale in-between ‘no pain’ and ‘worst imaginable’, for example. These scales are robust and reproducible and easy for patients to understand. A disadvantage is that a digital scale reduces the capacity to detect subtle changes as the digits act as anchoring points.
- **Visual analogue scales**—similar to numerical rating scales with two extremes of the pain experience on either end of the scale. The patient is asked to mark across the line of standard length (usually 100mm). The distance along this line is used. The continuous data generated make analysis easier than with verbal or numerical rating scales.



**Fig. 39.1** Acute pain ladder.

## Analgesic drugs

### Paracetamol

- Action is thought to be inhibition of prostaglandin synthesis within the CNS. Analgesic and antipyretic without anti-inflammatory activity.
- Excreted renally after glucuronide and sulphate conjugation in the liver. A hepatotoxic metabolite N-acetyl-p-benzoquinoneimine is normally inactivated by conjugation with hepatic glutathione. In paracetamol overdose, this pathway is overwhelmed, leading to hepatic cell necrosis.
- Usually given PO or PR but available as IV preparation—Perfalgan®.
- Recommended dose—4g/d in adults. Most effective when prescribed regularly rather than prn.

### Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)

- Analgesic, anti-inflammatory, antiplatelet, and antipyretic action is due to inhibition of the enzyme cyclo-oxygenase (COX) and consequently the synthesis of prostaglandins, prostacyclins, and thromboxane A<sub>2</sub> from arachidonic acid.
- Two types of COX: **COX-1** is normally present in the kidney, gastrointestinal mucosa, and platelets where prostaglandin contributes to normal organ function. COX-2 is associated with inflammatory mediators following tissue damage. **COX-2** inhibitors may be associated with fewer adverse effects than COX-1 and COX-2 inhibitors (but see p1093 and below).
- NSAIDs have some central as well as peripheral activity. Absorption from the upper gastrointestinal tract is rapid. Metabolised in the liver, excreted in the kidney.
- Opioid sparing effect of between 20 and 40%. May be used as the sole analgesic for mild to moderate pain. Side effects with NSAIDs are relatively common.
- The Royal College of Anaesthetists published guidelines<sup>1</sup> for the use of NSAIDs in the postoperative period, suggesting a number of precautions and contraindications.
- The VIGOR study,<sup>2</sup> in which patients on low-dose aspirin were excluded, found an increased risk of myocardial infarction for patients given rofecoxib compared to naproxen. Rofecoxib and some other COX-2 inhibitors have been withdrawn from clinical practice because of further concerns about the risks of cardiovascular events including myocardial infarction and stroke.<sup>3</sup>

## Contraindications of NSAIDs

Relative contraindications	Absolute contraindications
Impaired hepatic function, diabetes, bleeding or coagulation disorders, vascular disease	History of gastrointestinal bleeding or ulceration
Operations with a high risk of intraoperative haemorrhage (e.g. cardiac, vascular, and hepatobiliary surgery)	Known hypersensitivity to NSAIDs
Operations where an absence of bleeding is important (eye surgery, neurosurgery)	Severe liver dysfunction
Non-aspirin-induced asthma	Cardiac failure (NSAIDs cause sodium, potassium, and water retention)
Concurrent use of ACE inhibitors, potassium-sparing diuretics, anticoagulants, methotrexate, ciclosporin, antibiotics such as gentamicin	Dehydration, hypovolaemia, hypotension
Pregnant and lactating women	Hyperkalaemia
Age >65yr (risk of renal impairment)	Pre-existing renal impairment
	Uncontrolled hypertension
	Aspirin-induced asthma

## Comparison of NSAIDs and COX-2

	NSAIDs	COX-2
<b>Efficacy for moderate to severe acute pain (numbers needed to treat—NNT)</b>	Diclofenac 50mg (2.3) Ibuprofen 400mg (2.4) Ketorolac 10mg (2.6)	Celecoxib 200mg (4.5) Parecoxib 20mg (3.0) Valdecoxib 20mg (1.7)
<b>Renal function</b>	Can affect renal function postoperatively	Similar adverse effects on renal function
<b>Gastrointestinal</b>	Acute gastroduodenal damage and bleeding can occur. Risk increased with higher doses, history of GI ulceration, long-term use, and elderly	Less clinically significant peptic ulceration than NSAIDs (VIGOR and CLASS studies)
<b>Platelet function</b>	Inhibit platelet function but do not significantly increase surgical blood loss in normal patients. Associated with higher incidence of post-tonsillectomy haemorrhage	Do not impair platelet function
<b>Aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease</b>	10–15% of asthmatics affected when given aspirin. Cross-sensitivity with NSAIDs	Do not produce bronchospasm
<b>Bone healing</b>	Impaired in animal models. No good evidence that clinically important	Similar to NSAIDs

### Inhalational analgesia

- **Entonox** (50% nitrous oxide, 50% oxygen) is a quick-acting, potent analgesic of short duration which relies on patient self-administration.
- **Isonox** (isoflurane 0.2–0.75% in Entonox). Lower concentrations of isoflurane produce less drowsiness.<sup>4</sup>
- Ideal for procedures of short duration such as dressing changes, removal of drains, catheterisation, labour pain, and application of traction.
- Side effects of Entonox include drowsiness, nausea, excitability, and augmentation of respiratory depressant drugs.
- Entonox diffuses rapidly into and increases gas-containing cavities. Contraindications thus include pneumothorax, decompression sickness, intoxication, bowel obstruction, bullous emphysema, and head injury.

### Opioids

Opioid drugs act as agonists at opioid receptors found mainly in the brain and spinal cord but also peripherally. There are three principal classes of opioid receptor:

- $\mu$ —analgesia, nausea and vomiting, bradycardia, respiratory depression, miosis, inhibition of gut motility, pruritus. Endogenous agonists are  $\beta$ -endorphins.
- $\kappa$ —analgesia, sedation, dysphoria, diuresis. Endogenous agonists are dynorphins.
- $\delta$ —analgesia. Endogenous agonists are enkephalins.

**Morphine**—remains the ‘gold’ standard against which all new analgesics are compared. It is the least lipid-soluble opioid in common use. Metabolised in the liver, with only 10% excreted unchanged by the kidney. Metabolite morphine 6-glucuronide is more potent than morphine. Other main metabolite is morphine 3-glucuronide which has no analgesic activity. Both metabolites are excreted in the kidney. Accumulation can occur after prolonged use in patients with impaired renal function. Dose ranges and dose intervals vary according to route of administration.

**Diamorphine**—a prodrug (diacetylmorphine) rapidly hydrolysed to 6-monoacetylmorphine and then morphine. Diamorphine is much more lipid soluble than morphine and thus has a more rapid onset of action than morphine when given by epidural or IV route.

**Fentanyl**—highly lipid-soluble synthetic opioid with a short duration of action because of rapid tissue uptake. The high lipid solubility makes it suitable for transdermal administration. Metabolites of fentanyl are inactive. Fentanyl is commonly administered IV, epidurally, or intrathecally.

**Pethidine**—analgesic with anticholinergic and some local anaesthetic activity. Primarily metabolised in the liver with metabolites excreted in the kidney. One of the main metabolites is norpethidine with a half-life of 15–20 hr. Norpethidine is a potent analgesic. High blood concentrations can lead to central nervous system excitation. Patients with impaired renal function are at risk. Pethidine can be used to treat postoperative shivering associated with volatile anaesthetic agents, epidural and spinal anaesthesia.

**Codeine** is a prodrug for morphine. Usually administered for the treatment of mild to moderate pain. About 10% of the dose is converted to morphine. Metabolism to morphine requires an enzyme (CYP2D6) which is part of the cytochrome P450 system; 8–10% of Caucasians lack this enzyme, obtaining little or no benefit.

**Tramadol**—synthetic centrally acting opioid-like drug. Less than half of its analgesic activity is at the  $\mu$ -opioid receptor. It inhibits noradrenaline and serotonin uptake at nerve terminals. Lower tolerance and abuse potential, less respiratory depression, and constipation compared to other opioids reported. Metabolised in the liver and excreted in the kidney. Main metabolite of tramadol is O-desmethytramadol (M1) which is more potent. Formation of M1 also depends on the presence of CYP2D6 within the cytochrome P450 system (see codeine).

All opioids are equianalgesic if adjustments are made for dose and route of administration. Allowance should be made for long-term opioid therapy, incomplete cross-tolerance between opioids, differing half-lives, and interpatient variability.

Equianalgesic dosages

Opioid	IM/IV (mg)	Oral (mg)
Morphine	10	25
Diamorphine	5	—
Fentanyl	0.15–0.2	—
Pethidine	100	250
Codeine	—	175
Tramadol	100	100

Opioids have a similar spectrum of side effects. There is considerable interpatient variability and some patients may suffer more side effects with one particular drug compared to another.

Side effects include respiratory depression (decreased respiratory rate, tidal volume, and irregular respiratory rhythm), sedation, euphoria, dysphoria, nausea and vomiting, muscle rigidity, miosis, bradycardia, myocardial depression, vasodilatation, delayed gastric emptying, constipation, and pruritus.

**Opioid antagonists** act at all opioid receptors. **Naloxone** is the most commonly used. By titrating the dose of naloxone administered, it is possible to reverse side effects such as respiratory depression, nausea and vomiting, and sedation without antagonising the analgesic effects. It must be remembered that naloxone is effective for about 60min.



### Opioids—routes of administration

- **Oral.** Oral bioavailability of most opioids is limited due to first-pass metabolism. The slower onset and longer duration of controlled-release formulations make rapid titration impossible. Immediate-release oral opioids (e.g. morphine syrup, oxycodone) are preferred for early management of acute pain.
- **Intermittent SC or IM opioids.** Traditional route of administration ordered 4-hourly PRN. A reluctance to give opioids more frequently than 4-hourly often leads to failure of regimens. Blood levels of an opioid need to reach minimum effective analgesic concentration (MEAC) before any relief of pain is perceived. This requires an adequate initial dose. The only way to achieve good pain relief is to titrate the dose of opioid for each patient.
- **Intermittent IV opioids.** To achieve sustained pain relief without excessive drowsiness and respiratory depression, small doses of opioids should be given often. This technique of opioid administration is suitable for recovery wards but not for routine maintenance of analgesia by untrained staff. Commonly used regimens are 1–3mg morphine or 20–60µg fentanyl every 5min until the patient is comfortable. Morphine can take up to 15min to exhibit its full effect.
- **Continuous IV infusion.** To avoid 'peaks and troughs' in blood opioid concentrations associated with intermittent administration, continuous opioid infusions are sometimes used. Close observation and monitoring of the patient is essential. Patients are best made comfortable with IV boluses to 'load' the patient.
- **Intrathecal opioids.** Intrathecal opiates are administered at the same time as the intrathecal local anaesthetic during spinal anaesthesia. Fentanyl 10–30µg has a rapid onset (10–20 min) and a short duration of action (4–6hr). After single administration, it can be used in day-case arthroscopic surgery to enhance analgesia without prolonging hospital stay. Diamorphine 0.3–0.4mg is used for analgesia after elective Caesarean section. Doses up to 1mg diamorphine have been used. Intrathecal morphine 0.1–0.2mg has been shown to give good postoperative pain relief following hip arthroplasty; 0.3–0.5mg morphine similarly provides good postoperative relief following knee arthroplasty.
- **Intranasal diamorphine.** Very effective in children (>1yr) needing acute analgesia. A suitable dosing regime is 0.1mg/kg in 0.2ml saline (0.1ml to each nostril). To prepare solution, add 10mg diamorphine to 20/weight (kg) of saline (ml) and draw up 0.2ml.
- **Transmucosal administration.** Fentanyl lollipops (oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate) allow absorption from the oral mucosa. More frequently used for anaesthetic premedication in children. Can be used for 'breakthrough' analgesia in opioid-tolerant patients with cancer.
- **Transdermal administration.** Very lipid-soluble opioids are absorbed through skin. Fentanyl patches are available in five sizes (12–100µg/hr) and patches are replaced every 72hr. Buprenorphine patches are available as low-dose 7d release patches or in higher dose patches replaced every 72hr. Steady plasma concentrations occur on average 12hr after application of the transdermal patch. Dangerously high plasma concentrations can occur if patients are actively warmed whilst wearing a transdermal patch. Although not suitable for acute pain management, in chronic pain the recommended dose based on daily parenteral morphine dose is shown in the table below.

## Transdermal administration of opioids

Transdermal fentanyl dose ( $\mu\text{g/hr}$ )	Oral morphine dose in 24hr	Parenteral morphine dose in 24hr
12	45	4–11
25	90	8–22
50	180	23–37
75	270	38–52
100	360	53–67
125	450	68–82
150	540	83–97

Transdermal buprenorphine dose ( $\mu\text{g/hr}$ )	Oral morphine dose in 24hr	Parenteral morphine dose in 24hr
5	9	1–3
10	18	2–5
20	35	4–9
35	60	6–15
52.5	90	8–22
70	120	14–22

The Oxford league table of analgesic efficacy. (Courtesy of Pain Research Unit, Oxford—[www.ebandolier.com](http://www.ebandolier.com).)

Analgesic	Number of patients in comparison	At least 50% pain relief (%)	NNT	Lower confidence interval	Higher confidence interval
Valdecoxib 40mg	473	73	1.6	1.4	1.8
Valdecoxib 20mg	204	68	1.7	1.4	2.0
Diclofenac 100mg	411	67	1.9	1.6	2.2
Rofecoxib 50mg	1900	63	1.9	1.8	2.1
Paracetamol 1000mg + codeine 60mg	197	57	2.2	1.7	2.9
Parecoxib 40mg (IV)	349	63	2.2	1.8	2.7
Diclofenac 50mg	738	63	2.3	2.0	2.7
Ibuprofen 600mg	203	79	2.4	2.0	4.2
Ibuprofen 400mg	4703	56	2.4	2.3	2.6
Ketorolac 10mg	790	50	2.6	2.3	3.1
Paracetamol 650mg + tramadol 75mg	679	43	2.6	2.3	3.0
Ibuprofen 200mg	1414	45	2.7	2.5	3.1
Diclofenac 25mg	204	54	2.8	2.1	4.3
Pethidine 100mg (IM)	364	54	2.9	2.3	3.9
Morphine 10mg (IM)	946	50	2.9	2.6	3.6
Parecoxib 20mg (IV)	346	50	3.0	2.3	4.1
Ketorolac 30mg (IM)	359	53	3.4	2.5	4.9

Table contd.

Analgesic	Number of patients in comparison	At least 50% pain relief (%)	NNT	Lower confidence interval	Higher confidence interval
Paracetamol 500mg	561	61	3.5	2.2	13.3
Paracetamol 1000mg	2759	46	3.8	3.4	4.4
Paracetamol 600/650mg + codeine 60mg	1123	42	4.2	3.4	5.3
Aspirin 600/650mg	5061	38	4.4	4.0	4.9
Tramadol 100mg	882	30	4.8	3.8	6.1
Tramadol 75mg	563	32	5.3	3.9	8.2
Paracetamol 300mg + codeine 30mg	379	26	5.7	4.0	9.8
Tramadol 50mg	770	19	8.3	6.0	13.0
Codeine 60mg	1305	15	16.7	11.0	48.0

- 1 Royal College of Surgeons and College of Anaesthetists (1990). Report of the Working Party on Pain after Surgery.
- 2 Bombardier C, Laine L, Reicin A, et al. (2000). Comparison of upper gastrointestinal toxicity of rofecoxib and naproxen in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *VIGOR Study Group. New England Journal of Medicine*, **343**, 1520–1528.
- 3 FDA (2004). FDA Public Health Advisory: Safety of Vioxx. US Food and Drug Administration. [www.fda.gov/cder/drug/infopage/vioxx/pha\\_ioxx.htm](http://www.fda.gov/cder/drug/infopage/vioxx/pha_ioxx.htm).
- 4 Ross JAS (2000). Isoflurane Entonox mixtures for pain relief during labour. *Anaesthesia*, **55**, 711–712.

## Patient-controlled analgesia

Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) refers to self-administration of IV opioids and helps overcome the marked variability in response to post-operative opioids. Patients titrate their plasma opioid concentration to remain in the analgesic window [above the minimum effective analgesic concentration (MEAC) and below the minimum toxic concentration (MTC)]. The inherent safety of PCA lies in the fact that excessive doses of opioid will not be delivered should the patient become sedated. No-one but the patient is allowed to operate the PCA demand button.

### PCA regimens

- The most commonly used opioid is morphine. Fentanyl, pethidine, tramadol, and other opioids have also been used. No opioid is noticeably superior to any other, although a greater incidence of pruritus may be seen with morphine; on an individual basis one opioid may be better tolerated than another.
- The optimal bolus dose consistently results in analgesia without side effects. Initial values for PCA variables are given below.
- For paediatric use of PCA see p828.

#### PCA regimes

PCA variable	Drug and dose	Comments
Loading dose	0mg	Patients should be comfortable before starting PCA
Bolus dose	Morphine 1mg Pethidine 10mg Fentanyl 20µg Diamorphine 0.5mg Tramadol 10mg	Patients over the age of 70yr may require half this amount
Concentration	Varies depending on pumps used and hospital protocols	Should be standardised in hospital protocols for each drug
Lock-out interval	5min is usual	
Background infusion	0mg/hr	If used, the background infusion rate (mg/hr) usually should not exceed the bolus dose (mg)
Dose limit	30mg morphine or equivalent in 4hr	No clear opinion on how this facility should be used. Often no dose limit is set

## Complications

- Equipment malfunction is rare. Interference in pump operation has been reported following current surges and static electricity. Modern PCA pumps have a number of 'fail-safe' design features where the program defaults to the lowest setting possible for a bolus dose. Most machines have a battery back-up lasting up to 8hr. Failure of antireflux valves has led to cases of respiratory depression.
- Operator error is much more common. Programming errors, the use of the wrong drug or incorrect drug concentrations, and incorrect background infusions have all been reported and have led to fatalities due to respiratory depression.
- Side effects related to opioid use such as nausea and vomiting, pruritus, sedation, respiratory depression, urinary retention, confusion, constipation, and hypotension.

## Troubleshooting

- Nausea and vomiting—consider:
  - Adding antiemetic to the PCA (ondansetron 4mg, cyclizine 50–100mg, haloperidol 2mg).
  - Prescribe antiemetic on a regular basis.
  - Change opioid.
- Breakthrough pain: add regular NSAID and paracetamol if not contraindicated. Increase bolus dose or consider background infusion if severe.
- Respiratory depression: this is caused by direct action of opioids on the respiratory centre. All opioids, given in equianalgesic doses, have the same potential for respiratory depression. This is a relatively uncommon side effect and if doses are properly titrated, the risk is small. The best early clinical indicator of respiratory depression is increasing sedation. Opioid doses are adjusted so that the sedation score remains below 2. Respiratory depression (respiratory rate <8/min) is reversed with IV naloxone (100–400µg).

### Sedation score

0	Patient wide awake
1	Mild drowsiness. Easy to rouse
2	Moderate drowsiness. Easy to rouse
3	Severe drowsiness. Difficult to rouse
S	Asleep but easy to rouse

## Epidural analgesia

Epidural analgesia is considered by many to be the 'gold standard' analgesic technique for major surgery. It can provide complete analgesia for up to 3d. Patients can mobilise and resume normal activities more quickly compared to parenteral opioids. Beneficial effects of epidural analgesia result from attenuation of the 'stress response' following surgery.

- The efficacy of epidural analgesia, regardless of agent used, location of catheter, type of surgery, time or type of pain assessment, has recently been demonstrated.<sup>1</sup>
- The incidence of postoperative atelectasis and pulmonary infection is reduced, improving oxygenation.<sup>2</sup> Effective pain relief allows the patient to cough, breathe deeply, and cooperate with physio.
- The incidence of postoperative myocardial infarction is reduced. The myocardial oxygen supply:demand ratio is improved by the reduction of sympathetic activity, improved pulmonary function, and reduced thrombotic tendency.
- The hypercoagulable response to surgery is attenuated and fibrinolytic function is improved by attenuation of the stress response. This has been shown to be of benefit for graft survival in patients undergoing lower limb revascularisation.
- Increased postoperative mobility reduces the incidence of DVT.
- Epidural analgesia improves intestinal motility by blocking nociceptive and sympathetic reflexes as well as limiting systemic opioid use. The duration of postoperative ileus is reduced so permitting earlier feeding.
- Intraoperative neuraxial block reduces postoperative blood transfusion requirements.
- There is, however, no survival benefit in high-risk patients despite being beneficial in terms of pain relief and respiratory function.<sup>3</sup>

### Contraindications

- Patient refusal—a full explanation of the risks and benefits of the technique must be given to every patient.
- Untrained staff—staff must have a good understanding of the techniques used and be able to recognise and treat complications.
- Contraindications to catheter or needle placement include local or general sepsis, hypovolaemia, coagulation disorders, concurrent treatment with anticoagulant drugs, and some central neurological diseases (see p739, p784, pp1174–7).

### Troubleshooting

- **Breakthrough pain**—consider:
  - Adding regular PO/PR/IV NSAID and paracetamol if not contraindicated.
  - Bolus dose (3–5ml) followed by increased infusion rate.
  - Check all connections and insertion site.
  - Check block level (with ice or touch). If block patchy or unilateral, withdraw catheter to 2cm in space.
  - Bolus dose of opioid only (fentanyl 50–100µg, diamorphine 2–3mg).

- **Pruritus**—give naloxone (50–100µg) and consider adding 300µg to infusion fluids, or removing opioid from epidural infusion. Antihistamines may give some relief.<sup>1,2,3</sup>
- **Hypotension**—check fluid status of patient, probably relatively hypovolaemic. Check block height. Consider reducing infusion rate. If acute/severe raise legs, give fluid bolus ± ephedrine (6mg boluses).
- **Motor block**—reduce infusion rate. Consider reducing local anaesthetic concentration.

#### Complications of epidural anaesthesia<sup>4</sup> (see also pp746–51)

Complication	Incidence (%)	Management
Dural puncture	0.16–1.3	Bed rest, analgesia, hydration, blood patch (see p748)
Headache	16–86	Bed rest, analgesia, hydration, suspect dural puncture
Nerve or spinal cord injury	0.016–0.56	Immediate neurological assessment (see p32 and p1178)
Catheter migration	0.15–0.18	Remove catheter and resite if appropriate
Epidural haematoma Epidural abscess	0.0004–0.03 0.01–0.05	MRI or CT scan. Immediate neurosurgical assessment. Antibiotics (see also p1105 and p1171)
Respiratory depression	0.13–0.4	Decrease in opioid concentration may be required
Hypotension	3–30	IV fluids ± vasopressors. Temporarily reduce or stop infusion
Pruritus	10	Naloxone IV (50–100µg) ± antihistamine
Urinary retention	10–30 (in males)	Catheterisation
Motor block	3	Check for catheter migration. Temporarily cease infusion. Consider epidural haematoma (p1171 and p1174)
Other		Possible increased risk of anastomotic leakage after bowel surgery. No evidence to support this



### Drugs used for epidural analgesia

To minimise the side effects of each class of drug and provide optimal analgesia a combination of an opioid and a low concentration of local anaesthetic solution is given by continuous infusion. Commonly used mixtures are:

- 0.125% bupivacaine with 5µg/ml fentanyl or 100–125µg/ml diamorphine.
- 0.1% bupivacaine with 5µg/ml fentanyl or 100µg/ml diamorphine.
- 0.0625% bupivacaine with 2µg/ml fentanyl or 50µg/ml diamorphine.

There is no universally accepted optimal combination of drugs. Infusion rates vary according to the concentration, surgical site, and dermatomal level of epidural catheter placement. Usual infusion rates for the above solutions are 8–15ml/hr for adult patients and reduced rates of 4–8ml/hr in patients over 70yr of age. Some anaesthetists reduce or avoid epidural opioids in the very elderly and use local anaesthetic solutions only.

### Intrathecal opioids

Opioids can be administered intrathecally in combination with local anaesthetic during spinal anaesthesia. The opioid is delivered directly into the CSF, so avoiding distribution into epidural fat and blood vessels. Consequently the doses used are much smaller compared to epidural or parenteral routes.

Opioid	Intrathecal dose	Onset (min)	Duration (hr)	Epidural dose
Morphine ( <i>preservative free</i> )	0.1–0.2mg	15–30	8–24	2–3mg
Pethidine ( <i>preservative free</i> )	10–25mg	<5	1–2	10–50mg
Fentanyl	10–25µg	<10	1–4	50–100µg
Diamorphine	0.25–0.5mg	<10	10–20	2.5–5mg

- The more lipid soluble the drug, the more rapid the onset and the shorter the duration of action.
- Pethidine has local anaesthetic as well as opioid properties. It can be used as the sole drug for spinal anaesthesia (requires higher doses).
- Delayed or late respiratory depression can occur with the less lipid-soluble drugs (particularly morphine). Increasing patient age, high doses of opioid administered intrathecally, concurrent use of sedatives, and systemic opioids are associated with increased risk of respiratory depression.
- Diamorphine (if available) offers the best combination of duration of analgesia with fewest side effects.

## Spinal infection<sup>5</sup>

Extreme vigilance is needed for all patients who have had epidural analgesia. Pyrexia and/or backache are the most common signs and symptoms but are not invariable. Only 13% of patients with epidural abscess present with the classical triad of fever, backache, and neurological signs and symptoms. **Back pain** is the initial symptom in 75% of cases. **Fever** occurs in 66% of cases. Only two out of three patients have a **leucocytosis**. A raised ESR (>30mm) is a consistent finding. A normal CRP does not exclude spinal infection. Monitoring trends is more important than relying on a single measurement. If there is a suspicion of infection, a full infection screen and blood cultures are mandatory. The epidural catheter should always be removed immediately and sent to the laboratory for microbiological investigation. Ninety percent of spinal infections are bacterial, mainly *Staphylococcus aureus*. MRI with gadolinium is the investigation of choice. The whole spine should be scanned early before neurological signs and symptoms occur. Once muscle weakness is present, only 20% of patients regain full function, even after spinal surgery. Poor recovery is predicted by patient age (older patients do worse), extent of cord compression, and duration of neurological symptoms (<36hr has better prognosis). Mortality from epidural abscess is 10%. Treatment is based on surgical or percutaneous abscess drainage and antibiotics. Steroids are contraindicated.

- 1 Block BM, Liu SS, Rowlingson AJ, et al. (2003). Efficacy of postoperative epidural analgesia: a meta-analysis. *JAMA*, **290**, 2455–2463.
- 2 Ballantyne JC, Carr DB, deFerranti S, et al. (1998). The comparative effects of postoperative analgesic therapies on pulmonary outcome: cumulative meta-analyses of randomized, controlled trials. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **86**, 598–612.
- 3 Rigg JRA, Jamrozik K, Myles PS, et al. (2002). Epidural anaesthesia and analgesia and outcome of major surgery: a randomised trial. *Lancet*, **359**, 1276–1282.
- 4 National Audit of Major Complications of Central Neuraxial Block in the United Kingdom. Report and Findings 2009. <http://www.rcoa.ac.uk/index.asp?pageid=717>.
- 5 Joshi SM, Hatfield RH, Martin J, et al. (2003). Spinal epidural abscess: a diagnostic challenge. *British Journal of Neurosurgery*, **17**, 160–163.

## Continuous peripheral nerve blockade

There are many potential benefits of continuous peripheral nerve blockade. The quality of analgesia is better compared with opioids and the incidence of postoperative side effects including nausea and vomiting is decreased. Compared with epidural analgesia for knee joint arthroplasty, analgesia is of equal quality, but the side-effect profile is better with peripheral nerve catheters. A recent development is the use of ultrasound to direct peripheral nerve catheter placement. Successful catheter placement relies on a high degree of skill in a practitioner who is already very familiar with single shot peripheral nerve blockade.

The chart below suggests typical bolus and infusion rates for peripheral nerve blockade: 0.5% or 0.25% ropivacaine or levobupivacaine is commonly used for the initial bolus; 0.1–0.25% levobupivacaine or ropivacaine is used for the continuous infusion. Safe doses must be calculated on a per kilogram basis for every patient. Do not exceed 0.6mg/kg/hr for either levobupivacaine or ropivacaine.

Catheter site	Initial bolus (ml)	Basal rate (ml/hr)	Patient-controlled bolus (ml)
Interscalene	25–35	3–5	3–5
Axillary	30	5–10	5
Femoral/fascia iliaca	30	4–6	5–10
Sciatic	15–20	2–4	2–4

Absolute contraindications for this technique include: patient refusal, skin infection at or near the puncture site, systemic infection, pyrexia, bleeding diathesis (including systemic anticoagulation), peripheral neuropathy, and compartment syndrome.

Complications include: bruising, haematoma, local anaesthetic toxicity, peripheral nerve damage, infection, catheter kinking, and catheter migration.

## **Stimulation-produced analgesia: TENS and acupuncture**

- Stimulation techniques activate the body's pain-modulation systems. The gate control theory of pain by Melzack and Wall in 1965 provided a model to explain this phenomenon.
- Incoming noxious pain signals are reduced by presynaptic and postsynaptic inhibition in laminae 1–5 in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. Modulatory input arrives via descending pathways and lateral branches from myelinated afferent A-fibres. A-fibres arise in low-threshold mechanoreceptors activated by transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) and in high-threshold mechanoreceptors responsive to low-frequency needle manipulation (acupuncture).
- A-fibres are recruited at 50–200Hz and respond to low-intensity stimulation. Pain relief occurs immediately but lasts only as long as stimulation continues. A-fibre stimulation increases levels of inhibitory neurotransmitters dynorphin A and B in the dorsal horn.
- A-fibres are recruited at 2–4Hz and respond to high-intensity stimulation. Pain relief takes 20–30min but lasts hours or days. A-fibre stimulation also increases inhibitory neurotransmitter met-enkephalin levels in the dorsal horn.

## The opioid-dependent patient

The principles of acute pain management in the opioid-dependent patient are similar to those previously described. The aim is to bring acute pain under control. Involvement of a multidisciplinary team will often be necessary to manage behavioural, psychological, psychiatric, and medical problems encountered in this group of patients.

- **Tolerance, dependence, addiction, and pseudoaddiction**—tolerance is a decrease in sensitivity to opioids resulting in less effect from the same dose. Physical dependence is a physiological phenomenon characterised by a withdrawal reaction when the drug is withdrawn or an antagonist is administered. Addiction is a pattern of drug abuse characterised by compulsive use to experience a psychological effect and to avoid withdrawal reaction. Pseudoaddiction is iatrogenic drug-seeking behaviour normally due to undertreatment of acute pain by the physician.
- Symptoms and signs of withdrawal include yawning, sweating, anxiety, rhinorrhoea, lacrimation, tachycardia, hypertension, diarrhoea, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, and cramps. On average, these symptoms peak at 36–72hr after the last dose. Aims of treatment must be provision of analgesia, prevention of opioid withdrawal, and management of abnormal drug-taking behaviour. Non-opioid analgesics such as paracetamol and NSAIDs should be prescribed regularly if possible.
- Opioid-dependent patients normally fall into one of three groups: opioid addicts, chronic non-cancer pain, and cancer pain. The principles of management are the same for each group.

Opioid requirements will in general be much higher than in non-opioid-dependent patients. The initial dose prescribed should take the patient's current opioid requirement into account. It may be difficult to judge current opioid use when illicit drugs have been taken. The GP, local pharmacist, or drug rehabilitation centre may provide helpful information.

- Opioid-tolerant patients report higher pain scores and have lower incidence of opioid-induced nausea and vomiting.
- Opioid-tolerant patients are at risk of opioid withdrawal if non-opioid analgesic regimens or tramadol are used.
- PCA settings may need to include a background infusion to replace the usual opioid dose and a higher bolus dose.
- Total dose should be increased until acceptable analgesia is achieved or until side effects prohibit any further dose increases. PCA with larger than average bolus doses is the preferred means of administering opioids.<sup>1,2</sup> Opioid rotation may be of use particularly with an agent of higher intrinsic opioid agonist activity.<sup>3</sup>
- The aim is to eventually discharge the patient on no more opioid than was used before admission. Normally dose reductions of 20–25% every day towards the pre-admission opioid intake will avoid symptoms of withdrawal.
- Oral or SC **clonidine** (50µg tds) can be used to treat symptoms of opioid withdrawal.

- An objective assessment of function, i.e. ability to cough, may be a better guide to opioid requirements than pain scores. Patients with an addiction to opioids tend to exaggerate pain in the hope of receiving increased dosages.<sup>1,2,3</sup>
- Whenever possible, regional analgesic techniques should be used (e.g. continuous lumbar plexus, brachial plexus, or epidural infusions).
- Liaise with all clinicians involved in the treatment of these patients.

- 1 Macintyre PE, Ready LB (2001). *Acute Pain Management—A Practical Guide*, 2nd edn. London: Harcourt Publishers.
- 2 Mitra S, Sinatra RS (2004). Perioperative management of acute pain in the opioid-dependent patient. *Anesthesiology*, **101**, 212–227.
- 3 De Leon-Casasola OA, Lema MJ (1994). Epidural bupivacaine/sufentanil therapy for postoperative pain control in patients tolerant to opioid and unresponsive to epidural bupivacaine/morphine. *Anesthesiology*, **80**, 303–309.

## The patient with a substance abuse disorder

A substance abuse disorder (SAD) exists when the extent and pattern of substance use interferes with the psychological and sociocultural integrity of the person.<sup>1</sup>

Effective management of acute pain in patients with SAD may be complicated by:

- Psychological and behavioural characteristics.
- Presence of the drug of abuse.
- Presence of tolerance, physical dependence, and the risk of withdrawal.
- Medications used to assist with drug withdrawal or rehabilitation.
- Complications related to drug abuse including organ impairment.

Ethical dilemmas can arise as a result of the need to balance concerns of undermedication against anxieties about safety and possible abuse or diversion of the drugs.

Management of pain in patients with SAD should focus on:

- Prevention of withdrawal.
- Effective analgesia.
- Symptomatic treatment of affective and behavioural problems.

Patients with SAD may be abusing CNS depressant drugs (alcohol, benzodiazepines, opioids) or CNS stimulant drugs (cocaine, amphetamines, ecstasy, cannabinoids).

Drugs used in the treatment of SAD include:

- Methadone—long-acting pure opioid agonist. In the acute pain setting methadone should be continued at the same dose. If the patient is unable to take methadone orally, substitution with parenteral methadone or other opioids may be required in the short term.
- Naltrexone—pure opioid antagonist administered orally. Binds to opioid receptors for 24hr following a single dose. May create difficulties in the acute pain setting. It is recommended that naltrexone is stopped 24hr before surgery. Usual maintenance dose is 25–50mg daily.
- Buprenorphine—partial opioid agonist used in the treatment of opioid addiction. Commonly prescribed doses are 8–32mg. Continuation of buprenorphine presurgery has been suggested although it may be difficult to obtain good analgesia with full agonist opioids. Multimodal analgesic strategies should be used.

Patients in drug-free recovery may be concerned about the risk of relapse into active SAD if given opioids for acute pain management. Use of multimodal analgesic strategies, reassurance that the risk of reversion is small, and information that ineffective analgesia can paradoxically lead to relapses in recovering patients help avoid undertreatment.

<sup>1</sup> American Psychiatric Association (1994). *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th edn. Washington, DC, American Psychiatric Association.

## Acute neuropathic pain following surgery

The occurrence of persistent pain following surgery is becoming increasingly recognised. Acute postoperative neuropathic pain does not usually occur in isolation; there will also be nociceptive pain as a result of tissue damage/inflammation.

- Approximately 14% of patients presenting to the pain clinic attribute their pain to surgery, with the pain beginning acutely.
- Patients may complain of an unusual type of pain different from the usual postoperative nociceptive pain. Patients often describe the pain as burning or shooting in nature. Pain may extend beyond the territory of a single peripheral nerve.
- The pain is often poorly responsive to opioid analgesia despite high doses being administered.
- **Allodynia** (pain following a normal innocuous stimulation), **hyperalgesia** (pain disproportionate to a noxious stimulus), and **dysaesthesias** (spontaneous unpleasant abnormal sensations) are often seen.
- The presence of a neurological deficit such as brachial plexus avulsion or spinal cord injury makes the presence of acute neuropathic pain more likely.

### Treatment

There is currently no published evidence to guide treatment of acute neuropathic pain.

Mechanisms of neuropathic pain involve central nervous system changes and increased peripheral nerve excitability. Drug therapy focuses on reducing neuronal hyperexcitability and reducing activity of the NMDA receptor in an attempt to reverse neuronal changes.

- Parenteral **ketamine** (NMDA receptor antagonist, 5mg/hr) and **lidocaine** (neuronal membrane stabilisation, 5mg/kg over 30–40min followed by 0.5–1.5mg/kg/hr) can be given in the acute phase to alter both peripheral and central neuronal plasticity. Treatment may take up to a week or more. This should be supervised by a suitably qualified pain specialist.
- Tricyclic antidepressants or anticonvulsant drugs (**carbamazepine**, **gabapentin**, or **pregabalin**) can be used to supplement treatment. These drugs are commonly used in established chronic pain conditions. Common side effects are drowsiness, dizziness, and gait disturbance.
- Acute neuropathic pain after surgery is well recognised but poorly studied. Clinical trials are required to confirm the efficacy of treatments.



*This page intentionally left blank*

# Postoperative nausea and vomiting

**Carl Gwinnutt**

General principles 1114



## General principles

### Definitions

- Nausea is the subjective sensation of the need to vomit.
- Vomiting is the forced expulsion of gastrointestinal contents through the mouth.

### Incidence

- ~30% overall after general anaesthesia (GA).
- Up to 80% in high-risk patients.

### Associated morbidity

- Decreased patient satisfaction, delayed hospital discharge, unexpected hospital admission.
- Wound dehiscence, bleeding, pulmonary aspiration, oesophageal rupture.
- Fluid and electrolyte disturbances.

### Anatomy and physiology

- Activation of 5HT<sub>3</sub> receptors in the gut results in stimulation of vagal afferents. Impulses conducted to the area postrema, in the floor of fourth ventricle.
- This area has a poorly developed blood–brain barrier, allowing detection of emetogenic substances in blood and CSF.
- Can be considered a ‘chemoreceptor trigger zone’ (CTZ).
- Afferents from CTZ, vestibular apparatus, vagus nerve, gut, and limbic system project to nucleus tractus solitarius.
- Multiple central structures throughout medulla are involved in vomiting, which is no longer considered a vomiting ‘centre’ but now designated a ‘central pattern generator for vomiting’.
- Efferents—cranial nerves V, VII, IX, X, and XII and spinal nerves to GI tract, diaphragm, and abdominal muscles.
- Receptor systems—dopaminergic (D<sub>2</sub>), muscarinic, serotonergic (5-HT<sub>3</sub>), histaminergic (H<sub>1</sub>), and neurokinin (NK<sub>1</sub>).

### Risk factors contributing to PONV

#### Key factors

- Females (3 × risk).
- Previous PONV or motion sickness (2–3 × risk).
- Non-smokers (2 × risk).
- Use of perioperative opioids.

Estimated risk of PONV after inhalational technique is 10%, 20%, 40%, 60%, or 80% with none, one, two, three, or four of these factors respectively.

#### Other factors

- Surgery
  - Breast, ophthalmic (strabismus repair), ENT, gynaecological, laparoscopic, laparotomy, craniotomy (posterior fossa), genitourinary, orthopaedic (shoulder procedures), thyroid.

- Anaesthetic
  - Premedication—decreased risk after benzodiazepines and clonidine, increased risk after opioids.
  - Type of anaesthesia—GA 11 × risk of regional technique, propofol TIVA less than volatile.
  - Intraoperative drugs—opioids, nitrous oxide, inhalational drugs, IV drugs (thiopental, etomidate, and ketamine are emetogenic, propofol is possibly antiemetic), neostigmine (muscarinic effects on GI tract).
  - Dehydration increases risk. Avoid too early resumption of food/fluids.

### Management of PONV

PONV is multifactorial (multiple pathways and neurotransmitters); therefore a multimodal approach is most effective. Each drug results in similar relative risk reduction, giving an additive but declining absolute effect.

#### Pharmacologic methods

- Prophylaxis vs treatment remains controversial.
- Prophylaxis with ondansetron is reported to be cost-effective in high-risk patients where PONV >30–33%.
- Combination therapy—two or more drugs with different modes of action is more effective, e.g. ondansetron plus dexamethasone or droperidol.

#### Non-pharmacologic methods

- Acupuncture—pericardium (P6) point on palmar aspect of wrist. As effective as standard antiemetics but no side effects (NNT = 5).
- Others include ginger root extract, hypnosis, suggestion, and homeopathy.

### Current research

- Neurokinin (NK<sub>1</sub>) receptors are found in the medulla and play a role in the nausea and vomiting pathway. Current research shows NK<sub>1</sub> antagonists (e.g. Aprepitant) given prophylactically are more effective than ondansetron at reducing vomiting and have a similar effect at reducing nausea.
- Long-acting 5HT<sub>3</sub> antagonists, e.g. palonosetron.
- Gabapentin reduces PONV as well as postoperative pain.
- Pharmacogenetics. Genetic polymorphism plays a role in transport, metabolism, and receptor binding of 5HT<sub>3</sub> antagonists. This influences individuals' response to drugs.

### The vomiting patient

- Reassurance.
- Correct vital signs appropriately.
- Ensure adequate analgesia and hydration.
- Look for surgical cause (e.g. distended abdomen—insert or aspirate NG tube).
- Antiemetics:
  - Check if a prophylactic antiemetic was given.
  - Combination antiemetic therapy—5-HT<sub>3</sub> antagonist plus dexamethasone and/or droperidol.
  - Consider other drugs (see above).

### Drugs available for the prophylaxis and treatment of PONV

Drug	Action	Dose, route, and frequency	Number needed to treat	Side effects	Other points
Hyoscine hydrobromide	Anticholinergic	0.2–0.4mg SC or IM 6-hourly	3.8	Dry mouth, blurred vision, dizziness, confusion (elderly)	Useful for motion sickness, labyrinth disorders, posterior fossa surgery, opioid-related nausea
Cyclizine	Antihistamine	50mg PO, IM, or IV 8-hourly	10	Sedation, dry mouth, blurred vision. Tachycardia and hypotension when given IV	Useful for motion sickness, labyrinth disorders, opioid-related nausea
Prochlorperazine	D <sub>2</sub> antagonist	12.5mg IM 3mg buccal 6-hourly		Extrapyramidal, sedation	Useful for opioid-related nausea
Metoclopramide	D <sub>2</sub> antagonist	10mg IM or IV		Extrapyramidal, sedation, abdominal cramping, dizziness	Promotes gastric emptying, ↑ lower oesophageal sphincter barrier pressure. Useful for opioid-related nausea
Droperidol	D <sub>2</sub> antagonist	0.5–1.25mg IV 2.5–5mg PO 8-hourly	5	Extrapyramidal, sedation, neuroleptosis, GI disturbances, abnormal LFTs	Used in technique of neurolept analgesia
Ondansetron	5-HT <sub>3</sub> antagonist	1–8mg PO, IM, or IV 8-hourly	5	Hypersensitivity reactions, headache, dizziness, transient elevated liver enzymes	Paediatrics—drug of first choice due to its reduced side-effect profile (0.1mg/kg)

Granisetron	5-HT <sub>3</sub> antagonist	1mg IV 12-hourly		Hypersensitivity reactions, transient elevated liver enzymes	
Tropisetron	5-HT <sub>3</sub> antagonist	2mg IV 24-hourly	6.7 (nausea) 5 (vomiting)	Hypersensitivity reactions, headache, dizziness, abdominal pain	
Palonosetron	5-HT <sub>3</sub> antagonist	0.075mg Single dose		Headache, dizziness, hypersensitivity reactions	Recently licensed in the USA for PONV
Dexamethasone	Steroid	6–10mg IV Single prophylactic dose	4	Wound infection, adrenal suppression	Better in combination with other drugs

### Further reading

- Diemunsch P, Joshi GP, Brichant J-F (2009). Neurokinin-1 receptor antagonists in the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **103**, 7–13.
- Gan TJ, Meyer T, Apfel CC, Chung F, Davis PJ, Eubanks S, et al. (2003). Consensus guidelines for managing postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **97**, 62–71.
- Gan TJ, Meyer TA, Apfel CC, Chung F, Davis PJ, Habib AS, et al. (2007). Society for Ambulatory Anesthesia guidelines for the management of postoperative nausea and vomiting. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, **105**, 1615–1628.
- Habib AS, Gan TJ (2004). Evidence based management of postoperative nausea and vomiting: a review. *Canadian Journal of Anesthesia*, **51**, 326–341.

# **Regional anaesthesia**

**Adam Shonfeld and  
William Harrop-Griffiths**

- Regional anaesthesia 1120
- Fundamentals of safe practice 1122
- Local anaesthetics and adjuncts 1124
- Finding nerves 1128
- Ultrasound in regional anaesthesia 1130
- Needle design 1133
- Continuous regional anaesthesia 1134
- Nerve blocks: 1136
  - Neck 1136
  - Upper limb 1138
  - Trunk 1150
  - Lower limb 1158
  - Neuraxial 1168
- Regional anaesthesia and coagulation disorders 1174
- Regional anaesthesia and nerve injury 1178
- Management of local anaesthetic toxicity 1182
- Which blocks for which operations? 1186
- Resources:
  - Dermatome map 1188
  - Twitches and nerves 1190
  - Further reading 1191



## Regional anaesthesia

Regional anaesthesia is ideal for many operations, in particular those on the limbs and lower abdomen. For those who do not wish to be fully awake for surgery, sedation can also be used. For many other operations regional analgesia can complement general anaesthesia and provide lasting and effective postoperative pain relief.

Although regional anaesthesia has side effects and complications (see p1178 and p1182), it is an excellent option for many patients, especially those with major comorbidities such as significant heart and lung disease. Spinal and epidural anaesthesia are the techniques of choice for Caesarean section for the vast majority of women. Current research is investigating whether regional anaesthesia can affect the incidence of chronic postoperative pain and tumour recurrence after cancer surgery.

Regional anaesthesia can be accomplished with basic equipment. The use of a peripheral nerve stimulator will improve the success of a wide range of blocks (see p1128). Despite the expense, the use of ultrasound (US) machines is becoming established practice and may improve block quality, decrease local anaesthetic doses, and reduce complication rates.

The regional anaesthetist needs a detailed knowledge of anatomy, good manual dexterity, updated resuscitation skills, and the willingness to accept that they will need to be committed to gain the best results.

Unfortunately, regional anaesthesia can never offer 100% success, and a 'Plan B' is essential—this will usually be general anaesthesia. The knowledge, skills, and facilities necessary to provide safe general anaesthesia are therefore a prerequisite for the performance of regional anaesthesia.

### Desert island blocks

No single anaesthetist can be proficient in all blocks. 'Desert island blocks' are those that ideally all anaesthetists should know how to perform, do not require high-tech equipment, and cover as much of the body as possible. A suggested shortlist would include:

- Interscalene brachial plexus block (for shoulder and elbow surgery).
- Axillary brachial plexus block (for every other part of the arm).
- Labat sciatic nerve block (for almost all the leg).
- Femoral nerve block (for the rest of the leg).
- Spinal anaesthesia (for the abdomen).

Other anaesthetists may choose different blocks, but if you become competent in these five, there is little that you cannot provide for your patients in the way of regional anaesthesia.

## Fundamentals of safe practice

### Patient consent and preparation

In order to provide informed consent, a patient needs to have an understanding of the benefits and risks of the proposed therapy and of alternative treatments available to them. In terms of regional anaesthesia, this will include:

- An explanation of the comparative risks and benefits of regional and general anaesthesia.
- An explanation of how the block will be performed and a description of the use of sedation or general anaesthesia in addition to the regional block.

Although most countries (including the UK) do not require specific written consent for anaesthesia, the consent process for regional anaesthesia should be documented in the notes, and mention should be made of the specific risks that have been discussed with the patient. Generic complications relevant to most regional techniques include **failure**, **local anaesthetic (LA) toxicity**, and **nerve damage**, and these should be discussed with patients. Complications specific to particular techniques are described with each block (see also pp32–34).

### Equipment

The drugs and equipment necessary for resuscitation and the administration of general anaesthesia should be immediately available and checked. Equipment necessary for the regional anaesthetic should be prepared and drugs clearly labelled.

### Monitoring

This should include the continuous presence of an anaesthetist and the provision of an ECG, non-invasive blood pressure, and pulse oximetry.<sup>1</sup>

### Assistance

Trained assistance is as necessary for the safe and effective conduct of a regional anaesthetic as it is for a general anaesthetic.

### Environment

Regional anaesthesia should, if possible, be performed in a well-lit, quiet, and calm environment, and in an unhurried manner. Appropriate aseptic precautions should be taken and ready access to additional assistance should be available.

## Documentation

In addition to standard 'logbook data', the documentation of a regional anaesthetic block should include the following:

- Whether the block performed is on an anaesthetised, sedated, or awake patient.
- Block(s) performed.
- Needle(s) used.
- Location technique used (US, peripheral nerve stimulator (PNS), loss of resistance, etc.).
- Volume and concentration of LA used, along with adjuncts.
- If using a PNS, the stimulus duration and current threshold, and a comment on whether the start of LA injection was associated with 'positive twitch abolition'.
- A comment on whether the injection(s) was (were) easy and painless.
- A note of any complications that occurred.
- A note on whether the block was successful and whether it needed supplementation.

## Training and supervision

The era of regional anaesthesia as a 'have a go' subspecialty is now gone. The acquisition of a detailed knowledge of anatomy and pharmacology should be followed by a study of the block to be performed. The trainee should then discuss the block with an appropriately experienced teacher and should observe the performance of the block on several occasions. The teacher should closely supervise the trainee in the performance of the block for as many times as is necessary to be confident that the trainee is both competent and safe in the performance of the block.

## Personal audit

Regional anaesthetists should keep an accurate and complete record of the blocks they perform. Difficulties encountered, success rates, and complications should be recorded and should be both compared with available published data and discussed in an appraisal process. Lower success rates or higher complication rates than are currently accepted, or any serious complications, should be discussed with an appropriate colleague.

## Local anaesthetics and adjuncts

- The duration of action of a local anaesthetic (LA) is related to the extent of protein binding at the site of action and factors that affect removal of drug from the site, e.g. blood supply. The speed of onset of an LA depends on the local availability of unionised free base. This can be improved by increasing the concentration of local anaesthetic or increasing the pH of the local anaesthetic by the addition of bicarbonate. The acidic, low-pH environment surrounding infected areas, e.g. abscesses, impairs the action of LAs.

### Properties of local anaesthetics

Local anaesthetic	pKa	Onset	Protein binding (%)	Duration of action	Maximum dose (mg/kg)
Bupivacaine	8.1	Medium	95	Long	2
Levobupivacaine	8.1	Medium	95	Long	2
Ropivacaine	8.1	Medium	94	Long	3
Prilocaine	7.7	Fast	55	Medium	6 (8 with adrenaline)
Lidocaine	7.7	Fast	65	Medium	3 (7 with adrenaline)
Articaine	7.8	Very fast	70	Medium	7
Amethocaine	8.5	Slow	75	Long	1.5
Procaine	8.9	Slow	6	Short	12
Cocaine	8.6			Short	1.5

### Choice of agent

- If rapid-onset peripheral blockade for surgery is needed, use **lidocaine** or **prilocaine** 1–2%. The low pKa of these agents means that more molecules are present in the unionised form and they are therefore able to cross the cell membrane rapidly. For long-lasting postoperative analgesia, use **bupivacaine** or **levobupivacaine** 0.25–0.5%. **Ropivacaine** has a slightly faster onset and slightly shorter duration than bupivacaine. When using large doses of local anaesthetics or injecting into areas of rapid uptake, consider the use of levobupivacaine or ropivacaine, which may be associated with a lesser propensity to produce LA toxicity than racemic bupivacaine. If a continuous infusion is used, a low concentration of local anaesthetic might be preferred, e.g. levobupivacaine 0.1% or ropivacaine 0.2%. **Articaine** is a recently introduced agent for use in dentistry. It has a rapid onset and high safety profile and appears to diffuse through tissues more readily than other agents.

### Mixtures of local anaesthetics

- A mixture of a short-acting LA, e.g. lidocaine or prilocaine, and a long-acting LA, e.g. bupivacaine or levobupivacaine, is often used. However, caution should be exercised—the side effects and toxicity are probably additive, and errors may increase if drug cocktails are prepared.

### Commonly used local anaesthetics

Drug	Characteristics
Lidocaine	Medium-acting amide. Moderate vasodilatation. Cerebral irritation before cardiac depression. Duration: enhanced and peak plasma levels reduced by adrenaline. Available in high concentrations for use in topical airway anaesthesia (4% solution and 10 mg/dose spray). A Class 1b antiarrhythmic
Prilocaine	Medium-acting amide. No vasodilatation. Rapid metabolism and low toxicity. Metabolised to o-toluidine causing methaemoglobinaemia (care in obstetrics and anaemia), caution with doses >600mg (adult). Used for intravenous regional anaesthesia due to its rapid metabolism
Bupivacaine	Long-acting amide. Racemic mixture of R and S enantiomers. Prolonged cardiotoxicity in higher doses
Levobupivacaine	S-enantiomer of bupivacaine. Slightly reduced intensity and duration of motor block with less cardiotoxicity than bupivacaine
Ropivacaine	Long-acting amide, pure S-enantiomer. Less duration of motor block than bupivacaine. Less cardiotoxic than bupivacaine or levobupivacaine
Articaine	Medium-acting amide. Licensed for dental use in the UK. Low toxicity and improved penetration of tissues. Available as 4% solution with adrenaline
Amethocaine	Long-acting ester. Rapid absorption from mucous membranes or transdermal route. Relatively toxic
Benzocaine	Short-acting ester. Low potency. Used as lozenges
Cocaine	Short-acting ester. Slow onset, profound vasoconstriction by preventing noradrenaline reuptake. Limited local anaesthetic use, toxic (hypertension, convulsions, arrhythmias). Part of Moffett's solution (2ml 8% cocaine, 2ml 1% sodium bicarbonate, 1ml 1:1000 adrenaline)

**Topical local anaesthetics*****EMLA (eutectic mixture of local anaesthetics)***

- Contains lidocaine 2.5% + prilocaine 2.5%, arlatone (emulsifier), carbopol (thickener), distilled water, and sodium hydroxide.
- Application 1–5h before venepuncture.
- Side effects include blanching and vasoconstriction.
- Avoid on broken skin or mucous membranes and in patients <1yr old.
- Can cause methaemoglobinaemia in at-risk individuals.

***Ametop (topical amethocaine gel)***

- Contains amethocaine 4%, xanthan gum, methyl and propyl-p-hydroxybenzoate, water, and saline.
- Application 30min before venepuncture, and 45min before cannulation. Remove gel after 1h.
- Side effects are erythema, oedema, and pruritus.
- Not recommended in babies <1 month.
- Lasts for 4–6h after removal of cream.

## Commonly used adjuncts

Drug	Characteristics
Bicarbonate	Added to increase speed of onset by increasing pH of solution and therefore fraction of unionised LA. Add 1ml 8.4% to every 10ml lidocaine or 20ml bupivacaine. Discard LA if precipitate forms
Adrenaline	Decreases vascular uptake, thereby increasing duration of LA effect. Decreases peak plasma levels of lidocaine and mepivacaine. Little benefit if long-acting LAs used. Less effective in epidural than peripheral blocks. Do not exceed total dose of 200µg in adult (halve this during halothane anaesthesia). Do not use for digital or penile blocks. Adding 1ml of 1:10 000 solution (100µg/ml) or 0.1ml of 1:1000 solution (1mg/ml) to 20ml of LA produces a 1:200 000 dilution (5µg/ml)
Clonidine	Prolongs sensory and motor block and duration of postoperative analgesia. Acts on $\alpha_2$ adrenergic receptors. Effective in epidural, caudal, spinal, and peripheral nerve blocks. Use is limited by hypotension and sedation. Use 1–2µg/ml
Ketamine	An NMDA receptor agonist with weak LA properties. 0.5mg/kg may extend and deepen caudal anaesthesia. S-ketamine has better side-effect profile
Opioids	Proven synergism with intrathecal and epidural LA. Beware delayed respiratory depression with intrathecal morphine in particular. All opioids have been used. Of doubtful benefit in peripheral blocks. Intra-articular morphine 2–5mg in knee surgery is used in combination with LA by some surgeons. Evidence is weak for its efficacy. Intrathecal remifentanyl is contraindicated due to the presence of glycine
Glucose	Used to increase baricity of LA for intrathecal use. Hyperbaric bupivacaine contains 80mg/ml dextrose. Allows more consistent spread of block and provides the opportunity to control spread by altering patient position
Hyaluronidase	Used in peribulbar and retrobulbar blocks of the eye to enhance LA spread. Dose 15U/ml



## Finding nerves

### Anatomical techniques

The safe practice of regional anaesthesia is based on a detailed knowledge of anatomy and its variations. Even though many techniques based primarily on surface anatomy and the palpation of deeper structures have been superseded by the use of ultrasound (US) and nerve stimulation, several purely anatomy-based blocks are still effective and practical. Both US and nerve stimulation still require surface anatomy as a starting point.

### Clicks, pops, and loss of resistance

Some techniques such as the ilioinguinal, fascia lata, and transversus abdominis plane (TAP) blocks when used without US guidance depend upon the sensation of a blunt or blunted needle passing through a fascial plane to identify the correct anatomical location for injection of local anaesthetic. These 'clicks' and 'pops' take experience to appreciate and even for experienced anaesthetists do not always guarantee correct placement of the needle tip. Some fascial planes, such as the rectus sheath, will produce a 'scratching' sensation if the needle is moved so as to rub against it—this may also guide correct positioning of the needle. Loss of resistance has been used successfully for many decades to identify the epidural space correctly, and can also be used for some other techniques such as the TAP block.

### Paresthesia

Direct contact between needle and nerve may result in an unpleasant 'electric shock' sensation that is felt in the distribution of the target nerve. This is termed 'paresthesia' and, before the introduction of nerve stimulation, was often sought as confirmation of needle proximity to a nerve. A popular adage of the 1960s and 1970s was 'no paresthesia, no anaesthesia'. With the availability of nerve stimulators and US machines, paresthesia is now seen as a potential indicator of nerve damage resulting from needle-nerve contact. However, paresthesia-based techniques remain safe and effective in experienced hands and, in the absence of nerve stimulators and US machines, have much to recommend them.

### Nerve stimulation

The use of nerve stimulators has dominated the art of nerve location in the last 20yr. The production of evoked muscle contractions at low current levels (0.2–0.5mA) is thought to confirm the placement of a needle in close proximity to a nerve, while the production of evoked

contractions at very low current thresholds ( $<0.2\text{mA}$ ) is thought to indicate likely intraneural needle tip placement. If the target nerve contains sensory fibres, the sensation may be unpleasant. The use of nerve stimulators remains rightly popular, either on their own if no US machines are available or in combination with US to provide the anaesthetist with reassurance that the structure on the screen being approached by the needle is the target nerve.

### Using a peripheral nerve stimulator (PNS)

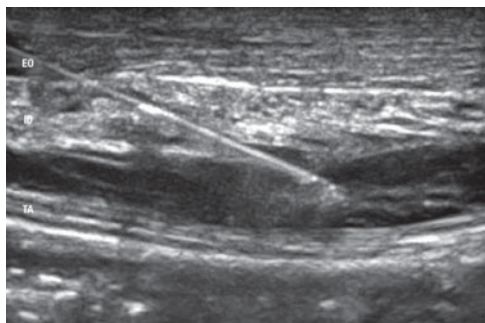
- Connect the stimulating needle to the negative lead (black) and ground electrode or ECG pad to positive lead (red) — **‘negative to needle, positive to patient’**.
- Keep the ECG electrode at least 20cm from the site of injection. Start with a current of 1.5mA and frequency of 1–2 Hz. In theory, a stimulus duration of 0.1ms will preferentially stimulate motor nerves rather than sensory nerves and may be less unpleasant for the patient.
- Insert the insulated needle. At all times move the needle slowly and gently, watching for signs of nerve stimulation. Aim to move the needle in small, steady steps, no more than 1–2mm at a time.
- When muscle contractions are evoked, try to optimise the position of the needle to obtain good motor response in the muscles supplied by the target nerve with a stimulating current of 0.2–0.5mA.
- Aspirate to exclude intravascular needle placement and inject 1ml of local anaesthetic solution: the motor response should disappear because the nerve is displaced by fluid. Inject the full volume in small boluses interspersed by careful aspirations.
- If the motor response does not disappear with the initial 1ml, suspect that the needle may be within the nerve sheath. Reposition the needle before further injection.
- If there is any pain or significant resistance to injection, stop immediately and reposition the needle—it may be in a nerve.

## Ultrasound in regional anaesthesia<sup>1,2</sup>

Ultrasound (US) relies on the piezoelectric effect to produce meaningful images from pulsed sound waves of 1–20MHz, well above the limit of human hearing. The piezoelectric effect occurs when crystals and certain ceramics are deformed by the passage of an electrical current; they also exhibit the reverse effect—they produce an electrical potential in response to physical compression. This property can be used both to send and receive pressure waves in the form of US. The US transducer acts as both transmitter and receiver. The length of time between transmitting and receiving a signal corresponds to the tissue depth that the signal was reflected from. The strength of the returning signal indicates the amount of reflected waves, which corresponds to the density of the medium. Bone and air both totally reflect the US beam and cause shadowing beyond their position. Also of importance is the frequency of US used: the higher the frequency, the better the resolution of the image. However, when using higher frequencies, the penetration depth is decreased; thus the highest frequency that can give acceptable image quality should be used.

### In-plane and out-of-plane (see figure 41.1)

When using an in-plane (IP) technique, the US probe is held parallel to the needle so that the entire shaft of the needle should be visible. This has the advantage that you can keep the tip of the needle visible at all times and thereby avoid its contact with nerve or other structures that it would be best not to enter. In the out-of-plane (OOP) technique, the US beam is perpendicular to the needle and only a cross section of the needle is visible as a small white dot. Some blocks and approaches lend themselves to the IP technique and some to the OOP technique. Inexperienced US users are probably safer using the IP technique if it is practicable for the block being performed; experienced operators can use either IP or OOP safely.



**Fig. 41.1** Whole of needle seen with IP technique for US (TAP block).

### Practice makes perfect

Manipulating the US probe and needle whilst looking at the displayed image can be a difficult skill to acquire. Whilst knowledge and experience are important, there are a few tips that will accelerate your passage from novice to expert:

- Get taught properly by experienced US users.
- Learn from all available media—online videos, US and cadaver courses, and phantoms as well as books.
- Don't just scan when performing a block. Use US machines to scan easily accessible aspects of yourself, colleagues, and consented patients to become familiar with the technology.
- When performing blocks, position yourself, the area being blocked, and the display in a line so you can easily look from your needle and probe to the display.
- Always orientate your probe so the left and right of the display correspond to the probe.
- The needle needs to be in the beam to be seen; smooth, small, slow movements, rotating or jiggling the needle, or small 1–2ml injections can help locate the needle.

### Advantages and disadvantages

The use of US to guide regional anaesthetic techniques has been shown to accelerate block onset, increase block success rate, decrease the dose of local anaesthetic used, decrease the time taken to perform nerve blocks, and decrease the incidence of certain complications such as vascular puncture. It was hoped when nerve stimulation techniques became widespread that there would be evidence of a significant decrease in the incidence of nerve damage when compared to the use of paresthesia and

landmark methods. Whilst nerve stimulation became the gold standard, a clear benefit in terms of nerve damage was never conclusively established. Although it is now hoped that US-guided regional anaesthesia will ultimately be proven to be associated with a decrease in the incidence of nerve damage, there is currently no evidence to support this.

- 1 Marhofer P, Harrop-Griffiths W, Kettner SC, Kirchmair L (2010). Fifteen years of ultrasound guidance in regional anaesthesia: Part 1. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **104**, 538–546.
- 2 Marhofer P, Harrop-Griffiths W, Willschke H, Kirchmair L (2010). Fifteen years of ultrasound guidance in regional anaesthesia: Part 2—recent developments in block techniques. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **104**, 673–683.

## Needle design

Four types of needle tip design are commonly used for regional anaesthesia, whether peripheral nerve blocks (PNBs) or neuraxial blocks (spinal and epidural blocks). These are:

- **Long-bevelled needles** (usually 10–15°). These are sharp and pass readily through tissues without giving the operator a clear sensation of passage of the needle through tissue planes and fascial layers. It is argued that although long-bevelled needles are more likely to enter individual nerves, they are less likely to damage the nerve fascicles when they do so.
- **Short-bevelled needles** (18–45°). These are relatively blunt and give the operator a clearer sensation of the passage of the needle through tissue planes and fascial layers. It is argued that these needles are less likely to enter individual nerves, although they may do more damage to nerve fascicles if they do.
- **Pencil-point needles.** These are popular for spinal anaesthesia, as they are thought to separate the fibres of the dura mater rather than cut them, as would a bevelled needle. They are associated with a lower incidence of postdural puncture headache (PDPH) than the use of the bevelled alternative (often called the Quincke-tip needle). Pencil-point needles used for PNBs are so blunt that they are often difficult to pass through intact skin, and provide marked operator feedback—often more than is wanted. It is worth noting that pencil-point needles have an injection orifice proximal to the tip of the needle. This may protect against intraneural injection but may lead to the LA being injected into a different plane to that in which the tip has been placed.
- **Tuohy needle.** This was originally designed to allow epidural catheterisation (and remains the most popular epidural needle design in many countries including the UK), but the tip design has also been adapted for use in placing peripheral nerve catheters.

Other needle tips have been designed, manufactured, and brought into clinical use, but none remains as popular as the four above.

Needles designed for use with nerve stimulators are often insulated—coated with a non-conducting material that allows current flow only from a small area at the tip of the needle. Although there is evidence that this increases the current density at the point at which the LA is injected, and thereby may improve the accuracy of nerve location with a PNS, there is also good evidence that uninsulated needles can be successfully used for regional anaesthesia. If available, insulated needles should be used.

## Continuous regional anaesthesia

Although single-shot PNBs with long-acting LAs can last for many hours, the pain resulting from surgery can outlast them. Continuous regional analgesia (CRA), a technique in which a catheter is placed near a nerve or plexus and LA is injected or infused down the catheter for some hours or even days after surgery, can match the duration of the analgesia to that of the pain. A number of studies have shown that CRA provides superior analgesia to traditional systemic techniques, while accelerating early mobilisation and improving rehabilitation. In addition to this, the many and various side effects of opioid and non-steroidal analgesia are minimised or avoided.

All CRA techniques are based on a single-shot PNB technique. However, the placement of a catheter requires special equipment, scrupulous asepsis, and additional experience. Catheters are placed through a needle, which may be similar in design to a Tuohy needle or may be placed either over a needle or through a cannula that has been positioned close to the nerve. It is possible to confirm the correct placement of a nerve catheter either with the use of US imaging or by seeking evoked contractions in response to nerve stimulation via a 'stimulating catheter'.

As the catheters are prone to dislodgement, it is wise to insert them through relatively immobile skin and to secure them firmly. Popular sites for catheterisation include: interscalene, supracavicular, and infraclavicular (upper limb); paravertebral (trunk); posterior lumbar plexus, sciatic, femoral, popliteal sciatic (lower limb).

Local anaesthetic drugs at low concentrations are infused or injected down the catheter to provide analgesia. Bupivacaine 0.1% and ropivacaine 0.2% are popular for this application, and seem to be able to provide good analgesia with minimal motor blockade. Pumps that provide a background infusion but have the capacity to provide patient-actuated boluses are increasingly popular. Pumps may be either reusable and electronic or disposable and elastomeric; these latter pumps tend to be lighter and more practicable for postoperative and outpatient use.

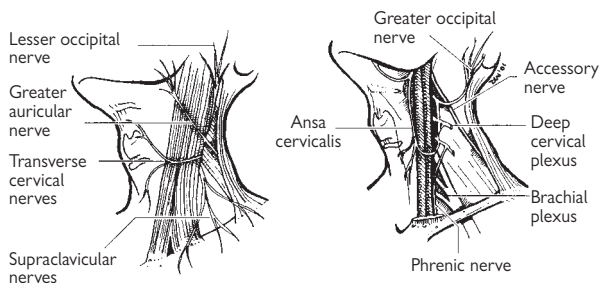
Surveillance during CRA is important: the patient needs to be taught how to care for an insensate limb and both patient and carers need to be taught to identify the signs and symptoms of LA toxicity and catheter sepsis. Nerve catheters can never be 100% successful, and there will need to be a back-up plan for analgesia in the event of failure of CRA.

Continuous nerve blocks carry with them all the complications of one-shot blocks, along with additional risks of LA toxicity, catheter misplacement or movement, and bacterial colonisation and sepsis. Notwithstanding the fact that the needles used to place catheters are larger than those used in one-shot blocks, there is currently no evidence of an increased incidence of nerve damage associated with CRA.



## Nerve blocks: neck

(See figure 41.2.)



**Fig. 41.2** Superficial and deep cervical plexus.

### Superficial cervical plexus block

- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for carotid surgery and other superficial neck procedures.
- **Landmarks:** the superficial cervical plexus comprises four nerves (the lesser occipital, greater auricular, cutaneous cervical, and supraclavicular), which form from the primary rami of C2–C4 and branch around the poster border of the sternocleidomastoid fanning outwards. The nerves provide sensation to the anterolateral neck. The patient's head should be turned slightly away from the side to be blocked. The point of injection is at the midpoint of the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle (SCM)—this is usually at the level of the cricoid cartilage, i.e. the C6 level. After puncturing the first fascial layer, LA should be infiltrated 2–3cm cranially and caudally along the posterior border of SCM using a total of 10ml.
- **Sono-anatomy:** start by imaging a transverse cross section of the neck along the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid. The point of emergence of the nerves around the SCM should be identified. At this point, using an IP posterior approach, LA should be infiltrated just deep under the lateral border of SCM. The carotid and internal and external jugular should be identified before performing the block to aid avoiding vessel puncture.
- **Side effects** of note: phrenic nerve block, brachial plexus block, vagus nerve block, Horner's syndrome.
- **Complications:** vessel puncture, haematoma formation, intravascular injection.

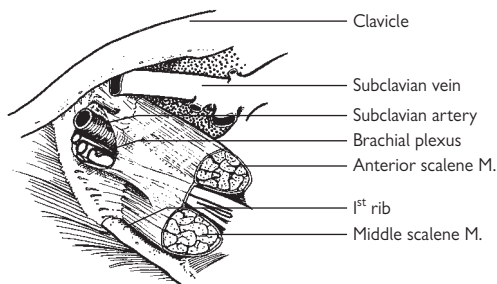
## Deep cervical plexus block

- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for carotid surgery and other superficial neck surgery.
- **Landmarks:** this will block C2–C4 nerve roots and can be considered a paravertebral block of the cervical region, albeit one accessed from the side of the neck. The patient should be lying supine with their head turned slightly away from the side of the block. The mastoid process, the transverse process of C6 (Chassaignac's tubercle—at the level of the cricoid, just behind the sternocleidomastoid), and posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle should be identified. A line should be drawn or marked between the mastoid process and Chassaignac's tubercle. The needle should be inserted at 2, 4, and 6cm distances (this varies with size of patient) from the mastoid process along this line to contact the transverse processes of the C2, C3, and C4 vertebrae; the transverse processes may be palpable at the appropriate distances. A perpendicular or slight caudad angulation should be used. The needle should not be angulated cephalad as this will increase the risk of inserting the needle between the vertebrae towards the spinal cord. On contact with the transverse processes, usually within 1–2cm of the skin (rarely >2.5cm), the needle should be withdrawn slightly and after careful and repeated aspiration, 3–5ml LA injected. A single injection at C3 or C4 of 10–15ml may be as effective as multiple injections.
- **Sono-anatomy:** using a transverse plane scan from the base of the neck moving cranially. After visualising the C5 root, continue cranially until the C4 root can be seen just posterior to the tip of the shadow of the C4 transverse process with the shadow of the articular process dorsally. Using an OOP technique with the needle cranial to the probe, advance the needle until it is dorsal to the C4 root and after careful aspiration inject the LA. Scan further cranially and repeat for C3 and C2.
- **Twitches** if using PNS: C3—scalenus medius, C4—scalenus anterior.
- **LA dose:** 3–5ml per level if multiple injections used or 10–15ml if single injection.
- **Side effects** of note: phrenic nerve block, brachial plexus block, vagus nerve block.
- **Complications:** epidural or intrathecal injection, vertebral artery puncture, injection into the vertebral artery (as going direct to the brain this may result in immediate seizures).
- **Tips and tweaks:** never perform block on a patient with contralateral phrenic nerve palsy (risk of bilateral phrenic nerve block). The carotid body is innervated by the glossopharyngeal nerve and will require supplemental LA from the surgeon.

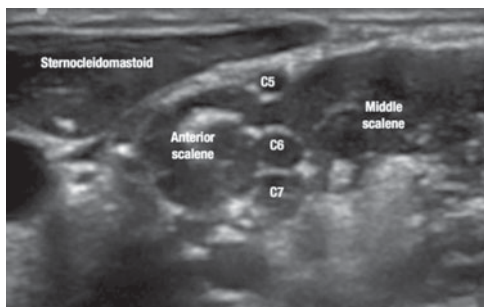
## Nerve blocks: upper limb

### Interscalene brachial plexus block

(See figures 41.3 and 41.4.)



**Fig. 41.3** Brachial plexus passing over the first rib.



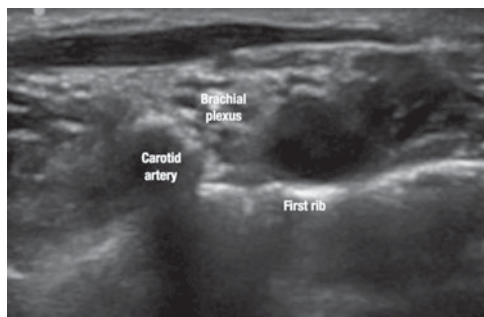
**Fig. 41.4** Ultrasound image of the C<sub>5</sub>, C<sub>6</sub>, and C<sub>7</sub> roots lying in the plane between the two scalene muscles.

- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for shoulder, humerus or elbow surgery.
- **Landmarks:** position the patient with the head slightly turned away from the side of the block. Insertion point is at the level of the cricoid cartilage (C<sub>6</sub>), lateral to the lateral border of the sternocleidomastoid, in the 'groove' between scalenus anterior and scalenus medius. Winnie describes passing the needle in a 'mesiad, dorsad and slightly caudad' direction, which can be imitated by directing the needle towards the contralateral elbow. The nerves are very superficial, depth no greater than 2.5cm.

- **Sono-anatomy:** the cervical nerve roots can be visualised lateral to the carotid and internal jugular between the scalene muscles with C5 most superficial and C6, C7, C8 and T1 progressively deeper. A muscle bridge may exist between C7 and C8, which may impair spread of LA to C8 and T1. Position the probe to give a transverse plane, i.e. a cross section of the neck. Approach can be IP or OOP. The IP posterior approach requires insertion through scalenus medius and may risk damage to the dorsal scapular nerve and the long thoracic nerve.
- **Twitches** if using PNS: C5 deltoid, C6 biceps
- **LA dose:** traditionally ~20ml for analgesia and ~40ml for anaesthesia. If circumferential LA around nerves visualised on US, these doses may be at least halved.
- **Side effects:** phrenic nerve block (up to 100%), Horner's syndrome, recurrent laryngeal nerve block causing a hoarse voice, subjective dyspnoea.
- **Complications:** vessel puncture, intravascular injection, intrathecal or epidural injection, pneumothorax.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - Phrenic nerve stimulation means the needle is too anterior. Levator scapulae stimulation indicates the needle is too posterior (on the dorsal scapular nerve).
  - Triceps or pectoralis major contractions may be acceptable if deltoid or biceps contractions are not found.
  - The external jugular may lie over the entry point; note its position and avoid.
  - We recommend that this block only be performed on awake or lightly sedated patients.
  - Avoid in patients with severe respiratory disease and contralateral phrenic nerve palsy because of phrenic nerve block.

## Supraclavicular block

(See figure 41.5.)



**Fig. 41.5** Ultrasound image of the brachial plexus lying adjacent to the subclavian artery as it passes over the first rib.

- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for elbow, forearm, wrist, or hand surgery. The traditional Kulenkampff technique was abandoned in the 1980s because of the high incidence of pneumothorax. The technique languished until the introduction of US.
- **Landmarks:** subclavian artery and brachial plexus are easily visible as they pass over the first rib in the supraclavicular fossa. In-plane technique with lateral needle entry allows whole of needle to be kept in continuous view and to deposit LA accurately around brachial plexus.
- The subclavian artery is not the only blood vessel in the area, and colour-flow Doppler is advised to identify all vessels close to the plexus.
- Perform injection with an US image of the artery resting on the first rib, not pleura. This will mean that a needle directed too inferiorly will be more likely to encounter the bone, not the pleura.
- Injection should include the angle between the artery and first rib (the 'corner pocket') to increase success rate.
- Pneumothorax still possible despite use of US.
- Rapid onset and good efficacy causes some to call this block 'the arm spinal'.
- **LA dose:** 20–40ml as necessary to surround all nerves of plexus.
- **Side effects** of note: Horner's syndrome, phrenic nerve block.
- **Complications:** pneumothorax, artery puncture, intravascular injection.

### Vertical infraclavicular block

- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia of forearm, wrist, or hand surgery.
- **Landmarks:** with the patient lying supine, palpate the sternal notch and the anterior process of the acromion. Mark the midpoint of the clavicle between these two points. The needle should pass just below the clavicle, with the needle placed absolutely vertically—no medial or caudal angulation, as doing so may increase the risk of pneumothorax. The entry point should be moved slightly medially or laterally to achieve appropriate stimulation. Take care with depth—never go deeper than 5cm except in very large patients.

- **Sono-anatomy:** position the probe beneath the midpoint of the clavicle to achieve a circular cross section of the subclavian artery. An IP technique can help to minimise the risk of pneumothorax. It is important to achieve LA deposition posterior and lateral to the artery. This may be achieved with spread from a single injection or the needle may be repositioned medial, lateral, and posterior to the artery between the artery and each cord to achieve this.
- **Use of US** allows infraclavicular techniques more distal in the plexus than the vertical infraclavicular.
- **Twitches** if using PNS: lateral cord—elbow flexion (do not accept—too lateral), posterior cord—wrist or finger extension, biceps contraction (accept), pectoralis twitch (too superficial).
- **LA dose:** 40ml if single injection or 10ml per nerve, ideally achieve circumferential LA around the cords if they can be visualised with US.
- **Side effects** of note: Horner's syndrome, phrenic nerve block.
- **Complications:** pneumothorax, artery puncture, intravascular injection.

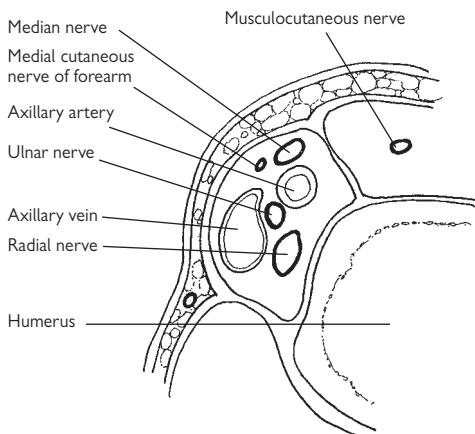
### Coracoid block

- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for elbow, wrist, or hand surgery.
- **Landmarks:** the arm should be adducted and elbow flexed to 90° with the forearm placed on the abdomen. The coracoid process of the scapula may be palpated inferior to the lateral third of the clavicle. It must be differentiated from the acromion, which can be palpated as a bony continuation of the distal clavicle. The point of insertion is 1.5cm medial and 1.5cm caudal to the most anterior point of the coracoid. The depth can vary between 3 and 9cm depending on body mass.
- **Sono-anatomy:** the use of US will be technically difficult in patients with a high BMI as the cords of the brachial plexus will be deep. The US probe should be positioned in a parasagittal plane just medial to the coracoid process. The subclavian and the lateral (musculocutaneous and median nerves), medial (median and ulnar nerves), and posterior (radial nerve) cords should be visualised. Using an IP technique the needle tip should be advanced until it lies posterior to the artery. Continuous US monitoring should be used to evaluate spread of LA whilst it is injected in 5ml aliquots.
- **Twitches:** pectoralis major—expected at 1–2cm depth (needle too superficial), lateral cord—elbow flexion (do not accept—too lateral), medial cord—wrist flexion (acceptable), posterior cord—wrist or finger extension (optimal).

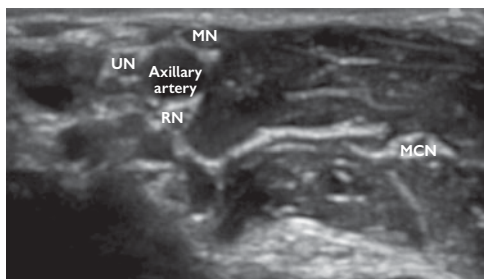
- **LA dose:** 40ml, less if US used.
- **Side effects** of note: nil.
- **Complications:** vascular puncture, intravascular injection, pneumothorax.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - Never angle the needle medially—increased risk of pneumothorax.
  - Whilst proximal spread and anaesthesia around the upper part of the arm may occur, a coracoid block may not block upper arm pain, so if a tourniquet is used the block will often need to be combined with a general anaesthetic.

### Axillary block

(See figures 41.6 and 41.7.)



**Fig. 41.6** Relationship of the axillary artery and nerves in the axilla.



**Fig. 41.7** Ultrasound image showing the median nerve (MN), ulnar nerve (UN), and radial nerve (RN) lying around the axillary artery; the musculocutaneous nerve (MCN) lies between the biceps and coracobrachialis muscles.

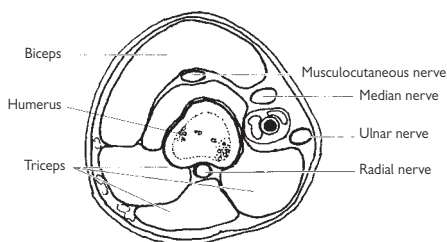
- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for forearm, wrist, or hand surgery.
- **Landmarks:** position the patient with the arm abducted to 90°. Palpate the axillary artery high in the axilla. There are four nerves surrounding the artery that require blocking: the median and musculocutaneous nerves (both above), the radial nerve (usually behind), and the ulnar (usually below). The radial, ulnar, and median nerves are all within the fascial sheath surrounding the artery at approximately 5–15mm depth. The musculocutaneous nerve has a proximal origin and has usually left the fascial sheath to run in the body of the coracobrachialis muscle at the axillary level at which the block is performed. Membrane compartments may exist and may stop a single injection technique from anaesthetising all the nerves. A nerve stimulator or US technique isolating each nerve will have a greater chance of success but also a greater degree of complexity.
- **Sono-anatomy:** the US probe should be positioned high in the axilla and perpendicular to the humerus. An OOP technique is usually used but an IP approach can also be used. Following the nerves up from their location at the elbow may help their identification in the axilla. Blocking deeper nerves first will prevent the superficial anatomy becoming distorted and may prevent air artefacts caused by tiny bubbles in the LA mixture. A distinct 'pop' may be felt on entering the sheath.
- **Twitches:** radial—thumb, wrist, or finger extension; ulnar—adduction of the thumb, little finger flexion; median—finger and wrist flexion and pronation of the wrist; musculocutaneous—biceps and brachialis contraction (see also p1190).
- **LA dose:** 30–40ml in single or divided doses when using a nerve stimulator—volumes used with US are much less.
- **Side effects** of note: nil.
- **Complications:** artery puncture (compress for 5min if it occurs), intravascular injection.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - Highly variable anatomy exists, the nerve positions may differ, and the musculocutaneous nerve may lie inside or outside the fascial sheath.
  - There may be multiple veins within the sheath and great care should be exercised to avoid intravenous injection of LA.
  - Tourniquet pain is usually caused by musculocutaneous and axillary nerve territory pain, which will not reliably be prevented by axillary nerve blockade.



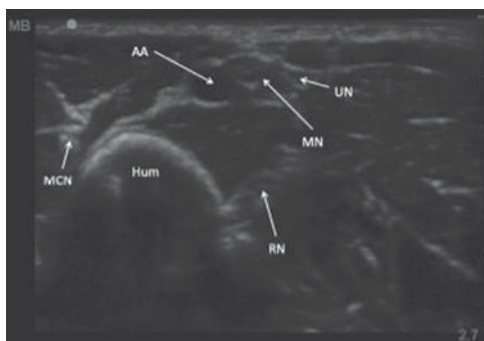
- Some techniques use intentional arterial transfixion to reach the axillary artery with 20ml LA deposited posterior and 20ml anterior to the artery. This is now seldom used.

### Mid-humeral block

(See figures 41.8 and 41.9.)



**Fig. 41.8** Mid-humeral block.



**Fig. 41.9** Ultrasound image showing structures at the mid-humeral level: humerus (Hum), axillary artery (AA), median nerve (MN), ulnar nerve (UN), radial nerve (RN), and musculocutaneous nerve (MCN).

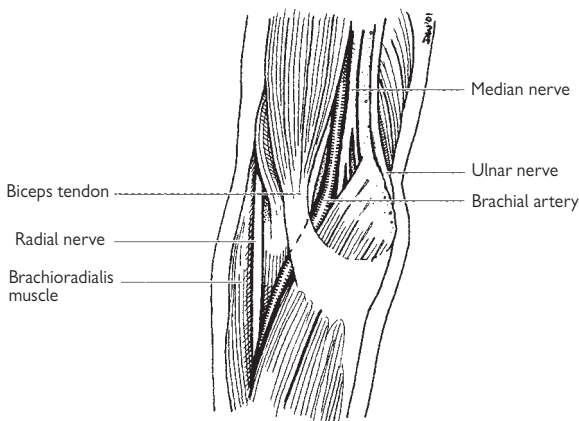
- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for forearm, wrist, or hand surgery.
- **Landmarks:** position the patient with their arm abducted to 90°. Palpate the brachial artery one third of the way along the humerus underneath the biceps. The median, ulnar, and medial cutaneous nerve of forearm should still be within the fascial sheath with the brachial artery. The median nerve lies above the artery and the ulnar and

median cutaneous nerves lie slightly beneath and superficial to the artery, all within 1–2cm of each other. The musculocutaneous nerve lies above and deep to the artery at 1–3cm. The radial nerve lies on the inferior border of the humerus and is the deepest nerve at 2–5cm.

- **Sono-anatomy:** position the probe to achieve a circular cross section of the arm one third of the way from the axilla. An IP technique is appropriate for the more superficial median and ulnar nerves, which are near the artery, an IP or OOP for the musculocutaneous nerve, which lies between the biceps and humerus or within the biceps. An IP or OOP technique is appropriate for the deeper radial nerve, which lies between the humerus and the triceps muscle. By rotating the US probe underneath the arm, the view of the radial nerve may be improved.
- **Twitches** if using PNS: radial—thumb, wrist, or finger extension; ulnar—adduction of the thumb, little finger flexion; median—finger and wrist flexion and pronation of the wrist; musculocutaneous—biceps and brachialis contraction (see also p1190).
- **LA dose:** 5–10ml per nerve, ideally to achieve circumferential LA spread.
- **Side effects** of note: nil.
- **Complications:** artery puncture (compress for 5min if it occurs), intravascular injection.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - Ensure adequate LA infiltration for needle passing through muscle for blocking of the musculocutaneous and radial nerves.
  - Tourniquet pain will not be prevented.
  - 5ml of subcutaneous LA over the sheath may help to block the medial cutaneous nerve of the arm.
  - Blocking deeper nerves first will prevent image artefacts when using US.

## Elbow block

(See figure 41.10.)

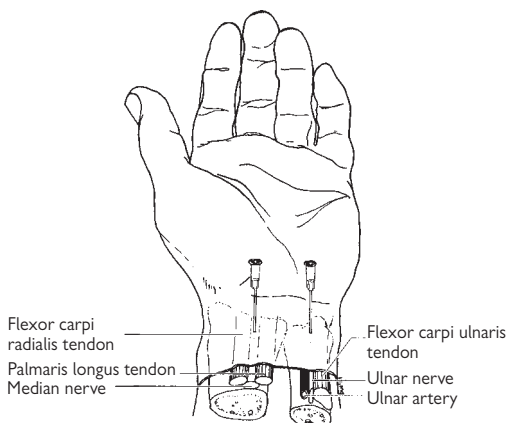


**Fig. 41.10** Elbow block (medial, radial, and ulnar) (antecubital fossa right arm).

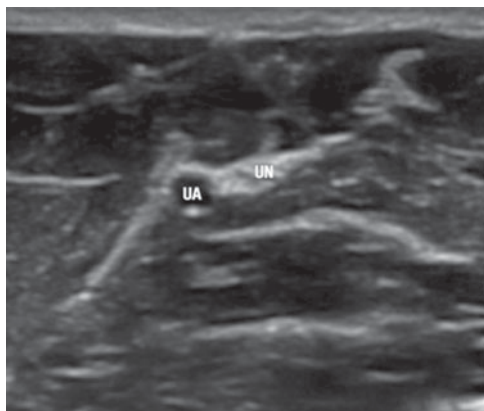
- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for distal forearm, wrist, or hand surgery.
- **Landmarks:**
  - **Median nerve**—position the patient with their arm slightly abducted, elbow slightly flexed, and forearm supinated. Feel the brachial artery at the antecubital fossa crease—the median nerve lies medial and deep to the artery. A pop may be felt on passing through the fascial plane to reach the nerve. It usually lies at 1–2cm depth.
  - **Radial nerve**—position as for median; nerve lies between the insertion of the biceps and brachioradialis proximal to the flexor crease in the antecubital fossa. It is slightly deeper than median at 2–4cm depth.
  - **Ulnar nerve**—the elbow should be slightly flexed with the arm abducted at the shoulder and externally rotated so as to expose the ulnar groove at the elbow or with the hand on the contralateral shoulder and arm across the chest. The ulnar nerve lies in the groove between the medial epicondyle of the humerus and the olecranon process. Pressure neurapraxia may in theory develop from blocking at the groove so the point of injection is often 2–3cm proximal to this, at a depth of 1–3cm.
- **Sono-anatomy:** OOP technique is usually most appropriate, IP may be useful for the median as the nerve lies near the artery. Following the nerves up from their location at the wrist or axilla may help in their identification.
  - **Median nerve**—seen medial and slightly deeper than brachial artery.
  - **Radial nerve**—lateral to biceps tendon lying between brachialis and brachioradialis.
  - **Ulnar nerve**—trace nerve from ulnar groove 2–3cm proximally. The nerve runs along and then within the triceps.
- **Twitches** if using PNS: radial—thumb, wrist, or finger extension; ulnar—adduction of the thumb, little finger flexion; median—finger and wrist flexion and pronation of the wrist (see also p1190).
- **LA dose:** 5–8ml for each nerve. Volumes can be halved if circumferential LA achieved with US.
- **Side effects** of note: nil.
- **Complications:** median nerve—intravascular injection.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - A useful block to supplement an axillary brachial plexus block if the required anaesthesia is not achieved.
  - Injecting 5–8ml when withdrawing the needle from the median and radial nerves may help in blocking the median and lateral nerves of the forearm.

## Wrist block

(See figures 41.11 and 41.12.)



**Fig. 41.11** Wrist block (median and ulnar nerves).



**Fig. 41.12** Ultrasound image showing the ulnar nerve (UN) lying adjacent to the ulnar artery (UA) in the forearm.

- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for hand surgery.
- **Landmarks:**
  - **Median nerve** passes between palmaris longus (look for the tendon in the middle of the wrist when clenching fist and flexing wrist) and

flexor carpi radialis. Inject 2–3cm proximal to the wrist creases, at approximately 1cm depth.

- **Ulnar nerve** runs between the ulnar artery and the flexor carpi ulnaris deep to both. Inject 1–2cm proximal from the wrist creases from the ulnar side of the wrist towards the radius underneath the flexor carpi ulnaris. 1cm depth.
- **Radial**—commonly divides above the wrist, purely sensory nerve at this stage. Can be blocked by infiltrating 5–8ml LA approximately 1cm proximal to the anatomical snuffbox at the base of the thumb over the dorsum of the radius.
- **Sono-anatomy:**
  - **Median**—follow the median nerve a small distance from the wrist proximally. The nerve may appear to fade at some points. Identify the most superficial and visible point along its path and using an OOP technique inject underneath the nerve, readjusting if necessary to achieve circumferential spread.
  - **Ulnar**—with the probe just proximal and parallel to the wrist crease, use an IP technique to identify the ulnar artery and nerve, inject beyond the nerve initially, again readjusting to aim for circumferential spread.
- **Twitches:** ulnar—adduction of the thumb; median—minimal 2nd and 3rd finger flexion.
- **LA dose:** median 3–5ml, ulnar 3–5ml, radial 5–8ml.
- **Side effects** of note: nil.
- **Complications:** ulnar artery puncture.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - Avoid medial nerve block and wrist block in patients with carpal tunnel syndrome.

### Digital block

- **Indications:** distal finger/toe surgery.
- **Technique:**
  - The nerves run on either side of the phalanges, two on the palmar side and two on the dorsal side of each finger.
  - Insert a 25G needle just distal to the metacarpophalangeal joint from the dorsal side (less painful), past the proximal phalanx on either side of the finger to be blocked.
  - Inject 2–3ml 1% lidocaine on either side whilst withdrawing the needle.
- **Side effects** of note: nil.

- **Complications:** vascular puncture.
- **Tips:** never use adrenaline or other potent vasoconstrictor.

### Intravenous regional anaesthesia—Bier's block

- **Indications:** anaesthesia for superficial arm surgery or fracture reduction, maximum operation length about 30 min. Can be used for lower limb.
- **Technique:**
  - Measure the patient's blood pressure.
  - Insert one intravenous cannula into the limb requiring surgery, and one into another limb.
  - Apply a double or single cuff tourniquet to the upper arm. Reliable arterial compression cannot be obtained over the forearm as vessels will be held open between the radius and ulna.
  - The limb should be exsanguinated with a compression bandage such as an Esmarch bandage, or by elevation if fractured.
  - The cuff should then be inflated to 50–100 mmHg above the patient's systolic blood pressure; if using a double cuff, inflate the distal then proximal cuff, then deflate the distal cuff.
  - A non-adrenaline-containing LA with low systemic toxicity should be used, such as prilocaine 0.5%—inject slowly; 40ml for small, 50ml for medium, and 60ml for a large arm. Alternatively, lidocaine 0.5% can be used, maximum dose 250mg. Other LAs are not appropriate.
  - The patient should be warned that the arm will begin to feel warm and appear mottled.
  - Surgery can start within a few minutes.
  - On no account should the tourniquet cuff be deflated before 15min for prilocaine and 20min for lidocaine—potential devastating systemic effects if large volumes of LA are released before it becomes bound or metabolised.
  - If tourniquet pain is experienced during the procedure and a double cuff is used, the distal cuff can be inflated before deflating the proximal cuff. The tissue under the distal cuff should be anaesthetised at this stage.
- Technique is contraindicated if pre-existing circulatory difficulties, e.g. crush injury, homozygous sickle cell disease, peripheral vascular disease.
- A reliable tourniquet and resuscitation equipment are essential.

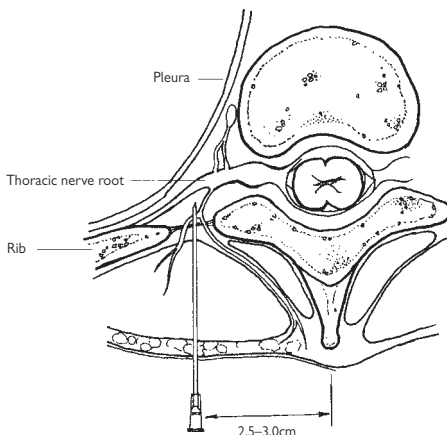
## Nerve blocks: trunk

### Anatomy of the nerve supply to the thorax and abdomen

- The muscles and skin of the chest and abdomen are supplied by the spinal nerves T2–T12 with a contribution from L1 in the inguinal region. These mixed spinal nerves emerge from the intervertebral foramen into the paravertebral space dividing into dorsal and ventral rami.
- The dorsal rami supply the deep muscles and skin over the dorsum of the trunk.
- The ventral rami form the intercostal nerves, which pass into the neurovascular plane between the internal and innermost intercostal muscles.
- A lateral cutaneous branch is given off before the costal angle, piercing the intercostal and overlying muscles in the mid-axillary line.
- The intercostal nerves end as an anterior cutaneous nerve.

### Thoracic paravertebral block

(See figure 41.13.)



**Fig. 41.13** Thoracic paravertebral block.

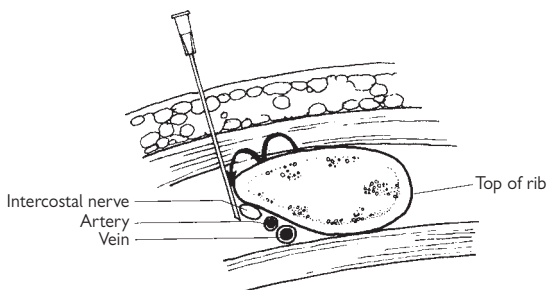
- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for breast surgery, analgesia for thoracic surgery, open cholecystectomy, renal surgery, or fractured ribs.
- **Landmarks:** the paravertebral space lies lateral to the vertebrae and provides access to thoracic and lumbar nerves that have a minimal fascial covering and can be very effectively blocked. The block can be performed at multiple levels or a single larger dose will block up to 3–5 levels. To perform the block, position the patient in a sitting or lateral position (block side uppermost). Palpate the spinous processes.

The needle insertion point is 2.5cm lateral to the cephalad aspect of the spinous process at the desired block level. The needle should be inserted to contact the transverse process usually at a depth of 2–4cm; note the depth at which this occurs. After contact with bone withdraw the needle slightly and change the angle such that the needle will pass cephalad to the transverse process. At this point, a loss of resistance technique can be used or the needle can be simply inserted 1cm further than the depth at which the transverse process was first encountered. Inject LA.

- **Ultrasound technique:** the US probe should be positioned over the spinous processes with its axis parallel to them. Move the probe 2–3cm laterally to the operative side so that the transverse processes either side of the level to be blocked can be seen (hyperechoic edged ovals over large dark shadows). One or more visible lines between the transverse processes indicating the external intercostal muscle or the internal intercostal membrane may be visible. The pleura should be visible between the ribs as a hyperechoic line covering a speckled moving area—the lung tissue. Use an OOP technique and aim to deposit the LA between the internal intercostal membrane and the pleura. The pleura and lung tissue should be seen to be displaced ventrally as LA is injected.
- **LA dose:** 5ml per level or 15–20ml at a single level.
- **Side effects** of note: epidural spread, sympathetic block.
- **Complications:** pneumothorax, LA toxicity, intravascular injection.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - To reduce the risk of pneumothorax, try to keep the needle tip on the US image at all times.
  - Use small-volume hydrodissection to help gauge when the internal intercostal is passed.
  - An IP technique can be used. The US probe may need to be rotated to a transverse or oblique plane if there is difficulty passing an IP needle between the transverse processes in the sagittal plane.

### Intercostal nerve block

(See figure 41.14.)



**Fig. 41.14** Intercostal nerve block.



- **Indications:** analgesia for fractured ribs, chest tube insertion, thoracotomy, open cholecystectomy, nephrectomy.
- **Landmarks:** the anterior rami of T1–L1 form the intercostal nerves that supply the intercostal and abdominal muscles and the skin and superficial tissue over the chest and abdomen. The nerves lie underneath each rib in a neurovascular bundle. Before the costal angle, which is at the most posterolateral point of the rib, the nerves give off a lateral cutaneous branch that supplies the lateral trunk and abdomen. There are three intercostal muscle layers—the external, the internal, and the innermost: the intercostal nerves lie between the internal and the innermost muscles. To perform the block the patient can be positioned lateral, sitting, or prone. The point of injection should be before the angle of the rib in the posterior axillary line so as to anaesthetise the lateral branch. To identify the rib level, count down from the spinous processes of C7 or upwards from the 12th rib or inferior border of the scapula (T7). After identifying the level to be blocked, the rib should be palpated and the superior and inferior borders located. The skin should be stretched cephalad slightly and a 22G needle inserted perpendicularly to touch the tip of the caudad border of the rib. The needle should then be withdrawn 2–3mm and the cephalad skin stretch released. The needle will now have a caudad angulation and will pass just under the rib. Insert the needle 3–4mm further, feeling for a pop as it pierces the fascia of the internal intercostal muscle. Inject LA after careful aspiration. In addition it is normally necessary to block one level above and below the required dermatomes because of crossover innervation.
- **Ultrasound technique:** image the intercostal space with the probe in a sagittal/coronal plane on the posterior axillary line. Identify the two ribs as hyperechoic edged ovals over dark shadows. The pleura should be visible between the ribs as a hyperechoic line covering a speckled moving area—the lung tissue. An IP or OOP technique can be used. If IP the needle should be caudad to the probe. Insert the needle slowly, keeping the tip visible until it is between the ribs just caudad to the upper rib. LA injection in the correct plane will depress the pleura inwards.
- **LA dose:** 3–5ml per level.

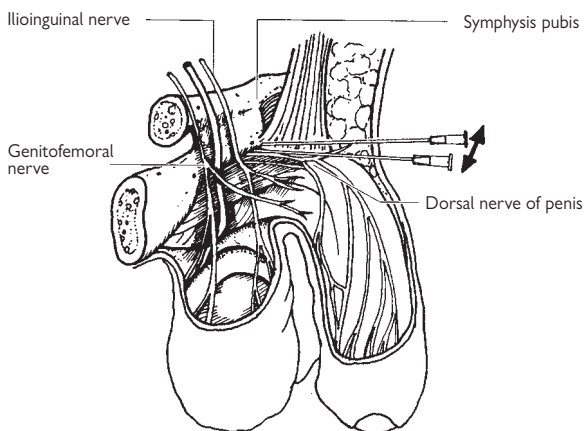
- **Side effects** of note: high LA absorption—risk of toxicity if multiple levels blocked.
- **Complications:** pneumothorax, haematoma formation.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - Paravertebral block or thoracic epidural are alternatives if blockade at multiple levels is required.
  - Excellent analgesic option if neuraxial blockade contraindicated due to anticoagulation.
  - Avoid if pneumothorax would be catastrophic and chest tube not already in place.

### Inguinal field block

- **Indications:** analgesia for inguinal hernia, orchidopexy, or hydrocoele surgery.
- **Landmarks:** the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves are branches of the lumbar plexus originating from the L1 anterior rami. The nerves run initially in the TAP before piercing first the internal oblique and then the external oblique muscles to provide sensory innervation over the lower abdomen and upper thigh. The classical technique relies on performing a plane block between the transversus abdominis and internal oblique and between the internal oblique and the external oblique to block the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric respectively. The point of needle insertion is 2cm medial to the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS), inject after the first pop, insert the needle deeper, and inject after the second pop.
- **Ultrasound technique:** US can be used to identify the correct planes or it may be possible to locate specific nerves. Place the probe between the ASIS and the umbilicus and scan caudally. Blood vessels may lie with the nerves and aid in identification. Use an IP technique with the needle medial to the probe. The nerves most commonly lie between the transversus abdominis and internal oblique, but variations are common.
- **LA dose:** 8ml in each plane.
- **Side effects** of note: femoral nerve block.
- **Complications:** puncture of bowel, intravascular injection.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - Fan-wise subcutaneous infiltration superficial to the aponeurosis will block the cutaneous supply from the lower intercostals and subcostal nerves.
  - Subcutaneous infiltration at the medial end of incision or fan-wise from the pubic tubercle will block contralateral innervations.
  - 5ml injected into the inguinal canal by the surgeon will block the genitofemoral nerve.

**Penile block**

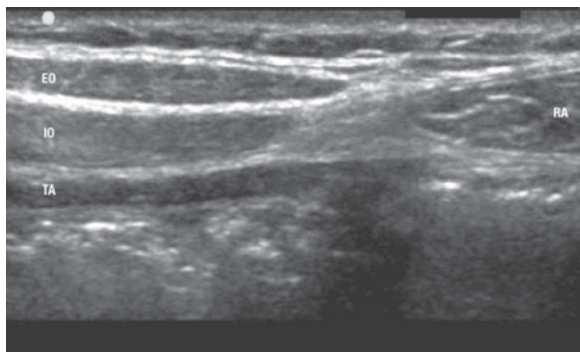
(See figure 41.15)

**Fig. 41.15** Penile block.

- **Indications:** circumcision.
- **Landmarks:** palpate the symphysis pubis above the root of the penis. Insert a 25G needle at the lateral base of the shaft of the penis to just touch the inferior border of the pubis. When contact is made, withdraw slightly, change the needle angle to pass just beneath the pubis—a pop may be felt at 1–2cm when Buck's fascia is pierced. If an assistant pulls down slightly on the end of the penis, the passage through the fascia will become more apparent! Inject 5ml (or 0.1ml/kg of bupivacaine 0.5% in children); repeat on the other side. Performing an additional infiltration subcutaneously around the root of the penis onto the scrotum blocks input from ilioinguinal and genitofemoral nerves but increases the risk of bleeding.
- **Complications:** haematoma.
- **Tips and tweaks:** never use adrenaline-containing solutions. A caudal block may be easier and more appropriate analgesia for circumcision in infants. If stimulation is noted during the surgery ask the surgeon to supplement the block (most commonly around the frenulum).

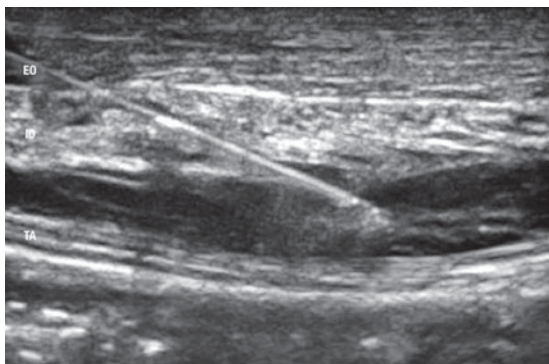
## TAP block

(See figure 41.16)



**Fig. 41.16** Ultrasound anatomy of the anterolateral abdominal wall, showing the external oblique (EO), internal oblique (IO), transversus abdominis (TA), and rectus abdominis (RA) muscle.

- **Indications:** analgesia for any surgery on the anterior abdomen.
- **Landmarks:** the anterior abdominal wall is innervated by the anterior rami of T7–L1. The muscle layers from the outside in are the external oblique (EO), the internal oblique (IO), and the transversus abdominis (TA). The anterior rami form nerves that pierce the TA and lie in the tissue plane between the IO and the TA. Halfway through their course, the nerves give out lateral cutaneous branches which travel through the IO and EO to supply the lateral abdominal wall. Therefore, to provide analgesia to the lateral abdominal wall, the nerves must be blocked before this point. After giving off the lateral branch, the nerves finally reach the rectus abdominis, which they perforate to supply the skin of the anterior abdomen. Classically, the block is performed in the triangle of Petit, which is located above the iliac crest, with the muscle of EO forming the anterior border and the latissimus dorsi the posterior border. The EO is still present as fascia in this area, so two pops should be felt as the needle passes perpendicular to the skin just above the iliac crest before the injection of LA.
- **Ultrasound technique** (see figure 41.17): place the US probe midway between the costal margin and the iliac crest to image in the transverse plane. An IP technique is used with the probe in the mid-axillary line and the needle anterior to it. The needle should be gradually passed through the skin, subcutaneous tissue, EO, and IO, until it lies between the IO and TA—this is the TAP. Using hydrodissection and taking care to feel the passage through the EO and IO will aid in achieving ideal needle position. Inject 30ml here.
- **LA dose:** 30ml per side. Care with maximum anaesthetic dose. Volume is more important than concentration as spread is required to reach multiple nerves.



**Fig. 41.17** Ultrasound image of TAP block showing needle and transversus abdominis plane distended by 20ml of local anaesthetic. EO = external oblique, IO = internal oblique, TA = transversus abdominis

- **Complications:** puncture of bowel, intrahepatic or intrasplenic injection.
- **Tips and tweaks:** a second injection of 10ml just under the costal margin, using the same technique, may aid in reaching the T7–T10 nerves which are less frequently blocked with a single lower injection.

### Rectus sheath block

- **Indications:** analgesia for midline abdominal incisions or anterior laparoscopic port incisions.
- **Landmarks:** the three muscle layers of the lateral abdominal wall combine medially on the anterior abdominal wall and then split to form the anterior and posterior rectus sheath. The rectus sheath contains the rectus abdominis muscle, which runs craniocaudally from the xiphisternum to the pubic symphysis. The spinal nerves from T7–L1 lie between the muscle layers of the abdominal wall before the anterior cutaneous branch enters the rectus sheath and innervates the rectus abdominis, and supplies cutaneous sensation to the skin over the muscle. The aim of the block is to deposit LA anterior to the posterior rectus sheath between it and the rectus abdominis muscle. To perform the block, four points should be marked at 5cm cephalad/5cm lateral and 5cm caudad/5cm lateral on each side of the umbilicus. A short bevel or blunted 22G needle should be inserted through the skin and subcutaneous tissue. The first fascial plane is the anterior rectus sheath. A scratch technique of wiggling the needle against the resistance (and feeling a 'scratching' sensation) may make it more apparent before 'popping' through the plane. The needle should then be inserted until a second resistance is felt but no further, and 10–15ml injected. The technique should be repeated at the other three locations.
- **Ultrasound technique:** perform a scan of the superficial abdomen using a transverse view across the anterior abdominal wall. Identify

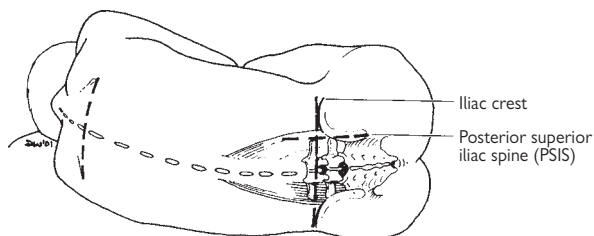
the three lateral muscle layers and where they join and divide around the rectus. Roughly at 5cm lateral and 5cm cephalad/caudad from the umbilicus, identify where the anterior and posterior sheath and the rectus muscle are most distinct. Use an IP technique. Insert the needle slowly until it has passed through the anterior sheath/rectus muscle and lies in the plane in front of the posterior sheath (*above the 'tram-lines' of posterior rectus sheath and peritoneum*). Inject 10–15ml LA here. If the LA tracks along the length of the muscle, a single injection on that side of 20–30ml may be as effective as two separate injections. If inserting a catheter, a 16G Tuohy needle can be used at the cephalad points and standard epidural catheters passed into the space created with LA. The catheters may need tunnelling laterally depending on the surgical site. Alternatively the surgeon can insert catheters under direct vision following intra-abdominal procedures.

- **LA dose:** 40–60ml total: 20–30ml per side. Care with maximum LA dose.
- **Complications:** bowel puncture, LA toxicity.

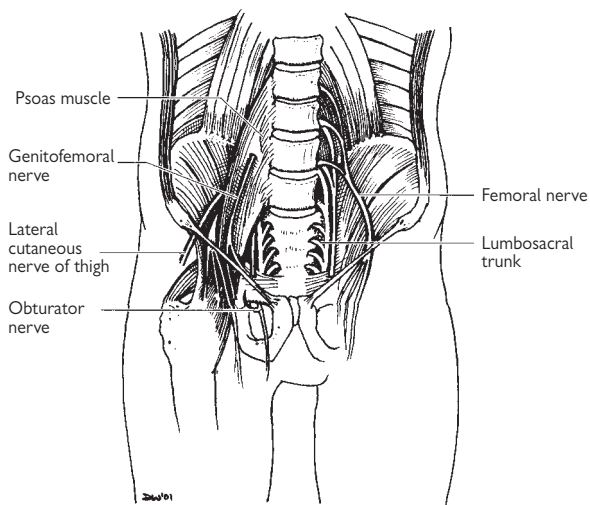
## Nerve blocks: lower limb

### Lumbar plexus block

(See figures 41.18 and 4.19)



**Fig. 41.18** Posterior approach to the lumbar plexus (psoas compartment block).



**Fig. 41.19** Lumbar plexus.

- **Indications:** analgesia or for hip, knee, or femoral shaft surgery. Combined with sciatic nerve block, anaesthesia or analgesia for surgery to knee or lower leg.
- **Landmarks:** the lumbar plexus is formed close to the lumbar vertebrae and comprises five nerves supplying the lower abdomen and leg: iliohypogastric/ilioinguinal, genitofemoral, lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh, the femoral nerve, and the obturator nerve. The nerves

lie within the body of the psoas muscle. The patient should be in a lateral position with the limb to be blocked uppermost and the upper hip slightly flexed. Palpate the iliac crests and mark a line joining them (Tuffier's line—roughly at the L4 level). Mark the spinous processes at this level and draw a line parallel to them at the level of the posterior superior iliac spine (PSIS). The point of needle insertion is two thirds of the way between the spinous processes and PSIS line along Tuffier's line. The needle should be inserted perpendicular to the skin and should contact a transverse process of the vertebrae at about 4–7cm. If this occurs, the needle should be withdrawn slightly and redirected cephalad or caudad, with no change in medial or lateral angulation. The lumbar plexus should be reached at 6–9cm depending on body mass, and correct positioning is indicated by quadriceps contraction causing a 'dancing patella' twitch if using a PNS.

- **Sono-anatomy:** a tricky US block. Due to the depth required, a curved array, low-frequency probe is most suitable. Nerve stimulation should be used alongside US. Using the position described above identify the L4 transverse process by scanning cranially from the sacrum. In a transverse plane, deep to the erector spinae and the transversospinal muscles, psoas major should be visible lateral to the most superficial part of the shadow of the vertebral body. The nerves may be visible within psoas. If performing the block on an awake patient, use deep infiltration and use an IP technique with the needle lateral to the probe. Access the posterior part of the psoas muscle and assess for quadriceps twitch. The depth may be as much as 7–11cm due to the needle angulation.
- **Twitches:** femoral component of lumbar plexus—quadriceps twitch and patellar dance.
- **LA dose:** 25–35ml.
- **Side effects** of note: epidural spread.
- **Complications:** intrathecal injection, systemic toxicity (nerves located in highly vascular muscle bed), intravascular injection, damage to intra-abdominal organs.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - Stimulation currents <0.5mA may indicate the needle tip is within the dural coating of the nerve and LA injected may track up the nerve sleeve to the epidural or subarachnoid spaces rather than spreading in the psoas compartment where the rest of the lumbar plexus nerves lie.
  - Very difficult in the obese; consider alternatives such as femoral block.



### Femoral nerve block

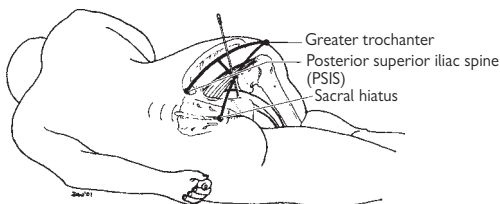
- **Indications:** analgesia or for knee or femoral shaft surgery. Combined with sciatic nerve block to produce anaesthesia or analgesia for surgery to the knee or lower leg.
- **Landmarks:** the femoral nerve is best reached after it has passed under the inguinal ligament. The structures here from lateral to medial are: nerve, artery, and vein. The nerve is separated from the vessels by the fascia of the femoral sheath. With the patient lying supine palpate the pubic tubercle and the anterior superior iliac spine. The inguinal ligament formed from the external oblique muscle connects to these bones. Palpate the femoral artery beneath the inguinal ligament; approximately 1–1.5cm lateral to this is the femoral nerve. Insert the needle 1cm distal to the ligament; two ‘pops’ may be felt as the needle passes the fascia lata, then the fascia iliaca. Depth to nerve 2–4cm.
- **Sono-anatomy:** IP or OOP can be used. IP needle lateral to probe. Try to deposit LA deep and medial to the nerve at first. Reposition the needle if necessary to try to achieve circumferential spread.
- **Twitches:** femoral nerve—patella dance, if sartorius—needle too medial or superficial; withdraw and redirect medially, and go slightly deeper.
- **LA dose:** 10–20ml for the femoral nerve (30–40ml for ‘3-in-1 block’, apply pressure 2–3cm distal to site of injection; the intention is for the local to spread proximally and block the obturator and lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh. In reality the spread of the local is lateral and does not reliably block the other two nerves.)
- **Side effects** of note: nil.
- **Complications:** arterial puncture, intravascular injection.

### Lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh block

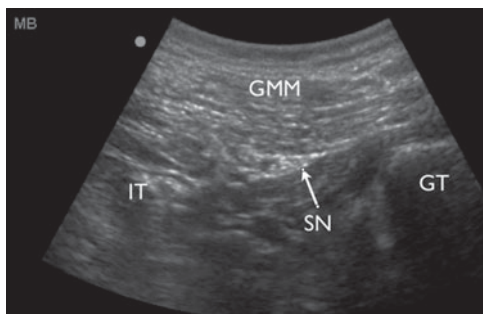
- **Indications:** analgesia for hip or femoral shaft surgery with incision in lateral thigh.
- **Landmarks:** the nerve runs under the inguinal ligament just medial to the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) and over the sartorius muscle. The nerve can be blocked 2cm medial and 2cm caudal to the ASIS. Insert the needle perpendicular to the skin to a depth of 1–3cm until you feel the needle pass through the fascia lata and inject here.
- **Sono-anatomy:** use an OOP needle distal to the probe or IP with the needle medial. Scan distally starting just medial to the ASIS and identify the nerve below the inguinal ligament medial to the sartorius muscle. The nerve is small; hydrodissection may help identify its position between the fascia lata and fascia iliaca.
- **LA dose:** 5–10ml.
- **Side effects** of note: nil.
- **Complications:** femoral nerve block.

## Sciatic nerve block

(See figures 41.20 and 4.21)



**Fig. 41.20** Posterior (Labat) approach to the sciatic nerve.



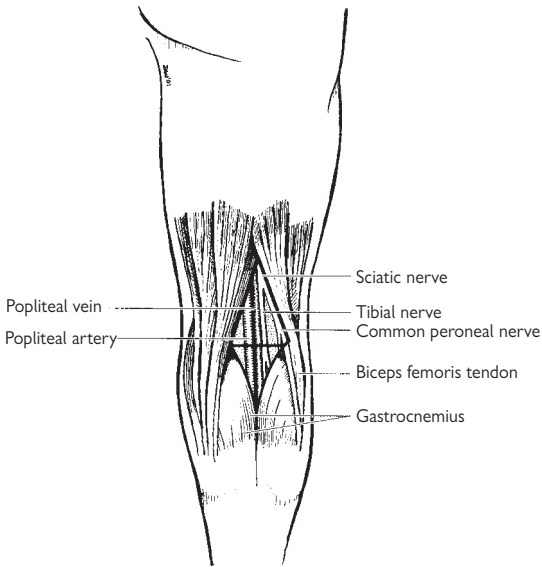
**Fig. 41.21** Ultrasound image of sciatic nerve (arrows) as it passes underneath the gluteus maximus muscle (GMM) and between the greater trochanter (GT) and ischial tuberosity (IT).

- **Indications:** analgesia for ankle or foot surgery, or for lower limb amputation. Combined with femoral nerve block or lumbar plexus block for total anaesthesia of the leg.
- **Landmarks:** the sacral nerve is the largest nerve in the body. It is formed from L4–S3 nerve roots and exits the pelvis via the sciatic foramen before continuing down the leg between the muscles in the posterior thigh.
  - **Labat**—position the patient in Sims' position/recovery position, with the operative leg uppermost. Identify and mark the posterior superior iliac spine (PSIS), the greater trochanter (GT) of the humerus, and the sacral hiatus (SH). Draw a line between the PSIS and GT and between the GT and SH. Draw a third line perpendicular from the midpoint between the PSIS and GT to intersect the second line. This is the point of needle insertion perpendicular to the skin to a depth of 5–10cm.

- **Raj**—with the patient supine, flex the hip and knee to 90°. The point of needle insertion is halfway between the ischial tuberosity (IT) on the inferiomedial border and the GT on the inferiolateral border of the thigh. With a perpendicular or slightly medial angulation, the nerve should be encountered at a depth of 4–8cm.
- **Ultrasound techniques:**
  - **Labat**—a curved, low-frequency probe is needed due to depth required. The depth makes the sciatic nerve difficult to visualise. The nerve may be round or flat. Use the landmark technique to position the probe over the traditional needle insertion site. The sciatic nerve lies deep to the gluteus maximus, lateral to the pudendal blood vessels, and runs over the ischial bone. Scan cephalad and caudad from the starting point and try different angles to optimise the US image. An IP technique with the needle lateral to the probe or OOP technique may be used. The depth means that it will be difficult to keep the needle tip under direct vision. Due to the size of the nerve, two needle positions—one medial and one lateral to the nerve—are usually required to achieve circumferential spread.
  - **Subgluteal**—here the sciatic nerve is more superficial, enabling easier US imaging. Position the patient lateral or semiprone. In the position described in the Raj technique, between the IT and GT use a curved array probe and scan across the region, identifying the IT, GT, gluteus maximus muscle (the large superficial muscle under the skin), and the quadratus femoris muscle under the gluteus maximus. The sciatic nerve lies in the tissue plane between the gluteus maximus and the quadratus femoris. The nerve can be blocked here or it can be traced to a more superficial position midway down the thigh and blocked passing the needle between the flexor tendons. Nerve stimulation is helpful in confirming nerve location. IP with the needle lateral to probe or OOP techniques can be used.
- **Twitches:** tibial component—plantar flexion of the foot (optimal); common peroneal component—eversion of the foot (withdraw needle and aim more medially); gluteal muscles—direct stimulation; needle too shallow.
- **LA dose:** 15–30ml.
- **Side effects** of note: nil.
- **Complications:** intravascular injection is not uncommon.
- **Tips and tweaks:**
  - Care with LA maximum doses if performing with femoral or lumbar plexus blocks.

### Popliteal sciatic nerve block

(See figure 41.22)



**Fig. 41.22** Popliteal fossa block (right leg).

The popliteal fossa is a diamond-shaped area bounded inferiorly by the medial and lateral heads of the gastrocnemius and superiorly by the long head of the biceps femoris (laterally) and the superimposed heads of the semimembranosus and semitendinosus (medially). The posterior skin crease marks the widest point of the fossa and, with the knee slightly flexed, the muscular boundaries of the fossa can be identified. This block is indicated for ankle and foot surgery.

**Posterior approach**

- With the patient prone, flex the knee, identify and mark the muscular borders of the fossa, and then straighten the leg.
- Mark a point 7–10cm proximal to the popliteal skin crease, in the midline between the biceps femoris (laterally) and semitendinosus and semimembranosus (medially).
- Insert a 22G 50mm or 100mm needle (depending on the size of the patient) at this point, directing the needle proximally at an angle of 45°.
- At a depth of 4–8cm the sciatic nerve or components will be found (tibial—plantar flexion, common peroneal—dorsiflexion).
- Inject 20–30ml of local anaesthetic.

**Lateral approach**

- Supine, with the knee slightly flexed, mark the groove between the vastus lateralis (above) and biceps femoris (below).
- Draw a line down from the superior border of the patella where it crosses this groove.
- Insert a 22G 50mm or 100mm needle, directed posteriorly 25–30° and slightly caudally.
- The needle passes through the biceps femoris into the popliteal fossa—initially encountering the common peroneal nerve, then the tibial nerve.
- Inject 10ml of LA around each nerve.

- **Ultrasound technique:** essentially a lateral approach but with the knee flexed and the probe placed at the back of the knee; the nerves are readily identified and an IP technique can be used.

**Tips and tweaks:**

- The sciatic nerve is two nerves loosely bound together at this level, commonly dividing into the tibial and peroneal nerves 5–12cm above the popliteal crease. In a small proportion of people, it is separated for its entire course.
- High-volume popliteal techniques—often block both nerves, but individual localisation of both nerves may improve success rate.

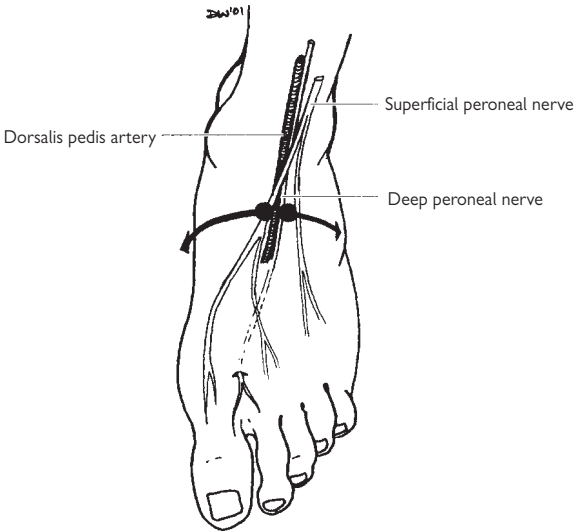
**Saphenous nerve block**

Provides analgesia for the medial lower leg and ankle; useful in combination with a sciatic nerve block for foot and ankle procedures.

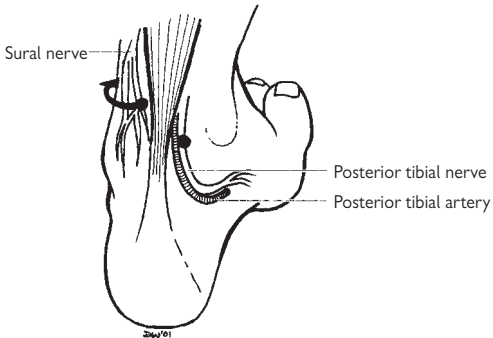
- **Landmarks:** tibial tuberosity, medial tibial condyle.
- **Technique:** the patient should be supine, with the leg externally rotated. Identify the tibial tuberosity and inject 10–15ml subcutaneously from the tibial tuberosity towards the medial tibial condyle.
- Ultrasound techniques allow saphenous nerve block in the thigh.

### Ankle block

(See figures 41.23 and 41.24)



**Fig. 41.23** Ankle block I.



**Fig. 41.24** Ankle block II.

- **Indications:** analgesia or anaesthesia for surgery on the foot.
- **Landmarks:** five nerves innervate the foot. The saphenous nerve is the terminal branch of the femoral nerve (innervates the medial aspect of the ankle and foot); the sural (lateral aspect of the foot and the fifth toe), tibial (sole of the foot and many of the intrinsic muscles), and superficial (dorsum of the foot) and deep peroneal nerves (web space between first and second toe) are branches of the sciatic. The tibial and deep peroneal are deeper than the other nerves and a layer of fascia must be passed through for block of these nerves to be effective.
  - The saphenous nerve usually passes anterior to the medial malleolus. To block it, infiltrate a ring of 5ml of LA from the medial malleolus anteriorly to the tibial ridge.
  - To block the sural nerve, raise a subcutaneous wheal of LA from the lateral malleolus inferiorly to the Achilles tendon.
  - The tibial nerve lies posterior to the tibial artery behind the medial malleolus. Inject just behind the artery before contact is made with bone.
  - To block the deep peroneal nerve, palpate the dorsalis pedis artery and insert the needle just lateral to the artery. When contact is made with bone, withdraw the needle slightly and inject here.
  - The superficial peroneal nerve can be blocked by infiltrating 10ml subcutaneously medially and laterally over the dorsum of the foot 2–3cm distal to the intermalleolar line.
- **Sono-anatomy:** even the deeper nerves are still superficial and an OOP technique is most suitable. The tibial nerve can be seen posterior to the tibial artery between it and the flexor tendons of the foot. Take care as many vessels lie in close proximity. The deep peroneal nerve should be blocked at the intermalleolar line where it lies with the dorsalis pedis artery between the tibia, the extensor hallucis longus, and the extensor digitorum longus tendons. If the nerve cannot be visualised, inject 2–3ml either side of the artery. Again, care should be taken due to the risk of arterial puncture and intravascular injection. Whilst it is possible to visualise the superficial peroneal, sural, and saphenous nerves, they may be very small and have multiple branches. A traditional superficial infiltration as described above should be appropriate.
- **LA dose:** 5ml each to saphenous and sural nerves; 5–10ml to the tibial nerve; 10ml to the superficial peroneal nerve; 3–6ml to the deep peroneal nerve (doses may be reduced if circumferential spread is observed with US).
- **Side effects** of note: nil.
- **Complications:** arterial puncture, bruising.

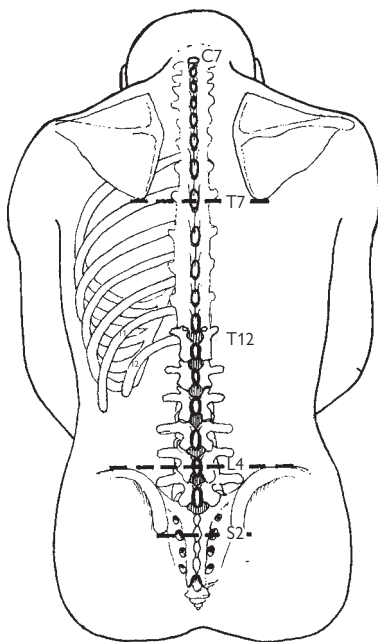
*This page intentionally left blank*



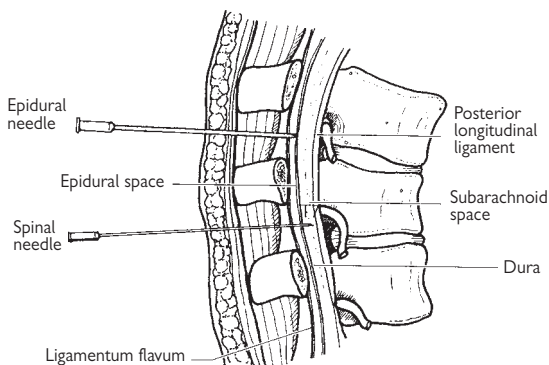
## Nerve blocks: neuraxial

### Spinal and epidural

(See figures 41.25 and 41.26)



**Fig. 41.25** Bony landmarks of the spine.



**Fig. 41.26** Subarachnoid and epidural spaces.

### Spinal and epidural anatomy

- The spinal cord terminates at approximately L1 in adults and L3 in infants.
- The line joining the iliac crests (intercristine or Tuffier's line) is approximately at the L4 level.
- The subarachnoid space ends at approximately S2 in adults, lower in children (care with paediatric caudal block, use cannula rather than needle).
- The subarachnoid space extends laterally along the nerve roots to the dorsal root ganglia.
- There is a potential space between the dura and the arachnoid mater (the subdural space).
- The epidural (extradural) space lies between the walls of the vertebral canal and the spinal dura mater. It is a potential low-pressure space, occupied by areolar tissue, loose fat, and the internal vertebral venous plexus.
- The ligamentum flavum is thin in the cervical region, reaching maximal thickness in the lumbar region (2–5mm).

### Spinal block

- **Indications** for spinal block are:
  - Lower abdominal surgery (Caesarean section, inguinal hernia).
  - Lower limb surgery.
  - Perineal surgery.
  - More extensive abdominal surgery is possible with experience.
- **Landmarks:** spinous processes of the lumbar vertebrae and the line joining the iliac crests (Tuffier's line).

- **Technique:**
  - The patient should be sitting or lying on their side.
  - Mark a line joining the iliac crests.
  - Identify the spinous process at the level of this line.
  - The nearest interspace at this level is L3/4 (there is significant variation).
  - Spinal blocks should always be carried out caudal to this space to avoid trauma to the tail end of the spinal cord (the conus).
- After subcutaneous infiltration with LA, insert a 24–29G needle of your choice:
  - **Midline:** at the level of the interspace, insert a needle in the midline (coronal plane). With 15° cephalad angulation, advance until a click or pop is felt, at an approximate depth of 4–6cm.
  - **Paramedian:** 1–2cm lateral to the upper border of the spinous process. Insert a needle perpendicular to the skin to contact the lamina of the vertebra. Withdraw slightly, reinserting the needle 15° medially and 30° cephalad to pass over the lamina through the interlaminar space. Advance until a click or pop is felt (the dura is pierced).
  - After free flow of CSF, connect up the syringe containing the LA. Aspirate before and after injection to confirm correct placement in CSF throughout injection.

### LA drugs and doses for spinal anaesthesia

- Dosing of LA in adults depends upon age and pregnancy: the older the patient, the less drug will be needed; pregnant patients need less than their non-pregnant counterparts.
- 2.5–3.0ml of a hyperbaric solution of LA will reach T6–T10 in most non-pregnant young adults placed in the recumbent position shortly after spinal injection.
- The dose of plain LA needed tends to be a little higher.
- There is no commercially marketed short-acting intrathecal preparation licensed for spinal anaesthesia within the UK. Manufacturers advise against the use of lidocaine due to risks of **cauda equina syndrome** and **transient radicular irritation** and transient neurological symptoms.
- Ropivacaine does not have a product licence for intrathecal use.
- **Bupivacaine** plain or heavy can be used (usually 0.5%). ‘Heavy’ is hyperbaric and contains 8% glucose. ‘Plain’ is isobaric at body temperature.
- Due to spread in the intrathecal space, hyperbaric solutions can be used to achieve a higher block. Plain solutions will usually produce a lower block height with consequently less hypotension, under normal conditions.
- See drug additive chart on p1104—and p833 (Paediatrics).

### Clinical tips

- Ideally the injection should be at the L3/4 interspace; if there is difficulty, go down not up, as the level of termination of the conus is variable.
- Accurate surface identification of the L3/4 interspace is difficult—70% of clinicians mark it as a higher space.
- A sitting position increases CSF pressure and hence improves CSF flow with fine needles. It is also easier to find the midline in obese patients in this position.
- Lateral position offers familiarity of practice and possibility of sedation.
- Often problems are due to too short an introducer and a flexible needle. When difficulty is encountered in an elderly and osteophytic patient who would benefit from a spinal, consider a 22G Quincke-tip needle; post-dural puncture headache is rare in this patient group.
- When repeatedly hitting bone ask the patient to identify which side you are on. If they state 'middle' you are on a spinous process; if they can identify one side, you are out of the midline.

### Contraindications

- Relative contraindications:
  - Aortic or mitral valve stenosis (hypotension due to sympathetic block).
  - Hypovolaemia (hypotension).
  - Previous back surgery (technical difficulty).
  - Neurological disease.
  - Systemic sepsis (increased incidence of epidural abscess, meningitis).
- Absolute contraindications:
  - Local sepsis.
  - Patient refusal.
  - Anticoagulation: see below and pp1174–77.

### Complications

- Hypotension.
- Bradycardia (if block extends to the mid-thoracic region)—can progress to cardiac arrest.
- High block, compromising breathing, may extend to 'total spinal'.
- Urinary retention.
- Nerve damage—see below.
- Post-dural puncture headache—see p748.
- Infection: abscess, meningitis.
- Bleeding: spinal canal haematoma—more likely in patients with disorders of coagulation. Can cause spinal cord compression and permanent paraplegia.
- The serious complications of spinal and epidural anaesthesia have been the subject of a recent nationwide audit in the UK: the Royal College of Anaesthetists' Third National Audit Project (NAP3).

#### **The incidence of permanent injury due to neuraxial blocks**

was 1:25 000–1:50 000, with an incidence of death or paraplegia of 1:50 000–1:140 000. The incidence of complications in children, in obstetric patients, and in those undergoing chronic pain procedures

was very low. There was an excess incidence of serious complications in elderly patients with epidurals used during and after surgery, and in patients undergoing combined spinal-epidurals (CSEs), a finding supported by other large studies. However, the overall incidence of major complications was reassuringly low. There were problems reported with the identification, treatment, and management of the serious complications of neuraxial anaesthesia. See <http://www.rcoa.ac.uk/index.asp?pageid=717>.

### **Continuous spinal anaesthesia (CSA)**

- Better control over rate of onset, level, intensity, and duration of block.
- Possibly less hypotension: incremental dosing and reduced total dose.
- The use of small spinal catheters has declined after reports of cauda equina syndrome.
- Low incidence of post-dural puncture headache in older patients (1–6%).
- This block is indicated for lower abdominal, hip, and knee surgery.
- Technique:
  - Make a dural puncture using your needle of choice, e.g. 18G Tuohy.
  - The level of insertion should be at or below L3/4.
  - Insert a catheter 3–5cm into the CSF and attach a bacterial filter.
  - Inject 1–1.5ml of, e.g. bupivacaine 0.5% plain. Wait 10min and test the block.
  - Inject a further 0.5–1.0ml as necessary or when the level of block decreases by two segments.
  - Dedicated commercial spinal catheter kits are available.

### **Epidural block**

See pp740–751, pp1102–1104 and pp1174–1177.

### **Caudal block**

See pp830–831.

- Useful in surgery of the perineum in adults.
- Adult dose 20–25ml bupivacaine plain 0.125–0.5%.
- Use a 21G (green) needle or 20G intravenous cannula.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Regional anaesthesia and coagulation disorders

- Blood vessels are frequently encountered and damaged during the performance of regional anaesthetics. These may be large, named vessels such as the axillary, subclavian, and femoral arteries or small blood vessels such as epidural veins. Although patients with normal coagulation only very rarely suffer from these vascular encounters, those with abnormalities of coagulation can suffer significantly.
- Haemorrhage can be brisk, haematomas can compress nerves and other anatomical structures, and the presence of even a relatively small haematoma in the non-distensible spinal canal can cause permanent spinal cord and nerve injury.
- Therefore, a coagulopathy is a relative contraindication to the performance of regional anaesthetic techniques. The degree of contraindication will depend upon the extent of the coagulation defect, the block planned, and the likely benefit to the patient of undergoing surgery under regional—rather than general—anaesthesia.
- Full therapeutic anticoagulation in an otherwise fit patient scheduled to undergo minor lower limb surgery would rightly be considered an absolute contraindication to spinal anaesthesia. A mild coagulopathy in a patient with severe lung disease would be only a marginal contraindication to the performance of forearm blocks to allow them to undergo hand surgery without general anaesthesia.
- The use of anticoagulant drugs to prevent or treat venous thromboembolism is increasing rapidly, along with the number and potency of the drugs employed for such purposes.
- Several guidelines for the management of anticoagulant regimens before, during, and after regional anaesthesia exist, and those reproduced below are based on guidelines recently published by the American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Management (ASRA).
- Most guidance relates to the performance of neuraxial blocks. However, the anaesthetist performing PNBs should also consider the guidance, especially when performing blocks on nerves that are near large blood vessels that are not amenable to direct pressure if vascular puncture occurs, e.g. infraclavicular blocks, or in areas in which a haematoma may have serious consequences, e.g. airway compression as a result of an expanding haematoma in the neck.
- Most guidelines presume that such drugs are given in isolation. However, a combination of drugs that in themselves may not produce a significant coagulopathic risk might offer a higher risk in combination, e.g. NSAIDs and prophylactic low molecular weight heparins.

### Pathological coagulopathy

- Pathological coagulopathies present the same risks to patients if regional anaesthetic techniques are associated with vascular puncture as does the administration of anticoagulant drugs.
- However, there are situations in which patients with disorders of coagulation would benefit from a regional technique. In these situations, a pragmatic approach should be adopted.
- A platelet count of  $\geq 80 \times 10^9/l$  and an INR or APTR (activated partial thromboplastin ratio) of  $\leq 1.5$  are considered acceptable indicators of an adequately functioning coagulation system to allow safe regional anaesthesia.
- If in any doubt, a discussion with the patient, surgeon, and a haematologist should be undertaken.
- Whilst blood products can have a variable effect on pharmacologically anticoagulated patients, they have a more predictable efficacy in non-autoimmune disorders of coagulation, i.e. when there is no antibody disabling infused products.



Anticoagulant drugs: minimum recommended times before and after the performance of blocks or the removal of neuraxial catheters

	Drug prior to block	Block prior to drug	Notes/tests
<b>LMWH—prophylactic dose</b>	10–12h	2h	
<b>LMWH—treatment dose</b>	24h	2h	
<b>SC UFH</b>	No contraindication with twice-daily dosing and total daily dose <10 000IU		
<b>IV UFH—prophylactic dose</b>	2–4h	1h	Platelet count if treatment >4d
<b>IV UFH—treatment dose</b>	2–4h and assess coagulation status	1h—avoid for 24h in traumatic tap, tight control of anticoagulation; remove catheter only when coagulation has normalised	Platelet count if treatment >4d
<b>Aspirin or NSAIDs</b>	No contraindications	No contraindications	
<b>Clopidogrel</b>	Ideally stop 7–10d pre-block; if high risk of cardiac events, stop 5d pre-block		
<b>Ticlopidine</b>	14d		
<b>Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors</b>	Abciximab 48h Eptifibatide 8h	Avoid for 4wk; if given, monitor neurological status	

<b>Warfarin</b>	Stop for 4–5d, then confirm INR <1.5	Epidural catheter removed when INR <1.5, then reanticoagulate	Neurological observations for 24h after catheter removal if receiving warfarin
<b>Thrombolytic therapy</b>	Block not recommended	Avoid for 10d if puncture of non-compressible vessels. If given after neuraxial block, perform 2-hourly neurological observations and discontinue any infusion	Measure fibrinogen level before catheter removal
<b>Thrombin inhibitors</b>	Do not perform block		
<b>Fondaparinux</b>	Single injection, atraumatic needle placement, or alternate thromboprophylaxis		Avoid indwelling catheters

Abbreviations: IV intravenous, SC subcutaneous, LMWH low molecular weight heparin, UFH unfractionated heparin, INR international normalised ratio, NSAIDs non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs

## Regional anaesthesia and nerve injury<sup>1,2</sup> (see also pp32–33)

- Estimates of the incidence of nerve damage associated with regional anaesthesia vary. From the evidence available, it seems that the incidence of temporary nerve damage (**neurapraxia**) is in the order of 1:100–1:200 and that of **permanent nerve damage** is in the range 1:5000–1:10 000. However, the likelihood of nerve damage depends upon a number of factors, including how the nerve block is performed, which nerve block is performed, and the age of the patient and their comorbidities.
- Nerve–needle contact can cause nerve damage, and therefore careful technique is very likely to be associated with a low incidence of nerve damage: the needle should always be advanced slowly and gently, and if the patient complains of paresthesia or significant pain, it should be withdrawn, and injection should not be performed. Visualisation of the nerves and needle with US should allow the anaesthetist to achieve a very low incidence of nerve–needle contact, thereby minimising the chances of nerve damage.
- Although this is intuitively correct, evidence from large-scale studies to support this contention is currently lacking.
- Direct injection of fluid into a nerve—**intraneural injection**—can be associated with high pressures in the nerve that can lead to ischaemic damage. The hallmarks of intraneural injection are held to include high injection pressures, pain on injection, low current thresholds when using a PNS, failure of the evoked contractions to disappear at the start of LA injection, and swelling of the nerve if visualised with US. If any of these are encountered, injection should cease immediately.
- Recent studies suggest that intraneural injection is not always painful, not always difficult, and not always dangerous. Indeed, it seems likely that a high proportion of lower limb PNBs using a PNS are in fact intraneural injections. Notwithstanding this evidence, intraneural injections should be avoided.
- Nerve damage can also be caused by ischaemia due to hypotension and vascular occlusion, pressure from haematomas, poor patient positioning, stretching by the surgeon, and the position of the patient's limbs.
- Some blocks seem to be associated with a higher incidence of nerve damage.
- Upper limb blocks seem to attract a higher incidence of reported injury. This may be due to a greater chance of minor neurological deficits being appreciated or may relate to the fact that there is a greater ratio of nerve tissue to connective tissue in upper limb nerves than in lower limb nerves.
- Publications suggest that the **interscalene** brachial plexus block is the PNB that has the highest capacity to be associated with nerve injury. There has been speculation about whether this is related to the relative tethering of the nerves to the cervical spine, from where they have just emerged at the location of the block. Whatever the reason for this apparent excess incidence of nerve damage, particularly good

training and expertise is required to perform this block safely, and great caution should be exercised when placing a needle anywhere near the upper reaches of the brachial plexus.

- Publications suggest that children only very rarely suffer nerve damage from regional anaesthesia, and that the incidence of nerve damage in pregnant women undergoing spinal and/or epidural anaesthesia is similarly low. Obese patients seem to be at greater risk than their non-obese counterparts, and there is a substantial excess incidence of adverse sequelae in elderly patients undergoing spinal and epidural anaesthesia and analgesia. It is likely that the **elderly**, patients with **diabetes**, and those with **pre-existing neurological conditions** are at a higher risk of nerve damage.
- The management of nerve damage involves its early recognition and referral to a neurologist. Nerve conduction studies, magnetic resonance imaging, and electromyography can all assist in identification of the severity and location. There is little that can be done to hasten the recovery of nerve function or to minimise the extent of the nerve damage once harmed. However, damage resulting from pressure from other structures or spinal abscesses and haematomas can be helped by surgery.
- Recovery of neurological function is mercifully the norm. More than 90% of cases of nerve damage resulting from regional anaesthesia recover within 3 months and >99% within a year.
- Patients should be told of the incidence of nerve damage; whether to undergo regional anaesthesia or general anaesthesia is their choice. It is always useful to ask the patient about their jobs and passions. Slight damage to the brachial plexus will have more of a potential impact on the life of a professional or enthusiastic amateur violinist than on a lawyer! The disclosure and consent process should be recorded in the patient's notes.

### Awake or asleep?

- The debate about whether nerve blocks should only be placed in awake or lightly sedated patients, or whether it is acceptable to perform blocks on anaesthetised patients, has raged for some time and shows no signs of abating.
- Supporters of 'awake blocks' argue that nerve-needle contact is associated with pain and paresthesia, and that the insertion of a needle and the subsequent injection of LA into the nerve is usually painful and often dangerous. Therefore, an awake or lightly sedated patient may warn you of nerve-needle contact. Similarly, awake-block supporters argue that their patients might warn them of the early signs of LA toxicity as a result of inadvertent intravascular injection, thus allowing them to cease injection before plasma LA levels rise to cardiotoxic or convulsive levels. Those anaesthetists happy to perform blocks on the anaesthetised patient argue that the important hallmarks of intraneural injection are sufficiently present to protect the patient provided the anaesthetist is aware of them and responds appropriately: visualisation of intraneural needle placement and LA injection with US; low threshold currents if using a PNS; failure of evoked contraction

disappearance on injection of LA; difficulty of injection. Paediatric anaesthetists argue that for many of their patients, 'awake' is not an option; they are perhaps fortunate that the incidence of nerve damage associated with PNBs in children is very low indeed.

- Although it is likely that the majority of anaesthetists believe that neuraxial blocks should not be performed on anaesthetised patients, views regarding PNBs are less one-sided. What is beyond doubt is that there is currently no hard evidence definitively to support either the 'awake' or the 'asleep' camps. The American Society of Regional Anesthesia (ASRA) recently advised its members not to perform blocks on anaesthetised patients when possible. The guidance also called attention to the suspicion that the performance of a PNB after a marked paresthesia has been produced may increase the chances of nerve damage even though the needle is withdrawn and reinserted. Although not medicolegally binding on anaesthetists outside of the USA, the opinions expressed and the information presented in support is worth both reading and heeding. In the authors' opinion, the ASRA advice should be followed.
- The performance of PNBs on the non-anaesthetised patient need not be unpleasant for the patient. Many anaesthetists successfully use sedation with small doses of a benzodiazepine (midazolam) and/or an opioid (fentanyl) or infusions of small amounts of propofol or remifentanyl. The increasing use of US for nerve location is known to increase patient comfort if the evoked contractions produced by nerve stimulators are avoided, and it is therefore relatively easy to perform US-guided blocks on patients who are wide awake.

- 1 Neal JM, Bernardson, Hadzic A, et al. (2008). ASRA practice advisory on neurologic complications in regional anesthesia and pain medicine. *Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine*, **33**, 404–415.
- 2 Szypula K, Ashpole KJ, Bogod D, Yentis SM, Mihai R, Scott S, Cook TM (2010). Litigation related to regional anaesthesia: an analysis of claims against the NHS in England 1995–2007. *Anaesthesia*, **65**(5), 443–452.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Management of local anaesthetic toxicity

Local anaesthetic toxicity occurs when an excessive amount of local anaesthetic enters the circulation. Toxicity can be avoided by injecting slowly and in small boluses, interspersed with frequent gentle aspiration to exclude accidental intravascular needle placement, especially when single site large doses are administered.

Maximum dosages vary depending on the site to be anaesthetised, vascularity of the tissues, individual tolerance, and anaesthetic technique, but suggested maximum doses are given on p1124.

Levobupivacaine and ropivacaine are less toxic than bupivacaine. The higher toxicity of bupivacaine is related to the R-enantiomer which binds more firmly and is released more slowly from the myocardium.

Toxicity from prilocaine is less likely because of its rapid metabolism (primarily by the liver). Methaemoglobinaemia may occur with high doses (>600 mg in an adult) and should be treated with methylthionium chloride (methylene blue 1–2 mg/kg).

Articaine probably has the highest therapeutic ratio and most rapid metabolism of all commonly used agents.

Allergic reactions to local anaesthetics are extremely rare. The ester groups are more prone to exhibit allergic reactions than amides because they are metabolized to para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA) which acts as a hapten. There is also a cross-sensitivity of ester-type agents with sulphonamides. Allergic reactions range from simple local irritation with rash or urticaria, to laryngeal oedema or anaphylaxis.

### Presentation

- Light headedness, dizziness, drowsiness. Tingling around lips, fingers, or generalized. Metallic taste, tinnitus, blurred vision.
- Confusion, restlessness, incoherent speech, tremors or twitching, leading to convulsions with loss of consciousness and coma.
- Bradycardia, hypotension, cardiovascular collapse, and respiratory arrest. ECG changes (prolongation of QRS and PR interval, AV block and/or changes in T-wave amplitude)

### Immediate management

- Discontinue injection
- ABC . . . 100% O<sub>2</sub>.
- Intubate and ventilate if required to prevent hypoxic cardiovascular collapse. Hyperventilation may help by increasing pH in the presence of metabolic acidosis.
- CPR if pulseless—commence ALS protocol (see p912).
- Treat convulsions with intravenous midazolam (3–10 mg), diazepam (5–15 mg), lorazepam (0.1 mg/kg), propofol (20–60 mg) or thiopental (50–150 mg). Titrate against patient response.

### Lipid emulsion therapy

- Give an intravenous bolus injection of Intralipid® 20% 1.5 ml/kg over 1 min (100 ml for a 70 kg patient).
- Start an intravenous infusion of Intralipid® 20% at 0.25 ml/kg/min (400 ml over 20 min for a 70 kg patient).
- Repeat initial bolus twice at 5 min intervals if an adequate circulation has not been restored.
- After 5 min, double the infusion rate if an adequate circulation has not been restored.
- Continue CPR and infusion until a stable adequate circulation has been restored.

Propofol is NOT a suitable alternative to Intralipid® 20%.

The mechanism of action is thought to be through extraction of lipophilic local anaesthetics from aqueous plasma and tissues, or by counteracting the local anaesthetic inhibition of myocardial fatty acid oxidation.

Anaesthetists should be familiar with guidelines for the treatment of local anaesthetic toxicity and should practise management drills. AAGBI guidelines are reproduced on p1184–5.



# AAGBI Safety Guideline

## Management of Severe Local Anaesthetic Toxicity



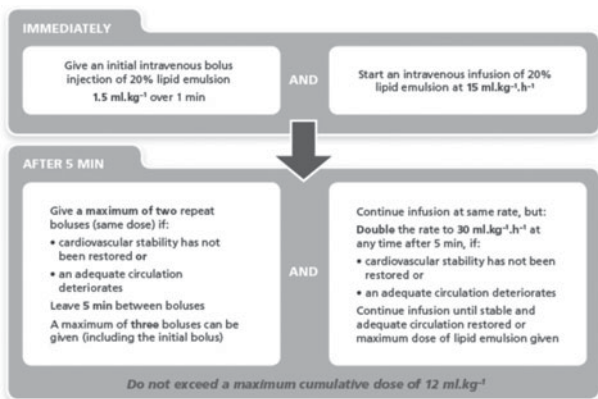
<b>1</b> Recognition	<b>Signs of severe toxicity:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sudden alteration in mental status, severe agitation or loss of consciousness, with or without tonic-clonic convulsions</li> <li>• Cardiovascular collapse: sinus bradycardia, conduction blocks, asystole and ventricular tachyarrhythmias may all occur</li> <li>• Local anaesthetic (LA) toxicity may occur some time after an initial injection</li> </ul>				
<b>2</b> Immediate management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stop injecting the LA</li> <li>• Call for help</li> <li>• Maintain the airway and, if necessary, secure it with a tracheal tube</li> <li>• Give 100% oxygen and ensure adequate lung ventilation (hyperventilation may help by increasing plasma pH in the presence of metabolic acidosis)</li> <li>• Confirm or establish intravenous access</li> <li>• Control seizures: give a benzodiazepine, thiopental or propofol in small incremental doses</li> <li>• Assess cardiovascular status throughout</li> <li>• Consider drawing blood for analysis, but do not delay definitive treatment to do this</li> </ul>				
<b>3</b> Treatment	<table border="1"> <tr> <td> <b>IN CIRCULATORY ARREST</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) using standard protocols</li> <li>• Manage arrhythmias using the same protocols, recognising that arrhythmias may be very refractory to treatment</li> <li>• Consider the use of cardiopulmonary bypass if available</li> </ul> </td><td> <b>WITHOUT CIRCULATORY ARREST</b> Use conventional therapies to treat:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hypotension,</li> <li>• bradycardia,</li> <li>• tachyarrhythmia</li> </ul> </td></tr> <tr> <td> <b>GIVE INTRAVENOUS LIPID EMULSION</b> (following the regimen overleaf)               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continue CPR throughout treatment with lipid emulsion</li> <li>• Recovery from LA-induced cardiac arrest may take &gt;1 h</li> <li>• Propofol is not a suitable substitute for lipid emulsion</li> <li>• Lidocaine should not be used as an anti-arrhythmic therapy</li> </ul> </td><td> <b>CONSIDER INTRAVENOUS LIPID EMULSION</b> (following the regimen overleaf)               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Propofol is not a suitable substitute for lipid emulsion</li> <li>• Lidocaine should not be used as an anti-arrhythmic therapy</li> </ul> </td></tr> </table>	<b>IN CIRCULATORY ARREST</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) using standard protocols</li> <li>• Manage arrhythmias using the same protocols, recognising that arrhythmias may be very refractory to treatment</li> <li>• Consider the use of cardiopulmonary bypass if available</li> </ul>	<b>WITHOUT CIRCULATORY ARREST</b> Use conventional therapies to treat: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hypotension,</li> <li>• bradycardia,</li> <li>• tachyarrhythmia</li> </ul>	<b>GIVE INTRAVENOUS LIPID EMULSION</b> (following the regimen overleaf) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continue CPR throughout treatment with lipid emulsion</li> <li>• Recovery from LA-induced cardiac arrest may take &gt;1 h</li> <li>• Propofol is not a suitable substitute for lipid emulsion</li> <li>• Lidocaine should not be used as an anti-arrhythmic therapy</li> </ul>	<b>CONSIDER INTRAVENOUS LIPID EMULSION</b> (following the regimen overleaf) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Propofol is not a suitable substitute for lipid emulsion</li> <li>• Lidocaine should not be used as an anti-arrhythmic therapy</li> </ul>
<b>IN CIRCULATORY ARREST</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) using standard protocols</li> <li>• Manage arrhythmias using the same protocols, recognising that arrhythmias may be very refractory to treatment</li> <li>• Consider the use of cardiopulmonary bypass if available</li> </ul>	<b>WITHOUT CIRCULATORY ARREST</b> Use conventional therapies to treat: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• hypotension,</li> <li>• bradycardia,</li> <li>• tachyarrhythmia</li> </ul>				
<b>GIVE INTRAVENOUS LIPID EMULSION</b> (following the regimen overleaf) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continue CPR throughout treatment with lipid emulsion</li> <li>• Recovery from LA-induced cardiac arrest may take &gt;1 h</li> <li>• Propofol is not a suitable substitute for lipid emulsion</li> <li>• Lidocaine should not be used as an anti-arrhythmic therapy</li> </ul>	<b>CONSIDER INTRAVENOUS LIPID EMULSION</b> (following the regimen overleaf) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Propofol is not a suitable substitute for lipid emulsion</li> <li>• Lidocaine should not be used as an anti-arrhythmic therapy</li> </ul>				
<b>4</b> Follow-up	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Arrange safe transfer to a clinical area with appropriate equipment and suitable staff until sustained recovery is achieved</li> <li>• Exclude pancreatitis by regular clinical review, including daily amylase or lipase assays for two days</li> <li>• Report cases as follows:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>in the United Kingdom to the National Patient Safety Agency (via <a href="http://www.npsa.nhs.uk">www.npsa.nhs.uk</a>)</li> <li>in the Republic of Ireland to the Irish Medicines Board (via <a href="http://www.imb.ie">www.imb.ie</a>)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>If Lipid has been given, please also report its use to the international registry at <a href="http://www.lipidregistry.org">www.lipidregistry.org</a>. Details may also be posted at <a href="http://www.lipidrescue.org">www.lipidrescue.org</a></p>				

Your nearest bag of Lipid Emulsion is kept .....

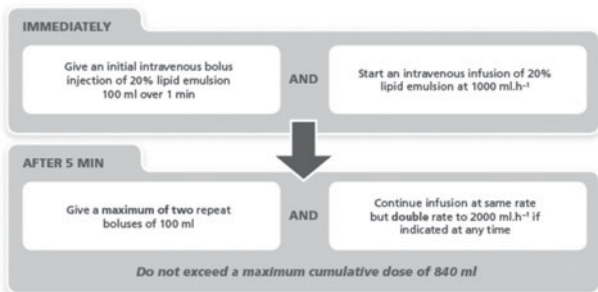
This guideline is not a standard of medical care. The ultimate judgement with regard to a particular clinical procedure or treatment plan must be made by the clinician in the light of the clinical data presented and the diagnostic and treatment options available.

© The Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain & Ireland 2010

**Fig. 41.27** Current guidelines from the Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (AAGBI), with permission.



An approximate dose regimen for a 70-kg patient would be as follows:



This AAGBI Safety Guideline was produced by a Working Party that comprised:  
Grant Cave, Will Harrop-Griffiths (Chair), Martyn Harvey, Tim Meek, John Picard, Tim Short and Guy Weinberg.  
This Safety Guideline is endorsed by the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA).

## Which blocks for which operations?

### Neck

Carotid surgery	Superficial cervical plexus block, deep cervical plexus block (but some doubt the latter's necessity)
Thyroid surgery	Superficial cervical plexus block (bilateral needed)

### Shoulder and upper limb

Shoulder	Interscalene block
Humerus	Interscalene block
Elbow	Subclavian plexus block (SPV), vertical infraclavicular block (VIB), coracoid block, axillary block
Forearm	SPV, VIB, coracoid block, axillary block, mid-humeral block, elbow blocks (distal forearm), intravenous regional anaesthesia (IVRA)
Hand surgery	SPV, VIB, coracoid block, axillary block, mid-humeral block, elbow blocks, forearm blocks, wrist blocks, IVRA

### Trunk and abdomen

Thoracotomy	Thoracic epidural, thoracic paravertebral blocks, intercostal blocks
Rib fracture	Intercostal blocks, thoracic paravertebral blocks
Major breast surgery	Thoracic paravertebral blocks (controversial)
Upper abdominal surgery	Thoracic epidural, thoracic paravertebral blocks, intercostal blocks, TAP block
Laparotomy	Epidural, TAP, rectus sheath blocks (with catheters)
Lower abdominal surgery	Spinal, thoracic/lumbar epidural, TAP blocks
Inguinal hernia repair	Ilioinguinal/iliohypogastric blocks, spinal, caudal (children)
Circumcision	Penile block, caudal (children)
Haemorrhoid surgery	Spinal/infiltration

**Lower limb**

Hip fracture surgery	Spinal, epidural, femoral nerve block, lumbar plexus block, lateral cutaneous nerve of the thigh block
Total hip replacement	Spinal, epidural, femoral nerve block, lumbar plexus block, sciatic nerve block (the latter not commonly performed for this procedure)
Above-knee amputation	Spinal, epidural, sciatic nerve block, femoral nerve block, lumbar plexus block
Knee surgery	Spinal, epidural, combined sciatic and femoral nerve blocks
Lower leg surgery	Spinal, epidural, combined sciatic and femoral nerve blocks
Ankle surgery	Spinal, sciatic (popliteal level), and saphenous
Foot surgery	Ankle blocks/infiltration

Resources: Dermatome map

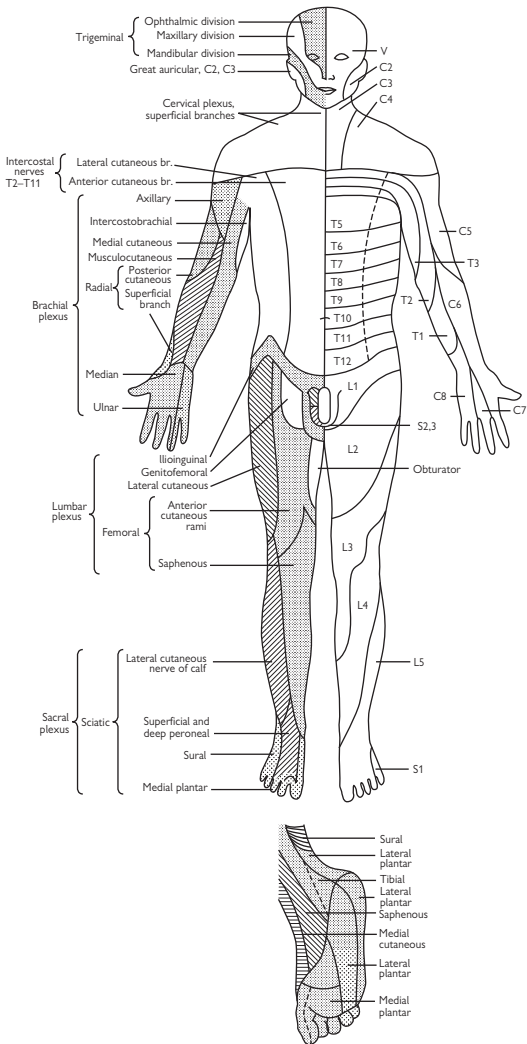


Fig. 41.28 Dermatomes.

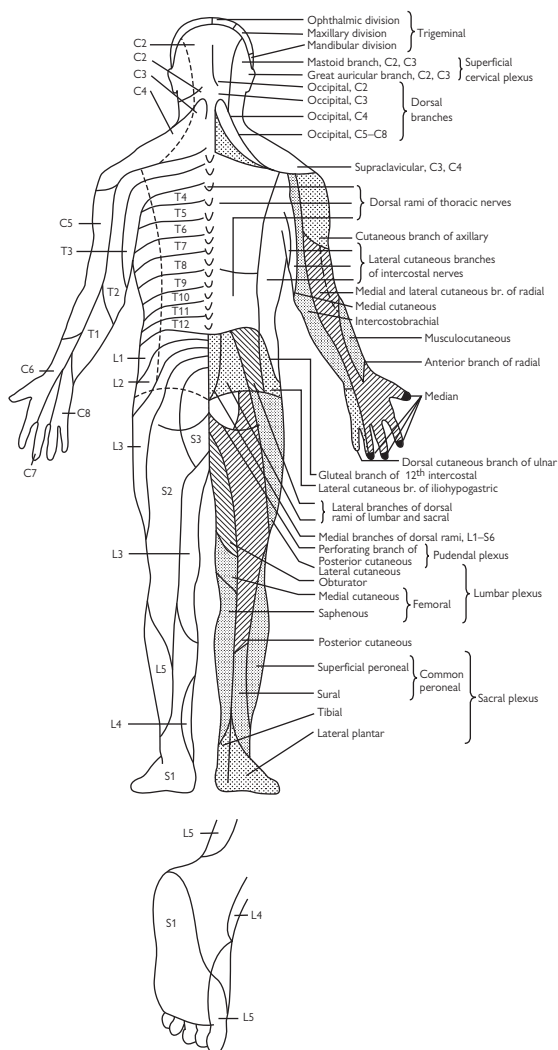


Fig. 41.29 Dermatomes.

Resources 2: Twitches and nerves

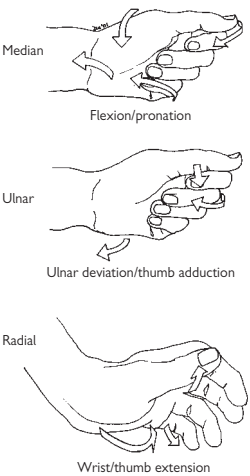


Fig. 41.30

### Further reading

- American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine (ASRA). [www.asra.com](http://www.asra.com).
- E-learning Anaesthesia. [www.e-lfh.org.uk/projects/ela](http://www.e-lfh.org.uk/projects/ela).
- European Society of Regional Anaesthesia and Pain Therapy (ESRA). [www.esraeurope.org](http://www.esraeurope.org).
- New York School of Regional Anesthesia (NYSORA). [www.nysora.com](http://www.nysora.com).
- Regional Anaesthesia—United Kingdom (RA-UK). [www.ra-uk.org](http://www.ra-uk.org).
- Ultrasound for Regional Anesthesia. [www.usra.ca](http://www.usra.ca).



*This page intentionally left blank*

# Drug formulary

## **Joanna Wilson and Isabeau Walker**

Drug formulary [1194](#)

Infusion regimes [1242](#)

## **Aidan O'Donnell**

Medical Gases [1248](#)

MAC values [1250](#)

Antibiotic prophylaxis [1254](#)

See also:

[www.bnf.org](http://www.bnf.org)

[www.bnfc.org](http://www.bnfc.org)

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Abciximab	Synthetic monoclonal antibody. Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitor. (Powerful antiplatelet action) Used to prevent ischaemic complications before or during percutaneous coronary intervention	Intracranial or intraspinal surgery within 2 months, stroke within 2yrs, trauma or neoplasm. Major surgery. Ongoing haemorrhage. Retinopathy. Can only be given once	Haemorrhage. Bradycardia, hypotension. Nausea and vomiting. Chest and back pain. May provoke hypersensitivity		250µg/kg bolus over 1min, then infuse at 0.125µg/kg/min (max 10 µg/min). Start 10–60min before coronary intervention and continue for at least 12hr, unstable angina start 24hr prior to PCI
Acetazolamide	Carbonic anhydrase inhibitor used for acute reduction of intraocular pressure. Weak diuretic	Extravasation causes necrosis. Hypokalaemia/natraemia. Severe hepatic impairment	Thrombocytopenia, nausea, vomiting, flushing, paresthesia	1 month–12yr: PO/IV 5mg/kg 2–4 times daily (max 750mg). 12–18yr 250mg 2–4 times daily	0.25–1g daily in divided doses
Adenosine	Endogenous nucleoside with antiarrhythmic activity. Slows conduction through AV node. Treatment of acute paroxysmal SVT (including WPW) or differentiation of SVT from VT. Duration 10s	Second or third degree heart block. Asthma. Reduce dose in heart transplant or dipyridamole treatment	Flushing, dyspnoea, headache—all transient	0.1mg/kg fast IV bolus increasing by 0.1mg/kg every 1–2 mins to max 0.5mg/kg	6mg fast IV bolus followed by 12mg at 1–2min, then further 12 mg at 1–2mins as necessary

Adrenaline	Endogenous catecholamine with alpha and beta action: 1. Treatment of anaphylaxis 2. Bronchodilator 3. Positive inotrope 4. Given by nebuliser for croup 5. Prolongation of local anaesthetic action. 1:1000 contains 1mg/ml, 1:10 000 contains 100µg/ml, 1:200 000 contains 5µg/ml	Arrhythmias especially with halothane. Caution in elderly. Via central catheter whenever possible	Hypertension, tachycardia, anxiety, hyperglycaemia, arrhythmias. Reduces uterine blood flow	1–3: IV/IM/IO 0.01–0.1ml/kg of 1:10 000 (10µg/kg). ETT 0.1ml/kg of 1:1000 (100µg/kg). Infusion 0.05– 1µg/kg/min 4: Nebulisation 0.5ml/kg (up to 5ml) 1:1000. 5. Maximum dose for infiltration 2µg/kg	1–3: IV/IM/ET 1ml aliquots of 1:10 000 up to 5–10ml (0.5–1mg). Infusion 2–20µg/min (0.04–0.4µg/kg/min). 4: Nebulisation 5ml 1: 1000. 5: Maximum dose for infiltration 2µg/kg
Alcohol	See ethanol				
Alfentanil	Short-acting, potent, opioid analgesic. Duration 10min		Respiratory depression, bradycardia, hypotension	10–50µg/kg over 5min, then 0.5–1µg/kg/min	250–750µg (5–10µg/kg). Attenuation of CVS response to intubation: 10–20µg/kg
Alimemazine (Trimeprazine)	Sedative antihistamine paediatric premed)			PO: 2mg/kg 1–2 hr preop (over 2yrs)	

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Ametop®	See tetracaine				
Aminophylline	Methylxanthine bronchodilator used in prevention and treatment of asthma. Converted to theophylline, a phosphodiesterase inhibitor. Serum levels 10–20mg/l (55–110µmol/l)	Caution in patients already receiving oral or IV theophyllines. Where serum level known aminophylline 0.6mg/kg should increase level by 1mg/l	Palpitations, tachycardia, tachypnoea, seizures, nausea, arrhythmias	5mg/kg over 30min, then 0.5–1mg/kg/hr infusion	5mg/kg over 30min, then 0.5mg/kg/hr infusion
Amiodarone	Mixed class 1C and III antiarrhythmic useful in treatment of supraventricular and ventricular arrhythmias	Via central catheter. Sinoatrial heart block, thyroid dysfunction, pregnancy, porphyria. Dilute in dextrose 5%, not saline	Commonly causes thyroid dysfunction and reversible corneal deposits	5mg/kg over 20–120min. Infusion 300µg/kg/min, max 1.2g/24hr. 5 mg/kg slow IV bolus for defib resistant VF	5mg/kg over 20–120min followed by infusion if reqd, maximum 1.2g in 24hr. 300mg slow IV bolus for defib resistant VF
Amoxicillin	Broad spectrum penicillin antibiotic	History of allergy	Nausea, diarrhoea, rash	10–25mg/kg tds (IV,IM,PO). (qds in severe infections)	500mg tds, increased to 1g qds in severe infections

Atenolol	Cardioselective $\beta$ -blocker. Long acting	Asthma, heart failure, AV block, verapamil treatment	Bradycardia, hypotension, and decreased contractility	0.05mg/kg every 5min—max 4 doses	5–10mg over 10min
Atracurium	Benzylisoquinolinium non-depolarising muscle relaxant. Undergoes temperature- and pH- dependent Hofmann elimination (to laudanosine), plus non-specific enzymatic ester hydrolysis. Useful in severe renal or hepatic disease. Duration 20–35min	Neuromuscular block potentiated by aminoglycosides, loop diuretics, magnesium, lithium, $\downarrow$ temp, $\downarrow$ K <sup>+</sup> , $\downarrow$ pH, prior use of suxamethonium, volatile agents. Store at 2–8°C	Mild histamine release and rash common with higher doses. Flush with saline before and after	Intubation: 0.3–0.6mg/kg. Maintenance: 0.1–0.2mg/kg. Infusion: 0.3–0.6mg/kg/hr, monitor neuromuscular blockade	Intubation: 0.3–0.6mg/kg. Maintenance: 0.1–0.2mg/kg. Infusion: 0.3–0.6mg/kg/hr, monitor neuromuscular blockade

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Atropine	Muscarinic acetylcholine antagonist. Vagal blockade at AV and sinus node increases heart rate (transient decrease at low doses due to weak agonist effect). Tertiary amine, therefore crosses blood–brain barrier	Obstructive uropathy and cardiovascular disease. Glaucoma, myasthenia gravis	Decreases secretions, and lower oesophageal sphincter tone, relaxes bronchial smooth muscle. Confusion in elderly	IV: 10–20µg/kg. Control of muscarinic effects of neostigmine: 10–20µg/kg. IM/SC: 10–30µg/kg. PO: 40µg/kg	300–600µg. Prevention of muscarinic effects of neostigmine: 600–1200µg. Cardiac arrest: 3mg
Augmentin®	See co-amoxiclav				
Benzylpenicillin	Broad spectrum antibiotic	History of allergy	Nausea, diarrhoea, rash	25mg/kg qds. 50mg/kg qds for severe infections (max 2.4g in 4hr)	600mg–1.2g qds. Higher doses may also be used (up to 2.4g 4-hourly)

Bicarbonate (sodium)	Alkaline salt used for correction of acidosis and to enhance onset of action of local anaesthetics. 8.4% = 1000mmol/l. Dose (mmol) in acidosis: weight (kg) $\times$ base deficit $\times$ 0.3	Precipitation with calcium- containing solutions, increased CO <sub>2</sub> production, necrosis on extravasation. Via central catheter if possible	Alkalosis, hypokalaemia, hypernatraemia, hypocalcaemia	1ml/kg 8.4% solution (1mmol/kg)	Dependent on degree of acidosis. Resuscitation: 50ml of 8.4%, then recheck blood gases. Bicarbonation of LA: 1ml 8.4% to 20ml bupivacaine. 1ml 8.4% to 10ml lidocaine/ prilocaine
Bupivacaine	Amide type local anaesthetic used for infiltration, epidural, and spinal anaesthesia. Slower onset than lidocaine. Duration 200–400min (slightly prolonged by adrenaline), pKa 8.1	Greater cardiotoxicity than other local agents. Do not use for IVRA. Adrenaline-containing solutions contain preservative	Toxicity: tongue/ circumoral numbness, restlessness, tinnitus, seizures, cardiac arrest	Infiltration/epidural: maximum dose dependent upon injection site—2mg/kg/4hr recommended	0.25–0.75% solution. Infiltration/epidural: maximum dose dependent upon injection site—2mg/kg/4hr (2mg/kg with adrenaline). 0.75% solution contraindicated in pregnancy

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.



Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Buprenorphine	Opioid with both agonist and antagonist actions. Duration 6hr	May precipitate withdrawal in opioid addicts. Only partially reversed by naloxone	Nausea, respiratory depression, constipation		Slow IV/IM: 300–600µg qds. SL: 200–400µg qds
Caffeine	Mild stimulant effective in the treatment of post dural puncture headache. Intravenous preparation available as caffeine sodium benzoate		Insomnia, weakly diuretic, excitation, tachycardia	SCBU: 5mg/kg qds. Prevention of postop. apnoea: 10mg/kg	IV/PO: 300–500mg bd One cup of coffee contains 50–100mg. Soft drinks may contain up to 35–50mg
Calcium chloride	Electrolyte replacement, positive inotrope, hyperkalaemia, hypermagnesaemia. Calcium chloride 10% contains $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ 680µmol/ml	Necrosis on extravasation. Incompatible with bicarbonate	Arrhythmias, hypertension, hypercalcaemia	0.1–0.2ml/kg 10% solution	2–5ml 10% solution (10mg/kg, 0.07mmol/kg)
Calcium gluconate	As calcium chloride. Calcium gluconate 10% contains $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ 220µmol/ml	Less phlebitis than calcium chloride	As calcium chloride	0.3–0.5 ml/kg 10% solution (max 20ml)	6–15ml of 10% solution (30mg/kg, 0.07mmol/kg)

Carboprost	Synthetic prostaglandin F <sub>2</sub> used to treat severe post-partum haemorrhage due to uterine atony (after ergometrine and oxytocin failed)	Asthma, diabetes, epilepsy, jaundice, anaemia, glaucoma. Large doses may cause uterine rupture	Fever, bronchospasm. Nausea, vomiting, flushing. May cause cardiovascular collapse	Never give IV. 250µg deep IM or directly into the myometrium. Repeat if needed after at least 15min. Max dose 2mg/24hr
Cefotaxime	Third generation cephalosporin broad spectrum antibiotic	Penicillin sensitivity	Neonate: 25mg/kg bd. Child: 50mg/kg bd/tds. 50mg/kg qds in severe infections (max 12g daily)	1g bd (up to 12g daily in divided doses in severe infections)
Cefuroxime	Second generation cephalosporin broad spectrum antibiotic	10% cross-sensitivity with penicillin allergy	20–30mg/kg tds (max 1.5g tds)	750mg–1.5g tds
Celecoxib	NSAID with selective inhibition of cyclo-oxygenase II (Cox II) enzyme. Reduced gastric, asthma, and platelet side effects	Hypersensitivity to sulphonamides and aspirin, severe renal impairment, peptic ulceration	NR	PO: 100–200mg bd

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Cetirizine	Non-sedative antihistamine. Relief of allergy, urticaria	Prostatic hypertrophy, urinary retention, glaucoma, porphyria	Dry mouth	PO: 1–2yr 0.2mg/kg 2–6yr: 5mg od, >6yr: 10mg od	PO: 10mg od
Chloral hydrate	Formerly a popular hypnotic in children	Avoid prolonged use. Caution in elderly, gastritis, and porphyria	Gastric irritation, ataxia	PO: 30–50mg/kg as single dose for sedation (up to 1g)	
Chlorphenamine	Sedative antihistamine. Relief of allergy, urticaria, anaphylaxis	Prostatic hypertrophy, urinary retention, glaucoma, porphyria	Drowsiness, dry mouth	Slow IV 0.25mg/kg, max dose 10mg. PO 0.1mg/kg up to 4mg qds	Slow IV/IM: 10mg. PO: 4mg qds
Chlorpromazine	Phenothiazine, antipsychotic. Mild alpha blocking action. Potent antiemetic and used for chronic hiccups	Hypotension	Extrapyramidal and anticholinergic symptoms, sedation, hypotension	0.1–1mg/kg over 20min	Up to 25mg (at 1mg/min diluted in saline to 1mg/ml). Deep IM: 25–50mg 6–8-hourly

Cisatracurium	Single isomer of atracurium with greater potency, longer duration of action, and less histamine release. Duration 55min	Neuromuscular block potentiated by aminoglycosides, loop diuretics, magnesium, lithium, ↓temp, ↓K <sup>+</sup> , ↓pH, prior use of suxamethonium, volatile agents. Store at 2–8°C	Enhanced effect in myasthenia gravis, effects antagonised by anticholinesterases, e.g. neostigmine. Monitor response with peripheral nerve stimulator	Intubation: (>1 month) 150µg/kg. Maintenance (>2yr) 30µg/kg every 20min. Infusion: (>2yr) 0.06–0.18mg/kg/hr	Intubation: 150µg/kg. Maintenance: 30µg/kg every 20–30min. Infusion: 0.06–0.18mg/kg/hr
Citrate (sodium)	Non-particulate antacid oral premedication. Aspiration prophylaxis				PO: 30ml 0.3M solution

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Clonidine	Selective $\alpha_2$ agonist. Reduces requirement for opioids and volatile anaesthetics. Enhances epidural analgesia	Rebound hypertension on acute withdrawal of chronic therapy	Hypotension, sedation	Over 6 months: 1–3 $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}$ slowly. PO premed: 4 $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}$ . Caudal: 1 $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}$	150–300 $\mu\text{g}$ over 5min. Epidural: 75–150 $\mu\text{g}$ in 10ml saline
Co-amoxiclav	Mixture of amoxicillin and clavulanic acid. 1.2g contains 1g amoxicillin	See amoxicillin	See amoxicillin	30mg/kg tds (qds in severe infections), max dose 1.2g qds	600mg–1.2g tds (qds in severe infections)
Cocaine	Ester type local anaesthetic and potent vasoconstrictor. Topical anaesthesia of mucous membranes (nasal passages). Duration 20–30min	Topical use only. Caution with other sympathomimetic agents, halothane, anticholinesterase deficiency. Porphyria, MAOIs	Hypertension, arrhythmias, euphoria	1–3mg/kg topical	4–10% solution. Maximum topical dose 1–3mg/kg
Co-codamol 8/500	Combination oral analgesic containing codeine 8mg and paracetamol 500mg	See paracetamol		NR	PO: 1–2 tablets qds (maximum 8 tablets per day)
Co-codamol 30/500	Combination oral analgesic containing codeine 30mg and paracetamol 500mg	See paracetamol. When no strength is specified co-codamol 8/500 is dispensed		NR	PO: 1–2 tablets qds (maximum 8 tablets per day)

Co-codaprin	Combination oral analgesic containing codeine 8mg and aspirin 400mg	See ibuprofen		NR	PO: 1–2 tablets qds (maximum 8 tablets per day)
Codeine phosphate	Opioid used for mild to moderate pain		Nausea, vomiting, dysphoria, drowsiness, constipation	PO/IM/PR: 1mg/kg 6-hourly (max 240mg/d)	PO/IM: 30–60mg 4-hourly (maximum 240mg/d)
Co-dydramol	Combination oral analgesic containing dihydrocodeine 10mg and paracetamol 500mg	See paracetamol		NR	PO: 1–2 tablets qds (maximum 8 tablets per day)
Co-proxamol	Combination oral analgesic containing dextropropoxyphene 32.5 mg and paracetamol 325 mg	See paracetamol		NR	PO: 1–2 tablets qds (maximum 8 tablets per day)
Cyclizine	Antihistamine, antimuscarinic anti-emetic agent	Caution in severe heart failure	Drowsiness, dry mouth, blurred vision, tachycardia	IV/IM: 1mg/kg up to 50mg tds	IV/IM/PO: 50mg tds

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Dalteparin	Low molecular weight heparin used in prevention of venous thromboembolism	Once daily dosing. APTT monitoring not usually required		SC prophylaxis: 100U/kg od >12yrs: adult dose	SC prophylaxis: 2500u od (5000U in high risk)
Dantrolene	Direct-acting skeletal muscle relaxant used in treatment of malignant hyperpyrexia and neuroleptic malignant syndrome. 20mg/vial—reconstitute in 60ml warm water and give via blood set	Avoid combination with calcium channel blockers (verapamil) as may cause hyperkalaemia and cardiovascular collapse. Crosses placenta	Skeletal muscle weakness (22%), phlebitis (10%)	1mg/kg repeated every 5min to a maximum of 10mg/kg	1mg/kg repeated every 5min to a maximum of 10mg/kg Usually 2.5mg/kg
Desmopressin	Synthetic analogue of vasopressin (ADH) with longer duration of action and reduced pressor effect. Used for neurogenic diabetes insipidus and haemophilia (enhances factor VIII activity)	Caution in hypertension and CVS disease	Hypertension, angina, abdominal pain, flushing, hyponatraemia	Diabetes insipidus: IV/IM/SC 0.5–2µg/d (not per kg). Haemophilia: 0.3µg/kg (in 50ml saline over 30min IV)	IV/IM/SC: 1–4µg/d. Intranasal: 10–40µg/d PO: 100–200µg tds. Haemophilia: 0.3µg/kg (in 50ml saline over 30min IV)

Dexamethasone	Prednisolone derivative corticosteroid. Less sodium retention than hydrocortisone. Cerebral oedema, oedema prevention, anti-emetic	Interacts with anticholinesterase agents to increase weakness in myasthenia gravis Dexamethasone 0.75mg = prednisolone 5mg	See prednisolone	IV/IM/SC: 200–400µg/kg bd. Cerebral oedema: 100µg/kg qds. Croup: 250µg/kg, then 125µg/kg qds for 24h. Anti-emetic: 150µg/kg (max 8mg)	IV/IM/SC: 4–8mg. Cerebral oedema: 4mg qds. Antiemesis 2–8mg
Diamorphine	Potent opioid analgesic	Spinal/epidural use associated with risk of respiratory depression, pruritus, nausea	Histamine release, hypotension, bronchospasm, nausea, vomiting, pruritus, dysphoria	IV/SC: 50µg/kg then 15µg/kg/hr. Epidural: 2.5mg in 60ml 0.125% bupivacaine at 0.1–0.4ml/kg/hr. Intranasal: 100µg/kg in 0.2ml saline	IV/IM/SC: 2.5–5mg 4-hourly. Epidural: 2.5mg diluted in 10ml local anaesthetic/saline, then 0.1–0.5mg/hr. Spinal: 0.25–0.5mg
Diazepam	Long-acting benzodiazepine. Sedation or termination of status epilepticus. Alcohol withdrawal	Thrombophlebitis: emulsion (Diazemuls®) less irritant to veins	Sedation, circulatory depression	0.2–0.3mg/kg. Rectal: 0.5mg/kg as Stesolid® or may use IV preparation	2–10mg, repeat if required

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.



Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Diclofenac sodium	Potent NSAID analgesic for mild to moderate pain	Hypersensitivity to aspirin, asthma, severe renal impairment, peptic ulceration	Gastrointestinal upset or bleeding, bronchospasm, tinnitus, fluid retention, platelet inhibition	>1yr: PO/PR: 1mg/kg tds. Maximum 150mg/d	PO/PR: 25–50mg tds (or 100mg 18-hourly). Maximum 150mg/d
Digoxin	Cardiac glycoside. Weak inotrope and control of ventricular response in supraventricular arrhythmia. Therapeutic levels 0.8–2µg/l (1.2–2.6nmol/l)	Reduce dose in elderly. Enhanced effect/toxicity in hypokalaemia. Avoid cardioversion in toxicity	Anorexia, nausea, fatigue, arrhythmias	Rapid IV/PO loading: 20–35µg/kg stat	Rapid IV loading: 250–500µg over 30min. Maximum 1mg/24hr. PO loading: 1–1.5mg in divided doses over 24hr. PO maintenance: 125–250µg/d
Dihydrocodeine tartrate	Opioid used for mild to moderate pain		Nausea, vomiting, dysphoria, drowsiness	PO/IM/PR: 0.5–1mg/kg 4-hourly (max dose 60mg 4-hourly)	PO/IM: 30–60mg 4-hourly
Dobutamine	β <sub>1</sub> adrenergic agonist, positive inotrope and chronotrope. Cardiac failure	Arrhythmias and hypertension. Phlebitis, but can be administered peripherally	Tachycardia. Decreased peripheral and pulmonary vascular resistance	Infusion: 2–20µg/kg/min	Infusion: 2.5–10µg/kg/min

Domperidone	Anti-emetic acting on chemoreceptor trigger zone and peripheral D <sub>2</sub> receptors	Renal impairment. Not recommended for PONV prophylaxis	Raised prolactin. Rarely acute dystonic reactions	PO: 200–400µg/kg 4–6-hourly	PO: 10–20mg 4–6-hourly. PR: 30–60mg 4–6-hourly
Dopamine	Naturally occurring catecholamine with α <sub>1</sub> , β <sub>1</sub> , and dopaminergic activity. Inotropic agent	Via central catheter. Pheochromocytoma (due to noradrenaline release)	Tachycardia, dysrhythmias	Infusion: 2–20µg/kg/min	Infusion: 2–10µg/kg/min
Dopexamine	Catecholamine with β <sub>2</sub> and dopaminergic activity. Inotropic agent	Via central catheter. Pheochromocytoma, hypokalaemia	Tachycardia	Infusion: 0.5–6µg/kg/min	Infusion: 0.5–6µg/kg/min
Doxapram	Respiratory stimulant acting through carotid chemoreceptors and medulla. Duration 12min	Epilepsy, airway obstruction, acute asthma, severe CVS disease	Risk of arrhythmia. Hypertension	1mg/kg slowly. Infusion: 0.5–1mg/kg/hr for 1hr	1–1.5mg/kg over >30s. Infusion: 2–4mg/min
Droperidol	Butyrophenone related to haloperidol. Neuroleptic anaesthesia and potent anti-emetic. Duration 4hr	Alpha adrenergic blocker. Parkinson's disease	Vasodilatation, hypotension. Dystonic reactions	Anti-emetic: 25–50µg/kg (max dose 2.5mg)	Anti-emetic: 0.5–2.5mg

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Edrophonium	Anticholinesterase used in diagnostic assessment of myasthenia gravis. 15 times less potent than neostigmine	Short acting (10min)	Bradycardia, AV block	20µg/kg test dose, then 80µg/kg. >12yrs: adult dose	1mg slow IV every 2–4min. Maximum 10mg. Reversal: 0.5mg/kg with anticholinergic
EMLA <sup>®</sup>	Eutectic mixture of 2.5% lidocaine and 2.5% prilocaine. Topical anaesthesia	Absorption of anaesthetic depends on surface area and duration of application. Avoid use on abrasions or mucous membranes	Methaemoglobin-aemia in high doses	NR prem neonates. Apply 1–2g under occlusive dressing 1–5hr before procedure (max 2 doses/24hr)	Apply under occlusive dressing 1–5hr before procedure (maximum 60g)
Enoxaparin	Low molecular weight heparin used in prevention of venous thromboembolism	Once daily dosing and APTT monitoring not usually required		SC prophylaxis: 500µg/kg bd (max 40mg daily)	SC prophylaxis: 20mg (2000U) od (40mg if high risk)
Enoximone	Type III phosphodiesterase inhibitor used in cardiac failure with increased filling pressures. Inodilator	Stenotic valvular disease, cardiomyopathy	Arrhythmias, hypotension, nausea	Initial loading dose 500µg/kg, then infusion: 5–20µg/kg/min in 24hr	Infusion: 90µg/kg/min for 10–30min, then 5–20µg/kg/min (maximum 24mg/kg/d)

Ephedrine	Direct and indirect sympathomimetic ( $\alpha$ and $\beta$ adrenergic action). Vasopressor, safe in pregnancy. Duration 10–60min	Caution in elderly, hypertension, and CVS disease. Tachyphylaxis. Avoid with MAOI	Tachycardia, hypertension		3–6mg repeated (dilute 30mg in 10ml saline, 1ml increments). IM: 30mg
Ergometrine	Ergot alkaloid used to control uterine hypotony or bleeding. Syntometrine® = ergometrine 500 $\mu$ g/ml and oxytocin 5U/ml	Severe cardiac disease and hypertension	Vasoconstriction, hypertension, vomiting		IM: 1ml as Syntometrine®. Not recommended IV
Erythromycin	Macrolide antibiotic with spectrum similar to penicillin	Arrhythmias with cisapride, terfenadine, astemizole	Nausea, diarrhoea	10–25mg/kg qds over 15–60min	25–50mg/kg daily (6-hourly in divided doses)
Esmolol	Short-acting cardioselective $\beta$ -blocker. Metabolised by red cell esterases. Treatment of supraventricular tachycardia or intraoperative hypertension. Duration 10min	Asthma, heart failure, AV block, verapamil treatment	Hypotension, bradycardia. May prolong action of suxamethonium	SVT: 0.5mg/kg over 1min, then 50–200 $\mu$ g/kg/min	SVT: 0.5mg/kg over 1min, then 50–200 $\mu$ g/kg/min. Hypertension: 25–100mg, then 50–300 $\mu$ g/kg/min

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Ethanol	Useful sedative/hypnotic. Has been tried as an IV induction agent in doses of up to 44g	Administered as dehydrated absolute alcohol BP	Diuretic effect		2g (2ml) diluted to 5–10% solution in saline or glucose, repeated as necessary
Etomidate	IV induction agent. Cardiotable in therapeutic doses. Available in lipid	Pain on injection. Adrenocortical suppression	Nausea and vomiting. Myoclonic movements	0.3mg/kg	0.3mg/kg
Fentanyl	Synthetic phenylpiperidine derivative opioid analgesic. High lipid solubility and cardiostability. Duration 30–60min	Reduce dose in elderly. Delayed respiratory depression and pruritus if epidural/spinal	Circulatory and ventilatory depression. High doses may produce muscle rigidity	1–5µg/kg, up to 50µg/kg if ventilating postop. Infusion: 2–4µg/kg/hr	1–5µg/kg (up to 50µg/kg). Epidural: 50–100µg (diluted in 10ml saline/local anaesthetic). Spinal: 5–20µg
Flecainide	Class 1C anti-arrhythmic agent used for VT, WPW, and 'chemical cardioversion' of paroxysmal AF	Rise in pacemaker threshold. AV block, heart failure, recent MI	Nausea and vomiting. Pro-arrhythmic effects, AV block	2mg/kg (max dose 150mg) over 15 min with ECG monitoring	'Chemical cardioversion': 2mg/kg up to 150mg (over 15min with ECG monitoring). PO: 200–300mg
Flucloxacillin	Penicillinase-resistant antibiotic active against staphylococci	Hypotension on rapid IV administration	Thrombophlebitis	25–50mg/kg qds (max dose 2g qds)	500mg–1g qds slow IV. Surgical prophylaxis: 1–2g slow IV

Flumazenil	Benzodiazepine receptor antagonist. Duration 45–90min	Benzodiazepine dependence (acute withdrawal), resedation if long-acting benzodiazepine	Arrhythmia, seizures	5µg/kg, then repeat up to 40µg/kg. Infusion: 2–10µg/kg/hr	200µg, then 100µg at 60s intervals (up to maximum 1mg). Infusion: 100–400µg/hr
Fondaparinux	Synthetic pentasaccharide which inhibits activated factor X. DVT prophylaxis after major lower limb orthopaedic surgery	Active bleeding, severe renal impairment, bacterial endocarditis. Caution with spinal and epidural (pp1174–77)	Haemorrhage, thrombocytopenia, oedema, deranged LFTs	NR	SC: 2.5mg od started 6hr postop for up to 5d. Do not give IM or IV. Monitor platelet count
Fosphenytoin	Prodrug of phenytoin. Can be administered more rapidly. Dosages in phenytoin equivalents (PE): fosphenytoin 1.5mg = phenytoin 1mg	See phenytoin- monitor ECG/BP. Infusion rate: 50–100 mg (PE)/min [status 100–150mg (PE)/min]	See phenytoin	>5yrs: 10–15 mg (PE)/kg, then 4–5mg (PE)/kg daily in 1–4 divided doses. Infusion rate: 1–2mg (PE)/kg/min	Infusion: 10–15 mg (PE)/kg, then 4–5mg (PE)/kg daily. Status: 20mg (PE)/kg. Can also be administered IM. Infusion rate 50–100mg (PE)/min

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Furosemide (frusemide)	Loop diuretic used in treatment of hypertension, congestive cardiac failure, renal failure, fluid overload		Hypotension, tinnitus, ototoxicity, hypokalaemia, hyperglycaemia	0.5–1.5mg/kg bd	10–40mg slowly
Gentamicin	Aminoglycoside antibiotic active against Gram-negative bacteria. Peak level 6–10mg/l. Trough level <1–2mg/l	Impairs neuromuscular transmission—avoid in myasthenia	Ototoxicity, nephrotoxicity	2mg/kg tds or 5mg/kg/d as a single dose (administered over 5min)	3–5mg/kg divided doses or 5–7mg/kg/d as a single dose (administered over 5min)
Glucagon	Polypeptide hormone used in treatment of hypoglycaemia and overdose of $\beta$ -blocker. Hyperglycaemic action lasts 10–30min. 1U=1mg	Glucose must be administered as soon as possible. Pheochromocytoma	Hypertension, hypotension, nausea, vomiting	<25kg: 0.5U (0.5 mg). >25kg: 1U (1mg)	SC/IM/IV: 1U (1mg). $\beta$ -blocker overdose unresponsive to atropine: 2–10mg (max 10mg) in glucose 5%
Glucose	Treatment of hypoglycaemia in unconscious patient	50% solution irritant, therefore flush after administration		0.5ml/kg of 50% solution; use more dilute solutions	25–50g (50–100ml 50% solution). Can use more dilute solutions

Glyceryl trinitrate	Organic nitrate vasodilator. Controlled hypotension, angina, congestive cardiac failure	Remove patches before defibrillation to avoid electrical arcing	Tachycardia, hypotension, headache, nausea, flushing, methaemoglobinemia	10–50µg/kg/hr starting dose up to 300µg/kg/hr	Infusion: 0.5–10mg/hr. SL tabs: 0.3–1mg prn. SL spray: 400µg prn. Patch: 5–10mg/24hr
Glycopyrronium bromide (glycopyrrolate)	Quaternary ammonium anticholinergic agent. Bradycardia, blockade of muscarinic effects of anticholinesterases, antispasmodic	Caution in glaucoma, cardiovascular disease. Unlike atropine does not cross blood–brain barrier	Paradoxical bradycardia in small doses. Reduces lower oesophageal sphincter tone	4–10µg/kg	200–400µg. Control of muscarinic effects of neostigmine: 200µg for each 1mg neostigmine
Granisetron	5HT <sub>3</sub> receptor antagonist. Anti-emetic. Long-acting	Pregnancy, breast-feeding	Reduces colonic motility. Headache	NR	1mg diluted to 5ml with saline. Give over 30s. Max 2mg/d

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.



Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Haloperidol	Butyrophenone derivative antipsychotic. Useful anti-emetic	Neuroleptic malignant syndrome	Extrapyramidal reactions	NR	IM/IV: 2–10mg 4–8-hourly (max 18mg/d). Anti-emetic: 0.5–2mg IV
Heparin (unfractionated)	Endogenous mucopolysaccharide used for anticoagulation. Half-life 1–3hr. 100U = 1mg	Monitor activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT). Reversed with protamine	Haemorrhage, thrombocytopenia, hyperkalaemia	Low dose: 50–75U/kg IV, then 10–15 U/kg/hr. Full dose: 200U/kg IV, then 15–30U/kg/hr, Anticoagulation for bypass 300–400U/kg IV	Low dose SC: 5000U bd. Full dose IV: 5000U, then 18U/kg/hr infusion. Anticoagulation for bypass: 300U/kg
Hyaluronidase	Enzyme used to enhance permeation of injected fluids and local anaesthetics. Treatment of extravasation. Hypodermoclysis: 150U/l	Not for intravenous administration	Occasional severe allergy	Local anaesthetic: 15U/ml solution	Ophthalmology: 10–15U/ml local. Extravasation: 1500U in 1ml saline infiltrated to affected area
Hydralazine	Direct-acting arteriolar vasodilator used to control arterial pressure. Duration 2–4hr	Higher doses required in rapid acetylators. SLE	Increased heart rate, cardiac output, stroke volume	0.1–0.5mg/kg	5mg every 5min to a maximum of 20mg

Hydrocortisone (cortisol)	Endogenous steroid with anti-inflammatory and potent mineralocorticoid action (steroid of choice in replacement therapy—active form of cortisone). Treatment of allergy	Hydrocortisone 20mg = prednisolone 5mg	Hyperglycaemia, hypertension, psychic disturbance, muscle weakness, fluid retention	4mg/kg, then 2–4mg/kg qds	IV/IM: 50–200mg qds. Adrenal suppression and surgery: 25mg at induction, then 25mg qds. PO: 10–20mg/d
Hydromorphone hydrochloride	Opioid used for moderate to severe pain	As morphine	Nausea, vomiting, dysphoria, drowsiness	<12yr: NR >12yr: adult dose	PO: 1.3–4mg 4-hourly increased as necessary. PO slow release: 4mg bd
Hyoscine hydrobromide	Antimuscarinic sedative antiemetic agent used as premedication (L-isomer of hyoscine)	See atropine. Avoid in elderly—delirium	See atropine. Sedation	IV/IM/SC: 10µg/kg	IV/IM/SC: 200–600µg. PO: 300µg qds
Hyoscine butylbromide	Antimuscarinic agent used as an antispasmodic (racemic hyoscine)	See atropine	See atropine		IV/IM: 20mg slowly repeated if necessary

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Ibuprofen	NSAID analgesic for mild to moderate pain. Best side-effect profile of NSAIDs	Hypersensitivity to aspirin, asthma, severe renal impairment, peptic ulceration	Gastrointestinal upset or bleeding, bronchospasm, tinnitus, fluid retention, platelet inhibition	PO: 10mg/kg tds or 5mg/kg qds (>7kg)	PO: 400mg qds
Imipenem	Carbapenem broad spectrum antibiotic. Administered with cilastatin to reduce renal metabolism	Caution in renal failure and pregnancy	Nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, convulsions, thrombophlebitis	>3 months: 15mg/kg over 30min qds (25mg/kg in severe infections)	Slow IV (1hr): 250–500mg qds. Surgical prophylaxis: 1g at induction, repeated after 3hr
Indometacin	NSAID analgesic for moderate pain. High incidence of side effects. Also used for neonatal ductus arteriosus closure	Hypersensitivity to aspirin, asthma, severe renal impairment, peptic ulceration	Gastrointestinal upset or bleeding, bronchospasm, tinnitus, fluid retention, platelet inhibition	Ductus closure: 200µg/kg, three doses	PO/PR: 25–50mg tds. PR: 100mg bd
Insulin (soluble)	Human soluble pancreatic hormone facilitating intra- cellular transport of glucose and anabolism. Diabetes mellitus, ketoacidosis, and hyperkalaemia	Monitor blood glucose and serum potassium. Store at 2–8°C	Hypoglycaemia, hypokalaemia	Ketoacidosis: 0.1–0.2U/kg (max 20U), then 0.1U/kg/hr (max 5–10U/hr)	Ketoacidosis: 10–20U, then 5–10U/hr. Sliding scale (p159). Hyperkalaemia (p184)

Intralipid®	20% emulsion used in the treatment of severe local anaesthetic toxicity				1.5ml/kg (100ml), then 0.25ml/kg/min (400ml over 20min)
Isoprenaline	Synthetic catecholamine with potent $\beta$ adrenergic agonist activity. Emergency treatment of heart block and bradycardia unresponsive to atropine. $\beta$ -blocker overdose	Ischaemic heart disease, hyperthyroidism, diabetes mellitus	Tachycardia, arrhythmias, sweating, tremor	Infusion: 0.02–1 $\mu$ g/kg/min	Infusion: 0.5–10 $\mu$ g/min (0.2mg in 500ml 5% glucose at 2–20ml/min or 1mg in 50ml at 1.5–30ml/hr)
Ketamine	Phencyclidine derivative producing dissociative anaesthesia. Induction/maintenance of anaesthesia in high-risk and hypovolaemic patients	Emergence delirium reduced by benzodiazepines. Caution in hypertension. Control excess salivation with antimuscarinic agent	Bronchodilation. Increased ICP, blood pressure, uterine tone, salivation. Respiratory depression if given rapidly	Induction: 1–2mg/kg IV, 5–10mg/kg IM. Infusion: 1–3mg/kg/hr. Caudal: 0.5mg/kg (preservative-free only)	Induction: 1–2mg/kg IV, 5–10mg/kg IM. Infusion: 1–3mg/kg/hr (analgesia only 0.25mg/kg/hr)
Ketorolac	NSAID analgesic for mild to moderate pain. Not licensed for perioperative use	Hypersensitivity to aspirin, asthma, severe renal impairment, peptic ulceration	Gastrointestinal upset or bleeding, bronchospasm, tinnitus, fluid retention, platelet inhibition	>6 months: slow IV/IM: 0.5mg/kg up to 30mg tds	Slow IV/IM: 10mg, then 10–30mg every 4–6hr (maximum daily dose 90mg, but 60mg in elderly)

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Labetalol	Combined $\alpha$ (mild) and $\beta$ adrenergic receptor antagonist. Blood pressure control without reflex tachycardia. Duration 2–4hr	Asthma, heart failure, AV block, verapamil treatment	Hypotension, bradycardia, bronchospasm, liver damage	0.2 mg/kg boluses up to 1mg/kg. Infusion: 1–3mg/kg/hr	5mg increments up to 100mg. Infusion: 20–160mg/hr (in glucose)
Lansoprazole	Proton pump inhibitor. Reduction of gastric acid secretion	Liver disease, pregnancy	Headache, diarrhoea	PO: 0.5–1mg/kg (max 15–30mg) od	PO: 15–30mg od
Levobupivacaine	Levorotatory(s) enantiomer of bupivacaine with reduced cardiotoxicity	See bupivacaine	See bupivacaine	See bupivacaine	See bupivacaine. Max dose: 150mg. Max/24hr: 400mg
Lidocaine	Amide type local anaesthetic: 1. Treatment of ventricular arrhythmias. 2. Reduction of pressor response to intubation. 3. Local anaesthetic—rapid onset, duration 30–90min (prolonged by adrenaline) pKa 7.7	Adrenaline-containing solutions contain preservative. Maximum dose dependent upon injection site—3mg/kg/4hr (6mg/kg with adrenaline)	Toxicity: tongue/circumoral numbness, restlessness, tinnitus, seizures, cardiac arrest. Prolongs action of neuromuscular blockers	1. Antiarrhythmic: 1mg/kg, then 10–50 $\mu$ g/kg/min. 2. Attenuation of pressor response: 1.5mg/kg. 3. Local anaesthesia: 0.5–2% solution	1. Antiarrhythmic: 1mg/kg, then 1–4mg/min. 2. Attenuation of pressor response: 1.5mg/kg. 3. Local anaesthesia: 0.5–2% solution

Loratidine	Non-sedative antihistamine. Relief of allergy, urticaria	Prostatic hypertrophy, urinary retention, glaucoma, porphyria	Dry mouth	<2yr: NR. PO: 2–5yr: 5mg. >6yr: 10mg	PO: 10mg /d
Lorazepam	Benzodiazepine: 1. Sedation or premedication. 2. Status epilepticus. Duration 6–10hr	Decreased requirement for anaesthetic agents	Respiratory depression in combination with opioids. Amnesia	Status 0.1mg/kg; max 4mg	1. PO: 2–4mg 1–2hr preop. IV/IM: 1.5–2.5mg. 2. Status: 4mg IV
Lormetazepam	Benzodiazepine hypnotic sedative premed	Decreased requirement for anaesthetic agents	Respiratory depression in combination with opioid. Amnesia	NR	0.5–1.5mg 1–2hr preop (elderly 0.5mg)
Magnesium sulphate	Essential mineral used to treat: 1. Hypomagnesaemia. 2. Arrhythmias. 3. Eclamptic seizures. 4. Severe asthma. Magnesium sulphate 50% = 500mg/ml = 2mmol $Mg^{2+}$ /ml. Normal plasma level $Mg^{2+}$ 0.75–1.05mmol/l Therapeutic level 2–4mmol/l	Potentiates muscle relaxants. Monitoring of serum level essential during treatment. Myasthenia and muscular dystrophy. Heart block. Magnesium sulphate 1g $\equiv$ $Mg^{2+}$ 4mmol	CNS depression, hypotension, muscle weakness	1. Hypomagnesaemia: 50mg/kg over 10 min (max dose 1g), bd as necessary. 2. Arrhythmias: 25–50mg/kg over 10min (max dose 2g) once if necessary	1. Hypomagnesaemia: 50mg/kg over 10min (max dose 1g), bd as required. 2. Arrhythmias/asthma: 2g (8mmol) over 10min, repeat once if necessary. 3. Eclampsia: 4g (16mmol) over 10min, then 1g/hr for 24hr (see p787)

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Mannitol	Osmotic diuretic used for renal protection and reduction of intracranial pressure. 20% solution = 20g/100ml	Extracellular volume expansion, especially in severe renal and cardiovascular disease	Diuresis, ARF, hypertonicity	0.25–0.5g/kg	0.25–1g/kg (typically 0.5g/kg of 20% solution)
Metaraminol	Potent direct/indirect acting $\alpha$ adrenergic sympathomimetic. Treatment of hypotension. Duration 20–60min	MAOIs, pregnancy. Caution in elderly and hypertensives. Extravasation can cause necrosis	Hypertension, reflex bradycardia, arrhythmias, decreased renal and placental perfusion	10 $\mu$ g/kg, then 0.1–1 $\mu$ g/kg/min	0.5–2mg. Dilute 10mg in 20ml saline and give 0.5–1ml increments (increase dilution in elderly)
Methohexital	Short-acting barbiturate induction agent useful for ECT. Duration 5–10min. 1% solution = 10mg/ml	Porphyria. Premedication reduces excitation at induction	Excitatory phenomenon, hypotension, respiratory depression, hiccups	1–2mg/kg	1–1.5mg/kg. Infusion: 50–150 $\mu$ g/kg/min
Methylthioninium chloride (methylene blue)	1. Treatment of methaemoglobinaemia. 2. Ureteric identification during surgery (renally excreted). 3. Identification of parathyroid glands during surgery	G-6-PD deficiency. Blue colouration causes acute changes in pulse oximetry readings	Tachycardia, nausea, stains skin	1mg/kg slow IV	1mg/kg slow IV

Metoclopramide	Dopaminergic anti-emetic which increases gastric emptying and lower oesophageal sphincter tone	Hypertension in phaeochromocytoma. Inhibits plasma cholinesterase. Increases IOP	Extrapyramidal/dystonic reactions (treat with benztropine or procyclidine)	PO/IM/IV: 0.15mg/kg up to 5mg tds (>60kg, up to 10mg tds)	PO/IM/IV: 10mg tds
Metoprolol	Cardioselective $\beta$ -blocker	Asthma, heart failure, AV block, verapamil treatment	Causes bradycardia, hypotension, and decreased cardiac contractility	0.1mg/kg up to 5mg over 10min	1–5mg over 10min
Metronidazole	Antibiotic with activity against anaerobic bacteria	Disulfiram (Antabuse®)- like effect		7.5mg/kg tds (max dose 500mg tds)	500mg tds

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.



Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Midazolam	Short-acting benzodiazepine. Sedative, anxiolytic, amnesic, anticonvulsant. Duration 20–60min. Oral administration of IV preparation effective though larger dose required	Reduce dose in elderly (very sensitive)	Hypotension, respiratory depression, apnoea	0.1–0.2mg/kg. PO: 0.5mg/kg (use IV preparation in orange squash). Intranasal: 0.2–0.3mg/kg (use 5mg/ml IV preparation)	Sedation: 0.5–5mg, titrate to effect. PO: 0.5mg/kg (use IV preparation in orange squash). IM: 2.5–10mg (0.1mg/kg)
Milrinone	Selective phosphodiesterase inhibitor used in cardiac failure with increased filling pressures. Inodilator used after cardiac surgery	Stenotic valvular disease, cardiomyopathy	Arrhythmias, hypotension, nausea	50µg/kg over 15min, then 0.375–0.75µg/kg/min. Maximum 1.13mg/kg/d	50µg/kg over 15min, then 0.375–0.75µg/kg/min. Maximum 1.13mg/kg/d
Mivacurium	Short-acting non-depolarising muscle relaxant. Metabolised by plasma cholinesterase. Duration 6–16min (often variable). Enhanced duration if low plasma cholinesterase. Antagonised by neostigmine— but avoid giving too early to avoid inhibiting drug metabolism	See cisatracurium	See cisatracurium. Some histamine release. Avoid in asthma	Intubation: 0.15–0.2mg/kg. Maintenance: 0.1mg/kg. Infusion: 10–15µg/kg/min	Intubation: 0.07–0.25mg/kg (doses of 0.07, 0.15, 0.2, and 0.25mg/kg produce block for 13, 16, 20, and 23min respectively). Maintenance: 0.1mg/kg. Infusion: 0.4–0.6mg/kg/hr

Morphine	Opioid analgesic	Prolonged risk of respiratory depression, pruritus, nausea when used via spinal/epidural	Histamine release, hypotension, bronchospasm, nausea, vomiting, pruritus, dysphoria	PO: 0.05–0.5mg/kg 4-hourly. IV boluses: 50–100µg/kg. For PCA, NCA, infusion see p828	IV: 2.5–10mg. IM/SC: 5–10mg 4-hourly. PO: 10–30mg 4-hourly. PCA: 1mg 5min lockout. Infusion: 1–3.5mg/hr. Epidural: 2–5mg preservative free. Spinal: 0.1–1mg preservative free
Naloxone	Pure opioid antagonist. Can be used in low doses to reverse pruritus associated with epidural opiates and as depot IM injection in newborn of mothers given opioids	Beware renarcotisation if reversing long-acting opioid. Caution in opioid addicts—may precipitate acute withdrawal. Duration of action 30min		5–10µg/kg. Infusion: 5–20µg/kg/hr. IM depot in newborn: 200µg. Pruritus: 0.5µg/kg	200–400µg titrated to desired effect. Treatment of opioid/epidural pruritus: 100µg bolus plus 300µg added to IV fluids
Naproxen	NSAID analgesic for mild to moderate pain	See ibuprofen	See ibuprofen	PO: >2 yr 5mg/kg bd (max 1g daily)	PO: 500mg bd

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Neostigmine	Anticholinesterase used for: 1. Reversal of non-depolarising muscle relaxant. 2. Treatment of myasthenia gravis. Duration 60min IV (2–4hr PO)	Administer with antimuscarinic agent	Bradycardia, nausea, excessive salivation (muscarinic effects)	50µg/kg with atropine 20µg/kg or glycopyrronium 10µg/kg	1. 50–70µg/kg (maximum 5mg) with atropine 10–20µg/kg or glycopyrronium 10–15µg/kg. 2. PO: 15–30mg at suitable intervals
Neostigmine and glycopyrronium	Combination of neostigmine metilsulfate (2.5mg) and glycopyrronium (500µg) per 1ml	See neostigmine	See neostigmine	0.02ml/kg (dilute 1ml with 4ml saline, give 0.1ml/kg)	1–2ml over 30s
Nimodipine	Calcium channel blocker used to prevent vascular spasm after subarachnoid haemorrhage	Via central catheter. Cerebral oedema, raised intracranial pressure, grapefruit juice. Incompatible with PVC	Hypotension, flushing, headache	Infusion: 0.1–0.5µg/kg/min	PO: 60mg 4-hourly (maximum 360mg/d). Infusion: 1mg/hr increasing after 2hr to 2mg/hr

Nitroprusside (sodium—SNP)	Nitric oxide generating potent peripheral vasodilator. Controlled hypotension	Protect solution from light. Metabolism yields cyanide which is then converted to thiocyanate	Methaemoglobin-aemia, hypotension, tachycardia. Cyanide causes tachycardia, sweating, acidosis	Infusion: 0.3–1.5µg/kg/min	Infusion: 0.3–1.5µg/kg/min (up to 6µg/kg/min). Maximum total dose: 1.5mg/kg (acutely)
Noradrenaline	Potent catecholamine α adrenergic agonist. Vasoconstriction	Via central catheter only. Potentiated by MAOI and tricyclic antidepressants	Reflex bradycardia, arrhythmia, hypertension	Infusion: 0.02–0.5µg/kg/min	Infusion: 0.04–0.4µg/kg/min
Octreotide	Somatostatin analogue used in treatment of carcinoid, acromegaly, and variceal bleeding (unlicensed use)	Pituitary tumour expansion, reduced need for anti-diabetic treatments	GI disturbance, gallstones, hyper- and hypoglycaemia	SC: 1µg/kg od/bd	SC: 50µg od/bd increased up to 200µg tds. IV: 50µg diluted in saline (ECG monitoring)
Omeprazole (Losec®)	Proton pump inhibitor. Reduction in gastric acid secretion		Headache, diarrhoea	PO: 0.7–1.4mg/kg up to 40mg od	PO/slow IV: 20–40mg od. Premedication PO: 40mg evening before and morning of surgery
Ondansetron	Serotonin (5HT <sub>3</sub> ) receptor antagonist anti-emetic		Hypotension, headache, flushing	>2yr: slow IV: 100µg/kg (maximum 4mg) qds	Slow IV/IM: 4mg qds
Oxybuprocaine (Benoxinate®)	Local anaesthetic. Topical anaesthesia to cornea				0.4% solution. 0.5ml eye drops

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Oxycodone	Opioid used for moderate pain, often in palliative care. IV preparation available: dose 1–10mg 4-hourly		Nausea, vomiting, dysphoria, drowsiness	>1 month: 200µg/kg (max 5mg). >12 yrs: adult doses	PO: Oxynorm® 5mg 4–6-hourly increased up to 400mg/d as required. Oxycontin® 10mg bd, increased up to 400mg/d as required
Oxytocin	Nonapeptide hormone which stimulates uterine contraction. Induction of labour and prevention of postpartum haemorrhage		Vasodilatation, hypotension, flushing, tachycardia		Postpartum slow IV: 5U, followed if required by infusion (30U in 500ml saline at 30–125ml/hr)
Pancuronium	Long-acting aminosteroid non-depolarising muscle relaxant. Little histamine release. Duration 45–65min	Increased heart rate and blood pressure due to vagolysis and sympathetic stimulation. See cisatracurium	See cisatracurium	Intubation: 0.08–0.15mg/kg. Maintenance: 0.01–0.05mg/kg	Intubation: 0.04–0.1mg/kg. Maintenance: 0.01–0.05g/kg
Pantoprazole	Proton pump inhibitor used to inhibit gastric acid secretion	Liver disease, pregnancy. Renal disease	Headache, pruritus, bronchospasm	NR	PO/slow IV: 40mg od

Paracetamol	Mild to moderate analgesic and antipyretic	Neonates: 10–15mg/kg 6-hourly (5mg/kg if jaundiced). Max 60mg/kg/d	Liver damage in overdose	Slow IV: 15mg/kg 6-hourly (max 60 mg/kg/d up to 4g/d) PO/PR: 20mg/kg 6-hourly (max 90mg/kg/d up to 4 g/d). Rectal loading dose. 30–40mg/kg (>44 wk post conception)	Slow IV: 0.5–1g qds. PO: 0.5–1g qds
Paraldehyde	Status epilepticus			Deep IM: 0.2ml/kg. PR: 0.3ml/kg	Deep IM: 5–10ml. PR: 10–20ml
Parecoxib	See celecoxib. Pro-drug of valdecoxib. Cox II inhibitor Licensed for acute pain	See celecoxib. Reconstitute with 0.9% saline			IV/IM: 40mg, then 20–40mg 6–12-hourly (max 80mg/d)
Pethidine	Synthetic opioid: 1. Analgesia (agent of choice in asthma). 2. Postoperative shivering	Seizures possible in high dosage—maximum daily dose 1g/d (20mg/kg/d). MAOI	Respiratory depression, hypotension, dysphoria	IV/IM/SC: 0.5–1mg/kg. Infusion: 5mg/kg in 50ml 5% glucose at 1–3ml/hr (100–300µg/kg/hr)	IM/SC: 25–100mg 3-hourly. IV: 25–50mg. Epidural: 25–50mg in 10ml saline or LA. PCA: 10mg/5min lockout. Shivering: 10–25mg

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Phentolamine	$\alpha_1$ and $\alpha_2$ adrenergic antagonist. Peripheral vasodilatation and controlled hypotension. Treatment of extravasation. Duration 10min	Treat excessive hypotension with noradrenaline or methoxamine (not adrenaline/ephedrine due to $\beta$ effects)	Hypotension, tachycardia, flushing	0.1mg/kg, then 5–50 $\mu$ g/kg/min	2–5mg (10mg in 10ml saline, 1ml aliquots)
Phenylephrine	Selective direct-acting $\alpha$ adrenergic agonist. Peripheral vasoconstriction and treatment of hypotension. Duration 20min	Caution in elderly and cardiovascular disease. Hyperthyroidism	Reflex bradycardia, arrhythmias	2–10 $\mu$ g/kg, then 1–5 $\mu$ g/kg/min	20–100 $\mu$ g increments (10mg in 500ml saline, 1ml aliquots.) IM: 2–5mg. Infusion: 30–60 $\mu$ g/min (5mg in 50ml saline at 0–30ml/hr)
Phenytoin	Anticonvulsant and treatment of digoxin toxicity. Serum levels 10–20mg/l (40–80 $\mu$ mol/l)	Avoid in AV heart block and pregnancy. Monitor ECG/BP on IV administration. Porphyria	Hypotension, AV conduction defects, ataxia. Enzyme induction	IV loading dose: 18mg/kg over 1hr	18mg/kg over 1hr (dilute to 10mg/ml in saline), then 100mg tds. Arrhythmia: 3.5–5mg/kg (rate <50mg/min)

Piperacurium	Piperazinium derivative long-acting non-depolarising muscle relaxant. Duration 45–120min	See cisatracurium	See cisatracurium		Intubation: 0.08mg/kg. Maintenance: 0.01–0.04mg/kg
Piroxicam	NSAID analgesic for moderate pain. High incidence of side effects	Hypersensitivity to aspirin, asthma, severe renal impairment, peptic ulceration. Avoid in porphyria	Gastrointestinal upset or bleeding, bronchospasm, tinnitus, fluid retention, platelet inhibition	NR	PO/PR: 10–20mg od
Potassium chloride	Electrolyte replacement (see p182 and p1080)	Dilute solution before administration	Rapid infusion can cause cardiac arrest. High concentration causes phlebitis	0.5mmol/kg over 1hr. Maintenance: 2–4mmol/kg/d	10–20mmol/hr (max concentration 40mmol/l peripherally). With ECG monitoring: up to 20–40mmol/hr via central line (max 200mmol/d)
Prednisolone	Orally active corticosteroid. Less mineralocorticoid action than hydrocortisone	Adrenal suppression, severe systemic infections	Dyspepsia and ulceration, osteoporosis, myopathy, psychosis, impaired healing, diabetes mellitus	PO: 1–2mg/kg od. Croup: 4mg/kg, then 1mg/kg tds	PO: 10–60mg od, reduced to 2.5–15mg od.

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.



Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Prilocaine	Amide-type local anaesthetic. Less toxic than lidocaine. Used for infiltration and IVRA. Rapid onset. Duration 30–90min (prolonged by adrenaline) pKa 7.9	Adrenaline-containing solutions contain preservative. Significant methaemoglobinaemia if dose >600mg	Toxicity: tongue/circumoral numbness, restlessness, tinnitus, seizures, cardiac arrest	NR <6 months	Local anaesthesia: 0.5–2% solution. Maximum dose dependent upon injection site—6mg/kg/4hr (8mg/kg with adrenaline)
Prochlorperazine	Phenothiazine anti-emetic	Hypotension on rapid IV administration. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome	Tardive dyskinesia and extrapyramidal symptoms	>10kg. PO: 0.1–0.4mg/kg tds. IM: 0.1–0.2mg/kg tds	IM: 12.5mg tds. PO: 20mg, then 5–10mg tds
Procyclidine	Antimuscarinic used in acute treatment of drug-induced dystonic reactions (except tardive dyskinesia)	Glaucoma, gastrointestinal obstruction. Lower dose in elderly	Urinary retention, dry mouth, blurred vision	<2yr: 0.5–2mg. 2–10yr: 2–5mg >10yr: adult dose	IV/IM: 5–10mg, repeat after 20min if needed
Promethazine	Phenothiazine, antihistamine, anticholinergic, antiemetic sedative. Paediatric sedation		Extrapyramidal reactions	>2yr: sedation/premed. PO: 1–2mg/kg	PO/IM: 25–50mg

Propofol	Di-isopropylphenol IV induction agent. Rapid recovery and little nausea. Agent of choice for day stay surgery, sedation or laryngeal mask insertion—can be used for ECT	Reduce dose in elderly or haemodynamically unstable. Not recommended for Caesarean section. Caution in severe allergy to eggs, peanuts, soya, soybean oil. Caution in epilepsy	Apnoea, hypotension, pain on injection. Myoclonic spasms, rarely convulsions	Induction: 2–4mg/kg. Infusion: 4–15mg/kg/hr. NR induction <1 month. NR maintenance <3yr	Induction: 2–3mg/ kg. Infusion: 6–10mg/ kg/hr. TCI: initially 4–8µg/ml, then 3–6µg/ml (reduce in elderly)
Propranolol	Non-selective β adrenergic antagonist. Controlled hypotension	Asthma, heart failure, AV block, verapamil treatment	Bradycardia, hypotension, AV block, bronchospasm	0.1mg/kg over 5min	1mg increments up to 5–10mg
Protamine	Basic protein produced from salmon sperm. Heparin antagonist	Weakly anticoagulant and marked histamine release. Risk of allergy	Severe hypotension, pulmonary hypertension, bronchospasm, flushing	Slow IV: 1mg per 1mg heparin (100U) to be reversed	Slow IV: 1mg per 1mg heparin (100U) to be reversed
Proxymetacaine (proparacaine)	Local anaesthetic. Topical anaesthesia to cornea	Less stinging than with other eye drops		Avoid pre-terms. 1 drop/eye stat, then 1 drop /eye every 10 min, max 5–7 doses.	0.5% solution. 0.5ml eye drops
Pyridostigmine	Long-acting anticholinesterase used in treatment of myasthenia gravis	See neostigmine	See neostigmine	PO: 1– 1.5mg/kg at intervals (4–12-hourly)	PO: 30–120mg at intervals through day (maximum 1.2g/d)

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily.  
qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Ranitidine	Histamine (H <sub>2</sub> ) receptor antagonist. Reduction in gastric acid secretion	Porphyria	Tachycardia	IV: 1mg/kg slowly tds. PO: 2–4mg/kg bd	IV: 50mg (diluted in 20ml saline, given over 2min) qds. IM: 50mg qds. PO: 150mg bd or 300mg od
Remifentanyl	Ultra short-acting opioid used to supplement general anaesthesia. Metabolised by non-specific esterases (not plasma cholinesterase). Duration 5–10min. Can be used as PCA in labour: 25–75µg bolus 3min lockout (0.5–1.5ml of 50µg/ml). May be mixed with propofol: 125µg/50ml SV, 250–500µg/50ml IPPV		Muscle rigidity, respiratory depression, hypotension, bradycardia	Slow bolus: up to 1µg/kg. Infusion (IPPV): 0.1–0.5µg/kg/min. Start at 0.1µg/kg/min and adjust dose as necessary	Slow bolus: up to 1µg/kg. Infusion (IPPV): 0.1–0.5µg/kg/min. Infusion (SV): 0.025–0.1µg/kg/min. Start at 0.1µg/kg/min and adjust dose as necessary
Rocuronium	Rapidly acting aminosteroid non-depolarising muscle relaxant. Rapid sequence induction (avoiding suxamethonium). Duration 10–40min (variable). Intubating conditions within 1min	See cisatracurium	Mild tachycardia. See cisatracurium	Intubation: 0.6–1mg/kg. Maintenance: 0.1–0.15mg/kg. Infusion: 0.3–0.6mg/kg/hr	Intubation: 0.6–1mg/kg. Maintenance: 0.1–0.15mg/kg. Infusion: 0.3–0.6mg/kg/hr

Ropivacaine	Amide type local anaesthetic agent. Possibly less motor block than other agents. Duration similar to bupivacaine, but lower toxicity. pKa 8.1			0.2–1% solution. Maximum dose dependent upon injection site—3–4mg/kg/4hr	0.2–1% solution. Infiltration/epidural: maximum dose dependent upon injection site—3–4mg/kg/4hr
Salbutamol	$\beta_2$ receptor agonist. Treatment of bronchospasm. Larger doses now suggested in paed: 15 $\mu$ g/kg/min over 10min, then 1–5 $\mu$ g/kg/min	Hypokalaemia possible	Tremor, vasodilatation, tachycardia	4 $\mu$ g/kg slow IV, then 0.1–1 $\mu$ g/kg/min. Nebuliser: <5yr 2.5mg, >5yr 2.5–5mg	250 $\mu$ g slow IV, then 5 $\mu$ g/min (up to 20 $\mu$ g/min). Nebuliser: 2.5–5mg prn

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Sufentanil	More potent thiamyl analogue of fentanyl (five times potency). Analgesia. Duration 20–45min	See fentanyl	See fentanyl	Analgesia: 10–30µg (0.2–0.6µg/kg) Anaesthesia 0.6–8µg/kg	Analgesia: 10–30µg (0.2–0.6µg/kg) Anaesthesia 0.6–8µg/kg
Sugammadex	New reversal agent for rocuronium and vecuronium	Wait 24hr after use before using rocuronium/ vecuronium in patient; Fusidic acid or flucloxacillin may displace relaxant from sugammadex within 6 hr	Binds with contraceptive pill	T <sub>2</sub> present 2mg/kg Full reversal NR at present	T <sub>2</sub> present 2mg/kg. To reverse full dose of rocuronium or vecuronium immediately 16mg/kg
Suxamethonium	Depolarising muscle relaxant. Rapid short-acting muscle paralysis. Phase II block develops with repeated doses (>8mg/kg). Store at 2–8°C	Prolonged block in plasma cholinesterase deficiency, hypokalaemia, hypocalcaemia. Malignant hyperthermia, myopathies. Increased serum K <sup>+</sup> (normally 0.5mmol/l greater in burns, trauma, upper motor neuron injury)	Increased intraocular pressure. Bradycardia with second dose	1–2mg/kg	1–1.5mg/kg. Infusion: 0.5–10mg/min
Teicoplanin	Glycopeptide antibiotic with activity against aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive bacteria	Renal impairment	Ototoxicity, nephrotoxicity Blood disorders	>1 month: 10mg/kg for 3 doses 12-hourly, then 6mg/kg od	IV/IM: 400mg for 3 doses 12-hourly, then 400mg od

Temazepam	Benzodiazepine. Sedation or premedication. Duration 1–2hr	Decreased requirement for anaesthetic agents	Respiratory depression in combination with opioids. Amnesia	PO: 0.5–1mg/kg preop	PO: 10–40mg 1hr preop (elderly 10–20mg)
Tenoxicam	NSAID analgesic for mild to moderate pain	Hypersensitivity to aspirin, asthma, severe renal impairment, peptic ulceration	Gastrointestinal upset or bleeding, bronchospasm, tinnitus, fluid retention, platelet inhibition	NR	PO: 20mg od. IV/IM: 20mg od
Tetracaine (amethocaine)	Ester-type local anaesthetic. Topical analgesia prior to venepuncture. Ametop <sup>®</sup> gel contains 4% amethocaine. (Also available as eye drops, but has temporary disruptive effect on corneal epithelium). Duration 4hr	Apply only to intact skin under occlusive dressing. Remove after 45min. Rapid absorption through mucosa		As adult. <1 month NR	Each tube expels 1.5g (sufficient for area 6 x 5cm)
Thiopental	Short-acting thiobarbiturate. Induction of anaesthesia, anticonvulsant, cerebral protection. Recovery due to redistribution	Accumulation with repeated doses. Caution in hypovolaemia and elderly. Porphyria	Hypotension. Necrosis if intra-arterial	Induction: neonate 2–4mg/kg, child 5–6mg/kg	Induction/cerebral protection: 3–5mg/ kg. Anticonvulsant: 0.5–2mg/kg prn

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Tramadol	Analgesic thought to have less respiratory depression, constipation, euphoria, and abuse potential than other opioids. Has opioid and non-opioid mechanisms of action	Only 30% antagonised by naloxone. Caution in epilepsy. Previously not recommended for intraoperative use. MAOI	Nausea, dizziness, dry mouth. Increased side effects in conjunction with other opioids	1–2mg/kg 6-hourly	PO: 50–100mg 4-hourly. Slow IV/IM: 50–100mg 4-hourly (100mg initially, then 50mg increments to maximum 250mg). Maximum 600mg/d
Tranexamic acid	Inhibits plasminogen activation, reducing fibrin dissolution by plasmin. Reduced haemorrhage in prostatectomy and dental extraction	Avoid in thromboembolic disease, renal impairment, and pregnancy	Dizziness, nausea	Slow IV: 10–15mg/kg tds. PO: 10–25mg/kg tds	Slow IV: 0.5–1g tds. PO: 15–25mg/kg tds
Triamcinolone hexacetonide	Relatively insoluble corticosteroid for depot injection. Epidural unlicensed use. Triamcinolone 4mg = prednisolone 5mg	Dose depends upon site of injection. Strict asepsis essential. Dilute 20mg/ml solution prior to use		Intra-articular or intrasynovial: 2.5–15mg	Intra-articular or intrasynovial: 2–30mg. Epidural: 40–60mg diluted with local anaesthetic
Trimeprazine	See alimemazine				

Vancomycin	Glycopeptide antibiotic with activity against aerobic and anaerobic Gram-positive bacteria. Peak level <30mg/l. Trough level 5–10mg/l	Avoid rapid infusion (hypotension, wheezing, urticaria, 'red man' syndrome). Reduce dose in renal impairment/elderly	Ototoxicity, nephrotoxicity, phlebitis, neutropenia	>1 month: 15mg/kg over 2hr tds (max 2g daily)	1–1.5g over 100min bd (check blood levels after third dose)
Vasopressin	Synthetic ADH used in treatment of diabetes insipidus, resistant vasodilatory shock	Extreme caution in coronary vascular disease	Pallor, coronary vasoconstriction, water intoxication	Diabetes insipidus SC/IM: 2–10U 4-hourly	Diabetes insipidus SC/IM: 5–20U 4-hourly. Sepsis 1–4U/hr. Shock infusion
Vecuronium	Aminosteroid non-depolarising muscle relaxant. Cardistable and no histamine release. Duration 30–45min	See cisatracurium	See cisatracurium	Intubation: <4 month: 10–20µg/kg, plus increments as required. >5 month: 100µg/kg	Intubation: 80–100µg/kg. Maintenance: 20–30µg/kg. Infusion: 0.8–1.4µg/kg/min

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.



Drug	Description and perioperative indications	Cautions and contraindications	Side effects	Dose (paediatric)	Dose (adult)
Warfarin	Coumarin derivative oral anticoagulant. DVT prophylaxis: INR 2.0–2.5. DVT/PE treatment, AF, mitral valve disease: INR 2.5–3.0. Recurrent DVT/PE, prosthetic heart valve: INR 3.0–4.5	Pregnancy, peptic ulcer disease. Reduce dose in elderly	Haemorrhage	PO: 0.2mg/kg up to 10mg od for 2d, then 0.05–0.2mg/kg od	PO: 10mg od for 2d, then 3–9mg od dependent on INR
Zolpidem	Short-acting imidazopyridine hypnotic with little hangover effect	Obstructive sleep apnoea, myasthenia gravis	Nausea, dizziness	NR	PO: 10mg nocte (elderly 5mg)
Zopiclone	Short-acting cyclopyrrolone hypnotic with little hangover effect	Obstructive sleep apnoea, myasthenia gravis	Nausea, bitter taste in mouth	NR	PO: 7.5mg nocte (elderly 3.75mg)

IV = intravenous. IM = intramuscular. SC = subcutaneous. PO = per os (oral). SL = sublingual. ET = endotracheal. od = once daily. bd = twice daily. tds = three times daily. qds = four times daily. NR = not recommended. Doses are intravenous and dilutions in 0.9% sodium chloride unless otherwise stated.

*This page intentionally left blank*

Infusion regimes

Drug	Indication	Diluent	Dose	Suggested regime (60kg adult)	Infusion range	Initial rate (adult)	Comments
Adrenaline	Treatment of hypotension	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	2–20µg/min (0.04–0.4µg/kg/min)	5mg/50ml (100µg/ml)	1.2–12+ml/hr	5ml/hr	Via central catheter. Suggest 1mg/50ml for initial intraoperative use (or 1mg/500ml if no central access)
Alfentanil	Analgesia	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.5–1µg/kg/min	Undiluted (500µg/ml)	0–8ml/hr	4ml/hr	1–2mg can be added to 50ml propofol for infusion
Aminophylline	Bronchodilation	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.5mg/kg/hr	250mg/50ml (5mg/ml)	0–6ml/hr	6ml/h	After 5mg/kg slow bolus
Amiodarone	Treatment of arrhythmias	5% glucose only	Loading infusion 5mg/kg over 20–120min, then 900mg over 24hr	300mg/50ml (6mg/ml)	25–50ml/hr, then 6ml/h	25ml/hr	Via central line (peripherally 'in extremis'). Max 1.2g in 24hr
Atracurium	Muscle relaxant	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.3–0.6mg/kg/hr	Undiluted (10mg/ml)	1.5–4ml/hr	3ml/hr	Assess rate with nerve stimulator
Cisatracurium	Muscle relaxant	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.06–0.18mg/kg/hr	Undiluted (2mg/ml)	2–5ml/hr	5ml/hr	Assess rate with nerve stimulator
Digoxin	Rapid control of ventricular rate	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	250–500µg over 30–60min; 0.75–1mg over 2hr	250–500µg/50ml	0–100ml/hr	50ml/hr	ECG monitoring suggested

Dobutamine	Cardiac failure/ inotrope	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	2.5–10µg/kg/min	250mg/50ml (5mg/ml)	2–7ml/hr	2ml/hr	
Dopamine	Inotrope	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	2–10µg/kg/min	200mg/50ml (4mg/ml)	2–9ml/hr	2ml/hr	Via central line
Dopexamine	Inotrope	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.5–6µg/kg/min	50mg/50ml (1mg/ml)	2–22ml/hr	2ml/hr	May be given via large peripheral vein
Doxapram	Respiratory stimulant	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	2–3mg/min	200mg/50ml (4mg/ml)	30–60ml/hr	30ml/hr	Maximum dose 4mg/kg
Enoximone	Inodilator	0.9% sodium chloride only	90µg/kg/min for 10–30min, then 5–20µg/kg/min	100mg/50ml (2mg/ml)	9–36ml/hr	162ml/hr for 10–30min	Maximum 24mg/kg/d
Esmolol	β-blocker	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	50–200µg/kg/min	2.5g/50ml (50mg/ml)	3–15ml/hr	3ml/hr	ECG monitoring
Glyceryl trinitrate	Controlled hypotension	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.5–12mg/hr	50mg/50ml (1mg/ml)	0.5–12ml/hr	5ml/hr	
Alternative regimes for any infusion:	3mg/kg/50ml, then 1ml/hr = 1µg/kg/min 3mg/50ml, then 1ml/hr = 1µg/min Rate (ml/hr) = $60 \times \text{Rate } (\mu\text{g/kg/min}) \times \text{wt (kg)} \div \text{conc } (\mu\text{g/ml})$						

(continued)

Drug	Indication	Diluent	Dose	Suggested regime (60kg adult)	Infusion range	Initial rate (adult)	Comments
Heparin	Anticoagulation	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	24 000–48 000U per 24hr	50 000U/50ml (1000U/ml)	1–2ml/hr	2ml/hr	Check APTT after 12hr
Insulin (soluble)	Diabetes mellitus	0.9% sodium chloride	Sliding scale	50U/50ml (1U/ml)	Sliding scale	Sliding scale	
Isoprenaline	Treatment of heart block or bradycardia	5% glucose saline	0.5–10µg/min	1mg/50ml (20µg/ml)	0.5–30ml/hr	7ml/hr	
Ketamine	General anaesthesia	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	1–3mg/kg/hr	500mg/50ml (10mg/ml)	6–18ml/hr	10ml/hr	Induction 0.5–2mg/kg
Ketamine	Analgesia	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.2mg/kg/hr	200mg/50ml (4mg/ml)	0–6ml/hr	3ml/hr	With midazolam 2–5 mg/hr
Ketamine	'Trauma' mixture	0.9% sodium chloride	0.5ml/kg/hr	50ml mixture (4mg/ml ketamine)	15–45ml/hr	30ml/hr	200mg ketamine + 10mg midazolam + 10mg vecuronium in 50ml
Lidocaine (lignocaine)	Ventricular arrhythmias	0.9% sodium chloride	4mg/min for 30min, 2mg/min for 2hr, then 1mg/min for 24hr	500mg/50ml (10mg/ml = 1%)	6–24ml/hr	24ml/hr	After 50–100mg slow IV bolus. ECG monitoring
Milrinone	Inodilator	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	50µg/kg over 10min, then 0.375–0.75µg/kg/min	10mg/50ml (0.2mg/ml)	7–14ml/hr	90ml/hr for 10min	Maximum 1.13mg/kg/d

Mivacurium	Muscle relaxant	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.4–0.6mg/kg/hr	Undiluted (2mg/ml)	12–18ml/hr	18ml/hr	Assess rate with nerve stimulator
Morphine	Analgesia	0.9% sodium chloride	0–3.5mg/hr	50mg/50ml (1mg/ml)	0–3.5ml/hr	2ml/hr	Monitor respiration and sedation hourly. Administer oxygen
Naloxone	Opioid antagonist	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	>1µg/kg/hr	2mg/500ml (4µg/ml)		100ml/hr	Rate adjusted according to response
Nimodipine	Prevention of vasospasm after SAH	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	1mg/hr increasing to 2mg/hr after 2hr	Undiluted (0.2mg/ml)	5–10ml/hr	5ml/hr	Via central line. Incompatible with polyvinyl chloride
Nitroprusside (sodium)	Controlled hypotension	5% glucose	0.3–1.5µg/kg/min	25mg/50ml (500µg/ml)	2–10ml/hr	5ml/hr	Maximum dose 1.5mg/kg. Protect from light
Noradrenaline	Treatment of hypotension	5% glucose	2–20µg/min (0.04–0.4µg/kg/min)	4mg/40ml (100µg/ml)	1.2–12+ml/hr	5ml/hr	Via central line
Octreotide	Somatostatin analogue	0.9% sodium chloride	25–50µg/hr	500µg/50ml (10µg/ml)	2–5ml/hr	5ml/hr	Use in variceal bleeding unlicensed
Alternative regimes for any infusion:	3mg/kg/50ml, then 1ml/hr = 1µg/kg/min 3mg/50ml, then 1ml/hr = 1µg/min Rate (ml/hr) = $60 \times \text{Rate } (\mu\text{g/kg/min}) \times \text{wt (kg)} \div \text{conc } (\mu\text{g/ml})$						

(continued)

Drug	Indication	Diluent	Dose	Suggested regime (60kg adult)	Infusion range	Initial rate (adult)	Comments
Oxytocin	Prevention of uterine atony	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.02–0.125U/min	30U in 500ml (0.06U/ml)	30–125ml/hr	125ml/hr	Individual unit protocols vary
Phenylephrine	Treatment of hypotension	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	30–60µg/min	5mg in 50ml (100µg/ml)	18–36ml/hr	30ml/hr	Gaining popularity for regional Caesarean
Phenytoin	Anticonvulsant prophylaxis	0.9% sodium chloride	18mg/kg	900mg/90ml (administer v/a 0.22–0.5µm filter)	Up to 50mg/min	180ml/hr	ECG and BP monitoring. Complete within 1hr of preparation
Propofol	Anaesthesia		6–10mg/kg/hr	Undiluted (10mg/ml)	36–60ml/hr		TCl: initially 4–8µg/ml, then 3–6µg/ml
Propofol	Sedation		0–3mg/kg/hr	Undiluted (10mg/ml)	0–20ml/hr		TCl: 0–2.5µg/ml
Remifentanyl	Analgesia during general anaesthesia	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.1–1.0 µg/kg/min	2mg/40ml (50µg/ml)	5–40ml/hr IPPV, 2–7ml/hr SV	8ml/hr IPPV, 2ml/hr SV	Suggest starting at 0.1µg/kg/min (8ml/hr), then adjust up to 0.25µg/kg/min (20ml/hr) as required
Rocuronium	Muscle relaxant	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.3–0.6mg/kg/hr	Undiluted (10mg/ml)	1.5–4ml/hr	3ml/hr	Assess rate with nerve stimulator

Salbutamol	Bronchospasm	5% glucose	5–20µg/min	1mg/50ml (20µg/ml)	15–60ml/hr	30ml/hr	After 250µg slow IV bolus
Sodium bicarbonate	Acidosis		[Weight (kg) × base deficit × 0.3] mmol	Undiluted (8.4% solution)			8.4% = 1000mmol/l. Via central line if possible
Vancomycin	Antibiotic	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	1–1.5g 12-hourly	1g/500ml	500ml/100min	500ml/100min	Elderly 500mg 12-hourly
Vecuronium	Muscle relaxant	0.9% sodium chloride, 5% glucose	0.05–0.08mg/kg/hr	Undiluted (2mg/ml)	1.5–3ml/hr	2.5ml/hr	Assess rate with nerve stimulator
Alternative regimes for any infusion:	3mg/kg/50ml, then 1ml/hr = 1µg/kg/min 3mg/50ml, then 1ml/hr = 1µg/min Rate (ml/hr) = $60 \times \text{Rate } (\mu\text{g/kg/min}) \times \text{wt (kg)} \div \text{conc } (\mu\text{g/ml})$						



Medical gases

Medical gas	State in cylinder	Body colour	Shoulder colour	Cylinder capacity (litres)				Cylinder pressure when full (x100 kPa)	Critical temp (°C)
				Type C	Type D	Type E	Type F		
Oxygen (O <sub>2</sub> )	Gas	Black	White	170	340	680	1360	137	-118.4
Nitrous Oxide (N <sub>2</sub> O)	Liquid	Blue	Blue	450	900	1800	3600	44*	36.4
O <sub>2</sub> :N <sub>2</sub> O 50:50 (Entonox)	Gas	Blue	Blue and white		500		2000	137	-6†
Medical air	Gas	Grey	Black and white			640	1280	137	
Carbon dioxide (CO <sub>2</sub> )	Liquid	Grey	Grey	450		1800		50*	30
O <sub>2</sub> :CO <sub>2</sub> 95:5	Gas	Black	Grey and white				1360	137	
Helium (He)	Gas	Brown	Brown		300		1200	137	-268
O <sub>2</sub> :He 21:79	Gas	Black	Brown and white				1200	137	
Water capacity of cylinder (l)				1.2	2.32	4.68	9.43		

\*Where the contents are liquid, the pressure is not a reliable method of judging the contents.

†Entonox separates into oxygen and nitrous oxide at -6°C—'pseudocritical' temperature.

Pressures quoted for full cylinders are at 15°C.

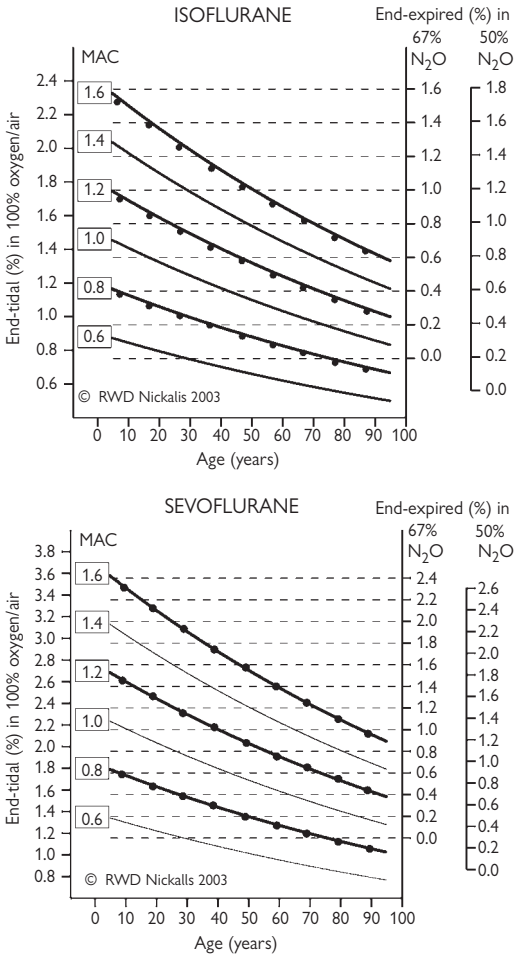
Cylinder colours and contents may vary outside the UK.

*This page intentionally left blank*

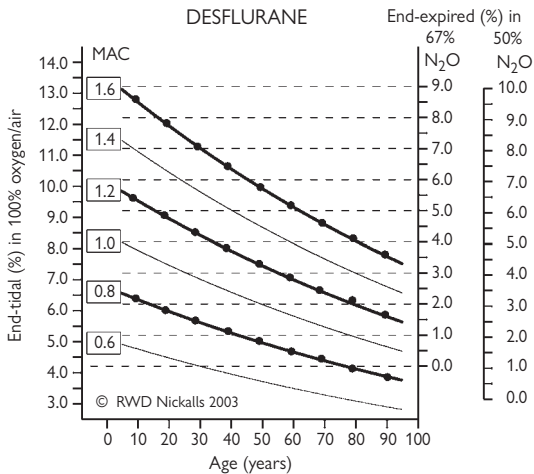
MAC values

MAC in oxygen/air <sup>1</sup> (%)			MAC in 67% N <sub>2</sub> O (%)		BP (°C)	SVP (kPa)	Oil: gas part. coeff.	Blood: gas part. coeff	MW	Biotrans. (%)		
1yr	40yr	80yr	1yr	40yr	80yr							
Halothane	0.95	0.75	0.58	0.47	0.27	0.1	50.2	32.5	224	2.3	197.4	25
Enflurane	2.08	1.63	1.27	1.03	0.58	0.22	56.5	22.9	96	1.91	184.5	3
Isoflurane	1.49	1.17	0.91	0.74	0.42	0.17	48.5	31.9	91	1.4	184.5	0.2
Sevoflurane	2.29	1.8	1.4	1.13	0.65	0.25	58.5	21.3	53	0.59	200	2.5
Desflurane	8.3	6.6	5.1	4.2	2.4	0.93	23.5	88.5	18.7	0.42	168	Minimal
Nitrous oxide	133	104	81	NA	NA	NA	-88	5080	1.4	0.47	44	0
Xenon	92	72	57	NA	NA	NA	-107.1	5800	20	0.14	131.3	0
Potency (MAC) correlates with oil:gas partition coefficient (hence lipid solubility).												
Speed of onset correlates with blood:gas partition coefficient (lower = faster).												
SVP = saturated vapour pressure at 20°C, part. coeff. = partition coefficient at 37°C, MW = molecular weight, BP = boiling point, biotrans. = biotransformation												

1 Nickalls RWD, Mapleson WW (2003). Age-related iso-MAC charts for isoflurane, sevoflurane and desflurane in man. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **91**, 170–174.



**Fig. 42.1** Age-related iso-MAC charts for isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane (courtesy of Dr RWD Nickalls). Reasonable ranges of MAC: SV/LMA 1.2–1.6 MAC; IPPV with opiates 1.0–1.3 MAC; IPPV with remifentanyl (0.25 µg/kg/min) 0.6–0.9 MAC.<sup>1,2</sup>



**Fig. 42.1** *contd.*

1 Nickalls RWD, Mapleson WW (2003). Age-related iso-MAC charts for isoflurane, sevoflurane and desflurane in man. *British Journal of Anaesthesia* **91**, 170–174.  
<http://bjaoxfordjournals.org/cgi/reprint/91/2/170.pdf>.

2 Lerou JGC (2004). Nomogram to estimate age-related MAC. *British Journal of Anaesthesia*, **93**, 288–291.

*This page intentionally left blank*

## Antibiotic prophylaxis

### Endocarditis prophylaxis

Infective endocarditis (IE) primarily affects heart valves and is caused mainly by bacteria but occasionally by other infectious agents. It is a life-threatening disease with significant mortality (around 20%) and morbidity. For many years it has been traditional to administer antibiotics to patients with cardiac lesions susceptible to endocarditis who are undergoing procedures likely to cause significant bacteraemia.

Local and national policies should be in place for treating patients at particular risk. These include patients with:

- Acquired valvular heart disease with stenosis or regurgitation .
- Replacement valves.
- Structural congenital heart disease, including surgically corrected or palliated structural conditions (excluding isolated atrial septal defect, fully repaired ventricular septal defect, fully repaired patent ductus arteriosus, and closure devices that are judged to be endothelialised).
- Previous infective endocarditis.
- Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy.

### NICE 2008 Guideline on endocarditis prophylaxis<sup>1</sup>

In England in 2008 NICE issued new guidelines on prevention of IE which concluded:

- There is no consistent association between having an interventional procedure, dental or non-dental, and the development of IE.
- Regular tooth brushing almost certainly presents a greater risk of IE than a single dental procedure because of repetitive exposure to bacteraemia with oral flora.
- The clinical effectiveness of antibiotic prophylaxis is not proven.
- Antibiotic prophylaxis against IE for dental procedures may lead to a greater number of deaths through fatal anaphylaxis than a strategy of no antibiotic prophylaxis, and is not cost effective.

### **Prophylaxis against infective endocarditis**

Antibiotic prophylaxis against IE is not recommended for patients undergoing:

- Dental procedures.
- Upper and lower gastrointestinal tract procedures.
- Genitourinary tract procedures including urological, gynaecological, and obstetric procedures, and childbirth.
- Upper and lower respiratory tract procedures including ear, nose, and throat procedures and bronchoscopy.

### **Recommendations by NICE for patient advice about IE**

Patients at risk of endocarditis should receive healthcare advice about prevention including:

- The benefits and risks of antibiotic prophylaxis, and an explanation of why antibiotic prophylaxis is no longer routinely recommended.
- The importance of maintaining good oral health.
- Symptoms that may indicate infective endocarditis.

- The risks of undergoing invasive procedures, including non-medical procedures such as body piercing and tattooing.

### **Patients undergoing surgery in hospital**

If a person at risk of IE is receiving antimicrobial therapy because they are undergoing a gastrointestinal or genitourinary procedure at a site where there is suspected infection, the person should receive an antibiotic that covers organisms causing IE.

### **American Heart Association 2007 Guideline<sup>2</sup>**

Updated recommendations published in 2007 are similar to NICE but recommend the following:

- Infective endocarditis prophylaxis for dental procedures is reasonable only for patients with underlying cardiac conditions associated with the highest risk of adverse outcome from IE (see table below).
- For patients with these underlying cardiac conditions, prophylaxis is reasonable for all dental procedures that involve manipulation of gingival tissue or perforation of the oral mucosa.
- Administration of antibiotics solely to prevent endocarditis is not recommended for patients who undergo a genitourinary or gastrointestinal tract procedure.

#### **Cardiac conditions associated with the highest risk of adverse outcome from endocarditis**

- Prosthetic cardiac valve or prosthetic material used for cardiac valve repair
- Previous infective endocarditis
- Unrepaired cyanotic congenital heart disease, including palliative shunts and conduits
- Completely repaired congenital heart defect with prosthetic material or device, whether placed by surgery or by catheter intervention, during the first 6 months after the procedure
- Repaired cyanotic congenital heart disease with residual defects at the site or adjacent to the site of a prosthetic patch or prosthetic device (which inhibit endothelialisation)
- Cardiac transplantation recipients who develop cardiac valvulopathy

Note: Endothelialisation of prosthetic material occurs within 6 months of the procedure.

### **General recommendations**

Advice on prevention of IE is, therefore, not completely straightforward. However, all guidelines agree:

- Antibiotics indicated for surgical procedures should be given as normal.
- For 'infected surgery' in patients at risk of IE, appropriate antibiotic prophylaxis should be administered.
- In patients at high risk of IE, the decision to provide prophylactic antibiotics for dental treatment should be made by treating clinicians after discussion with the patient.
- Administration of antibiotics is not risk free.



**Further reading**

Richey R, Wray D, Stokes T (2008). Prophylaxis against infective endocarditis: summary of NICE guidance. *British Medical Journal*, **336**, 770–771.

- 1 NICE (2008). *Clinical Guideline 64. Prophylaxis Against Infective Endocarditis. Antimicrobial Prophylaxis Against Infective Endocarditis in Adults and Children Undergoing Interventional Procedures*. [www.nice.org.uk](http://www.nice.org.uk).
- 2 Wilson W, Taubert KA, Gewitz M, et al. (2007). Prevention of infective endocarditis. Guidelines from the American Heart Association Interdisciplinary Working Group. *Circulation*, **116**, 1736–1754

## Surgical antibiotic prophylaxis

Soiling risk	Operation	Bacterial prevalence	Suitable IV antibiotic (usually single dose)
Clean	Head and neck	Oral streptococci/ anaerobes/ <i>Staph. aureus</i>	Co-amoxiclav 1.2g or clindamycin 300mg
	Hysterectomy	<i>Staph. aureus</i> / anaerobes	Co-amoxiclav 1.2g or cefuroxime 1.5g + metronidazole 500mg
	Cardiac/ vascular/ amputation	<i>Staph. aureus</i> / coagulase negative staphylococci	Cefuroxime 1.5g or Co-amoxiclav 1.2g or vancomycin 1g if penicillin allergic
	Urinary catheterisation/ instrumentation	Previously not catheterised, or uninfected urine	None necessary
		Change of catheter/recently catheterised	Gentamicin 80mg or cefuroxime 1.5g or ciprofloxacin 500mg orally
	Prosthetic joint insertion	Staphylococci including coagulase negative <i>Staph.</i>	Teicoplanin 400mg + gentamicin 240mg. Prophylaxis may be extended for complex procedures and imipenem substituted for gentamicin
Intermediate	ERCP (significant sepsis occurs in 0.5–1%)	Gram negatives/ <i>Pseudomonas</i> / Enterococci	Ciprofloxacin 750mg PO (will not cover enterococci) or piperacillin/tazobactam 4.5g + gentamicin 160mg
	Cholecystectomy		Cefuroxime 1.5g + metronidazole 500mg or gentamicin 160mg
	'Routine' appendectomy	Anaerobes	Cefuroxime 1.5g + metronidazole 500mg
	Elective colorectal surgery	Coliforms/ anaerobes/ <i>Pseudomonas</i> / enterococci	Cefuroxime 1.5g + metronidazole 500mg or gentamicin 3–5mg/kg + metronidazole 500mg
'Dirty'	Often emergency; perforated viscus, peritonitis	Coliforms/ anaerobes/ <i>Pseudomonas</i> / enterococci	Gentamicin 3–5mg/kg + cefotaxime 2g + metronidazole 500mg or imipenem 0.5–1g + metronidazole 500mg. Continuation therapy needed

**Penicillin allergy**

- How 'allergic'? What happens (e.g. diarrhoea is not an allergy)? Was it anaphylaxis?
- Check old drug charts—may have had a penicillin in the past without problems. This further strengthens the case against genuine penicillin allergy.
- If penicillin allergy is only a rash, cephalosporins may be used with care (2–5% cross-sensitivity in practice).
- If history of anaphylaxis with penicillin, avoid any beta-lactam (i.e. no **penicillins**, **cephalosporins**, or **carbapenems**). Discuss alternatives with microbiologist. Remember vancomycin and teicoplanin have no Gram-negative cover.

**Prophylaxis for perioperative aspiration pneumonia**

- General tendency to overtreat 'aspiration pneumonia', much of which is due to chemical pneumonitis. Organisms likely to cause infection are from the oropharynx, mainly anaerobes but may include Gram-negative aerobes, including *Pseudomonas* spp in hospitalised patients. If prophylaxis is deemed necessary, choose antibiotics that cover anaerobes:
  - Co-amoxiclav 1.2g IV for three doses 8-hourly.
  - Clarithromycin 500mg IV for two doses 12-hourly.
  - Where Gram-negative bacteria may be problematic—cefuroxime 1.5g IV tds ± metronidazole 500mg IV tds.

**Patients known to be previously colonised with MRSA**

Such patients can never be assumed free despite negative screens, so flucloxacillin and related cephalosporins or carbapenems will be ineffective. Check the previous organisms' sensitivities and if in doubt give vancomycin 1g IV.

# Anaesthesia data

## **Charles Gibson and Fred Roberts**

ASA/CEPOD classifications [1260](#)

Breathing systems [1262](#)

Pulmonary function tests [1264](#)

Respiratory physiology data [1266](#)

Cardiovascular physiology data [1268](#)

Glasgow Coma Scale [1270](#)

Useful equations and definitions [1271](#)

Normal values [1272](#)

Useful websites [1276](#)

Checklist for anaesthetic equipment [1278](#)



# ASA/CEPOD classifications

## ASA physical status classification system for assessing fitness for surgery

Grade	Description
1	A healthy patient with no systemic disease
2	Mild to moderate systemic disease
3	Severe systemic disease imposing functional limitation on patient
4	Severe systemic disease which is a constant threat to life
5	Moribund patient who is not expected to survive with or without the operation
6	A brainstem-dead patient whose organs are being removed for donor purposes

For emergency cases the suffix 'E' is used  
ASA—American Society of Anesthesiologists

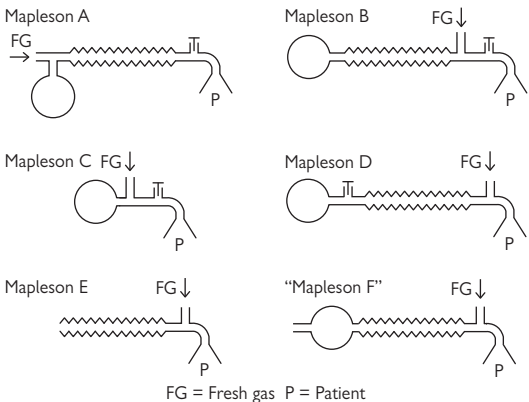
## CEPOD classification of the urgency for surgery

Description of surgery	
Elective	Intervention planned or booked in advance of routine admission to hospital. Timing to suit patient, hospital, and staff
Expedited	Patient requiring early treatment where the condition is not an immediate threat to life, limb, or organ survival. Normally within days of decision to operate
Urgent	Intervention for acute onset or clinical deterioration of potentially life-threatening conditions, for those conditions that may threaten the survival of limb or organ, for fixation of many fractures, and for the relief of pain or other distressing symptoms. Normally within hours of decision to operate
Immediate	Immediate life, limb, or organ-saving intervention—resuscitation simultaneous with intervention. Normally within minutes of decision to operate A) Life saving B) Other, e.g. limb or organ saving

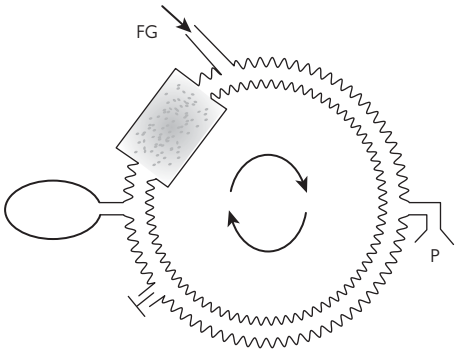
CEPOD—(National) Confidential Enquiry into Patient Outcome and Death

*This page intentionally left blank*

# Breathing systems



**Fig. 43.1** Mapleson classification of breathing systems. Can be classified into open (air), semi-open (Hudson mask), semi-closed (Mapleson classification), and closed (Circle) (figures 43.1 and 43.2).



**Fig. 43.2** Circle system.

### Fresh gas flows required in Mapleson breathing systems

Breathing system	Spontaneous ventilation	Intermittent positive pressure ventilation
A (Lack or Magill)	Equal to $V_A$ 70ml/kg/min	$2.5 \times MV$ 250ml/kg/min
D (Bain)	$2 \times MV$	70ml/kg/min for $P_aCO_2$ of 5.3kPa (40mmHg) or
E (Ayre's T-piece)	200ml/kg/min <sup>1</sup>	100ml/kg/min for $P_aCO_2$ of 4.3kPa (32mmHg)
F (Jackson Rees modification)		Minimum of 3l/min

<sup>1</sup>In young children the greater MV/kg may require an FG flow up to 300ml/kg/min  
MV = minute ventilation;  $V_A$  = alveolar minute ventilation

### Fresh gas flows required in a circle system

Stage of case	Spontaneous ventilation or intermittent positive pressure ventilation
Initial uptake	Equal to MV
Rapid change in depth	100ml/kg/min
Washout (emergence)	
Maintenance	Fresh gas flow can be reduced, but the percentage of $O_2$ and volatile agent must be increased to produce same concentrations in the final inspired gas (due to patient uptake). <sup>1</sup> A total flow of at least 1l/min is generally used

<sup>1</sup> $O_2$  and agent monitoring are essential at low flows  
MV = minute ventilation



Pulmonary function tests

Pulmonary function tests								
Age (yr)	FEV <sub>1</sub> (l)		FVC (l)		FEV <sub>1</sub> /FVC (%)		PEFR (l/min)	
	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F
20	4.15	3.09	4.95	3.83	82.5	81.0	625	433
30	4.00	2.94	4.84	3.68	80.6	79.9	612	422
40	3.69	2.64	4.62	3.38	76.9	77.7	586	401
50	3.38	2.34	4.40	3.08	73.1	75.5	560	380
60	3.06	2.04	4.18	2.78	69.4	73.2	533	359
70	2.75	1.74	3.96	2.48	65.7	71.0	507	338

M = male assuming height 175cm, F = female assuming height 160cm

Arterial/mixed venous blood gases

	Mixed venous	Arterial
pH	7.32–7.42	7.36–7.44
PO <sub>2</sub>	4.9–5.6kPa (37–42mmHg)	12.0–14.7kPa (90–110mmHg)
PCO <sub>2</sub>	5.3–6.9kPa (40–52mmHg)	4.5–6.1kPa (34–46mmHg)
SaO <sub>2</sub>	>75%	>97%
HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>		24–30mmol/l
Lactate		<2mmol/l
Base excess		±2mmol/l
Anion gap	8–12mmol/l [calculated from (Na <sup>+</sup> + K <sup>+</sup> ) – (HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup> + Cl <sup>-</sup> )]	

**Pressure conversion chart****100 kPa is equal to:**

1 bar

750 mmHg (torr)

1020 cmH<sub>2</sub>O

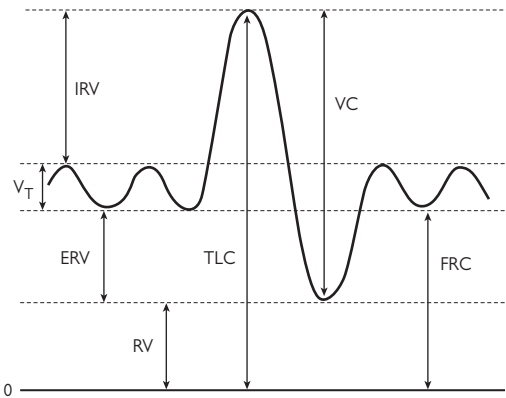
0.987 atm

14.5 psi

atm = atmospheres, psi = pounds per square inch

Respiratory physiology data

Lung volumes		
	Fit young male	For 70kg (approx)
Dead space ( $V_D$ )	2ml/kg	150ml
Tidal volume ( $V_T$ )	7ml/kg	500ml
Alveolar minute ventilation ( $V_A$ )	70ml/kg/min	5000ml/min
Minute ventilation (MV)	100ml/kg/min	7000ml/min
Vital capacity (VC)	70ml/kg	5000ml
Respiratory rate (RR)	14/min	14/min
Total lung capacity (TLC)	80ml/kg	6000ml
Inspiratory reserve volume (IRV)	40ml/kg	3000ml
Expiratory reserve volume (ERV)	20ml/kg	1500ml
Functional residual capacity (FRC)	35ml/kg	2500ml
Residual volume (RV)	15ml/kg	1000ml



**Fig. 43.3** Lung volumes on a spirometer trace. Tidal volume ( $V_T$ ); Inspiratory reserve volume (IRV); Expiratory reserve volume (ERV); Total lung capacity (TLC); Residual volume (RV); Vital capacity (VC); Functional residual capacity (FRC).

**Gas laws**

Boyle's Law	Pressure is inversely proportional to volume (at a constant temperature)	$P \propto 1/V$
Charles' Law	Volume is proportional to temperature (at a constant pressure)	$V \propto T$
Gay-Lussac's Law	Pressure is proportional to temperature (at a constant volume)	$P \propto T$
Dalton's Law of partial pressure	If a container holds a mixture of gases the pressure exerted by each gas (i.e. the partial pressure) is the same as if it alone occupied the container	
Avogadro's Law	One mole of any gas occupies 22.4l at standard temperature and pressure	

# Cardiovascular physiology data

## Cardiovascular pressures

	Range (mmHg)	Mean (mmHg)
Central venous pressure (CVP)	0–8	4
Right atrial (RA)	0–8	4
Right ventricular (RV):		
Systolic	14–30	25
End-diastolic (RVEDP)	0–8	4
Pulmonary arterial (PA):		
Systolic	15–30	23
Diastolic	5–15	10
Mean (PAP)	10–20	15
Mean pulmonary artery wedge (PAWP)	5–15	10
Left atrial (LA)	4–12	7
Left ventricular (LV):		
Systolic	90–140	120
End-diastolic (LVEDP)	4–12	7

## Derived haemodynamic variables

Variable	Formula	Normal values
Cardiac output (CO)	SV x HR	4.5–8l/min
Cardiac index (CI)	CO/BSA	2.7–4l/min/m <sup>2</sup>
Stroke volume (SV)	(CO/HR) x 1000	60–130ml/beat
Systemic vascular resistance (SVR)	80 x (MAP–CVP)/CO	770–1500dyn.s/cm <sup>5</sup>
Pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR)	80 x (PAP–PCWP)/CO	100–250dyn.s/cm <sup>5</sup>
Ejection fraction (EF)	(EDV–ESV)/EDV	>0.6
Mean arterial pressure (MAP)	MAP = CO x SVR	80–90mmHg
Estimated MAP (MAPest)	MAPest = diastolic BP + 1/3 pulse pressure	
Cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP)	CPP = MAP–ICP	70–75mmHg

BSA = body surface area, HR = heart rate, MAP = mean arterial pressure, CVP = central venous pressure, PAP = mean pulmonary arterial pressure, PCWP = pulmonary capillary wedge pressure, SAP = systolic arterial pressure, ESV = end-systolic volume, EDV = end-diastolic volume

**Normal values for the oesophageal Doppler**

Index	Value
Cardiac output	5l/min
Stroke volume	70ml
Flow time corrected (FTC)	330–360ms
Peak velocity:	
20yr	90–120cm/s
50yr	70–100cm/s
70yr	50–80cm/s

**ECG data****Normal height is 1mV = 1cm****Normal speed is 25mm/s**

Axis	–30 to +90
PR interval	0.12s – 0.20s
QRS duration	0.04s – 0.12s
QT corrected	0.38 – 0.42
Correction = $QT/\sqrt{RR}$ interval	

# Glasgow Coma Scale

Score	Motor	Verbal	Eyes
1	Unresponsive to pain	No sounds	Does not open
2	Extends to pain	Incomprehensible sounds	Open to pain
3	Abnormal flexion to pain	Inappropriate words	Open to voice
4	Normal flexion/withdrawal to pain	Confused speech	Open spontaneously
5	Localizes to pain	Normal speech	
6	Obeys commands		

**Fig. 43.4** Glasgow Coma Scale. Patient score is the sum of the best from each column. Range 3–15.

## Useful equations and definitions

**Alveolar gas equation**  $P_A O_2 = P_i O_2 - \frac{P_A CO_2}{RQ}$

where  $P_A O_2$  = alveolar oxygen partial pressure (pp),  $P_i O_2$  = inspired oxygen pp,  $P_A CO_2$  = alveolar  $CO_2$  pp,  $RQ$  = respiratory quotient

**Dead space** is the part of the tidal volume that does not take part in gas exchange; physiological (total) dead space consists of anatomical dead space (upper airways) and alveolar dead space (unperfused alveoli)

**Alveolar volume** is the part of the tidal volume reaching the lower airways = tidal volume ( $V_T$ ) – Anatomical dead space ( $V_D$ )

**Alveolar minute ventilation** ( $V_A$ ) is the volume of gas reaching the lower airways per min =  $(V_T - V_D) \times \text{Resp rate}$

**Oxygen content of blood per 100ml** = ( $O_2$  bound to Hb) + ( $O_2$  dissolved)

Arterial  $O_2$  content  $CaO_2 = (SaO_2 \times 1.34 \times Hb) + (0.023 \times PO_2(\text{kPa}))$

**Oxygen flux** (oxygen delivery) = cardiac output  $\times$  arterial oxygen content

**Shunt** is the pulmonary blood flow that bypasses ventilated alveoli

**Shunt (fraction) equation**

$$Q_s / Q_t = \frac{CcO_2 - CaO_2}{CcO_2 - CvO_2}$$

where  $Q_s$  = shunt flow,  $Q_t$  = total flow,  $CcO_2$  = pulmonary end-capillary oxygen content,  $CaO_2$  = arterial oxygen content,  $CvO_2$  = mixed venous oxygen content

**Compliance** is the volume change per unit pressure change

**Laplace's law for a sphere:** Pressure across the wall =  $2 \times \text{tension} / \text{radius}$

**Reynold's number** predicts whether gas flow is likely to be laminar or turbulent:

$$Re = \frac{\text{diameter} \times \text{velocity} \times \text{density}}{\text{viscosity}}$$

<1000 = laminar flow

>2000 = turbulent flow

**Hagen-Poiseuille law** describes laminar flow in tubes:

$$\text{Flow rate} = \frac{\text{Pressure difference} \times \text{radius}^4}{\text{length} \times \text{viscosity}}$$

**Henderson-Hasselbalch equation** describes how the pH is derived from  $pK_a$  and the ratio of dissociated and undissociated acid/base. For  $H_2CO_3/CO_2$ :

$$pH = pK_a + \left( \log_{10} \frac{HCO_3^-}{H_2CO_3} \right)$$



Normal values

Haematology	
Measurement	Reference range
White cell count	4.0–11.0 × 10 <sup>9</sup> /l
Red cell count	♂ 4.5–6.5 × 10 <sup>12</sup> /l ♀ 3.9–5.6 × 10 <sup>12</sup> /l
Haemoglobin	♂ 13.5–18.0g/dl ♀ 11.5–16.0g/dl
Packed red cell volume (haematocrit)	♂ 0.4–0.54/l ♀ 0.37–0.47/l
Mean cell volume	76–96fl
Mean cell haemoglobin	27–32pg
Neutrophils	2.0–7.5 × 10 <sup>9</sup> /l (40–75% of WCC)
Lymphocytes	1.3–3.5 × 10 <sup>9</sup> /l (20–45% of WCC)
Eosinophils	0.04–0.44 × 10 <sup>9</sup> /l (1–6% of WCC)
Basophils	0.0–0.10 × 10 <sup>9</sup> /l (0.1% of WCC)
Monocytes	0.2–0.8 × 10 <sup>9</sup> /l (2–10% of WCC)
Platelet count	150–400 × 10 <sup>9</sup> /l
Prothrombin time (factors I, II, VII, X)	10–14s
Activated partial thromboplastin time (VIII, IX, XI, XII)	35–45s
INR	
Normal	1
Anticoagulation targets:	
Atrial fibrillation	2.5 (± 0.5)
Treatment DVT/PE	2.5 (± 0.5)
Prosthetic valve	3.5 (± 0.5)

**Biochemistry**

	Specimen	Reference interval
Adrenocorticotrophic hormone	P	<80ng/l
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT)	P	5–35iu/l
Albumin	P	35–50g/l
Aldosterone	P	100–500pmol/l
Alkaline phosphatase	P	30–300iu/l (adults)
Amylase	P	0–180 Somogyi u/dl
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	P	0.9–4.6pmol/l
Aspartate transaminase (AST)	P	5–35iu/l
Bicarbonate	P	24–30mmol/l
Bilirubin	P	3–17 $\mu$ mol/l
Calcitonin	P	<0.1 $\mu$ g/l
Calcium (ionised)	P	1.0–1.25mmol/l
Calcium (total)	P	2.12–2.65mmol/l
Chloride	P	95–105mmol/l
Cholesterol	P	3.9–7.8mmol/l
VLDL	P	0.128–0.645mmol/l
LDL	P	1.55–4.4mmol/l
HDL	P	0.9–1.93mmol/l
Cholinesterase	P	♂ 5900–12220u/l ♀ 4650–10440u/l
Cortisol	P	a.m. 450–700nmol/l midnight 80–280nmol/l
Creatine kinase (CK)	P	25–195iu/l
Creatinine ( $\infty$ to lean body mass)	P	70–150mmol/l
CRP	P	0–12mg/l
Ferritin	P	12–200 $\mu$ g/l
Folate	S	2.1 $\mu$ g/l
Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase	P	11–51iu/l
Glucose (fasting)	P	3.5–5.5mmol/l
Glycated (glycosylated) Hb	B	2.3–6.5%
Growth hormone	P	<20mu/l
HbA <sub>1c</sub> (= glycosylated Hb)	B	2.3–6.5%

Table Contd.

	Specimen	Reference interval
Iron	S	♂ 14–31µmol/l ♀ 11–30µmol/l
Magnesium	P	0.7–1mmol/l
Osmolality	P	278–305mosmol/kg
Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	P	<0.8–8.5pmol/l
Phosphate (inorganic)	P	0.8–1.45mmol/l
Potassium	P	3.5–5.0mmol/l
Protein (total)	P	60–80g/l
Red cell folate	B	0.36–1.44µmol/l (160–640µg/l)
Renin (erect/recumbent)	P	2.8–4.5/1.1–2.7pmol/ml/hr
Sodium	P	135–145mmol/l
Thyroid-binding globulin (TBG)	P	7–17mg/l
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) NR widens with age	P	0.5–5.7mu/l
Thyroxine (T <sub>4</sub> )	P	70–140mmol/l
Thyroxine (free)	P	9–22pmol/l
Total iron binding capacity	S	54–75µmol/l
Triglyceride	P	0.55–1.90mmol/l
Tri-iodothyroinine (T <sub>3</sub> )	P	1.2–3.0nmol/l
Troponin T (taken at least 12hr after onset of chest pain)	P	0–0.01µg/l normal 0.01–0.1µg/l suspicious >0.1µg/l diagnostic of MI
Urate	P	♂ 210–480µmol/l ♀ 150–390µmol/l
Urea	P	2.5–6.7mmol/l
Vitamin B <sub>12</sub>	S	0.13–0.68nmol/l (>150ng/l)

**Table** Contd.**Renal**

Glomerular filtration rate	>120 ml/min
Renal blood flow	1200ml/min
Urine output	0.5–1.0ml/kg/min
Urine osmolality	350–1000m Osmol/kg

P = plasma (e.g. heparin bottle), S = serum (clotted; no anticoagulant), B = whole blood (edetic acid EDTA bottle)

## Useful websites

<a href="http://www.rcoa.ac.uk">www.rcoa.ac.uk</a>	Royal College of Anaesthetists
<a href="http://www.aagbi.org">www.aagbi.org</a>	Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland
<a href="http://www.anaesthesiologists.org">www.anaesthesiologists.org</a>	World Federation of Societies of Anaesthesiologists
<a href="http://www.asahq.org">www.asahq.org</a>	American Society of Anaesthesiologists
<a href="http://www.anzca.edu.au">www.anzca.edu.au</a>	Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists
<a href="http://www.apagbi.org.uk">www.apagbi.org.uk</a>	Association of Paediatric Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland
<a href="http://www.vasgbi.com">www.vasgbi.com</a>	Vascular Anaesthesia Society of Great Britain and Ireland
<a href="http://www.acta.org.uk">www.acta.org.uk</a>	Association of Cardiothoracic Anaesthetists
<a href="http://www.oaa-anaes.ac.uk">www.oaa-anaes.ac.uk</a>	Obstetric Anaesthetists Association
<a href="http://www.boas.org">www.boas.org</a>	British Ophthalmic Anaesthesia Society
<a href="http://www.nasgbi.org.uk">www.nasgbi.org.uk</a>	Neuroanaesthesia Society
<a href="http://www.snacc.org">www.snacc.org</a>	Society of Neurosurgical Anaesthesia and Critical Care
<a href="http://www.esraeurope.org">www.esraeurope.org</a>	European Society of Regional Anaesthesia
<a href="http://www.asra.com">www.asra.com</a>	American Society of Regional Anaesthesia and Pain Medicine
<a href="http://www.britishpainsociety.org">www.britishpainsociety.org</a>	The British Pain Society
<a href="http://www.sivauk.org">www.sivauk.org</a>	Society for Intravenous Anaesthesia
<a href="http://www.das.uk.com">www.das.uk.com</a>	The Difficult Airway Society
<a href="http://www.resus.org.uk">www.resus.org.uk</a>	The Resuscitation Council
<a href="http://www.bja.oxfordjournals.org">www.bja.oxfordjournals.org</a>	British Journal of Anaesthesia
<a href="http://www.anesthesia-analgesia.org">www.anesthesia-analgesia.org</a>	Anesthesia and Analgesia
<a href="http://www.anesthesiology.org">www.anesthesiology.org</a>	Anesthesiology
<a href="http://www.cochrane.org">www.cochrane.org</a>	Cochrane Collaboration
<a href="http://www.nice.org.uk">www.nice.org.uk</a>	National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence
<a href="http://www.anesthesiadoc.net">www.anesthesiadoc.net</a>	Online Anaesthesia Resource
<a href="http://www.virtual-anaesthesia-textbook.com">www.virtual-anaesthesia-textbook.com</a>	Virtual Anaesthetic Textbook
<a href="http://www.frca.co.uk">www.frca.co.uk</a>	Anaesthesia UK

<a href="http://www.gmc-uk.org">www.gmc-uk.org</a>	General Medical Council
<a href="http://www.bma.org.uk">www.bma.org.uk</a>	British Medical Association
<a href="http://www.histansoc.org.uk">www.histansoc.org.uk</a>	History of Anaesthesia Society
<a href="http://www.bnfc.org">www.bnfc.org</a>	British National Formulary for Children 2005
<a href="http://www.bnf.org">www.bnf.org</a>	British National Formulary

## Checklist for anaesthetic equipment

The following checklist is courtesy of the Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland.<sup>1</sup> Use this guidance in association with the manufacturer's instructions for checking your specific anaesthesia machine—certain models should not have the common gas outlet occluded (see Check 5).

The following checks should be made prior to each operating session. In addition, Checks 2, 6, and 9 should be made prior to each new patient during a session.

**1. Check that the anaesthetic machine is connected to the electricity supply (if appropriate) and switched on.**

**Note:** Some anaesthetic workstations may enter an integral self-test programme when switched on; those functions tested by such a programme need not be retested.

- Take note of any information or labelling on the anaesthetic machine referring to the current status of the machine. Particular attention should be paid to recent servicing. Servicing labels should be fixed in the service logbook.

**2. Check that all monitoring devices, in particular the oxygen analyser, pulse oximeter, and capnograph, are functioning and have appropriate alarm limits.**

- Check that gas sampling lines are properly attached and free of obstructions.
- Check that an appropriate frequency of recording non-invasive blood pressure is selected.

(Some monitors need to be in stand-by mode to avoid unnecessary alarms before being connected to the patient.)

**3. Check with a 'tug test' that each pipeline is correctly inserted into the appropriate gas supply terminal.**

**Note:** CO<sub>2</sub> cylinders should not be present on the anaesthetic machine unless requested by the anaesthetist. A blanking plug should be fitted to any empty cylinder yoke.

- Check that the anaesthetic machine is connected to a supply of oxygen and that an adequate supply of oxygen is available from a reserve oxygen cylinder.
- Check that adequate supplies of other gases (nitrous oxide, air) are available and connected as appropriate.
- Check that all pipeline pressure gauges in use on the anaesthetic machine indicate 400–500kPa.

**4. Check the operation of flow meters (where fitted).**

- Check that each flow valve operates smoothly and that the bobbin moves freely throughout its range.
- Check the antihypoxia device is working correctly.
- Check the operation of the emergency oxygen bypass control.

**5. Check the vaporiser(s).**

- Check that each vaporiser is adequately filled but not overfilled.
- Check that each vaporiser is correctly seated on the back bar and not tilted.
- Check the vaporiser for leaks (with vaporiser on and off) by temporarily occluding the common gas outlet. Turn the vaporiser(s) off when checks are completed.
- Repeat the leak test immediately after changing any vaporiser.

**6. Check the breathing system to be employed.**

**Note:** A new single-use bacterial/viral filter and angle-piece/catheter mount must be used for each patient. Packaging should not be removed until point of use.

- Inspect the system for correct configuration. All connections should be secured by 'push and twist'.
- Perform a pressure leak test on the breathing system by occluding the patient-end and compressing the reservoir bag. Bain-type co-axial systems should have the inner tube compressed for the leak test.
- Check the correct operation of all valves, including unidirectional valves within a circle, and all exhaust valves.
- Check for patency and flow of gas through the whole breathing system including the filter and anglepiece/catheter mount.

**7. Check that the ventilator is configured appropriately for its intended use.**

- Check that the ventilator tubing is correctly configured and securely attached.
- Set the controls for use and ensure that an adequate pressure is generated during the inspiratory phase.
- Check the pressure relief valve functions.
- Check that the disconnect alarms function correctly.
- Ensure that an alternative means to ventilate the patient's lungs is available (see Check 10 below).

**8. Check that the anaesthetic gas scavenging system is switched on and is functioning correctly.**

- Check that the tubing is attached to the appropriate exhaust port of the breathing system, ventilator, or workstation.

**9. Check that all ancillary equipment that may be needed is present and working.**

- This includes laryngoscopes, intubation aids, intubation forceps, bougies, etc. and appropriately sized facemasks, airways, tracheal tubes, and connectors, which must be checked for patency.
- Check that the suction apparatus is functioning and that all connectors are secure.
- Check that the patient trolley, bed, or operating table can be rapidly tilted head down.



**10. Check that an alternative means to ventilate the patient is immediately available (e.g. self-inflating bag and oxygen cylinder).**

- Check that the self-inflating bag and cylinder of oxygen are functioning correctly and the cylinder contains an adequate supply of oxygen.

**11. Recording**

- Sign and date the logbook kept with the anaesthetic machine to confirm the machine has been checked.
- Record on each patient's anaesthetic chart that the anaesthetic machine, breathing system, and monitoring has been checked.

**1** Association of Anaesthetists of Great Britain and Ireland (2004). *Checking Anaesthetic Equipment* 3. London: AAGBI.

# Index

The index uses abbreviations for well-known terms, but full names are also cross-referenced to the abbreviations. See p. xv for a full list of abbreviations used in the book. The main sections are indicated in **bold**.

## A

- AAA repair 444, **444**
    - emergency 448
    - endovascular
      - stenting 449, 724
  - Aarskog-Scott syndrome 296
  - ABC 2, 864
    - air/gas embolism 933
    - anaphylaxis 948, 966
    - burns patients 884
    - paediatric
      - emergencies 954, 960, 962, 964
    - pulmonary oedema 939
    - severe hypertension 925
    - severe hypotension 923
    - severe hypoxia 928
    - status asthmaticus 936
    - see also resuscitation
  - abaciximab 229, 1194
  - abdominal
    - hysterectomy 622
  - abdominal injuries 879
  - abdominoplasty 532
  - ABG 103, 1264
    - chronic liver disease 144
    - COPD 115
    - CPB 336
    - dystrophia myotonica 266
    - obesity 189
    - RA 193
    - restrictive pulmonary
      - disease 120
    - sarcoidosis 124
  - abortion 616
  - ACE inhibitors
    - heart failure 54–5
    - ischaemic heart
      - disease 50
  - acetazolamide 1193
  - achalasia of cardia 296
  - achondroplasia 202, 296
  - acoustic neuroma 420
  - acrocephalosyndactyly 322
  - acromegaly **162**, 296
  - ACT 336, 355, 430
  - ACTH 1273
    - Cushing's syndrome 174
    - early morning 173
  - activated clotting time
    - see ACT
  - activated protein C 227
  - acupuncture 1107
  - acute epiglottitis 856
  - acute intermittent
    - porphyria 210
  - acute liver failure 141
  - acute pain 1090
  - adalimumab 194
  - Addisonian crisis 170–1
  - Addison's disease 170
    - perioperative
      - management 171
    - see also adrenal
      - insufficiency
  - adenosine 85, 1193
  - ADH 1273
  - adrenal crisis 170–1
  - adrenocortical
    - insufficiency **170**
      - biochemical diagnosis 173
  - adrenalectomy 177
  - adrenaline 634, 1127, 1259
    - dose in children 968
    - infusion 1242–7
    - in porphyria 212
    - resuscitation 913
  - adrenogenital
    - syndrome 300
  - adult advanced life
    - support 912
  - adult basic life support 910
    - breathing 911
    - chest compressions 910
    - defibrillation 911
    - see also resuscitation
  - Adults with Incapacity Act (Scotland) (2000) 278
  - advance decisions 18
  - Advanced Trauma Life Support (ATLS)
    - adults 862
    - children 954
    - see also resuscitation
  - aeromedical transfer 902
  - AF 86
    - anticoagulant therapy 223
    - cardioversion 361, **361**
      - management 86
      - uncontrolled 87
  - AFOI 974, 1000, **1000**
  - AIDS 170
    - air embolism 77, 432, 932
    - paradoxical 433
  - airway 864, **969**
    - assessment 970–2
    - burns patients 884
    - can't intubate, can't ventilate 986, 988
    - cricothyroidotomy 986
    - IV cannula 987
    - rescue techniques 986
    - surgical airway 987
  - children 822, 968
    - facemasks 810
    - LMA 810–11
    - nasopharyngeal 810
    - oropharyngeal 810
  - difficult
    - plastic surgery 514
    - predictors of 973
    - unanticipated 976
  - ENT surgery 632
  - laryngeal view 971
  - major trauma 498
  - obstruction 990
    - preoperative 636
  - spinal surgery 433
  - thyroidectomy 581
  - see also intubation
- akinetetic anaesthesia 684
- Alagille's syndrome 296
- alanine
  - aminotransferase 144–5, 1273
- Albers-Schönberg disease
  - see osteopetrosis
- Albright's
  - osteodystrophy 296
- Albright's syndrome 296
- albumin 142, 145, 1273
  - in elderly patients 729
  - human albumin
    - solution 1084, 1087
  - as plasma expander 1085
- alcohol abuse 280
- alcuronium 212
- aldosterone 176, 1273
- alfentanil 112, 1259
  - in CRF 132
  - drug interactions 248
  - in ECT 292
  - infusion 1242–7
  - in liver failure 146
  - in porphyria 212
- alimemazine 1259

- alkaline phosphatase 144–5, 1273
- allergy
- antibiotics 1006
  - in asthma 110
  - latex 1010
  - penicillin 1258
  - skin testing 1007
  - see also anaphylaxis
- allodynia 1111
- alpha-agonists 42, 212
- ischaemic heart disease 50
- alpha-antagonists 925
- alpine anaesthesia 58
- Alport syndrome 297
- Alstrom syndrome 297
- alteplase 229
- alveolar gas equation 1271
- alveolar
- hypoventilation 297
- alveolar minute ventilation 1266, 1271
- alveolar volume 1271
- amantadine 246
- amethocaine see tetracaine
- Ametop cream 818, 1126, 1196
- aminocaproic acid 232
- aminophylline 111, 1196
- dose in children 968
  - infusion 1242–7
  - in porphyria 212
- amiodarone 1196
- AF 86–7
  - and breast feeding 771
  - dose in children 968
  - infusion 1242–7
  - tachycardia 85
  - VT 88
- amitriptyline 248
- amniotic fluid
- embolism 777
- amoxicillin 1196
- amphetamines 290
- amputations 460
- amylase 1273
- amyloidosis 297
- amyotrophic lateral sclerosis 265, 297
- anaemia 204
- perioperative blood transfusion 205
  - in RA 193
- anaesthesia checklists 2, 1259
- anaesthetic breathing systems see breathing systems
- anaesthetic drugs
- concentrations 1050
  - general see *individual drugs*
  - local see LAs; and *individual drugs*
- anaesthetic risk 18, 20, 20, 22
- anakinra 194
- analbuminaemia 298
- analgesia 1092
- abdominal surgery 540
  - acupuncture 1107
  - analgesic efficacy 1098
  - analgesic ladder 1091
  - benefits of 1090
  - burns 886
  - continuous peripheral nerve blockade 1106
  - in CRF 130
  - epidural see epidural analgesia
  - inhalational 1094
  - obstetric 738
  - patient-controlled see PCA
  - plastic surgery 515
  - postoperative Caesarean section 767
  - children 828
  - respiratory disease 105
  - in pregnancy 792
  - TENS 1107
  - thoracic surgery 369
  - trauma 361
  - see also *individual drugs*
- anaphylaxis 30, 948
- children 966–7
  - follow-up 1006
  - investigations 1007
  - latex
    - clinical features 1011
    - prevention 1011
    - see also allergy
  - presentation 1007
  - treatment 1194–1240
- Andersen's disease 310
- Andersen's syndrome 298
- aneurysm
- aortic 450, 450
  - see also AAA repair
  - clipping 428
  - intracranial 424
- aneurysmal SAH 426
- medical complications 427
  - neurological complications 426
  - outcome 427
- angioplasty 724
- failed 344
- anhidrotic/hypohidrotic ectodermal dysplasia 298
- ankle arthrodesis 481
- ankle block 1165
- ankle joint replacement 481
- ankle surgery 480–1
- ankylosing spondylitis 199, 195, 298
- articular 195
  - non-articular 195
- anorexia nervosa 279
- antacids 11, 766
- antiarrhythmics
- resuscitation 913
  - see also *individual drugs*
- antibiotics
- and breast feeding 771
  - in myasthenia gravis 259
  - prophylaxis 42, 1194–1240
  - aspiration pneumonia 1258
  - CABG 340
  - endocarditis 1254–5
  - patients colonised with MRSA 1258
  - sensitivity to 1006
- anticholinergic drugs 246
- see also *individual drugs*
- anticholinesterases see cholinesterase inhibitors
- anticoagulants 222
- activated protein C 227
  - dabigatran 226
  - fondaparinux 226, 1213
  - heart failure 54
  - heparin 206, 219
  - DVT prophylaxis 13
  - infusion 1194–1240
  - LMWH 13, 219, 226
  - unfractionated 13, 219, 1216
  - hirudins 226
  - and regional anaesthesia 1176
  - rivaroxaban 226
  - warfarin 219, 222, 1240
  - DVT prophylaxis 14
- anticonvulsants 242
- and breast feeding 771
- antidepressants 282
- drug interactions 248
  - MAOIs see MAOIs
  - St John's wort 282
  - SSRIs 283
  - TCA 282
- antiemetics
- drug interactions 248
  - in epilepsy 241
  - in PD 249
  - see also *individual drugs*
- anti-epileptic drugs see anticonvulsants
- antifibrinolytics 232
- aminocaproic acid 232
  - aprotinin 232
  - tranexamic acid 232, 336, 572, 1238

- antihistamines *see*
  - antiemetics; and
  - individual drugs
- antihypertensives 248
- hydralazine 212, 783, 1216
- labetalol 783, 1220
- perioperative
  - continuation 58,
  - 244–5
- sodium nitroprusside 1194–1240
- see also individual drugs*
- antiphospholipid syndrome 237
- antiplatelet drugs **228**
  - see also individual drugs*
- antipsychotics 286
- and breast feeding 771
- Antley-Bixler syndrome 298
- anxiety 278
- aorta
  - blunt injury 877
  - thoracic, surgery *see*
    - thoracic aortic surgery
- aortic aneurysm
  - abdominal *see* AAA repair
  - thoraco-abdominal 450, **450**
- aortic valve
  - stenosis *see* AS
  - regurgitation *see* AR
- aortic valve replacement 61, 63
- regurgitation 348
- stenosis 346
- Apert's syndrome 298
- aplastic crisis in sickle cell disease 206
- apnoea
  - central 122
  - obstructive sleep apnoea 638
  - suxamethonium 952
- apomorphine 246
- appendectomy 562
- aprotinin 232
- APTT 1060, 1272
  - coagulation disorders 219
  - CRF 129
- apudoma **178**
- AR **64**
  - haemodynamic goals 64
  - perioperative care 64
  - valve replacement 348
- ARF 102
  - renal function 136
  - risk factors 136
- argon laser 710
- Arnold-Chiari malformation 298, 420
- arrhythmias,
  - perioperative **81**
- atrial/ventricular activity 82
- broad complex *see* broad complex arrhythmias
- dental procedures 676
- heart block **90**
- maxillofacial/dental surgery 669
- narrow complex **84**
- P waves 82
- QRS complex 82
- arterial blood gases *see* ABG
- arterial cannulation 336, 344, 355, 360, 431
- arterial injection, accidental 950
- arteriovenous malformation *see* AVM
- arthritis, rheumatoid *see* RA
- arthrogryposis 298
- arthroplasty *see* THR; TKR;
  - shoulder surgery
- arthroscopic surgery 478
- ankle 480–1
- cruciate ligament repair 479
- shoulder joint 489
- articaïne 1124–5
- AS **62, 62**
  - haemodynamic goals 63
  - perioperative care 63
  - postoperative management 63
  - valve replacement 346
- ASA physical status classification 27, 1260
- ascites 140, 142, 147
- ASD 78
- aspartate
  - transaminase 144–5, 1273
- aspiration 127, 934
- aspirin **228**
  - DVT prophylaxis 14
  - efficacy 1098
  - in porphyria 212
- asplenia syndrome 299
- asthma **110**
  - anaesthesia 112
  - children 964
  - perioperative medication 111
  - postoperative care 112
  - safe drugs 112
  - status asthmaticus 936
- ataxia-telangiectasia 299
- atenolol 1197
- atlantoaxial subluxation 192
- atracurium 212, 1197
  - in CRF 132
  - infusion 1242–7
  - in liver failure 146
  - in porphyria 212
- atrial ectopics 84
- atrial flutter/tachycardia 85
- atrial septal defect *see* ASD
- atropine 212, 1198
  - children 818, 860
  - dose 968
  - in porphyria 212
  - resuscitation 913
- auditory evoked responses 1050
- see also depth of anaesthesia*
- autologous blood transfusion 1073
- autonomic dysreflexia 250
- AV nodal tachycardia 85
- AVM 424
- anaesthesia 429
  - cerebral and spinal 431
  - interventional radiology 431
- AVR *see* aortic valve replacement
- Avogadro's law 1267
- awake craniotomy 422, **422**
- awareness under anaesthesia 1028
- Axenfeld-Rieger syndrome 299
- axillary block 835, 1142
- axillobifemoral bypass 458, 481
- Ayre's T-piece with Jackson-Rees modification 812
- azathioprine 74, 194

## B

- bacteraemia 593
- Bain breathing system 813
- balloon pump, intra-aortic 341, 345, 349
- bamboo spine 195
- barbiturates 212
- Bardet-Biedl syndrome 299
- bariatric surgery *see* obesity
- Barter syndrome 299
- basophil count 1272
- beating heart donors 436–7
- hormone resuscitation 438
- Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome 299
- beclomethasone 111
- Behçet's syndrome 300
- benzotrope 246
- benzocaine 1125
- benzodiazepines 791
  - see also individual drugs*
- benzylpenicillin 1198

- Bernard-Soulier syndrome 300  
 berry aneurysms 424  
 beta-agonists 111, 212  
   *see also individual drugs*  
 beta-blockers 42, 212  
   AF 86  
   and breast feeding 771  
   heart failure 54  
   hyperthyroidism 164  
   ischaemic heart disease 50  
   in porphyria 212  
   portal hypertension 152  
   severe hypertension 925  
   tachycardia 85  
 betamethasone 173  
 bicarbonate 1127,  
   1194–1240, 1273  
   dose in children 968  
   resuscitation 914  
 Bier's block 1149  
 bifascicular heart block 91  
 bilirubin 142, 145, 1273  
   overload 148  
 biochemistry 1273  
 bisoprolol 54  
 bispectral index 1050, 1052  
   *see also depth of anaesthesia*  
 Blackfan-Diamond syndrome 300  
 bladder  
   cystectomy 602, **602**  
   neck incision 610  
   spasm 593  
   tumour, transurethral resection 598, **598**  
 Bland-White-Garland syndrome 300  
 bleeding *see* haemorrhage  
 blood conservation 1072  
   acute normovolaemic haemodilution 1073  
   autologous transfusion 1073  
   intraoperative cell salvage 1073  
   postoperative recovery of blood 1074  
 blood count *see* FBC  
 blood exposure incidents **1016**  
   first aid 1016  
   infected doctors 1018  
   infection risk 1016  
   post-exposure management 1017  
   post-exposure prophylaxis 1017  
   prevention 1016  
   routes of exposure 1016  
   source patient 1018  
 blood gases 1264  
 blood glucose  
   acromegaly 162  
   diabetes mellitus 157  
   fasting 1273  
   phaeochromocytoma 587  
 blood loss *see* haemorrhage  
 blood patching 749–50  
 blood pressure  
   in children 802  
   diastolic 802  
   invasive 336, 344, 355, 360, 431  
   non-invasive 129, 252, 272, 274, 442, 885  
   systolic 802  
 blood products **1066**, 1067  
   cryoprecipitate 218, 1066–8  
   FFP 234, 1066–8  
   platelets 1066–7  
   recombinant factor VIIa 1066  
   red cells 1067  
   whole blood 1066  
 blood sugar *see* blood glucose  
 blood tests  
   arterial blood gases *see* ABG  
   APTT *see* APTT  
   full blood count *see* FBC  
   liver function tests *see* LFT  
   PT 145, 1060, 1272  
   urea and electrolytes *see* electrolytes; U&E  
 blood transfusion  
   anaemia 205  
   autologous 1073  
   complications 1068  
     acute reactions 1068  
     delayed reactions 1068  
   TRALI 1068  
   group and screen vs. crossmatching 1071  
   indications 1069–70  
   Jehovah's Witnesses 1076  
   massive 1075  
   perioperative 205  
   procedure 1071  
   *see also* blood products  
 blood volume 77, 164, 808, 1070  
   children 803  
   obese patients 188  
   spinal cord lesions 251  
 Bloom's syndrome 300  
 blue bloaters 114  
 BMI 189  
 bone-anchored hearing aid insertion 662  
 bougie, intubating *see* gum elastic bougie  
 Bourneville's disease 328  
 Boyle's law 1267  
 BP 58  
   high *see* hypertension  
 brachial plexus block 706  
 brachytherapy, prostate carcinoma 595  
 bradycardia  
   severe 916  
   sinus 84  
 brain, electronic monitoring 1050  
 brainstem death 434  
   organ retrieval 436–7  
   pathophysiology 436  
 BRAN mnemonic 20  
 breast feeding and drug transfer 770–1  
 breast surgery **566**  
   augmentation 520  
   post-mastectomy/lumpectomy reconstruction 520, 524  
   reduction 518  
 breathing *see* respiratory function  
 breathing systems 1262  
   Ayre's T-piece with Jackson-Rees modification 812  
   Bain system 813  
   children 812  
   circle system 813, 1262–3  
   Humphrey ADE system 813  
   Mapleson system 1262–3  
   mechanical ventilation 813  
   soda lime 813  
   *see also* ventilation  
 broad complex arrhythmias **88**  
 action plan 89  
 management 89  
 tachycardia 45, 920  
   supraventricular with aberrant conduction 88  
   ventricular 88  
   ventricular ectopics 88  
   VF 89  
 bromocriptine 246  
 bronchial blocker technique 373  
 bronchiectasis **116**  
   anaesthesia 117  
 bronchopleural fistula repair 390  
 bronchoscopy  
   fiberoptic 229, 373, 400  
   rigid 378  
 bronchospasm 922, 928  
   *see also* status asthmaticus

- bronze diabetes 311
  - Brugada syndrome 300
  - budesonide 111
  - Buerger's disease 300
  - bullectomy 386, **386**
  - bullous cystic lung disease 300
  - bundle branch block 90
    - left 91
    - right 90
  - bupivacaine 1125, 1199
    - children 833
    - in CRF 132
    - epidural analgesia 541, 769
    - in liver failure 146
    - ophthalmic surgery 688
    - in porphyria 210, 212
    - regional anaesthesia 1124–5
    - thoracic surgery 369
  - buprenorphine 1200
    - in porphyria 212
    - in substance abuse 1110
    - transdermal 1097
  - Burkitt's lymphoma 301
  - burns
    - airway 884
    - analgesia 886
    - area 887
      - Lund and Browder chart 887
    - chemical 888
    - early management 884
    - electrical 888
    - escharotomy 886
    - exposure 885
    - inhalation of toxic substances 886
    - monitoring 885
    - resuscitation 884
    - skin grafts 531
    - suxamethonium contraindicated in 1054
    - transfer to burns centre 889
  - BURP 980, 995
  - butyphenones, drug interactions 248
- C**
- C reactive protein 1273
  - cabergoline 246
  - CABG 48, 340, **340**
    - echocardiography 340
    - emergency 344
    - off-pump 342
  - Caesarean section **754**
    - antacid prophylaxis 766
    - CSE 760
      - dose 769
    - epidural analgesia 756
      - dose 769
    - general anaesthesia 764
      - effect on fetus 765
      - failed intubation 765
      - pregnancy hypertension 785
    - inadequate anaesthesia 762
    - lower segment 769
    - postoperative analgesia 767, 769
      - NSAIDs 767
      - opioids 767
    - regional anaesthesia 754
      - pregnancy hypertension 785
    - spinal anaesthesia 758
      - dose 769
  - caffeine 1200
  - calcitonin 1273
  - calcium 1273
    - daily requirement 1080
    - hypercalcaemia 124, 584
    - hypocalcaemia 583
  - calcium antagonists
    - dantrolene, in malignant hyperthermia 270, 274
    - delayed neurological deficit 426
    - ischaemic heart disease 50
    - phaeochromocytoma 587
  - calcium channel blockers
    - see calcium antagonists
  - calcium chloride 1200
    - dose in children 968
  - calcium gluconate 1200
    - dose in children 968
  - cannabis 290
  - cannulation
    - arterial 336, 344, 355, 360, 431
    - central venous 1040
    - peripherally inserted central catheters 1040
    - venous 1040
  - can't intubate, can't ventilate 986, 988
  - cricothyroidotomy 986
  - IV cannula 987
  - rescue techniques 986
  - surgical airway 987
  - Cantrell's pentalogy 301
  - CAP test 1007
  - CAPD see peritoneal dialysis
  - capnography 813, 826, 913, 1002
  - capsulotomy 496
  - caput medusae 152
  - carbamazepine 242, 771
  - carbimazole 164
  - carbon dioxide 1248
  - carbon dioxide laser 710, 713
  - carbon monoxide poisoning 886
  - carboprost 776, 1201
  - carboxyhaemoglobin 108
  - carcinoid syndrome 178
  - carcinoid tumours 178
  - cardiac arrest
    - during MRI 723
    - prediction of non-survivors 895
    - resuscitation 894
  - cardiac arrhythmias
    - see arrhythmias, perioperative
  - cardiac catheterisation AS 62
    - heart failure 55
    - see also PCI
  - cardiac enzymes 886, 925
    - see also troponins
  - cardiac index 1268
  - cardiac output 1268
    - methods of measurement 550
  - oesophageal Doppler 1081, 1269
  - thermodilution 550
  - cardiac surgery **331**
    - CABG see CABG redo 360
    - risk scoring 282, 334
    - see also individual procedures
  - cardiac tamponade 865
  - cardiomyopathy **72**
    - alcoholic 280
    - dilated 73
    - HOCM 72
    - restrictive 72
  - cardiopulmonary bypass
    - see CPB
  - cardiopulmonary exercise testing see CPET
  - cardiovascular disease **45**
    - cardiomyopathy see cardiomyopathy
    - CHD 76
    - CPET 47, 1053
    - elderly patients 728
    - heart failure 54
    - heart murmurs see heart murmurs
    - hypertension 58
    - ischaemic heart disease 46
    - myocardial infarction 52
    - obesity 188
    - pericardial disease 71
    - in pregnancy 778
    - transplanted heart 74
    - valvular heart disease see valvular heart disease

- cardiovascular
  - physiology 1268
- cardiovascular
  - pressures 1268
- cardiovascular risk
  - factors 28–30
- cardioversion 361, **361**
- carotid
  - endarterectomy 452, **452**
  - awake 453
- carpal tunnel release
  - 496, 532
- Carpenter's syndrome 301
- carvedilol 54
- cataract extraction 693
  - intracapsular 696
- CATCH 22 syndrome
  - 305
- catheter
  - central venous 1040
  - epidural 741, 746, 1104, 1133
  - suprapubic 610
  - Tenckhoff 134
- caudal block 1172
  - advantages/
    - complications 831
  - anatomy 831
  - children 830
  - continuous caudal epidural
    - analgesia 831
- CCF 76, 78, 429, 928
- cefotaxime 1201
  - dose in children 968
- cefuroxime 1201
- celecoxib 1093, 1201
- cell saver see intraoperative
  - cell salvage
- cement implantation
  - syndrome 469
- central core disease 274, 302
- central nervous system
  - elderly patients 729
  - neonates 803
- central venous
  - cannulation 1040
  - femoral 79, 355, 430, 1041
  - internal jugular 572, 1041
  - subclavian/axillary 1041
- central venous pressure
  - see CVP
- CEPOD classification 1260
- cerebral blood flow 405
- cerebral perfusion
  - pressure 404, 1268
- cerebrocostomandibular
  - syndrome 301
- cerebrovascular
  - disease **244**
  - anaesthesia 245
- cervical cerclage 794
- cervical spine
  - emergency care 864
  - fracture 500
  - anaesthesia 500
  - repair of 502
  - fusion 487
- cetirizine 1194–1240
- Chagas' disease 301
- Charcot-Marie-Tooth
  - disease 301
- CHARGE association 301
- Charles' law 1267
- CHD **76**
  - adults with **80**
  - ASD 78
  - Eisenmenger's
    - syndrome 79
  - Fontan procedure 79
  - non-cardiac surgery 76
  - PDA 78
  - risk factors 77
  - tetralogy of Fallot 79
  - VSD 78
- checklists
  - AFOI 1000
  - anaesthesia 2
  - equipment 1278
  - patient transfer 904
  - WHO 6
- Chediak-Higashi
  - syndrome 301
- chemical burns 888
- cherubism 302
- chest compressions 910
- chest injuries **396**, 865, **876**
  - blunt aortic injury 877
  - diaphragmatic
    - rupture 877
  - life-threatening 865
  - myocardial contusion 876
  - oesophageal rupture 396, 878
  - pulmonary contusion 876
  - ruptured diaphragm 396
  - tracheobronchial
    - injury 398, 878
- chest wall, extrinsic
  - conditions 120
- chest X-ray see CXR
- Chiari malformation
  - 298, 420
- child protection 816
- childbirth see labour and
  - delivery
- children **799**, 860
  - advanced life support 954
  - airway 822, 968
  - blood pressure 802
  - blood volume 803
  - cannulation 821
  - circulation 968
  - circumcision 846
- cleft lip/palate 850
- consent 18, 817
- diaphragmatic hernia 836
- drug doses 968
- emergency procedures
  - ABC 954, 960, 962, 964
- acute severe
  - asthma 964
- anaphylaxis 966–7
- collapsed septic
  - child 960
- intraosseous access 821
- major trauma 962
- neonatal
  - resuscitation 958–9
  - VF/pulseless VT 956
- femoral osteotomy 853
- fluid requirements 805
- gastroschisis/
  - exomphalos 838
- Glasgow Coma Scale 873
- grommet insertion 640
- heart murmurs 816
- herniotomy 844
- hypospadias 848
- induction of
  - anaesthesia 820
  - inhalational 820
  - IV 821
  - parents in anaesthetic
    - room 819
  - rapid sequence 825
- inhaled foreign body 854
- intubation 823
  - difficult 824
  - tube fixation 824
- intussusception 843
- laryngoscopy 662, 811
- laryngospasm 822
- maintenance of
  - anaesthesia 825
- mechanical
  - ventilation 813
- medical problems 856
- nerve blocks 834
  - axillary block 835
  - dorsal nerve of
    - penis 834
  - ilioinguinal and
    - iliohypogastric 834
  - TAP block 834
- orchidopexy 847
- patent ductus
  - arteriosus 841
- physiological
  - parameters 860
- postoperative
  - analgesia 828
- premedication 818
- preoperative
  - assessment 815
  - preoperative fasting 817

- preoperative  
   investigations 815  
 pulseless VT 956  
 pyloric stenosis 842  
 regional anaesthesia 829  
   caudal block 830  
   drug doses 833  
   epidural block 832  
   subarachnoid  
     block 832  
 reversal of  
   anaesthesia 826  
 sedation 858  
 septic collapse 960  
 Still's disease see RA  
 strabismus 694  
 talipes equinovarus 852  
 tear duct syringing 699  
 tonsillectomy/  
   adenoidectomy 642  
 topical anaesthetics 818  
 tracheal tube 811–12  
 tracheo-oesophageal  
   fistula 840  
 transfer 903  
 uncooperative 816  
 upper respiratory tract  
   infection 815  
 VF 956  
 weight 803, 968  
 see also infants; neonates  
 chloral hydrate 212,  
   1194–1240,  
   children 858  
   in porphyria 212  
 chloramphenicol 771  
 chlordiazepoxide 212  
 chlorhexidine 42  
 chloride 1273  
   daily requirement 1080  
   hyperchloraemic  
     acidosis 549, 867  
 chlorphenamine 1194–1240  
 chlorpromazine 771,  
   1194–1240,  
   in porphyria 212  
 cholecystectomy 545  
   laparoscopic 558  
 cholestasis 148  
 cholesterol 1273  
 cholinesterase 1054, 1273  
   perioperative  
     management 257  
 cholinesterase  
   inhibitors 1058  
   in pregnancy 694  
   see also *individual drugs*  
 chondroectodermal  
   dysplasia 307  
 Christ-Siemens-Touraine  
   syndrome 298  
 chronic granulomatous  
   disease 302  
 chronic kidney disease  
   see CRF  
 chronic liver disease 142  
 chronic obstructive  
   pulmonary disease see  
   COPD  
 chronic renal failure see  
   CRF  
 ciclosporin A 74  
 cimetidine  
   in porphyria 212  
   in pregnancy 791  
 cinchocaine 1054  
 ciprofloxacin  
   and breast feeding 771  
   surgical prophylaxis 1212  
 circle breathing system 813,  
   1262  
   fresh gas flows 1263  
 circulatory arrest 355  
 circulatory system  
   burns patients 884  
   children 968  
   trauma 862, 866, 868  
   see also ABC  
 circumcision 610, 846  
 cirrhosis 142  
 cisatracurium 1203, 146  
   in CRF 132  
   infusion 1242–7  
   in liver failure 146  
 CJD 303  
   and tonsillectomy 643  
 CK 1273  
 cleft lip/palate 850  
 clindamycin 1257  
 clonazepam 242  
 clonidine 42, 1204  
   children 818, 833  
   ischaemic heart  
     disease 50  
   regional anaesthesia 1127  
 clopidogrel 228  
   neuraxial  
     procedures 1176  
   PCI procedures 48  
   perioperative  
     discontinuation 14,  
     48, 228  
 clozapine 771  
 co-amoxiclav 340, 1204  
   surgical prophylaxis 1212  
 co-codamol 706, 1204  
   and breast feeding 770  
 co-codaprin 1204  
 co-dydramol 1204  
 co-proxamol 1204  
 coagulation cascade 217  
 coagulation disorders **216**,  
   219  
   haemophilia 218  
   and regional  
     anaesthesia 1174, 1176  
 thrombocytopenia 220,  
   226  
 thromboelastography  
   232, 234, 444, 784, 1060  
 von Willebrand's  
   disease 218–19  
 cocaine 290–1, 634, 1125,  
   1204  
   in porphyria 212  
   regional  
     anaesthesia 1124–5  
 Cochrane  
   Collaboration 44  
 Cockayne's syndrome 302  
 codeine 1094, 1204  
   children 828  
   in CRF 132  
   dosage 1095  
   in porphyria 212  
 cognitive dysfunction see  
   POCD  
 colloids 1084–5  
   adverse effects 1085  
 colorectal surgery **536**  
   enhanced recovery 536  
   fast-track 536  
   intraoperative  
     monitoring 538  
   monitoring 538  
   perioperative 537  
   postoperative 538  
   preoperative  
     assessment 537  
 colposuspension 628  
 coma  
   Glasgow Coma Scale 873,  
   1270  
   hypothyroid 165  
 combined spinal-epidural  
   see CSE  
 compartment  
   syndrome 506  
 complaints 1026  
   awareness 1028  
   formal written 1027  
   independent review 1027  
   legal proceedings 1027  
   local resolution 1026  
   preparation of  
     statement 1027  
   verbal 1026  
 compliance 1271  
 complications of  
   anaesthesia 4  
   pulmonary 99  
 computed tomography  
   see CT  
 cone biopsy 628  
 congenital adrenal  
   hyperplasia 302  
 congenital analgesia 302  
 congenital heart disease  
   see CHD



- D

- dehydration  
   clinical assessment 808, 1081  
   signs and symptoms 1082  
 delayed gastric emptying 10  
 delayed neurological deficit 426  
 delirium tremens 280  
 Delleman syndrome 304  
 dementia 278  
 dental procedures 676  
   anaesthesia 645  
   extractions 677  
   impacted/buried teeth 670  
   perioperative arrhythmias 676  
   sedation 678  
   see also maxillofacial/dental surgery  
 depth of anaesthesia 1050  
   auditory evoked potential 1052  
   EEG methods 1051  
   isolated forearm technique 1052  
 dermatoses 1188–9  
 dermatomyositis 304  
 'desert island' blocks 1120  
 desflurane 146  
   in CRF 132  
   in liver failure 146  
   MAC 1050, 1250  
 desmopressin 220, 232, 1206  
 dexamethasone 173, 1116, 1207  
 dextrans 1085, 1087  
   DVT prophylaxis 14  
 dextrose see glucose  
 diabetes insipidus 187, 311, 330  
   nephrogenic 176  
   neurogenic 436  
   preoperative 436  
   postoperative 416  
   vasopressin in 410, 1239  
 diabetes mellitus **156**  
   glucose potassium insulin regime 159–60  
   hypoglycaemia 157  
   ICU admissions 159  
   IV insulin/glucose 158–9  
   subcutaneous insulin regime 159  
   type I (IDDM) 156, 158  
   type II (NIDDM) 156, 158  
 dialysis see renal dialysis  
 diamorphine 1094, 1207  
   children 833  
   dosage 1095  
   intrathecal 1104  
   postoperative analgesia 769  
 diaphragmatic hernia 836  
 diaphragmatic rupture 396, 877  
 diazepam 288, 1207  
   and breast feeding 771  
   dose in children 968  
   in liver failure 146  
   in porphyria 212  
 diazoxide 180  
 dibucaine see cinchocaine  
 DIC 219, 234  
 diclofenac 706, 1093, 1208  
   children 828  
   efficacy 1098  
   in porphyria 212  
   postoperative analgesia 769  
   tooth extractions 677  
 DIDMOAD syndrome 330  
 difficult airway  
   plastic surgery 514  
   unanticipated 976  
   see also can't intubate, can't ventilate  
 difficult intubation 976  
   children 824  
   elective **982**, 983  
   extubation 1004  
   unanticipated 977  
 DiGeorge syndrome 305  
 digit reimplantation 496  
 digital block 1148  
 digoxin 1208  
   AF 86  
   heart failure 54–5  
   infusion 1243  
 dihydrocodeine 1205  
 dilated cardiomyopathy 73  
 diltiazem 212  
 dipyridamole 228  
   thallium scintigraphy 48  
 discectomy 487  
 disease status 9  
 disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs see DMARDs  
 DMARDs 194  
 disodium cromoglycate 111  
 disopyramide 212  
 disseminated intravascular coagulation see DIC  
 distigmine 259  
 diuretics 54  
 DLTs 370  
 dobutamine 1208  
   infusion 1243  
   stress echocardiography 48  
 documentation  
   anaesthetic chart 271, 1278  
   blood transfusions 1071  
   burn charts 885, 887  
   drug charts 828, 937  
 dolasetron 1116  
 domperidone 1209  
 Donohue syndrome 316  
 L-DOPA 246  
 dopamine 1209  
   infusion 1243  
 dopexamine 1209  
   infusion 1243  
 Doppler ultrasound 432, 932  
 dorsal nerve block of penis 834  
 double-burst stimulation 1057  
 Down's syndrome 305  
 doxapram 1209  
   infusion 1243  
 doxazosin 587  
 drawover anaesthesia 1034  
 driving after day-case surgery 703  
 droperidol 1116, 1209  
   drug interactions 248  
   in porphyria 212  
 drotrecogin alfa 227  
 drug interactions  
   antidepressants 248  
   MAOIs 285  
   antiemetics 248  
   butyrophenones 248  
   in PD 248  
   phenothiazines 248  
   see also individual drugs  
 drug metabolism in liver disease 143  
 drug-eluting stent thrombosis 48  
 Dubowitz syndrome 305  
 Duchenne's muscular dystrophy 268  
 ductus arteriosus, see PDA  
 Duke Activity Status Index 47  
 Dupuytren's contracture 496, 532  
 dural puncture **748**  
   blood patching 749–50  
   immediate management 748  
   late management 749  
   prophylaxis 749  
   symptomatic treatment 749  
 Dutch-Kentucky syndrome 312  
 DVT see venous thromboembolism  
 dwarfism 202, 296, 306  
 dye laser 710, 713  
 Dyggve-Melchior-Clausen syndrome 306  
 dynamic fluid challenge 1083

dysautonomia 306  
 dyspnoea, Roizen's  
   classification 100  
 dysreflexia, autonomic 250  
 dystrophia myotonica **266**

## E

Eagle-Barrett syndrome 324  
 ear(s)  
   exostoses 662  
   prominent, correction  
     of 521  
 ear, nose and throat surgery  
   see ENT surgery  
 Eaton-Lambert  
   syndrome 258, 320  
 Ebstein's anomaly 306  
 ECG  
   acromegaly 162  
   AR 64  
   AS 62  
   CABG 340  
   carcinoid syndrome 178  
   COPD 115  
   dystrophia myotonica 266  
   heart failure 55  
   hyperkalaemia 184  
   hypokalaemia 182  
   ischaemic heart  
     disease 47  
   mitral stenosis 66  
   normal values 1269  
   obesity 189  
   obstructive sleep  
     apnoea 123  
   P waves 82  
   QRS complex 82  
   RA 193  
   sarcoidosis 124  
   see also arrhythmias,  
     perioperative  
 echinacea 1014  
 echocardiography  
   AR 64  
   AS 62  
   CABG 340  
   heart failure 55  
   myocardial contusion 876  
   RA 193  
   transoesophageal 572  
   transthoracic 55  
 eclampsia 782, **787**  
   definition 782  
 ecstasy 290–1  
 ECT 292, **292**  
 ectopic beats  
   atrial 84  
   ventricular 88  
 ectopic pregnancy 626  
 edrophonium 259, 1210  
   reversal of NMB 1058  
 Edward's syndrome 306  
 EEG 122, 152, 241, 428,  
   434, 1050  
 Ehlers-Danlos  
   syndrome 306  
 Eisenmenger's  
   syndrome 79, 306  
 ejection fraction 55, 1268  
 elbow block 1145  
 elbow replacement 492  
 elderly patients **727**  
   anaesthetic  
     management 730  
   cardiovascular  
     disease 728  
   CNS disease 729  
   endocrine aspects 730  
   haematology 730  
   immune system 730  
   liver disease 729  
   nutrition 730  
   perioperative  
     management 731  
   pharmacology 729  
   postoperative cognitive  
     dysfunction 732  
   postoperative  
     management 731  
   preoperative  
     assessment 730  
   renal disease 728  
   respiratory disease 728  
   thermoregulation 730  
 electrical burns 888  
 electrocardiogram see ECG  
 electroconvulsive therapy  
   see ECT  
 electroencephalogram  
   see EEG  
 electrolyte balance 1080  
 electrolytes  
   chronic liver disease 144  
   CRF 129  
   daily requirement 1080  
   replacement 1076  
   see also U&Es, and entries  
     under fluid  
 electronic brain  
   monitoring 1050  
 Ellis-Van Creveld  
   disease 307  
 embolisation,  
   radiological 725  
 embolism  
   air/gas 77, 432, 932  
   amniotic fluid 777  
   fat 468  
   thrombus see venous  
     thromboembolism  
 emergence from anaesthesia  
   ophthalmic surgery 691  
   plastic surgery 514  
   see also individual  
     procedures  
 emergency procedures **907**  
   AAA repair 448  
   CABG 344  
   cervical spine injuries 864  
   children  
     ABC 954, 960, 962, 964  
   acute severe  
     asthma 964  
   anaphylaxis 966–7  
   collapsed septic  
     child 960  
   major trauma 962  
   neonatal  
     resuscitation 958–9  
   VF/pulseless VT 956  
   communication 908  
   resuscitation see  
     resuscitation  
   team approach 908  
   see also individual  
     conditions and  
     procedures  
 EMLA cream 818, 1126,  
   1210  
 empyema, drainage of 388  
 endarterectomy,  
   carotid 452, **452**  
 endocarditis  
   prophylaxis 1254  
   American Heart  
     Association  
       guidelines 1255  
   general recommendations  
     1255  
   NICE guidelines 1254  
 endocrine surgery **579**  
   parathyroidectomy 584  
   phaeochromocytoma 586  
   thyroidectomy 580  
 endocrine/metabolic  
   disease **155**  
   acromegaly 162  
   adrenal insufficiency 170  
   apudoma 178  
   Conn's syndrome 176  
   Cushing's syndrome 174  
   diabetes mellitus 156  
   hyperkalaemia 184  
   hypernatraemia 187  
   hypokalaemia 182  
   hyponatraemia 186  
   obesity 188  
   parathyroid disorders 168  
   patients on steroids 172  
   thyroid disease 164  
 endometrium, endoscopic  
   resection 628  
 endoscopic procedures  
   endometrial  
     resection 628  
   pharyngeal pouch  
     stapling 662  
 endotracheal tube see ETT

- endotracheal tubes  
RAE 489, 632, 662, 850  
paediatric 811
- enflurane 112, 241  
in CRF 132  
in epilepsy 241  
in liver failure 146  
MAC 1250  
in porphyria 212
- enhanced recovery after  
surgery (ERAS) 536
- enoxaparin 1210
- enoximone 1210  
infusion 1243
- ENT surgery **631**  
airway 632  
extubation 633  
grommet insertion 640  
laryngectomy 654  
microlaryngoscopy 650  
myringoplasty 646  
nasal cavity surgery 648  
nasal vasoconstrictors 634  
obstructive sleep  
apnoea 638  
parotidectomy 660  
pharyngectomy 656  
preoperative airway  
obstruction 636  
radical neck  
dissection 658  
stapedectomy/  
tympanoplasty 647  
throat packs 633  
tonsillectomy/  
adenoidectomy  
adults 645  
children 642  
tracheostomy 652
- entacapone 246
- entonox 1248  
see also nitrous oxide
- enucleation 699
- eosinophil count 1272
- ephedra 1014
- ephedrine 763, 1211
- epidermolysis bullosa 307
- epidural anaesthesia  
and analgesia 42, **1102**,  
1169  
abdominal surgery 541  
Caesarean section 756  
dose 769  
inadequate block 762  
children 832  
complications 746, 1103  
accidental IV  
injection 747  
dural puncture **748**  
hypotension 746  
neurological  
damage 747  
spinal infection 1105  
subdural block 746  
total spinal 746  
continuous caudal 831  
contraindications 1102  
drugs used for 1104  
labour and delivery **740**  
CSE 741  
and incidence of  
Caesarean  
section 796  
poorly functioning 744  
spinal cord lesions 254  
walking 741  
laparotomy 540  
outcome 541  
practical  
considerations 541  
spinal cord lesions 254  
troubleshooting 1102  
walking 741
- epidural blood patch 749–50
- epiglottitis, acute 856
- epilepsy **240**  
antiepileptic drugs 242  
and driving 242  
safe drugs 241  
epinephrine see adrenaline
- EPO 1072
- epoprostenol 226
- etifibatide 48, 229
- equipment  
checklist 1278  
MRI 721  
neonatal anaesthesia 810  
patient transfer 905  
regional anaesthesia 1122  
see also *individual items*
- ergometrine 776, 1211
- ergot derivatives in PD 246
- ERPC 616
- erythema multiforme 307
- erythromycin 1211
- erythropoietin 1072
- escharotomy 886
- esmolol 1211  
AF 86  
in ECT 292  
infusion 1243  
tachycardia 85
- essential  
thrombocythaemia 236
- etanercept 194
- ethanol 1212
- ether 212
- etomidate 112, 241, 1212  
in CRF 132  
in epilepsy 241  
in liver failure 146  
in porphyria 212  
in pregnancy 626
- ETT 358, 430, 456  
Albright's syndrome 296  
armoured 408, 581, 606  
double lumen 370  
RAE 489, 632, 662, 850  
ophthalmic surgery 690  
paediatric 811  
rigid spine syndrome 325  
smokers 108  
'south-facing' 490  
see also *individual  
procedures*
- EUA  
eye injury 698–9  
lower limb  
procedures 478
- Eulenberg's disease 322
- EuroSCORE 282, 334  
evidence-based anaesthesia **36**  
definition of 36  
levels of evidence 36  
sources of evidence 22
- evidence-based  
interventions **42**
- evisceration 699
- exercise testing  
cardiopulmonary 47, 1053  
functional capacity 47  
ischaemic heart  
disease 47
- exomphalos 838
- expiratory reserve  
volume 1266
- external angular  
dermoid 532
- extraoral block see  
peribulbar block
- extracorporeal shock wave  
lithotripsy 607
- extubation  
difficult intubation 1004  
ENT surgery 633  
maxillofacial/dental  
surgery 668
- eye injury 698
- eye surgery see ophthalmic  
surgery
- F**
- Fabry syndrome 307
- facelift (rhytidectomy) 522
- facemasks 810
- factor V Leiden  
mutation 307
- factor VIIa 232  
recombinant 1066
- failed intubation 940–1,  
943, 980  
Caesarean section 765  
can't intubate, can't  
ventilate 986, 988  
rapid sequence  
induction 995, 997
- failed ventilation 942–3
- Fallot's tetralogy 79

- familial periodic paralysis 307  
 familial polyposis coli 309  
 Fanconi syndrome 308  
 Fanconi's anaemia 307  
 Farber's disease 308  
 fasting **10**  
   chemical control of gastric acidity/volume 11  
   children 817  
   delayed gastric emptying 10  
   gastric physiology 10  
   guidelines 10  
 fat embolism syndrome 468  
 favism 214, 310  
 FBC 55  
   chronic liver disease 144  
   CRF 129  
   cystoscopic procedures 592  
   gastrinoma 179  
   obstructive sleep apnoea 123  
   RA 193  
   spinal cord lesions 252  
   thyroid disease 165  
   thyroidectomy 581  
 Feltz's syndrome 193, 308  
 femoral neck fracture *see* NOF  
 femoral nerve block 1160  
 femoral osteotomy 853  
 femorodistal bypass 456  
 femorofemoral crossover graft 456  
 femoropopliteal bypass 456  
 femur, neck fracture 508, **508**, 511  
 fentanyl 112, 1094, 1212  
   children 833  
   in CRF 132  
   dosage 1095  
   drug interactions 248  
   intrathecal 1104  
   in liver failure 146  
   in porphyria 212  
   transdermal 1097  
 ferritin 1273  
 fetus, effect of general anaesthesia on 765  
 FEV<sub>1</sub> 102, 1264  
   cystic fibrosis 118  
 FEV<sub>1</sub>/FVC ratio 102  
 FFP 234, 1066–8  
 fiberoptic  
   bronchoscopy 229, 373, 400  
 fiberoptic laryngoscopy 983  
 fibrinogen 219  
 fibrinolytics 229  
 fibrodysplasia ossificans progressiva 308  
 fibromatosis 308  
 fistula  
   bronchopleural 390  
   tracheo-oesophageal 840  
 flecainide 1212  
   AF 86  
 flow volume loops 102  
 flucloxacillin 1212  
 fludrocortisone 171  
 fluid balance 1080  
   neonates 804–5  
   postoperative 104  
 fluid compartments 1080  
 fluid management 544, 1080  
   causes of fluid loss 544  
   children 805  
   colloids 1084–5  
   crystalloids 1083, 1085  
   dehydration 1082  
   glucose solutions *see* glucose solutions  
   liver resection 577  
   neonates 808  
   postoperative paralytic ileus 544  
   septic shock 899  
   trauma 867  
 flumazenil 1213  
 fluoxetine 248  
 fluticasone 111  
 folate 1273  
   red cell 1273  
 fondaparinux 226, 1213  
 Fontan procedure 79  
 foot surgery 482–3  
 Forbes' disease 310  
 forced vital capacity *see* FVC  
 foreign body  
   inhaled 854  
   nose 662  
   tracheobronchial 662  
 forest plot 38, 40  
 fosphenytoin 242, 1213  
 fractures  
   cervical spine 500, 502  
   femoral neck 508, **508**, 511  
   limbs 504  
   mandibular 675  
   nose 662  
   pelvic 880  
   vertebral 487  
   zygomatic complex 674  
 Fraser syndrome 308  
 FRC 1266  
   anaesthesia effects 98  
 free flap surgery 524, **524**  
 Freeman-Sheldon syndrome 308  
 fresh frozen plasma *see* FFP  
 Friedreich's ataxia 308  
 Frova intubating stylet 982  
 functional capacity (METs) 47  
 functional residual capacity *see* FRC  
 fundoplication 400  
 furosemide 1214  
 FVC 102, 1264  
   spinal cord lesions 252
- ## G
- G6PD deficiency 214, 310  
 Gaisbock's syndrome 309  
 gallamine 212  
 gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase 145, 1273  
 Gardner's syndrome 309  
 gas embolism 932  
 gas insufflation 555  
 gas laws 1267  
 gases, medical 1248  
 gastrectomy 545  
 gastric acidity, chemical control 11  
 gastric contents, pulmonary aspiration 10  
 gastric physiology 10  
 gastric volume, chemical control 11  
 gastrinoma 179  
 gastrointestinal effects of obesity 188  
 gastrointestinal secretions 1083  
 gastroschisis 838  
 Gaucher's disease 309  
 Gay-Lussac's law 1267  
 gelatins 1084  
 Gelofusine 1087  
 general anaesthesia  
   Caesarean section 764  
   ophthalmic surgery 681, 690  
   *see also individual procedures*  
 gentamicin 1214  
   surgical prophylaxis 340, 1212  
 Gilbert's disease 148, 309  
 ginkgo 1014  
 ginseng 1014  
 Glanzmann's disease 309  
 Glasgow Coma Scale 873, 1270  
 glaucoma drainage 696  
 glioma 420  
 glomerular filtration rate 128, 1273  
 glomus jugulare tumours 309  
 glucagon 1214  
 glucagonoma 180, 309

glucose potassium insulin regime (GKI) 159–60  
 glucose solutions 1084,  
   1087, 1214  
   dose in children 968  
   dose in  
     hypoglycaemia 157  
   hyperbaric LA 1127  
   and hypercapnia 408  
 glucose sodium chloride  
   solutions 1087  
 glycated haemoglobin 157,  
   1273  
 glyceryl trinitrate 1243  
   infusion 1243  
 glycogen storage  
   diseases 310  
 glycoprotein IIb/IIIa  
   inhibitors 229  
 glycopyrrolate see  
   glycopyrronium  
 glycopyrronium 1215  
   children 818  
   in porphyria 212  
 gold 194  
 Goldenhar syndrome 310  
 Goltz-Gorlin syndrome 310  
 good practice 2  
 Goodpasture's  
   syndrome 310  
 Gorham syndrome 311  
 graduated compression  
   stockings 13, 672  
 grafting see skin grafting  
 graft versus host  
   disease 1068  
 granisetron 249, 1116, 1215  
 grommet insertion 640  
 growth hormone 1273  
 GTN see glyceryl trinitrate  
 Guedel airway see  
   oropharyngeal airway  
 Guillain-Barré  
   syndrome **264**  
 gum elastic bougie 982  
 gynaecological surgery **613**  
   abdominal  
     hysterectomy 622  
   ectopic pregnancy 626  
   ERPC/STOP/VTOP 616  
   laparoscopy/laparoscopic  
     sterilisation 618  
   minor procedures 615  
   tension-free vaginal  
     tape 620  
   vaginal hysterectomy 624  
 gynaecomastia 532

## H

H<sub>2</sub> antagonists 194  
 haemangioblastoma 420  
 haematocrit see Hct

haematological  
   disorders **203**  
   anaemia see anaemia  
   coagulation disorders 216  
   hypercoagulability  
     syndromes 236  
   leukaemia 182, 236  
   management 234  
   porphyria 210  
   sickle cell disease 206  
   thrombocytopenia 220  
 haematological values  
   elderly patients 730  
   normal values 1272  
 haematoma,  
   intracranial 412, **412**  
 haemochromatosis 311  
 haemodialysis 134  
 haemodynamic  
   variables 1268  
 haemoglobin 1272  
   in anaemia 204  
   glycated 157, 1273  
   mean cell 1272  
   in polycythaemia 236  
   in sickle cell  
     disease 207–8  
 haemolytic uraemic  
   syndrome 311  
 haemophilia 218–19  
 haemorrhage  
   acute 1070  
   hypovolaemic shock 866  
   management of 234  
   massive obstetric 774  
   post-tonsillectomy/  
     adenoidectomy 643  
   subarachnoid **426**  
 haemorrhagic  
   telangiectasia 311  
 haemorrhoidectomy 564  
 haemostatic drug  
   therapy 232  
 Hagen-Poiseuille law 1271  
 Hallermann-Streiff  
   syndrome 311  
 Hallervorden-Spatz  
   disease 311  
 hallucinogens 290  
 haloperidol 288, 1216  
 halothane 112, 212  
   children 820  
   in CRF 132  
   in liver failure 146  
   MAC 1250  
   in porphyria 212  
   in pregnancy 792  
 halothane hepatitis 149  
 hand surgery 494, 496  
 Hand-Schüller-Christian  
   disease 311  
 Hartmann's procedure 545  
 Hartmann's solution 1087  
   contraindication in  
     hyperkalaemia 185  
 Hartnup disease 311  
 Hay-Wells syndrome 312  
 HbA1c see glycated  
   haemoglobin  
 Hct 426, 437–8, 524,  
   531, 574  
 HDU admission 106, 121  
   AAA repair 444, 446  
   adrenal crisis 171  
   apudoma 179  
   asthma 112  
   bronchopleural fistula 391  
   cystectomy 602  
   HELLP syndrome 788  
   hypertension 58  
   ischaemic heart  
     disease 51  
   liver resection 578  
   lung volume reduction  
     surgery 387  
   massive obstetric  
     haemorrhage 774  
   maxillary/mandibular  
     osteotomy 673  
   oesophagectomy 395  
   perioperative MI 52  
   phaeochromocytoma 589  
   sick laparotomy 549  
   sleep apnoea  
     syndrome 123  
   spinal surgery 485  
   thymectomy 258  
   TURP syndrome 596  
   vascular lesions 429  
   see also *individual medical  
     conditions*  
 head injuries 872  
   Glasgow Coma Scale 873  
   imaging 414, 874  
   intubation/ventilation 872,  
     874  
   management 413–14  
   seizures 874  
   neurosurgical unit  
     referral 874  
   transfer 875  
   see also *neurosurgery*  
 hearing aids, bone-  
   anchored 662  
 heart  
   myocardial contusion 876  
   myocardial oxygen  
     supply 332  
   transplanted **74**  
   see also *cardiac*  
 heart block **90**  
   bifascicular 91  
   bundle branch block 90  
   first-degree 90  
   intraoperative 92  
   management 91

- heart block (*cont.*)
  - second-degree (2:1 type) 90
  - second-degree (Mobitz type I, Wenkebach) 90
  - second-degree (Mobitz type II) 90
  - third-degree 90
  - trifascicular 91
- heart disease *see* cardiovascular disease
- heart failure **54**
  - medical management 54
  - perioperative management 55
  - preoperative assessment 54
  - special investigations 55
- heart murmurs
  - children 816
  - undiagnosed 70
- heart rate 802
- Hecht-Beals syndrome 312
- helium 1248
- helium-neon laser 710
- HELLP syndrome 788
- hemicolectomy 545
- laparoscopic 560
- heminephrectomy 600, **600**
- Henderson-Hasselbalch equation 1271
- Henoch-Schönlein purpura 312
- heparin **206**, 219
  - DVT prophylaxis 13
  - infusion 1243
  - LMWH 13, 219, 226
  - unfractionated 219, 1216
  - low-dose 13
- heparin-induced thrombocytopenia 226
- hepatic disease *see* liver disease
- hepatic encephalopathy 140
- hepatitis
  - alcoholic 286
  - halothane-induced 149
  - HBV 129, 1016, 1066
  - HCV 129, 1016, 1066
  - and liver disease 141–2
- hepatocellular injury 148
- hepatolenticular degeneration 312
- hepatorenal syndrome **150**
- herbal medicines 1014
- hereditary
  - coproporphyrria 210
- hereditary spherocytosis 214
- hernia repair *see* herniotomy
- herniotomy 844
- heroin 290
- HES 1084, 1087
- hiatus hernia repair 400
- hibernating myocardium 55
- Hickman line, removal of 1044
- hip replacement *see* THR
- hirudins 226
- histiocytosis-X 316
- HOCM 72
- Holt-Oram syndrome 312
- homocystinuria 312
- HPA *see* hypothalamo-pituitary axis
- HPA suppression 172
- HRT, and venous thromboembolism 15
- human albumin
  - solution 1084, 1087
- Humphrey ADE system 813
- Hunter syndrome 319
- Huntington's chorea 312
- Hurler syndrome 312, 319
- hyaluronidase 688, 1216
  - regional anaesthesia 1127
- hydralazine 1216
  - in porphyria 212
  - in pre-eclampsia 783
- hydrocephalus 427
- hydrocortisone 1217
  - Addison's disease 171
  - equivalent prednisolone dosage 173
  - thyroid storm 165
- hydrofluoric acid burns 888
- hydromorphone 1217
- hydroxyethylstarch *see* HES
- hyoscine
  - butylbromide 1217
- hyoscine hydrobromide 1116, 1217
- hypercalcaemia 584
  - sarcoidosis 124
- hypercalcaemic crisis 168
- hypercapnia 98, 350, 680
  - avoidance of 681
  - and arrhythmias 936
  - permissive 386, 937
  - ventilatory response to 728
- hyperchloraemic acidosis 549, 867
- hypercoagulability syndromes **236**
  - antiphospholipid syndrome 237
  - essential
    - thrombocythaemia 236
    - polycythaemia 236
- hyperglycaemia 156
- brainstem death 436
- carcinoid syndrome 178
- glucose-containing solutions causing 408
- VIPoma 180
- hyperinsulinism, congenital 320
- hyperkalaemia **184**
- hypernatraemia **187**
- hyperparathyroidism 168
  - secondary 168
  - tertiary 169
- hypertension **58**
  - autonomic dysreflexia 250
  - definition 782
  - perioperative management 58
  - pregnancy 782
    - anaesthesia for Caesarean section 785
  - analgesia for vaginal delivery 784
  - pathophysiology 782
  - preoperative assessment 58
  - severe 924
- hyperthermia, malignant *see* MH
- hyperthyroidism 164
- hypertonic saline 1086
- hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy *see* HOCM
- hyperuricaemia 316
- hyperviscosity syndrome 312
- hypocalcaemia 583
- hypoglycaemia 140, 157
- hypokalaemia **182**
- hypokalaemic familial periodic paralysis 313
- hyponatraemia **186**
  - postoperative 809
  - TURP syndrome 596
- hypoparathyroidism 169
- hypoplastic left heart syndrome 313
- hypospadias 532, 848
- hypotension
  - induced 428
  - obstetric anaesthesia 763
  - post-epidural 746
  - preload 763
  - pressor agents 763
  - severe 922
- hypothermia 542
  - management 1031
  - see also* temperature control
- hypothyroid coma 165
- hypothyroidism 164
- hypoventilation, alveolar 297
- hypovolaemia
  - clinical assessment 808–9
  - management 866

- hypovolaemic shock 866  
hypoxia 926, **926**  
  differential diagnosis 927  
  immediate  
    management 928  
  risk factors 927  
hysterectomy  
  abdominal 622  
  vaginal 624  
  Wertheim's 623
- I**
- IABP 341, 345, 349  
ibuprofen 1093, 1218  
  children 828  
  efficacy 1098  
  tooth extractions 677  
ichthyosis 313  
ICP 404  
  anaesthesia 406  
  decreasing 406  
  measuring 405  
  raised 404–5  
  management 875  
ICU  
  postoperative  
    admission 106, 552  
    AAA repair 444, 446, 448  
    acromegaly 162  
    Addisonian crisis 171  
    apudoma 179  
    bronchopleural  
      fistula 391  
    chest injury 396  
    diabetes mellitus 159  
    head injury 413–14  
    lung volume reduction  
      surgery 387  
    neuroleptic malignant  
      syndrome 286  
    sick laparotomy 549  
    sleep apnoea  
      syndrome 123  
    vascular lesions 429  
  transfer to operating  
    room 900  
  see also HDU admission;  
  and individual medical  
  conditions  
IDDM 156, 158  
  see also diabetes mellitus  
idiopathic  
  thrombocytopenic  
  purpura 313  
iliohypogastric nerve  
  block 834  
ilioinguinal nerve block 834  
ILMA  
  difficult intubation 982–3  
  neonates 810–11  
imipenem 1218  
  surgical prophylaxis 1212  
immunosuppression 74  
implantable cardioverter  
  defibrillators 95  
  anaesthesia for 362  
  HRS/HRSUK codes 95  
indometacin 1218  
induction of anaesthesia  
  children 820  
  inhalational 820  
  IV 821  
  parents in anaesthetic  
    room 819  
  rapid sequence 825  
inhalational 998  
  children 820  
  pregnancy 790  
  IV 821  
  pregnancy 790  
  rapid sequence 994  
  children 825  
  failed intubation 995, 997  
  septic shock 898  
  septic shock 898  
  TCI 1021  
infants  
  blood volume 803  
  definition of 800  
  physiology 800  
  premature 800  
  see also children  
infection  
  MRSA 284, 340, 1258  
  respiratory tract 107  
  children 815  
  spinal, post-epidural 1105  
infiltration anaesthesia 688  
infiximab 194  
infusions see IV infusions  
inguinal field block 1153  
inguinal hernia repair 563  
inhalational analgesia 1094  
inhalational induction 998  
inhaled foreign body 854  
inotropes 54  
  septic shock 899  
INR 145, 1272  
  coagulation disorders 219  
  CRF 129  
  warfarin therapy 222  
inspiratory reserve  
  volume 1266  
insulin 438, 1218  
  infusion 159, 1242–6  
  QDS SC regime 159  
  resistance 188  
  insulin tolerance test 173  
  insulinoma 180  
intensive care unit see ICU  
intercostal nerve  
  block 1151  
interincisor gap 972  
intermittent pneumatic  
  compression devices 14  
internal warming 543  
international normalised  
  ratio see INR  
interscalene brachial plexus  
  block 1138  
interventional radiology  
  anaesthesia for 724  
  arteriovenous  
    malformations 431  
  intracranial  
    aneurysms 430  
  intra-arterial injection 950  
intraaortic balloon pump  
  see IABP  
intracranial aneurysms 424  
  interventional  
    radiology 430  
intracranial  
  haematoma 412, **412**  
intracranial pressure  
  see ICP  
intraocular pressure see IOP  
intraosseous access 821  
Intralipid 1219  
intraocular lens  
  implantation 693  
intraoperative cell  
  salvage 1073  
intraoperative monitoring  
  brain activity 1050  
  burns patients 885  
  colorectal surgery 538  
  depth of anaesthesia 1050  
  neuromuscular 1057,  
  1059  
  oesophageal Doppler see  
  oesophageal Doppler  
  monitor  
  regional anaesthesia/  
  analgesia 1122  
  sick laparotomy 550  
intravenous fluids see  
  IV fluids  
intrinsic parenchymal lung  
  disease 120  
intubation 864  
  AFOI 974, **974**, 1000  
  can't intubate, can't  
    ventilate 986, 988  
  cricothyroidotomy 986  
  IV cannula 987  
  rescue techniques 986  
  surgical airway 987  
  children 811–12, 823  
  difficult 824  
  tube fixation 824  
  difficult 976  
  children 824  
  elective **982**, 983  
  extubation 1004  
  management 982  
  unanticipated 977, 997  
  failed see failed intubation



intubation (*cont.*)  
 head injuries 872, 874  
 misplaced tube 980  
 nasal see nasal intubation  
 neonates 811–12  
 retrograde 984  
 trauma 864, 868  
 see also airway  
 intussusception 843  
 IOP 680  
 IPPV 632  
 microlaryngoscopy 650  
 MRI anaesthesia 721  
 ipratropium 111  
 iron 1273  
 Isaacs' syndrome 313  
 ischaemic heart disease **46**  
 anaesthesia 51  
 CABG 48  
 cardiological referral 49  
 functional capacity 47  
 patient factors 47  
 PCI 48  
 perioperative medical  
 therapy 50  
 perioperative risk 46  
 perioperative testing 49  
 special investigations 47  
 surgical factors 47  
 isocarboxazid 284  
 isoflurane 112, 212  
 in CRF 132  
 in liver failure 146  
 MAC 1251  
 in porphyria 212  
 isoprenaline 1219  
 infusion 1243  
 ITU see ICU  
 IV induction 821  
 IV fluids 1087, 1242–7  
 balanced salt  
 solutions 1083  
 long-term see long-term  
 venous access  
 target-controlled 1020  
 trauma 867  
 see also fluid management

## J

jaundice, postoperative 148  
 Jehovah's Witnesses 1076  
 Jervell-Lange-Nielsen  
 syndrome 313  
 jet ventilation 650  
 Jeune's syndrome 314  
 Joubert syndrome 314  
 junctional tachycardia 85

## K

Kartagener's syndrome 314  
 kava-kava 1014

Kawasaki disease 314  
 Kearns-Sayre syndrome 314  
 Kenny-Caffey  
 syndrome 314  
 keratoconjunctivitis  
 sicca 326  
 keratoplasty,  
 penetrating 696  
 ketamine 112, 288, 290,  
 1219  
 children 818, 821, 833, 858  
 in CRF 132  
 dose 968  
 in epilepsy 241  
 infusion 1243  
 in porphyria 212  
 regional anaesthesia 1127  
 restrictive  
 cardiomyopathy 72  
 TIVA 1036  
 ketoacidosis  
 alcoholic 280  
 diabetic 157, 549, 898  
 ketorolac 1093, 1219  
 efficacy 1098  
 in porphyria 212  
 kidney  
 nephrectomy/  
 heminephrectomy  
 600, **600**  
 transplantation 608  
 anaesthesia 135  
 transplanted 135  
 kidney disease **127**  
 elderly patients 728  
 raised creatinine 128  
 see also ARF; CRF  
 kidney stones  
 extracorporeal shock  
 wave lithotripsy 607  
 percutaneous  
 removal 606  
 kinetic anaesthesia 684  
 King-Denborough  
 syndrome 274, 314  
 Kinnier-Wilson disease 312  
 Klinefelter syndrome 314  
 Klippel-Feil syndrome 315  
 Klippel-Trenaunay  
 syndrome 315  
 knee replacement see TKR  
 Kneist syndrome 315  
 kyphoscoliosis, surgery 487

## L

labetalol 783, 1220  
 labour and delivery 738  
 epidural analgesia **740**  
 complications 746  
 CSE 741  
 poorly functioning 744  
 walking 741

feeding in 796  
 regional anaesthesia  
 738–9  
 remifentanyl 752  
 see also Caesarean section  
 lansoprazole 1220  
 laparoscopy 554, **554**  
 cholecystectomy 558  
 gas insufflation 555  
 gynaecological surgery 618  
 hemicolectomy/anterior  
 resection 560  
 patient positioning 555  
 perioperative care 556  
 pneumoperitoneum 554  
 postoperative care 557  
 preoperative  
 assessment 556  
 robot-assisted 605  
 sterilisation 618  
 surgical requirements 554  
 trauma 556  
 urological procedures 604  
 laparotomy 628  
 epidural analgesia 540  
 sick patient 548  
 Laplace's law for  
 sphere 1271  
 Larsen's syndrome 315  
 laryngeal mask airway see  
 LMA  
 laryngeal view 971  
 laryngectomy 654  
 laryngoscopy  
 children 662, 811  
 fiberoptic 983  
 microlaryngoscopy 650,  
**650**  
 laryngospasm 978  
 in children 822–3  
 severe 930  
 laryngotracheobronchitis,  
 acute 856  
 LAs  
 accidental IV injection 747  
 day surgery 705  
 in myasthenia gravis 259  
 ophthalmic surgery 688  
 regional anaesthesia 1124,  
 1136  
 topical 1126  
 toxicity 1182, 1184  
 see also individual LAs  
 laser surgery **709**  
 laser wavelength/  
 colour 710  
 safety 712  
 lasers 710  
 latex allergy 1010  
 anaphylaxis  
 prevention 1011  
 classification of  
 reaction 1010

- high-risk individuals 1010
- hospital policy 1012
- Laurence-Moon syndrome 315
- LCNT block 1160
- Leber's hereditary optic neuropathy 315
- legal proceedings
  - complaints 1027
  - death on operating table 1025
- Leigh syndrome 315
- LEOPARD syndrome 316
- lepirudin 226
- leprechaunism 316
- Lesch-Nyhan syndrome 316
- Letterer-Siwe disease 316
- leukaemia 182, 236
- levels of evidence 36
- levobupivacaine 1125, 1220
  - epidural analgesia 541
  - regional anaesthesia 1124–5
- LFT 55, 145, 1264
  - carcinoid syndrome 178
  - chronic liver disease 144
  - RA 193
- lidocaine 1125, 1220
  - in CRF 132
  - dose in children 968
  - infusion 1243
  - in liver failure 146
  - ophthalmic surgery 688
  - in porphyria 212
  - regional anaesthesia 1124–5
  - spinal anaesthesia 769
  - VT 88
- lignocaine see lidocaine
- limb fractures 504
  - femoral neck 508, **508**, 511
  - ORIF 480–1
- limb injuries 883
- linezolid 284
- liothyronine 438, 1273
- lipodystrophy 316
- lipoproteins 1273
- liposuction 528
- lisuride 246
- lithium 286
- lithotripsy, extracorporeal
  - shock wave 607
- liver disease **139**
  - acute 141
  - alcoholic 280
  - anaesthetic management 144
  - Child's classification 142
  - chronic 142
  - coagulation disorders 219
  - complications 140
  - drug metabolism 143
  - elderly patients 729
  - hepatic encephalopathy 140
  - portal hypertension 152
  - postoperative 148
  - safe drugs 146
- liver function tests see LFT
- liver resection 576
  - fluid management 577
- liver transplantation 572, **572**
- LMA 632
  - children 810–11
  - difficult, prediction of 973
  - failed 978
  - ophthalmic surgery 690
- LMWH 13, 219, 226
- lobectomy, pulmonary 382
- local anaesthetics see LAs
- long QT syndrome 316
- long-term venous access **1040**
  - aftercare 1043
  - catheter tip position 1043
  - complications 1044
  - critical care 1044
  - devices 1040–1
  - insertion 1042
  - ports 1042
  - site of access 1041
  - ultrasound guidance 1042
- loop colostomy
  - closure 545
- loop ileostomy closure 545
- loratidine 1221
- lorazepam 212, 1221
  - dose in children 968
  - in liver failure 146
  - in porphyria 212
  - seizure management 874
- lormetazepam 132, 1221
- low birth weight 800
- low molecular weight heparin see LMWH
- Lowe syndrome 316
- lower limb
  - arthroscopic procedures 478
  - nerve blocks 1158
  - ankle block 1165
  - femoral nerve block 1160
  - LCNT block 1160
  - lumbar plexus block 1158
  - popliteal sciatic nerve block 1163
  - saphenous nerve block 1164
  - sciatic nerve block 1161
- LP 220
- LSCS 769
  - see also Caesarean section
- LSD 290
- Lugol's iodine 164–5
- lumbar plexus block 1158
- lumbar puncture see LP
- lung(s)
  - biopsy 400
  - compliance 801
  - isolation of 370
  - resection 366
  - resistance 801
  - surgery 382
  - transplanted 125
  - see also pulmonary disease
- lung disease
  - intrinsic parenchymal 120
  - see also respiratory disease
- lung surgery
  - bullectomy 386, **386**
  - empyema drainage and decortication 388
  - lobectomy 382
  - pneumonectomy 382
  - wedge resection 382
- lung volumes 1266
  - alveolar 1271
- lung volume reduction surgery 386, **386**
- lupus anticoagulant 219
- LV pressure 1268
- LVH 64, 174, 176, 584
- lymphocyte count 1272

## M

- MAC 693, 1050, 1250
  - age-related 729
  - children 803
  - elderly patients 729
  - factors affecting 1051
- McArdle's disease 310
- McCune-Albright syndrome 296
- Maffucci syndrome 317
- magnesium 1273
  - daily requirement 1080
  - dose in children 968
  - in porphyria 212
  - pre-eclampsia 783
- magnesium sulphate 1221
- magnetic resonance imaging
  - see MRI
- maintenance of anaesthesia
  - children 825
  - TCI 1021
  - see also individual procedures
- major trauma **498**
- malignant hyperthermia
  - see MH
- mandibular fractures 675
- mandibular protrusion 972
- mandibulofacial dysostosis 317

- mannitol 1222  
 manual in-line neck stabilisation 500  
 MAO B inhibitors 246  
 MAOIs 284, **284**  
   anaesthesia 284  
   drug interactions 285  
   preoperative withdrawal 284  
   reversible 284  
 MAP 336, 1268  
 maple syrup urine disease 317  
 Mapleson  
   classification 1262–3  
 marble bone disease 296  
 Marchiafava-Micheli syndrome 317  
 Marfan's syndrome 317  
 Maroteaux-Lamy syndrome 319  
 Marshall-Smith syndrome 318  
 masseter muscle spasm 271  
 massive obstetric haemorrhage 774, 776  
 massive transfusion 1075  
 mastoidectomy 662  
 maxillary/mandibular osteotomy 672  
 maxillofacial/dental surgery **667**  
   anaesthesia 668  
   cardiac arrhythmias 669  
   extraction of impacted/buried teeth 670  
   extubation 668  
   free-flap surgery 669  
   mandibular fractures 675  
   osteotomy 672  
   zygomatic complex fractures 674  
   see also dental procedures  
 MCV 204, 1272  
 mean arterial pressure see MAP  
 mean cell haemoglobin 1272  
 mean cell volume see MCV  
 mean pulmonary wedge pressure 1268  
 mechanical ventilation 813  
   see also IPPV  
 Meckel's syndrome 318  
 mediastinoscopy 380  
 medical air 1248  
 Medical Emergency Response Team 1032  
 medical gases 1248  
 medulloblastoma 420  
 Meig's syndrome 318  
 MEN 168, 178  
 meningioma 420  
 Menkes' disease 318  
 Mental Capacity Act (2005) 278  
 mental capacity advocacy service 18  
 Mental Health Act (1983) 278  
 meperidine see pethidine  
 mepivacaine 212  
 MERRF syndrome 318  
 meta-analysis 38, **38**  
 metabolic disease see endocrine/metabolic disease  
 metabolic equivalents of task 47  
 metabolic storm 271  
 metaraminol 1222  
 methadone 1110  
 methaemoglobin 214, 236, 818, 927  
 methohexital 1222  
   in epilepsy 241  
 methotrexate 194  
 methylene blue see methylthionium chloride  
 methylprednisolone 438  
   equivalent prednisolone dosage 173  
 methylthionium chloride 284, 1222  
 metoclopramide 11, 766, 1116, 1223  
   drug interactions 248  
   in epilepsy 241  
   in porphyria 212  
 metoprolol 1223  
   AF 86  
   tachycardia 85  
 metronidazole 1223  
   surgical prophylaxis 1212  
 METs (exercise) 47  
 metyrosine 587  
 MH **270, 946, 946**  
   anaesthesia 272, 274  
   associated conditions 274  
   masseter muscle spasm 271  
   obstetric patients 273  
   susceptibility to 272, 274  
   treatment 946–7  
 MI, perioperative 46, 52, **52**  
 microlaryngeal tube 650  
 microlaryngoscopy 650, **650**  
   ventilation 650  
 mid-humeral block 1144  
 midazolam 112, 288, 1224  
   children 818, 858  
   in CRF 132  
   dental sedation 678  
   in liver failure 146  
   peribulbar block 686  
   in porphyria 210, 212  
 Mikulicz's syndrome 318  
 military anaesthesia 1029  
   TIVA 1036  
 Miller's syndrome 318  
 milrinone 1224  
   infusion 1243  
 minimum alveolar concentration see MAC  
 minute ventilation 1266  
 misoprostol 776  
 mitral valve prolapse 69  
   replacement MR 352  
   stenosis 350  
 regurgitation **68**  
   haemodynamic goals 68  
   perioperative care 68  
   valve replacement 352  
 stenosis 66, **66**  
   haemodynamic goals 67  
   perioperative care 67  
   valve replacement 350  
 mivacurium 1224  
   infusion 1243  
   in porphyria 212  
 mixed venous blood gases 1264  
 Mobitz heart block 90  
 moclobemide 284  
 Moebius syndrome 318  
 Moh's reconstruction 699  
 monitoring, intraoperative  
   see intraoperative monitoring  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitor see MAOI  
 monocyte count 1272  
 montelukast 111  
 morbidity, perioperative **28, 30**  
 morphine 1094, 1225  
   abuse 290  
   children 828  
   in CRF 132  
   dosage 1095  
   efficacy 1098  
   infusion 1243  
   intrathecal 1104  
   in liver failure 146  
   in porphyria 212  
 Morquio syndrome 318–19  
 mortality, perioperative **27, 30**  
 Moschcowitz disease 319  
 motor neuron disease **265, 297**  
 Mounier-Kuhn syndrome 319  
 moyamoya disease 319  
 MRI  
   anaesthesia for 716, 720  
   equipment 721

cardiac arrest during 723  
hazards 720  
practical  
  considerations 721  
  safety aspects 722  
MRSA 284, 340, 1258  
MUA 504, 662  
mucopolysaccharidoses 319  
multiple myeloma 319  
multiple sclerosis **262**  
muscle relaxants 1050  
  choice of 1056  
  non-depolarising 1056  
  see also NMB; and individual drugs  
muscular dystrophy **268**  
  Duchenne's 268  
myasthenia gravis **256**  
  drugs in 259  
myasthenic syndrome 320  
myocardial infarction 876  
myocardial infarction see MI  
myocardial oxygen supply 278  
myomectomy 628  
myotonia congenita 267, 320  
myringoplasty 646

## N

Nager syndrome 320  
naloxone 1094, 1225  
  dose in children 968  
  infusion 1243  
  in porphyria 212  
naltrexone 1110  
Nance-Insley syndrome 320  
naproxen 1225  
narrow complex arrhythmias **84**  
  AF 86  
  atrial ectopics 84  
  atrial flutter/tachycardia 85  
  junctional/AV nodal/SVT 85  
  re-entry 84  
  sick sinus syndrome 85  
  sinus arrhythmia 84  
  sinus bradycardia 84  
  tachycardia 918  
    sinus 84  
nasal cavity surgery 648  
nasal intubation 80, 328  
  awake 502  
  contraindication to 675  
  neonatal 823  
  oral/maxillofacial surgery 668  
nasal vasoconstrictors 634  
nasogastric tube 157, 249, 256, 394, 515, 572  
neonates 823  
  see also nasal intubation  
nasopharyngeal airway 810  
National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence see NICE  
nausea and vomiting see PONV  
Nd-YAG laser 710, 713  
neck  
  nerve blocks  
    deep cervical plexus block 1137  
    superficial cervical plexus block 1136  
  radical dissection 658  
neck of femur fracture see NOF  
needle-based blocks  
  in ophthalmic anaesthesia 684  
needles  
  for regional anaesthesia 1133  
  pencil-point needles for spinal anaesthesia 1133  
  Tuohy needle 1133  
nemaline myopathy 320  
neonates  
  anaesthetic equipment 810  
  blood volume 803  
  cardiovascular function 801–2  
  central nervous system 803  
  conservation of heat loss 804  
  definition 800  
  fluid balance 804–5  
  fluid requirements 805  
  fluid resuscitation 808  
  gastrointestinal function 802  
  haematology 803  
  physiology 800  
  renal function 802  
  respiratory function 800–1  
  resuscitation 958–9  
  thermoregulation 803  
  weight 803  
  see also children  
neostigmine 259, 1226  
  dose in children 968  
  in porphyria 212  
  reversal of NMB 1058  
nephrectomy 600, **600**  
nerve blocks see regional anaesthesia  
nerve injury 1178  
Nesbitt's procedure 610  
nesidioblastosis 320  
neuraxial anaesthesia 253  
neuraxial nerve blocks 1168  
  caudal block 830–1, 1172  
  epidural block 832, 1169  
  spinal block 832, 1168–9  
neurofibromatosis 320  
neuroleptic malignant syndrome 286  
neurological deficit  
  burns patients 885  
  delayed 426  
  elderly patients 729  
  epidural analgesia 747  
neurological disorders **239**  
neurological risk factors 30  
neuromuscular blockade see NMB  
neuromuscular monitoring 1057  
  modes of stimulation 1057, 1059  
neuropathic pain 1111  
neurosurgery **403**  
  anaesthesia 428  
  aneurysmal SAH 426  
  craniotomy 408  
  awake 422  
  pituitary surgery 416  
  posterior fossa surgery 418  
  traumatic intracranial haematoma 412  
  vascular lesions 424  
  venous air embolism 432  
  ventriculo-peritoneal shunt 410  
neurosurgical unit 874–5, 1260  
neutrophil count 1272  
NIBP 129, 252, 272, 274, 442, 885  
nicardipine 587  
NICE 44  
NIDDM 156, 158  
  see also diabetes mellitus  
Niemann-Pick disease 321  
nifedipine 783  
  in porphyria 212  
nimodipine 1226  
  delayed neurological deficit 426  
  infusion 1243  
nitrates  
  heart failure 54  
  ischaemic heart disease 50  
nitrazepam 212  
nitroprusside see sodium nitroprusside

- nitrous oxide 42, 212, 1248  
 in liver failure 146  
 MAC 1250  
 ophthalmic surgery 691  
 in porphyria 212  
 postoperative  
   complications 42  
 NMB 1054  
   choice of relaxant 1056  
   in epilepsy 241  
   in myasthenia gravis 259  
   in porphyria 210  
   reversal 1058  
   unsuccessful 952  
   see also *individual drugs*  
 NOF 508, **508**, 511  
 non-depolarising muscle  
   relaxants 1056  
 non-steroidal anti-  
   inflammatory drugs see  
   NSAIDs  
 Noonan's syndrome 321  
 noradrenaline 1227  
   infusion 1243  
 norepinephrine see  
   noradrenaline  
 normal sodium  
   chloride 1087  
 normal values 1272  
 nose  
   foreign body 662  
   fractures 662  
   rhinectomy 662  
   rhinoplasty 662  
   see also *nasal*  
 NSAIDs 1092  
   and breast feeding 771  
   contraindications 1093  
   coagulation  
     disorders 218  
   CRF 132  
   in liver failure 146  
   postoperative analgesia 767  
   in pregnancy 792  
   RA 194  
   vs. COX-2 inhibitors 1093
- O**
- obesity **188**  
 anaesthesia 189  
 cardiovascular 188  
 gastrointestinal 188  
 pharmacokinetic  
   aspects 189  
 postoperative care 190  
 preoperative  
   assessment 189  
   respiratory 188  
 obstetric anaesthesia/  
   analgesia **735**, 769  
 amniotic fluid  
   embolism 777
- breast feeding and drug  
 transfer 770  
 Caesarean section see  
   Caesarean section  
 cervical cerclage 794  
 hypotension 763  
 labour and delivery 738  
   analgesia 738  
   epidural analgesia see  
   epidural analgesia  
   feeding in 796  
   regional  
   anaesthesia 738–9  
   remifentanyl 752  
 malignant hyperthermia 273  
 massive haemorrhage 774  
 maternal  
   resuscitation 780  
 placenta accreta 772  
 placenta praevia 772  
 retained placenta 768  
 spinal cord lesions 254  
   see also *pregnancy*  
 obstructive sleep  
   apnoea 122, 638  
 obstruction, airway 990  
   preoperative 636  
 OCP  
   in porphyria 212  
   and venous  
   thromboembolism 15  
 octreotide 1227  
   carcinoid syndrome 179  
   infusion 1243  
 ocular blocks 686  
   peribulbar 684–6  
   retrobulbar 684  
   sub-Tenon's 685, 687  
 oculoauriculovertebral  
   syndrome 310  
 oculocerebrocutaneous  
   syndrome 304  
 oculocerebrorenal  
   syndrome 316  
 oculomedullary  
   reflexes 680  
 odds ratio 38  
 oesophageal Doppler  
   monitor 1046  
   action from readings 1048  
   cautions and  
   contraindications 1048  
   indications 1048  
   normal values 1047, 1269  
 oesophageal intubation 980  
 oesophageal pacing 92  
 oesophageal rupture 396,  
   878  
 oesophageal stents 400  
 oesophageal varices 152  
 oesophagectomy 394, **394**  
 oesophagoscopy 400  
 off-pump CABG 342
- omeprazole 1227  
 ondansetron 212, 249,  
   1116, 1227  
 Ondine's curse 297  
 one-lung ventilation 370, **376**  
   return to two-lung  
   ventilation 377  
 oophorectomy 628  
 operating table  
   deaths 1024  
 ophthalmic surgery **679**  
   anaesthesia 680  
   akinetiC 684  
   emergence from 691  
   general 690  
   general vs local 681  
   local anaesthetic  
   solutions 688  
   needle-based  
   blocks 684–5  
   supplementary local  
   block 691  
   topical/infiltration 688  
 anatomy 682  
 anterior segment  
   procedures 696  
 cataract extraction 693  
 dacryocystorhinostomy  
   532  
 ocular blocks 686  
   peribulbar block 684–6  
   retrobulbar block 684  
   sub-Tenon's block 685,  
   687  
 penetrating eye  
   injury 698  
 preoperative  
   assessment 681  
 strabismus 694  
 ventilation vs spontaneous  
   respiration 690  
 vitreo-retinal 695  
 opioid antagonists 1094  
 opioids 1094  
   abuse 288, 290  
   and breast feeding 771  
   dependence 1108  
   dosage 1095  
   misuse 290  
   postoperative  
   analgesia 767  
   regional anaesthesia 1127  
   routes of  
   administration 1096  
   intrathecal 1104  
   transdermal 1097  
   see also *individual drugs*  
 Opitz-Frias syndrome 321  
 opium 290  
 optical styles 984  
 Oramorph 828  
 orchidectomy 610  
 orchidopexy 847

- organ transplantation
  - beating heart
    - donors 436–8
  - cornea 496
  - kidney 608
  - liver 572, **572**
- ORIF 480–1
- oropharyngeal airway 810
- orphenadrine 246
- orthopaedic surgery **465**
  - ankle 480
  - arthroscopic lower limb
    - procedures 478
  - cement implantation
    - syndrome 469
  - compartment
    - syndrome 506
  - cruciate ligament
    - repair 479
  - elbow 492
  - fat embolism
    - syndrome 468
  - foot 482
  - fractures
    - cervical spine 500, 502
    - femoral neck 508, **508**, 511
    - limbs 504
    - mandibular 675
    - nose 662
    - pelvic 880
    - vertebral 487
    - zygomatic complex 674
  - hand 494
  - major trauma 498
  - regional anaesthesia 467
  - shoulder see shoulder surgery
  - spinal 484
  - THR 472
    - revision 475
  - TKR 476
  - tourniquets 470
- Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome 311
- OSMED 320
- osmolality 1273
- urine 1273
- osteogenesis
  - imperfecta 321
- osteopetrosis 321
- osteotomy
  - femoral 853
  - maxillary/mandibular 672
- oxybuprocaine 1227
- oxycodone 132, 1228
  - in CRF 132
- oxygen 1248
  - blood content 1271
  - consumption 801
  - postoperative 104
  - in septic shock 896
- oxygen flux 1271
- oxygen-helium mixture 992
- oxytocin 776, 1228
  - infusion 1243
- P**
- P waves 82
- PA pressure 334, 340, 350, 352, 1268
  - raised 352, 432
- pacemakers/
  - defibrillators 94, **94**
  - HRS/HRSUK codes 95
  - implantable cardioverter
    - defibrillators 95
  - implications 94
- pacing 92
- packed cell volume 1272
- packed red cells 1066
- PaCO<sub>2</sub> 104
- paediatric see children
- PAFC 341, 354, 436
- pain, acute **1089**
  - measurement 1090
  - neuropathic after
    - surgery 1111
  - tourniquet 471
    - see also analgesia
- pain ladder 1091
- pain management see analgesia
- pallidotomy 247
- pancuronium 112, 212, 1228
  - in CRF 132
  - in liver failure 146
  - in porphyria 212
- pantoprazole 1228
- PaO<sub>2</sub>, 104
  - restrictive pulmonary
    - disease 120
- palonosetron 1116
- paracetamol 1092, 1299
  - children 828
  - in CRF 128, 130
  - efficacy 1098
  - in liver failure 146
  - in porphyria 212
  - tooth extractions 677
- paradoxical air
  - embolism 433
- paraesthesia 1128
- paraldehyde 1229
  - dose in children 968
- paralytic ileus 544
- paramyotonia
  - congenita 267, 322
- parathyroid disorders **168**
  - hypercalcaemic crisis 168
  - hyperparathyroidism 168
  - hypoparathyroidism 169
- parathyroid hormone 1273
- parathyroidectomy 584, **584**
- parecoxib 1093, 1098, 1229
- Parkinson's disease **246**
  - anaesthesia 249
  - drug interactions 247–8
  - surgery for 247
    - treatment 246
- parotidectomy 660
- Patau's syndrome 322
- patent ductus arteriosus
  - see PDA
- patient controlled analgesia
  - see PCA
- patient position
  - laparoscopy 555
  - reverse Trendelenburg
    - 189, 577
  - spinal surgery 484, 487
    - see also individual procedures
- patient state index 1050
- patient transfer
  - aeromedical 902
  - battery life 903
  - burns 889
  - checklist 904
  - critical illness **902**
  - equipment and drugs 905
  - head injuries 875
  - oxygen reserves 903
  - transfer vehicle 902
- Patil test 973
- PAWP 1268
- PCA 1100
  - children 828
  - complications 1101
  - in CRF 130
  - troubleshooting 1101
- PCI 48
- PD see Parkinson's disease
- PDA 78, 841
- PE see venous thromboembolism
- peak expiratory flow rate
  - see PEFr
- peak flow see PEFr
- peak velocity 1046
- pectus carinatum 400
- pectus excavatum 400
- PEEP
  - one-lung ventilation 376
  - in septic shock 896
- PEFr 102, 1264
- pelvic fractures 880
- pemphigus vulgaris 322
- pencil-point needles for
  - spinal anaesthesia 1133
- Pendred's syndrome 322
- penetrating
  - keratoplasty 696
- penicillamine 194
- penicillin allergy 1258
- penile block 1154
  - dorsal nerve of penis 834
- pentazocine 212

- pergolide 246
- percutaneous coronary intervention see PCI
- peribulbar block 684–6
  - complications 687
  - relative contraindications 687
- pericarditis **71**
  - acute 71
  - constrictive 71
- perioperative blood transfusion 205
- perioperative morbidity 27, 30
- perioperative mortality **27, 30**
- peripheral nerve stimulators 1129
- peripheral
  - revascularisation 456
- peritoneal dialysis 134
- pethidine 112, 1094, 1229
  - in CRF 132
  - dosage 1095
  - drug interactions 248
  - efficacy 1098
  - intrathecal 1104
  - in liver failure 146
  - in porphyria 212
- Pfeiffer's syndrome 322
- phaeochromocytoma 586, **586**
  - pregnancy 589
  - severe hypertension 924
  - unexpected 589
- pharmacokinetics
  - liver disease 143
  - obesity 189
  - TCI 1020
- pharmacological stress testing 48
- pharyngeal pouch 322
  - endoscopic stapling 662
  - excision 662
- pharyngectomy 656
- pharyngo-laryngo-oesophagectomy 662
- pharyngoscopy 662
- phencyclidine 290
- phenelzine 284
- phenobarbital 242, 771
- phenothiazines 212
  - drug interactions 248
  - in epilepsy 241
- phenoxybenzamine 212
- phentolamine 1230
  - in porphyria 212
- phenylephrine 1230
  - infusion 1243
- phenylketonuria 322
- phenytoin 242, 1230
  - dose in children 968
  - infusion 1243
  - in porphyria 212
  - seizure management 874
- phosphate 1273
  - daily requirement 1080
- phosphorus burns 888
- physiotherapy 104
- PICCs 1040
- Pickwickian syndrome 122, 322
- Pierre-Robin syndrome 323
- pink puffers 114
- piperacurium 1231
- piperazine 248
- piroxicam 1231
- pituitary surgery 416, **416**
- placenta, retained 768
- placenta accreta 772
- placenta praevia 772
- plasma cholinesterase see pseudocholinesterase
- plastic surgery **513**
  - access to patient 514
  - analgesia 515
  - breast augmentation 520
  - breast reduction 518
  - correction of prominent ears 521
  - difficult airway 514
  - facelift (rhytidectomy) 522
  - free flap surgery 524
  - liposuction 528
  - long operations 515
  - regional anaesthesia 514
  - rhinoplasty 662
  - skin grafting 530
- platelet count 1272
  - coagulation disorders 219
- platelets 1066–7
- pleurectomy 361, 392
- pleurodesis 361, 392
- Plott's syndrome 323
- Plummer-Vinson syndrome 323
- pneumatosis cystoides intestinalis 323
- pneumonecrosis 382
- pneumoperitoneum 554
- pneumothorax 583
  - traumatic 865
- POCD see postoperative cognitive dysfunction
- polycythaemia 236
- Pompe's disease 310
- PONV **1113, 29**
  - children 827
  - day surgery 705
  - definition 1114
  - incidence 1114
  - management 1115–16
  - morbidity 1114
  - PD 249
  - prophylaxis 42
  - risk factors 1114
- popliteal sciatic nerve block 1163
- porphyria **210**
  - safe drugs 212
- porphyric crises 210
  - treatment 211
- portal hypertension 152
- positive pressure ventilation see IPPV
- positioning see patient position
- post-poliomyelitis syndrome 323
- post-tetanic count 1057
- posterior fossa surgery 418, **418, 420**
- postoperative cognitive dysfunction 732
- postoperative nausea and vomiting see PONV
- potassium 1273
  - daily requirement 1080
  - hyperkalaemia **184**
  - hypokalaemia **182**
- potassium chloride 1231
- potassium iodide 165
- Potter's syndrome 323
- PPI 11, 194
- Prader-Willi syndrome 323
- pramipexole 246
- prazosin 587
- pre-eclampsia 782
  - anaesthesia for Caesarean section 785
  - analgesia for vaginal delivery 784
  - definition 782
  - management 783
- preauricular sinus 532
- prednisolone 111, 172–3, 1231
  - steroid equivalents 173
- pregnancy
  - cardiac disease 778
  - eclampsia 782, **787**
  - ectopic 626
  - HELLP syndrome 788
  - hypertension 782
    - anaesthesia for Caesarean section 785
    - analgesia for vaginal delivery 784
  - pathophysiology 782
- phaeochromocytoma 589
- physiology/ pharmacology 736
- pre-eclampsia 782
- spinal cord lesions 254
- surgery during 790
  - analgesics 792

induction agents 791  
inhalational agents 792  
premedication 791  
teratogenicity of  
drugs 791  
termination 616  
premature infants 800  
premedication  
children 818  
vascular surgery 443  
see *also individual  
procedures and drugs*  
preoperative tests **8**  
by disease status 9  
by surgical grade and age 9  
surgical grades 8  
pressor agents 763  
pressure conversion 1265  
pretibial laceration 532  
prilocaine 1125, 1232  
in porphyria 212  
regional  
anaesthesia 1124–5  
primary survey 864  
procainamide  
in porphyria 212  
in VT 88  
procaine 212  
in porphyria 212  
regional anaesthesia 1124  
prochlorperazine 1116,  
1232  
drug interactions 248  
procyclidine 246, 1232  
progeria 324  
progressive external  
ophthalmoplegia 324  
promethazine 1232  
children 818  
prophylthiouracil 165  
propofol 112, 212, 1233  
children 821, 858  
in CRF 132  
in epilepsy 241  
infusion 1243  
in liver failure 146  
peribulbar block 686  
in porphyria 210  
in pregnancy 791  
TIVA 1037–8  
propranolol 152, 1233  
thyroid storm 165  
prostate carcinoma,  
brachytherapy 595  
prostatectomy  
laser 595  
open/radical 599, **599**  
see *also TURP*  
prosthetic heart  
valves **61**  
anticoagulant  
therapy 223  
protamine 1233

protein, total 1273  
protein C, activated 227  
proteus syndrome 324  
prothrombin complex  
concentrates  
(PCCs) 233  
prothrombin time see PT  
proton pump inhibitors  
11, 194  
proxymetacaine 1233  
prune-belly syndrome 324  
pseudocholinesterase 1054  
*Pseudomonas*  
aeruginosa 116  
pseudoxanthoma  
elasticum 324  
psychiatric disorders **278**  
consent to treatment 278  
electroconvulsive  
therapy 292  
sedation 288  
substance abuse 290  
see *also individual disorders*  
PT 145, 1060, 1272  
chronic liver disease 142  
pulmonary artery flotation  
catheter see PAFC  
pulmonary artery wedge  
pressure 1268  
pulmonary  
complications 99  
aspiration of gastric  
contents 10  
pulmonary contusion 876  
pulmonary cysts 324  
pulmonary embolism  
see venous  
thromboembolism  
pulmonary function tests  
see PFT  
pulmonary oedema 938  
pulmonary  
thromboembolism  
358  
diagnosis 359  
pulmonary vascular  
resistance 1268  
pulsus paradoxus 937  
pyeloplasty 610  
pyloric stenosis 842  
pyridostigmine 259, 1233

## Q

QRS complex 82  
Quincke's sign 64

## R

RA **192**, 199  
perioperative drug  
therapy 194  
radical neck dissection 658

radiofrequency ablation 725  
RAE 489, 632, 662, 850  
paediatric 811  
see *also individual  
procedures*  
randomised controlled  
trials 36  
ranitidine 766, 1234  
in porphyria 212  
in pregnancy 11, 791  
rapid sequence induction  
see RSI  
RAST tests 1007  
re-entry arrhythmias 84  
rectus sheath block 1156  
red cell count 1272  
red cell folate 1273  
red cells 1067  
transfusion 1071  
redo cardiac surgery 360  
Refsum's disease 324  
regional anaesthesia/  
analgesia **1119**  
adjuncts to 1127  
assistance 1122  
Caesarean section 754  
pregnancy  
hypertension 785  
children 829, 834  
axillary block 835  
caudal block 830  
dorsal nerve of  
penis 834  
drug doses 833  
epidural block 832  
ilioinguinal and  
iliohypogastric 834  
subarachnoid block 832  
TAP block 834  
choice of block 1186  
breast surgery 566  
day surgery 705  
orthopaedic surgery 467  
plastic surgery 514  
trauma 499  
vascular surgery 443  
see *below for individual  
blocks*  
and coagulation  
disorders 1174, 1176  
and compartment  
syndrome 506  
consent and  
preparation 1122  
continuous 1134  
dermatomes 1188–9  
'desert island'  
blocks 1120  
documentation 1123  
equipment 1122  
finding nerves 1128  
labour and delivery  
738–9



- regional anaesthesia/  
analgesia (*cont.*)
- local anaesthetics 1124,  
1136
- lower limb 1158, 1187
  - ankle block 1165
  - femoral nerve  
block 1160
  - LCNT block 1160
  - lumbar plexus  
block 1158
  - popliteal sciatic nerve  
block 1163
  - saphenous nerve  
block 1164
  - sciatic nerve block 1161
- monitoring 1122
- needle design 1133
- neck 1186
  - deep cervical plexus  
block 1137
  - superficial cervical  
plexus block 1136
- and nerve injury 1178
- neuraxial 1168
  - caudal block 830–1, 1172
  - epidural block 832, 1169
  - spinal block 832, 1168–9
- ophthalmic surgery 684
- peribulbar block 684–6
- retrobulbar block 684
- sub-Tenon's block 685,  
687
- personal audit 1123
- in porphyria 210
- safe practice 1122
- training and  
supervision 1123
- trunk and abdomen 1150,  
1186
  - inguinal field block 1153
- intercostal nerve  
block 1151
- penile block 1154
- rectus sheath  
block 1156
- TAP block 834, 1155–6
- thoracic paravertebral  
block 1150
- ultrasound in 1130–1
- upper limb and  
shoulder 489, 1138,  
1186
  - axillary block 1142
  - Bier's block 1149
  - brachial plexus  
block 706
  - coracoid block 1141
  - digital block 1148
  - elbow block 1145
  - interscalene brachial  
plexus block 1138
  - mid-humeral block 1144
  - supraclavicular  
block 1139
  - vertical infraclavicular  
block 1140
  - wrist block 1147
- relative risk 38
- remifentanyl 1234
  - in CRF 132
  - in ENT surgery 634
- infusion 1243
- in liver failure 146
- obstetric analgesia 752
- TCI 1022
- renal blood flow 1273
- renal dialysis **134**
  - haemodialysis 134
  - peritoneal dialysis 134
- renal failure
  - acute see ARF
  - chronic see CRF
- hepatorenal  
syndrome 150
- renin 1273
- residual volume 1266
- respiratory dead space 801,  
1266, 1271
- respiratory disease **97**
  - asthma 110
  - bronchiectasis 116
  - COPD 114
  - cystic fibrosis 118
  - elderly patients 728
  - postoperative admission  
to HDU/ICU 106
  - postoperative care 104
  - restrictive pulmonary  
disease 120
  - sarcoidosis 124
  - sleep apnoea syndrome 122
  - transplanted lungs 125
- respiratory function 911
  - assessment of 100
  - burns patients 884
  - effects of surgery/  
anaesthesia 98
  - investigations **102**
  - and obesity 188
  - postoperative  
complications 99
  - smoking 108
- respiratory physiology 1266
  - gas laws 1267
  - lung volumes 1266
- respiratory rate 801, 1266
- respiratory risk
  - factors 29–30
- respiratory tract
  - infection 107
  - children 815
- restrictive
  - cardiomyopathy 72
- restrictive pulmonary  
disease 120
- resuscitation 864
  - adult advanced life  
support 912
  - adult basic life  
support 910
  - cardiac arrest 894
  - children 954
  - damage control 1030
  - neonates 958–9
  - obstetric surgery 780
  - septic shock 897
  - trauma
    - primary survey 864
    - relatives in resuscitation  
room 869
    - secondary survey 870
  - see also ABC
  - retained placenta 768
  - reteplase 229
  - retrobulbar block 684
  - retrograde intubation 984
  - Rett syndrome 324
  - reversal of anaesthesia in  
children 826
  - reversal of NMB 256, 267,  
1058
    - unsuccessful 952
  - reverse Trendelenburg  
position 189, 577
  - Reynolds number 1271
  - rheumatic fever 66
  - rheumatoid arthritis  
see RA
  - rhinectomy 662
  - rhinoplasty 662
  - rhytidectomy (facelift) 522
  - ribs, first rib resection 463
  - rigid bronchoscopy 378
  - rigid spine syndrome 325
  - Riley-Day syndrome 306
  - RIMAS 284
  - risk
    - of anaesthesia 18, 20,  
20, 22
    - assessment 22
    - relative 38
    - risk ratio 38
    - rivaroxaban 226
    - robot-assisted laparoscopic  
surgery 605
    - rocuronium 112, 212, 1234
      - in CRF 132
      - in epilepsy 241
    - infusion 1243
    - in porphyria 212
  - rofecoxib 1098
  - Roizen's classification 100
  - Romano-Ward  
syndrome 325
  - ropinirole 246
  - ropivacaine 1125, 1235
    - in porphyria 212
    - regional anaesthesia 1124–5

RSI 994  
 children 825  
 damage control  
   resuscitation 1030  
 failed intubation 995, 997  
 septic shock 898  
 Rubinstein-Taybi  
   syndrome 325  
 ruby laser 710  
 Russell-Silver  
   syndrome 325  
 RV failure 306, 325, 346, 358  
 RV pressure 1268

# S

sacrocolpopexy 628  
 sacrospinous fixation 628  
 Saethre-Chotzen  
   syndrome 325  
 safe anaesthesia 4  
   briefings and debriefings 5  
   improvements in safety 4  
   prevention of  
     complications 4  
   WHO checklist 6  
 safe drugs  
   asthma 112  
   CRF 132  
   epilepsy 241  
   liver disease 146  
   porphyria 212  
 safety culture 4  
 SAH  
   aneurysmal 426  
   outcome 427  
 St John's wort 282, 1014  
 salbutamol 111, 1235  
   dose in children 968  
   hyperkalaemia 184  
   infusion 1243  
 salmeterol 111  
 SaO<sub>2</sub>, 104, 916  
 saphenous nerve block 1164  
 sarcoidosis 124  
 Savva test 973  
 Scheie syndrome 319  
 sciatic nerve block 1161  
 scimitar syndrome 325  
 scleroderma 198–9  
 scoliosis 201  
 Seckel syndrome 325  
 secondary survey 870  
 sedation  
   agitated patients 288  
   children 858  
   day surgery 705  
   dental procedures 678  
   see also individual sedatives  
 seizures  
   alcohol withdrawal 280  
   head injuries 874  
   see also epilepsy

selective serotonin reuptake  
   inhibitors see SSRI  
 selegiline 246, 284  
 septic shock 896  
   anaesthesia 898  
   children 960  
   resuscitation 897  
   tissue oxygenation 898  
 sequestration crisis in sickle  
   cell disease 206  
 serum tryptase 1007  
 sevoflurane 112, 212  
   children 820  
   in CRF 132  
   in liver failure 146  
   MAC 1250  
   in porphyria 212  
 Sheehan's syndrome 326  
 Shiroadkar suture 628  
 shock  
   hypovolaemia 866  
   septic 896  
   spinal 252  
 shoulder surgery 489  
   anaesthesia 489  
   total shoulder  
     replacement 490  
 Shprintzen syndrome 326  
 shunt fraction 1271  
 Shy-Drager syndrome 326  
 sick laparotomy 548, 548  
   haemodynamic  
     optimisation 549  
   monitoring 550  
   perioperative care 550  
   postoperative care 552  
   preoperative  
     assessment 549  
 sick sinus syndrome 85  
 sickle cell disease 206  
 sickle cell trait 206  
 sigmoid colectomy 545  
 sign in 6  
 sign out 6  
 Simmond's syndrome 326  
 sinus arrhythmia 84  
 sinus bradycardia 84  
 sinus tachycardia 84  
 Sipple syndrome 326  
 SIRS 896  
 Sjogren's syndrome 326  
 skin grafting 530, 530, 532  
   burns patients 531  
 skin testing 1007  
 sleep apnoea  
   syndrome 122  
   anaesthesia 123  
   obstructive sleep  
     apnoea 638  
 small for gestational  
   age 800  
 Smith-Lemli-Opitz  
   syndrome 326

smoking 108  
 sodium 1273  
   daily requirement 1080  
   hypernatraemia 187  
   hyponatraemia 186,  
     596, 809  
 sodium bicarbonate,  
   infusion 1247  
 sodium chloride 1083  
   with glucose 1087  
   hypertonic 1086  
   normal 1087  
 sodium citrate 766, 1203  
   in pregnancy 11  
 sodium iodide 165  
 sodium nitroprusside 1227  
   infusion 1243  
   in porphyria 212  
 sodium valproate 242  
 somatostatin 152  
 sotalol  
   AF 86  
   VT 88  
 speaking valve insertion 662  
 spherocytosis,  
   hereditary 214  
 spinal block 1168–9  
   Caesarean section 758  
   dose 769  
   inadequate block 762  
   children 832  
   complications 1171  
   continuous 1172  
   contraindications 1171  
   drugs and doses 1170  
   total spinal block 746  
 spinal cord lesions 250  
   anaesthesia 252  
   obstetric anaesthesia 254  
   systemic complications 251  
 spinal fusion 487  
 spinal infection 1105  
 spinal injuries 882  
   adult basic life  
     support 911  
 spinal muscular atrophy 326  
 spinal shock 252  
 spinal surgery 484, 487  
   anaesthesia 485  
   prone position 484  
 spirometry 102  
 SSG 530–1  
 SSRIs 283  
   anaesthesia 283  
 stapedectomy 647  
 statins 50  
 status asthmaticus 936  
 stents 724  
   airway 378  
   aortic aneurysm 449  
   drug-eluting 48  
   oesophageal 400  
   ureteric 610

sterilisation,  
  laparoscopic 618  
sternomental distance 973  
steroids 172, 212  
  comparative potencies 173  
  HPA suppression 172  
  perioperative 173  
Still's disease *see* RA  
STOP 616  
strabismus 694  
street drugs 290  
streptokinase 229  
stress incontinence  
  colposuspension 628  
  tension-free vaginal  
  tape 620  
stress response 1081  
stress testing 48  
stridor, postoperative 583  
stroke volume 1046, 1268  
Strumpell's disease 327  
Sturge-Weber  
  syndrome 327  
sub-Tenon's block 685, 687  
subarachnoid block *see*  
  spinal block  
subarachnoid haemorrhage  
  *see* SAH  
subaxial subluxation 192  
subdural block 746  
subglottic stenosis 315,  
  321, 811  
submandibular gland  
  excision 662  
substance abuse **290**, 1110  
  street drugs 290  
suction termination of  
  pregnancy *see* STOP  
sufentanil 212, 1236  
  in porphyria 212  
sugammadex 1058, 1236  
  in CRF 130  
  reversal of NMB 1058  
sulphonamides 212  
superficial cervical plexus  
  block 1136  
superior/cervical  
  mediastinoscopy 380  
supraclavicular block 1139  
suprapubic catheter 610  
supraventricular  
  tachycardia 85  
surgical grades 8  
  and age 9  
suxamethonium 112, 1054,  
  1236  
  apnoea 952  
  children 860  
  in chronic spinal cord  
  lesions 251  
contraindication  
  in burns 1054  
  in hyperkalaemia 185

  in CRF 130, 132  
  in ECT 292  
  and ICP 406  
  and intraocular  
  pressure 698  
  in liver failure 146  
  in myasthenia gravis 259  
  in porphyria 210, 212  
SVR 1268  
SVT 85  
  with aberrant  
  conduction 88  
Swanson's joint  
  replacement 496  
sympathectomy,  
  thoracoscopic 462  
Synacthen test 172–3  
syndactyly 532  
syndromic bile duct  
  paucity 296  
systemic lupus  
  erythematosus **196**, 199  
systemic sclerosis 198–9  
systemic vascular resistance  
  *see* SVR  
systolic blood pressure 802

## T

tachycardia  
  atrial 85  
  broad complex 45, 920  
  junctional 85  
  narrow complex 918  
  sinus 84  
  supraventricular 88  
  ventricular 88  
tacrolimus 74  
Takayasu's disease 327  
talipes equinovarus 852  
Tangier disease 327  
TAP block 1155–6  
  children 834  
TAR syndrome 327  
target-controlled  
  infusions 1020  
  accuracy 1020  
  disadvantages 1022  
  induction of  
  anaesthesia 1021  
  IV access 1022  
  maintenance of  
  anaesthesia 1021  
  open systems 1021  
  pharmacokinetics 1020  
  sedation 1021  
Tay-Sachs disease 327  
TB 382, 436  
TCAs **282**  
TCl *see* target-controlled  
  infusions  
team briefings/debriefings 5  
tear ducts, syringing 699  
TEDS 13, 672  
teeth  
  extractions 677  
  impacted/buried teeth 670  
  *see also* dental procedures  
TEG 336, 1060–3  
teicoplanin 1236  
  surgical prophylaxis 340,  
  1212  
temazepam 1237  
  children 818  
  in CRF 132  
  in porphyria 212  
temperature control **542**  
  children 804  
  CPB 338  
  cutaneous warming 543  
  internal warming 543  
  major trauma 499  
  *see also* thermoregulation  
tendon grafts 496  
tendon repair 481, 532  
tenecteplase 229  
tenolysis 496  
tenoxicam 1237  
TENS 1107  
tension-free vaginal  
  tape 620  
teratogenicity of drugs 791  
terbutaline 111  
terlipressin 152  
termination of  
  pregnancy 616  
testicular surgery 565  
  orchidopexy 847  
tetracaine 1237  
  cream 818, 1126, 1196  
  regional  
    anaesthesia 1124–5  
tetracycline 771  
tetralogy of Fallot 79  
TFT 55  
  thyroidectomy 581  
thalamotomy 247  
thalassaemias 214  
thermoablation 628  
thermoregulation  
  elderly patients 730  
  neonates 803  
  *see also* temperature  
  control  
thiopental 146, 1237  
  children 821  
  in CRF 132  
  in liver failure 146  
  in pregnancy 791  
  seizure management 874  
Thomsen's disease 320  
thoracic aortic surgery 354  
  circulatory arrest 355  
  hospital transfer 354  
thoracic paravertebral  
  block 1150

- thoracic surgery **365**
  - analgesia 369
  - bronchopleural fistula repair 390
  - chest injury 396
  - empyema drainage 388
  - general principles 366
  - important scenarios 367
  - lung see lung surgery
  - lung isolation 370
  - lung volume reduction surgery 386
  - oesophagectomy 394
  - one-lung ventilation 376
  - pleurectomy/pleurodesis 361
  - rigid bronchoscopy and stent insertion 378
  - superior/cervical mediastinoscopy 380
- thoraco-abdominal aortic aneurysm repair 450, **450**
- thoracoscopic surgery, video-assisted 384, **384**
- thoracoscopic
  - sympathectomy 462
- thoracoscopy 384, **384**
- THR 472, **472**
  - revision surgery 475
- throat packs 633
- thrombangiitis obliterans 300
- thrombasthenia 309
- thrombocythaemia, essential 236
- thrombocytopenia 220
  - heparin-induced 226
- thromboelastography see TEG
- thromboembolectomy, pulmonary 348, 358
- thromboembolism
  - see venous thromboembolism
- thrombotic
  - thrombocytopenic purpura 328
- thymectomy 258, 400
- thyroid crisis 583
- thyroid disease **164**
  - anaesthesia 165
  - hyperthyroidism 164
  - hypothyroidism 164
- thyroid function tests
  - see TFT
- thyroid storm 165
- thyroid-binding globulin 1273
- thyroid-stimulating hormone 1273
- thyroidectomy 580, **580**
  - airway planning 581
- thyromental distance 973
- thyrotoxicosis 164
- thyroxine 1273
- TIA 244
- tidal volume 801, 1266
- time out 6
- TIPSS 147, 152
- tirofiban 48, 229
- tissue expanders, insertion of 532
- tissue oxygenation 899
- TIVA
  - ketamine 1036
  - microlaryngoscopy 650
  - military uses 1036
  - in myasthenia gravis 259
  - propofol 1037–8
  - TCI 1020
- TKR 476
- TOE 572
- TOF 1057, 1059
- tolcapone 246
- tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy
  - adults 645
  - bleeding after 643
  - children 642
  - and CJD 643
- topical anaesthesia
  - AFOI 1001
  - children 818
  - ophthalmic surgery 688
- total hip joint replacement
  - see THR
- total knee joint replacement
  - see TKR
- total iron binding capacity 1273
- total intravenous anaesthesia see TIVA
- total lung capacity 1266
- total protein 1273
- total spinal block 746
- Tourette syndrome 328
- tourniquets **470**
- toxic epidermal necrolysis 328
- TPN 1040
- trabeculectomy 699
- tracheal intubation
  - see intubation
- tracheo-oesophageal fistula 840
- tracheobronchial foreign body 662
- tracheobronchial injury 397, 878
- tracheostomy 652
- tracheostomy tubes 653
- train-of-four monitoring 1057
- tramadol 1094, 1238
  - in CRF 132
  - dosage 1095
  - efficacy 1098
- tranexamic acid 232, 336, 572, 1238
- transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation see TENS
- transcutaneous pacing 92
- transfer factor (diffusing capacity) 103
- transfusion-associated graft versus host disease 1068
- transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI) 1068
- transient ischaemic attack 244
- transoesophageal echocardiography see TOE
- transplanted kidney, anaesthesia 608
- transplanted heart **74**
  - anaesthetic technique 75
  - immunosuppression 74
  - physiology 74
  - risk factors 75
- transplanted kidney 135
- transplanted lungs 125
- transthoracic echocardiography 55
- transurethral resection of bladder tumour 598
  - of prostate see TURP
- transurethral vaporisation of prostate 595
- transversus abdominal plane block see TAP block
- tranylcypromine 284
- trapeziectomy 496
- trauma **861**
  - abdominal injuries 879
  - airway 864
  - anaesthesia 362
  - analgesia 361
  - burns 884
  - chest 396, 865, 876
  - children 962
  - circulatory management 866
  - exposure/environmental control 868
  - eye injury 698
  - fluid resuscitation 867
  - head 872
  - imaging 869
  - immediate care 862
  - intracranial haematoma 412
  - intubation 868
  - limbs 883

trauma (*cont.*)  
 major 498  
 multiple injuries 892  
 neurological  
   assessment 868  
 pelvic fractures 880  
 primary survey 864, 868  
 resuscitation  
   primary survey 864  
   relatives in resuscitation  
     room 869  
   secondary survey 870  
   secondary survey 870  
 spinal 882  
 Treacher-Collins  
   syndrome 317  
 tri-iodothyronine 438  
 triamcinolone 173, 1238  
 triclofos, children 858  
 tricyclic antidepressants  
   see TCA  
 trifascicular heart block 91  
 trigger finger release 496  
 triglyceride 1273  
 trihexyphenidyl 246  
 trimепazine 1238  
   children 818, 858  
 triple H therapy 426  
 Triservice anaesthetic  
   apparatus 1034  
 tropisetron 1116  
 troponins 52, 1273  
 tryptase 1007  
 trunk, nerve blocks 1150  
   inguinal field block 1153  
   intercostal nerve  
     block 1151  
   penile block 1154  
   rectus sheath block 1156  
   TAP block 834, 1155–6  
   thoracic paravertebral  
     block 1150  
 TT, coagulation  
   disorders 219  
 tubes  
   endotracheal see ETT  
   microlaryngeal 650  
   misplaced 980  
   nasogastric see nasogastric  
     tube  
   tracheal 811–12  
   tracheostomy 653  
 tuberculosis see TB  
 tuberous sclerosis 328  
 tubocurarine 212  
 tumour necrosis factor-  
   alpha antagonists 194  
 Tuohy needle 1133  
 Turner's syndrome 328  
 TURP 594, **594**  
 TURP syndrome 596  
 TUVF 595  
 tympanoplasty 647

## U

U&Es 55, 1273  
 dystrophia myotonica 266  
 RA 193  
 spinal cord lesions 252  
 thyroid disease 165  
 thyroidectomy 581  
   see also electrolytes  
 ulnar head excision 496  
 ultrasound  
   IV access guidance 1042  
   regional  
     anaesthesia 1130–1  
 uncooperative children 816  
 unfractionated heparin 219,  
   1216  
   low-dose 13  
 upper limb nerve  
   blocks 1138  
   axillary block 1142  
   Bier's block 1149  
   brachial plexus block 706  
   coracoid block 1141  
   digital block 1148  
   elbow block 1145  
   interscalene brachial  
     plexus block 1138  
   mid-humeral block 1144  
   supraclavicular block 1139  
   vertical infraclavicular  
     block 1140  
   wrist block 1147  
 urate 1273  
 Urbach-Wiethe disease 328  
 ureteric stent 610  
 ureteroscopy 610  
 urethral dilatation 610  
 urethroplasty 610  
 urinalysis 144  
 urine  
   osmolality 1273  
   output 1273  
 urokinase 229  
 urological surgery **591**  
   cystectomy 602  
   cystoscopic  
     procedures 592  
   extracorporeal shock  
     wave lithotripsy 607  
   laparoscopic 604  
   nephrectomy/  
     heminephrectomy 600  
   open/radical  
     prostatectomy 599  
   percutaneous stone  
     removal 606  
   renal transplant 608  
   transurethral resection  
     of bladder tumour 598  
   transurethral resection of  
     prostate (TURP) 594  
 URTI in children 815

uterotonic drugs 776  
 uvulo-palato-  
   pharyngoplasty 662

## V

V/Q scan 103  
 vaginal hysterectomy 624  
 valdecoxib 1093, 1098  
 valerian 1014  
 valvular heart disease **60**  
   AR 64  
   AS 62  
   mitral stenosis 66  
   MR 68  
   prosthetic heart valves 61  
 vancomycin 1239  
   infusion 1243  
   surgical prophylaxis 1212  
 varicose vein surgery 464  
 variegate porphyria 210  
 vascular access 498  
 vascular lesions 424  
 vascular surgery **441**  
   amputations 460  
   aortic aneurysm repair  
     abdominal 444, 448–9  
     thoraco-abdominal 450  
   axillofemoral  
     bypass 458  
   carotid  
     endarterectomy 452  
   first rib resection 463  
   peripheral  
     revascularisation 456  
   premedication 443  
   preoperative  
     assessment 442  
   regional anaesthesia/  
     analgesia 443  
   thoracoscopic  
     sympathectomy 462  
   varicose vein surgery 464  
 vasectomy 610  
 vasoconstrictors  
   nasal 634  
   septic shock 899  
 vasodilators  
   heart failure 54  
   severe hypertension 925  
 vasopressin 438, 1239  
 VATS 384, **384**  
 vCJD see Creutzfeldt-Jakob  
   disease, variant  
 vecuronium 112, 212, 1239  
   in CRF 132  
   in epilepsy 241  
   infusion 1243  
   in liver failure 146  
   in porphyria 210, 212  
 venous access, long-term  
   see long-term venous  
   access

- venous air embolism 432
  - venous cannulation *see*
    - long-term venous access
  - venous
    - thromboembolism **12**, 222
    - CHADS score 222
    - and hormone replacement therapy 15
    - and oral contraceptive pill 15
    - prophylaxis 13
      - anticoagulants 222–3
      - choice of anaesthetic 14
      - graduated compression stockings 13
      - intermittent pneumatic compression devices 14
      - LMWHs 13
      - low-dose unfractionated heparin 13
      - subcutaneous heparin 13
      - warfarin, dextran and aspirin 14
    - risk assessment 225
    - risk factors 12, 29
    - risk stratification 223
  - ventilation 498
    - alveolar minute 1271
    - difficult, predictors of 973
    - failed 942–3, 978
    - head injuries 872, 874
    - jet 650
    - major trauma 498
    - mechanical 813
    - microlaryngoscopy 650
    - one-lung 370, **376**
    - ophthalmic surgery 690
    - resuscitation 913
    - in septic shock 896
    - see also individual procedures and types*
  - ventricular ectopics 88
  - ventricular fibrillation
    - see* VF
  - ventricular pacing 54, 94
  - ventricular rate 82
  - ventricular septal defect
    - see* VSD
  - ventricular tachycardia
    - see* VT
  - ventriculo-peritoneal shunt 410
  - verapamil 212
    - in porphyria 212
    - tachycardia 85
  - Verner-Morrison syndrome 180
  - vertebral fracture
    - repair 487
  - vertical infraclavicular block 1140
  - VF 89
    - children 956
  - video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery 384, **384**
  - VIPoma 180
  - vital capacity 1266
  - vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, 1273
  - vitamin K deficiency 219
  - vitreo-retinal surgery 695
  - Von Gierke's disease 310
  - von Willebrand's disease 218–19
  - VSD 78
  - VT 88
    - pulseless 956
  - VTOP 616
  - vulvectomy 628
- ## W
- WAGR syndrome 329
  - Waldenström's macroglobulinaemia 312
  - walking epidurals 741
  - warfarin 219, **222**, 1240
    - DVT prophylaxis 14
  - warming
    - cutaneous 543
    - internal 543
  - water balance 1080
    - dehydration
      - clinical assessment 808, 1081
      - signs and symptoms 1082
  - waterhammer pulse 64
  - Weaver's syndrome 329
  - Weber-Christian disease 329
  - wedge pressure 1268
  - wedge resection 382
  - Wegener's granulomatosis 329
  - Welander's muscular atrophy 329
  - Wenkebach heart block 90
  - Werner syndrome 329
  - Wertheim's hysterectomy 623
  - Whipple's triad 180
  - white cell count 1272
  - WHO checklist **6**
  - WHO Second Global Patient Safety Challenge 4
  - WHO Surgical Safety Checklist 4, 6
  - whole blood 1066
  - William's syndrome 329
  - Wilson score 973
  - Wilson's disease 329
  - Wiskott-Aldrich disease 330
  - Wolf-Hirschhorn syndrome 330
  - Wolfram syndrome 330
  - Wolman's syndrome 330
  - WPW syndrome 84–5
  - wrist block 1147
- ## X
- xenon, MAC 1250
- ## Z
- zafirlukast 111
  - Zellweger syndrome 330
  - Zencker's diverticulum 322
  - Zollinger-Ellison syndrome 179
  - zolpidem 1240
  - zopiclone 1240
  - zygomatic complex fractures 674